











GUIDE  
TO THE  
FRENCH LANGUAGE;  
ESPECIALLY DEVISED  
FOR PERSONS WHO WISH TO STUDY THE  
ELEMENTS OF THAT LANGUAGE  
WITHOUT  
THE ASSISTANCE OF A TEACHER.

BY  
J. J. P. LE BRETHON.

---

THE NINTH EDITION,  
CORRECTED, ENLARGED, AND IMPROVED;  
WITH A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

---

ADOLESCENTIAM ALERE JUCUNDUM EST ET LAUDABILE.  
CICERO.

---



LONDON:  
PRINTED FOR ROBERT BALDWIN,  
47, PATERNOSTER-ROW.

---

1843.



TC 2109

.L 6

1843

LONDON:

Printed by WILLIAM CLOWES and SONS,  
Stamford Street.

## TO THE LEARNER.\*

---

I SUPPOSE you to be animated with as great a desire to learn the French language as I am to assist you. Before we begin, permit me to ask you a single painful question. Do you know your own language? Do you know the parts of which it is composed,—NOUNS, ARTICLES, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, VERBS, ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, &c.? Are these terms familiar to you? If you answer NO, then will I say to you, learn them before we go further, for it is ten to one that you and I should not understand each other, or, if we did, it would be with a great deal of difficulty. Besides, you may be excused for not knowing a foreign language; you can hardly be pardoned for being ignorant of your own, especially at a time when so many able persons devote themselves to the teaching of it. Nor do you even want the assistance of a teacher; with a moderate share of understanding and a good grammar, you may learn as much as is necessary for our purpose in the course of a fortnight.

Now I suppose that you have these few requisites, and you wish to make use of this book. Begin at the part called INTRODUCTION À LA LANGUE FRANÇAISE, page 27: compare the French with the English, and endeavour to form some idea of the difference between the two languages: Then translate into French the English exercises, page 62 and the following, the rules of which correspond with the French that you are now reading in the Introduction. If you have a Key, compare it with the French you have written; and, if there be any difference between them, the figures under the words point out to you the rule by which your error is to be rectified. It will be proper during this time that you should peruse the verbs, that the variation in their tenses and persons may by degrees become familiar to you. It is by no means necessary that you should know how to pronounce the words; it will be time enough when you have gone further into the book. When you have read the French as far as page 58, you must get a dictionary† and read some French book.‡

N.B. Persons making use of this book, who have already some

---

\* The Author is not so vain as to wish to give instructions to teachers, or to persons accustomed to the study of languages, but to such persons only as are at a loss how to begin.

† LEVIZAC'S French and English Dictionary, 1 vol. 12mo, will answer the purpose of any beginner.

‡ You might begin with a small Recueil of Contes Moraux, by Wanostrucht: having the English words under the French, it will save you a little time and trou-

## TO THE LEARNER.

general notions of the French language, must begin at the part called the SYNTAX, page 190, and write the exercises, page 271.

But, says an Englishman, how shall I learn the pronunciation? Your anxiety is commendable, but it is untimely. You do not wish to speak before you know how to arrange the words grammatically together.

The pronunciation of the French language, which to an Englishman seems the most difficult part of it, is in fact the easiest. I have known many persons who, in seven or eight lessons, have acquired as good a pronunciation of that language as it is possible for a foreigner to acquire, and there are perhaps few people who, with a little attention, would not learn it in twelve or fifteen lessons. If your mind is ambitious of surmounting all the difficulties at once, read the chapter on pronunciation, page 1 and following; but I should deceive you if I were to tell you that you would make yourself perfect in that part by the single assistance of the rules which are contained in it; all that I can say is, that from the repeated experiments which have been made of them they cannot lead you to a bad accent. It is even proper that you should cast your eyes now and then over those rules; they will be of great service to you, when you think fit to apply to pronunciation, whether you have a teacher or not. But let your attention be now chiefly bent upon the Syntax; it is the most difficult part of the French language; and when you have made some progress in it, then will be the time for you to apply to the pronunciation. Knowing the meaning and arrangement of the words which you have to pronounce, you will make more proficiency in one lesson than otherwise you would make in three.

*Directions are given in the KEY to parents not accustomed to teach languages, who wish to instruct their children with the assistance of this book how they must proceed.*

---

ble. Then you may read any of the following works, which, I think, you will find both instructive and entertaining; Numa Pompilius, second roi de Rome; Les Incas, ou la destruction de l'empire du Pérou; Gonzalve de Cordoue; Gil Blas; Bélisaire, by Marmontel; Contes Moraux, by ditto; Télémaque; Histoire de Charles XII., roi du Suède, by Voltaire; Histoire de Pierre le Grand, by ditto; Contes et Romans, by ditto; Siècle de Louis XIV., by ditto; Vie de Louis XV., by ditto; Essai sur les Mœurs et l'Esprit de Nations, by ditto;\* Voyage du jeune Anacharsis en Grèce, by Barthelemy;† Voyages en Egypte et en Syrie, by Volney; Histoire de Révolutions Romaines de Suède, et de Portugal, by Vertot; Les Œuvres de Jouy; viz., L'Hermite de la Chaussée d'Antin; Ditto de la Guiane; Ditto en Provence; Guillaume le franc parleur; Les Comédies de Molière; or any other book you may have a mind to read.

\* *The style of Voltaire is the easiest and the most free from idioms we have.*

† *This is a charming work; but it requires a little knowledge of ancient history, mythology, and geography, to understand it.*

# THE ALPHABET.

---

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE is composed of *twenty-five* letters, viz.

A	pronounced	<i>ah</i>	like	<i>a</i>	in	art.
B		<i>bay</i>		<i>b</i>		bay.
C		<i>say</i>		<i>s</i>		say.
D		<i>day</i>		<i>d</i>		day.
E		<i>ay</i>		<i>a</i>		ale.
F		<i>f</i>		<i>f</i>		deaf.
G		<i>zhay*</i>		<sup>1</sup>		
H		<i>ash</i>		<i>h</i>		ash.
I		<i>ee</i>		<i>i</i>		field.
J		<i>zhee*</i>		<sup>1</sup>		
K		<i>kah</i>		<i>c</i>		cart.
L		<i>l</i>		<i>l</i>		ell.
M		<i>m</i>		<i>m</i>		gem.
N		<i>n</i>		<i>n</i>		pen.
O		<i>o</i>		<i>o</i>		old.
P		<i>pay</i>		<i>p</i>		pay.
Q		<i>ku</i>		<sup>2</sup>		
R		<i>ayr</i>		<i>r</i>		to err.
S		<i>s</i>		<i>s</i>		bless.
T		<i>tay</i>		<i>t</i>		tailor.
U		<i>u</i>		<sup>2</sup>		
V		<i>vay</i>		<i>v</i>		veil.
X		<i>eks</i>		<i>x</i>		sir.
Y		<i>ee-graye</i>				the same sound as <i>i</i> .
Z		<i>zeyd</i>		<i>z</i>		zed.

These are the names by which the letters are called in french; but in that language, as well as in the english, the sound of several of them varies according to their position with other letters, as will appear by the following observations.†

---

\* To give this letter its proper sound, the *h* must be pronounced aspirate.

1 The sound of *g* and *j*, in english, is formed of *dj*; so *general*, *judge*, are pronounced *djeneral*, *djudge*; leave out the sound of *d* in french, and you will have the proper sound.

2 There is no word in the english language in which the sounds of the french *q* and *u* are to be found, and no combination of characters can give an idea of the pronunciation of these two letters. The person who has them to pronounce, must shut his lips quite close, leaving only a small opening in the middle, as if he were going to blow a flute.

† It is perhaps unnecessary to observe, that in a treatise of this kind, the minutest precision must not be expected. There are simple sounds which no combination of characters can exactly express: every person who knows any thing of languages must be sensible of this.

## OF VOWELS.

The French reckon *three* sorts of vowels.

The simple, *a, e, î, o, u.*

The compound, *ai, ao, au, ea, eai, eau, ei, eu, eo, oe, ou.*

The nasal, *am, an, em, en, im, in, aim, ain, ein, om, on, um, un.*

## OF SIMPLE VOWELS.

*a, e, î, o, u.*

1 Each of these letters has *two* sounds common to both languages ;

One short, as <i>a</i> in <i>patte</i> ,		English words in which the same sound is found.	
é	bête, marked thus ' 1	paw,	a in <i>pat</i> .
i	fixe,	beet,	e <i>bet</i> .
o	hotte,	fixed,	i <i>fix</i> .
u	mur,	dorser,	o <i>hot</i> .
		wall,	u see note 2.

The other long, as â in <i>pâte</i> ,	} marked ' 3		
ê <i>bête</i> ,			
î <i>fil</i> ,			
ô <i>hôte</i> ,			
û <i>mûr</i> ,			
		paste,	a in <i>pull</i> .
		beast,	e <i>bear</i> .
		might do,	i <i>field</i> .
		landlord,	o <i>hope</i> .
		ripe,	u see note 2 and 3.

N. B. The beauty of french pronunciation depends upon a clear and distinct articulation of these five letters.

2 To the two sorts of *e* abovementioned, must be added *e* mute, as in

<i>cela,</i>	that, pronounced	<i>sla.</i>
<i>demande,</i>	requires,	<i>dmand.</i>
<i>des mesures,</i>	measures,	<i>daymsur.</i>

This *e*, as you see, has no sound, but it generally affects the sound or the *penultima*, by rendering it longer, if it be a vowel, or by giving a sound to the consonant which, without it, would be silent ; for ex.

é in <i>aimé</i> ,	mascul.	loved, is pronoun.	<i>aymay</i> , like <i>é</i>	} short.
i <i>joli</i> ,		pretty,	<i>zhollî</i> , 4	
u <i>vu</i> ,		seen,	<i>vu</i> ,	
é in <i>aimée</i> ,	femin.	loved, is pronoun.	<i>aymaye</i> , like <i>é</i>	} long
i <i>jolie</i> ,		pretty,	<i>zholee</i> ,	
u <i>vue</i> ,		seen,	<i>vû</i> ,	
<i>petit</i> ,	mascul.	little, is pronoun.	<i>pti</i> , see note 4.	
<i>grand</i> ,		great,	<i>gran</i> .	
<i>pris</i> ,		taken,	<i>pree</i> .	
but <i>petite</i> ,	femin.	little, is pronoun.	<i>ptitt</i> .	
<i>grande</i> ,		great,	<i>grand</i> .	
<i>prise</i> ,		taken,	<i>preez</i> .	
In <i>un bon chien</i> ,		a good dog, the <i>n</i> has only a <i>half</i> sound.		
In <i>une bonne chienne</i> ,		a good bitch, the <i>n</i> has a <i>full</i> sound.		

N. B. *e* mute is distinguished from the two others, by its not being accented ; it is never pronounced at the end of words, but when *e* begins a word, it is always sounded whether it be accented or not.

3 A vowel with a circumflex is pronounced as long again as it would be without it.

4 Sound the letter *i* as sharp as you can, sharper, if possible, than *y* in *pretty*.

5 To give *n* its full articulation, you first press the tip of the tongue against the root of the lower teeth, then raise it up quickly to the roof of the mouth. In the pronunciation of the above nasal vowels, the articulation of *n* must end, when the tip of the tongue is at the root of the lower teeth, without any motion towards the roof of the mouth ; this is what is here meant by a *half* sound.



## OF SIMPLE VOWELS.

In the monosyllables, *je, me, te, le, se, ce, de, ne, que*, this *e* has sometimes a *weak guttural* sound, similar to that of *e* in *daughter, sister*, because the consonant can not be pronounced without a feeble articulation of a vowel; but it is always *dropt* in conversation and in familiar reading, when it can be done without embarrassing the pronunciation. The manner in which this is effected is easy. With the *last syllable* of the preceding word, *pronounce* the *consonant* to which *e mute* belongs, and the *e*, thus *unsupported*, will remain *silent*; ex.

Quand me ferez-vous le plaisir de me prêter ce livre que je vous ai demandé?

pronounce, *kam fraye vool playzeer daym pray tays livr kayzh voozayd manday!*

But there must not be any pause between the words, and the junction must be as smooth as possible.

Observe only, that a *syllable* ending in *e mute*, can not attract the *consonant* of another *e mute*, without giving to the first *e* a gentle guttural sound, like that of *e* in *daughter*, so as to render the pronunciation easy; ex.

Je ne puis pas vous le dire, puis que je ne le sais pas.

pron. *zhen puee paw vool deer, pueesk zhen lay say paw.*

But carefully avoid pronouncing it like an accented *é*, for there is not any pronunciation more ridiculous.\*

Among the simple vowels is also reckoned *y*, which however does not increase their number, since its sound is the same as that of *i*. The peculiar use of this letter is to divide the syllable in which it is found, into two distinct syllables; it is equivalent to *ii*; as,

<i>pays,</i>	country,	pron.	<i>pay-ee.</i>
<i>citoyen,</i>	citizen,		<i>citywoy-eeyen.</i>
<i>soyons,</i>	let us be,		<i>swoy-econ.</i>
<i>joyeux,</i>	joyful,		<i>zhwoy-ce-ugh.</i>

Except in the words derived from the greek and latin, where *y* is kept to shew the etymology of the word, and is pronounced like one *i* only; as,

<i>Egypte,</i>	Egypt,	<i>ayzheept.</i>
<i>tyrannie,</i>	tyranny,	<i>teerannee.</i>
<i>étymologie,</i>	etymology,	<i>ayteemolozhee.</i>
<i>mythologie,</i>	mythology,	<i>meetolozhee.</i>

\* In the pronouncing of this *e* consists much of the neatness and elegance of a true french accent. In the southern provinces of France, especially in *Guienne* and *Gascogne*, they pronounce it like the acute or short *é*, which gives them that affected pronunciation, so much ridiculed by the rest of the inhabitants of France, under the name of *accent gascon*. For this reason a foreigner will sooner understand a native of *Bordeaux*, than a native of *Paris*, and may often understand the former, without being able to understand the latter, though if he understands the latter, he will undoubtedly understand the former. It is the frequent dropping of this *e* which makes a foreigner believe that the French speak fast, for, in reality, the French, taken in general, do not pronounce their words faster than other people do; but by dropping this letter, they link two, three, or four words together, and so go quicker through a sentence than a foreigner does, who gives a full sound to every *e* he meets with. Foreigners should pay particular attention to this, as nothing is more difficult to get rid of than a bad accent.

## OF COMPOUND VOWELS

*ai, ao, au, ea, eai, eau, ei, eo, eu, oe, ou.*

This sort of vowel is formed by the association of several simple vowels, which produce together, a sound different from that which they produce separately.

- 5 *ai, eai,* } sounded like *é* short, i. e. *ay* ; as,
- |                    |         |           |                   |
|--------------------|---------|-----------|-------------------|
| <i>j'ai,</i>       | I have, | pronounce | <i>zhay.</i>      |
| <i>je mangeai,</i> | I ate,  |           | <i>zhmanzhay.</i> |
- 6 *ais, aie, aient, eais, eaiënt,* } sounded like *ê* long, i. e. *aye* ; as,
- |                       |                     |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>j'avais,</i>       | I had,              | <i>zhavaye.</i>     |
| <i>j'aie,</i>         | I may have.         | <i>zhæy</i>         |
| <i>ils aient,</i>     | they may have,      | <i>eel-z-aye.</i>   |
| <i>je mangeais,</i>   | I was eating,       | <i>zhmanzhaye.</i>  |
| <i>ils nageaiënt,</i> | they were swimming, | <i>eel nazhaye.</i> |
- ao*, found only in *aôit*, august ; *taon*, oxfly ; *faon*, fawn ; *paon*, peacock.  
pronounced *oow*, *ton*, *fun*, *pan*, (see nasal vowels.)
- 7 *au, eau,* } final, sound like *o* short, or *au*, in *laurel* ; as,
- |              |       |            |
|--------------|-------|------------|
| <i>eau,</i>  | water | <i>o.</i>  |
| <i>peau,</i> | skin, | <i>po.</i> |
- 8 *au, eau,* } followed by a consonant in the same word, sounded like *ô*  
long, or *au* in *hautboy* ; as,
- |                |          |              |
|----------------|----------|--------------|
| <i>eaux,</i>   | waters,  | <i>ô.</i>    |
| <i>autant,</i> | as much, | <i>ôtan.</i> |
- 9 *ea*, the *e* has no sound, but gives *g* the soft sound of *j*, or *zh* ; as,
- |                |       |                |
|----------------|-------|----------------|
| <i>jean,</i>   | john, | <i>zhan.</i>   |
| <i>mangea,</i> | ate,  | <i>manzha.</i> |
- 10 *ei*, pronounced like *ei* in *reign* ; or *ai* in *rain* ; as,
- |               |       |              |
|---------------|-------|--------------|
| <i>reine,</i> | queen | <i>rain.</i> |
| <i>peine,</i> | pain, | <i>pain.</i> |
- 11 *eo*, in *geo*, the *e* has no sound, but softens that of *g* into *zh* ; as,
- |                |         |                  |
|----------------|---------|------------------|
| <i>george,</i> | george, | <i>zhorz.</i>    |
| <i>gêlier,</i> | jailer, | <i>zhôleeay.</i> |
- 12 *eu*, the nearest idea which I can give of *eu*, is that of *e*, in *her*, agreeably to Walker's pronunciation of that word, viz. *hur*.
- |             |         |             |
|-------------|---------|-------------|
| <i>feu,</i> | fire,   | <i>feu.</i> |
| <i>peu,</i> | little, | <i>peu.</i> |
- N. B. *e* has no sound in the monosyllables,  
*eu, eus, eut, êames, êâtes, eurent, eusse*, had ; pronounce *u, û, u, ûm, ût, ur, uss.*
- 13 *oe*, pronounced *e* ; the *o* having no sound ; and the words in which it was found formerly being now generally spelled without it ; as,
- |                |        |              |
|----------------|--------|--------------|
| <i>cœur,</i>   | heart, | <i>keur.</i> |
| <i>œuvres,</i> | works, | <i>œvr.</i>  |
- 14 *ou*, pronounced like *oo* in *cook, book, look* ; as,
- |              |       |             |
|--------------|-------|-------------|
| <i>coup,</i> | blow, | <i>koo.</i> |
| <i>bout,</i> | end,  | <i>boo.</i> |
- 15 N. B. If one of the vowels is *accented*, or marked over with two dots (¨), the vowels form distinct syllables, and are pronounced separately ; as,
- |                 |                |                  |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| <i>fléau,</i>   | scourge,       | <i>flay-o.</i>   |
| <i>naïveté.</i> | ingenuousness, | <i>na-ivtay.</i> |

OF NASAL VOWELS.

*am, an, em, en, im, in, aim, ain, ein, om on, um, un.*

*am, an, em, en, ent,* } have all the same sound, that of *en* in *encore*, or *an* in *want*, ob- 16  
serving to give the *n* only a half sound; See note 5.

<i>ambition,</i>	<i>ambition,</i>	<i>anbiseeon.</i>
<i>empire,</i>	<i>empire,</i>	<i>anpeer.</i>
<i>enfant,</i>	<i>child,</i>	<i>anfan.</i>
<i>anglais,</i>	<i>english,</i>	<i>anglaye.</i>
<i>vengeance,</i>	<i>revenge,</i>	<i>vanzhance.</i>
<i>ornement,</i>	<i>ornament,</i>	<i>ornayman.</i>

*en* has the sound of *en* in *when*, giving *n* only a half sound; See note 5. 17

1. In foreign names; as,

<i>mentor,</i>	<i>mentor,</i>	<i>mentor.</i>
----------------	----------------	----------------

2. At the end of words; as,

<i>examen,</i>	<i>examination,</i>	<i>egzamen.</i>
<i>bien,</i>	<i>well,</i>	<i>beeyen.</i>
<i>entretien,</i>	<i>conversation,</i>	<i>antrayt-yen.</i>

N. B. *ent* has no sound at the end of the third person plural of 18  
verbs; as,

*im, in, aim, ain, ein,* } have all the same sound, a sound similar to that of *in* in *fine*, 19  
giving *n* only a half sound; See note 5.

<i>ils eurent,</i>	<i>they had,</i>	<i>eel-z-ur.</i>
<i>ils furent,</i>	<i>they were,</i>	<i>eel fur.</i>
<i>ils aimèrent,</i>	<i>they loved,</i>	<i>eel-z-aymayr.</i>
<i>imparfait,</i>	<i>imperfect,</i>	<i>ineparfay.</i>
<i>infini,</i>	<i>infinite,</i>	<i>inefini.</i>
<i>cousin,</i>	<i>cousin, masc.</i>	<i>coozine.</i>
<i>fin,</i>	<i>end,</i>	<i>fine.</i>
<i>faim,</i>	<i>hunger,</i>	<i>fine.</i>
<i>pain,</i>	<i>bread,</i>	<i>pine.</i>
<i>sein,</i>	<i>bosom,</i>	<i>sine.</i>

But if *in*, either in the first or last syllable of a word, is followed by a 20  
vowel, it is sounded like the english preposition *in*; as,

<i>inaccessible,</i>	<i>inaccessible,</i>	<i>inaksessible.</i>
<i>inutile,</i>	<i>useless,</i>	<i>inutil.</i>
<i>fine,</i>	<i>fine,</i>	<i>fin.</i>
<i>cousine,</i>	<i>cousin, femin.</i>	<i>coozin.</i>
<i>badine,</i>	<i>playful,</i>	<i>bad-in.</i>

*om, on, eon,* } are sounded like *on* in *wont*, observing always to give *n* only a 21  
half sound; See note 5.

<i>compter,</i>	<i>to count,</i>	<i>contay.</i>
<i>dorjon,</i>	<i>dungeon,</i>	<i>don-zhon.</i>
<i>pigeon,</i>	<i>pigeon,</i>	<i>peezhon.</i>
<i>mangeons,</i>	<i>let us eat,</i>	<i>man-zhon.</i>

N. B. The English are apt to open their mouths too much in pronouncing *on*, by  
which means, instead of sounding it like *on* in *wont*, they sound it like *an* in *want*.  
They should guard against this.

*um, un, eun,* } have all the same sound; but no exact idea can be given of it, 22  
unless it be that of *un* in *fungus*; observing not to give *n* its  
full sound; See note 5.

<i>parfum,</i>	<i>perfume,</i>	<i>parfun.</i>
<i>chacun,</i>	<i>each,</i>	<i>shalc-un.</i>
<i>à jeun,</i>	<i>fasting,</i>	<i>azhun.</i>

## OF DIPHTHONGS.

23 Diphthongs are a union of several vowels, which, though they produce different sounds, are pronounced at the same breath;

<i>ia</i> , sounded like	<i>ya</i> in yard. ex.	<i>fiacre</i> ,	hackney-coach,	<i>feeyacr.</i>
<i>ie</i> ,	<i>ye</i> ye.	<i>piéd</i> ,	foot,	<i>pee-ay.</i>
<i>io</i> ,	<i>yo</i> york.	<i>fiote</i> ,	vial,	<i>feool.</i>
<i>iau</i> ,	<i>yo</i> yoke.	<i>miauler</i> ,	to mew,	<i>meeolay.</i>
<i>ieu</i> ,		<i>dieu</i> ,	god,	<i>dee-ugh.</i>
<i>iou</i> ,	<i>you</i> you.	<i>chiourme</i> ,	a galley crew,	<i>sheeoorm.</i>
<i>iant</i> ,	<i>yan</i> ,	<i>priant</i> ,	praying,	<i>preeyan.</i>
<i>ient</i> ,		<i>patient</i> ,	patient,	<i>paucceeyan.</i>
<i>ien</i> ,	<i>yen</i> ,	<i>bien</i> ,	well,	<i>beeyen.</i>
<i>ion</i> ,	<i>yon</i> ,	<i>action</i> ,	action,	<i>akseeyon.</i>
<i>oe</i> ,	<i>whey</i> whey.	<i>boète</i> ,	box,	<i>bwheyt.</i>
<i>oue</i> ,		<i>fouet</i> ,	whip,	<i>fwhey.</i>
<i>oi</i> ,	6 <i>woa</i> ,	<i>moi, toi</i> ,	I, thou,	<i>mwoa, twoa.</i>
<i>oi</i> ,		<i>bourgeois</i> ,	burgess,	<i>boorzhwoa.</i>
<i>oin</i> ,	<i>woin</i> ,	<i>soin</i> ,	care,	<i>swoin.</i>
<i>ouan</i> ,	<i>wan</i> want.	<i>louange</i> ,	praise,	<i>lwanzh.</i>
<i>ouen</i> ,		<i>rouen</i> ,	rouen,	<i>rwan.</i>
<i>oud</i> ,	<i>wa</i> water.	<i>louage</i> ,	hiring,	<i>lwazh.</i>
<i>oui</i> ,	<i>wi</i> without.	<i>oui, réjouï</i> ,	yes, rejoiced,	<i>we, rayzhwee.</i>
<i>ua</i> ,	In pronouncing this <i>u</i> shut your lips as direct- ed in note 2.	<i>nuage</i> ,	cloud,	<i>nuazh.</i>
<i>ue</i> ,		<i>écuelle</i> ,	porringer,	<i>aykuayl.</i>
<i>ui</i> ,		<i>lui, fruit</i> ,	him, fruit,	<i>lui, fruit, no. 4.</i>
<i>uin</i> ,		<i>juin</i> ,	june,	<i>zhuine.</i>

6 To remove the embarrassment which learners find in the pronunciation of *oi*, which is sometimes pronounced like the diphthong *oi*, and sometimes like the compound vowel *ai*, in words which are entirely similar, I have through all this work spelled with *oi* the words which are pronounced *woa*, and with *ai*, those which are pronounced *ay*. It will perhaps be argued that this is contrary to the opinion of the french academy. I respect the opinion of the french academy, as much as any man can do, when it is consonant to reason; but the opinion of no man, let his rank and talents be ever so eminent, nor of any corporation of men, however pompous their appellation may be, can be put in competition with reason. Now is it reasonable that two sounds so very different should be expressed by one sign; exposing the learner to innumerable mistakes, when by the mere change of a single letter, another sign can so easily be formed, which removes every difficulty? The following words, for instance, are given to a foreigner to pronounce, or even to a native of France, who never heard them pronounced before:

*François, danois, suédois, chinois, bourgeois, chamois, foi, paroisse, perçoit, &c.*  
*François, anglois, hollandois, japonois, bougeois, charmois, foible, puroisse, perçoit, &c.*

The stranger is told how to pronounce the words in the first line; he pronounces them well; he goes on confidently to the second line, naturally thinking that the same letters ought to produce the same sound: what must his astonishment be, when he is told that *oi* in the words contained in the second line is pronounced quite differently from what it is in the words contained in the first, the first being pronounced *woa*, and the second *ay*; and how much greater will his surprise be still, when he finds that even in the same word such as *voyois, croyois, &c.* (see rule 4) *oi* has two different sounds, the first syllable being pronounced *woa* and the second *ay*. And have you no means, the stranger will say, of removing this insuperable difficulty? Yes, we have, and a very easy one too; you have only to change *o* into *a* in the words which are to be pronounced *ay*, and the whole difficulty will vanish; but the french academy do not approve of it. Oh! never mind the french academy, the stranger will say. Nor do the French, it seems, mind it much, for these great censors of the language have the mortification to see that, in almost every book now printed in France, this diphthong is spelled contrary to their arrogant and unreasonable decision. In vain they will say that *ai* does not express the exact sound that we wish to express; if it removes a great difficulty, if nothing better is offered, if it is the best representative of this sound that we can find, and is a sign which nobody can mistake, we must be satisfied with it, till the french academy deign to favour us with a better.—(See *Dictionnaire Philosophique*, art. A.)



OF CONSONANTS.

*General Rules.*

The french language admits of *two* modes of pronunciation : one for *poetry* and *oratory*, the other for *conversation*.

In repeating *verses*, and in *oratorical* discourses, the *final consonant* 24 of a word is generally *sounded*, when the word which follows it begins with a *vowel*, or *h mute* ; as,

*D'un pinceau délicat, l'artifice agréable,  
Du plus affreux objet, fait un objet aimable.  
Des dons extérieurs l'uniformité lasse,  
Mais l'esprit a toujours une nouvelle grâce.*

The above lines must be read in the following manner ;

*Dun paineso daylika lartifice agrayable,  
Duplu-z-affreu-z-obzhay fay-t-un-obzhay-t-aymable.  
Day don-z-extayrieur luniformitay lass,  
May layspri-t-a toozhoor-z-un noovayl grass.*

In *conversation*, the ear alone being consulted, opinions greatly differ. 25 Some are for sounding the final consonant of every word, when the word which follows it begins with a vowel ; others, and this seems to be the opinion of the best informed persons, maintain that the final consonant of a word should be sounded on the initial vowel of the next, only when the two words are so connected that the second word is necessary to complete the sense ; such as,

Article and noun ;

<i>un enfant,</i>	a child,	<i>u-n-anfan.</i>
<i>cet hiver,</i>	this winter,	<i>s-t-eevayr.</i>
<i>à son âge,</i>	at his age,	<i>à so-n-âzh.</i>
<i>les artifices,</i>	the artifices,	<i>lay-z-artifiss.</i>
<i>des hommes,</i>	of men,	<i>day-z-om.</i>

Adjective before the noun ;

<i>bon ouvrage,</i>	good work,	<i>bo-n-ooorazh.</i>
<i>grand espace,</i>	great space,	<i>gran-t-ayspass</i>
<i>petit homme,</i>	little man,	<i>pti-t-om. (7)</i>
<i>gros oiseau,</i>	large bird,	<i>grô-z-owyzo.</i>
<i>beaux habits,</i>	fine clothes,	<i>bô-z-abee.</i>

Pronoun with the verb, and verb with the pronoun ;

<i>il est,</i>	he is,	<i>i-ll-aye.</i>
<i>est-il ?</i>	is he ?	<i>aye-t-il ?</i>
<i>sont-elles ?</i>	are they ?	<i>son-t-ell ?</i>
<i>nous avons,</i>	we have,	<i>noo-z-avon.</i>
<i>vous en avez,</i>	you have some,	<i>voo-z-an-araye</i>
<i>les ont-ils ?</i>	have they got them ?	<i>lay-z-on-t-eel ?</i>

Preposition with the noun, pronoun, or verb that follows it ;

<i>sans amis,</i>	without friends,	<i>san-z-amee.</i>
<i>avec elle,</i>	with her,	<i>arayk-ell.</i>
<i>en allant,</i>	in going,	<i>an-allan.</i>
<i>chez eux,</i>	to their house,	<i>shay-z-ugh.</i>
<i>après avoir,</i>	after having,	<i>apray-z-avoa</i>

Adverb before the adjective or participle ;

<i>bien honnête,</i>	very honest,	<i>beeyen-onayt</i>
<i>plus habile,</i>	more clever,	<i>plu-z-ah-bill.</i>
<i>très aimable,</i>	very lovely,	<i>tray-z-aymable</i>
<i>fort utile,</i>	very useful,	<i>for-t-utill.</i>
<i>trop ignorant,</i>	too ignorant,	<i>tro-p-inyoran.</i>

N. B. There are a few other instances in which a final consonant may be sounded on the following vowel, but they can hardly be reduced

(7) We sound the final consonant of an adjective upon a noun, but not the final consonant of a noun upon an adjective ; so, though *petit enfant*, is pronounced *pti-t-anfan.*  
*enfant aimable* could not be pronounced *anfan-t-aymable*, but *anfan aymable*.



## OF CONSONANTS.

*General Rules.*

to rules, as it chiefly depends on the number of letters of the same sound that follow one another. The surest way for a foreigner is to confine himself to the general rules which apply to nine-tenths of the words the final consonant of which is to be sounded on the following vowel. The rest must be learned from the conversation of well informed persons.\*

26 The foregoing instances excepted, the *final consonant* of words, in general, *has no sound* in french. See the *particular rules* for consonants under their respective heads.

\* As in music, it is the diversity of sounds that produces melody; so it is with languages. The union of the final consonant of some words, to the initial vowel of the word which follows them, being done to disencumber the language of too great a number of monosyllables, and to render it more melodious by a greater variety of sounds; the rule given by some persons, that every word ending with a consonant should be joined to the following word, when it begins with a vowel, is totally erroneous, and produces the very effect which this union is intended to remove. It is true, that in reading verses, the final consonant is generally joined to the following vowel, to preserve the measure of the verse; and, in public speeches, the consonants are also often sounded at the end of words, to give a stronger impulsion to the air, and to be heard at a greater distance; but in familiar reading, and in conversation, this is carefully avoided by all unaffected people.

If any authority be necessary to support what I advance here, I trust that of *l'abbé d'Olivet*, one of the most distinguished members of the french academy, will be sufficient to convince every man of candour, since it implies the opinion of the most enlightened part of that body. This philosophical grammarian, in his treatise on french prosody, (a work which has been, and ever will be the admiration of the learned,) before he speaks of the effect which certain nasal terminations have in repeating verses, remarks, *art. 3. parag. 5*

*Je commence par dire que cette observation ne regarde point ceux qui écrivent en prose, car la prose souffre les hiatus† pourvu qu'ils ne soient, ni trop rudes, ni trop fréquents. Ils contribuent même à donner au discours un certain air naturel, et nous voyons en effet que la conversation des honnêtes gens est pleine d'hiatus volontaires qui sont tellement autorisés par l'usage, que si l'on parloit autrement, cela seroit d'un pédant, ou d'un provincial. Par exemple, lorsqu'un acteur récite ces vers de la première scène d'Athalie, Je viens — célébrer avec vous la fameuse journée, &c. Pensez-vous être saint ? il prononce comme s'il y avoit ; célébré-r-avec vous — pensez-vous-z-être. Mais dans la simple conversation, l'usage veut qu'on prononce comme s'il y avoit, célébré avec vous — pensez-vous être, &c. And art. 2, he says—On le croira si l'on veut ; au moins est-il certain qu'au théâtre ce n'est pas chose rare qu'un acteur, et surtout une actrice dont les talents sont admirés fasse adopter un mauvais accent, une prononciation irrégulière, d'où naissent insensiblement des traditions locales qui se perpétuent, si personne n'est attentif à les combattre.* These are the words of a man, for whose opinions the french academy had the greatest deference; a man who, at their request, had made this subject one of his particular studies, and who had consulted upon it, as he himself declares, all the men of taste and learning with whom he was acquainted; and they never were contradicted, but by persons, who, being fond of appearing singular, affect in conversation the emphatic tone of the stage, without considering whether they are speaking prose or verse, (most of the french plays are in verse,) or by those who, looking upon singularity as an accomplishment, mimic their ridiculous affectation.

*Dans une nation qui est une par rapport au gouvernement, il ne peut y avoir dans sa manière de parler qu'un usage légitime, celui de la cour et des gens de lettres, à qui elle doit des encouragements; tout autre usage qui s'en écarte dans la prononciation, dans les terminaisons, ou de quelque autre façon que ce puisse être, ne fait ni une langue, ou un idiôme à part, ni un dialecte de la langue nationale; c'est un patois abandonné à la populace des provinces, et chaque province a le sien. Girard synonym. franç. art. Langue, Language, &c*

† By hiatus is meant a broken sound.

# PRONUNCIATION

9

## OF CONSONANTS.

### Particular Rules.

#### B

*b* is sounded at the end of proper names; as,

<i>job,</i>	job, pronounce	<i>zhob.</i>
<i>jacob,</i>	jacob,	<i>zhakob.</i>

At the end of common names *b* is found only in

<i>plomb,</i>	lead, pron.	<i>plon.</i>
<i>radoub,</i>	refitting,	<i>radoob.</i>

#### C

This letter has two sounds common to both languages.

- |  |            |               |
|--|------------|---------------|
| 1. That of <i>k</i> as in <i>case</i> ,  | pronounced | <i>kase.</i>  |
| 2. That of <i>s</i> as in <i>cease</i> , |            | <i>sease.</i> |

*c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, has the sound of *k*.

<i>ca, ka,</i>	<i>car,</i>	for,	<i>kar.</i>
<i>co, ko,</i>	<i>cour,</i>	yard,	<i>koor.</i>
<i>cu, ku,</i>	<i>culotte,</i>	breeches,	<i>kulot.</i> ( <i>u</i> , see note 2.)

*c* before *e*, *i*, or before *a*, *o*, *u*, with a cedilla, this mark (*ç*) under it, has the sound of *s*; as,

<i>ça, sa,</i>	<i>façade,</i>	front,	<i>fasad.</i>
<i>ee, se,</i>	<i>ceder,</i>	to yield,	<i>sayday.</i>
<i>ci, si,</i>	<i>ceci,</i>	this,	<i>scec.</i> ( <i>i</i> , see note 4.)
<i>ço, so,</i>	<i>garçon,</i>	boy,	<i>garson.</i>
<i>çu, su,</i>	<i>reçu,</i>	received,	<i>rsu.</i> ( <i>u</i> , see note 2.)

*c* final is generally sounded, and has the sound of *k*; as,

<i>avec,</i>	with,	<i>avayk.</i>
<i>public,</i>	public,	<i>publeek.</i> ( <i>u</i> , see note 2.)

except the following words, in which *c* final has no sound;

*broc, porc, clerc, un marc, blanc, franc, jonc, tronc, almanac, estomac, tabac.*  
*a jug, pork, clerk, 8 ounces, white, frank, rush, trunk, almanack, stomach, tobacco.*  
 pron. *bro, por, clayr, mar, blan, fran,\* zhon, trov, almana, aystoma, tuba.*

*cc*, before *e*, *i*; the first *c* has the sound of *k*, the second that of *s*; as,

<i>succès,</i>	success,	<i>suksaye.</i>
<i>accident,</i>	accident,	<i>akseedan.</i>

Before *a*, *o*, *u*; *cc* have only one sound, that of *k*; as,

<i>accabler,</i>	to crush,	<i>akablay.</i>
<i>accomplir,</i>	to accomplish,	<i>akonpleer.</i>
<i>accuser,</i>	to accuse,	<i>akusay.</i> ( <i>u</i> , see note 2.)

*ch*, generally pronounced *sh*; as,

<i>chirurgien,</i>	surgeon,	<i>sheeruzheyen.</i>
<i>architecte,</i>	architect,	<i>arsheetayct.</i>

*ch* has the sound of *k* in the following words;

<i>christ, chrétien, choriste,</i>	<i>archange,</i>	<i>orchestre, chronique, chronologie.</i>
<i>christ, christian, chorister,</i>	<i>archangel, orchestre, chronicle, chronology.</i>	
pron. <i>kree, krayleeyen, koreest,</i>	<i>ar'kanzh, or'kaystr, kroncelk, kronolozhee.</i>	

#### D

*d* final has no sound; as,

<i>froid,</i>	cold,	<i>frwoy.</i>
<i>chaud,</i>	hot,	<i>show.</i>

except at the end of a word which is pronounced at the same breath with another word beginning with a vowel, then *d* has the sound of *t*; as,

<i>apprend-il?</i>	does he learn?	<i>apran-t-eei?</i>
<i>quand il vient.</i>	when he comes,	<i>kant-t-eel vyeeyen.</i>

*d*, or even *dd*, in the body of a word, is sounded: as,

<i>adjectif,</i>	adjective,	<i>adjecteef.</i>
<i>addition,</i>	addition,	<i>addeesecon.</i>

\* *c*, in the adjectives *blanc* and *franc*, followed by a noun beginning with a vowel, has the sound of *k*; as, *Du blanc au noir*, pronounce *du blan-k-o-noir*. *Franc étourdi*, pron. *fran-k-aytoordee*. (*i*, see note 4.)

## OF CONSONANTS

## F

*f* final is generally sounded; as,

<i>chef,</i>	chief,	<i>shayf.</i>
<i>nerf,</i>	sinew,	<i>nayrf.</i>
<i>bœuf,</i>	ox,	<i>bugf.</i>
<i>œuf,</i>	egg,	<i>ugf.</i>
except in <i>clef,</i>	key,	<i>clay.</i>
<i>bœufs,</i>	oxen,	<i>bûgh.</i>
<i>œufs,</i>	eggs,	<i>ûgh.</i>

and if pronounced at *one breath* with a word beginning with a *consonant*;

<i>chef d'œuvre,</i>	master-piece,	<i>shaydeugvre.</i>
<i>nerf de bœuf,</i>	cow-skin, a rod,	<i>nayr d bugf.</i>
<i>bœuf salé,</i>	salt beef,	<i>bugh salay.</i>
<i>œuf frais,</i>	new egg,	<i>ugh fraye.</i>

*f* is sounded in *neuf* at the end of a sentence; as,

<i>j'en ai neuf,</i>	I have got nine,	<i>zhan-ay nugf. (eu, s. rule 12.,</i>
<i>un habit neuf,</i>	a new suit,	<i>un-abee nugf.</i>

joined to a noun beginning with a consonant, *f* has no sound; as,  
*neuf livres,* nine livres, *nugh leavr. (eu, see rule 12.)*  
*dix neuf sous,* nineteen pence, *dees nugh soo.*

joined to a noun beginning with a vowel, *f* has the sound of *v*; as,  
*neuf écus.* nine crowns, *nugh-v-aykû. (u, see n. 2.)*  
*vingt neuf hommes,* twenty-nine men, *vyngt nugf-v-om.*

## G

*g* final has no sound; as,

<i>long,</i>	long,	<i>lon. (on, see rule 21.)</i>
<i>sang,</i>	blood,	<i>san, } (an, see rule 16.)</i>
<i>rang,</i>	rank,	<i>ran,</i>
except in <i>long accès,</i>	long fit,	<i>long-aksey.</i>
<i>sang et eau,</i>	blood and water,	<i>sank-ay o.</i>
<i>de rang en rang,</i>	from rank to rank,	<i>drank-an ran.</i>

*g* before *e, i,* has the soft sound of *zh*, or *s* in *pleasure*, or *z* in *azure*.

<i>ge, zhay,</i>	<i>général,</i>	general,	<i>zhaynayral.</i>
<i>gi, zhee,</i>	<i>gigot,</i>	leg of mutton,	<i>zhwego.</i>

*g* before *a, o, u,* has the hard sound of *g* in *god*; a sound nearly similar to that of *k*; as,

<i>ga, ka,</i>	<i>garçon,</i>	boy,	<i>karson. (on, see rule 21.)</i>
<i>go, ko,</i>	<i>gorge,</i>	throat,	<i>korzh.</i>
<i>gu, k,</i>	<i>guérir,</i>	to cure,	<i>kayreer.</i>

N. B. *gu* form only *one sound*, that of *g hard*, or *k*; as,

<i>guérir,</i>	to cure,	<i>kayreer.</i>
<i>guerre,</i>	war,	<i>kayrr.</i>
<i>guide,</i>	guide,	<i>keed.</i>

except the following words, in which *gu* have each a *distinct sound*;

*aiguille, aiguillon, ayguiser, arguer, ciguë, aiguë, ambiguë, ambiguë.*  
 needle, sting, to whet, to argue, hemlock, sharp, ambiguous, ambiguity.  
 pron. *aygueell, aygueellon, aygueesay, arguay, seegû, aygû, anbeegû, ambeegueetay*

*gna,* sound *gnyâ,* }  
*gné,* *gnyé,* } observing to sound the *n* as much as possible  
*gni,* *gnyi,* } through the nose; as,  
*gno,* *gnyo,* }

<i>campagnard,</i>	countryman,	<i>kanpagnyar.</i>
<i>accompagné,</i>	accompanied,	<i>akompagnay.</i>
<i>compagnie,</i>	company,	<i>kompagnee.</i>
<i>ignorant</i>	ignorant,	<i>eeignyoran.</i>

## OF CONSONANTS

## H

There are *two* sorts of *h* both in french and in english ; the one *aspirate*, which requires an effort of the breath ; as,

<i>héros,</i>	hero,	<i>hayrow.</i>
<i>hasard,</i>	hazard.	<i>hazar.</i>

the other *mute*, which has no sound, and serves only to shew the etymology of the word ; as,

<i>honneur,</i>	honour,	<i>onhur.</i> ( <i>eu</i> , see rule 12.)
<i>histoire,</i>	history,	<i>eestwoyr.</i>

*N. B.* These two sorts of *h* are often embarrassing to the learner ; they are marked in dictionaries, but one should always bear some characteristic mark in writing. The *h* *mute* that occurs through the subjoined exercises will be preceded by an apostrophe.

*ch*, pronounced *sh* ; as,

<i>chat,</i>	cat,	<i>sha.</i> (see c.)
<i>chose,</i>	thing,	<i>shoz.</i>

*ph*, pronounced *f* ; as,

<i>phrase,</i>	sentence,	<i>fraz.</i>
<i>philosophe,</i>	philosopher,	<i>feelosof.</i>

*rh*, sounded *r* ; as,

<i>rhétorique,</i>	rhetoric,	<i>raytoreeck.</i>
<i>rhume,</i>	cold,	<i>rhugm.</i> ( <i>u</i> , see note 2.)

*th*, sounded *t* ; as,

<i>thomas,</i>	thomas,	<i>tomaw.</i>
<i>méthode,</i>	method,	<i>maytod.</i>

## J

*j*, pronounced *zh*, or like *s* in *pleasure*, *leisure*, or *z* in *azure* ; as,

<i>jardin,</i>	garden,	<i>zhardine.</i> ( <i>in</i> , see rule 19.)
<i>jour.</i>	day,	<i>zhoor.</i>

## K

*k*, the same sound in french as in english ; as,

<i>kan,</i>	kan,	<i>kan.</i> ( <i>an</i> , see rule 16.)
<i>stockholm,</i>	stockholm,	<i>stokolm.</i>

## L

*l* final is generally sounded ; as,

<i>sel,</i>	salt,	<i>sayl.</i>
<i>fil,</i>	thread,	<i>feel.</i> ( <i>i</i> , see note 4.)
<i>cheval,</i>	horse,	<i>shval.</i>

except *baril*, *chenil*, *coutil*, *fusil*, *fenil*, *fil*, *gril*, *outil*, *percil*, *sourcil*, *soûl*.  
*barrel*, *kennel*, *ticking*, *gun*, *hayloft*, *son*, *gridiron*, *tool*, *parsley*, *eyebrow*, *drunk*.  
*pron. baree*, *shnee*, *kootee*, *fusee*, *fnee*, *fee*, *gree*, *ootee*, *persee*, *soorsee*, *sco*.

*l*. In the pronouns *il*, *ils*, some sound the *l* in all instances ; others sound it only when it is followed by a *vowel* ; opinions being divided, *l* in *il*, *ils*, followed by a *consonant*, may either be pronounced or dropt ; as,

<i>il a,</i>	he has,	<i>eel-a.</i>
<i>il dit,</i>	he says,	<i>eel dec</i> , or <i>ee dec.</i> ( <i>i</i> , s. n. 4.)
<i>ils ont,</i>	they have,	<i>eel-z-on</i> , or <i>ee-z-on.</i>
<i>ils disent,</i>	they say,	<i>eel deez</i> , or <i>ee deez.</i>

In conversation *l* is not sounded in

<i>quelque,</i>	some,	<i>kayk.</i>
<i>quelqu'un,</i>	somebody,	<i>kaykun.</i>

*ll*, in general are both sounded the same as in english ; as,

<i>allégorie,</i>	allegory,	<i>al-laygoree.</i>
<i>illustre,</i>	illustrious,	<i>il-lustr.</i> ( <i>u</i> , see note 2.)

But *ll* preceded by *i* in the middle, and at the end of words, must



## OF CONSONANTS.

be sounded like *ill* in the word *million*; as,

	<i>meilleur,</i>	better,	<i>meylhur.</i>
	<i>bouteille</i>	bottle,	<i>booteyll.</i>
	<i>famille,</i>	family,	<i>fameell.</i>
	<i>bataille,</i>	battle,	<i>batauill.</i>
also <i>il</i> in	<i>avril,</i>	april,	<i>arveell.</i>
	<i>péril,</i>	peril,	<i>payreell.</i>
	<i>babil,</i>	prattling,	<i>babeel.</i>
	<i>travail,</i>	labour,	<i>travauill.</i>
	<i>soleil,</i>	sun,	<i>soleyll.</i>
	<i>gentil homme,</i>	nobleman,	<i>zhanteellom.</i>

{ and all words  
ending in *ail*.

except the following words, in which one *l* only is sounded;

<i>argille,</i>	<i>canomille,</i>	<i>distille,</i>	<i>imbécille,</i>	<i>mille,</i>	<i>ville,</i>	<i>pupille,</i>	<i>tranquille.</i>
clay,	camomile,	distil,	imbecile,	thousand,	town,	pupil,	quiet
pron. <i>ar-heel,</i>	<i>kanomeel,</i>	<i>deesteel,</i>	<i>inebayceel,</i>	<i>meel,</i>	<i>veel,</i>	<i>pupeel,</i>	<i>trankeel.</i>

## M

*m*, at the end of a word, and in the first syllable of words beginning with *com*, has only the half sound of *n*. See note 5.

<i>faim,</i>	hunger,	<i>fine.</i> (in, see rule 19.)
<i>nom,</i>	name,	<i>non.</i> (on, see rule 21.)
<i>compliment,</i>	compliment,	<i>compleman.</i> (an, rule 16.)

*m* has no sound in

<i>damner,</i>	to damn,	<i>dawnay</i> ; and derivatives.
<i>solemnel,</i>	solemn,	<i>solanel.</i>
<i>automne,</i>	autumn,	<i>ôton.</i>

but *m* has a full sound in

<i>automnal,</i>	autumnal,	<i>ôtomnal.</i>
<i>amnistie,</i>	amnesty,	<i>anneestee.</i>
<i>calomnie,</i>	slander,	<i>calomnee.</i>
<i>hymne,</i>	hymn,	<i>hecnn.</i>
<i>indemniser,</i>	to indemnify,	<i>inedanneesay.</i>
<i>indemnité,</i>	indemnification,	<i>inedanneetay.</i>
<i>agamenmon,</i>	agamenmon,	<i>agamenmon.</i>
<i>sornambule,</i>	sleep-walker,	<i>somnanbul.</i> (see note 2.)

*mm*, only one sound; as,

<i>homme,</i>	man,	<i>om.</i>
<i>femme,</i>	woman,	<i>fann.</i>

except in the first syllable of the words beginning with *imm*; as,

<i>immortel,</i>	immortal,	<i>im-mortayl.</i>
<i>immense,</i>	immense,	<i>im-manss.</i>

## N

What has been said of *m* may be applied to *n*.

*n*, at the end of a word, or in the first syllable of words beginning with *con*, has only a half sound. See note 5.

<i>pain,</i>	bread,	<i>pine.</i>	} (in, s. rule 19.)
<i>vin,</i>	wine,	<i>vine.</i>	
<i>condition,</i>	condition,	<i>condeesecon.</i>	

*nn*, only one sounded.

<i>année,</i>	year,	<i>anaye.</i>
<i>connaître,</i>	to know,	<i>conaytr.</i>

except the following words, in which *nn* are both sounded;

<i>annotation,</i>	annotation,	<i>an-notassecon.</i>
<i>annuel,</i>	annual,	<i>an-nael</i> ; and derivatives.
<i>annuler,</i>	to annul,	<i>an-mulay</i>
<i>inné,</i>	innate,	<i>in-nay.</i>
<i>innover,</i>	to innovate,	<i>in notay</i> ; and derivatives.



## OF CONSONANTS.

## P

*p* final is not sounded, even when it is followed by a vowel; as

<i>un loup,</i>	a wolf,	<i>un loo.</i> ( <i>u</i> , see note 2.)
<i>ce drap est bon,</i>	this cloth is good,	<i>sdra aye bon.</i>
except in <i>cap,</i>	<i>cap,</i>	<i>cap.</i>
<i>cep,</i>	stock of a vine,	<i>sapp.</i>

*p* in *trop* and *beaucoup*, joined to a word beginning with a vowel, is sounded; as,

<i>trop entêté,</i>	too obstinate,	<i>tro-p-antaytay.</i>
<i>beaucoup étudié,</i>	much studied,	<i>bokoo-p-aytudeeay.</i>

followed by a word beginning with a consonant, *p* has no sound; as,

<i>trop stupide,</i>	too stupid,	<i>tro stupeed.</i> ( <i>u</i> , see n. 2.)
<i>beaucoup d'affaires,</i>	much business,	<i>bokoo daffayr.</i>

*p* is sounded in

<i>baptismal, sceptique, septembre, septentrion,</i>	<i>accepter, excepter, dompter.</i>
<i>baptismal, sceptick, september, north,</i>	<i>to accept, to except, to subdue.</i>
pron. <i>bapteesmal, saypteck, sayptanbr, sayptantreeon, aksayptay, eksayptay, domptay.</i>	

but *p* is not sounded in

<i>baptême, compte, exempt, prompt, manuscript, symptôme, sept, sculpteur, temp</i>	
<i>baptism, account, exempt, quick, manuscript, symptom, seven, sculptor, time</i>	
pron. <i>bataym, cont, egzan, pron, manuscree, sinetôm, sayt, skulter, tan.</i>	

*pp*, one only sounded;

<i>apparence,</i>	appearance,	<i>aparanss.</i>
<i>appartenir,</i>	to belong,	<i>apartneer.</i>

*ph*, sounded *f*; as,

<i>sphère,</i>	sphere,	<i>sfayr.</i>
<i>philosophie,</i>	philosophy,	<i>feelosofee.</i>

## Q

*q* final is found only in *coq* and *cinq*;

*q* is sounded, and has the sound of *k* in

<i>coq,</i>	cock,	<i>cok.</i>
<i>coq à l'âne,</i>	idle tale,	<i>cok a larn.</i>

but it is not sounded in

<i>coq d'inde,</i>	turkey-cock,	<i>co dynd.</i> ( <i>in</i> , see rule 19.)
--------------------	--------------	---

*q* in *cinq* substantive, is sounded *k*; as,

<i>un cinq de pique,</i>	a five of spades,	<i>un synk dpeeck.</i>
<i>à cinq pour cent,</i>	at five per cent,	<i>a synk poor san.</i>
<i>trois et deux font cinq,</i>	three and two are five,	<i>troa-z-ay dugh fon synk.</i>

in *cinq*, prefixed to a noun, and pronounced at the same breath with it, *q* is sounded if the noun begins with a vowel or *h* mute; as,

<i>cinq hommes,</i>	five men,	<i>synk om.</i> ( <i>in</i> , s. rule 19.)
<i>vingt cinq écus,</i>	twenty-five crowns,	<i>vyngt synk aykû.</i>

if the noun to which *cinq* is prefixed, begins with a consonant, *q* is not sounded; as,

<i>cinq garçons,</i>	five boys,	<i>sine karson.</i>
<i>cinq filles,</i>	five girls,	<i>sine feell.</i> } ( <i>in</i> , s. rule 19.)

*qu* has only one sound, that of *k*; as,

<i>qui,</i>	who,	<i>kee.</i> ( <i>i</i> , see note 4.)
<i>quatre,</i>	four,	<i>katr.</i>
<i>qualité,</i>	quality,	<i>kalectay.</i>
<i>marquis,</i>	marquis,	<i>markee.</i>

except the following words, in which *qu* are pronounced *kw*: as in english:

<i>aquatique, équateur, quadrature, quadruple, quadrupède, quadragenaire, quarto.</i>	
<i>aquatic, equator, quadrature, quadruple, quadruped, forty years old, quarto.</i>	
pron. <i>akwateek, aykwater, kwadratur, kwadruple, kwadrupayd, kwadrashaynayr, kwarto.</i>	

## OF CONSONANTS.

## R

*r* is sounded at the end of *all words*; as,

<i>car</i> ,	for, because,	<i>kar</i> .
<i>pour</i> ,	for,	<i>pocr</i> .
<i>parvenir</i> ,	to arrive,	<i>parneer</i> .

except the words ending in *er* or *ier*, of more than one syllable, in which the *r* has no sound, but it gives to *e* the sound of *é short*, i. e. *ay*; as

<i>aimer</i> ,	to love,	<i>aymay</i> .
<i>écolier</i> ,	scholar,	<i>aykoleeay</i> .
and in <i>monsieur</i> ,	sir,	<i>moseeugh</i> .

*r* is not sounded in *notre*, *votre*, *quatre*, joined to a noun beginning with a consonant; as,

<i>notre maison</i> ,	our house,	<i>not mayzon</i> . (on, rule 21.)
<i>votre chapeau</i> ,	your hat,	<i>rot shapo</i> .
<i>quatre livres</i> ,	four livres,	<i>kat leerr</i> .

but *r* is sounded when *notre*, *votre*, *quatre*, are joined to a noun beginning with a vowel; as,

<i>notre ami</i> ,	our friend,	<i>notr-amee</i> .
<i>votre honneur</i> ,	your honour,	<i>rotr-onhur</i> . (eu, see rule 12.)
<i>quatre écus</i> ,	four crowns,	<i>katr-aykû</i> .
and in <i>notre père</i> ,	our father,	<i>notr-payr</i> , lord's prayer.
<i>notre dame</i> ,	our lady,	<i>notr-dam</i> , virgin mary.

*r* is always sounded in

<i>le nôtre</i> ,	ours,	<i>lowtr</i> .
<i>le vôtre</i> ,	yours,	<i>lowtr</i> .

*rr*, only one is sounded; as,

<i>arriver</i> ,	to arrive,	<i>areevay</i> .
<i>arroser</i> ,	to water,	<i>arozay</i> .

except in the first syllable of the words beginning with *irr*; as,

<i>irrégulier</i> ,	irregular,	<i>ir-rayguleeay</i> .
<i>irréprochable</i> ,	irreproachable,	<i>ir-rayproshabl</i> .

## S

This letter has *two* sounds common to both languages, the first *hard* or *aspirate*, like *c soft*; as,

<i>somme</i> ,	sum,	<i>sum</i> .
----------------	------	--------------

the other *soft* or *liquid*; like *z*; as,

<i>rose</i> ,	rose,	<i>roze</i> .
---------------	-------	---------------

*s*, at the beginning of a word, or in the body of a word, when it is preceded or followed by a *consonant*, is always pronounced *hard* or *aspirate*, as,

<i>salut</i> ,	safety,	<i>salu</i> . (u, see note 2.)
<i>souper</i> ,	supper,	<i>soopay</i> .
<i>personne</i> ,	nobody,	<i>payrson</i> .

*s*, between *two* vowels in the *body* of a word, or at the *end* of a word, which is to be pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel*, has the sound of *z*; as,

<i>raison</i> ,	reason,	<i>rayzon</i> . (on, see rule 21.)
<i>plaisir</i> ,	pleasure,	<i>playzeer</i> .
<i>trois heures</i> ,	three hours,	<i>troa-z-hur</i> .
<i>mes enfants</i> ,	my children,	<i>may-z-anfan</i> . (an, rule 16.)

in other instances, *s final* has no sound; but renders the syllable *long*;

<i>trouv as tu?</i>	didst thou find?	<i>troovaw tu?</i> (u, see n. 2.)
<i>tes amis</i> ,	thy friends,	<i>taye-z-amee</i> .
<i>revenus</i> ,	returned,	<i>rayrnû</i> . (see note 2.)

except at the end of *greek* and *latin* names which have been adopted

## OF CONSONANTS.

in the french language ; as,

	<i>pâris,</i>	paris, <i>the trojan,</i>	<i>paurreess.</i>
	<i>vénus,</i>	venus,	<i>vaynus.</i>
	<i>mars,</i>	mars,	<i>mars.</i>
also in	<i>as,</i>	ace,	<i>ass.</i>
	<i>ris,</i>	screw,	<i>veess.</i>
	<i>lis,</i>	lily,	<i>leess.</i>
	<i>aloës,</i>	aloes,	<i>aloays.</i>
but not in	<i>mars,</i>	march,	<i>mar</i>
	<i>fleur de lis,</i>	flower de luce,	<i>fluhr úlee.</i>

ss have only one sound, but always *aspirate* ; as,

<i>assurer,</i>	to assure,	<i>asuray.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>ressentir,</i>	to resent,	<i>rsunteer</i>

sc before e, i, have only one sound, that of s *aspirate* ; as,

<i>sceptique,</i>	sceptick,	<i>sayptceck.</i>
<i>science,</i>	science,	<i>secanss.</i>

sc before a, o, u, l, r, have the sound of sk ; as,

<i>scandale,</i>	scandal,	<i>skandal.</i>
<i>gascon,</i>	gascon,	<i>kaskon.</i>
<i>scorbut,</i>	scurvy,	<i>skorbu.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>sculpteur,</i>	sculptor,	<i>skultur.</i>
<i>esclave,</i>	slave,	<i>aysklar.</i>
<i>scrupule,</i>	scruple,	<i>skrupul.</i> (u, see note 2.)

## T

t has two sounds, both found in *satiety*, pronounced *saciety*.

t at the beginning of words has the same sound in french as in english,

<i>table,</i>	table,	<i>tabl.</i>
<i>timidité,</i>	timidity,	<i>teemcedetay.</i>

in the body of a word t followed by i, has generally the sound of c ;

<i>patience,</i>	patience,	<i>pawceeanss.</i>
<i>action,</i>	action,	<i>akceon.</i>

except the following words, in which t retains its own sound ;

<i>bastion, question, partie, matière, étions, étiez,</i>	<i>sortions, sortiez, entier.</i>
<i>bastion, question, part, matter, were, were,</i>	<i>went out, went out, entire</i>
pron. <i>basteon, kaysteon, partee, matceayr, ayteon, ayteeaye, sorteon, sorteeaye, anteeay</i>	
<i>entièrement, chrétien, chrétienté, soutien, entretien, il retient.</i>	
entirely, christian, christendom, support, maintenance, he retains.	
pron. <i>anteecayrman, crayteeen, krayteeantay, sooteeyen, antrayteeen, il rayteeen.</i>	

and the words ending in *tié*, and *tier* ; as,

<i>amitié,</i>	friendship,	<i>ameeteey.</i>
<i>châtier,</i>	to chastise,	<i>shawteeay.</i>

t final is not sounded ; as,

<i>tout,</i>	all,	<i>too.</i>
<i>il est,</i>	it is,	<i>eel aye.</i>
<i>fait,</i>	done,	<i>fay.</i>
except in <i>est, ouest,</i>	east, west,	<i>ayst, west.</i>
<i>lest, dot</i>	ballast, dower,	<i>layst, dot.</i>
<i>brut, correct,</i>	rough, correct,	<i>brut, corrayct.</i>
<i>un fat, un sot,</i>	a fop, a fool,	<i>un fat, un sot.</i>
<i>pact, exact,</i>	pact, exact,	<i>pact, egzact.</i>

and when it ends a word which must be pronounced at the same breath with another word beginning with a vowel ; as,

<i>est-elle?</i>	is she?	<i>aye-t-ell?</i>
<i>tout à fait,</i>	quite,	<i>too-t-afay.</i> (see gen. rule.)
but never in <i>et,</i>	and, (conjunction)	<i>ay.</i>

## OF CONSONANTS.

*t* is sounded in *sept*, *huit*, substantives ; as,

<i>un sept,</i>	a seven,	<i>un sayt.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>un huit,</i>	an eight,	<i>un hueet.</i>

in *sept*, *huit*, *vingt*, *cent*, joined to a noun, *t* is sounded when the noun which follows it begins with a vowel ; as,

<i>sept enfants,</i>	seven children,	<i>sayt-anfan:</i>
<i>huit amis,</i>	eight friends,	<i>hueet-amee.</i> (see gen. rule.)

if the noun begins with a consonant, *t* has no sound ; as,

<i>sept navires,</i>	seven ships,	<i>say navveer.</i>
<i>cent chevaux,</i>	a hundred horses,	<i>san shrâ.</i>

*tt*, only one sounded ; as,

<i>attirer,</i>	to attract,	<i>ateeray.</i>
<i>frotter,</i>	to rub,	<i>frotay.</i>

## V

*v* has the same sound in french as in english ; as,

<i>vanité,</i>	vanity,	<i>vaneetay.</i>
<i>vivacité,</i>	vivacity,	<i>veevacectay</i>

## X

This letter has three sounds, viz. *gz*, *ks*, and *z*.

In the first syllable of a word *x* followed by a vowel, is sounded *gz* ; as,

<i>exemple,</i>	example,	<i>egzanple.</i>
<i>exister,</i>	to exist,	<i>egzeestay.</i>

followed by a consonant, it is sounded *ks* ; as,

<i>excès,</i>	excess,	<i>ayksaye.</i>
<i>exposer,</i>	to expose,	<i>ayksposay.</i>

*x* is also sounded *ks* in

<i>sex, axe,</i>	sex, axle,	<i>sayks, aks.</i>
<i>fluxion,</i>	fluxion,	<i>flukseon.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>axiome,</i>	axiom,	<i>akseeom.</i>
<i>stix, phœnix,</i>	stix, phœnix,	<i>steeks, fayneeks.</i>
<i>index, pollux,</i>	index, pollux,	<i>inedeks, polluks.</i>
<i>alexandre,</i>	alexander,	<i>alayksandr.</i>

*x* has the sound of *s* aspirate in

<i>six, dix,</i>	six, ten,	<i>sees, dees.</i>
<i>dix sept,</i>	seventeen,	<i>deessayt.</i>
<i>soixante,</i>	sixty,	<i>soassunt.</i>

*x* final generally has no sound ; it only renders the syllable long ; as,

<i>beaux,</i>	fine,	<i>bô.</i>
<i>lieux,</i>	places,	<i>leeugh.</i>

except when it ends a word which is pronounced at the same breath with another word beginning with a vowel, then it is sounded *z* ; as,

<i>six amis,</i>	six friends,	<i>see-z-amee.</i>
<i>beaux yeux,</i>	fine eyes,	<i>bô-z-yeugh.</i> (general rule.)

and when it is followed by *ième*, or *ièment* ; as,

<i>deuxième,</i>	second,	<i>dughziem.</i>
<i>sixième,</i>	sixthly,	<i>seezemman.</i>

## Z

*z* has the same sound in french as in english ; as.

<i>zèle,</i>	zeal,	<i>zayl.</i>
--------------	-------	--------------

*z* final has no sound ; but renders the syllable long.

<i>vous avez,</i>	you have,	<i>too-z-avaye.</i>
<i>vous parlez,</i>	you speak,	<i>too parlaye.</i>

except in *chez*, at one's house, followed by a vowel ; as,

<i>chez elle,</i>	at her house,	<i>shay-z-ell.</i>
-------------------	---------------	--------------------



## PRONUNCIATION OF SYLLABLES.

BY PROSODY is meant the manner of pronouncing each syllable regularly, *i. e.* according to what each syllable taken separately requires.

It is certain that some diversity must be observed in the pronunciation of syllables, otherwise the language would be perfect monotony; there are then divers inflexions of the voice, some which raise the tone, some which lower it, and this is what grammarians call *prosodical accent*.\*

## GENERAL RULES.

I. The penultima vowel of all words ending with *e* mute, is long; as, *pensée*, thought; *armée*, army; *je tie*, I tie; *je me fie*, I trust myself; *joie*, joy; *j'envoie*, I send; *je loue*, I praise; *il joue*, he plays; *je nue*, I shadow; *la rue*, the street; *de la morue*, cod-fish, &c. But if, in these words, the *e* mute were changed into a masculine *é*, then the penultima would become short; as *tier*, to tie; *louer*, to praise; *nier*, to shadow.

II. When a vowel ends a syllable, and is followed by another vowel, which is not *e* mute, that syllable is short; as *créé*, created; *féal*, trusty; *action*, action; *hâir*, to hate; *doté*, endowed; *tuer*, to kill.

III. Every syllable ending with any consonant but *s*, *x*, or *z*, is short; as, *sac*, sack; *lac*, lake; *sél*, salt; *éventail*, fan; *faim*, hunger; *parfum*, perfume; *sén*, bosom; *soin*, care; *garçon*, boy; *câp*, cape; *nectar*; *pôt*, pot; *sört*, fate, &c.

IV. Every syllable ending with *s*, *x*, or *z*, is long; *des sacs*, sacks; *des sels*, salts; *des pôts*, pots; *mon fils*, my son; *la paix*, peace; *la voix*, the voice; *le nez*, the nose.

V. Between two vowels, the last of which is mute, the letter *s* or *x* lengthens the penultima; as, *extase*, extasy; *diocèse*, diocese; *il pèse*, he weighs; *betise*, foolishness; *franchise*, candour; *rose*, rose; *épouse*, spouse; *ruse*, cunning; *recluse*, recluse; *aïse*, glad; *thèse*, thesis; *vase*, vessel.

And it then generally happens, that the antepenultima becomes short; as *il s'extâsie*, he falls into extasy; *pésée*, weighing; *épousée*, married, &c. for the french prosody requires that the penultima be strong, if the final is mute, and that the penultima be weak, if the voice rests upon the final.

VI. An *s* or an *x* sounded, preceded by a vowel, and followed by a consonant, always renders the syllable short; as, *jâspe*, jasper; *masque*, mask; *âstre*, star; *burlésque*, burlesque; *funeste*, fatal; *piste*, track; *risque*, risk; *pöste*, post; *brûsque*, abrupt; *jüste*, just; *bârbe*, beard; *bârque*, bark; *berceau*, cradle; *infirme*, infirm.

But when there are two *rr*, if the two together form only an indivisible sound, the syllable is always long; as, *arrêt*, arrest; *bârre*, bar; *bisârre*, whimsical; *tonnêrre*, thunder; *éclôrre*, to be hatching, &c.

VII. When the nasal vowels *am*, *an*, *em*, *en*, *im*, *in*, *aim*, *ain*, *ein*, *om*, *on*, *um*, *un*, are followed by a consonant, which is neither *m* nor *n*, and which begins another syllable, they are long; as, *ainsi*, thus; *jâmbe*, leg; *jâmbon*, ham; *crâinte*, fear; *trêm-bler*, to tremble; *peindre*, to paint; *joindre*, to join; *tômbre*, to fall; *humble*, humble, &c.

If *m* or *n* be doubled, it renders the syllable short to which the first of the doubled consonant belongs; as, *hônme*, man; *fêmme*, woman; *épigrâmmme*, epigram; *qu'il prenne*, let him take; *consônne*, consonant; *persônne*, person, nobody.

## PARTICULAR RULES.

## A

*A*, the first letter of the alphabet, is long; as, *un petit â*, a little *a*; *il ne sait ni â ni b*, he knows neither *a* nor *b*.

*À*, the preposition, is short; as, *je suis à Paris*, I am at Paris; *j'écris à Rome*, I write to Rome; as is also *a* in the third person singular of the verb *avoir*, to have; *il â de beaux livres*, he has fine books; *il â été*, he has been; *il â parlé*, he has spoken.

At the beginning of a word *a* is long, in *acre*, sour; *âge*, age; *âme*, soul; *âne*, ass; *âpre*, harsh; *ârrhes*, earnest money; *âs*, ace, &c.

\* This mark (˘) is intended to show that the syllable is long; this other (˘) that it is short; and the doubtful syllables are marked with a grave accent, thus (˘).

## OF SYLLABLES.

These instances excepted, *a* is short, whether it makes a syllable of itself; as in *apôtre*, apostle; or is followed by a double consonant, as in *apprendre*, to learn; or by two consonants which are different, as in *altéré*, altered; *argument*, argument.

At the end of a word *a* is very short in the preterite and future tenses of verbs; as, *il aimâ*, he loved; *il chantâ*, he sung; *il aimerâ*, he will love; *il chanterâ*, he will sing. In the articles *là*, the; *mâ*, my; *tâ*, thy; *sâ*, his. In the adverbs *çà*, here; *là*, there; *déjà*, already. A little more stress is laid upon the *a*, in substantives borrowed from foreign languages; as, *sofâ*, sofa; *duplicatâ*, duplicate, &c.

ABE, always short; as, *arâbe*, arabian; except *astrolâbe*, astrolabe; *crâbe*, crab.

ABLE, short in all adjectives; as, *aimâble*, amiable; *capâble*, capable, &c. long in most substantives; as, *câble*, cable; *fâble*, fable; *sâble*, sand; and in these verbs, *on m'ac-câble*, I am overwhelmed; *je m'ensâble*, I stick in the sand; *il hâble*, he brags.

ABRE, always long; as, *sâbre*, sabre; *il se câbre*, he rears; also in the masculine termination; *se câbrer*, to rear; *delâbré*, in tatters.

AC, always short; as *sâc*, sack; *lâc*, lake; *trictâc*, back-gammon. See III. Gen. Rule.

ACE, long, in *grâce*, favor; *espâce*, space; *lâcer*, to lace; *délâcer*, to unlace.

These words excepted; *ace* is short; as, *glâce*, ice, looking-glass; *préfâce*, preface.

ACHE, long, in *lâche*, coward; *tâche*, task; *relâche*, relaxation; *je mâche*, I chew.† As also in the masculine terminations *mâcher*, to chew; *relâcher*, to relax, &c.

In all other instances *ACHE* is short; as, *tâche*, a spot; *moustâche*, whisker; *vâche*, cow; *il se câche*, he conceals himself; *il arrâche*, he pulls out, &c.

ACLE, long, in *il râcle*, he scrapes; *il débâcle*, the ice is breaking; these two words excepted, *ACLE* is doubtful; as, *orâcle*, oracle; *mirâcle*, miracle; *obstacle*, obstacle.

ACRE, long, in *âcre*, tart; but short in all other words; as, *diâcre*, deacon; *fiâcre*, hackney-coach; *âcre*, an acre; *sâcre du roi*, the king's coronation.

ADE, always short, as, *sérénâde*, serenade; *cascâde*, cascade; *fâde*, tasteless; *il persûde*, he persuades; *il s'évâde*, he makes his escape.

ADRE, short in *lâdre*, leprous; but long in *câdre*, frame; *escâdre*, squadron; even when the word ends with *e* mascul. as, *madré*, speckled; *encâdrer*, to frame.

APE, APHE, always short; as, *carâpe*, decanter; *épitâphe*, epitaph; *agrâffe*, clasp.

AFRE, AFFRE, long, in *âfre*, fright; *bâfre*, gluttony; short in all other instances; as, *balâfre*, gash; *sâfre*, ravenous.

AFLE, long; as, *râfle*, a royal pair at dice; *j'érâfle*, I scratch; and the same quantity is preserved when *e* final is short; as, *râfler*, to sweep away; *érâfler*, to scratch slightly.

AGE, long in the word *âge*, age; but so short in all the rest that we dwell a little upon the penultima; *partâge*, division; *avantâge*, advantage, &c.

AGNE, always short, except in the verb *gâgner*, to gain; *je gâgne*, I gain.

AGUE, always short, *bâgue*, ring; *dâgue*, dagger; *vâgue*, wave, vague.

AI, a false diphthong, which produces only a simple sound. When it has the sound of *e* long, it is doubtful; as, *vrâi*, true; *essâi*, essay; but it is short when the sound approaches to that of *é* short; as *j'ai*, I have; *je chantâi*, I sang.

AIE, always long; as, *hâie*, hedge; *plâie*, wound; *vrâie*, true. See I. Gen. Rule.

AYE, short; as, *vous âyez*, you may have; *vous pâyez*, you pay; *vous bégâyez*, you stammer. See II. General Rule.

The reason of this difference between *AIE* and *AYE* is, that *AIE* makes only one syllable, and that *Y*, which is equivalent to *î*, dividing the word into two syllables, these words are pronounced as if they were spelt *ai-iez*, *pai-iez*, *bégai-iez*, the first syllable of which is pronounced like *é* short. (See *ai*, compound vowel.)

AIGNE, always short; as, *chatâigne*, chestnut; *je dâigne*, I disdain; *il se bâigne*, he is bathing; *on le sâigne*, they are bleeding him.

AIGRE, always short; as, *âigre*, tart; *mâigre*, lean; *vinâigre*, vinegar, &c.

AIL. General Rule. When a word ends with *l* liquid, the syllable is short; as, *éventâil*, fan; *gouvernâil*, rudder; the *a* being the only vowel which is heard in the penultima, and the *i* serving only to soften the sound of the following consonant. This is also the case in the three following paragraphs.

† Formerly written *lasche*, *tasche*, with a mute *s*, to show that they are long. This is now supplied by a circumflex accent, and it should not be omitted over these words, as the pronunciation of a word sometimes alters its meaning.



## OF SYLLABLES.

**AILLE**, short in *medaille*, medal; and in the following verbs; *je détaille*, I retail; *j'émaille*, I enamel; *je travaille*, I work; but it is long in all other words; as, *je raille*, I jeer; *il bâille*, he yawns; *il braille*, he brawls; *il rimaille*, he makes poor verses.

**AILLET**, **AILLIR**, short; as, *mâillet*, mallet; *pâillet*, pale coloured; *jâillir*, to spout; *assâillir*, to assault.

**AILLON**, short in *médâillon*, medallion; *batâillon*, battalion; *nous émâillons*, we enamel; *détâillons*, let us detail; *travâillons*, let us work. These words excepted, **AILLON** is long; as, *hâillon*, tattered clothes; *bâillon*, gag; *nous tâillons*, we cut, &c.

**AIM**, **AIN**. See III. and VII. General Rules.

**AIME**. This termination is found only in the verb *âimer*, to love; which is short as, *j'âime*, I love; *tu âimes*, thou lovest, &c.

**AINE**, long, in *hâine*, hatred; *chaîne*, chain; *gâine*, sheath; *je trîne*, I draw, and their derivatives. These instances excepted, **AINE** is short; as, *capitâine*, captain; *fontâine*, fountain; *semâine*, week; *lâine*, wool.

**AIR**, **AIRE**. The first is doubtful in the singular; as, *l'air*, the air; *chair*, flesh; *éclair*, lightning, &c. The second is long; as, *une pâire*, a pair; *la chaire*, the pulpit.

**AIS**, **AIX**, **AISE**, **AISSE**, all long; as, *palâis*, palace; *j'avâis*, I had; *j'étais*, I was; *un françois*, a frenchman; *paix*, peace; *fournâise*, furnace; *câisse*, chest.

**AIT**, **AITE**, both short; as, *lait*, milk; *attrait*, charm; *retrait*, retreat, &c. except *il plaît*, he pleases; *il naît*, it springs; *il repâit*, he feeds; *le faîte*, the summit.

**AITRE**, always long; *traître*, traitor; *maître*, master; and other terminations of the same sound, though spelt differently; as, *paraître*, or *parâître*, to appear, &c.

**ALE**, **ALLE**, always short; *cigâle*, cicada; *scandâle*, scandal; *une mâlle*, a trunk; *une bâlle*, a ball; except *hâle*, sunburning; *pâle*, pale; *un mâle*, a male; *un râle*, a rail; and the derivatives of these words, though the final syllable be masculine; as, *halé*, parched by the sun; *râler*, to rattle; *pâlir*, to grow pale; *pâleur*, paleness.

**AM**, **AN**. See III. and VII. General Rules.

**AME**, always short; *dâme*, lady; *râme*, oar, ream, &c. except in the following words; *âme*, soul; *infâme*, infamous; *blâme*, blame; *il se pâme*, he swoons; *un brâme*, a bra-min; and in all the preterite tenses of verbs; as, *nous aimâmes*, we loved; *nous chantâmes*, we sang; *nous parlâmes*, we spoke; *nous jouâmes*, we played, &c.

**ANNE**, always short; as, *cabâne*, cottage; *orgâne*, organ, &c. except *âne*, ass; *crâne*, skull; *les mânes*, the manes; *de la manne*, manna; *une manne*, a basket.

**ANT**. See III. General Rule. **N. B.** In the word *comptant* there is a difference; when a participle, it is long; as, *je me suis trompé en comptant l'argent*, I made a mistake in counting the money; and it is short when used as a substantive or adverb; as, *il a du comptant*, he has ready money; *payer comptant*, to pay in ready money.

**AP**, always short; as, *câp*, cape. See III. General Rule.

**APE**, **APPE**, always short; *pâpe*, pope; *trâpe*, trap; *grâpe*, a bunch; *on frappe*, somebody knocks; except *râpe*, a rasp; and *râper*, to rasp, in which it is long.

**APRE**; *câpre*, caper; *âpre*, tart; the only two words of this termination, are long.

**AQUE**, always short, except *pâques*, easter; and *Jâques*, James.

**AR**, always short; as, *câr*, for; *nectâr*, nectar. See III. General Rule.

**ARBE**. General Rule. Every syllable which finishes with *r*, and is followed by another syllable beginning with a consonant, is short; as, *barbe*, beard; *barque*, bark; *berceau*, cradle; *infirme*, infirm; *ordre*, order, &c.

**ARE**, long; as, *barbare*, barbarous; *je préparé*, I prepare; but when the last syllable is not mute, **ARE** is short; as, *égaré*, strayed; *préparant*, preparing; *barbarie*, barbary.

**ARRE**. General Rule. Whatever vowel precedes two *rr*, if the two together form only one sound, the syllable is long; as, *arrêt*, arrest; *barre*, bar; *tonnerre*, thunder, &c.

**ARI**, **ARIE**, always short; as, *mâri*, husband; *pâri*, wager; *Mârie*, Mary; *barbarie*, barbary; except, *hourvâri*, uproar; *mârri*, sorry; *équârri*, squared.

**AS**, commonly long, as there are few words terminated in this manner in which the *a* is not sounded very open, whether the *s* be pronounced; as in *Pallas*, *Pallas*; *âs*, ace; or whether it be mute, as in *tâs*, heap; *tu âs*, thou hast; *tu aimâs*, thou lovedst.

**ASE**, always long; as, *bâse*, basis; *Pegâse*, Pegasus; *emphâse*, emphasis; *extâse*, extasy; *râser*, to shave; *jâser*, to chatter. See V. General Rule.

**ASPE**, General Rule. An *s* sounded, preceded by a vowel, and followed by a consonant, always renders the syllable short; as, *mâsque*, mask. See VI. General Rule.

## OF SYLLABLES.

ASSE, short; except in the substantives *basse*, base; *casse*, cassia; *classe*, class; *échasses*, stilts; *passe*, pass; *nasse*, bow-net; *tasse*, cup; *chasse*, shrine; *masse*, mass; in the feminine adjectives *basse*, low, base; *grasse*, fat; *lasse*, weary; and in the following verbs; *il amasse*, he collects; *il enchasse*, he inches; *il casse*, he breaks; *il passe*, he passes; *il compasse*, he measures; with their compounds.

All these words retain their quantity, even when the termination, instead of being mute, is masculine; as, *châssis*, sash; *casser*, to break; *passer*, to pass.

Add to these the first and second persons singular, and the third person plural of verbs, terminated in *asse*, *asses*, *assent*, in the subjunctive; as, *j'aimasse*, I might love; *tu aimasses*, thou mightest love; *ils aimassent*, they might love.

AT, long in the substantives *bât*, a pack-saddle; *mât*, mast; *appât*, bait; *degât*, havoc; and in the third person singular of the perfect of the subjunctive *il aimât*, he might love; *il chantât*, he might sing; *il parlât*, he might speak, &c.\*

In all other substantives, in adjectives, and in the present of the indicative, AT is short; as, *avocat*, counsellor; *éclât*, splendour; *plât*, flat, a dish; *on se bät*, people fight.

ATE, always short, except in *hâte*, haste; *pâte*, dough; *il gâte*, he spoils; *il mâte*, he masts; *il démâte*, he dismasts; and in the second person plural of the preterite tenses of verbs, terminated in *ates*; as, *vous aimâtes*, you loved; *vous parlâtes*, you spoke.

ATRE, short in *quâtre*, four; and in *bâtre*, to beat, with its derivatives, *abâtre*, to pull down; *combâtre*, to fight, &c.

These instances excepted, ATRE is always long; as, *idolâtre*, idolatrous; *théâtre*, theatre; *opiniâtre*, obstinate; *emplâtre*, plaster, &c.

AU, compound vowel. When this vowel forms a syllable which is followed by a mute termination, it is long; as, *auge*, trough; *autre*, other; *äune*, ell; *päume*, tennis.

It is also long when in the last syllable of a word it is followed by a consonant; as, *haut*, high; *chaud*, hot; *chäux*, lime; *faux*, false; except *Päul*, Paul.

But AU is doubtful when it precedes a masculine syllable; as, *aubade*, serenade; *audace*, audacity; *automne*, autumn; *augmenter*, to increase; *auteur*, author; and when it is final; as, *joyäu*, jewel; *coteäü*, hillock; *couteäü*, knife.

AVE, short in *räve*, radish; *cäve*, cellar; *on päve*, they are paving; but oftener long; as, *enträve*, shackles; *gräve*, grave, serious.

But when *v* instead of being followed by *e* mute, is followed by a masculine syllable, the preceding syllable is short; as, *grävier*, gravel; *aggräver*, to aggravate.

TRAVE preceding its substantive is short; as, *un bräve homme*, a well-behaved man; but long when it comes after it; as, *un homme bräve*, a brave or courageous man.

AVRE, always long; as, *hävre*, harbour; *cadävre*, corpse.

AX, AXE, always short; as, *Ajäx*, Ajax; *thoräx*, thorax; *boräx*, borax; *äxe*, axle; *täxe*, tax; *paralläxe*, parallax.

## E

The French distinguish three sorts of *e*, which express different sounds; the difference of which is perceived in *fermeté*, firmness; *honnêteté*, honesty.

The first *e* in each of these words, is long, the second mute, and the third short.

*E* mute is also called feminine; the others are called masculine.

There is no accent over *e* mute, the short requires an accute accent, and the long a grave, or a circumflex, but it is found sometimes without any of these signs, as appears in the first syllable of the word *fermeté*.

With respect to *e* mute, it is sufficient to know that it never begins a word, and that it is seldom found in several consecutive syllables; for if it is found in some compound words, such as *revenir*, to return; *redevenir*, to become again; *entretenir*, to entertain; at least this never happens at the end of a word; thus the *e* which is mute or feminine in the penultima of the infinitive of verbs; as, *appeler*, to call; *päser*, to weigh; *mener*, to lead; *devoir*, to owe; *concevoir*, to conceive, becomes masculine, or is changed into the diphthong *oi*, in the tenses which end with *e* mute; *j'appèle*, I call; *il pèse*, he weighs; *il mène*, he leads; *ils doivent*, they owe; *ils conçoivent*, &c.

For the same reason, though we make *e* mute in *chapelain*, chaplain; *chandelier*, candlestick; *celui-ci*, this; *j'aime*, I love; *je chante*, I sing; we sound it in *chapelle*, chapel; *chandëlle*, candle; *cëlle*, that; *aimë-je*, do I love? *chantë-je*, do I sing?

For such is the genius of the french language, that the penultima be strong, if the final is mute, and that the penultima be weak, if the voice rests upon the final.

\* Formerly spelt with an *s* mute, to show that they are long; as, *bast*, *mast*, *il aimast*, *vous aimastes*, &c. This is now supplied by a circumflex accent, *bât*, *mât*, &c.

## OF SYLLABLES.

EBLE, EBRE, EC, ECE, always short; as, *hëble*, wallwort; *funëbre*, mournful; *béc*, bill; *nëce*, niece.

ECHE, long and very open in *bëche*, spade; *lëche*, thin slice; *grëche*, noisy; *pëche*, fishing; *pëche*, peach; *il empêche*, he prevents; *il dépêche*, he dispatches; *il prêche*, he preaches. Short in *calëche*, calash; *flëche*, arrow; *mëche*, match; *crëche*, crib; *sëche*, dry, the cuttle-fish; *brëche*, breach; *on pëche*, people sin.

ECLE, ECT, ECTE, DRE, EDE, EDER, all short; as, *siëcle*, age; *respëct*, respect; *insëcte*, insect; *cëdre*, cedar; *remëde*, remedy; *cëder*, to yield; *possëder*, to possess, &c.

E'E. General Rule. The penultima vowel of all words ending with *e* mute, is long; as, *pensëe*, thought; *armëe*, army; *je lïe*, I tie. See I. General Rule.

E'E'. General Rule. When a vowel ends a syllable, and is followed by another vowel which is not *e* mute, that syllable is short; as, *crëé*, created; *fëal*, trusty; *action*, action; *hüir*, to hate; *tüer*, to kill, &c. See II. General Rule.

EF, EFFE; the first is short; as, *chëf*, chief; *brëf*, brief, short. The second long; as, *grëffe*, graft, the rolls; *je grëffe*, I graft.

EFFLE, long, in *nëfle*, medlar; short in *trëfle*, trefoil, club.

EGE, EGLE. The first long; as, *sacrilege*, sacrilegious; *collëge*, college; *siëge*, seat, siege. The other short; as, *rëgle*, rule; *sëigle*, rye, &c.

EGNE, EIGNE. The first is doubtful; as, *rëgne*, reign; *duëgne*, duenna. The other is short; as, *pëigne*, comb; *ensëigne*, sign; *qu'il fëigne*, let him pretend.

EGRE, EGUE, short; as, *nëgre*, negro; *intëgre*, upright; *bëgue*, a stammerer; *collëgue*, colleague; *il allëgue*, he alleges, &c.

EIL, EILLE, short; as, *solëil*, sun; *sommëil*, sleep; *abëille*, bee; *boutëille*, bottle; the only exceptions are, *viëille*, old woman; *viëillard*, old man; *viëillesse*, old age.

EIN, EINT. See III. and VII. General Rules.

EINE, short; as, *vëine*, vein; *pëine*, pain; the only exception is *rëine*, queen.

EINTE, always long; as, *attëinte*, stroke; *fëinte*, feint.

EL, always short; as, *sël*, salt; *cruël*, cruel, &c. See III. General Rule.

ELE, ELLE, long in *zële*, zeal; *poële*, frying pan; *frële*, frail; *pële mële*, confusedly; *grële*, hail; *il se fële*, it cracks; *la brëbis bële*, the sheep bleats.

These instances excepted, ELE, ELLE, is always short; as, *modële*, model; *fïdële*, faithful; *rebëlle*, rebellious; *mortëlle*, mortal, &c.

EM, EN. See III. and VII. General Rules; and sound the final consonant in *itëm*, item; *Bëthlëëm*, Bethlehem; *amën*, amen; *himën*, hymen; *examën*, examination.

EME, doubtful in *crëme*, cream; short in *je sëme*, I sow; *il sëme*, he sows; and long in all other words; as, *baptëme*, baptism; *diadëme*, diadem; *mëme*, even, &c.

ENE, long in *chëne*, oak; *cëne*, the lord's supper; *sëne*, scene; *gëne*, rack; *alëne*, awl; *rëne*, rein; *frëne*, ash-tree; *arëne*, area; *pëne*, the bolt of a lock; and in the proper names, *Athënes*, Athens; *Diogënes*, Diogenes; *Mëcëne*, Mæcenæ, &c. but short in *phënomëne*, phenomenon; *ëbëne*, ebony; *ëtrenne*, new year's gift; *qu'il prënne*, let him take; *qu'il viënne*, let him come; and in all words in which the consonant is doubled.

EPE, EPRE, always long; as, *guëpe*, wasp; *crëpe*, crape; *vëpres*, vespers; except *lëpre*, leprosy.

EPTE, EPTRE, ECTRE, always short; as, *prëcëpte*, precept; *il accëpte*, he accepts; *sëcëtre* sceptre; *spëctre*, spectre.

EQUE, ECQUE, always short; as, *grëcque*, greek; *bibliothëque*, library; *obsëaues*, funeral, &c. except *ëvëque*, bishop; *archevëque*, archbishop.

ER is short in *Jupitër*, Jupiter; *Lucifër*, Lucifer; *ëthër*, æther; *chër*, dear; *cancër*, cancer; *patër*, the lord's prayer; *mugistër*, a country schoolmaster; *fratër*, a surgeon's apprentice; and long in *fër*, iron; *enfër*, hell; *lëgër*, light; *mër*, sea; *amër*, bitter; *hivër*, winter; but it is doubtful in the infinitive of verbs when the *r* is sounded with the following vowel, as is always the case in repeating verses.

ERBE, ERCE, ERSE, ERCHE, ERCLE, ERDE, ERDRE, all short. See the General Rule under ARBE.

ERD, ERT, doubtful: as, *concërt*, concert; *ouvërt*, open; *dësërt*, desert, wilderness; *il përd*, he loses; *le vërd*, green, &c.



## OF SYLLABLES.

ERE, doubtful; as, *chimère*, chimera; *père*, father; *sincère*, sincere; *il espère*, he hopes, &c. but long in the third person plural of the perfect tense of verbs; as, *ils allèrent*, they went; *ils parlèrent*, they spoke; *ils chantèrent*, they sang, &c.

ERGE, ERGUE, ERLE, ERME, ERNE, ERPE, all short. See ARBE, General Rule.

ERR, always long when agreeably to the general rule, the two *rr* form only one indivisible sound; as in *guerre*, war; *tonnerre*, thunder; *nous verrons*, we shall see; short when the two *rr* are pronounced separately; as, *erreur*, error; *terreur*, terror, &c.

ERTE, ERTRE, ERVE, all short. See ARBE. General Rule.

ESSE, long in *confesse*, confession; *presse*, press; *comprresse*, compress; *expresse*, express; *cisse*, ceasing; *on s'empresse*, they are eager; *il professe*, he professes.

These instances excepted, ESSE is short; as, *tendresse*, tenderness; *parresse*, laziness; *carresse*, caress; *jeunesse*, youth, &c.

ESQUE, ESTE, ESTRE. See VI. General Rule.

ET, long in *arrêt*, a decree; *benêt*, a simpleton; *forêt*, forest; *genêt*, broom; *prêt*, ready; *aprêt*, preparation; *acquêt*, acquisition; *intérêt*, interest; *il est*, he is.\*

These instances excepted, ET is short; as, *cadêt*, younger, junior; *bidêt*, pony; *êt*, and; *sujêt*, subject; *brochêt*, pike, &c.

ETE, long in *bête*, beast; *fête*, feast; *arbalète*, a cross-bow; *boîte*, box; *tempête*, tempest; *quête*, quest; *conquête*, conquest; *enquête*, inquest; *requête*, request, petition; *arrête*, fish-bone; *crête*, crest, a cockcomb; *tête*, head; in all other instances, ETE is short; and the *t* is doubled; as, *tablette*, shelf, memorandum-book; *houlette*, crook; unless the etymology forbids doubling it, as, *prophète*, prophet; *poète*, poet.

*Honnête* is short when placed before a noun; as, *un honnête homme*, an honest man; it is long when placed after; as, *un homme honnête*, a civil man.

*Vous êtes*, the second person plural of the present tense of *être*, is either long or short, as the poet chooses.

ETRE, long in *être*, a being, to be; *salpêtre*, saltpetre; *ancêtre*, ancestor; *fenêtre*, window; *pêtre*, priest; *champêtre*, rural; *hêtre*, beech; *guêtres*, spatterdashes.

In all other instances ETRE is short, and *t* is doubled, unless the etymology prevents it; as, *diamètre*, diameter; *il pénètre*, he penetrates; *lettre*, letter; *mettre*, to put.

EU, compound vowel, short in the singular, *fêu*, fire; *bleu*, blue; *jêu*, game, sport; *vêu*, vow; *nevêu*, nephew, &c.

EVE, long in *trêve*, truce; *la grève*, the sea-shore; *il rêve*, he dreams; and the penultima of the verb *rêver*, remains long in all its tenses; as, *rêver*, to dream; *je rêvai*, I dreamt; but EVE is doubtful in *fève*, bean; *brève*, brief, short; *il achève*, he finishes; *il crève*, it bursts; *il se lève*, he rises; and the penultima of these verbs is mute, if it be followed by a masculine syllable; as, *achever*, to finish; *il se levait*, he was rising.

EUF, short; as, *veuf*, widower; *neuf*, new; *un œuf*, an egg; *un bœuf*, an ox.

N. B. The *f* is pronounced in all these words, in the singular, but not in the plural, except in *veufs*, widowers.

EUIL, short; as, *seuil*, threshold; *fautéuil*, arm-chair, &c. See III. General Rule.

EULE, long in *meule*, grinding-stone, mill-stone. This excepted, EULE is short; as, *séule*, single, alone; *gueule*, the name given to the mouth of beasts and fishes.

EUNE, long in *jeûne*, fasting; and short in *jeûne*, young.

EUR, EURE. The first is short in the singular; *odœur*, odour; *pœur*, fear; *majœur*, of age; and long in the plural *odœurs*, odours; but the second is doubtful, *i. e.*

If EURE ends a word pronounced at the same breath with another word, it is short; as, *la majeure partie*, the major part; *une heure entière*, a whole hour. If there is no word after it, to be pronounced at the same breath with it, it is long; as, *cette fille est majeure*, that girl is of age; *j'attends depuis une heure*, I have been waiting for an hour.

EVRE, doubtful; *lèvre*, lip; *chèvre*, goat; *lièvre*, hare; *orfèvre*, gold or silver-smith.

EUX, EUSE, long; *deux*, two; *précieus*, *précieuse*, precious; *creuser*, to dig, &c.

EX, always short; as, *exemple*, example; *extirper*, to extirpate; *sêxe*, sex, &c.

\* All these words, as well as those in the two following paragraphs, were formerly spelt with a mute *s*, which is now suppressed, and supplied by a circumflex, except in *est*, the third person singular of the present tense of *être*, in which *s* is still retained.

## OF SYLLABLES.

## I

An observation which may have already been made, but which will appear more obvious by reading the rules on the three remaining vowels, is, that the number of short syllables is much greater than of long; therefore, in order to abbreviate this treatise, those terminations will be omitted which are short without exception.

IDRE, long in *hidre*, written *hydre*, for the sake of the etymology, *hydra*; *cîdre*, *cider*.

IE, diphthong, doubtful; as, *miel*, honey; *fiel*, gall; *fier*, proud; *amitié*, friendship; *saïrière*, quarry; *poussière*, dust; *mièn*, mine; *fièn*, thine; *dièn*, god.

IE, dissyllable, long; as, *vie*, life; *saïsïe*, seizure; *il prie*, he begs. See I. Gen. Rule.

IENT, when a dissyllable, the two syllables are short; as, *lien*, tie; *Paristen*, Parisian; when a diphthong, the syllable is doubtful; as, *le mièn*, mine; *rien*, nothing, &c.

IGE, doubtful; *tige*, stalk; *prodige*, prodigy; *litige*, litigation; *vestige*, footstep; *je m'oblige*, I bind myself; *il s'afflige*, he afflicts himself.

But IGE is short in the tenses of these verbs which do not end with *e* mute, as *s'obliger*, to bind one's self; *affligé*, afflicted.

ILE, long in *île*, island; *huile*, oil; *stîle*, stile; *tuîle*, tile; *presqu'île*, peninsula.

IM, IN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

IME, long in *abîme*, abyss; *dîme*, tythe; and in the first person plural of the preterite tense of verbs; as, *nous vîmes*, we saw; *nous répondîmes*, we answered.

ION, short; as, *action*, action; *passion*, passion. See II. General Rule.

IRE, doubtful, *empire*, empire; *écrire*, to write; *il soupire*, he sighs; long in the third person plural of the perfect tense of verbs; *ils punirent*, they punished; *ils firent*, short before a masculine termination; as, *soupirer*, to sigh; *désirer*, to wish, &c.

ISE, long; as, *remise*, coach-house; *surprise*, surprise; *j'épuise*, I exhaust; *ils disent*, they say; *qu'ils lisent*, let them read.

ISSE, always short; as, *saucisse*, sausage; *réglisse*, liquorice; except in the perfect of the subjunctive; as, *je fissse*, I might do; *ils punissent*, they might punish, &c.

IT, long only in the third person singular of the perfect of the subjunctive; as, *il dit*, he might say; *il fit*, he might do; *il punit*, he might punish, &c.\*

ITE, long in *benite*, blessed; *gîte*, the seat of a hare; *vîte*, quick; and in the second person of the perfect of verbs; as, *vous fîtes*, you did; *vous vîtes*, you saw, &c.

ITRE, long in *épître*, epistle; *huître*, oyster; *regître*, register; but if *regître* is spelt with *s*, the *i* is short.

IVRE, long in the adjective feminine, formed from the masculine in *if*; as, *tardive*, late; *captive*, captive; *juive*, Jewess, &c.

IVRE, long in *vivres*, victuals; short in *vivre*, to live; *un livre*, a book, &c.

## O

O, always short when it begins a word; as, *occasion*, occasion; *odeur*, odour, &c. except *os*, bone; *oser*, to dare; *osier*, osier; *ôter*, to take away; *otage*, hostage; as likewise in *hôte*, host, landlord; though we say *hôtel*, hotel, and *hôtellerie*, an inn.

OBE, long in *globe*, globe; and *lobe*, lobe; in every other instance OBE is short; as, *robe*, robe, gown; *il dérobe*, he robs.

ODE, long in the verb *rôder*, to ramble; *je rôde*, I ramble; short in all other instances; as, *mode*, mode, fashion; *antipode*, antipodes; *période*, period, &c.

OGE, always short; as, *éloge*, praise; *horloge*, clock; *on déroge*, they derogate.

OI, diphthong, doubtful at the end of a word; as, *moi*, me; *roi*, king; *foi*, faith; *emploi*, employment; short at the beginning; as, *mousson*, harvest; *moitié*, half.

OIE, long; as, *joie*, joy; *soie*, silk; *qu'il voie*, let him see, &c.

OIENT, termination of the third person plural of the imperfect of verbs, is long; as, *ils avoient*, they had; *ils chantoient*, they sang, &c. whilst the third person singular of the same tense spelt OIT, is short; as, *il avoit*, he had; *il chantoit*, he sang, &c.

OIN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

OIR, OIRE, the first is doubtful; as, *espoir*, hope; *devoir*, duty, &c. the second long; as, *boire*, to drink; *gloire*, glory; *mémoire*, memory, &c.

\* Formerly written *fist*, *dist*, *punist*, with a mute *s*, now supplied by a circumflex.



## OF SYLLABLES.

ois, always long; whether it be a diphthong, as in *fôis*, time; *bourgeois*, burghess; *Danôis*, Dane; *Suédôis*, Swede, &c. or whether it be used instead of the compound vowel *ai*, as *j'étois*, or *j'étais*, I was; *un François*, or *un Français*, a Frenchman, &c.

oise, oisse, oitre, oivre, all long; as, *framboise*, raspberry; *paroisse*, parish; *cloître*, cloister; *poivre*, pepper, &c.

oit, short; as, *il boit*, he drinks; except *il croît*, he grows; and when it is used instead of the compound vowel *ai*; as, *il parait*, or *il paraît*, it appears.

ole, always short; as, *obole*, obole; *idôle*, idol; *boussôle*, sea compass; except *drôle*, facetious; *pôle*, pole; *geôle*, jail; *môle*, mole, pier; *rôle*, a list, the part of an actor; *contrôle*, control; *enjôler*, to wheedle, to decoy; *enrôler*, to enlist, and the tenses derived from these verbs; *il contrôle*, he controls; *ils enrôlent*, they enlist, &c.

om, on. See III. and VII. General Rules.

ome, one, long; as, *atôme*, atom; *axiôme*, axiom; *phantôme*, phantom; *trône*, throne, &c. except *Rôme*, Rome; and the words in which the consonant is doubled, which follow the general rule; as, *somme*, sum; *pomme*, apple; *consonne*, consonant.

ons, always long; as, *nous aimons*, we love; *fonds*, land, funds; *maisons*, houses; *ponts*, bridges, &c. See IV. General Rule.

or, always short; as, *castor*, beaver; *butor*, bittorn, a blockhead; *encor*, yet, still; *effort*, effort; but when *or* is followed by *s*, it is long; as, *hors*, out; *alors*, then; *le corps*, the body; *les trésors*, the treasures. See IV. General Rule.

ore, long; as, *aurôre*, aurora; *je déploré*, I lament; but observe that the penultima of the verbs which have only one *r*, and which is long in the present of the indicative; as, *je décôre*, I decorate; *il s'évapore*, it evaporates; becomes short if the termination is masculine; as, *décôrer*, to decorate; *évapôré*, evaporated, and that it remains long in tenses in which the *r* is doubled; as, *il s'évaporrâit*, it would evaporate, &c.

os, ose, long; as, *ôs*, bone; *prôpos*, discourse; *à prôpos*, timely; *dôse*, dose; *chôse*, thing; *il ôse*, he dares. See IV. and V. General Rules.

osse, long; as, *grösse*, big; *fösse*, pit; *il endosse*, he endorses; even when the final is masculine; as, *grösseur*, bigness; *grössesse*, pregnancy; *fössé*, ditch.

ot, long in *impôt*, tax; *tôt*, soon; *dépôt*, deposit; *entrepôt*, store-house; *supôt*, a subservient agent; *rôt*, roast meat; *prévôt*, provost, sheriff.\*

ote, long in *hôte*, host, landlord; *côte*, coast, rib; *maltôte*, exaction of taxes; *j'ôte*, I take away; likewise when the final is masculine; as, *côté*, side; *ôté*, taken away.†

otre. There are only three words of this termination, viz. *apôtre*, apostle; *notre*, our, ours; *votre*, your, yours.

As to the first it is always long; but the two others are doubtful; not that their measure is arbitrary, for it depends upon the place which they keep in the sentence.

*Notre* and *Votre* are short, when like an article they are prefixed to a substantive, *i. e.* when used for *our*, *your*; and long when they themselves are preceded by an article, and used as pronouns, *i. e.* when used for *ours*, *yours*; so we say, *je suis votre serviteur*, I am your servant; *et moi le vôtre*, I am yours. *C'est-là votre opinion, mais la nôtre est que*, &c. that is your opinion, but ours is that, &c. *Les nôtres sont excellents, mais les vôtres ne valent rien*, ours are excellent, but yours are good for nothing.

If the final be mute, as in this sentence, *je suis le vôtre*, after which my ear expects nothing more, then the voice wants a support, and not finding it in the final *re*, it takes it in the penultima *vo*; but in this other, *je suis votre serviteur*, where after *votre* I necessarily expect a substantive, between which and *votre* there can be no intermission, this substantive is destined to support my voice, and I pass quickly over *votre*.

Perhaps there is not in the french prosody a principle more extensive than this. A doubtful syllable which is made short in the body of the sentence, is made long if it comes at the end.

Sometimes even in conversation as well as in oratory, a long syllable becomes short, by the transposition of the word; for we say, *un homme honnête*, a civil man; *un homme brâce*, a brave or courageous man; but we say, *un honnête homme*, an honest man; *un brâce homme*, a well-behaved man; these instances have already been mentioned, (See E) but can so important rules be recalled too often?

\* Formerly spelt with an *s* mute, *impost*, *rost*, *suppost*, to show that the syllable is long, this is now supplied by a circumflex.

† Formerly spelt *hoste*, *coste*, and when a syllable was to be pronounced short, the consonant was doubled; as, *hotte*, dorser; *cotte*, petticoat, &c.

## OF SYLLABLES.

OUDE, OUE, long; as, *poûdre*, powder; *moûdre*, to grind;  *résoûdre*, to resolve, &c. *boûe*, dirt; *jouê*, cheek; *il loue*, he praises, &c. but when *ou* is followed by a masculine syllable, instead of a feminine termination, it is short; as, *poûdré*, powdered; *moûlu*, ground; *roûé*, broken on the wheel; *loûé*, praised, &c.

OUILLE, long in *roûille*, rust; *il déroûille*, he gets off the rust; *il embrouille*, he embroils; *il débrouille*, he unravels; but *OUIL* is short when it is followed by a masculine syllable; as, *broûillon*, bad paper or writing; *broûillé*, daubed; *roûillé*, rusty, &c.

OULE, long in *moûle*, mould, muscle; *la foule*, the crowd; *il foule*, he presses, he tramples; *il roûle*, he rolls; *il s'écroûle*, it falls down; *il se soûle*, he gets drunk.

OURE, OURRE, the first is doubtful; as, *bravoûre*, bravery; the second is long; as, *de la bourre*, cow hair; *qu'il couûre*, let him run; but if *ou*, instead of being followed by a mute, is followed by a masculine syllable, then *ou* is short, notwithstanding the general rule under *ARRE*; as, *colûrrier*, messenger; *bolûrrade*, thrust, &c. as likewise in the future and in the conditional tenses of verbs spelt with *rr*, in which the two *rr* are sounded separately; as, *je moûrrai*, I shall die; *je couûrrai*, I shall run; *je moûrrais*, &c.

OUSE, long; as, *épouse*, bride; *qu'elle couse*, let her sew. See V. General Rule.

OUSSE, long in *je pouisse*, I push; short in all other instances; as, *je touisse*, I cough; *coussin*, cushion; *poûssin*, young chick, &c.

OUT, long in *août*, august; *coût*, cost; *goût*, taste; *moût*, must, new wine.

OUTE, long in *absoute*, absolution; *joute*, tilt; *croûte*, crust; *voûte*, vault; *il coûto*, it costs; *il broute*, it grazes; *je goûte*, I taste; *j'ajoute*, I add; but *ou* is generally short, when the syllable which follows it is masculine; as, *ajouter*, to add; *coûté*, cost, &c.

OUTRE, long in *poutre*, beam; and in *coutre*, coulter, ploughshare; short in all other instances; as, *loûtre*, otter; *oûtre*, *en oûtre*, besides, &c.

## U

UCHE, long; as, *bûche*, a log of wood; *rûche*, hive; *on débûche*, they dislodge, &c. but *u* is short, if the final is masculine; as, *bûcher*, pile; *débûché*, dislodged, &c.

UE, diphthong, found only in the word *écûlle*, porringer, is short.

UE, dissyllable, always long; as, *tûe*, sight; *tortûe*, tortoise, &c. See I. Gen. Rule.

UGE, doubtful when the final is mute; as, *déluge*, deluge; *refûge*, refuge; short, when the final is masculine; as, *jûger*, to judge; *refûgier*, to take refuge, &c.

UI, diphthong, short before a masculine syllable; as, *hûisson*, bush; *cûisine*, kitchen; *rûisseau*, rivulet, &c.

UIE, long; as, *pluie*, rain; *truie*, sow; *il s'ennuie*, he grows tired. See I. Gen. Rule.

ULE, long in the verb *brûler*, to burn; *je brûle*, I burn; *tu brûles*, thou burnest, &c.

UM, UN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

UMES, long; as, *nous fûmes*, we were; *nous pûmes*, we could; *nous reçûmes*, we received; *nous aperçûmes*, we perceived, &c.

URE, always long; as, *augûre*, omen; *verdûre*, grass; *parjûre*, perjurer, perjury; *on assûre*, they assure; *ils fûrent*, they were; but *u* is short if the final is masculine; as, *augûrer*, to conjecture; *parjûrer*, to perjure; *assûré*, assured.

USE, always long; as, *mûse*, muse; *excûse*, excuse; *rûse*, cunning; see V. General Rule; we also say, *rûsé*, cunning; but in the other words in which the final is masculine, *u* is short; as *excûser*, to excuse; *refûsé*, refused, &c.

UCE, USSE, the first of these two terminations is confined to nouns, and always short; as, *pûce*, flea; *astûce*, craft, &c. the second is confined to verbs, and is always long; as, *je fûsse*, I were; *je pûsse*, I might; *ils fûssent*, they might be; except *Prûsse*, Prussia; and *Rûsse*, a Russian; substantives in which *USSE* is short.

UT, short in all substantives; as, *le bût*, the end; *un débût*, a beginning; except in *fût*, a cask; *un affût*, a gun carriage; short in the third person of the perfect tense of the indicative of verbs; as, *il fût*, he was; *il vécut*, he lived; long in the same person and tense in the subjunctive; as, *il fût*, he might be; *il vécut*, he might live, &c.

UTE, UTES, short in all substantives; *brûte*, brute, rough, &c. except *flûte*, flute; always long in verbs: *vous fûtes*, you were; *vous lûtes*, you read: *vous reçûtes*, you received; *vous aperçûtes*, you perceived, &c.

It is not perhaps unnecessary to inform such readers as might be discouraged by the multiplicity, or by the prolixity of these rules, that it is not requisite, in order to speak french with propriety, that they should be observed with a scrupulous nicety, which few persons, if any, do, but he certainly speaks best who deviates the least from them

## HOMONYMOUS, OR EQUIVOCAL WORDS,

THE MEANING OF WHICH IS DETERMINED BY THE ACCENT.

*Âcre*, tart.  
*Âlène*, awl.  
*Bâiller*, to gape.  
*Bât*, pack-saddle.  
*Bâteleur*, mountebank.  
*Beauté*, beauty.  
*Bête*, beast.  
*Boîte*, box.  
*Bond*, rebound.  
*Chair*, flesh.  
*Châsse*, shrine.  
*Clair*, clear.  
*Corps*, body.  
*Côte*, rib.  
*Côte*, coast.  
*Cuire*, to boil or roast.  
*Faite*, summit.  
*Fête*, feast.  
*Faix*, burthen.  
*Le foie*, the liver.  
*Une fois*, once.  
*Forêt*, forest.  
*Je goûte*, I taste.  
*Grave*, grave.  
*Hâle*, scorching of the sun.  
*Hôte*, host, landlord.  
*Jeune*, fast.  
*Lâcs*, noose.  
*L'âme*, the soul.  
*Lègs*, legacy.  
*Làs*, lily.  
*Maître*, master.  
*Mâle*, male.  
*Masse*, stock.  
*Mât*, mast.  
*Matin*, mastiff.  
*Mois*, month.  
*Mûr*, ripe.  
*Il n'est*, it is not.  
*Il naît*, it springs.  
*Pâte*, paste.  
*Paume*, palm.  
*Pêcheur*, fisherman.  
*Pêcher*, to fish.  
*Pêcher*, peach-tree.  
*Pene*, bolt.  
*Rôt*, roast meat.  
*Sàs*, sieve.  
*Scène*, scene.  
*La Scène*, the communion.  
*Sûr*, sure, sure, certain.  
*Tâche*, task.  
*Tâcher*, to endeavour.  
*Tête*, head.  
*Vêrs*, verse.  
*Vêrs*, towards.  
*Vêrre*, glass.

*Âcre*, acre.  
*Halène*, breath.  
*Bâiller*, to give.  
*Il bât*, he beats.  
*Bâtelier*, waterman.  
*Botté*, booted.  
*Bette*, beet.  
*Il boîte*, he goes lame.  
*Bôn*, good.  
*Chër*, dear.  
*Châsse*, hunting.  
*Clerc*, clerk.  
*Côr*, hunting horn.  
*Côr*, a corn.  
*Côte*, petticoat.  
*Cuir*, leather.  
*Faite*, done.  
*Fait*, done, fact.  
*La foi*, faith.  
*Un fouët*, a rod, a whip.  
*Forêt*, gimblet.  
*Une goutte*, a drop.  
*Je grave*, I engrave.  
*Hâlle*, market.  
*Hôte*, scuttle.  
*Jeune*, young.  
*Lâc*, lake.  
*Lâme*, blade.  
*Lâid*, ugly.  
*Lait*, milk.  
*Lit*, bed.  
*Mettre*, to put.  
*Mâlle*, mail, trunk.  
*Masse*, mass, mace.  
*Mâ*, my.  
*Matin*, morning.  
*Moi*, me.  
*Mûr*, wall.  
*Nêt*, clean.  
*Patte*, paw.  
*Pomme*, apple.  
*Pêcheur*, sinner.  
*Pêcher*, to sin.  
*Pêché*, sin.  
*Peîne*, punishment.  
*Rôt*, belch.  
*Sà*, her.  
*Sène*, wholesome.  
*La Sène*, the Seine.  
*Sûr*, sour.  
*Tâche*, stain.  
*Tâcher*, to stain.  
*Tête*, teat.  
*Vêr*, worm.  
*Vêrd*, green.

## INTRODUCTION

*An introduction*À LA  
to theLANGUE FRANÇAISE.  
5

language

french. 16\*

## PREMIÈRE PARTIE.

*First**part.*

LA LANGUE FRANÇAISE est composée des mêmes lettres ou  
*The language french<sup>16</sup> is composed of the same letters or*  
 caractères que la langue anglaise<sup>16</sup>, excepté le W; mais la pro-  
*characters as the english, except the w; but the pro-*  
 nonciation de ces lettres, n'est pas toujours la même dans ces  
*nunciation of these<sup>55</sup> is not always the same in these*  
 deux langues; elles se prononcent en français:  
*two or in both languages; they are pronounced in french:*

A,	B,	C,	D,	E,	F,	G,	H,	I,	J,	K,	L,	M,
ah,	bay,	say,	day,	ay,	f,	zhay,	ash,	ee,	zhee,	kah,	l,	m,
N,	O,	P,	Q,	R,	S,	T,	U,	V,	X,	Y,	Z.	
n,	o,	pay,	†,	ayr,	s,	tay,	†,	vay,	eeks,	eegrays,	zeyd.	

LA LANGUE FRANÇAISE<sup>16</sup>, ainsi que la langue anglaise<sup>16</sup>, est aussi  
*as well as is also*  
 composée de NEUF sortes de mots qu' on<sup>45</sup> appelle  
*composed of nine sorts of words which people call, or are called<sup>46</sup>*  
 communément les parties d'oraison; ces mots sont,  
*commonly the parts of speech; these words are,*

Le NOM,  
*the noun.*le PRONOM,  
*the pronoun.*la PRÉPOSITION,  
*the preposition.*l'ARTICLE,  
*the article.*le VERBE,  
*the verb.*la CONJONCTION,  
*the conjunction.*l'ADJECTIF,  
*the adjective.*l'ADVERBE,  
*the adverb.*l'INTERJECTION,  
*the interjection.*

\* The figures at the top of the words indicate the rule to which the different sorts of words that compose the language are subject. The learner will do well to refer to these rules until they are familiar to him. They will be found at page 32, and in the following pages.

N. B. The english words are here placed literally under the french. It will require very little knowledge of the english language to arrange them in the grammatical order which they require. The person who is not capable of doing that, must study his own language, before he attempts to learn French.

† See note 2, page 1.



## CHAP. I.

## DU NOM.

*Of the noun.*

Tout mot qui sert à exprimer l'\* idée d'\* une substance, soit  
*Every word which serves to express the idea of a substance, either*  
 réelle, comme, homme, femme, cheval, maison, soleil, lune; ou idéale,  
*real, as, man, woman, horse, house, sun, moon; or ideal,*  
 comme, dieu, ciel, honneur, vice, vertu, s' appelle NOM.  
*as, god, heaven, honour, vice, virtue, is called a noun.*

De ces mots appelés NOMS, (quelques uns) ne conviennent qu'\*  
*Of these words called nouns, some —† belong only*  
 à une seule personne, ou à une seule chose; comme, Jean, Jacques,  
*to a single person, or to a single thing; as, john, james,*  
 Voltaire, Shakespeare, Londres, Paris, France, Angleterre, la Seine,  
*voltaire, shakespeare, london, paris, france, england, the seine,*  
 les Alpes, &c. et ces noms s'\* appellent noms propres.  
*the alps, &c. and these nouns are called names proper.<sup>16</sup>*

D'\* autres conviennent à tous les êtres de la même espèce;  
*Some others belong to all —† beings of the same kind;*  
 comme, homme, femme, enfant, cheval, vache, oiseau, maison, ville,  
*as, man, woman, child, horse, cow, bird, house, city,*  
 campagne, arbre, &c. et ceux-ci s' appellent noms communs.  
*country, tree, &c. and these are called names common.<sup>16</sup>*

Dans cette dernière classe (on comprend) les noms com-  
*In this last class (we<sup>46</sup> include or are included<sup>48</sup>) the nouns com-*  
 posés d' idées abstraites<sup>16</sup>; comme, dieu, ciel, âme, vice, vertu,  
*pounded of ideas abstract: as, god, heaven, soul, vice, virtue,*  
 amour, désir, honneur, plaisir, et autres semblables.  
*love, desire, honour, pleasure, and such like.*

Il faut considérer dans les<sup>7</sup> noms, le genre, et le nombre.  
*It is necessary to consider in —† nouns the gender, and the number.*

Il n'y a en français que deux genres; le MASCULIN, et le FÉMININ  
*There — are in french only two genders; the masculine, and the feminine.*

Par MASCULIN (on veut<sup>46</sup> dire) le genre mâle<sup>15</sup>; comme, homme,  
*By masculine (we mean or is meant<sup>48</sup>) the gender male; as, man,*  
 coq, cheval, taureau, chien, chat, bétier, bouc, cerf, &c.  
*cock, horse, bull, dog, he cat, ram, he goat, stag, &c.*

Par FÉMININ (on veut<sup>46</sup> dire) le genre femelle<sup>16</sup>; comme, femme,  
*By feminine (we mean or is meant<sup>48</sup>) the gender female; as, woman,*  
 poule, jument, vache, chienne, chatte, brebis, chèvre, biche, &c.  
*hen, mare, cow, bitch, she cat, ewe, she goat, hind, &c.*

\* When the monosyllables *le, de, ne, se, je, me, te, la, que*, are followed by a vowel or a *h* mute, the vowel, *e, a*, is left out, and an apostrophe, this mark (*'*), put in its place.

† The words marked under with a dash, this mark (*—*), are not expressed in english.



## DU NOM.

Les noms des autres êtres vivants<sup>18</sup> dont le sexe n' est  
 The names of the other beings living (of which) the sex <sup>55</sup> is  
 pas connu, (ainsi que) des êtres inanimés<sup>16</sup> qu' (on<sup>46</sup> appelle)  
 not known, (as well as) of the beings inanimate which (people call or are called<sup>18</sup>)  
 communément choses, et qui sont de (ce que)  
 commonly things, and which are of (that which or what<sup>40</sup>)  
 les Anglais appellent le GENRE NEUTRE, appartiennent en français  
 the english call gender neuter,<sup>16</sup> belong in french  
 à l' un ou à l' autre de ces deux genres.  
 to the one or to the other of these two genders.

(Il y a) en français comme en anglais, deux nombres; le SINGULIER,  
 There are in french as in english, two numbers; the singular,  
 quand on ne parle que d' un être; comme, un<sup>1</sup> homme, une  
 when we — speak only of one being; as, a man, a  
 femme, une<sup>1</sup> maison; le PLURIER, quand on parle de plusieurs êtres;  
 woman, a house; plural,\* we<sup>46</sup> of several beings;  
 comme, des<sup>1</sup> hommes, des<sup>1</sup> femmes, des<sup>1</sup> maisons.  
 as, some men, some women, some houses.

Remarquez que le nombre *plurier*<sup>15</sup> se forme en français comme en  
 Remark that is formed in as in  
 anglais, en ajoutant s au *singulier*; une<sup>1</sup> maison, des<sup>1</sup> maisons.  
 by adding s to the a house, some houses.

Excepté premièrement; les noms qui (se terminent) en s ou en  
 Except, first; the nouns which (terminate or end) in s or  
 x dont le *plurier* ne diffère point du *singulier*; ainsi on<sup>46</sup> dit:  
 x of which — differs not from the so we say:  
 mon *fil*s, mes *fil*s; un *po*is, des *po*is; une *no*ix, des *no*ix, &c.  
 my son, my sons; a pea, some peas; a nut, some nuts, &c.

Secondement; les noms dont le *singulier* (se termine) en u, qui  
 Secondly; the of which ends in u, which  
 demandent un x (au lieu) d' une s pour signe du *plurier*; comme,  
 require an x instead of an s for the sign of the as,  
 un *couteau*, des *couteaux*; le<sup>1</sup> *jeu*, les<sup>1</sup> *jeux*; *lieu*, *lieux*, &c.  
 a knife, some knives the game, the games; place, places, &c.

Troisièmement; les noms dont le *singulier* (se termine) en al,  
 Thirdly; of which ends in al,  
*ail*, qui changent l, ou il, en ux pour le *plurier*; comme, *mal*, *maux*  
 ail, which change l, or il, into ux for as, evil, evils,  
*cheval*, *chevaux*; *général*, *généraux*; *travail*, *travaux*, &c.  
 horse, horses; general, generals; work, works, &c.

\* This word you will generally see in other grammars spelled *pluriel*; but as it is pronounced *plurier*, the same as *singulier*, I have thought it proper to spell it as it is pronounced, that it might be more easily remembered.

## CHAP. II.

## DE L' ARTICLE.

*Of the article.*

Comme le même nom peut exprimer des<sup>8</sup> idées différentes, on<sup>46</sup>  
*As the same noun may express N. B. ideas different,<sup>16</sup> we*  
 a adop.té des<sup>8</sup> signes pour désigner chacune de ces idées.  
*have adopted N. B. signs to denote each of these ideas.*

Ces signes se nomment en grammaire ARTICLE; mais comme ils  
*These are called in grammar but as they*  
 varient avec nos idées, les<sup>7</sup> grammairiens ne s'accordent pas sur le  
*vary with our — grammarians — agree not on*  
 nombre, ni sur le nom qu' on doit donner à chaque signe en particulier.  
*nor name which we ought to give to each sign in particular.*

Cet accord n'est nullement nécessaire, il suffit d' en<sup>24</sup> savoir l'usage.  
*This agreement <sup>55</sup> is (by no means) necessary, it suffices to of them know the use.*

(On verra) dans ce traité que j' ai augmenté le nombre des  
*(It will be seen<sup>47</sup>) in this treatise that I have increased of the*  
 signes appelés ARTICLE, parceque cela m'<sup>25</sup> a paru nécessaire  
*called because that to me has appeared necessary*  
 pour diminuer celui<sup>44</sup> des règles; ainsi, j' appelle ARTICLE des<sup>8</sup> mots  
*to diminish that of the rules; so, I call — N. B. words*  
 que (les uns) appellent PRONOMS, que d'autres appellent ADJECTIFS;  
*which some call pronouns, which others adjectives;*  
 et je les<sup>24</sup> appelle ainsi, parceque ces mots sont tous destinés au  
*and I them call so, because these are all destined to the*  
 même usage, et que les mêmes règles sont communes à tous.  
*same use, and that rules common*

(Afin qu') on<sup>46</sup> pût retenir ces signes plus aisément;  
*That people might retain these more easily;*  
 je leur<sup>25</sup> ai donné des<sup>8</sup> noms analogues à la  
*I to them have given — N. B. names analogous to the*  
 fonction qu' ils font dans la phrase; ainsi, j' appelle  
*office which they perform in the sentence; so, I call*  
 LE, LA, LES; DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX, article  
*THE; of or from THE; to or at THE,*  
*défini<sup>16</sup>, parcequ' on<sup>46</sup> (se sert) de ces signes pour désigner que*  
*definite, because we use — these signs to denote that*  
 le nom qui les<sup>24</sup> suit, est employé dans un sens défini<sup>16</sup>;  
*noun which them follows, is used in a sense definite;*  
 comme, Apportez LE<sup>1</sup> pain, LA<sup>1</sup> viande, LES<sup>1</sup> habits.  
*as, bring the bread, the meat, the clothes.*

J' appelle DU, de LA, DES, article *partitif*<sup>18</sup> parceque ces signes  
*I call SOME, partitive, because these*  
 s'emploient à désigner une *portion* de la substance, dont on  
*are used to denote a portion of the substance, (of which) we<sup>18</sup>*

## DE L'ARTICLE.

parle ; comme, *Donnez-moi* DU<sup>1</sup> *pain*, de LA<sup>1</sup> *viande*, DES<sup>1</sup> *habits*.  
*speak ; as, give me some bread, some meat, some clothes.*

J' appelle UN, UNE, et tous les autres nombres article *numéral*,  
*I call (A, AN, ONE,) and all the other numbers numeral,<sup>16</sup>*  
 lorsque ces signes s' emploient à *nombrer* les objets dont on  
*when these are used to number objects of which we*  
 parle ; comme, UN<sup>1</sup> *pain* ; UNE<sup>1</sup> *armée*.  
*speak ; as, a, or one loaf ; an army or one army.*

J' appelle CE, CETTE, CES, article *démonstratif*,<sup>16</sup>  
*THIS, THAT ; THIS, THAT ; THESE, THOSE, demonstrative,*  
 parceque c' est au moyen de ces signes qu' on<sup>46</sup> indique  
*because it is by the means of these that we point out*  
 le lieu où est l' objet dont on parle ; comme,  
*the place where is the object of which we speak, or spoken of ; as,*  
 CE<sup>1</sup> *pain*, CETTE<sup>1</sup> *viande*, CES<sup>1</sup> *habits*.  
*this or that bread, this or that meat, these or those clothes.*

J' appelle MON, MA, MES ; TON, TA, TES ; SON, SA, SES ;  
*MY ; THY ; HIS, or HER, or ITS ;*  
 NOTRE, NOS ; VOTRE, VOS ; LEUR, LEURS, article *possessif*,<sup>16</sup>  
*OUR ; YOUR ; THEIR ; possessive,*  
 parceque ces signes s' emploient à désigner la *possession* de l' objet  
*because these are used to denote possession of*  
 dont on parle ; comme, MON<sup>1</sup> *pain*, TA<sup>1</sup> *viande*, SES<sup>1</sup> *habits*.  
*of which as, my bread, thy meat, his or her clothes.\**

\* Some will perhaps be surprised to find under the head ARTICLE, words which have so long been consecrated to the class of pronouns. Though they certainly partake of the nature of pronouns, by denoting the persons, they in reality are articles, used for the same purposes, in similar instances, and subject to the same rules as those words generally known by the name of article. If it be objected, that when I say *My book*, the word *My* is a pronoun, since it is the same as if I said, *the book of Me*. I answer, that as you cannot change the nature of these words without substituting an article in their place, they are as much articles as pronouns ; and if they have no affinity at all to the syntax of pronouns (especially in french) and their affinity to the syntax of articles is so great, that the rules which are applicable to one, are applicable to all ; why should not words, which have so great an analogy to each other, be set in one point of view, rather than send the learner from chapter to chapter for what he may, and ought to find in the same page ?

"The genuine PRONOUN," says Harris, "always stands by itself, assuming the power of a noun, and supplying its place ; the genuine ARTICLE never stands by itself, but appears at all times associated to something else, requiring a noun for its support, as much as attributives or adjectives."—*Hermes*, page 73.

Also l'abbé d'Olivet : j'ai dit, en premier lieu que l'ARTICLE est un *adjectif* ; et si je n'avois pas craint d'entasser trop de choses à la fois, j'aurois volontiers ajouté que cet adjectif est tiré de la classe des *pronoms*. Quand il précède un substantif on le nomme ARTICLE ; La *piece nouvelle se joue demain* ; et quand il précède ou suit un verbe, Je la *verrai*, *Voyez-la*, on l' appelle PRONOUN ; mais d'ailleurs n'est-ce pas une chose qui convient à la plupart des *pronoms adjectifs* d'être mis avant le NOM à l'exclusion de l'ARTICLE et avec la même propriété, comme quand je dis, ce *papier*, cette *plume* ; mon *frère*, votre *sœur*, &c. *Essais de Grammaire*, chap. 2.

## CHAP. III.

## DE L'ARTICLE, ET DU NOM.

Of the and of the

## RÈGLES GÉNÉRALES.

Rules general.<sup>16</sup>

1. Nous avons\* vu† qu' (il y a) en français *We have\* seen † - (there are) - -*  
 DEUX GENRES, le<sup>1</sup> masculin et le<sup>1</sup> féminin ; *two—, - — and - — ;*  
 qu' (il y a) DEUX NOMBRES,‡ le<sup>1</sup> singulier *that (—) — —, ‡ - —*  
 et le<sup>1</sup> pluriel ; et nous avons vu§ que l' *and - — ; - — — — § — the*  
 ARTICLE est un signe qu' on<sup>46</sup> met avant un<sup>1</sup> *- is a sign which we put before -*  
 NOM, pour désigner l'idée qu' on<sup>46</sup> veut exprimer par ce nom ; (à présent) (souvenez-vous) *-, to denote the idea - we wish to*  
 que ce<sup>1</sup> signe appelé ARTICLE, doit toujours *express by that - ; now remember*  
 être du<sup>1</sup> MÊME GENRE et du MÊME NOM- *that this - called - must always*  
 BRE que le<sup>1</sup> NOM qui le<sup>24</sup> suit ; exemple, *be (of the) same — — — — —*  
*as - — which follows it ; example.*

## SINGULIER.

## PLURIER.

singular.

plural.

MASCULIN.	FÉMININ.	MASC. et FÉMIN.	— . — . — and — .
LE père,	LA mère,	LES enfants,	the father, the mother, the children.
DU père,	de LA mère,	DES enfants,	of the —, of the —, of the —.
AU père,	à LA mère,	AUX enfants,	to the —, to the —, to the —.
UN père,	UNE mère,		a or one —, a or one —.
CE père,	CETTE mère,	CES enfants,	(this, that, —,) (this, that —,) (these,
MON père,	MA mère,	MES enfants,	my —, my —, my —. [those —.)
TON père,	TA mère,	TES enfants,	thy —, thy —, thy —.
SON père,	SA mère,	SES enfants,	(his, her —,) (his, her —,) (his, her —,)
NOTRE père,	NOTRE mère,	NOS enfants,	our —, our —, our —.
VOTRE père,	VOTRE mère,	VOS enfants,	your —, your —, your —.
LEUR père,	LEUR mère,	LEURS enfants,	their —, their —, their —.
DU pain,	de LA viande,	DES habits,	some bread, some meat, some clothes.

2. Nous (venons de voir) ¶ que l'ARTICLE *We (have just seen) that - -*  
 doit toujours être du<sup>1</sup> MÊME GENRE, et *must always be (- —) — —, -*  
 du<sup>3</sup> MÊME NOMBRE que le<sup>1</sup> NOM qui le<sup>24</sup> suit ; *(- -) - - as - — which follows it ;*

\* The english words which express the meaning of the french are placed in the margin. The words that have been frequently repeated, or which are the same in both languages, are left out, and a dash, this mark (—), put in their places, that the learner may have an opportunity to exercise his recollection.

† Page 28.

‡ Page 29.

§ Page 30.

¶ I have frequently been asked if, having only one word to express both HIS and HER, we do not often commit mistakes in the use of that word. No, we never do ; because this sign always refers to a noun mentioned before, the gender of which we know ; So, when I say, *Mon frère a perdu son couteau, My brother has lost his knife ;* I know by *Son* that it is the knife belonging to my brother. *Ma sœur a perdu son couteau, My sister has lost her knife ;* I know by this *Son* that it is the knife belonging to my sister. But suppose a gentleman and a lady sat at table, and both let their knives fall ; and a person said to a servant, *Ramassez son couteau,* meaning the knife of the lady, which knife would the servant pick up ? Indeed he would not know, but a Frenchman would not express himself thus ; He would say : *Ramassez le couteau de monsieur, Pick up the gentleman's knife ;* or, *Ramassez le couteau de madame, Pick up the lady's knife,* by which all ambiguity would be avoided.

¶ Rule 1.



## DE L'ARTICLE ET DU NOM.

cependant, comme la<sup>1</sup> langue française<sup>10</sup> demande une<sup>1</sup> certaine MÉLODIE dans la<sup>1</sup> liaison des<sup>1</sup> mots, et que la<sup>1</sup> rencontre de DEUX VOYELLES dans de<sup>10</sup> petits mots tels que l'<sup>2</sup> ARTICLE, produit un son désagréable à l'oreille; lorsque le<sup>1</sup> NOM qui suit l'ARTICLE est SINGULIER, et qu'il commence par une<sup>1</sup> VOYELLE, ou par une<sup>3</sup> H muette, on<sup>40</sup> emploie

L' au lieu de LE, LA; THE;  
 de L' „ „ DU, de LA; of, from THE;  
 à L' „ „ AU, à LA; to, at THE;  
 CET „ „ CE; THIS or THAT;  
 MON „ „ MA; MY;  
 TON „ „ TA; THY;  
 SON „ „ SA; HIS, HER, ITS;  
 sans considerer le GENRE du nom qui le<sup>24</sup> suit; exemple,

MASCULIN.		FÉMININ		
L' âge,	L' idée,	L' heure.		the age, the idea, the hour.
de L' âge,	de L' idée,	de L' heure.		of the —, of the —, of the —.
à L' âge,	à L' idée,	à L' heure.		to the —, to the —, to the —.
CET âge,	CETTE idée,	CETTE heure.		this or that —, this, that —, this, that —.
MON âge,	MON idée,	MON heure.		my —, my —, my —.
TON âge,	TON idée,	TON heure.		thy —, thy —, thy —.
SON âge,	SON idée,	SON heure.		his or her —, his, her —, his, her —.

3. L' article se *repete* en français avant tous les noms, suivant le genre et le nombre de chaque nom, quoique ces noms soient dans la même phrase, et que l' article ne soit pas répété en anglais; ex.

Le père, LA mère, et LES enfants sont ici. — is repeated — before  
 Je vous<sup>24</sup> apporte DU pain, de LA all — (agreeably to) — and —  
 viande, de L' argent, et DES habits. — of each —, though these —  
 are in — same sentence, — — —  
 — is not repeated in —; ex.  
 Il a invité MON frère, MA sœur, — —, — —, and — — are here.  
 t MES cousins.\* I you<sup>24</sup> bring some bread, some  
 meat, some money, — some clothes.  
 He has — my brother, my sister,  
 and my cousins.\*

\* Observe that two of the signs called ARTICLE cannot be used before the same noun; so we say LE bras, the arm; LA main, the hand, LA dame, the lady, UNE dame, a lady; MADAME, my lady, madam, Mrs.; DES dames, some ladies; MESdames, ladies; UNE demoiselle, a young lady; DES demoiselles, some young ladies; MESdemoiselles, ladies; but we do not say, LE non bras; LA ma main; LA madame; UNE madame; DES mesdames; LA mademoiselle; UNE mademoiselle; DES mesdemoiselles; because each of these signs fixing the proper meaning of the noun, renders another sign superfluous.

N. B. From this rule must be excepted the words MONSIEUR and MESSIEURS, which, though they are compounded of the noun SIEUR, and of the article MON, MES, will in some instances admit of the other articles; for we say: LE monsieur, the gentleman; UN monsieur, a gentleman; CE monsieur, this gentleman, &c. LES messieurs, the gentlemen; CES messieurs, these gentlemen; NOS messieurs, our gentlemen. These few singularities will be learnt by custom.



# INTRODUCTION

## DE L'ARTICLE ET DU NOM.

### RÈGLES PARTICULIÈRES.

Rules particular.<sup>16</sup>

#### Cas où l'on<sup>46</sup> fait usage de l'article.

Instances (in which) we<sup>46</sup> make use of the article.

4. L'article étant un signe destiné à annoncer l'idée du nom qui le<sup>24</sup> suit, ce signe serait superflu avant les noms qui, n'appartenant qu'à un seul être, présentent d'eux mêmes une idée fixe<sup>16</sup>; c'est pour cette raison que les noms de personnes et de villes s'emploient, en français comme en anglais, sans article; ainsi, nous disons;

*J'ai vu Voltaire, Paris, Londres.*

*Je parle de Voltaire, de Paris, de Lond.*

*Je préfère Locke à Volt. Paris à Lond.*

- — being a sign intended to denote - idea (of the) - - follows it<sup>24</sup>, - (would be) superfluous - - - which, belonging only to one being, present of themselves a — fixed; it is for this reason that - names of persons - of towns are used, in french as in english, without - ; so, we say ;

*I have seen —, —, London.*

*I speak of —, —, —.*

*I prefer — to —, — to —.*

5. Cette règle qui devrait s'étendre à tous les noms dont l'idée ne peut changer, n'est pas générale en français, comme elle l'est en anglais, puisque les noms de pays demandent l'article défini<sup>16</sup> LE, LA, LES; DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX, de même que les noms communs<sup>16</sup>, ainsi, (quoi qu') on dise sans article;

*J'ai vu Paris, Londres;*

il faut dire avec l'article,

*J'ai vu LE Portugal, LA France, L'Espagne, L'Angleterre.*

*Je parle DU Portugal, de LA France, de L'Espagne, de L'Angleterre.*

*Je préfère L'Angleterre AU Portugal, LA France à L'Espagne.*

This rule which ought to extend to all - — (of which) - - cannot change is not general - —, as it is - —, since - names of countries require - — — le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux, the same as - names common, so, though we<sup>46</sup> say without —; I have seen Paris, London; we must say with - —,

*I have seen the —, the —, the Spain, the England.*

*I speak of the —, of the —, of the —, of the —.*

*I prefer the — to the —, the — to the —.*

6. Mais les noms<sup>16</sup> de pays perdent l'article, quand ils viennent après les verbes qui désignent demeurer, aller, venir, lorsque ces verbes sont accompagnés de la préposition EN ou DE; car on dit:

*Je viens DE France, d'Italie.*

*Je vais EN Hollande, EN Angleterre.*

*J'ai demeuré EN Espagne, EN Portugal.*

Et cette règle même a encore des exceptions qu'on verra dans la dernière partie, et que je n'ai pas voulu rapporter ici, de peur d'embarrasser les commençants.<sup>7</sup> (Il n'y a que) l'usage, qui puisse rendre ces variations familières.

But - — - countries lose - —, when they come after - verbs - denote dwelling, going, coming, when - — are attended by - - en or de; for we<sup>46</sup> say:

*I come from —, from Italy.*

*I (go or am going) to —, to —.*

*I have lived in Spain, in —.*

And this rule even has still some — which we shall see in the last - - - have not (been willing) to mention - , for fear - embarrassing - beginners.<sup>7</sup> (It is only) - custom which can render these — —.

## DE L'ARTICLE ET DU NOM.

7. Tous les noms *communs*<sup>16</sup> employés<sup>13</sup> dans un *sens général*<sup>16</sup> où ils n'ont point d'article en anglais; comme, BREAD IS GOOD; ou dans un *sens particulier*<sup>16</sup> où ils ont l'article THE; comme, the BREAD WHICH I EAT IS GOOD, demandent l'article défini<sup>16</sup> LE, LA, LES; DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX; ex.

Sens général<sup>16</sup>; J' aime LE pain, LA viande, LES (pommes de terre.)

Sens particulier<sup>16</sup>; J' aime LE pain, LA viande, LES (pommes de terre) que vous m<sup>25</sup> avez donnés.

Sens général; Je parle DU pain, de LA viande, DES (pommes de terre.)

Sens particulier; Je parle DU pain, de LA viande, DES (pommes de terre) que nous avons achetés.

Sens général; Je préfère LE fruit AU pain, à LA viande, AUX (pommes de terre.)

Sens particul. Je préfère LE fruit que j'ai à souper, AU pain, à LA viande, et AUX (pommes de terre) que j'avais à dîner.

8. Si on veut ne désigner qu'une portion de la substance dont on<sup>46</sup> parle, il faut employer avant le nom, un des signes *partitifs*<sup>16</sup> DU, de LA, DES, exprimés<sup>13</sup> en anglais par SOME; mais il est bon d'observer que le signe *some* s'omet très souvent, et que les signes DU, de LA, DES, doivent toujours s'exprimer.

Il paraît que ce signe est le même que celui<sup>44</sup> de l'article défini<sup>16</sup> OF THE, régi par le mot PORTION sous-entendu, et que nous avons été obligés d'admettre faute d'un autre signe pour désigner cette idée; ainsi, quand je dis;

Il m<sup>25</sup> a donné DU pain, de LA viande, DES (pommes de terre);

c'est comme si je disais;

Il m<sup>55</sup> a donné une portion DU pain, de LA viande, DES (pommes de terre.)

9. Cette règle a DEUX EXCEPTIONS. La première est que les signes *partitifs*<sup>16</sup> DU, de LA, DES, étant les mêmes que ceux de l'article défini<sup>16</sup> OF THE;

All - names common<sup>16</sup> used in a sense - (in which) they have not any — in english; as, BREAD IS GOOD; or in a - particular (in which) - have - — THE; as, the BREAD WHICH I EAT IS GOOD, require the — definite le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux; ex.

—; I like bread, meat, (apples of the earth, i. e. potatoes.) —; — the —, the —, the —, which you me<sup>25</sup> have given.

—; I speak of —, of —, of —.

—; — of the —, of the —, of the — which we have bought.

—; — prefer fruit to —, to —, to —.

—; — the — —

I have at —, to the —, to the —, to the — which I had at dinner.

If we wish to denote only a portion of — (of which) we<sup>46</sup> speak, we must use before —, one (of the) signs *partitive* du, de la, des, expressed — by SOME; but it is proper to observe that — SOME is left out very often, — — — du, de la, des, must always be expressed.

It appears that this — is - same - that<sup>44</sup> of — — — OF THE governed by - word portion understood, - which we - been obliged to admit (for want) of another — to denote this idea; so, when I say:

He me<sup>25</sup> has given some -, some —, some —;

it is as if - said;

He me<sup>25</sup> has - a portion of —, of —, of —.

This rule has two exceptions.

- first is that - — *partitive* du, de la, des, being - same as those of the — *definitive* OF THE;

quand un nom employé dans un sens partitif<sup>16</sup> est régi par un autre nom, il ne faut pas employer *DU, de LA, DES*, qui rendraient l'idée particulière et désigneraient *OF THE*; il faut employer seulement *DE* avant le nom; ainsi, il faut dire;

*Il m<sup>25</sup> a donné un morceau DE pain, une livre DE viande*; Non, *un morceau DU pain, une livre de LA viande*.

*J'ai une grande quantité DE (pommes de terre);* Non, *DES pommes de terre*.

N. B. On doit comprendre dans cette règle les mots suivants<sup>16</sup> qui prennent *DE* avant le nom qui les<sup>24</sup> suit, quand ce nom est employé dans un sens partitif<sup>16</sup>;

ASSEZ; ex. assez *DE pain*.

BEAUCOUP; { beaucoup *DE viande*.  
                  { beaucoup *DE gens*.

TANT; { tant *D'argent*.  
          { tant *DE pommes de terre*.

AUTANT; { autant *DE pain*.  
          { autant *DE gens*.

PLUS; plus *DE viande*.

MOINS; moins *D'argent*.

TROP; { trop *DE peine*.  
          { trop *D'enfants*.

PEU; peu *DE pain*.

GUÈRE; guère *D'habits*.

PAS, { pas *D'argent*.

POINT; { point *D'amis*.

JAMAIS; jamais *DE repos*.

when a noun used in a —  
— is governed by another —, we  
must not use *du, de la, des, which*  
(would make) - idea - - (would  
denote) *OF THE*; we must use only  
*de before* - —; so, we must say;

*He me<sup>26</sup> has given a piece of —,  
a pound of —; not, a piece (of the)  
—, - — of the —.*

*I have a great quantity of —;  
not, (of the) —.*

*We<sup>46</sup> must include in this  
rule - words following which take de  
before - — - follows them, when - -  
is used in - — partitive;*

Enough; ex. enough *of bread*.

Much, { much - meat;

Many; { many - people.

So much, { so much - money;

So many; { so many - potatoes.

As much, { as much - bread;

As many; { as many - people.

More; more - meat.

Less; less - money.

Too much, { too much - trouble

Too many; { too many - children

Little, few; little - —.

Little, few; few - clothes.

No, not; { not - money;

Never; { not - friends.

Never; never - rest.

10. La seconde exception est que si le nom employé dans un sens partitif<sup>16</sup> est accompagné d'un adjectif, et que cet adjectif précède le nom, au lieu des signes *DU, de LA, DES*, avant le nom, on met *DE avant l'adjectif*, sans considérer le genre ou le nombre du nom qui le<sup>24</sup> suit, et ce *DE* avant l'adjectif, désigne la même idée que les signes *DU, de LA, DES*, avant le nom; ex.

*Voici DE bon pain, d'excellente viande, DE jeunes (pommes de terre).*

Mais si le nom précède l'adjectif,\* il faut revenir, aux signes *DU, de LA, DES*, et on<sup>46</sup> doit dire;

*Voici DU<sup>8</sup> pain frais,<sup>16</sup> de LA<sup>8</sup> viande excellente,<sup>16</sup> DES<sup>8</sup> (pommes de terre) rôties.*

— second — is that if - noun  
used in a sense partitive is  
attended by an adjective, and that this  
precedes —, instead (of the) — *du, de  
la, des, before* - —, we<sup>46</sup> use *de before*  
- —, without considering - — or -  
— (of the) - which — it,<sup>24</sup> - this *de* -  
- —, denotes - same idea as -  
— *du, de la, des*, - —; —.

(Here is) some good —, some — —,  
some young potatoes.

But if — precedes —, we  
must return to the — *du, de la, des*,  
and we<sup>46</sup> must say;

(Here is) — new, - —  
excellent, - — roasted

\* See rules 16 and 17.

DE PLUSIEURS NOMS ENSEMBLE.

11. Quelquefois plusieurs noms (se rencontrent dans la même phrase, ayant une espèce de rapport ensemble ; comme, quand je dis ; *Le livre* de PIERRE ; ces mots de PIERRE ajoutés à livre, servent, outre l'idée de livre, à donner celle de possession.

Sometimes several — meet in - same sentence, having a kind of reference together ; as, when I say ; The — of Peter ; these - of Peter added to -, serve, besides - idea of -, to give that of possession.

Les Anglais ont plusieurs manières de placer ces noms en rapport.

The English have several ways of placing these nouns in reference.

Quelquefois ils les<sup>24</sup> placent dans l'ordre que les idées considérées séparément se<sup>24</sup> présentent à l'esprit ; comme, *The book* of PETER ; *The pen* of the MASTER ; *The crown* of the KING.

Sometimes they them<sup>24</sup> place in the order that - - considered separately themselves present to - mind ; as, — — — ; — — — — ; — — — —.

Quelquefois ils renversent l'ordre des mots, et placent le nom du possesseur avant celui<sup>44</sup> de la chose possédée ; comme, PETER'S BOOK ; the MASTER'S PEN ; the KING'S CROWN.

— - reverse — - of the words, — - name of the possessor before that of - thing possessed ; as, — — ; — — — ; — — —.

D'autres fois enfin, ils donnent à (l'un) de ces noms la propriété d'un adjectif, et le<sup>24</sup> placent avant la chose qu'il désigne ; *The street-door* ; *London-porter* ; a *gold-watch* ; *silk-stockings*.

At other times in short, - give to - - nouns - property of an adjective, - it — - - thing which it denotes ; — — — ; — — — ; — — — ; — — —.

Les Français au contraire n'ont qu'une manière de placer ensemble ces noms ; Ils placent invariablement le premier, le nom qui est le sujet du<sup>7</sup> discours, et ces deux noms s'unissent ensemble par le moyen des signes DE, DU, de LA, DES, suivant que le nom est ou propre ou commun, défini ou partitif ; ainsi, dans cet<sup>2</sup> exemple ; PETER'S BOOK : le sujet du<sup>7</sup> discours étant a BOOK, et (non pas) PETER, on doit commencer la phrase par livre, et dire : Le livre, Demande, le livre de qui ? Réponse, de Pierre. Dans cet autre ; THE MASTER'S PEN ; le sujet du<sup>7</sup> discours étant a PEN ; on doit commencer la phrase par PEN, et on doit dire ; La plume, D. la plume de qui ? R. du maître.

The French on the contrary have only one way of placing together - nouns ; They - invariably - first, - - which is - subject (of the) discourse, - - two - are united - by - means (of the) signs -, -, -, -, according as - - is either proper or common, definite or partitive ; so, in this - ; - ; the subject (of the)<sup>7</sup> discourse being - -, and not - we<sup>16</sup> must begin - sentence by —, - say : The -, Query, - - of whom ? Ans. of Peter. In - other ; — — — ; - - (of the) — being a -, we must begin - by -, - we must say ; the pen, Q. - - of whom ? A. of the master.

Et dans ces autres phrases : *The street-door* ; *London-beer* ; a *gold-watch* ; — — — o her sentences : The — — — ; — — — ; — — — ;



## DE PLUSIEURS NOMS ENSEMBLE.

SILK-STOCKINGS; le sujet du<sup>7</sup> discours —; -- (of the) —  
 étant DOOR, BEER, WATCH, STOCKINGS, being —, —, —, —,  
 ces mots doivent se placer les premiers, these - must be placed - first,  
 et on doit dire: we must say:

La<sup>1</sup> porte DE LA<sup>1</sup> rue.

- door of - street.

De la<sup>8</sup> bière DE Londres.

Some beer of London.

Une<sup>1</sup> montre d'or. Des<sup>8</sup> bas DE soie.

- watch of gold. - stockings of silk.

12. (Il y a) des<sup>8</sup> cas où l<sup>\*</sup> on ne pour- (There are) - instances (in which) -  
 rait pas changer ainsi l'ordre des mots en could not change so -- (of the) - in  
 anglais, sans changer aussi l'idée qu' on english, without - also -- which we<sup>48</sup>  
 veut exprimer; par exemple, si, au lieu wish to express; for —, if, instead  
 de dire; a WINE-GLASS; a WATER-POT; of saying; - —: - —;  
 on disait, a GLASS of WINE; a POT of we said, -- of -; -- of  
 WATER; on<sup>48</sup> exprimerait une idée (tout —; we should express an -  
 à fait) différente<sup>48</sup>; cependant ces noms quite different; yet these nouns  
 demandent cet ordre en français, mais require this order in french, but  
 au lieu de les<sup>24</sup> unir par les signes DE, DU, instead of them uniting by -- de, du,  
 de LA, DES, on les<sup>24</sup> unit par la pré- de la, des, we them<sup>24</sup> unite by - pre-  
 position À. Ceci arrive quand on position à. This happens when we<sup>48</sup>  
 veut désigner l'usage, et non la possession wish to denote - use, - - -  
 de la chose dont on parle; ex. - - - (of which) we speak; ex.

Un verre À vin. Un pot À eau.

A glass fit for wine. - pot fit for water.

Une cuiller À thé. Des<sup>8</sup> armes À feu.

- spoon fit for tea. - arms fit to fire with

Un sac À poudre. Un moulin À vent.†

A bag fit for powder. A mill to be  
 [turned by the wind.†

\* When ON comes after the conjunctions ET, SI, OU, or any word ending in OU or ON, or between QUE and a verb beginning with CON or COM, the letter L' is generally placed before ON, to soften the sound of these words which otherwise would be disagreeable; so we say; *C'est un pays où L'on vit à bon marché*; it is a country where people live cheap: *On apprend plus facilement les choses que L'on comprend, que celles que L'on ne comprend pas*; people learn more easily the things which they understand, than those which they do not understand: *où on vit, &c. qu'on comprend, &c.* would be harsh to the ear. But if these words were followed by LE, LA, LES, L' must not be added to ON, as it would then cause the same discordance which it is intended to remove; so we say; *Si ON le savait*, Not, *Si L'ON le savait*; if people knew it. *On estimerait davantage la science, si ON la connaissait*, Not, *si L'ON la connaissait*; people would esteem learning more, if they were acquainted with it.

N. B. Some authors make frequent use of this L' without any necessity.

† This rule is not without some exceptions; for we say; *un pot DE chambre*; a chamber-pot. *Une fille DE chambre*; a chamber-maid. *Un bonnet DE nuit*; a night-cap. *Un mouchoir DE poche*; a pocket-handkerchief. *Un cheval DE carosse*, a coach-horse, &c. These few exceptions will be learnt by reading, and in conversation.

N. B. Many of these compound names are expressed by a single word in french; as Coach-man, *Cocher*; Foot-man, *Laquais*; Fisher-man, *Pêcheur*; Fish-market, *Poissonnerie*; Fish-bone, *Arête*; Water-fall, *Cascade*; Counting-house, *Comptoir*; Coach-house, *Remise*; Arm-chair, *Fauteuil*, &c. These expressions are all found in the dictionaries, and will be learnt by reading.

CHAP. IV.

DES ADJECTIFS.

Quelquefois on<sup>46</sup> veut désigner les qualités des personnes, ou des choses dont on<sup>46</sup> parle ; comme quand je dis :

*Un<sup>1</sup> BON mari, Une<sup>1</sup> BELLE femme,  
De<sup>10</sup> JOLIS enfants, Des fruits MÛRS ;*<sup>16</sup>  
les mots *bon, belle, jolis, mûrs*, qui servent à désigner la qualité des substances dont je parle, s'appellent ADJECTIFS.

*Sometimes we<sup>46</sup> wish to denote - qualities (of the) - or (-) things (of which) we<sup>46</sup> speak ; as when I say :*

*A good husband, A fine woman,  
Some pretty children, Fruits ripe ;  
the words good, fine, pretty, ripe, - - serve to denote - quality (of the) - (of which) - speak, are called -.*

13. L'adjectif doit être du MÊME GENRE et du MÊME NOMBRE que le nom qu' il qualifie.

*- - must be (of the) same gender and (-) - number as - which it qualifies.*

Le *féminin* d' un adjectif se forme en ajoutant *e muet* au masculin ; ex.

*Voilà un JOLI garçon ; il est bien HABILLÉ.*

*Voilà une JOLIE fille ; elle est très bien HABILLÉE.*

*- feminine of an - is formed by adding e mute to the - ; ex.*

*(That is) a pretty boy ; he is well dressed.*

*(-) a pretty girl ; she - very well dressed.*

Excepté les adjectifs qui (se terminent) en *e muet*, qui sont les mêmes pour (les deux) genres ; ex.

*Except - - that end in e mute, which are the same for both - ; ex.*

*Un JEUNE homme AIMABLE.*<sup>16</sup>

*Une<sup>1</sup> JEUNE femme AIMABLE.*<sup>16</sup>

*- young man amiable.*

*- - woman -.*

Excepté aussi les adjectifs qui (se terminent) en *x*, lesquels changent *x* en *se* pour le féminin ; ex.

*Mon frère est PARESSEUX.*

*Ma sœur est PARESSEUSE.*

*- also - - that end in x, which change x into se for - - ; ex.*

*My brother is lazy.*

*My sister - lazy.*

Le *plurier* des adjectifs se forme de la même manière que celui des noms, en ajoutant *s* ou *x* au singulier ; ex.

*Une JOLIE fille. De<sup>10</sup> JOLIES filles.*

*Un BEAU chapeau. De BEAUX chapeaux.*

*- plural (of the) - is formed in - same manner as that (of the) -, by adding s or x (to the) - ; ex.*

*A pretty girl. Some - -.*

*A fine hat. Some fine hats.*

14. Quand un adjectif qualifie plusieurs noms du MÊME genre, il doit être du MÊME genre que ces noms, et *PLURIER* ; ex.

*Mon père et mon frère sont OCCUPÉS.*

*Ma mère et ma sœur sont OCCUPÉES.*

*When an - qualifies several - (of the) same - it must be (-) - - as those - , - ; ex.*

*My father - - brother are busy.*

*My mother - - sister - -.*

15. Si un adjectif qualifie plusieurs noms de genres *différents*,<sup>16</sup> l' adjectif doit être *MASCULIN*<sup>16</sup> et *PLURIER* ; ex.

*Mon père et ma mère sont OCCUPÉS.*

*If - - qualifies several - of - different, - - must be masculine - - ; ex - - and - - -.*

## DES ADJECTIFS.

16. En anglais les adjectifs se placent ordinairement AVANT le nom ; en français ils se placent APRÈS le nom ; ex.  
*Un habit ROUGE. Un chapeau NOIR.* A coat red. - hat black.  
*Une table RONDE. Un bâton ROMPU.* A table round. - stick broken.

17. De cette règle on doit excepter les adjectifs, (BEAU, BEL, BELLE ; ) (BON, BONNE ; ) - (fine, handsome ; ) good ;  
 GRAND ; (GROS, GROSSE ; ) JEUNE ; JOLI ; (great, large, tall ; ) big ; young ; pretty ;  
 MAUVAIS ; MÉCHANT ; MEILLEUR ; MÊME ; bad ; wicked ; better ; same ;  
 MOINDRE ; PETIT ; PLUSIEURS ; TOUT ; less ; (little, small ; ) several ; (all, whole ; )  
 (VIEUX, VIEILLE ; ) qui se placent old ; which are placed  
 ordinairement avant le nom ; car on dit : generally before - - ; for we say :  
*Un BON mari. Une BELLE femme.* - - husband. - - woman.  
*De JOLIS enfants. Un GROS arbre.* Some - children. - big tree.  
*Une PETITE maison. Un GRAND jardin.* - small house. - large garden.

Les mêmes mots qui servent à qualifier les noms, servent aussi au moyen des adverbes, à en<sup>24</sup> comparer les qualités. - same — which serve to qualify —, - also (by the) means (of the) - to (of them) compare - —.

Quand on compare ensemble deux substances, la qualité d' une de ces substances est ou supérieure, ou inférieure, ou égale à la qualité de l' autre ; et ceci s' appelle COMPARATIF ; ou la qualité d' une de ces substances est (au dessus de) toutes les autres ; et ceci s' appelle SUPERLATIF.

When we compare together two substances, - — of one of these — is either superior, or inferior, or equal to - — of the other ; and this is called comparative ; or the — of one of these — is above all the others ; — this is called superlative.

18. Le comparatif de supériorité se forme en mettant PLUS avant l'adjectif ; ex.  
*Mon frère est PLUS grand QUE vous.* The — of superiority is formed by putting plus before — ; ex. - - is (more tall or taller) than -.

19. Le comparatif d' infériorité se forme par MOINS, ou PAS SI avant l'adjectif ; ex.  
*Mon frère est MOINS grand ou n' est PAS SI grand QUE vous.* The — of inferiority is formed by moins or pas si — the — ; ex. My — is less tall, or is not so tall as —.

20. Le comparatif d' égalité se forme en mettant AUSSI avant l'adjectif ; ex.  
*Mon frère est AUSSI grand QUE vous.* The — of equality is formed by putting aussi before - — ; ex. My — is as tall as —

21. Le superlatif se forme en ajoutant l' article aux particules comparatives<sup>16</sup> PLUS, MOINS ; ex.  
*Mon frère est LE PLUS grand.* The — is formed by adding the — (to the) — — plus, moins ; ex.  
*Ma sœur est LA MOINS grande.<sup>13</sup>* My — is the most tall, or - tallest.  
*Vos enfants sont LES PLUS grands.<sup>13</sup>* My — is the least tall.  
*MON meilleur ami. SA PLUS belle robe.* Your - are - most tall, or - tallest. - best friend. Her finest gown.

CHAP. V.

DES PRONOMS.

Comme il serait souvent ennuyeux de répéter les mêmes noms, on<sup>46</sup> a adopté certains petits mots pour représenter ces noms, et que pour cette raison on<sup>46</sup> a appelés PRONOMS; ainsi, quand je dis : JE ou MOI; ces mots JE ou MOI représentent mon nom; TU, TOI; NOUS; VOUS; IL, LUI; ILS, EUX; ELLE, ELLES, représentent les noms de quelques autres personnes.

*As it would be often tedious to — the same -, we<sup>46</sup> have adopted certain small words to represent these —, - which for this reason we<sup>46</sup> have called —; so, when I say: I or me; these — I or me — - name; thou, thee, (we, us;) you; he, him; they, them; (she, her;) (they, them,) — - names of some other persons.*

On<sup>46</sup> distingue les pronoms en PERSONNELS, RELATIFS, POSSESSIFS, DÉMONSTRATIFS, INDÉFINIS.

*We<sup>46</sup> distinguish the — into personal, relative, possessive, demonstrative, indefinite.*

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS<sup>16</sup>.

Les pronoms PERSONNELS<sup>16</sup> sont ceux de ces mots qui tiennent ordinairement la place des personnes.

*The — —<sup>16</sup> are such of these - which keep usually - - of —, or are used instead of —.*

On distingue en grammaire trois personnes. La première personne est celle qui parle; comme, JE suis, NOUS sommes; la seconde personne est celle à qui on parle; comme, TU es, VOUS êtes; et la troisième personne est celle dont on parle; comme, IL est, ELLE est; ILS sont, ELLES sont; mais chacune de ces personnes est représentée par plusieurs mots différents<sup>16</sup>.

*We distinguish in — three persons. The first person is that who speaks; as, I am, we are; - second - - - to whom we speak; as, thou art, you are; - - third — - - (of whom) we speak; as he is, she -; they are, they -; but each - these — is represented by several - different<sup>16</sup>.*

Les pronoms qui représentent la première personne sont JE, MOI\*; ME, MOI\*; NOUS.

*The — which represent - first — are I\*; me\*; (we, us.)*

Ceux qui représentent la seconde sont TU, TOI\*; TE, TOI\*; VOUS.

*Those which — the second are thou\*; thee\*; you.*

Ceux qui représentent la troisième sont IL, LUI\*; ILS, EUX\*; LE, LUI\*; LES, LEUR\*; pour le *mas*; ELLE, ELLES; LA, LUI\*; LES, LEUR\*; pour le *fém*; mais ces mots ne (s'emploient) pas indifféremment l'un pour l'autre.

*Those which — the third are he\*; they\*; him\*; them\*; for the —; she, they; her\*; them\*; for the -; but these - (are used) not indiscriminately the one for the other.*

Pour rendre ce sujet plus clair, il me<sup>24</sup> semble nécessaire de diviser ces pronoms en *nominatifs* ou agents du verbe, et en *objets* du verbe.

*To render this subject more clear, it (to me<sup>24</sup>) seems necessary to divide these — into — or agents (of the) verb, and into objects (- -) —.*

\* These two words are expressed by the same word in english, but they are not used indiscriminately in french, as will appear by the following rules.



## DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

Par *nominatifs* ou agents du verbe, je (veux dire) les mots qui dirigent l'action du verbe ; et par *objets* du verbe, les mots qui en<sup>24</sup> reçoivent l' action ; ainsi, dans cette phrase, JE vous<sup>24</sup> aime ; JE est le *nominatif* ou agent du verbe aime, et vous en<sup>24</sup> est l' *objet* ; et dans cette autre, vous<sup>24</sup> m' aimez ; vous est le *nominatif* du verbe aimez ; et ME en<sup>24</sup> est l' *objet*.

By — or — (of the) - I mean - words which direct the - (of the) - ; - by objects (of the) -, . . which (of it<sup>24</sup>) receive - - ; so, in this sentence, I you<sup>24</sup> love, I is - - or - (of the) - love, - you (of it<sup>24</sup>) is - - ; - - this other, you me love ; you is - — (of the) - love ; - me (of it<sup>24</sup>) is - —

Les pronoms *nominatifs*<sup>18</sup> sont pour la première personne, JE, MOI, *singulier* ; NOUS, *plurier* ; pour la seconde personne, TU, TOI, *singulier* ; VOUS, *plurier* ; pour la troisième au masculin, IL, LUI, *singulier* ; ILS, EUX, *plurier* ; pour la troisième au féminin, ELLE, *singulier* ; ELLES, *plurier* ; mais les mots JE ou MOI ; TU ou TOI ; IL ou LUI ; ILS ou EUX, (ne s' emploient pas) indifféremment l' un pour l' autre.

The — nominative<sup>18</sup> are for - first — I, singular ; we, plural ; - - second — thou, singular ; you, plural ; - - third (in the) masculine, he, singular ; they, plural ; - - third (in the) feminine, she, singular ; they, plural ; but - - je or moi ; tu or toi ; il or lui ; ils or eux, (are not used) indiscriminately the one for the other.

22. JE, TU, IL, ILS, s' emploient (toutes les fois qu') il y a dans la phrase un verbe qui peut s'accorder avec ces pronoms ; ex. JE suis, TU es, IL est, ILS sont.

Je, tu, il, ils, are used whenever there is in - sentence a - which may agree with - — ; - I am, thou art, he is, they are.

23. MOI, TOI, LUI, EUX, s' emploient lorsque ces mots sont joints à un autre substantif pour nominatif du même verbe, ou lorsque le verbe est sous-entendu ; ex. Qui est là ? MOI. Ce n' est pas MOI qui ai fait cela ; c' est LUI. Vous et MOI nous irons. Toi et LUI vous resterez. Ce sont EUX qui me<sup>25</sup> l' ont dit.

Moi, toi, lui, eux, are used when these - are joined to another — for — (of the) same —, or when - - is understood ; ex. Who is there ? I. It is not I who have done that ; it is he. You - I will go. Thou - he shall stay. It is they - me it<sup>25</sup> have told.

N. B. NOUS, VOUS, ELLE, ELLES, étant invariablement les mêmes dans tous les cas, ne présentent aucune difficulté.

N. B. Nous, vous, elle, elles, being invariably - same in all instances, present no difficulty.

Les pronoms *objets* du verbe sont pour la première personne ME, MOI, *sing* ; NOUS, *plur* ; pour la seconde personne TE, TOI, *singul* ; VOUS, *plur* ; pour la troisième personne au masculin, LE, LUI, *singul* ; LES, LEUR, EUX, *plur* ; pour la troisième personne au féminin LA, LUI, ELLE, *singul* ; LES, LEUR, ELLES, *plur* ; mais ces mots ne s' emploient pas indifféremment.

The — — (of the) — are for - first — me, singular ; us, plural ; - - — — thee, singular ; you, plural ; - - third - in the masculine, him, him singular ; them, plural ; - - — — (in the) feminine her, singular ; them, them plural ; but these — are used not indiscriminately.

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

Les pronoms *objets* du verbe se placent tantôt *avant*, et tantôt *après* le verbe ; et le choix de ces mots dépend de la *place* que ces pronoms occupent dans la phrase.

The — — (of the) — are placed sometimes before, — after — ; — choice of — depends on — place — — keep in — sentence.

24. Prenez pour règle générale<sup>16</sup> que les pronoms objets du verbe, se placent en français *avant* le verbe qui les<sup>24</sup> régit ; dans ces cas *ME* s'exprime par *ME*, et *THEE* par *TE* ; ainsi on dit :

Take for rule — that — (of the) —, are placed in before — which —<sup>24</sup> governs ; — these instances — is expressed — me, — by te ; so we say :

*Il ME voit.* ME voit-il ?  
*Il TE voit.* TE voit-il ?  
*Il LE voit.* LE voit-il ?  
*Il LA voit.* LA voit-il ?  
*Il NOUS voit.* NOUS voit-il ?  
*Il VOUS voit.* VOUS voit-il ?  
*Il LES voit.* LES voit-il ?  
*Il ne ME voit pas.* Ne ME voit-il pas ?  
*Il ne TE voit pas.* Ne TE voit-il pas ?  
*Il ne LE voit pas.* Ne LE voit-il pas ?  
*Il ne LA voit pas.* Ne LA voit-il pas ?  
*Il ne NOUS voit pas.* Ne NOUS voit-il pas ?  
*Il ne VOUS voit pas.* Ne VOUS voit-il pas ?  
*Il ne LES voit pas.* Ne LES voit-il pas ?

*He me sees.* Me sees he ? †  
 - thee -. Thee - - ?  
 - him -. Him - - ?  
 - her -. Her - - ?  
 - us -. Us - - ?  
 - you -. You - - ?  
 - them -. Them - - ?  
*He me sees not.* Me sees he not ? ‡  
 - thee - -. Thee - - - ?  
 - him - -. Him - - - ?  
 - her - -. Her - - - ?  
 - us - -. Us - - - ?  
 - you - -. You - - - ?  
 - them - -. Them - - - ?

25. Observez seulement que si le verbe qui régit ces pronoms est composé d'un des verbes auxiliaires<sup>16</sup> *AVOIR* ou *ÊTRE*, et d'un participe passé<sup>16</sup>, les pronoms se placent *avant* le verbe *auxiliaire*<sup>16</sup>, non entre le verbe *auxiliaire* et le participe ; ainsi on dit :

Observe only that if — governs — is compounded — ( — ) — auxiliary<sup>16</sup> have or be, and — participle past<sup>16</sup>, — are placed before — —, not between — — — — ; so we say :

*Il M' a vu.* M' a-t-il vu ?  
*Il T' a vu.* T' a-t-il vu ?  
*Il L' a vu.* L' a-t-il vu ?  
*Il L' a vue.* L' a-t-il vue ?  
*Il NOUS a vus.* NOUS a-t-il vus ?  
*Il VOUS a vus.* VOUS a-t-il vus ?  
*Il LES a vus.* LES a-t-il vus ?  
*Il ne M' a pas vu.* Ne M' a-t-il pas vu ?  
*Il ne T' a pas vu.* Ne T' a-t-il pas vu ?  
*Il ne L' a pas vu.* Ne L' a-t-il pas vu ?  
*Il ne L' a pas vue.* Ne L' a-t-il pas vue ?  
*Il ne NOUS a pas vus.* Ne NOUS a-t-il pas vus ?  
*Il ne VOUS a pas vus.* Ne VOUS a-t-il pas vus ?  
*Il ne LES a pas vus.* Ne LES a-t-il pas vus ?

*He me has seen.* Me has he - ? §  
 - thee - -. Thee - - - ?  
 - him - -. Him - - - ?  
 - her - -. Her - - - ?  
 - us - -. Us - - - ?  
 - you - -. You - - - ?  
 - them - -. Them - - - ?  
*He me has not seen.* Me has he - - ? ||  
 - thee - - -. Thee - - - ?  
 - him - - -. Him - - - ?  
 - her - - -. Her - - - ?  
 - us - - -. Us - - - ?  
 - you - - -. You - - - ?  
 - them - - -. Them - - - ?

\* The letter (t) has not any meaning here, it is added only to soften the pronunciation.

† Proper english, Does he see me, &c.

‡ Does he not see me ? &c.

§ Proper english, Has he seen me, &c.

|| Has he not seen me ? &c.

## DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

26. Cette règle est sujette<sup>13</sup> à deux exceptions; la première<sup>13</sup> est que si on<sup>46</sup> commande, les pronoms se placent après le verbe; alors on<sup>46</sup> exprime *ME* par *MOI*, et *THEE* par *TOI*. *This rule is liable to two —; - first is that if we<sup>46</sup> command, --- are placed after —; then we<sup>46</sup> express — by moi, and — by toi.*

27. Mais si le verbe *défend*, les pronoms rentrent dans la règle générale<sup>16</sup>, et se placent *avant* le verbe; alors *ME* s'exprime par *ME*, et *THEE* par *TE*; ex. *But if - — forbids, — — return into - — —, - are placed before - —; then — is expressed by me, - — by te; ex.*

Commandement. <sup>26</sup>	Défense. <sup>27</sup>	Commanding	Forbidding.
Regarde-MOI.	Ne ME regarde pas.	Look at me,	Me look at not.
Regarde-TOI.	Ne TE regarde pas.	— - thyself,	Thyself - - .
Regardez-NOUS.	Ne NOUS regardez pas.	— - us,	Us - - .
Regardez-VOUS.	Ne VOUS regardez pas.	— - yourself.	Yourself - - .
Regardons-LE.	Ne LE regardons pas.	Let us look at him,	Him let us not look -.
Regardons-LA.	Ne LA regardons pas.	- - - her,	Her - - - .
Regardons-LES.	Ne LES regardons pas.	- - - them.	Them - - - .

28. Les pronoms ne sont pas toujours régis<sup>13</sup> par les verbes; ils sont souvent régis par une préposition qui les<sup>24</sup> unit au verbe qui les<sup>24</sup> accompagne; alors le pronom étant l'objet de la préposition, et non l'objet du verbe, il se place après la préposition; et *ME* s'exprime par *MOI*; *THEE* par *TOI*; *HIM* par *LUI*; *HER* par *ELLE*; *THEM* par *EUX*; *masc.*; par *ELLES*; *fém.*; ex. *The — a e not always governed by the —; they are often — - - which them<sup>24</sup> unites (to the) — — them<sup>24</sup> attends; then - — being the object of the —, — not - — (of the) —, it is placed after - —; - — is expressed by moi; — by toi; — by lui; — by elle; — by eux; —; by elles, —; ex.*

*Viens à moi. Assieds-toi (près de) moi. Come to me. Sit thyself by me.*  
*Nous parlions de toi. Allons avec lui. - were speaking - thee. Let us go - him.*  
*Je ne puis pas y aller sans elle. I cannot go there without her.*  
*Avez-vous pensé à eux, mas.; à elles f.? Have you thought of them?*

29. S'il arrive que plusieurs pronoms soient régis par le même verbe, ils se placent ensemble dans l'ordre qui suit; *If it happens that several — are governed by - same —, they are placed together in - order — follows.*

Les pronoms de la première personne *The — - first —*  
*ME, NOUS; ceux de la seconde TE, me, nous; those - — te,*  
*VOUS; et celui de la troisième SE, se vous; - that - - third se; are*  
*placent avant TOUTS les autres pronoms; placed before ALL - other —;*  
*LE, LA, LES, se placent avant LUI, le, la, les, - — - lui,*  
*LEUR, Y, EN; LUI, LEUR, avant Y, leur, y, en; lui, leur, — y,*  
*EN; et Y avant EN. en; - y — en.*

Excepté, lorsqu' on emploie *MOI, TOI*, au lieu de *ME, TE*; car alors *MOI, TOI*, se placent après les autres pronoms. *Except, when we use moi, toi, instead of me, te; for then moi, toi, are placed after - other —.*

Et lorsque *MOI* ou *TOI* rencontrent le pronom *EN*, ils se changent en *M'*, *T'*, et se placent avant *EN*. Toutes ces variations se font pour la<sup>7</sup> mélodie; ex. *And when moi or toi meet - — en, - are changed into m' t', - are placed — en. All these — are made for<sup>7</sup> melody; ex.*



## DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

Pronoms AVANT le verbe, règle 24 et 25.

Pronoms APRES le verbe, règle 26.

## PREMIÈRE PERSONNE.

<i>Il ME LE donna ;</i>	<i>Hem</i> him or it* gave.	<i>Donnez-LE-MOI ;</i>	<i>Give it or him* me</i>
<i>Il ME LA donna ;</i>	- - her or it* -.	<i>Donnez-LA-MOI ;</i>	- it or her* -.
<i>Il ME LES donna ;</i>	- - them -.	<i>Donnez-LES-MOI ;</i>	- them -.
<i>Il M' EN donna ;</i>	- me some -.	<i>Donnez-M' EN ;</i>	- me some.
<i>Il NOUS LE donna ;</i>	- us him or it* -.	<i>Donnez-NOUS-LE ;</i>	- us, him or it.
<i>Il NOUS LA donna ;</i>	- - her or it* -.	<i>Donnez-NOUS-LA ;</i>	- - her or it.
<i>Il NOUS LES donna ;</i>	- - them -.	<i>Donnez-NOUS-LES ;</i>	- - them.
<i>Il NOUS EN donna ;</i>	- - some -.	<i>Donnez-NOUS-EN ;</i>	- - some.
<i>Il M' Y a envoyé ;</i>	- me there has sent.	<i>Envoyez-Y-MOI ;</i>	<i>Send there me.</i>
<i>Il ME L' Y a envoyé ;</i>	- it - -.	<i>Envoyez-L' -Y-MOI ;</i>	- it - -.
<i>Il ME LES Y a envoyés ;</i>	- - them - -.	<i>Envoyez-LES-Y-MOI ;</i>	- them - -.
<i>Il M' Y EN a envoyé ;</i>	- - some - -.	<i>Envoyez-Y-EN-MOI ;</i>	- - some -.
<i>Il NOUS Y a envoyés ;</i>	- us - -.	<i>Envoyez-NOUS-Y ;</i>	- -.
<i>Il NOUS L' Y a envoyé ;</i>	- it - -.	<i>Envoyez-NOUS-L' -Y ;</i>	- - it -.
<i>Il NOUS LES Y a envoyés ;</i>	- - them - -.	<i>Envoyez-NOUS-LES-Y ;</i>	- - them -.
<i>Il NOUS Y EN a envoyé ;</i>	- - some - -.	<i>Envoyez-NOUS-Y-EN ;</i>	- - - (some.)

## SECONDE PERSONNE.

<i>Il TE LE donna ;</i>	<i>He</i> thee him or it* -.	<i>Représente-LE-TOI ;</i>	<i>Represent it (to thee.)</i>
<i>Il TE LA donna ;</i>	- - her or it* -.	<i>Représente-LA-TOI ;</i>	- her or it* (- -.)
<i>Il TE LES donna ;</i>	- - them -.	<i>Représente-LES-TOI ;</i>	- them (- -.)
<i>Il T' EN donna ;</i>	- thee some -.	<i>Représente-T' EN ;</i>	- thee (of it.)
<i>Il VOUS LE donna ;</i>	- you him or it -.	<i>Représentez-VOUS-LE ;</i>	- yourself him or it.
<i>Il VOUS LA donna ;</i>	- - her or it* -.	<i>Représentez-VOUS-LA ;</i>	- - her or it.
<i>Il VOUS LES donna ;</i>	- - them -.	<i>Représentez-VOUS-LES ;</i>	- - them.
<i>Il VOUS EN donna ;</i>	- - some -.	<i>Représentez-VOUS-EN ;</i>	- - (of it.)
<i>Il T' Y a envoyé ;</i>	- thee there has sent.		
<i>Il TE L' Y a envoyé ;</i>	- it - -.		
<i>Il TE LES Y a envoyés ;</i>	- - them - -.		
<i>Il T' Y EN a envoyé ;</i>	- - there some - -.		
<i>Il VOUS Y a envoyé ;</i>	- you - -.	<i>Transportez-VOUS-Y ;</i>	<i>Curry yourself there.</i>
<i>Il VOUS L' Y a envoyé ;</i>	- it - -.		
<i>Il VOUS LES Y a envoyés ;</i>	- - them - -.		
<i>Il VOUS Y EN a envoyé ;</i>	- - some - -.	<i>Informez-VOUS-Y-EN ;</i>	<i>Enquire there (of it.)</i>

## TROISIÈME PERSONNE.

<i>Il SE LE rappelle ;</i>	<i>He</i> to himself it recalls.		
<i>Il SE LA rappelle ;</i>	- - - her or it* -.		
<i>Il SE LES rappelle ;</i>	- - - them -.		
<i>Il S' EN repent ;</i>	- himself (of it) repents.		
<i>Il S' Y applique ;</i>	- - (to it) applies.		
<i>Il LE LUI a donné ;</i>	- it (to him or her) - -.	<i>Donnez-LE-LUI ;</i>	<i>Give it (to him or her.)</i>
<i>Il LA LUI a donnée ;</i>	- it, her* (- -) - given.	<i>Donnez-LA-LUI ;</i>	- it or her* (- - -.)
<i>Il LES LUI a donnés ;</i>	- them (- -) -.	<i>Donnez-LES-LUI ;</i>	- them (- - -.)
<i>Il LE LEUR a donné ;</i>	- it, him (to them) - -.	<i>Donnez-LE-LEUR ;</i>	- - - (to them.)
<i>Il LA LEUR a donnée ;</i>	- her or it* (- -) -.	<i>Donnez-LA-LEUR ;</i>	- it or him (- -.)
<i>Il LES LEUR a donnés ;</i>	- them (- -) -.	<i>Donnez-LES-LEUR ;</i>	- - (- -.)
<i>Il L' EN avertit ;</i>	- him (of it) warned,	<i>Avertissez-L' EN ;</i>	<i>Warn him (of it.)</i>
<i>Il LES EN avertit ;</i>	- them (of it) -.	<i>Avertissez-LES-EN ;</i>	- them (- -.)
<i>Il L' Y envoya ;</i>	- him there sent ;	<i>Envoyez-L' Y ;</i>	<i>Send him or it there</i>
<i>Il LES Y envoya ;</i>	- them -.	<i>Envoyez-LES-Y ;</i>	- them -.
<i>Il LE LUI Y envoya ;</i>	- - (to him or her) - -.	<i>Envoyez-LE-LUI-Y ;</i>	- - - (to him or her) -.
<i>Il LA LUI Y envoya ;</i>	- - (- -) - -.	<i>Envoyez-LA-LUI-Y ;</i>	- her or it (- -) -.
<i>Il LES LUI Y envoya ;</i>	- - (- -) - -.	<i>Envoyez-LES-LUI-Y ;</i>	- - (- -) -.
<i>Il LE LEUR Y envoya ;</i>	- it (to them) - -.	<i>Envoyez-LE-LEUR-Y ;</i>	- it or him (- -)
<i>Il LA LEUR Y envoya ;</i>	- it or her (- -) - -.	<i>Envoyez-LA-LEUR-Y ;</i>	- her or it* (- -) -.
<i>Il LES LEUR Y envoya ;</i>	- them (- -) -.	<i>Envoyez-LES-LEUR-Y ;</i>	- them (- -) -.
<i>Il LUI EN envoya ;</i>	- (to him or her) - -.	<i>Envoyez-LUI-EN ;</i>	- (to him) some.
<i>Il LEUR EN envoya ;</i>	- (- -) - -.	<i>Envoyez-LEUR-EN ;</i>	- (- -) -.
<i>Il LUI Y EN envoya ;</i>	- (- -) - -.	<i>Envoyez-LUI-Y-EN ;</i>	- (to him) there -.
<i>Il LEUR Y EN envoya ;</i>	- (- -) - -.	<i>Envoyez-LEUR-Y-EN ;</i>	- (- -) - -.
<i>Il Y EN envoya ;</i>	- - - -.	<i>Envoyez-Y-EN ;</i>	- - -.

\* See 30th rule.



## DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

30. Comme (il n' y a) en français que deux genres, le MASCULIN et le FÉMININ, les pronoms *IT, THEY, THEM* qui (se rapportent) aux<sup>7</sup> choses, et qui sont du genre NEUTRE<sup>16</sup> en anglais, (s'expriment) par *IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES*; *LE, LA, LES*, de même que si on parlait des<sup>7</sup> personnes; ainsi on dit; en parlant d'un homme ou d'un habit;

*IL est bien fait;*

*Je vous LE<sup>24</sup> montrerai.*

*En parlant d'une femme ou d'une fleur;*

*ELLE est belle; Regardez-LA<sup>25</sup>.*

*As (there are) in french only two genders, the — and the —, the — -, -, which*

*refer to<sup>7</sup> things, and which are (of the) — neuter —, are expressed by il, elle, ils, elles;*

*le, la, les, the same as if we<sup>46</sup> spoke of<sup>7</sup> —; so we say; in speaking - - man or - - coat;*

*He or it is well made.*

*I you<sup>29</sup> it or him (will shew.)*

*- - - woman - - - flower;*

*She or it is fine; look at her or it.*

Remarquez que les mots *LE, LA, LES, pronoms*, sont précisément les mêmes que *LE, LA, LES, article*; mais il est aisé de ne pas les<sup>24</sup> confondre. *LE, LA, LES, article* est toujours suivi d'un nom; *LE, LA, LES, pronom* est toujours précédé ou suivi d'un verbe; ainsi, dans cette phrase;

*Voici LE père, LA mère, et LES enfants;*  
*LE, LA, LES* est article.

Et dans ces autres; *Je LE<sup>24</sup> vois, je LA<sup>24</sup> vois, je LES<sup>24</sup> vois;*

*Voyez-LE<sup>25</sup>, voyez-LA<sup>25</sup>, voyez-LES<sup>25</sup>;*  
*LE, LA, LES* est pronom.

*Remark that — words le, la, les, —, are precisely the same as le, la, les, —; but it is easy to not them<sup>24</sup> confound. Le, la, les, —, is always followed by a noun; le, la, les — is always preceded or followed by a —; so, in this sentence;*

*(Here is) —, - mother, - - children; le, la, les is an article.*

*And - these others; I him see, - her -, - them -;*

*See him, - her, - them;*  
*le, la, les is a —.*

31. Les pronoms *HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM* s'emploient quelquefois sans rapport à un nom exprimé dans la phrase, mais avec rapport aux mots *MAN, WOMAN, ou PEOPLE* sous-entendus; alors *HE, HIM* s'expriment par *CELUI*; *SHE, HER* par *CELLE*; *THEY, THEM*, par *CEUX*; ex.

*The — HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM, are used sometimes without reference to a — expressed in the —, but with — (to the) words MAN, WOMAN, - PEOPLE understood; then HE, HIM are expressed by celui; SHE, HER by celle; THEY, THEM, by ceux; ex.*

*CELUI à qui, c'est à dire, L'HOMME à qui personne ne plaît, est plus malheureux que CELUI qui, i. e., que L'HOMME qui ne plaît à personne.*

*He to whom, i. e., - man to whom nobody pleases, is more unhappy than he who, i. e., than the man who pleases nobody.*

*CELLE qui, c'est à dire, LA FEMME qui refuse un mari, n'est pas toujours sûre d'en trouver un autre.*

*She who, i. e., - woman who refuses a husband, is not always sure of finding another.*

*CEUX qui, c'est à dire, LES GENS qui paraissent heureux, ne le<sup>24</sup> sont pas toujours.*

*They who, i. e., - people who appear happy, so are not always.*

## DES PRONOMS RELATIFS.

Le mot RELATIF signifie qui a rapport.

The - - means which has reference.

Quoique tous les pronoms par leur nature soient *relatifs*, c'est à dire aient du rapport à quelque substantif exprimé ou sous-entendu, on<sup>46</sup> a donné à (ceux-ci) le nom de relatifs, (à l' exclusion) des autres, parcequ' ils servent plutôt à rappeler l'idée des êtres dont on<sup>46</sup> a parlé, qu' à les<sup>24</sup> représenter.

Though all the pronouns by their nature be relative, i. e. have some reference to some — expressed or —, people<sup>46</sup> have given to these the name of —, exclusively (of the) others, because they — rather to recall - idea (- -) beings of which we have spoken, than to them<sup>24</sup> represent.

Les pronoms relatifs<sup>16</sup> sont QUI, QUE, DONT, QUOI, QUEL, LEQUEL ; en anglais *WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, WHAT*.

The — relative are qui, que, dont, quoi, quel, lequel ; in english, —, —, —, —, —, —.

Ces mots semblent ne présenter aucune difficulté, cependant, comme le même mot est représenté par plusieurs mots différents<sup>16</sup> dans (les deux) langues ; ils embarrassent souvent les commençants ; ainsi faites attention aux règles suivantes.

These — seem - (to present) any difficulty, yet, as - same word is represented by several —<sup>16</sup> in both languages ; they embarrass often the beginners ; so pay — (to the) — following.

32. Quand *WHO, THAT, WHICH*, sont le *nominatif* d'un verbe, ils s'expriment par QUI ;

When —, —, —, are the — of a —, they are expressed by qui ;

Quand *WHOM, THAT, WHICH*, sont l' *objet* d'un verbe, ils s'expriment par QUE\* ;

When —, —, —, are the — of a —, they are expressed by que\* ;

*WHOSE, of WHOM, of WHICH*, s'expriment par DONT.

—, of —, of — are expressed by dont.

N. B. QUI, QUE, DONT ne connaissent ni genre ni nombre ; c' est à dire, se disent également des<sup>7</sup> personnes et des choses, d'un ou de plusieurs ; ainsi on dit ;

N. B. Qui, que, dont, know neither — nor — ; that is to say, are said both of<sup>7</sup> — and of<sup>7</sup> things, of one or - several ; so we say :

L'homme QUI, le cheval QUI, le carrosse QUI est à la porte.

The man who, - horse that, - coach which is at - door.

L'homme QUE, le cheval QUE, le carrosse QUE nous avons rencontré.

The — whom, the — that, the — which - have met.

L'homme DONT, le cheval DONT, le carrosse DONT je vous<sup>25</sup> ai parlé.

- — (of whom,) - — (of which) - (of which) - (to you<sup>25</sup>) have spoken.

\* Persons not versed in grammatical terms are often at a loss to distinguish the object from the nominative, i. e. when to express THAT, WHICH by QUI, and when by QUE. To these I will observe, that THAT, WHICH are the nominative, and expressed by QUI, when they are followed immediately by a verb ; as,

The coach THAT or WHICH is at the door ; *Le carrosse QUI est à la porte.*

THAT, WHICH are the object of the verb, and expressed by QUE, when, between them and the verb, there is a noun or a pronoun which is the nominative of the verb ; as,

The coach THAT or WHICH we have met ; *Le carrosse QUE nous avons rencontré.*

## DES PRONOMS RELATIFS.

33. Quelquefois *WHOM*, *WHICH*, sont régis par une préposition, et non par un verbe; alors ils s'expriment,

*WHOM* par *QUI*, pour (les deux) genres et (les deux) nombres;

*WHICH* par *LEQUEL*, *LAQUELLE*, *LESQUELS*, *LESQUELLES*.

*From WHICH* par *duQUEL*, *de LAQUELLE*, *desQUELS*, *desQUELLES*.

*To*, *at WHICH* par *auQUEL*, *à LAQUELLE*, *auxQUELS*, *auxQUELLES*, suivant le genre et le nombre du nom auquel ils (se rapportent); ainsi on dit;

*Voici les gens avec QUI j'ai dîné.*

*Le cheval sur LEQUEL je suis venu.*

*La chaise dans LAQUELLE j'étais.*

*Les chevaux AUXQUELS je l'ai donné.*

*Sometimes —, —, are governed by a —, and not a —; then they are expressed,*

*— by qui, for both*

*—, and both —;*

*— by lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles.*

*From —, by duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles.*

*To, at — by auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles, (agreeably to) the — and the — (of the) - to which they refer; so we say;*

*(Here are) - people with whom - - - dined.*

*- horse on which - am come or - came.*

*- chaise in which - was.*

*- horses to which - it<sup>25</sup> have given.*

34. *WHO*, *WHOM*, *WHOSE* s'emploient quelquefois sans rapport à un nom exprimé, mais par rapport au mot *PERSON* sous-entendu. Ces mots peuvent alors (se tourner) par *WHAT PERSON*, *QUELLE PERSONNE*, et s'expriment par *QUI*; ex.

*QUI vous<sup>25</sup> a dit cela?* (c'est à dire,) *QUELLE PERSONNE vous<sup>25</sup> a dit cela?*

*Je ne sais QUI vous (voulez dire);* (c'est à dire) *QUELLE PERSONNE vous (voulez dire).*

*À QUI ou à QUELLE PERSONNE est cette maison?*

*De QUI ou de QUELLE PERSONNE est-elle fille?*

*—, —, —*

*are used — without reference to a — expressed, but with — (to the) word*

*— understood. These words*

*may then (be turned) into —*

*—, quelle personne, and are expressed by qui; ex.*

*Who you<sup>25</sup> has told that? i. e. what — <sup>25</sup> - - - ?*

*I know not whom — mean, i. e. what — —*

*—.*

*To whom or - what — belongs that house, (or whose house is that?)*

*Of whom or - what — is she daughter? whose daughter - - ?*

Dans les phrases interrogatives<sup>16</sup>, *WHICH* demande trois distinctions.

*In — sentences interrogative<sup>16</sup> — requires three distinctions.*

35. Quelquefois *WHICH* se joint comme un adjectif au nom qui le<sup>24</sup> suit, c'est à dire sans le secours des<sup>7</sup> prépositions; comme, *WHICH man?* *WHICH carriage?* *WHICH horses?* alors *WHICH* s'exprime par *QUEL*, *QUELLE*, *QUELS*, *QUELLES*, suivant le genre et le nombre du nom qui le<sup>24</sup> suit; ex.

*De QUEL homme parlez-vous?*

*Dans QUELLE voiture (mettrai-je) ceci?*

*À QUELS chevaux le<sup>24</sup> (donnerai-je)?*

*Sometimes — is joined*

*like an - (to the) - which follows it,<sup>24</sup> i. e., without the help (of the) —;*

*as, — — ? —*

*— ? — — ? then —*

*is expressed by quel, quelle, quels, quelles (agreeably to) — — and — (of -) — - follows it<sup>24</sup>; ex.*

*Of which man speak you?*

*In which — (shall I put) this?*

*To which horses it (shall I give?)*

DES PRONOMS RELATIFS.

36. Quelquefois *WHICH* se joint *Sometimes — is joined*  
comme un substantif au nom qui le<sup>24</sup> suit, *like — (to the) noun — follows it,*<sup>24</sup>  
par le moyen d'une préposition; comme, *by — means — — ; as,*  
*WHICH of these men? WHICH of the — — — ? — —*  
*carriages?* ou il s'emploie sans être suivi *— ? or it is used — being followed*  
d'un nom, mais par rapport à un nom *by — , but with reference to a — ,*  
dont on a déjà fait mention; comme, *(of which) — already made — ; as, —*  
*It is one of these men; WHICH is it?* alors *— — — — ; — is — ? then*

*WHICH* s'exprime par *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles;* *which is expressed by lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles;*

*Of, from WHICH* par *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles;* *— , — which, by duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles;*

*To, at WHICH* par *auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles,* *— , — which by auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles,*  
(c'est à dire) l'article défini<sup>16</sup> *le, la, les;* *(i. e.) — — — le, la, les;*  
*du, de la, des; au, à la, aux,* suivant *du, de la, des; au, à la, aux, (agreedably to)*  
le genre et le nombre du nom, s'ajoute *— — — — (—) — , is added*  
*aux mots QUEL, QUELLE, QUELS, QUELLES,* comme s'ils étaient eux-mêmes *(to the) — quel, quelle, quels, quelles, as if they were themselves*  
des<sup>8</sup> noms; ex. *— N.B. nouns; ex.*

*DUQUEL de ces hommes parlez-vous?* *(Of which) — — — speak you?*

*LEQUEL est le plus grand?* *Which is — most tall, or — tallest?*

*LAQUELLE des voitures préférez-vous?* *Which (—) carriages prefer you?*

*LAQUELLE est la plus belle?* *Which — — most fine, or — finest?*

*LESQUELS de ces chevaux aurons-nous?* *Which of these — (shall have) we?*

*LESQUELS sont les meilleurs?* *Which are the best?*

37. Quelquefois le relatif *WHICH* renferme le mot *THAT* ou *THOSE* sous-entendu, *Sometimes — relative which implies the — — — understood,*  
comme, quand, en réponse à cette question; *as, when, in answer to — question;*  
*WHICH horse shall I ride?* Je *— — — — ? I*  
dis, *Ride WHICH you will,* c'est à dire, *say, — — — , i. e.,*  
*THAT WHICH you will; WHICH* dans *— — — ; — —*  
ce sens s'exprime par *CELUI QUE, mas.;* *— sense is expressed by celui que, mas.;*  
*CELLE QUE, fém.;* *CEUX QUE, masc.;* *celle que, fém. ; ceux que, —*  
*pl. ; CELLES QUE, fém. plur. ;* suivant *— ; celles que, — ; (agreedably to)*  
le genre et le nombre du nom auquel il *— — — — (of the) — (to which) it*  
(se rapporte); ex. *refers; ex.*

*Lequel de ces chevaux monterai-je?* *Which — — — (shall ride) I?*

*Montez CELUI qu' il vous<sup>24</sup> plaira?* *Ride which, i. e. that which — please.*

*Dans quelle voiture mettrai-je ceci?* *In which carriage (shall put) I this?*

*Mettez-le dans CELLE QUE je vous ai dit.* *Put it in which, i. e. that which — — — told.*

*Auxquels des garçons le donnerai-je?* *(To which) (—) boys it<sup>24</sup> (shall give) I?*

*Donnez-le<sup>23</sup> à CEUX QUE vous voudrez.* *Give it to which, i. e. those which — will.*

*WHAT, (de même que) WHICH, demande trois distinctions.* *— , (as well as) — , requires three distinctions.*



38. Quelquefois *WHAT* se joint comme un adjectif au nom qui le suit ; alors il s'exprime par *QUEL*, *QUELLE*, *QUELS*, *QUELLES* de la même manière que *WHICH* ; ex.

*De QUEL homme, de QUELLE voiture, de QUELS chevaux parlez-vous ?*

39. Quelquefois *WHAT* s'emploie absolument, c'est à dire, sans rapport à un nom exprimé, mais avec rapport au mot *THING* sous-entendu ; alors *WHAT* peut se tourner par *WHAT THING*, et s'exprime par *QUE*, ou par *QUOI*.

*WHAT* s'exprime par *QUE*, quand il est l'objet d'un verbe ; comme,

*QUE dites-vous ? QUE faites-vous ?*

*WHAT* s'exprime par *QUOI*, quand il est régi par une préposition ; comme,

*De QUOI parle-t-il ? à QUOI pensez-vous ?*  
Ou employé comme interjection ; ex.

*QUOI ! vous n'êtes pas encore levé.*

40. *WHAT* s'emploie quelquefois au lieu des mots *THAT*, *WHICH* ; comme, quand on dit ; *Do WHAT is just* ; c'est à dire, *THAT WHICH is just* ; alors *WHAT* s'exprime par *CE QUI*, quand il est le *nominatif* d'un verbe, et par *CE QUE*, quand il en<sup>24</sup> est l'*objet* ; ex.

*Faites CE QUI est juste.*

*CE QUE je vous<sup>24</sup> dis est vrai.*

Mais quand *WHAT* dans le sens de *THAT WHICH* est régi par les prépositions *OF*, *TO*, (il faut) considérer si la préposition vient *avant* ou *après* *WHAT* ; car, *OF WHAT* s'exprime par *de CE QUI*, *nomin.* ; par *de CE QUE*, *objet* ; ex.

*Parlez de CE QUI vous<sup>24</sup> regarde.*

*WHAT OF*, s'exprime par *CE DONT* ;

*CE DONT je parle ne vous regarde pas.*

*TO WHAT* s'exprime par *à CE QUI*, *à CE QUE* ; comme,

*(Appliquez-vous) à CE QUI est utile.*

*WHAT TO* s'exprime par *CE à QUOI* ; comme,

*CE à QUOI il s'applique ne'st pas utile.*

*Sometimes — is joined like — (to the) — follows it<sup>24</sup> ; then it is expressed by quel, quelle, quels, quelles, in the same manner as — ; ex.*

*Of what —, — what carriage, — what horses speak — ?*

*— — is used absolutely, i. e., without reference — expressed, but with — (to the) — understood ; then — may be turned into — —, — is expressed by que, or by quoi.*

*— is expressed — que, when it is — object — — ; as,*

*What say — ? — do — ?*

*— is expressed — quoi, — — governed — — ; as,*

*Of what speaks — ? To what think — ?*

*Or used as an interjection ; ex.*

*What ! — are not yet up.*

*— is used — in — stead (of the) — — ; as, when we<sup>24</sup> say ; — — — ; that is to say, — — — ; then — is expressed by ce qui, when it is — of — —, — — ce que, — it (of it<sup>24</sup>) is — — ; ex.*

*Do that which or what — just.*

*That which or what — — say — true.*

*But when — in — sense —*

*— — — governed by — —, —, (it is necessary) (to —) whether — comes before or after — ;*

*for, — — is expressed by de ce qui, — ; by de ce que, — ; ex.*

*Speak of what, i. e. of that which concerns.*

*— —, is expressed by ce dont ;*

*— (of which) — — or what — speak of — — not*

*— — — by à ce qui, à ce que ; as,*

*Apply to that which or what — useful.*

*— — is expressed by ce à*

*quoi ; as,*

*— to which — applies or what — — to — not —.*

## DES PRONOMS POSSESSIFS.

On appelle pronoms POSSESSIFS<sup>16</sup> certains mots qu' on<sup>48</sup> emploie à désigner la possession des objets dont on<sup>46</sup> parle. — *We<sup>46</sup> call — possessive certain — which are used<sup>48</sup> to denote — (of the) . (of which) we<sup>46</sup> speak.*

Les pronoms POSSESSIFS<sup>16</sup> sont,  
MIEN, TIEN, SIEN, pour le *masc.*  
MIENNE, TIENNE, SIENNE, *fém.*  
NÔTRE, VÔTRE, LEUR, servent pour  
(les deux) genres.

N. B. Les pronoms POSSESSIFS<sup>16</sup> sont toujours précédés<sup>13</sup> de l'article défini<sup>16</sup> *le, la, les ; du, de la, des ; au, à la, aux,* de même que s'ils étaient des noms ; ainsi on<sup>46</sup> dit ;

*Le MIEN, la MIENNE, les MIENS, les MIENNES.*

*Du MIEN, de la MIENNE, des MIENS, des MIENNES.*

*Au MIEN, à la MIENNE, aux MIENS, aux MIENNES.*

*Le TIEN, la TIENNE les TIENS, les TIENNES.*

*Du TIEN, de la TIENNE, des TIENS, des TIENNES.*

*Au TIEN, à la TIENNE, aux TIENS, aux TIENNES.*

*Le SIEN, la SIENNE, les SIENS, les SIENNES.*

*Du SIEN, de la SIENNE, des SIENS, des SIENNES.*

*Au SIEN, à la SIENNE, aux SIENS, aux SIENNES.*

*Le NÔTRE, la NÔTRE, les NÔTRES.*

*Du NÔTRE, de la NÔTRE, des NÔTRES.*

*Le VÔTRE, la VÔTRE, les VÔTRES, &c.*

*Le LEUR, la LEUR, les LEURS, &c.*

*The — — are,*

*Mine, thine, his or hers, for — —.*

*Mine, thine, his or hers, —.*

*Ours, yours, theirs, serve for both genders.*

N. B. *The — — are*

*always preceded by — —*

*le, la, les ; du, de la, des ; au, à la,*

*aux, the same as if they were nouns so we<sup>46</sup> say,*

*Mine.*

*Of mine.*

*To mine.*

*Thine.*

*Of thine.*

*To thine.*

*His, Hers.*

*Of his, of hers*

*To his, to hers.*

*Ours.*

*Of ours.*

*Yours.*

*Theirs.*

41. Les pronoms POSSESSIFS<sup>16</sup> s'accordent en genre et en nombre avec le nom qu'ils représentent ; ex.

*Votre cheval est meilleur que LE MIEN ; c'est à dire, que MON CHEVAL.*

*Ma maison est mieux située que LA SIENNE ; c'est à dire, que SA MAISON.*

*Je préfère cette situation à LA LEUR.*

*Vous avez pris mes gants, et moi, j'ai pris LES VÔTRES.*

*Mêlez-vous<sup>26</sup> de vos affaires, et ne vous<sup>27</sup> mêlez pas DES NÔTRES.*

*The — — agree*

*in gender - in number with — which - represent ; ex.*

*Your horse is better than mine ; i. e., than my —.*

*My house - better situated than his ; i. e., than his —.*

*I prefer this situation to theirs.*

*- have taken - gloves, - I have*

*— yours.*

*Meddle yourself<sup>26</sup> with your —, - yourself<sup>27</sup> meddle not with ours.*

## DES PRONOMS POSSESSIFS.

42. Les Anglais emploient les pronoms POSSESSIFS<sup>16</sup> *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS*, dans des cas où les Français font usage des pronoms personnels<sup>16</sup> *MOI, TOI, LUI, ELLE, NOUS, VOUS, EUX, ELLES*; c'est lorsque ces pronoms (se rencontrent) avec le verbe *To be*, ÊTRE, employé dans le sens du verbe *To belong*, APPARTENIR; car alors *MINE* s'exprime par à *MOI*; *THINE*, par à *TOI*; *HIS*, par à *LUI*; *HERS*, par à *ELLE*; *OURS*, par à *NOUS*; *YOURS*, par à *VOUS*; *THEIRS*, par à *EUX*, masculin; par à *ELLES*, féminin; ex.

*Ce cheval est-il<sup>52</sup> à VOUS?*

*Oui, il est à MOI.*

*Je pensais qu' il était à VOTRE frère.*

*Qui vous<sup>25</sup> a dit qu' il était à LUI?*

*Ne savez-vous pas que tout ce qui est ici est à MOI?*

*Je pense que ces livres sont à EUX.*

*Ils ne sont pas à EUX; ils sont à NOUS.*

*The English use - —*

— mine, thine, his,

hers, ours, yours, theirs, in

some - (in which) - — make use (of the)

— — moi, toi, lui,

elle, nous, vous, eux, elles;

it is when - — meet

with - — TO BE, être, used

in the sense (of the) - —

—; for then - is expressed

by à moi; —, by à toi;

his, by à lui; hers, by à elle;

ours, by à nous; yours, by à

vous; theirs, by à eux, —;

by à elles, —; ex.

*This horse is it<sup>52</sup> yours i. e. to you?*

*Yes, it is mine i. e. to me.*

*I thought - it was to your brother.*

*Who - has told that it was his?*

*Know - not that all that which is here is mine?*

- think - - - are to them i. e. theirs.

*They are not theirs; - - ours.*

43. Les Anglais font encore usage des pronoms POSSESSIFS<sup>16</sup> *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS*, dans un autre cas où les Français emploient l'article possessif *MES, TES, SES, NOS, VOS, LEURS*; c' est dans ces sortes d'idiomes; *A friend of MINE*; *A book of YOURS*; dans ces cas *MINE* s'exprime par *MES*; *THINE*, par *TES*; *HIS* ou *HERS*, par *SES*; *OURS*, par *NOS*; *YOURS*, par *VOS*; *THEIRS*, par *LEURS*, qui, suivant les règles sur l' article, se placent avant le nom; ex.

*Un de vos amis est venu ici.*

*Un de ses enfants est mort.*

*Un de nos voisins me<sup>25</sup> l' a dit.*

*J' ai rencontré un de leurs valets.*

*The — make still use (of the)*

— — mine, thine,

his, hers, ours, yours, theirs,

in another instance (in which) - —

use - — — mes, tes,

ses, nos, vos, leurs; it is -

- kinds of idioms; A friend of mine;

A book of yours; - - - MINE

is expressed by mes; THINE, - tes;

HIS or HERS, by ses; OURS, -

nos; YOURS, - vos; THEIRS,

- leurs, -, (agreeably to) - - on

the —, are placed before - -; ex.

*One of your friends\* is come here.*

*One of his children† is dead.*

*One of our neighbours‡ - it has told.*

*I have met one of their servants.§*

\* Or, a friend of yours.  
servant of theirs.

† Or, a child of his.

‡ Or, a neighbour of ours.

§ Or, a

DES PRONOMS DÉMONSTRATIFS.

On appelle pronoms DÉMONSTRATIFS<sup>16</sup> certains mots qui servent à indiquer les objets dont on parle.

Ces pronoms sont CELUI, CELLE ; CEUX, CELLES, formés des pronoms personnels<sup>15</sup> <sup>46</sup>LUI, ELLE, EUX, ELLES, auxquels on ajoute CE.

*We*<sup>45</sup> call — demonstrative certain — which — to (point out) — (of which) *we*<sup>45</sup> speak.

*These* — - celui, celle ; (*this, that ;*) ceux,celles ; (*these,those,*) formed(--) — — lui, elle, eux, elles, (to which) *we*<sup>45</sup> add ce.

44. Les pronoms DÉMONSTRATIFS, de même que les autres pronoms, s'accordent en genre et en nombre avec le nom qu'ils représentent ; ex.

*Ce cheval vaut mieux que CELUI, (c'est à dire) le CHEVAL que vous avez vendu.*

*Cette maison est mieux située que CELLE, (c'est à dire) la MAISON où je demeure.*

*Vos livres sont plus amusants que CEUX de votre sœur.*

*Les rues de Paris ne sont pas si larges, ni si commodes que CELLES de Londres.*

*The* — —, *the same as* - other —, agree in — and — with — which they represent ; ex.

*This* - is better than that, (i. e.,) the horse which - have sold.

*This* - is better situated than that, i. e., — house (in which) - live.

- books are more entertaining than those - - -.

*The streets* - — are not so broad, nor so commodious as those - London.

N. B. Les mots *THIS, THESE ; THAT, THOSE*, indiquent une distinction locale<sup>15</sup> que les mots CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES ne désignent pas ; (c'est pourquoi) lorsqu' on<sup>45</sup> veut marquer cette distinction en français, (il faut) ajouter aux mots CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES, la particule adverbiale<sup>16</sup> CI pour désigner un objet proche, et LÀ pour désigner un objet éloigné ; ex.

*Ce cheval-CI vaut mieux que CELUI-LÀ.*

*Cette maison-LÀ est mieux située que CELLE-CI.*

*Ces livres-CI sont plus amusants que CEUX-LÀ.*

*Ces rues-LÀ sont plus larges que CELLES-CI.*

N. B. *The* — this, these ; that, those, (point out) - — local<sup>15</sup> which - - celui, celle, ceux, celles denote not ; therefore when *we*<sup>45</sup> wish (to shew) that — —, (it is necessary) (to add) (to the) — celui,celle, ceux, celles, — adverbial<sup>16</sup> (ci, here,) to denote - object near, - (là, there,) - — — (far off) ; ex.

*This* — here is better - that there.

*That* - there is better situated than this here.

*These* — here are more — than those there.

*Those* - there are broader - these here.

45. CECI, CELA se trouvent aussi dans la classe des pronoms DÉMONSTRATIFS<sup>15</sup>. Ces mots représentent le substantif CHOSE sous-entendu, et peuvent se tourner par CETTE CHOSE-CI, CETTE CHOSE-LÀ ; ainsi quand je dis :

*CECI est bon ; c'est comme si je disais, CETTE CHOSE-CI est bonne.*

*CELA est mauvais ; c'est à dire, CETTE CHOSE-LÀ est mauvaise.*

(Ceci, this ;) (cela, that ;) are found - - class (of the) — —.

*These* - — — thing understood, - may be turned into this thing, that thing ; so when - - :

*This* is good ; it is (the same) as if - said this thing - good.

*That* - bad ; i. e. that thing - -.



Les pronoms INDÉFINIS sont des<sup>8</sup> mots qui servent (ainsi que) les autres pronoms à désigner les objets, mais d'une manière indéterminée<sup>13</sup>; comme quand je dis :

ON vient; QUELQU' UN vient;

Ces mots ON, QUELQU' UN, (bien qu') ils (se rapportent) à quelque personne, ne désignent personne en particulier.

The — indefinite are <sup>8</sup> N.B. —  
— — like — other —

to denote —, but in a —  
indeterminate<sup>13</sup>; as when I say :

People come; Somebody comes;

These — people, somebody, though they refer to some —,  
denote not (any body) in particular.

Les pronoms INDÉFINIS<sup>16</sup> sont (en assez grand nombre,) comme on le<sup>24</sup> verra dans la seconde partie de ce traité; mais je ne parlerai ici que du pronom ON, le plus usité de tous.

The — — are (rather numerous,) as we<sup>24</sup> it (shall see — — part of this treatise; but I (will speak) here only (of the) - On, most used of all.

46. ON désigne *quelqu' un, quelque personne*, et représente les mots ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, employés dans un sens indéfini; ainsi, quand je dis: ON vient; c'est comme si je disais, QUELQU'UN vient.

On denotes somebody, some person, - represents — — ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, used - a — —; so, when I say: one comes; it is (the same) as - - said, somebody —.

47. Les Anglais ont une autre manière indéfinie<sup>16</sup> de s<sup>24</sup> exprimer, au moyen du pronom indéfini<sup>16</sup> IT, que les Français expriment par ON; ex.

ON dit; ON croit; ON rapporte.

The English have another way — to themselves —, (by the) means (- -) — — IT, which the French express by On; ex.

It is said; - is believed; - is reported.

48. Les expressions passives<sup>16</sup> étant contraires au génie de la langue française, on y<sup>24</sup> supplée au moyen du pronom ON; ainsi, au lieu de dire comme les Anglais; J'AI ÉTÉ DIT que des nouvelles ONT ÉTÉ reçues; les Français disent;

ON m' a dit qu' ON a reçu des<sup>8</sup> nouvelles.

The expressions passive being contrary to the genius of — —, we them supply (by the) - (of the) - On, so, instead of saying like — —; I have been told that news has been received; — — say;

One - - told - - - received<sup>8</sup>N.B. news.

Voilà ce qui rend l'usage du pronom ON si fréquent, que vous trouverez (peu de<sup>8</sup>N.B.) pages où ce petit mot (ne se<sup>24</sup> présente) à vos yeux.

(It is) that which renders - - (of the). On so frequent, that you (will find) few pages (in which) this small - (itself will not present) - - eyes.

Remarquez que ON est toujours *nominatif* du verbe, et que, quoiqu' il représente souvent les mots WE, THEY, PEOPLE, qui sont du nombre pluriel<sup>16</sup>, il demande toujours le verbe à la troisième personne au singulier, comme on le<sup>24</sup> voit dans ces exemples;

ON vient; ON dit; ON croit;

ON pense; ON rapporte; ON a reçu, &c.

Remark that On is always nominative (of the) —, —, though it represents often — WE, THEY, PEOPLE, which are (of the) — —, it requires always — in - third — (in the) — as we it<sup>24</sup> see these —,

People come; — say, - believe; - think; — report; - have received.

## CHAP. VI.

## DES VERBES.

Le VERBE est un mot dont l'usage est de désigner l'existence, ou l'action des êtres qui sont le sujet de nos pensées.

The verb is — (of which) - use - to denote —, or — (of the) beings that are — of our thoughts.

L'existence; comme, JE suis, j'existe.  
L'action; comme, JE parle, JE chante, JE marche, JE bois, JE mange, &c.

The —; as, I am, I exist.  
—; as, I speak, I sing,  
- walk, - drink, - eat, &c.

Toute action demande un agent, c'est à dire, un être pour produire cette action, et cet agent s'appelle en grammaire le nominatif du verbe.

Every — requires - agent, that is to say, - being to produce —,  
- this — is called in grammar - — (of the) —.

Nous avons vu page 41, qu' (il y a) trois personnes, dont la première est celle qui parle; la seconde celle à qui on parle, et la troisième celle dont on parle.

We have seen - 41, that (there are) three —, (of which) - first - that who speaks; — that to whom we speak, - third - (of whom) - —.

49. Le verbe doit être du même nombre et de la même personne que le nominatif, et ceci s'appelle en grammaire accord du verbe avec son nominatif; ex.

The — must be (of the) same — of - same — as - —, - this is called in — agreement (of the) — with its —; ex

J'apprends; TU apprends; IL apprend; ELLE apprend.

I learn; thou learnest; he learns she learns.

MON FRÈRE apprend; MA SŒUR apprend.

- brother learns; - sister learns.

NOUS apprenons; VOUS apprenez.

- learn; - learn.

ILS ou ELLES apprennent; MES FRÈRES apprennent; MES SŒURS apprennent.

- learn; - brothers learn; - sisters learn.

Le nominatif du verbe se place tantôt avant, et tantôt après le verbe.

The — (-) — is placed sometimes before, — after —.

50. Dans les phrases qui ne sont pas interrogatives, le nominatif se place avant le verbe; ex.

In - sentences which are not interrogative, — is placed before —; ex.

J'apprends bien; TU apprends bien;

I learn well; - learnest well;

IL apprend bien; ELLE apprend bien.

- learns -; - learns —.

MON FRÈRE apprend bien; MA SŒUR apprend bien.

— — well; — — —.

NOUS apprenons bien; VOUS apprenez bien.

- learn -; - learn well.

ILS apprennent bien; ELLES apprennent bien.

- learn -; - learn well.

MES FRÈRES apprennent bien; MES SŒURS apprennent bien.

— — well; — — well.

## DES VERBES.

Mais quand la phrase est *interrogative*, c' est à dire, quand on fait une question, (il faut) considérer si le nominatif du verbe est un NOM ou un PRONOM.

But when — — —,  
i. e., - - - ask -  
-, (it is necessary) (to -) whether -  
— (of the) — - - noun or ..  
—.

51. Si, quand on<sup>46</sup> fait une *question*, le nominatif du verbe est un PRONOM personnel<sup>16</sup>, ou le pronom indéfini<sup>16</sup> ON ou CE, ces pronoms se placent en français comme en anglais après le verbe; ex. *Apprends-JE\* bien? Apprends-TU bien? Apprend-IL bien? Apprend-ELLE bien? Apprenons-NOUS? Apprenez-VOUS bien? Apprennent-ILS? Apprennent-ELLES bien? Que dit-ON? Est-ce là tout?*

If, — we<sup>46</sup> ask a —,  
— (of the) — - - —  
—, or — — — on  
or ce, these — are placed - —  
as — - - —; ex.  
Learn I\* well? Learnest thou —?  
Learns he —? Learns she —?  
Learn we —? Learn you —?  
Learn they —? Learn they —?  
What say people? Is that all?

52. Si, dans une phrase *interrogative*<sup>16</sup>, le nominatif du verbe est un NOM, on place ce nom avant le verbe, de même que si la phrase n'était pas interrogative; mais pour marquer qu' on fait une *question*, on ajoute après le verbe un des pronoms personnels<sup>16</sup> IL, ELLE, ILS, ou ELLES, suivant le genre et le nombre du nom qui est le nominatif du verbe; ex. *Votre FRÈRE apprend-IL\* bien? Votre SŒUR apprend-ELLE bien? Vos FRÈRES apprennent-ILS bien? Vos SŒURS apprennent-ELLES bien?*

If, in a sentence —,  
— (of the) — - - noun, we<sup>46</sup>  
— this — before —, the same  
as if — — was not —;  
but to shew that we ask — —,  
we add after — — one (of the)  
— — il, elle, ils,  
or elles, (agreeably to) — — and —  
(of the) — which — — (of the) —; \*  
- brother learns he\* well?  
- sister learns she —?  
- brothers learn they —?  
- sisters learn they —?

## CHAP. VII.

## DES ADVERBES.

Nous avons vu page 55, que le verbe est un mot qui sert à exprimer une *action*; mais comme la même *action* peut se faire de différentes<sup>13</sup> manières, on<sup>46</sup> a adopté certains mots auxquels on<sup>46</sup> a donné le nom d' ADVERBE, pour exprimer la manière dont se fait cette action; comme, *Je marche VITE; Tu marches LENTEMENT. Nous parlons BIEN; Vous parlez MAL.*

We have seen — —, that — —  
is — — — serves to express — —  
but as — same — may be performed  
in — manners, we<sup>46</sup> have adopted  
— — (to which) — — given —  
— —, to express —  
— (in which) is done this —; as,  
- walk fast; - walkest slowly  
- speak well; - speak badly.

\* When the English ask a question, they are obliged to have recourse to the signs *do, does, did*; as, *Do I learn well? Doest thou learn well? Does he learn well? Does your brother learn well? Does your sister learn well? Do we learn well? Do you learn well? Do they learn well? Do your brothers learn well? Do your sisters learn well? Did I learn well? &c.*; the French, as you see, do not require any signs, and when these signs occur in english, they must be left out in french.

DES ADVERBES.

Les mots VITE, LENTEMENT, BIEN, — fast, slowly, well,  
MAL sont des<sup>8</sup> ADVERBES. badly are - <sup>8</sup>N.B. adverbs

53. L'adverbe, étant (à l'égard du) — being (with respect to the)  
verbe ce que l'adjectif est à l'égard du — what<sup>10</sup> — is — —  
nom, c'est à dire, exprimant quelque —, i. e. expressing some  
circonstance du verbe, doit se placer im- — (of the) —, must be placed  
médiatement après le verbe; ex. — after —; ex.

*Je vis HIER votre sœur.*

— saw yesterday —.

*Elle parle TRÈS BIEN français.*

— speaks very well french.

*Elle aime FORT la lecture.*

— likes much .7 reading.

54. Les adverbes se placent souvent en — — are placed often in  
anglais, indifféremment avant ou après le —, indiscriminately before or after .  
verbe; comme, I OFTEN see him, or I —; as, - often - -, or -  
see him OFTEN. I VERY SELDOM speak to — often. - very seldom - -  
him, or I speak to him VERY SELDOM; —, or - - - - very seldom;  
en français, tous ces adverbes doivent in —, all these — must  
se placer après le verbe; ex. be placed after —; ex.

*Je (me promene) SOUVENT seul.*

— walk often alone.

*Je vais RAREMENT à la ville.*

— go seldom to town.

*Je vais TOUJOURS à la campagne.*

— go always into - country.

55. Les adverbes négatifs sont NE-PAS; The — negative are no, not;  
NE-POINT; NE-PLUS; NE-JAMAIS; NE- no, not; no more; never; but  
GUÈRE; NE-NULLEMENT; NE se place little; by no means; ne is placed  
toujours avant le verbe, et PAS, POINT, — before —, - pas, point,  
PLUS, JAMAIS, GUÈRE, NULLEMENT, com- plus, jamais, guère, nullement,  
me les autres adverbes, se placent im- like - other —, are placed  
médiatement après le verbe; ex. immediately after —; ex.

*Je NE l'<sup>24</sup> aime PAS or POINT.*

— her<sup>24</sup> love not.

*Je NE veux PLUS la<sup>24</sup> voir.*

— will no more her<sup>24</sup> see.

*Je NE lui<sup>24</sup> parlerai JAMAIS.*

— (to her)<sup>24</sup> (will speak) never.

*Je N' y<sup>24</sup> consens NULLEMENT.*

— (to it<sup>24</sup>) consent (by no means.)

*Vous N' y<sup>24</sup> avez GUÈRE pensé.*

— (of it) have (very little) thought.

CHAP. VIII.

DES PRÉPOSITIONS.

Les PRÉPOSITIONS sont des<sup>8</sup> mots The — are <sup>8</sup>N.B. words  
qui servent à exprimer le rapport que which — to express - relation -  
plusieurs mots de la même phrase ont several - of - same sentence have  
les uns aux autres; comme quand je dis; the one (to the) other; as when I say;

*Je viens DE Londres.*

— come from London.

*Je vais À Bath AVEC ma sœur.*

— (am going) to — with - sister.

*Je passerai CHEZ votre mère.*

— (will call) upon —.

*Je ne partirai pas SANS vous<sup>24</sup> voir.*

— will not set out without - seeing.

Les mots DE, À, AVEC, CHEZ, SANS, - de, à, avec, chez, sans,  
sont des<sup>8</sup> PRÉPOSITIONS qui servent are <sup>8</sup>N.B. — —



## DES PRÉPOSITIONS.

à exprimer le rapport qu' (il y a) entre le verbe qui les<sup>24</sup> précède, et le substantif qui les<sup>24</sup> suit, et à les<sup>24</sup> unir ensemble.

- — - relation - (there is) between  
- - - them<sup>24</sup> precedes, - - —  
- them follows, - to - unite together

56. Les prépositions se placent souvent en anglais indifféremment *avant* ou *après* le substantif qu'elles régissent ; comme,  
 WITH whom were you ? or,  
 Whom were you WITH ?  
 OF what do you speak ? or,  
 What do you speak OF ?

- — are placed often<sup>54</sup>  
 - - indiscriminately - or -  
 - — which they govern ; as,  
 With whom - ? or,  
 Whom - - with ?  
 Of what - - ? or,  
 What - - of ?

En français, les prépositions se placent toujours *avant* le mot qu'elles régissent ; ex.  
 AVEC qui était-il ? DE quoi parlez-vous ?

In —, - — are placed  
 always<sup>54</sup> - - - which - govern ; ex.  
 With whom was - ? Of what speak

## CHAP. IX.

## DES CONJONCTIONS.

Nous voyons page 57, que les prépositions servent à unir plusieurs mots ensemble pour en former une phrase ; les CONJONCTIONS servent à unir plusieurs phrases en une, et à exprimer le rapport qu'elles ont entre elles ; comme, quand je dis :

*J'irai à la ville, s'il fait beau tems.*

*Nous partirons QUAND vous voudrez.*

*Je n'irai pas (À MOINS QUE) vous ne veniez avec moi.*

Les mots SI, QUAND, À MOINS QUE sont des<sup>8</sup> CONJONCTIONS.

We see - 57, that - —  
 — to unite several - together,  
 to (of them) form - sentence ; -  
 — - to unite several  
 sentences in one, - to — -  
 relation which - - between them ; as  
 when I say :  
 - (shall go) to town, if it is fine weather  
 - (shall set out) when - like.  
 - (will go) not unless -  
 come with me.  
 - - si, quand, à moins que  
 are — <sup>8</sup> N.B. —.

Vous verrez dans la dernière partie de cet ouvrage, une liste des conjonctions avec leurs différents usages.

- (will see) in - last part -  
 this work, - list (of the) —  
 with their various uses.

*The learner having read the rules so far, must read them over again if he does not understand them well. But as he must now have some general idea of the difference in the construction, or arrangement of words in the two languages, he should try at the same time, to translate the following exercises into french. This will be the means of impressing the rules on his mind. If the exercise on each rule is found too long, he has no need to write any more than to be convinced that he understands it, and dwell only on such parts as seem to him the most difficult. If his time is not entirely taken up with these exercises, he should now peruse the verbs, that he may be able to go on without interruption when he comes to the exercises on the verbs, which he cannot write with ease or advantage before he has a general knowledge of the conjugations.*

AN  
INTRODUCTION  
TO  
FRENCH GRAMMAR

PART II.

---

EXERCISES

ON THE

RULES

CONTAINED IN THE FIRST PART.\*

---

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, as we have seen before, is like the english, composed of NINE different sorts of words, commonly known by the names of

NOUN,	PRONOUN,	PREPOSITION,
ARTICLE,	VERB,	CONJUNCTION,
ADJECTIVE,	ADVERB,	INTERJECTION.

---

\* The rules of syntax are too *numerous*, too full of *exceptions*, and *exceptions of exceptions* to be retained, or even understood all at once by tender or slow minds. The following exercises, upon the fundamental rules only, are intended to give a general idea of the language. The learner may write them whilst he is perusing the verbs, after which he may pass to the other exercises, which include every thing that can be reduced into rules in the french language.

## CHAP. I.

## NOUN.

EVERY WORD is called a NOUN which names a *being*, either REAL, as *sun, moon, earth, man, house, tree*; or IDEAL, as, *god, heaven, honour, &c.*

Nouns are distinguished into *proper* and *common*.

A noun *proper*, or *proper* name, is the CHRISTIAN or FAMILY name of a PERSON; as, *John, James, Voltaire, Shakespear*: of a RIVER; as, the *Thames, the Mersey*: of a PLACE; as, *Paris, London*: of a COUNTY; as, *Middlesex, Lancashire*: of a COUNTRY; as, *England, France, &c.*

Nouns *common*, or *common* names, are the names of beings in general, of which we know several; as, *man, woman, child, house, tree, river, city, country, horse, cow, sheep, dog, &c.*

N. B. In this class are comprised the abstract names of *virtue, vice, pleasure, pain, love, desire, fear, hatred, glory, honour*, and such like.

Two things are to be considered in nouns; the *gender* and the *number*. The *gender* is the distinction between the *sexes*.

All nouns in french are either *masculine* or *feminine*.

By *masculine* is meant the *male being*; as, *man, horse, bull, dog*.

By *feminine* is meant the *female being*; as, *woman, mare, cow, bitch*.

The names of beings whose sex is unknown, and of those *inanimate* beings, called *things*, which are of the *neuter gender* in english, are either *masculine* or *feminine* in french, as custom has fixed it.\*

There are *two* numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*.

A noun is *singular* when we speak of *one being only*; as, a book, *un livre*; a house, *une maison*; a tree, *un arbre*; a ship, *un navire, &c.*

A noun is *plural* when we speak of *more than one*.

N. B. The plural is generally formed in french as in english, by adding *s* to the singular; as, *des livres*, books; *des maisons*, houses; *des arbres*, trees; *des navires*, ships, &c.

Except the nouns ending in *s* or *x* in the singular, which are the same in the plural: as, *mon fils*, my son; *mes fils*, my sons; *une brebis*, a sheep; *des brebis*, sheep; *une noix*, a nut; *des noix*, nuts; *une voix*, a voice; *des voix*, voices.

Except also the nouns ending in *u*, which take *x* instead of *s* for the sign of the plural number; as, *chapeau*, hat; *chapeaux*, hats; *jeu*, game; *jeux*, games, &c.

And the nouns ending in *al, ail*, which change *l* or *il* into *ux* for the plural; as, *mal*, evil; *maux*, evils; *cheval*, horse; *chevaux*, horses; *général*, general; *généraux*, generals; *travail*, labour; *travaux*, labours.

---

\* The gender of these nouns is known by the *termination*; rules are given in the syntax how to discriminate it; until then, in the introductory exercises, the nouns *masculine* will be marked *m.*, the *feminine* will be marked *f.*

## CHAP. II.

## ARTICLE.

The *same noun* admitting *different meanings*, as for example; *THE bread, THE wine; SOME bread, SOME wine; THIS bread, THAT wine; MY bread, THY bread, HIS bread; MY wine, &c.* it was necessary to adopt some *signs* which would fix its proper meaning.

These *signs*, called *ARTICLE*, are various, and generally receive their appellation from the office which they perform in the sentence. They are called in this treatise,

*DEFINITE*, that which *defines* the object; as, *THE bread, THE wine.*

*PARTITIVE*, that which denotes *a portion* of the object; as, *SOME bread, SOME wine.*

*NUMERAL*, that which *numbers* the objects; as, *A* or *ONE shilling*.\*

*DEMONSTRATIVE*, that which *points out* the object; as, *THIS* or *THAT bread, THESE* or *THOSE clothes.*

*POSSESSIVE*, that which expresses the *possession* of the object; as, *MY bread, THY bread, HIS bread, HER bread, OUR bread, YOUR bread, THEIR bread; MY wine, THY wine, HIS wine, &c.*\*

*The signs called ARTICLE, are declined in french as follows:*

		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
		1 <i>Masculine.</i>	2 <i>Feminine.</i>	3 <i>Masc. and Fem.</i>
DEFINIT.	<i>THE;</i>	LE,	LA,	LES.
<i>Of, from</i>	<i>THE;</i>	DU,	de LA,	DES.
<i>To, at</i>	<i>THE;</i>	AU,	à LA,	AUX.
PARTIT.	<i>SOME;</i>	DU,	à LA,	DES.
NUMERAL	<i>A, AN;</i>	UN,	UNE,	
DEMONS.	<i>THIS, THAT;</i>	CE,	CETTE,*	
	<i>THESE, THOSE;</i>	...	....	CES.
POSSESS.	<i>MY;</i>	MON,	MA,*	MES.
	<i>THY;</i>	TON,	TA,	TES.
	<i>HIS, HER, ITS;</i>	SON,	SA,	SES.
	<i>OUR;</i>	NOTRE,	NOTRE,	NOS.
	<i>YOUR;</i>	VOTRE,	VOTRE,	VOS.
	<i>THEIR;</i>	LEUR,	LEUR,	LEURS

---

\* See note\* page 31, to which might be added all the *NUMBERS*, and the words *CHAQUE, each; TOUT, every; PLUSIEURS, several;* which exclude the article from the noun, and have the same property as the words generally known by the name of *ARTICLE*.





## ARTICLE and NOUN.

sister, *the* cousins. *The* complaisance of *the* brother, *the* modesty  
*sœur,* *cousins.* \* *complaisance f.* \* *modestie f*  
of *the* sister, *the* kindness of *the* cousins. *The* horse, *the* cow, *the*  
\* *bonté f.* *cheval,* *vache,*  
dogs. *The* bridle of *the* horse, *the* horns of *the* cow, *the* ears of *the*  
*chiens.* \* *bride f.* *cornes* *oreilles*  
dogs. Bring it to *the* horse, give it to *the* cow, leave it to *the* dogs.  
*Apportez-le* *donnez-le* *laissez-le*  
*The* nose, *the* mouth, *the* eyes. *The* tip of *the* nose, *the* size of  
\* *nez, m.* *bouche, f.* *yeux.* \* *bout m.* *grandeur f.*  
*the* mouth, *the* beauty of *the* eyes. A glass, a spoon, a knife, a  
*becuté f.* \* *verre, m.* *cuiller, f.* *couteau, m.*  
fork. Some wine, some beer, some glasses. *This* dinner, *this*  
*fourchette. f.* \* *vin, m.* *bière, f.* \* *dîner, m.*  
table, *these* dishes. *That* cheese, *that* bottle, *those* apples. *My* arm,  
*table, f.* *plats.* *fromage, m.* *bouteille, f.* *pommes.* † *bras, m.*  
*my* hand, *my* feet. *His* hat, *his* shirt, *his* stockings. *Her* apron,  
\* *main, f.* \* *pieds.* † *chapeau, m.* \* *chemise, f.* \* *bas.* \* *tablier, m.*  
*her* gown, *her* scissors. *Our* garden, *our* house, *our* fields. *Your*  
\* *robe, f.* \* *ciseaux.* *jardin, m.* *maison, f.* *champs.*  
umbrella, *your* watch, *your* gloves. *Their* coach, *their* servants.  
*parapluie, m.* *montre, f.* *gants.* *carrosse, m.* *domestiques.*

If the noun which follows the article is SINGULAR, and begins with a <sup>2</sup>  
VOWEL, or H mute, † whether it is MASCULINE or FEMININE, use

L'	LE,	LA ; as,	The	L'	Enfant. m.	L'	Histoire. f.
de L'	DU,	de LA ;	of The	de L'	Enfant.	de L'	Histoire.
à L'	AU,	à LA ;	to The	à L'	Enfant.	à L'	Histoire.
CET	CE ;	This or That	CET	Enfant.	CETTE	Histoire.	
MON	MA ;	My	MON	Enfant	MON	Histoire.	
TON	TA ;	Thy	TON	Enfant.	TON	Histoire.	
SON	SA :	His or Her	SON	Enfant.	SON	Histoire.	

CHILD. HISTORY.

## EXERCISE.

*The* air. *The* water. *My* slate. *Her* writing. *His* school. *Her*  
<sup>2</sup> *air.* <sup>2</sup> *eau.* <sup>2</sup> *ardoise.* <sup>2</sup> *écriture.* <sup>2</sup> *école.* <sup>2</sup>  
school. *This* man. *That* child. *This* tree. *That* bird. *The* ornament  
<sup>2</sup> *'homme.* *enfant.* *arbre.* *oiseau.* *ornement*  
of *the* mind. *The* history of *the* year. *The* wing of *the* bird. *He*  
*esprit.* <sup>2</sup> *'histoire* *année.* *aile* *Il*  
sacrificed *his* honour to *the* interest of *the* state. *She* has lost *the*  
*sacrificia* *'honneur* *intérêt* *état.* *Elle a perdu*  
affection of *her* friend. *Her* obstinacy is *the* cause of *his* inconstancy.  
*affection* <sup>2</sup> *ami.* *opiniâtreté* *est* <sup>1</sup> *cause f.* *inconstance.*

\* See note \* page 62. † See note \* page 83.

‡ The h mute is marked in these exercises with an apostrophe, this mark ' , before it.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

3 The signs called ARTICLE must be repeated before every noun in french agreeably to the gender and number of each noun, though the nouns are in the same sentence, and though the article is not repeated in english; as,

The father, mother and children are (gone out,)

Le père, la mère et les enfants sont sortis, i. e. the father, the &c.

Some bread, meat, money and clothes.

Du pain, de la viande, de l'argent et des habits, i. e. some bread, &c.

## EXERCISE.

Bring the bread and butter<sup>s</sup>; the tea and coffee<sup>s</sup>; some milk or  
 Apportez <sup>1</sup> pain m. et beurre; m. thé m. café; m. <sup>1</sup> lait m. ou  
 cream<sup>s</sup>; a cup and saucer<sup>s</sup>; a knife and fork<sup>s</sup>; some bread and  
 crème; f. tasse f. soucoupe; f. couteau m. fourchette; f.  
 cheese<sup>s</sup>; the dishes and plates<sup>s</sup>; the beans and bacon<sup>s</sup>; the pepper  
 fromage; m. <sup>1</sup> plat † assiette; † fève † lard; m. poivre m.  
 and salt<sup>s</sup>. My brother and sister<sup>s</sup> are (gone out.) His father and  
 sel. m. <sup>1</sup> frère sœur sont sortis. —\*  
 mother<sup>s</sup> are dead. She has lost her friends and relations<sup>s</sup>.  
 sont morts. Elle a perdu ami† parent.†

## PARTICULAR RULES.

4 The names of PERSONS and PLACES are used in french, as in english, without article; ex.

I like Voltaire,  
 London.

J'aime Voltaire,  
 Londres.

I speak of Voltaire,  
 of London.

Je parle de Voltaire,  
 de Londres.

I prefer it to Voltaire,  
 to London.

Je le préfère à Voltaire,  
 à Londres.

Observe that DE and À which are prefixed to Voltaire, Londres, are not articles; they are prepositions used to unite the noun to the verb.

## EXERCISE.

I have read almost all the<sup>1</sup> works of Voltaire and 'Rousseau.  
 J'ai lu presque toutes œuvres † (a)  
 I am reading now the<sup>1</sup> adventures of Telemachus the son of Ulysses  
 Je —\* lis à présent aventures Télémaque —\* fils † Ulysse  
 and Penelope. Have you ever been in London? Yes, I have, i. e., been.  
 (a) Pénélope. Avez-vous jamais été à Oui, j'y ai été  
 Is it as large as Paris? London is much larger than Paris.  
 Est-il aussi grand que est beaucoup plus grand que  
 London is the<sup>1</sup> largest city in Europe. Have you seen Naples? No;  
 plus grande ville f. de l' vu Non;  
 I have been at Florence and Rome, but I have not<sup>53</sup> been at Naples.  
 ai été à (a) mais je n'ai pas été

\* A dash, this mark (—), under a word shews that the word is not expressed in french agreeably to rules which will be seen in the last part of this work.

† See note † page 62.

(a) The preposition must be repeated before every noun in french, in the same way as the article.

‡ See note \* page 29

## ARTICLE and NOUN.

But the names of COUNTRIES and PROVINCES which are used without an article in english, require in french one of the signs LE, LA, LES; DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

I like	Portugal,	J'aime	LE Portugal,
	France,		LA France,
	England.		L' Angleterre.
I speak of	Portugal,	Je parle	DU Portugal,
	of France, &c.		de LA France, &c.
I prefer it to	Portugal,	Je le préfère	AU Portugal,
	to France, &c.		à LA France, &c.

## EXERCISE.

Italy<sup>5</sup> is the garden of Europe<sup>5</sup>. France<sup>5</sup> is also a fine country;  
<sup>2</sup>Italie\* est jardin m. <sup>2</sup>Europe.† France f. est aussi beau pays; m.  
 it lies between Spain<sup>5</sup>, Italy, Switzerland, Germany<sup>5</sup>, Holland<sup>5</sup>,  
 elle (est située) entre Espagne, <sup>5</sup> Suisse, f. <sup>5</sup> Allemagne, Hollande, f.  
 and England<sup>5</sup>. Spain, with all the gold of Mexico<sup>5</sup> and Peru<sup>5</sup>, is  
 et Angleterre. <sup>5</sup> avec tout <sup>2</sup> or Méridx m. (a) Pérou, m. n'est  
 not<sup>55</sup> so rich as France. Brazil<sup>5</sup> belongs to Portugal, Mexico to  
 pas si riche que <sup>5</sup> Brésil m. appartient <sup>5</sup> m. <sup>5</sup>  
 Spain, Canada<sup>5</sup> to England, Martinique<sup>5</sup> and Guadeloupe<sup>5</sup> to France.  
<sup>5</sup> Canada m. <sup>5</sup> Martinique f. Guadeloupe f. <sup>5</sup>

Observe however that the names of COUNTRIES are used without the article in french, when they come after verbs denoting dwelling or movement, such as to BE IN, to LIVE IN, to GO TO, to COME FROM; In these instances, IN, TO are expressed by EN, and FROM by DE; as,

He is	in	France.	<i>Il est</i>	EN	<i>France,</i>
	in	England.		EN	<i>Angleterre.</i>
He is going to	France,		<i>Il va</i>	EN	<i>France,</i>
	to	England.		EN	<i>Angleterre.</i>
He comes	from	France,	<i>Il vient</i>	DE	<i>France,</i>
	from	England.		D'	<i>Angleterre.</i>

## EXERCISE.

My brother lives in Switzerland and my sister in France. I intend  
 demeure <sup>6</sup> J' (ai dessein)  
 to go to France and Italy, (as soon) as the war is over. I come  
 d' aller <sup>6</sup> <sup>6</sup> (a) aussitôt que <sup>1</sup> guerre f. sera finie. Je viens  
 from Portugal, and I (am going) to Holland and England. Have you  
<sup>6</sup> Je vais <sup>6</sup> <sup>6</sup> (a) Avez - vous  
 ever been to Spain? No; I (am going) to Turkey and to Greece,  
 jamais été <sup>6</sup> Non; Je vais <sup>6</sup> Turquie <sup>6</sup> Grèce,  
 whence I (will pass) into Spain. I would rather go to Italy.  
 (d' où) je passerai en <sup>6</sup> J' aimerais mieux aller <sup>6</sup>

\* The figures at the top of the words or under the words, indicate the number of the paragraph where the rule concerning that word is to be found; if you do not perfectly recollect the rule, never omit to look for it, and read it every time with the example.

† The parts of the world follow the same rules as the names of countries.



ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

THE; LE, LA, LES, DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX.

7 All common names used in a GENERAL sense; as, BREAD is good; or in a PARTICULAR sense; as, the BREAD which I eat is good, must have before them one of the definite signs LE, LA, LES; DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; ex.

GENERAL sense, no article in english before the noun.

I like bread,

J'aime LE pain,

meat,

LA viande,

money,

L' argent,

clothes.

LES habits.

I speak of bread,

Je parle DU pain,

of meat, of clothes.

de LA viande, DES habits.

I prefer it to bread, to meat, &amp;c. Je le préfère AU pain, à LA viande, &amp;c.

PARTICULAR sense, in english THE before the noun.

I like the bread

J'aime LE pain

the meat

LA viande

the money

L' argent

the clothes

LES habits

I have.

que j'ai.

I speak of the bread &amp; meat I have. Je parle DU pain et de LA viande que j'ai.

I prefer it to the bread &amp; meat he has. Je le préfère AU pain et à LA viande qu'il a.

## EXERCISE.

Gold<sup>7</sup> and silver<sup>7</sup> are precious, but iron<sup>7</sup> and steel<sup>7</sup> are more useful.<sup>2</sup>or \* <sup>2</sup>argent sont précieux, mais fer m. <sup>2</sup>acier sont plus utiles.The gold and silver of Peru are purer<sup>18</sup> than that of Europe.<sup>3</sup>Pérou m. sont (plus purs) que celui <sup>2</sup>Modesty<sup>7</sup> and virtue are preferable to beauty and riches. I prefer modestie f. <sup>3</sup>vertu f. sont préférables <sup>7</sup>beauté f. (a)richesse. Je préfèrethe modesty and virtue of your sister, to the beauty and riches of your <sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>(a)</sup>cousin. Peace<sup>7</sup> and plenty<sup>7</sup> make men<sup>7</sup> happy. (Let us preserve) the <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup>peace and plenty which we enjoy. Patience and perseverance are <sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>7</sup> <sup>7</sup>necessary to happiness. I admire the patience and perseverance of <sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup>your brother. Pride<sup>7</sup> and vanity are generally the cause of the mis- <sup>2</sup> <sup>7</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup>fortunes of men. (Let us go) into the garden to see if the fruit is <sup>1</sup> <sup>7</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup>ripe. Which fruit do you<sup>51</sup> like best? Gooseberries or strawber- <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup>ries? I do not<sup>55</sup> like gooseberries; I like cherries and peaches. <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup>Children generally like fruit. I prefer milk<sup>7</sup> and cheese to fruit. <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup>

\* The figures annexed to the words indicate the rule which that word requires.

## ARTICLE and NOUN.

OF expressed by DE ; not by du, de la, des.

Observe that the preposition OF before a noun used in a GENERAL sense, preceded by another noun, used in a PARTITIVE sense, cannot be expressed by du, de la, des, which would render the expression particular and mean OF THE, it must be expressed by DE only, without any regard to gender or number ; as,

He gave me a pound of bread,	<i>Il me donna une livre</i>	DE pain,
a piece of meat,	<i>un morceau</i>	DE viande,
a bag of money,	<i>un sac</i>	D'* argent,
a heap of clothes.	<i>un tas</i>	D' habits.

Not, *Une livre DU pain ; Un morceau de LA viande, &c.* which would mean a pound of the bread ; a piece of the meat, &c.

N. B. In this rule must be included the following words, which, though they have no sign after them in english, require the connective particle DE to unite them to the noun which follows them :

ASSEZ, enough ;	as,	<i>Assez</i>	DE pain.
BEAUCOUP, much, many ;		<i>beaucoup</i>	DE viande.
COMBIEN, how much, how many ;		<i>combien</i>	D' argent.
TANT, so much, so many ;		<i>tant</i>	D' habits.
AUTANT, as much, as many ;		<i>autant</i>	DE pain.
PLUS, more ;		<i>plus</i>	DE viande.
MOINS, less ;		<i>moins</i>	D' argent.
TROP, too much, too many ;		<i>trop</i>	D' habits.
PEU, }	} little, few ;	<i>peu</i>	DE pain.
GUÈRE, †		<i>guère</i>	DE viande.
PAS, POINT, no, not ;		<i>pas, or point,</i>	D' argent.
JAMAIS, never ;		<i>jamais</i>	D' habits.

Not, *assez DU pain, &c.*, which would mean enough of the bread, &c.

## EXERCISE.

I have bought a pair of boots, and two pairs of shoes. Drink a  
*J'ai acheté 1 paire f. 8 botte, deux 8 soulier. Buvez 1*  
 glass of wine. Have a little patience<sup>8</sup>. This is (a day) of rest.  
*verre m vin. Ayez un peu N.B. C' est (aujourd'hui jour) 8 repos.*  
 I have many things<sup>8</sup> to do. I have no money<sup>8</sup>, and I have very  
*beaucoup chose N.B. à faire. Je n'ai pas argent N.B. j'ai très*  
 few friends<sup>8</sup>. You have more property<sup>8</sup> than I have. I have not<sup>55</sup>  
*peu ami. N.B. avez plus bien N.B. que moi — Je n'ai pas*  
 (so many) friends<sup>8</sup> as you. Your friends have (as much) interest<sup>8</sup> as  
*tant N.B. que ont autant crédit N.B. que*  
 mine. Give me little wine<sup>8</sup> and much water<sup>8</sup>. You give me<sup>24</sup>  
*les miens. Donnez-moi peu N.B. eau, N.B. Vous me 24 donnez*  
 (too much) wine<sup>8</sup> ; you do not<sup>55</sup> give me<sup>24</sup> water enough<sup>8</sup>. I never  
*trop N.B. vous — ne me 24 donnez pas assez. N.B. Je ne 55*  
 drink wine<sup>8</sup> without putting a (good deal) of water<sup>8</sup> (into it<sup>24</sup>.)  
*bois jamais N.B. sans y 24 mettre — beaucoup N.B. —.*

\* See note \* p. 23. † Observe that GUÈRE is used only in negative sentences.

9 If you want to express only a part of the substance of which you are speaking; as **SOME BREAD, SOME MEAT, &c.** use before the noun one of the *partitive signs* **DU, de LA, DES**, agreeably to gender and number. These signs are the same as those of the definite article **OF THE**; as,

He gave me some bread,	<i>Il me donna DU pain,</i>
some meat,	de LA viande,
some money,	de L' argent,
some clothes.	DES habits.

i. e. a portion of the bread, of the meat, of the money, of the clothes.

N. B. The sign **SOME** is often understood in english, before such nouns as bread, meat, money, &c., but the sign which represents it in french, cannot be omitted; and it must be repeated before every noun; as,

He gave me bread, meat, money, clothes; i. e. some bread, some meat.  
*Il me donna DU pain, de LA viande, de L' argent, DES habits.*

## EXERCISE.

The dinner is on the table. Will you have meat<sup>N.B.</sup> or fish<sup>N.B.</sup>?  
*dîner m. est sur f. Voulez-vous — viande f. ou poisson m.?*

Will you have some beef and cabbage; some mutton and turnips? I  
 — *beuf m. <sup>3</sup>choux; plur. mouton m. <sup>3</sup>navet? Je*

(shall eat) some fish and potatoes. Bring me some salt and pepper.  
*mangerai <sup>3</sup>(pommes de terre.) Apportez-moi sel m. <sup>3</sup>poivre. m.*

What will you drink? Will you have beer<sup>9</sup>, or cider<sup>9</sup>? I (will drink)  
*Que voulez-vous boire? — bière, f. ou cidre m.? Je boirai*

some wine and water<sup>3</sup>. Put some bread and cheese, on the table.  
*vin m. <sup>2</sup>eau. Mettez pain m. <sup>3</sup>fromage, m. sur f.*

Except. **SOME, ANY** expressed by **DE**; not by **du, de la, des**.

10 The *partitive signs* **DU, de LA, DES**, require the noun immediately after them; therefore if a noun used in a *partitive sense* is preceded by an **ADJECTIVE**, use **DE** before that adjective, for both genders and numbers, instead of **du, de la, des**, before the noun; as,

He gave me very good bread,	<i>Il me donna DE très bon pain,</i>
excellent meat,	D' excellente viande,
fine clothes.	DE beaux habits.

## EXERCISE.

(This is) <sup>10</sup>excellent wine, but (that is) <sup>10</sup>very bad beer. Have you any  
*Voici excellent vin, mais voilà très mauvaise bière. Avez-vous <sup>10</sup>*

good beer in France? No; but we have <sup>10</sup>good wine and good brandy.  
*bonne bière en Non; nous avons bon <sup>10</sup>bonne (eau de vie.)*

Good small beer is better than bad wine. You must have fine  
*<sup>10</sup>bonne petite bière est meilleure que <sup>10</sup>mauvais devez avoir <sup>10</sup>beau*

fruit in France. Yes; we have very fine fruit. (Are there) any large trees  
*en Oui; avons <sup>10</sup>très beau Y a-t-il <sup>10</sup>grands arbre*

in your garden? No; (There are only) young trees. Have you not  
*dans <sup>1</sup>jardin? Non; (il n'y a que) <sup>10</sup>jeunes N'avez-vous pas*

better pens to lend me? I have good pens, but bad<sup>10</sup> ink.  
*<sup>10</sup>meilleures plume à me<sup>24</sup> prêter <sup>24</sup>? J'ai <sup>10</sup>bonnes mais mauvaise encre.*

## ARTICLE and NOUN.

How to place *TWO NOUNS* together.

When *TWO NOUNS* come together, the French always place first the noun which is the subject of discourse, with *DU, de LA, DES, DE, or À,* before the second noun, agreeably to the sense in which it is used; as,

Peter's book,	Le livre <i>DE</i> Pierre.	
i. e. the book of Peter.		
Some London beer,	De la bière <i>DE</i> Londres.	} <i>DE, 4th rule, proper names.</i>
i. e. Some beer of London.		
The master's pen,	La plume <i>DU</i> maître.	
i. e. the pen of the master.		
The street door,	La porte <i>de LA</i> rue.	} <i>DU, de LA, 7th rule, particular sense.</i>
i. e. the door of the street.		
A gold watch,	Une montre <i>D'</i> or.	
i. e. a watch of gold.		
Some silk stockings,	Des bas <i>DE</i> soie.	} <i>DE, OF, 8th rule, general sense.</i>
i. e. Some stockings of silk.		

## EXERCISE.

Where is William's<sup>4</sup> hat? Have you seen Mary's<sup>4</sup> apron? *Où est Guillaume chapeau m.? Avez-vous vu Marie tablier m.?*  
 Will you drink a glass of Port<sup>4</sup> wine? Nature's<sup>7</sup> voice<sup>7</sup> proclaims *Voulez-vous boire verre m. vin? Nature f. voix f. proclame*  
 god's<sup>4</sup> power<sup>7</sup>. Ignorance<sup>7</sup> is the mother of error<sup>7</sup>. Have you seen my *dieu pouvoir. m. Ignorance mère erreur. vu*  
 father's horse<sup>7</sup>? I (will wait for you<sup>24</sup>) at the garden gate<sup>7</sup>, or (at the) *cheval? Je (vous<sup>24</sup> attendrai) à jardin m. porte, f. ou au*  
 corner of my sister's house<sup>7</sup>. Shut the kitchen door<sup>7</sup>, and open the *coin m. maison. f. Fermez cuisine f. porte, f. ouvrez*  
 parlour<sup>7</sup> window. Bring my gold<sup>8</sup> watch, and clean my silver<sup>8</sup> buckles. *salle f. fenêtre. f. Apportez<sup>1</sup> or montre, f. nettoyez<sup>1</sup> argent boucle.*

Sometimes however the order of the words could not be changed in english in the above manner, without changing also their meaning; for *ex.* A WINE glass, AN INK bottle, A TEA spoon, could not be changed into A glass of WINE, A bottle of INK, A spoon of TEA; yet the nouns require this order in french; but instead of *DE* between the two nouns, we use *À*.

N. B. This is done when the first noun denotes the use of the other; as,

A wine glass, i. e. a glass used for wine. *Un verre à vin.*  
 A tea spoon, i. e. a spoon used for tea. *Une cuiller à thé.*

## EXERCISE.

Give me the wine<sup>12</sup> bottle, and the water<sup>12</sup> pot. Put some wine<sup>12</sup> *Donnez-moi vin bouteille, f. eau pot. m. Mettez*  
 glasses on the table. Bring the tea<sup>12</sup> board and the coffee<sup>12</sup> cups. *verre sur table. f. Apportez thé cabaret m. café tasse.*  
 There is no powder<sup>8</sup> in my powder<sup>12</sup> bag. (Let us go) and sit *Il n'y a pas poudre<sup>N.B.</sup> dans sac. m. Allons — (nous asseoir)*  
 in the dining<sup>12</sup> room. Have you any fire<sup>12</sup> arms in your house? *dans dîner chambre. f. Avez feu arme maison f.?*



## ADJECTIVE.

AN ADJECTIVE is a word joined to a noun, to denote some *quality* or *circumstance* belonging to that noun; as, *good BREAD, bad MEAT, &c.*

**13** The ADJECTIVE must be of the same GENDER and NUMBER as the noun which it qualifies.

An adjective is made feminine by adding E mute to the masculine; as,

(That is) a pretty boy. *Voilà un JOLI garçon.*

(This is) a pretty girl. *Voici une JOLIE fille.*

He is well dressed. *Il est bien HABILLÉ.*

She is very well dressed. *Elle est très bien HABILLÉE.*

Except the adjectives ending in E mute, which are of both genders; as,

Un JEUNE homme AIMABLE. An amiable young man.

Une JEUNE femme AIMABLE. An amiable young woman.

And the adjectives in X, which change X into SE for the feminine; as,

Mon frère est PARESSEUX. My brother is lazy

Ma sœur est PARESSEUSE. My sister is lazy.

The PLURAL number of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, by adding S or X to the singular; see nouns, page 60. ex.

Une JOLIE fille. A pretty girl. Un BEAU chapeau. A fine hat.

De JOLIES filles. Pretty girls. De BEAUX chapeaux. Fine hats.

N.B. A past PARTICIPLE used to qualify a NOUN, or coming after the verb to BE to express an action or the state of the NOUN, follows the same rules as an adjective; ex.

My brother is gone out. *Mon frère est SORTI.*

My sister is gone out. *Ma sœur est SORTIE.*

## EXERCISE.

Your brother is *diligent*<sup>13</sup>; your sister is *diligent*<sup>13</sup>; your brothers are *diligent*<sup>13</sup>; your sisters are *diligent*<sup>13</sup>. Your father is *esteemed*<sup>13</sup>; your mother is *esteemed*<sup>13</sup>; your sons are *esteemed*<sup>13</sup>; your daughters are *esteemed*<sup>13</sup>. That boy is very *civil*<sup>13</sup>; that girl is very *civil*<sup>13</sup>; these gentlemen are very *civil*<sup>13</sup>; these ladies are very *civil*<sup>13</sup>. Our man servant is *lazy*<sup>13</sup>; our maid servant is *lazy*<sup>13</sup>; our men servants are *lazy*<sup>13</sup>; our maid servants are *lazy*<sup>13</sup>. My son is very *young*<sup>13</sup>; my daughter is very *young*<sup>13</sup>; my sons are very *young*<sup>13</sup>; my daughters are very *young*<sup>13</sup>. Your cousin is very *amiable*<sup>13</sup>; she is *officious*<sup>13</sup> and *complaisant*<sup>13</sup>.

\* The masculine singular only of adjectives is here given; the learner must make the adjective of the gender and number which the noun requires, agreeably to the above rules.

## ADJECTIVE.

If an adjective qualifies SEVERAL nouns SINGULAR of the SAME gender, 14  
that adjective must be of the SAME gender as those nouns, and PLURAL, as  
Her father and her uncle are angry. *Son père et son oncle sont FÂCHÉS.*  
Her mother and her aunt are angry. *Sa mère et sa tante sont FÂCHÉES.*

But if the nouns are of DIFFERENT genders, the adjective must be of 15  
the MASCULINE gender, and in the PLURAL number; as,  
Her father and mother are angry. *Son père et sa mère sont FÂCHÉS.*

## EXERCISE.

My mother and sister are ready. His daughter and his niece are  
<sup>1</sup> *et* <sup>3</sup> *sont prêt.* <sup>14</sup> <sup>1</sup> *filles* <sup>nièce</sup>  
 civil and obliging. Her son and daughter are dead<sup>15</sup>. The horse and  
 civil<sup>14</sup> *obligeant.*<sup>14</sup> <sup>1</sup> *fil* <sup>3</sup> *mort.\** *cheval*  
 the cow have escaped<sup>15</sup>. The gate and the door were open<sup>14</sup>. The  
*vache (se sont) échappé.\** <sup>1</sup> *barrière f.* *porte f. étaient ouvert.\**  
 man and the woman were gone. I found a glass and a bottle broken.  
*étaient parti\*.* *Je trouvai verre m. bouteille f. cassé.\**

Adjectives are generally placed in english BEFORE the NOUN; in french 16  
they are placed AFTER the NOUN; as,  
 A red coat. A round table. A new house.  
*Un habit ROUGE. Une table RONDE. Une maison NEUVE.*

Except these adjectives, which are generally placed BEFORE the NOUN; 17  
PREMIER, 1st; SECOND, 2d; and all the adjectives of NUMBER.

BEAU, BEL, m. } fine,  
 BELLE, fem. } handsome.

BON, m. BONNE, f. good.

GRAND, great, large.

GROS, m. GROSSE, f. big.

JEUNE, young.

JOLI, pretty.

A good husband.

Un BON mari.

A handsome woman.

Une BELLE femme.

MAUVAIS, bad.

MÉCHANT, wicked.

MEILLEUR, better.

MOINDRE, less.

PETIT, little, small.

TOUT, all, whole.

VIEUX, m. VIEILLE, f. old;†

A pretty little bird.

Un JOLI PETIT oiseau.

## EXERCISE.

England is a fruitful country. The english<sup>16</sup> nation has made several  
<sup>5</sup> *Angleterre est* <sup>1</sup> *fertile*<sup>16</sup> *pays. m.* <sup>1</sup> *anglais*<sup>13</sup> *nation f. a fait plusieurs*<sup>13</sup>  
 useful<sup>16</sup> discoveries. Your sister is a charming<sup>16</sup> woman. She has the  
*utile*<sup>13</sup> *découverte.* *est* <sup>1</sup> *charmant*<sup>13</sup> *femme.* *Elle a* <sup>1</sup>  
 most engaging<sup>16</sup> manners<sup>7</sup>. Does she<sup>51</sup> know the french<sup>16</sup> language?  
*plus engageant*<sup>13</sup> *manières. f.* — *sait - elle*<sup>51</sup> <sup>1</sup> *français*<sup>13</sup> *langue f.?*  
 I have met her near the white<sup>16</sup> house. She lives in a small<sup>17</sup>  
*Je* <sup>125</sup> *ai* *rencontrée* <sup>23</sup> *(près de)* <sup>1</sup> *blanche maison. f.* *demeure dans* <sup>13</sup>  
 house in a large garden. It is an old<sup>17</sup> house, and (there is) a bad<sup>17</sup> road  
*maison f.* <sup>1</sup> <sup>17</sup> *jardin. m.* *C' est* <sup>1</sup> *vieille* *il y a* *chemin m.*  
 to go (to it) but it is the best<sup>17</sup> situation in this neighbourhood.  
*pour y*<sup>24</sup> *aller* <sup>24</sup> *mais c' est* <sup>1</sup> *meilleu*<sup>13</sup> *f. dans* <sup>1</sup> *voisinage. m.*

\* A participle used to qualify a noun, follows the same rule as an adjective; 13 <sup>r</sup> N.B.

† Add to them MÊME, same, and PLUSIEURS, several, which also come before the noun.

## ADJECTIVE.

## COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

The same words which serve to *qualify* nouns, serve also by the means of *certain* ADVERBS to COMPARE their qualities.

18 The comparative of SUPERIORITY, MORE before the adjective, or R or ER added to it, is formed in french by PLUS\* before the adjective; as,  
I am more strong, or stronger than you. *Je suis PLUS fort QUE vous.*

19 The comparative of INFERIORITY, LESS, or NOT so before the adjective, is formed by MOINS†, or PAS SI before the adjective; as,  
I am less strong than you. *Je suis MOINS fort QUE vous.*  
I am not so strong as you. *Je ne suis PAS SI fort QUE vous.*

20 The comparative of EQUALITY, formed by AS before the adjective is formed in french by AUSSI before the adjective; as,  
I am as strong as you. *Je suis AUSSI fort QUE vous.*

21 The superlative MOST or LEAST before the adjective, or ST or EST added to it, is formed by adding LE, LA, LES, to the comparative words PLUS, MOINS, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,  
My brother is the strongest. *Mon frère est LE PLUS fort.*  
My sister is the least strong. *Ma sœur est LA MOINS forte.*

## EXERCISE.

The country is more pleasant than the town. My horse is younger  
<sup>1</sup> campagne f. est <sup>18</sup> agréable que <sup>1</sup> ville. f. <sup>1</sup> cheval <sup>18</sup> jeune  
and runs faster than yours. That<sup>1</sup> house is larger<sup>18</sup> and more  
court vite <sup>18</sup> le vôtre. maison-là f. grand <sup>13</sup> <sup>19</sup>  
convenient than this<sup>44</sup>, but this<sup>44</sup> is better built. You write better  
commode celle-ci, celle-ci (b) bâti.<sup>13</sup> écrivez (b)  
than I do, because you have <sup>10</sup>better pens. Vice<sup>7</sup> is less dangerous  
moi —, parceque (b) plume. f. Vice m. <sup>19</sup> dangereux  
than hypocrisy<sup>7</sup>. She is not so handsome as her sister, but she is more  
<sup>2</sup>hypocrisie. Elle n'est pas <sup>19</sup> belle <sup>19</sup> sœur, elle est  
amiable. She is as rich as you. She is the handsomest woman in  
aimable. <sup>20</sup> riche <sup>20</sup> <sup>1</sup> belle <sup>21</sup> (c)  
the town. Her father is the proudest<sup>21</sup> man that I have ever known.  
ville. f. orgueilleux<sup>16</sup> que aie (d) jamais connu.

\* Except MEILLEUR, better; PIRE, worse; adjectives, } which are comparative of  
MIEUX, better; PIS, worse; adverbs, } themselves.

† Except MOINDRE, less;

(b) Beginners are apt to mistake the words MEILLEUR & MIEUX, which are both expressed by BETTER.

MEILLEUR, better, is the comparative of BON, good, an adjective, and is added to nouns; as,

My pen is good, yours is better. *Ma plume est BONNE, la vôtre est MEILLEURE.*  
MIEUX, better, is the comparative of BIEN, well, an adverb, and is added to verbs; as,  
I write well, but you write better. *J' écris BIEN, mais vous écrivez MIEUX.*

(c) IN, after a superlative, is expressed in french in the same manner as OF; ex.

She is the finest woman in the town. *C' est la plus belle femme de LA ville.*

(d) QUI, QUE, DONT, after a superlative require the verb in the subjunctive; as,  
She is the finest woman I have ever seen. *C' est la plus belle femme que j' AIE jamais vue.*

CHAP. V.  
PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is a word used to *represent* a NOUN; as when I say, *I*, instead of naming my *own name*, *THOU*, *YOU*, *HE*, *SHE*, *IT*, *THEY*, instead of naming that of *another being*.

There are various sorts of pronouns, generally known by the names of PERSONAL, RELATIVE, POSSESSIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE, INDEFINITE.

## OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS are either *agents* or *nominatives* of VERBS, or they are *objects*.

The *nominat.* are, *I*, *THOU*, *HE*, *SHE*, *IT*, *WE*, *YE*, *YOU*, *THEY*.  
The *objects* are, *ME*, *THEE*, *HIM*, *HER*, *IT*, *US*, *YOU*, *THEM*.

## OF AGENTS or NOMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

When *I*, *THOU*, *HE*, *SHE*, *IT*, *WE*, *YOU*, *THEY*, are the nominative of a verb, i. e. when there is before or after them, a verb of the same number and person that agrees with them, they are, 22

<i>I</i> .	<i>JE</i> .	<i>HE, IT</i> .	<i>IL</i> .
<i>THOU</i> .	<i>TU</i> .	<i>THEY, mas.</i>	<i>ILS</i> .
<i>WE</i> .	<i>NOUS</i> .	<i>SHE, IT</i> .	<i>ELLE</i> .
<i>YOU</i> .	<i>VOUS</i> .	<i>THEY, fem.</i>	<i>ELLES</i> .

N. B. The nominative pronouns keep the same place in the sentence in french as in english; ex.

*I* have. *thou* hast. *he* has, &c. have *I*? hast *thou*? has *he*? &c.  
*J'ai*. *tu* as. *il* a, &c. *ai-JE*? *as-TU*? *a-t-IL*? &c.

## EXERCISE.

*I* speak. *Thou* writest. *He* plays. *She* sings. *We* walk. *You* dance.  
*parle.* *écris.* *joue.* *chante.* *marchons.* *dansez.*  
*They* study. Have *you* done? Is *he* come? Are *they* gone?  
*étudiant.* *Avez* *fini*? *Est* *venu*? *Sont* *partis*?

If *I*, *THOU*, *HE*, *SHE*, *WE*, *YOU*, *THEY*, have not a verb to agree with them, or if they are joined to another substantive,\* they are, 23

<i>I</i> .	<i>MOI</i> .	<i>HE</i> .	<i>LUI</i> .
<i>THOU</i> .	<i>TOI</i> .	<i>THEY, mas.</i>	<i>EUX</i> .
<i>WE</i> .	<i>NOUS</i> .	<i>SHE, IT</i> .	<i>ELLE</i> .
<i>YOU</i> .	<i>VOUS</i> .	<i>THEY, fem.</i>	<i>ELLES, ex.</i>

It is *I* who have done that. *C'est moi qui ai fait cela.*  
*He* and *I* have done that. *Lui et moi nous avons fait cela.*  
*You* and *they* have done that. *Vous et eux vous avez fait cela.*

## EXERCISE.

Who has done that? It is not<sup>55</sup> *I*; it is *he*. It was neither  
*Qui a fait cela?* *Ce n'est pas* <sup>23</sup> *c'* <sup>23</sup> *est* <sup>23</sup> *Ce n'était ni*  
*he* nor *I*, it was either *you* or *they*. *He* and *I* were together.  
<sup>23</sup> *ni* <sup>23</sup> *c'* <sup>23</sup> *était* <sup>23</sup> *ou* <sup>23</sup> *ou* <sup>23</sup> *étaient ensemble.*  
*I* can do that better than *he*. You can not do it<sup>24</sup> better than *I*.  
<sup>22</sup> *puis* *faire* *cela* (b) *que* <sup>23</sup> *ne* *pouvez* *pas* *le*<sup>24</sup> *faire* (b) <sup>23</sup>

\* By substantive is meant here every word which either names or represents a substance



## AN INTRODUCTION

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

## OF OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

A TABLE shewing how the OBJECTIVE pronouns are expressed, according to the PLACE which they keep with the VERB.

		Before the verb. 24, 25, 27, rules.	After the verb. 26 rule.	After a preposition. 28 rule.
ME,	}			
to ME.		ME.	MOI.	MOI.
THEE,	}			
to THEE.		TE.	TOI.	TOI
HIMSELF, HERSELF, ITSELF, THEMSELVES.	}	SE.		SOI.
		Whether before or after the verb, 24, 25, 26, 27 rules.		
US,	}			
to US.		NOUS.		NOUS.
YOU,	}			
to YOU.		VOUS.		VOUS
HIM, IT; mas.	}	LE.		LUI.
HER, IT; fem.		LA.		ELLE.
THEM.		LES.		{ EUX, m. ELLES, f.
to HIM,	}	LUI.		
to HER.				
to THEM.		LEUR.		
of, from,	{ IT, THEM.	EN.		
for, with				
to, at,	{ IT, THEM.	Y. (e)		
in, by				

This table shews in one point of view all the rules concerning the OBJECTIVE pronouns.

These pronouns, as you see in the table above, are sometimes governed by verbs, and sometimes by prepositions.

When the objective pronouns are governed by a verb, they are placed invariably before that verb. See rules 24, 25 and 27.

Except when the verb commands, for then the pronouns must be placed after the verb, and moi, toi must be used, instead of ME, TE. See rule 26.

If the pronouns are governed by a preposition, they are then independent of the verb, and must be placed after the preposition. See rule 28.

---

(e) EN, Y, are also adverbs of place, used, EN for THENCE; Y for THERE, THITHER, and they follow the same rules as the pronouns.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

The ORDER which the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep with the VERB.

## GENERAL RULE.

24

When the PRONOUNS ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM, are governed by a verb, the pronouns ME, TE, NOUS, VOUS, LE, LA, LES, LUI, LEUR, EN, Y, which represent them, must be placed immediately BEFORE that verb; ex.

He sees <i>me</i> .	<i>Il</i> ME voit.	literally he <i>me</i>	} sees.
<i>thee</i> .	<i>Il</i> TE voit.	he <i>thee</i>	
<i>us</i> .	<i>Il</i> NOUS voit.	he <i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> .	<i>Il</i> VOUS voit.	he <i>you</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> .	<i>Il</i> LE voit.	he <i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> .	<i>Il</i> LA voit.	he <i>her, or it</i>	
<i>them</i> .	<i>Il</i> LES voit.	he <i>them</i>	
Does he see <i>me</i> ?	ME voit-il?	<i>me</i>	} sees he?
<i>thee</i> ?	TE voit-il?	<i>thee</i>	
<i>us</i> ?	NOUS voit-il?	<i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> ?	VOUS voit-il?	<i>you</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> ?	LE voit-il?	<i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> ?	LA voit-il?	<i>her, or it</i>	
<i>them</i> ?	LES voit-il?	<i>them</i>	

He does not see <i>me</i> ; &c.	<i>Il</i> ne ME voit pas.	he <i>me</i> sees not.
Does he not see <i>me</i> ? &c.	Ne ME voit-il pas?	<i>me</i> sees he not?
Does he not see <i>thee</i> ? &c.	Ne TE voit-il pas?	<i>thee</i> sees he not?

## EXERCISE.

I see *you*. I see *him*. I see *her*. I see *them*. Do you<sup>st</sup> see *me*?  
 vois<sup>24</sup>      24      24      24      — voyez - vous<sup>24</sup>

Do you see *us*? Do you see *him*? Do you see *her*? Do you see  
 — 51      24      — 51      24      — 51      24      — 51

*them*? I do not<sup>55</sup> know *you*. I do not know *him*. I do not know  
 24      — ne connais pas<sup>24</sup>      — 55      21      — 55

*her*. I do not know *them*. Do you<sup>st</sup> not know *me*? Do you<sup>st</sup>  
 24      — 55      24      — ne connaissez-vous pas<sup>24</sup>?      — 51

not know *us*? Do you not know *him*? Do you not know *her*?  
 55      24?      — 55      24?      — 55      24

Do you not know *them*? I meet *them* sometimes, but I do not<sup>5</sup>  
 — 55      24?      rencontre<sup>24</sup>      quelquefois,      — ne

speak (to *them*). Have you seen your mother lately? I saw *her*  
 parle pas — leur<sup>24</sup>. Avez vu depuis peu? vis<sup>24</sup>

yesterday. Did she<sup>st</sup> bring *you* any thing? She brought *me* a  
 hier. — apportait-elle<sup>24</sup> quelque chose? — apportait<sup>24</sup>

n<sup>ew</sup> book. Did you<sup>st</sup> tell *her* that I wished to see *her*?  
 nouveau livre. m. — dites-vous lui<sup>24</sup> que souhaitais — voir la<sup>24</sup>?

I told *her* that we (should go) to see *her* on sunday. What did  
 dis lui<sup>24</sup> que irions — voir la<sup>24</sup> — dimanche. Que

she<sup>st</sup> say to you? She told *me* that she (would be) glad to see *us*  
 dit-elle — 24      dit<sup>24</sup> qu'elle servirait (bien aise) de voir<sup>24</sup>

*The ORDER which the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep with the VERB.*

## GENERAL RULE.

**25** If the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM* are governed by a verb compounded of the auxiliary verbs *HAVE, OR BE*; and of a participle past, the pronouns *ME, TE, NOUS, VOUS, LE, LA, LES, LUI, LEUR, EN, Y*, which represent them, must be placed BEFORE the auxiliary verb; not between the auxiliary and the participle; as,

He has seen <i>me</i> .	<i>Il M'</i> <sup>*</sup> <i>a vu.</i>	literally he <i>me</i>	} has seen.
<i>thee</i> .	<i>Il T'</i> <i>a vu.</i>	he <i>thee</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> .	<i>Il L'</i> <i>a vu.</i>	he <i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> .	<i>Il L'</i> <i>a vue.</i>	he <i>her, or it</i>	
<i>us</i> .	<i>Il NOUS a vus.</i>	he <i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> .	<i>Il VOUS a vus.</i>	he <i>you</i>	
<i>them</i> .	<i>Il LES a vus.</i>	he <i>them</i>	} has he seen?
Has he seen <i>me</i> ?	<i>M'</i> <i>†a-t-il vu?</i>	<i>me</i>	
<i>thee</i> ?	<i>T'</i> <i>a-t-il vu?</i>	<i>thee</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> ?	<i>L'</i> <i>a-t-il vu?</i>	<i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> ?	<i>L'</i> <i>a-t-il vue?</i>	<i>her, or it</i>	
<i>us</i> ?	<i>NOUS a-t-il vus?</i>	<i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> ?	<i>VOUS a-t-il vus?</i>	<i>you</i>	
<i>them</i> ?	<i>LES a-t-il vus?</i>	<i>them</i>	
He has not seen <i>me</i> ; &c.	<i>Il ne M'a pas vu.</i>	he <i>me</i> has not seen.	
Has he not seen <i>me</i> ? &c.	<i>Ne M'a-t-il pas vu?</i>	<i>me</i> has he not seen?	

## EXERCISE.

I have seen *you*. I have seen *him*. I have seen *her*. I have  
*ai vu* <sup>25</sup> *vu* <sup>25\*</sup> *vue* <sup>25\*</sup>  
 seen *them*. Have you seen *me*? Have you seen *us*? Have you seen  
*vus* <sup>25</sup> *Avez-vous vu* <sup>25\*</sup> *vus* <sup>25?</sup> *vu*  
*him*? Have you seen *her*? Have you seen *them*? Where have you  
<sup>25\*</sup> <sup>vue</sup> <sup>25\*</sup> <sup>vus</sup> <sup>25?</sup> *Où*  
 seen *him*? I have met *him* at the door. He had seen *me*  
*vu* <sup>25\*</sup> *rencontré* <sup>25\*</sup> *à* *porte. f.* *avait vue* <sup>25\*</sup>  
 (coming out) of the house. He has kept *me* all this while. I would  
*sortir* <sup>1</sup> *maison. f.* *retenue* <sup>25</sup> *tout* <sup>1</sup> *tems. m.* —  
 have told *him*<sup>25</sup> that I wanted to go. I have told *him*<sup>25</sup> that you  
*aurais dit lui † que voulais, — (m'en aller.)* *dit lui † que*  
 had forbid *me* to stop. I have heard *you*. Had you never<sup>35</sup>  
*aviez défendu* <sup>25</sup> *de m'arrêter.* *entendus* <sup>25</sup> *Ne aviez - vous jamais*  
 seen *him* before? I had met *him* once or twice, but I had  
*vu* *le*<sup>25\*</sup> *auparavant?* *avais rencontré* *le*<sup>25\*</sup> *une* *ou* *deux fois, mais ne avais*  
 never<sup>35</sup> spoken (to *him*), and he had never<sup>35</sup> spoken (to *me*.) I have  
*jamais parlé — lui*<sup>25</sup> *ne avait jamais* — <sup>25</sup>  
 written (to *him*) this morning, but he has not<sup>35</sup> yet answered *me*.  
*écrit — lui*<sup>25</sup> <sup>1</sup> *matin, m.* *ne a pas encore* (fait réponse) <sup>25</sup>.

\* See note \* page 28

† See note \* page 43

‡ See note (f) page 79.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

The ORDER which the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep with the VERB.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1st Exception. When the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS ME, THEE, US, YOU, 26

HIM, HER, IT, THEM are governed by the IMPERATIVE of a verb used in a COMMANDING sense, i. e. without a negation, the pronouns which represent them, are placed immediately AFTER the verb;

In these instances ME is expressed by MOI, and THEE by TOI.

But if the IMPERATIVE is used in a FORBIDDING sense, i. e. if it is 27  
attended by a negation, the pronouns must be placed immediately BEFORE the verb, agreeably to the general rule;

Then ME is expressed by ME, and THEE by TE; ex.

Imperative COMMANDING, 26 rule.

Imperative FORBIDDING, 27 rule.

Look at me.

Regarde-MOI.

Ne ME

} regarde pas.

thyself.

TOI.

Ne TE

} regardez pas.

Look at us.

Regardez-NOUS.

Ne NOUS

} regardez pas.

yourself.

VOUS.

Ne VOUS

} regardons pas.

Let us look at him, or it.

Regardons-LE.

Ne LE

} regardons pas.

her, or it.

LA.

Ne LA

} regardons pas.

th-m.

LES.

Ne LES

} regardons pas.

## EXERCISE.

Speak to me.

Do not<sup>55</sup> speak to me.

Do not interrupt me.

Warm

Parlez — <sup>26</sup>

— ne

pas — <sup>27</sup>

— <sup>55</sup> interrompez <sup>27</sup>

Chauffe

thyself a little.

Do not warm thyself (so much.)

Write to her.

Do

<sup>26</sup> un peu.

— <sup>55</sup>

<sup>27</sup> tant.

Ecrivez — lui<sup>26</sup>.

—

not write to her.

Send it (to him.)

Do not send it to him.

—

<sup>55</sup> — <sup>27</sup>

Envoyez-le<sup>26</sup> — lui<sup>26</sup>

— <sup>55</sup> le<sup>27</sup> — lui<sup>27</sup>.

—

2d Exception. The OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS are not always governed by 28

verbs, they are sometimes governed by a preposition which some verbs require to be united to the substantive\* that follows them; then the pronoun being the object of the preposition, and not the object of the verb, it is placed after the preposition, and we express

ME, by

MOI.

US, by

NOUS.

THEE, by

TOI.

YOU, by

VOUS.

HIM, by

LUI.

THEM, m. by

EUX.

HER, by

ELLE.

THEM, fem. by

ELLES; ex.

Was he speaking of me?

Parlait-il de MOI?

I will not go with him.

Je n' irai pas avec LUI.

He is come without her.

Il est venu sans ELLE.

He applied to them.

Il s'adressa à EUX, m. à ELLES, f.†

## EXERCISE.

Come to me.

I do not<sup>55</sup> care for thee.

I went to her, and she

Viens à <sup>28</sup>

— ne

me soucie pas de <sup>28</sup>

allai <sup>28</sup>

et

sent me to him.

I will not go with them.

I am tired of them.

envoya <sup>24</sup>

— <sup>28</sup>

— <sup>55</sup> irai avec <sup>28</sup>

ennuyé d' <sup>28</sup>

Have you thought of me?

I always<sup>54</sup> think of you.

Avez

pensé à <sup>28</sup>

toujours

pense à <sup>28</sup>

\* See note \* page 73. † This is more fully explained in the third part of this work.



## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

The ORDER which SEVERAL OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep TOGETHER.

29

When SEVERAL OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS are governed by the same verb they must be placed TOGETHER in the following order :

Before the verb, 24, 25 rules. After the verb, 26 rule. Whether bef. or aft. the verb ; 24, 25, 26, 27 rules.

ME	} bef. LE LA, LES, Y, EN.	LE,	} bef. MOI TOI.	ME,	} bef. EN.
NOUS,		LA,		TE,	
TE,		LES,			
VOUS,		Y,			
SE,					

Whether before or after the verb, 24, 25, 26, 27 rules.

LE,	} bef. LUI, LEUR, Y, EN.
LA,	
LES,	

LUI,	} bef. Y, EN.
LEUR,	

Y,	bef. EN.*
----	-----------

\* Having uniformly observed that the arrangement of several pronouns together is one of those rules which learners find the greatest difficulty to attain, I have given examples shewing how several pronouns are placed together in all possible instances, by the means of which errors may always be rectified.

BEFORE the verb, 24, 25 rules. AFTER the verb, 26 rule.

## FIRST PERSON.

## IMPERATIVE COMMANDING.

He gave him or it to me.	Il ME LE donna.	Donnez-LE-MOI.	Give it me, &c. Send me there, &c.
He gave her or it to me.	Il ME LA donna.	Donnez-LA-MOI.	
He gave them to me.	Il ME LES donna.	Donnez-LES-MOI.	
He gave me some.	Il M' EN donna.	Donnez-M' EN.	
He gave him or it to us.	Il NOUS LE donna.	Donnez-NOUS-LE.	
He gave her or it to us	Il NOUS LA donna.	Donnez-NOUS-LA.	
He gave them to us.	Il NOUS LES donna.	Donnez-NOUS-LES.	
He gave us some.	Il NOUS EN donna.	Donnez-NOUS-EN.	
He sent me there.	Il M' y envoya.	Envoyez-Y-MOI.	
He sent him, her, or it to me there.	Il ME L' y envoya.	Envoyez-L' Y-MOI.	
He sent them to me there.	Il ME LES y envoya.	Envoyez-LES-Y-MOI.	Represent it to thee, &c.
He sent me some there.	Il M' y EN envoya.	Envoyez-Y-EN-MOI.	
He sent us there.	Il NOUS y envoya.	Envoyez-NOUS-Y.	
He sent him, her, or it to us there.	Il NOUS L' y envoya.	Envoyez-NOUS-L' Y.	
He sent them to us there.	Il NOUS LES y envoya.	Envoyez-NOUS-LES-Y.	
He sent some to us there.	Il NOUS Y EN envoya.	Envoyez-NOUS-Y-EN.	

## SECOND PERSON.

He gave him or it to thee.	Il TE LE donna.	Représente-LE-TOI.	Represent it to thee, &c.
He gave her or it to thee.	Il TE LA donna.	Représente-LA-TOI.	
He gave them to thee.	Il TE LES donna.	Représente-LES-TOI.	
He gave thee some.	Il T' EN donna.	Représente-T' EN.	
He gave him or it to you.	Il VOUS LE donna.	Représentez-VOUS-LE.	
He gave her or it to you.	Il VOUS LA donna.	Représentez-VOUS-LA.	
He gave them to you.	Il VOUS LES donna.	Représentez-VOUS-LES.	
He gave you some.	Il VOUS EN donna.	Représentez-VOUS-EN.	
He sent thee there.	Il T' y envoya.		
He sent him, her, or it to thee there.	Il TE L' y envoya.		
He sent them to thee there	Il TE LES y envoya.		Transportez-VOUS-Y.
He sent some to thee there.	Il T' y EN envoya.		
He sent you there.	Il VOUS y envoya.		
He sent him, her, or it to you there.	Il VOUS L' y envoya.		
He sent them to you there.	Il VOUS LES y envoya.		
He sent some to you there.	Il VOUS Y EN envoya.	Informez-VOUS-Y-EN.	

## THIRD PERSON.

He recalls him or it to himself.	Il SE LE rappelle.
He recalls her or it to himself.	Il SE LA rappelle.
He recalls them to himself.	Il SE LES rappelle.
He repents of it, of them.	Il S' EN repent.
He applies himself to it to them.	Il S' Y applique.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

*The ORDER which SEVERAL OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep TOGETHER.*

BEFORE the verb, 24, 25 rules. AFTER the verb, 26 rule.

## THIRD PERSON.

He has given him or it to him, to her.	<i>Il</i> LE LUI a donné.	Donnez-LE-LUI.	Give it him, &c.
He has given her or it to him, to her.	<i>Il</i> LA LUI a donnée.	Donnez-LA-LUI.	
He has given them to him, to her.	<i>Il</i> LES LUI a donnés.	Donnez-LES-LUI.	Send it to him there, &c.
He has given him or it to them.	<i>Il</i> LE LEUR a donné.	Donnez-LE-LEUR.	
He has given her or it to them.	<i>Il</i> LA LEUR a donnée.	Donnez-LA-LEUR.	
He has given them to them.	<i>Il</i> LES LEUR a donnés.	Donnez-LES-LEUR.	
He warned him, or her of it.	<i>Il</i> L' EN avertit.	Avertissez-L' EN.	
He warned them of it.	<i>Il</i> LES EN avertit.	Avertissez-LES-EN.	
He sent him, her or it there.	<i>Il</i> L' Y envoya.	Envoyez-L' Y.	
He sent them there.	<i>Il</i> LES Y envoya.	Envoyez-LES-Y.	
He sent him or it to him, to her there.	<i>Il</i> LE LUI Y envoya.	Envoyez-LE-LUI-Y.*	
He sent her or it to him, to her there.	<i>Il</i> LA LUI Y envoya.	Envoyez-LA-LUI-Y.	
He sent them to him, to her there.	<i>Il</i> LES LUI Y envoya.	Envoyez-LES-LUI-Y.	
He sent him or it to them there.	<i>Il</i> LE LEUR Y envoya.	Envoyez-LE-LEUR-Y.	
He sent her or it to them there.	<i>Il</i> LA LEUR Y envoya.	Envoyez-LA-LEUR-Y.	
He sent them to them there.	<i>Il</i> LES LEUR Y envoya.	Envoyez-LES-LEUR-Y.	
He sent some to him, to her.	<i>Il</i> LUI EN envoya.	Envoyez-LUI-EN.	
He sent some to them, or them some.	<i>Il</i> LEUR EN envoya.	Envoyez-LEUR-EN.	
He sent some to him, to her there.	<i>Il</i> LUI Y EN envoya.	Envoyez-LUI-Y-EN.	
He sent some to them there.	<i>Il</i> LEUR Y EN envoya.	Envoyez-LEUR-Y-EN.	
He sent some (g) there.	<i>Il</i> Y EN envoya.	Envoyez-Y-EN.	

## EXERCISE.

I have brought *you* the book which I had promised *you*. Where  
*ai* apporté <sup>25</sup> livre m. que avais promis <sup>25</sup> Où  
 is it? Shew *it*<sup>29</sup> *me*. I (will shew) *it*<sup>24</sup> *you* (by and by.) Will you give  
 est-il? Montrez-le <sup>26</sup> montrerai le <sup>29</sup> tantôt. Voulez donner  
*it*<sup>24</sup> *me*? Give *it*<sup>26</sup> *me*. I can not give *it*<sup>24</sup> *you*. It does not belong  
 le <sup>29</sup>? Donnez-le <sup>29</sup> ne puis pas donner le <sup>29</sup> Il — n' est pas  
 to *me*. I (will lend) *it*<sup>24</sup> *you*. When will you<sup>51</sup> lend *it*<sup>24</sup> *me*?  
 à <sup>23</sup> prêterai le <sup>29</sup> Quand — prêterez-vous le <sup>29</sup>?  
 Lend *it*<sup>29</sup> *me* now. I (will return) *it*<sup>24</sup> to *you* (to-morrow). I (will lend)  
 Prêtez-le <sup>23</sup> à présent. rendrai le — <sup>29</sup> demain. prêterai  
*it*<sup>24</sup> *you* next<sup>16</sup> week<sup>7</sup>. I (shall be) in the country then. I (will send)  
 le <sup>29</sup> prochaine semaine. f. serai à campagne f. alors. enverrai  
 them to *you* there. You will not find (any body) to bring them  
<sup>24</sup> — <sup>29</sup> y <sup>29</sup> — ne trouverez personne pour apporter <sup>24</sup>  
 to *me* there. I (will take) them to *you* there myself. Has she given  
 — <sup>29</sup> y <sup>29</sup> porterai <sup>24</sup> — <sup>29</sup> <sup>29</sup> moi-même. A-t-elle donné  
*him*<sup>25</sup> any money? No; she has lent *him*<sup>25</sup> a guinea. Tell *her*<sup>26</sup>  
 (f) <sup>9</sup> argent? Non; prêté (f) <sup>1</sup> guinée. f. Dites (f)  
 not to lend *him*<sup>24</sup> any more, for he will never return *it*<sup>24</sup> *her*.  
 de ne pas prêter (f) (g)<sup>29</sup> davantage, car — ne<sup>55</sup> rendra jamais le (f)<sup>29</sup>

\* LUI Y is grammatical, but *i, i*, at the end of a sentence do not sound well, therefore, instead of Y for *there*, use LA, and say LUI là instead of LUI Y.

(f) When a verb governs two substantives, either nouns or pronouns, one of them has a preposition expressed or understood, but the preposition is generally understood before the pronoun which represents the person. In these instances HIM, HER, must be expressed by LUI, and THEM by LEUR, the same as when *to* is prefixed to them; ex.

I will send *him* money, *i. e.* money to him; Je LUI enverrai de l' argent; not L'enverrai.

I have offered them some, *i. e.* some to them; Je LEUR EN ai offert; not je LES EN ai offert.

(g) SOME, ANY, implying of it, of them, understood after them, are expressed by EN

30 As there are only two genders in french, the masculine and the feminine, the NEUTER PRONOUNS *IT, THEY, THEM* must be expressed by *IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES*; *LE, LA, LES*, the same as *HE, SHE, THEY*; *HIM, HER, THEM*, masculine or feminine, agreeably to the gender of the noun which they represent; so we say:

Of a man or a tree.

*IL est grand*; je *LE* vois.

*He or it* is tall; I see *him*, or *it*.

Of a woman or a flower;

*ELLE est belle*; regardez-*LA*.

*She or it* is fine; look at *her*, or *it*. (h)

Of men or trees;

*ILS sont ici*; je *LES* ai vus.

*They* are here; I have seen *them*.

Of women or flowers;

*ELLES sont belles*; je *LES* admire. *They* are fine; I admire *them*.

## EXERCISE.

You have a fine hat.

*It* is new. I can not wear *it*<sup>24</sup>. *It* is

avez<sup>1</sup> beau chapeau. m. <sup>30</sup> est neuf. ne saurais porter <sup>30</sup>(h) <sup>30</sup>

too small. (Here is) another; try *it*<sup>25</sup>. This watch has cost me

trop petit. En voici un autre; essayez <sup>30</sup>(h) <sup>1</sup> montre, a coûté <sup>25</sup>

a (good deal) of money<sup>8</sup>, but *it* is not<sup>55</sup> good; *It* does not go well.

— beaucoup argent, N.B. <sup>30</sup> n'est pas bonne; <sup>30</sup> — ne va pas bien.

Get *it*<sup>26</sup> mended. Give *it*<sup>30</sup> me. (That is) a good house; *it*

Faites <sup>30</sup>(h) raccommoder. Donnez (h) <sup>26</sup> Voilà <sup>1</sup> bonne maison; f. <sup>30</sup>

is well built, but *it* is not well situated. *It* is too near the road. If

bien bâti, <sup>13</sup> <sup>30</sup> bien situé <sup>13</sup>. <sup>30</sup> trop près de route. f. Si

*it* was mine,<sup>42</sup> I (would sell) *it*<sup>24</sup>. Eat some of these grapes;

<sup>30</sup> était (à moi) vendrais <sup>30</sup>(h) Mangez (quelques-uns) <sup>1</sup> raisins; m

*they* are good. I (would rather have) apples, if *they* were ripe.

<sup>30</sup> bon. <sup>13</sup> J' aimerais mieux — <sup>2</sup>pommes, f. <sup>30</sup> étaient mûr. <sup>13</sup>

*It* is not the time for apples. Is *it* astonishing that *they* are

(i) n'est pas tems m. des (i) étonnant qu' <sup>30</sup>ne soient

not<sup>55</sup> ripe? *It* (would be) an astonishing thing if *they* were.

pas <sup>13</sup> (i) serait étonnante <sup>16</sup> chose f. qu' <sup>30</sup>le fussent.

(h) Learners are sometimes embarrassed how to discriminate *IT* the object from *IT* the agent or nominative, i. e. when to express *IT* by *IL, ELLE*, and when by *LE, LA*.

*IT* is the agent, and expressed by *IL, ELLE*, agreeably to the gender of the noun to which it relates, when, if you were speaking of a person, you would use *HE* or *SHE*; as,

*HE* or *IT* is come. *IL est venu. SHE* or *IT* will fall. *ELLE tombera.*

*IT* is the object, and expressed by *LE, LA*, agreeably to the gender of the noun, when, if you were speaking of a person, you would use *HIM* or *HER*; as,

I see *HIM* or *IT*. *JE LE* vois. I know *HER* or *IT*. *JE LA* connais.

(i) *IT* is often used in an impersonal sense, i. e. without reference to any substantive mentioned in the sentence; as, *IT* is glorious, shameful, necessary, &c.

In these instances, *IT* is always expressed by *IL*, or by *CE*.

*IT* is expressed by *IL*, if the verb is followed by an adjective without a substantive; as, *IT* is glorious, shameful, necessary. *IL est glorieux, honteux, nécessaire, &c.*

*IT* is expressed by *CE*, when the verb is followed by a substantive, either with or without an adjective; as,

*IT* is I. *IT* is he. *IT* is she. *IT* is you. *IT* is your brother. *IT* is a shameful thing

*C'est moi. C'est lui. C'est elle. C'est vous. C'est votre frère. C'est une chose honteuse.*



## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

*HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM, are sometimes used without relation to any noun expressed before them, but imply the words MAN, WOMAN, or PEOPLE understood; as,* 31

*He* who is honest is esteemed; i. e. *the man* who is honest is &c.

Do you know *her* whom I love? i. e. *the woman* whom I love?

*In this sense they are expressed;*

*HE, SHE, THEY, HIM; } by CELUI. SHE, HER; } by CELLE. THEY, THEM; } by CEUX; as,*

*He* who is honest is esteemed. *CELUI qui est honnête est estimé.*

Do you know *her* whom I love? *Connaissez-vous CELLE que j'aime?*

*N. B. CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, and the relative QUI, QUE, DONT which attends them, must not be separated, as the corresponding words sometimes are in english; they must be placed TOGETHER; as,*

*He* knows men but little *who* relies on their promises.

*CELUI QUI compte sur les promesses des hommes ne les connaît guère; i. e. He who* relies on the promises of men knows them but little (k).

## EXERCISE.

*He* who can live dishonoured does not deserve to live. *He* who <sup>31</sup> *qui* <sup>55</sup> *peut vivre déshonoré* — *mérite* <sup>31</sup> *de*

betrays a friend is unworthy of friendship. *He* can not be happy <sup>31</sup> *ne saurait* — <sup>31</sup> *être heureux*

*whose* <sup>31</sup> *happineess* depends on others. Do not <sup>55</sup> *trust* *him* who <sup>31</sup> *dont* <sup>N.B.</sup> *bonheur m.* *dépend* *des autres.* — *Ne vous fiez pas à* <sup>31</sup>

has deceived you. *She* (of whom) you speak (will come) (by and by.) <sup>31</sup> *trompé* <sup>25</sup> *dont* <sup>31</sup> *parlez* *viendra* *tantôt.*

*She* is not come (of whom <sup>31</sup>) you (were speaking.) Do you <sup>51</sup> *know her* <sup>31</sup> *est* <sup>55</sup> *venue* <sup>N.B.</sup> *parliez.* — *Connaissez-vous* <sup>31</sup>

(of whom) we (are speaking?) *They* who prefer <sup>31</sup> *riches* to <sup>2</sup> *honour* <sup>31</sup> *parlons?* <sup>31</sup> *préfèrent richesses* <sup>2</sup> *honneur*

are contemptible. *They* are mistaken *who* <sup>31</sup> *think* that *riches* make <sup>31</sup> *méprisable* <sup>31</sup> — *se trompent* <sup>N.B.</sup> *pensent que* <sup>7</sup> *rendent*

men <sup>7</sup> happy. Do you <sup>51</sup> *know* that gentleman? *He* is a physician. <sup>31</sup> *homme heureux.* — *Connaissez-vous* <sup>1</sup> *monsieur?* (1) *médecin.*

(That is) his wife. *She* is a fine woman. *They* are <sup>10</sup> *very honest people.* <sup>31</sup> *Voilà* <sup>1</sup> *femme.* (1) *belle femme.* (1) *très honnêtes gens.*

(k) We may also say without changing the order of the words;

*CELUI-LÀ ne connaît guère les hommes QUI compte sur leurs promesses;*

*or C'EST ne connaît guère les hommes QUE DE compter sur leurs promesses;*

but these two modes of expression are more adapted to oratory than to conversation.

(l) *HE, SHE, THEY, coming with the verb BE followed by a substantive, are generally expressed by CE, though the noun to which they refer has been mentioned before; as,*

*He* is a merchant.

*C'est un négociant.*

*She* is a milliner.

*C'est une marchande de modes.*

*They* are great rogues.

*Ce sont de grands fripons.*

*N. B. If the substantive which follows the verb denotes trade or profession, HE, SHE, THEY, may be expressed by IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES, but the article must be left out; as,*

*IL est négociant.*

*ELLE est marchande de modes.*

But the learner will do well, in these instances, to use *CE* until he has seen the second part of this book, in which this is more fully explained.



## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, WHAT.  
QUI, QUE, DONT, QUOI, QUEL, LEQUEL.

32 When WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, come after one or several substantives which they particularize, they are expressed,

Nomin.	WHO,	} QUI.	The man who	} comes.	L' homme	} QUI	} vient.
	THAT,		The horse that		Le cheval		
	WHICH;		The chaise which		La chaise		
Object.	WHOM,	} QUE. (m)	The man whom	} I see.	L' homme	} QUE	} je vois.
	THAT,		The horse which		Le cheval		
	WHICH;		The coach that		Le carrosse		
Possess.	WHOSE,	} DONT.	The man of whom	} I speak.	L' homme	} DONT	} je parle.
	Of WHOM,		The horse of which		Le cheval		
	Of WHICH;		The chaise of which		La chaise		

N. B. QUI, QUE, DONT must be placed immediately AFTER the noun to which they relate; as,

Is the ship arrived which was expected? } i. e. the ship which was  
Le NAVIRE qu'on attendait est-il<sup>32</sup> arrivé? } expected, is it<sup>32</sup> arrived?

## EXERCISE.

Do you<sup>31</sup> know the master who teaches me french? The scholars  
— Connaissez-vous maître <sup>32</sup> enseigne <sup>24</sup> français m. ? écoliers m.  
whom you have recommended to me are very diligent. (This is)  
<sup>32</sup> avez recommandés — <sup>25</sup> sont très <sup>13</sup>. Voici  
the person of whom I (was speaking.) Have you seen the ships that<sup>32</sup>  
<sup>1</sup> personne f. <sup>32</sup> parlais. vu <sup>1</sup> navire (m)  
(are just) (come in?) You have bought a book which<sup>32</sup> is very dear.  
viennent d'arriver? acheté livre m. (m) est très cher.  
The book which<sup>32</sup> you have bought is very dear. The book of which<sup>32</sup>  
(m)  
you speak is very dear. That house is sold which<sup>32</sup> you wanted to buy.  
parlez <sup>1</sup> maison f. vendue N.B. vouliez — acheter  
The ladies you want to see are here. The gentleman is gone who<sup>32</sup>  
dame (n) voulez voir ici. monsieur parti N.B.  
has brought you a letter. He has lost all the money he had.  
apporté <sup>25</sup> <sup>1</sup> lettre. f. perdu tout <sup>2</sup> argent(n) avait.

(m) Persons not versed in grammatical terms, are often at a loss to distinguish the object from the nominative, i. e. when to express THAT, WHICH by QUI, and when by QUE.

To these I will observe, that THAT, WHICH are the nominative, and expressed by QUI, when they are followed immediately by a verb; as,

The coach that or which is at the door. Le carrosse QUI est à la porte.

THAT, WHICH are the object of the verb, and expressed by QUE, when, between them and the verb, there is a noun or pronoun which is the nominative of the verb; as,

The coach that or which we have met. Le carrosse QUE nous avons rencontré.

(n) The distinctive pronouns WHOM, THAT, WHICH are often left out in english; as, The man I saw; for the man whom I saw; but the corresponding words QUI, QUE, DONT must always be expressed in french; as,

The man I saw, i. e. whom I saw. L' homme QUE je vis.

The wine we drank, i. e. which we drank. Le vin QUE nous bûmes.

The woman I speak of, i. e. of whom I speak. La femme DONT je parle.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

After any preposition but *OF*, or a preposition synonymous to it,

33

*WHOM* is expressed by *QUI* for both genders and numbers.

		Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
<i>WHICH</i>	by	le QUEL,	la QUELLE,	les QUELS,	les QUELLES;
From <i>WHICH</i>	by	du QUEL,	de la QUELLE,	des QUELS,	des QUELLES;
To, at <i>WHICH</i>	by	au QUEL,	à la QUELLE,	aux QUELS,	aux QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates; as,

The man with whom	} I came.	L' homme avec QUI	} je vins.
The horse on which		Le cheval sur LEQUEL	
The chaise in which		La chaise dans LAQUELLE	
The man from whom	} this fell.	L' homme de QUI	} ceci tomba.
The horse from which		Le cheval duQUEL	
The man to whom	} he gave it.	L' homme à QUI	} il le donna.
The horse to which		Le cheval auQUEL	

## EXERCISE

You know the lady to whom I have spoken. The study to which  
*Connaissez dame* <sup>33</sup> *ai parlé.* <sup>2</sup> *étude f.* <sup>33</sup>

he applies is not very useful. The chair on which you sit is  
*s'applique est* <sup>55</sup> *très utile.* *chaise f. sur* <sup>33</sup> *(êtes assis)*

broken<sup>13</sup>. The coach in which I came was overturned. The people  
*rompu, N.B.* *carrosse m. dans* <sup>33</sup> *vins fut renversé.* *gens m.*

with whom I was were very civil. (This is) the stick with which  
*avec* <sup>33</sup> *étais étaient civil<sup>13</sup>.* *Voici bâton m.* <sup>33</sup>

he struck me. Where is the horse to which you have given the corn?  
*frappa* <sup>24</sup> *Où* <sup>33</sup> *avez donné* <sup>2</sup> *avoine?*

*WHO, WHOM, WHOSE* used absolutely, i. e. without reference to any noun mentioned before, imply the word *PERSON* understood. 34

*WHO, WHOM* are then expressed by *QUI*; as,

*Who* is there? i. e. what person is there? *QUI est là?*

I know *whom* you love, i. e. what person, &c. *Je sais QUI vous aimez.*

*WHOSE* is expressed by *DE QUI*, when it is used for *OF* WHAT PERSON; and by *À QUI*, when it is used for *TO* WHAT PERSON; as,

*Whose* daughter is she?

i. e. (of what person) is she the daughter? } *DE QUI est-elle fille?*

*Whose* house is that?

i. e. (to what person) does that house belong? } *À QUI est cette maison?*

## EXERCISE.

*Whom* did you send? *Whom* have you found? *Whom* did you  
<sup>34</sup> *avez* <sup>51</sup> *envoyé?* <sup>34</sup> *avez* *trouvé?* <sup>34</sup> *avez*

speak to<sup>56</sup>? I know *whom* you are speaking of<sup>55</sup>. *Whose* hat  
*parlé à ?* *sais* <sup>34</sup> *— parlez de* <sup>34</sup> *chapeau m.*

is this? *Whose* coach is that? I do not know *whose* it is.  
*est* <sup>1</sup> *?* <sup>34</sup> *carrosse m.* <sup>1</sup> *!* *— ne sais pas* <sup>34</sup> <sup>30</sup>

*Whose* son is he? *Whose* wife is she? *Whose* relations are they?  
<sup>34</sup> *fil* *?* *femme* *?* <sup>34</sup> *parent* *sont - ils ?*

In an INTERROGATIVE sentence *WHICH* requires THREE distinctions.

*WHICH* INTERROGATIVE is either joined to the noun like an adjective, i. e. without the help of a preposition; as,

WHICH man? WHICH carriage? WHICH horses?

Or, like a substantive, joined to it by the preposition *OF*; as,

WHICH *OF* the men? WHICH *OF* the carriages? WHICH *OF* my horses?

Or like a pronoun used absolutely after the noun; as,

It is one of these men; WHICH is it?

**35** *WHICH* INTERROGATIVE joined like an adjective, i. e. without a preposition, to the noun to which it relates, is

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
WHICH;	QUEL,	QUELLE,	QUELS,	QUELLES;
Of, from WHICH;	de QUEL,	de QUELLE,	de QUELS,	de QUELLES;
To, at WHICH;	à QUEL,	à QUELLE,	à QUELS,	à QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

Which man	} will you have?	QUEL homme	} voulez-vous?
Which carriage		QUELLE voiture	
Which horses		QUELS chevaux	

**36** *WHICH* INTERROGATIVE joined by a preposition to the noun to which it relates, or coming after it absolutely, i. e. without a noun, is

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
WHICH;	le QUEL,	la QUELLE,	les QUELS,	les QUELLES;
Of, from WHICH;	du QUEL,	de la QUELLE,	des QUELS,	des QUELLES;
To, at WHICH;	au QUEL,	à la QUELLE,	aux QUELS,	aux QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

Which of these men	} will you have?	LEQUEL de ces hommes	} voulez-vous?
Which of the coaches		LAQUELLE des voitures	
Which of my horses		LESQUELS de mes chevaux	
Which is the tallest?		LEQUEL est le plus haut?	
Which is the finest?		LAQUELLE est la plus belle?	
Which are the best?		LESQUELS sont les meilleurs?	

**37** *WHICH* sometimes implies the DEMONSTRATIVE pronoun *THAT* or *THOSE* understood, this demonstrative word can not be omitted in french, and *WHICH*, as including the two words, is expressed by

CELUI QUE m.	} THAT which;	CEUX QUE m.	} THOSE which;
CELLE QUE f.		CELLES QUE f.	

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates; as,

Which of these horses shall I ride? *Lequel de ces chevaux monterai-je?*  
Ride which you will, i. e. that which *Montez CELUI que vous voudrez.*

## EXERCISE.

Which book shall I read? Which of these books shall I read?  
<sup>35</sup> livre m. — <sup>51</sup> lirai-je<sup>51</sup>? <sup>36</sup> 1 <sup>51</sup> ?

Read which you please. Which pen shall I make use of?  
 Lisez <sup>37</sup> il vous plaira. <sup>35</sup> plumef. — <sup>51</sup> me servirai-je de?

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

*Which* of these pens shall I<sup>51</sup> make use of? Use *which* you will.  
<sup>35</sup> \* 1 — *me servirai-je* <sup>56</sup>? *Servez-vous de* <sup>37</sup> *voudrez.*  
*Which* boy shall I<sup>51</sup> give this to? *Which* of the boys shall I give  
<sup>35</sup> *garçon.* — *donnerai-je ceci* <sup>56</sup>? <sup>36</sup> \* 1 <sup>51</sup>  
 this to? Give it to *which* you like. *Which* lady is the handsomest?  
<sup>56</sup>? *Donnez-le* <sup>37</sup> *voudrez.* <sup>35</sup> *dame est belle* <sup>21</sup>?  
*Which* of these ladies is the handsomest? *Which* ladies do you  
<sup>36</sup> 1 <sup>21</sup> <sup>35</sup> — <sup>51</sup>  
 speak of <sup>56</sup>? To *which* do you<sup>51</sup> give the preference? *Which*  
*parlez-vous*<sup>51</sup>? — *donnez-vous*<sup>51</sup> *préférence f.!*  
 fruit do you<sup>51</sup> like best? *Which* of these fruits do you like best?  
*fruit m.* — *aimez-vous le mieux?* \* 1 — ?  
*Which* is the ripest? Eat of *which* you like. *Which* road shall  
*est* *mûr*<sup>21</sup>? *Mangez* *voudrez.* *route f.* —  
 we go by <sup>56</sup>? *Which* of these roads shall we go by <sup>56</sup>? *Which*  
<sup>51</sup> *irons par?* 1 <sup>51</sup> *par?*  
 house shall we<sup>51</sup> go to? *Which* is the best<sup>13</sup>? Go to *which*  
*maison f.* — *irons-nous* <sup>56</sup>? *meilleur?* *Allez à*  
 you choose. *Which* door must I go through? *Which* of these  
*voudrez.* *porte f. faut-il que je passe par*<sup>56</sup>?  
 doors must I go through? Go through *which* you please.  
*par* <sup>56</sup>? *Passez par* *il vous plaira.*

WHAT requires the same distinction as WHICH.

WHAT FOLLOWED by a noun, or RELATING to a noun mentioned before, is expressed in the same manner as WHICH; 38

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
WHAT;	QUEL,	QUELLE,	QUELS,	QUELLES;
Of, from WHAT;	de QUEL,	de QUELLE,	de QUELS,	de QUELLES;
To, at WHAT;	à QUEL,	à QUELLE,	à QUELS,	à QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

What man	} will you have?	QUEL homme	} voulez-vous?
What carriage		QUELLE voiture	
What horses		QUELS chevaux	

It is my opinion, what is yours? *C'est mon opinion, QUELLE est la vôtre?*

## EXERCISE.

*What* man has he employed? *What* language do you<sup>51</sup> like best?  
<sup>38</sup> *a-t-il employé ?* <sup>38</sup> *langue f.* — *aimez-vous le mieux ?*  
*What* study do you<sup>51</sup> apply to <sup>56</sup>? *What* sort of books do  
<sup>38</sup> *étude f.* — *vous*<sup>24</sup> *appliquez-vous* <sup>51</sup>? <sup>38</sup> *sorte f.* <sup>8</sup> *livre* —  
 you<sup>51</sup> read? To *what* use shall I put it<sup>24</sup>? *What* news  
*lisez-vous*<sup>51</sup>? <sup>38</sup> *usage m.* — <sup>51</sup> *mettrai-je*<sup>51</sup> *le ?* <sup>38</sup> *nouvelle f.*  
 are you<sup>51</sup> speaking of? *What* is your sentiment? *What* is yours<sup>41</sup>?  
 — *parlez-vous*<sup>51</sup> <sup>56</sup>? <sup>38</sup> *est* *sentiment m.?* <sup>38</sup> *le vôtre ?*

\* WHICH may here be either singular or plural, agreeably to the number that is meant



## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

**39** *WHAT* used ABSOLUTELY, i. e. without reference to a noun mentioned, implies the word thing understood, and is expressed by *QUE* or by *QUOI*.

*WHAT* is expressed by *QUE*, when it is the object of a verb; as,

*What* are you doing there? *QUE faites-vous là?*

I do not know *what* to say to her. *Je ne sais QUE lui dire.*

*WHAT* is expressed by *QUOI*, when it is governed by a preposition, or used as an interjection; ex.

*What* do you meddle with<sup>56</sup>? *De<sup>56</sup> QUOI vous<sup>24</sup> melez-vous<sup>51</sup>?*

*What!* you have not done yet. *QUOI! vous n'avez pas encore fini.*

## EXERCISE.

*What* do you want? *What* do you think of that? *What* shall  
<sup>39</sup> — <sup>51</sup> *cherchez?* <sup>39</sup> — <sup>51</sup> *pensez de cela?* <sup>39</sup> —

I do with this? Do you know *what* this is made of? *What*  
<sup>51</sup> *ferai de* *ceci?* — <sup>51</sup> *savez* <sup>39</sup> *ceci* *fait* <sup>56</sup>? <sup>39</sup>

is it good for<sup>56</sup>? I do not know *what* you (are talking) about.  
*il bon à?* — <sup>55</sup> *sais* <sup>39</sup> *parlez* *de* <sup>56</sup>.

*What!* are you not gone yet<sup>53</sup>? *What!* you do not answer me.  
<sup>39</sup> — <sup>55</sup> *parti* *encore?* <sup>39</sup> — <sup>55</sup> *repondez* <sup>24</sup>.

**40** *WHAT* sometimes implies the DEMONSTRATIVE pronoun *THAT*, and the distinctive *WHICH*; it is then expressed,

Nom. *WHAT*, *CE QUI*; Always do *what* is right; i. e. *that which* is right.  
*Faites toujours CE QUI est juste.*

Obj. *WHAT*, *CE QUE*; *What* I say is true; i. e. *that which* I say is true.  
 (m) *CE QUE je dis est vrai.*

But with the prepositions *OF*, *TO*, or any preposition that is synonymous to them, it is necessary to consider whether the preposition comes before or after *WHAT*; for,

Of *WHAT* is *de CE QUI*, } I speak of *what* is true; i. e. of *that which*  
*de CE QUE*; } *Je parle de CE QUI est vrai.*

*WHAT* of is *CE DONT*; as, *What* he speaks of is not true; i. e. *that of which*  
*CE DONT il parle n'est pas vrai.*

To *WHAT* is *à CE QUI*, } You do not apply to *what* is useful; to *that which*  
*à CE QUE*; } *Vous ne vous appliquez pas à CE QUI est utile.*

*WHAT* to is *CE à QUOI*; as, *What* you apply to is not useful; *that to which*  
*CE à QUOI vous vous appliquez n'est pas utile.*

## EXERCISE.

Say *what* is true, and do *what* is just. *What*<sup>40</sup> we do hastily  
*Dites* <sup>40</sup> *est vrai*, et *faites* <sup>40</sup> *juste.* (m) *faisons (à la hâte)*

is often imperfect. Shew me *what*<sup>40</sup> you have done. Pay attention to  
*souvent imparfait.* Montrez <sup>26</sup> (m) *fait.* *Faites attention*

*what*<sup>40</sup> I say to you. Are you sure of *what*<sup>40</sup> you say? It is *what* you  
 (m) *dis* — <sup>24</sup> *Etes* *sûr* (m) *dites?* C'est <sup>40</sup>

may be sure of. I would not<sup>55</sup> trust to *what*<sup>40</sup> he proposes. *What*  
*pouvez être* <sup>56</sup> *ne voudrais pas* *me fier* (m) *propose.* <sup>43</sup>

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

you trust to is very uncertain. He complains of *what*<sup>40</sup> he has  
*vous vous fiez* <sup>56</sup> *est très incertain.* *se plaint* (m) a  
 suffered. *What* <sup>40</sup> he complains of is right. They attribute it to *what*<sup>40</sup>  
*souffert.* <sup>40</sup> *se plaint* <sup>56</sup> *juste.* *attribuent le*<sup>24</sup> (m)  
 I have told you. *What* <sup>40</sup> they attribute it to has never<sup>35</sup> happened.  
*dit* <sup>25</sup> *40* <sup>24</sup> *n'est jamais arrivé.*

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

		Masc. SING.	Fem.		Masc: PLUR.	Fem.
	MINE.	le MIEN,	la MIENNE,	les MIENS,	les MIENNES.	
Of, from	MINE.	du MIEN, de la	MIENNE,	des MIENS,	des MIENNES.	
To, at	MINE.	au MIEN, à la	MIENNE,	aux MIENS,	aux MIENNES.	
	THINE.	le TIEN,	la TIENNE,	les TIENS,	les TIENNES.	
	HIS. HERS.	} le SIEN,	la SIENNE,	les SIENS,	les SIENNES.	
	OURS.					
	YOURS.	le NÔTRE,	la NÔTRE,	les NÔTRES,	les NÔTRES.	
	THEIRS.	le VÔTRE,	la VÔTRE,	les VÔTRES,	les VÔTRES.	
		le LEUR,	la LEUR,	les LEURS,	les LEURS.	

The POSSESSIVE pronouns le MIEN, le TIEN, le SIEN, &c. must be of <sup>41</sup>  
 the same gender and number as the noun which they represent; as,

Your horse is better than *hers*, i. e. *her horse*.

*Votre cheval est meilleur que le SIEN.*

My house is not so fine as *his*, i. e. *his house*.

*Ma maison n'est pas si belle que la SIENNE.*

Your histories are prettier than *his*, i. e. *his histories*.

*Vos histoires sont plus jolies que les SIENNES.*

## EXERCISE.

Why do not<sup>55</sup> you<sup>51</sup> eat your cake? Your brother has eaten *his*.  
*Pourquoi — ne mangez-vous pas* <sup>1</sup> *gâteau m.?* <sup>1</sup> *a mangé* <sup>41</sup>  
 My sister has not eaten *hers*. I (will eat) *mine* (by and by). Your  
*a* <sup>55</sup> <sup>41</sup> *mangerai* <sup>41</sup> *tantôt.* <sup>1</sup>  
 lesson is shorter<sup>18</sup> than *mine*, but (I shall know) *mine* before you  
*leçon f.* *court*<sup>13</sup> <sup>41</sup> *mais* *saurai* <sup>41</sup> *avant que*  
 know *yours*. It is not<sup>55</sup> your business, it is *his*. My books are  
*sachiez* <sup>41</sup> *Ce n'est pas* <sup>1</sup> *affaire f.*, *c'est* <sup>41</sup> *livre m. sont*  
 finer<sup>18</sup> than *yours* and *his*. They are not finer than *mine*. Have  
*beaux* <sup>41</sup> <sup>41</sup> <sup>30</sup> <sup>55</sup> <sup>18</sup> <sup>41</sup>  
 you cleaned my boots? *Yours* and *mine* are clean<sup>13</sup>, but *his* are not.  
*décrotté* <sup>1</sup> *botte f.?* <sup>41</sup> <sup>41</sup> *décrotté,* <sup>41</sup> *ne le sont pas.*

The POSSESSIVE words MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, <sup>42</sup>  
 THEIRS, do not always represent a noun mentioned before them; they  
 often come with the verb BE used in the sense of BELONG, instead of  
 the PERSONAL pronouns ME, THEE, HIM, HER, US, YOU, THEM; as  
 for example, This book is MINE, i. e. belongs to ME; in this sense  
 MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS, are expressed by

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

à MOI, à TOI, à LUI, à ELLE, à NOUS, à VOUS, à EUX, *m.* à ELLES, *f.* *as*,  
 This book is *mine*. *Ce livre est à MOI*; *i. e.* belongs to *me*.  
                   is *thine*. *est à TOI*; *to thee*.  
                   is *his*. *est à LUI*; *to him*.  
                   is *hers*. *est à ELLE*; *to her*.  
                   is *ours*. *est à NOUS*; *to us*.  
                   is *yours*. *est à VOUS*; *to you*.  
                   is *theirs*. *est à EUX*; *m.* à ELLES; *f.* *to them*.

## EXERCISE.

This stick is *mine*, and this umbrella is *his*. It<sup>30</sup> is neither  
<sup>1</sup> bâton *m.* <sup>42</sup> <sup>1</sup> parapluie *m.* <sup>42</sup> *n'est ni*  
*yours* nor *his*, it is *hers*. Is this horse<sup>52</sup> *yours*? It is not *mine*;  
<sup>42</sup> *ni* <sup>42</sup> <sup>30</sup> <sup>42</sup> *Ce cheval est-il*<sup>52</sup> <sup>42</sup> ? <sup>30</sup> <sup>55</sup> <sup>42</sup>  
 it is my cousin's. If it was *yours*, what would you<sup>51</sup> do (with it)?  
<sup>30</sup> (o) *S'* <sup>30</sup> *était* <sup>42</sup> <sup>30</sup> — *feriez - vous*<sup>51</sup> *en*<sup>24</sup> ?  
 If it was *mine*, I (would sell) it<sup>24</sup>. I wish it was *ours*.  
<sup>30</sup> <sup>42</sup> *vendrais* <sup>30</sup> (h) *souhaiterais qu'* <sup>30</sup> *fût* <sup>42</sup>.

## 43

The POSSESSIVE pronouns *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS*, by an idiom peculiar to the english language, are sometimes joined to the noun to which they relate by the preposition *OF*; as A FRIEND *OF MINE*; A BOOK *OF YOURS*; this POSSESSIVE pronoun can not be expressed by the POSSESSIVE pronoun in french; it must be expressed by the possessive ARTICLE *MES, TES, SES, NOS, VOS, LEURS*, placed BEFORE the noun, which must always be PLURAL in french; as,

A friend of mine.	<i>un de MES amis</i> ;	<i>i. e.</i> one of my	} friends.
of thine.	<i>un de TES amis</i> ;	one of thy	
of his.	<i>un de SES amis</i> ;	one of his	
of hers.	<i>un de SES amis</i> ;	one of her	
of ours.	<i>un de NOS amis</i> ;	one of our	
of yours.	<i>un de VOS amis</i> ;	one of your	
of theirs.	<i>un de LEURS amis</i> ;	one of their	

## EXERCISE.

(This is) a relation of *mine*. He is a cousin of *ours*. A brother of  
*Voici* <sup>1</sup> *parent m.* <sup>43</sup> (l) *est* <sup>43</sup>  
*mine* has married a sister of *his*. (That is) a child of *theirs*. I have  
<sup>43</sup> *a* <sup>1</sup> *épousé* <sup>43</sup> *Voilà* *enfant m.* <sup>42</sup>  
 seen to-day a scholar of *yours*. I (shall dine) to-morrow with  
*vu* (*aujourd'hui*) *écolier m.* <sup>43</sup> *dînerai* *demain* *avec*  
 a friend of *ours*. I have found a book of *yours* amongst mine.  
<sup>43</sup> *trouvé* *livre m.* <sup>43</sup> *parmi* <sup>41</sup>  
 It<sup>30</sup> is not mine; it is my brother's. It is a friend's of *mine*.  
*n'est pas* <sup>42</sup> <sup>30</sup> (o) <sup>30</sup> (o) <sup>43</sup>

(o) The possession denoted in english by adding *s* to the noun, is expressed in french by *à* before it; as, It is my father's. *Il est à mon père*; Not, *il est de mon père*.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

Masc. SING. Fem.		Masc. PLUR. Fem.	
THIS,	} CELUI;	THESE,	} CEUX;
THAT;		THOSE;	
	CELLE.		CELLES.

The DEMONSTRATIVE pronouns CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES must be of <sup>44</sup>  
the same gender and number as the noun which they represent; as,  
He has eaten his apple and *that* of his brother; i. e. *the apple* of, &c.  
*Il a mangé sa pomme et CELLE de son frère.*

## EXERCISE.

She has spoiled her hat and *that* of her brother. He has torn  
a gâté <sup>1</sup> chapeau m. <sup>44</sup> <sup>1</sup> déchiré  
my gown and *that* of my sister. Bring my shoes and *those* of my  
<sup>1</sup> robe f. <sup>44</sup> Apportez <sup>1</sup> souliers m. <sup>44</sup>  
mother. (Look at) these<sup>1</sup> guineas and *those* which<sup>32</sup> he has given us.  
Regardez (p) guinées f. <sup>44</sup> (m) a données. <sup>25</sup>

N. B. The DEMONSTRATIVE words THIS, THESE; THAT, THOSE  
imply a local distinction which CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES do not  
express; if you wish to make that distinction in french, you must add to  
these pronouns the adverbs CI, here; and LÀ, there; thus,

THIS; CELUI-ci, CELLE-ci. THESE; CEUX-ci, CELLES-ci.  
THAT; CELUI-là, CELLE-là. THOSE; CEUX-là, CELLES-là; as,

*This* horse is better than *that*;

*Ce cheval-ci est meilleur que CELUI-là; i. e. this horse here—that there.*

## EXERCISE.

That<sup>1</sup> horse is young, and *this*<sup>44</sup> is old, but I prefer *this*<sup>44</sup> to  
(p) cheval-là est jeune, N.B. vieux, mais préfère N.B.  
*that*<sup>44</sup>. These<sup>1</sup> girls dance much better than *those*<sup>44</sup>.  
N.B. (p) fille-ci dansent beaucoup (b) N.B.

If THIS, THAT are not followed by a noun, nor relate to a noun <sup>45</sup>  
mentioned, they imply the word THING understood, and are expressed,

THIS by CECI; THAT, by CELA; as,

*This* is good, i. e. *this thing* is good. CECI est bon.

*That* is better, i. e. *that thing* is better. CELA est meilleur.

## EXERCISE.

Take this. Leave *that*. Have you seen *this*. *That* is very pretty.  
Prenez <sup>45</sup> Laissez <sup>45</sup> vu <sup>45</sup> <sup>45</sup> très joli.

(p) The demonstrative words THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE, have three different proper-  
ties.

If THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE are followed by a noun, they have the property of a  
demonstrative article, and are expressed by CE, CETTE, CES; as,

*This* bread, *that* meat, *those* clothes. Ce pain, CETTE viande, CES habits. See rule 1.

If THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE do not point out a noun after them, but represent one  
mentioned before, they are pronouns, and are expressed by CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES,  
agreeably to the gender and number of the noun which they represent (rule 44.); as,

He has eaten his apple & *that* of his brother. *Il a mangé sa pomme & CELLE de son frère.*

If THIS, THAT do not point out a noun after them, nor represent one mentioned before,  
they may be considered as substantives, and are expressed THIS by CECI, THAT by CELA.

*This* is good, but *that* is better. CECI est bon, mais CELA est meilleur. (rule 45.)



46 ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, used in an indefinite sense, i. e. not relating to any particular person, are expressed by ON.

N. B. Observe that ON is always the nominative of a verb, and though it represents WE, THEY, PEOPLE, which are plural, it requires the verb in the THIRD PERSON SINGULAR; as,

One says, } ON dit; i. e. one says.  
They say, people say. }

## EXERCISE.

People are never<sup>46</sup> so happy nor so miserable as they imagine.  
<sup>46</sup> n'est jamais si heureux ni malheureux qu' <sup>46</sup> s'imagine.

They say that we (are going) to have peace. They say so; but can  
<sup>46</sup> dit que nous allons - avoir <sup>7</sup>paix. f. <sup>46</sup> le<sup>24</sup>; peut

one believe it, when they (are making) such preparations for war?  
<sup>46</sup> croire le<sup>24</sup>, quand <sup>46</sup> fait tant de préparatif pour guerre f.?

47 The following and other like INDEFINITE EXPRESSIONS, are also expressed in french by ON, with the verb in its active sense.

N. B. The verb is rendered active by leaving out the auxiliary verb BE, and making the participle into a verb of the same tense and person as the auxiliary verb is; ex.

It was said. ON disait; i. e. one said.  
It is reported. ON rapporte; one reports.

## EXERCISE.

It is thought that (there will be) a war. It is said that hostilities  
<sup>47</sup> pense qu' il y aura - guerre. <sup>47</sup> dit que <sup>7</sup>hostilités

have already begun. It is supposed that the two fleets have met.  
ont déjà commencé. <sup>47</sup> s'imagine que deux flotte se sont rencontrées.

48 The english PASSIVE VERBS used indefinitely, require the active signification in french, with ON for nominative; but observe that by adding ON to the sentence, the substantive,\* which is the nominative of the verb in english, becomes its object in french; as,

I have been told that news has been received; turn this sentence thus,  
One has told me that one has received news.  
ON m<sup>25</sup> a dit qu' ON a reçu des nouvelles.

## EXERCISE.

We have been told that you were married. I have been told so  
<sup>48</sup> dit que étiez marié. <sup>48</sup> le<sup>24</sup>

too, but that is not true. I was advised to do it. I have not  
aussi, cela n'est pas vrai. <sup>48</sup> avait conseillé de faire le<sup>24</sup>. <sup>48</sup> ne a pas

been permitted to do it. Do you<sup>51</sup> know what is said of you?  
<sup>48</sup> permis de <sup>24</sup> - savez - vous<sup>51</sup> <sup>40</sup> <sup>48</sup> dit de <sup>28</sup>?

What can be said of me? It is said that great news is  
<sup>39</sup> peut <sup>48</sup> dire <sup>28</sup> ? <sup>47</sup> - dit que <sup>10</sup>grandes nouvelles <sup>43</sup>

expected. Have the letters been received which were expected?  
attend. <sup>48</sup> lettre <sup>48</sup> reçu <sup>32</sup> <sup>43</sup> attendait?

\* By substantive is here meant every word which either names or represents a substance.

## CHAP. VI.

## VERB.

A VERB is a word which expresses either *being* or *acting*.

*Being*; as, I AM; I EXIST; THOU ART; HE IS; MY BROTHER IS; WE ARE, &c.

*Acting*; as, I SPEAK; I BLAME; I WALK; I DRINK; I SING, &c.

Every *action* requires an *agent*, i. e. a being to *perform* that action; this *agent*, in grammar, is called the *nominative* of the verb.

The VERB *must be of the same NUMBER and PERSON as the agent or nominative*; this is called *AGREEMENT of the verb with its NOMINATIVE*; ex.

49

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

1p. I sing.	Je CHANTE.	Nous CHANTONS.	} we, you, they sing.
2p. Thou singest.	Tu CHANTES.	Vous CHANTEZ.	
3p. He sings.	Il CHANTE.	Ils CHANTENT.	
She sings.	Elle CHANTE.	Elles CHANTENT.	
My brother sings.	Mon frère CHANTE.	Mes frères CHANTENT.	
My sister sings.	Ma sœur CHANTE.	Mes sœurs CHANTENT.	

## EXERCISE.

I speak. Thou playest. He walks. She dances. My brother  
*parler. jouer. marcher. danser.*  
 stays. My sister forgets. We blame. You study. They look. My  
*rester. oublier. blâmer. étudier. regarder.*  
 brothers call or (*are calling.\**) My sisters dispute or (*are disputing.\**)  
*appeler. disputer.*

In a DECLARATIVE sentence, i. e. when a question is not asked, the NOMINATIVE of the verb is placed in french, as in english, BEFORE the verb; as,

50

I sing.	Je CHANTE.	Nous CHANTONS.	} we, you, they sing.
Thou singest.	Tu CHANTES.	Vous CHANTEZ.	
He sings.	Il CHANTE.	Ils CHANTENT.	
She sings.	Elle CHANTE.	Elles CHANTENT.	
My brother sings.	Mon frère CHANTE.	Mes frères CHANTENT.	
My sister sings.	Ma sœur CHANTE.	Mes sœurs CHANTENT.	

## EXERCISE.

I speak<sup>49</sup> french. Thou speakest french. He speaks french. She  
*parler français. parler<sup>49</sup> parler<sup>49</sup>*  
 speaks french. My brother speaks french. My sister speaks french.  
*parler<sup>49</sup> parler<sup>49</sup> parler<sup>49</sup>*  
 We speak french. You speak french. They speak french. My bro-  
*parler<sup>49</sup> parler<sup>49</sup> parler<sup>49</sup>*  
 thers speak french. My sisters speak french. They speak it very well.  
*parler<sup>49</sup> parler<sup>49</sup> parler le<sup>24</sup> très bien.*

But when the sentence is INTERROGATIVE, i. e. when a QUESTION is asked, it is necessary to consider whether the NOMINATIVE of the verb is a NOUN or a PRONOUN.

\* These two modes of expression are rendered in the same manner in french. See the conjugations, page 112 and following.

## VERB.

51 *If, when a QUESTION is asked, the NOMINATIVE of the verb is one of the pronouns JE, TU, IL, ELLE, NOUS, VOUS, ILS, ELLES, ON or CE, these pronouns are placed in french, as the corresponding words are in english, immediately AFTER the verb; as,*

Do (q) <i>I</i> sing well?	<i>Chante – JE bien ?</i>	i. e. sing <i>I</i> well?
Doest <i>thou</i> sing well?	<i>Chantes – TU bien ?</i>	singest <i>thou</i> well?
Does <i>he</i> sing well?	<i>Chante-t*–IL bien ?</i>	sings <i>he</i> well?
Does <i>she</i> sing well?	<i>Chante-t*–ELLE bien ?</i>	sings <i>she</i> well?
Do <i>we</i> sing well?	<i>Chantons–NOUS bien ?</i>	sing <i>we</i> well?
Do <i>you</i> sing well?	<i>Chantez – VOUS bien ?</i>	sing <i>you</i> well?
Do <i>they</i> sing well?	<i>Chantent–ILS bien ?</i>	sing <i>they</i> well?
Do <i>they</i> sing well?	<i>Chantent–ELLES bien ?</i>	sing <i>they</i> well?

## EXERCISE.

Do *I* speak<sup>49</sup> french well<sup>53</sup>? Doest *thou* speak french well? Does  
 (q) <sup>51</sup> *parler* *français bien?* (q) <sup>51</sup> *parler*<sup>49</sup> <sup>53</sup> ? (q)  
*he* speak french well? Does *she* speak french well? Do *we* speak french  
<sup>51</sup> *parler*<sup>49</sup> <sup>53</sup> ? <sup>51</sup> *parler*<sup>49</sup> <sup>53</sup> ? <sup>51</sup> *parler*<sup>49</sup>  
 well? Do *you* speak french well? Do *they* speak french well?  
<sup>53</sup> ? <sup>51</sup> *parler*<sup>49</sup> <sup>53</sup> ? <sup>51</sup> *parler*<sup>49</sup> <sup>53</sup> ?

52 *If, when we ask a QUESTION, the NOMINATIVE of the verb is a NOUN, that noun is placed BEFORE the verb in french, the same as when the sentence is not interrogative; but to shew that a QUESTION is ASKED, one of the personal pronouns IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES, agreeably to the GENDER and NUMBER of the noun, is placed immediately AFTER the VERB; as,*

Does *my brother* sing *Mon frère chante-t-IL bien?* i. e. *my b.* sings *he*?  
 Does *my sister* sing *Ma sœur chante-t-ELLE bien?* *my s.* sings *she*?  
 Do *my brothers* sing *Mes frères chantent-ILS bien?* *my b.* sing *they*?  
 Do *my sisters* sing *Mes sœurs chantent-ELLES bien?* *my s.* sing *they*?

## EXERCISE.

Does *my brother* speak<sup>49</sup> french well<sup>53</sup>? Does *my sister* speak french  
 (q) <sup>52</sup> *parler* *français bien?* (q) <sup>52</sup> *parler*<sup>49</sup>  
 well? Do *my brothers* speak french well? Do *my sisters* speak  
<sup>53</sup> ? (q) <sup>52</sup> *parler*<sup>49</sup> <sup>53</sup> ? (q) <sup>52</sup> *parler*<sup>49</sup>  
 french well? Does *your son* go to school now? Does *your daughter*  
<sup>53</sup> ? (q) <sup>52</sup> *va à l'école à présent?* <sup>52</sup>  
 go to school now? Do *your sons* go to school now? Do *your*  
*daughters* go to school now? Do the *boys*<sup>52</sup> make any progress?  
<sup>52</sup> *vont* ? (q) *garçons font* <sup>52</sup> *progress* *vont*.  
 Do the *girls*<sup>52</sup> make any progress? Is all *your family*<sup>52</sup> well?  
*filles* <sup>9</sup> ? *se porte toute* *famille f.* ?

(q) The auxiliary words *do, did, shall, will, should, would, may, might* are not expressed in french; their meaning is implied in the termination of the verb.

\* When *IL, ELLE, ON* come after a verb ending with a vowel, -t- is placed between these pronouns and the verb to soften the pronunciation.

† Place the adverb *bien* before *français*; thus, *bien français*. See 53 rule.



## CHAP. VII.

## ADVERB

An ADVERB is a word added to a verb to denote the manner in which an action is performed; as, *I walk* FAST; *He walks* SLOWLY; *you write* WELL; *she writes* BADLY; the words FAST, SLOWLY, WELL, BADLY, which denote the manner in which the action of the verbs WALK and WRITE is performed, are ADVERBS.

The ADVERB being to the verb what the ADJECTIVE is to the noun, i. e. **53**  
expressing some circumstance of the verb, must be placed immediately AFTER the verb which it modifies; as,

I saw your sister yesterday.	<i>Je vis</i> HIER votre sœur.
She speaks french very well.	<i>Elle parle</i> TRÈS BIEN français.
I will come to see her soon.	<i>Je viendrai</i> BIENTÔT la voir.*

## EXERCISE.

You read french *very* well. I wish to learn it<sup>24</sup> (*very much*.)  
*lisez* 7 français m. très bien<sup>53</sup>. *souhaite* - *apprendre* <sup>30</sup> fort<sup>53</sup>.  
 You will soon<sup>53</sup> know it<sup>24</sup>, if you read the rules *attentively*<sup>53</sup>. I (will do)  
 - *bientôt saurez* <sup>30</sup>, *lisez* règles *attentivement*. *ferai*  
 what you have recommended to me *carefully*<sup>53</sup>. We (shall go) into  
<sup>40</sup> *recommandé* - <sup>25</sup> *soigneusement*. *irons* à  
 the country to-morrow. I hope you (will come) to see us *often*<sup>53</sup>.  
*campagne* f. *demain*<sup>53</sup>. *espère* que *viendrez* - *voir* <sup>24</sup> souvent.

Some ADVERBS may be placed in english either BEFORE or AFTER the **54**  
verb which they modify; as, I *OFTEN* see him, or I see him *OFTEN*.  
 I *VERY SELDOM* speak to him, or I speak to him *VERY SELDOM*; but  
 the adverbs which represent them in french, must always be placed AFTER  
 the verb; as,

I often see him.	<i>Je le vois</i> SOUVENT.
I sometimes meet her.	<i>Je la rencontre</i> QUELQUEFOIS.
I seldom speak to them.	<i>Je leur parle</i> RAREMENT.

## EXERCISE.

You *always*<sup>54</sup> walk alone. I *seldom*<sup>54</sup> go to town. I *generally*  
*Vous toujours* vous promenez seul. *rarement* vais à la ville. *ordinairement*  
 go into the country. I *often*<sup>54</sup> think of you. You *seldom*<sup>54</sup> come  
*vais* à *campagne* f, *souvent* pense à <sup>28</sup> *rarement* venez  
 to see us now. I *sometimes* think that you soon<sup>54</sup> (will forget)  
 - *voir* <sup>24</sup> à présent. *quelquefois*<sup>54</sup> pense que *bientôt* oublierez  
 us. You *certainly*<sup>54</sup> can not think so. I *sincerely*<sup>54</sup> wish that  
<sup>24</sup> *certainement* pouvez <sup>55</sup> penser le<sup>24</sup> *sincèrement* souhaite que  
 you may succeed. I *heartily*<sup>54</sup> wish you the same.  
*puissiez réussir*. *de bon cœur* souhaite <sup>24</sup> la même chose.

\* The perspicuity of a sentence often depends on the placing of the adverbs. These sentences for example; *J'aime BEAUCOUP à lire*, and *J'aime à lire BEAUCOUP*, though formed of the same words, by changing the place of the adverb *beaucoup*, express two different ideas. *J'aime BEAUCOUP à lire*; means, I am fond of reading; *J'aime à lire BEAUCOUP*; means, I like to read a great deal.



## ADVERB.

55

*The NEGATIVE adverbs*

NO, NOT, are	NE—PAS, NE—POINT
NO MORE,	} NE—PLUS.
NOT ANY MORE;	
NEVER;	NE—JAMAIS.
BUT LITTLE,	} NE—GUÈRE.
VERY LITTLE;	
BY NO MEANS;	NE—NULLEMENT.

NE is *always* placed BEFORE the verb, and PAS, POINT, PLUS, JAMAIS, GUÈRE, NULLEMENT are placed immediately AFTER the verb; as,

I do not like that woman. *Je n'aime PAS cette femme.*

I have never liked her. *Je NE l'ai JAMAIS aimée.*

I will not speak to her any more. *Je NE lui parlerai PLUS.*

## EXERCISE.

Do not you<sup>51</sup> know that man? Have you never seen him before?

- <sup>55</sup> connaissez <sup>2</sup> 'homme? Avez <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> vu <sup>25</sup> auparavant?

Were you not in his company yesterday? I know him but little.

étiez <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> à <sup>1</sup> compagnie f. hier<sup>53</sup> ? <sup>?</sup> connais <sup>24</sup> <sup>55</sup>

I do not wish to see him any more. I by no means consent (to it.)

- <sup>55</sup> souhaite - <sup>24</sup> <sup>55</sup> <sup>55</sup> consens <sup>y<sup>24</sup></sup>

## CHAP. VIII.

## PREPOSITION.

PREPOSITIONS are words which serve to connect other words together, in order to form a sentence; as,

*I am going to London WITH my father.*

The words TO, WITH, which connect the substantives, London, father to the verb GO, are called PREPOSITIONS.

56

*The PREPOSITIONS may often be placed in english either BEFORE or AFTER the substantive which they govern; as,*

WITH whom were you, or whom were you WITH? OF what do you speak, or what do you speak OF? In french the PREPOSITIONS must always be placed BEFORE the substantive which they govern; as,

With whom were you?	} AVEC qui étiez-vous?
or whom were you with?	
To whom did you speak?	} À qui avez-vous parlé?
or whom did you speak to?	
Of what are you speaking?	} DE quoi parlez-vous?
or what are you speaking of?	

## EXERCISE.

What country do you come from? What people did you come

<sup>38</sup> pays m. - <sup>51</sup> venez de<sup>56</sup> ? <sup>38</sup> gens f. êtes <sup>51</sup> venu

with? What news do you speak of? Which road shall

avec<sup>56</sup> ? <sup>38</sup> nouvelles f. <sup>51</sup> parlez de<sup>56</sup> ? <sup>35</sup> chemin m. -

we go by<sup>56</sup>? Which of these houses shall we go to? What

<sup>51</sup> irons par ? <sup>36</sup> <sup>1</sup> maisons f. - <sup>51</sup> irons à<sup>56</sup> ? <sup>39</sup>

are you laughing at? It is what you may depend upon.

<sup>51</sup> riez de<sup>56</sup> ? C' est <sup>39</sup> pouvez compter sur<sup>56</sup>.

## EXERCISE on the FOUR conjugations ER, IR, OIR, RE ;

And RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE on the foregoing rules.\*

VERBS in *er*.†

**AFFIRMATIVELY.** I like<sup>49</sup> wine. Thou askest<sup>49</sup> for beer. He gives<sup>49</sup> me water. We are looking<sup>49</sup> for flowers. You go<sup>49</sup> to see them. They are looking<sup>49</sup> at us.—I was helping<sup>49</sup> him. He was disturbing me. We were studying our lessons. You were singing a song. They were playing in the corner.—I brought<sup>49</sup> him<sup>24</sup> a book. He admired it<sup>24</sup> much. We invited them to stay. You went away too soon. They arrived in time.—I shall dine<sup>49</sup> with you. He will send it<sup>24</sup> me. We will accompany you. You will sup with us. They will bring it<sup>24</sup> to them.—I should like<sup>49</sup> to see it<sup>24</sup>. He would give it you, if you asked him<sup>24</sup> for it<sup>29</sup>. We should stay with you, if we had time. You would avoid his company, if you knew him. They would pay them, if they had money. They would lend them<sup>24</sup> some, if they asked them<sup>24</sup> for it<sup>29</sup>.

*(r) aimer † vin m. demander † - bière f. donner † 24 eau. (r) chercher † - fleur. aller † - voir 24. (r) regarder † - 24. (r) aider † lui 24. troubler 49 24 (r) étudier 49 1 leçon. chanter 1 chanson. f. jouer dans coin. m. apporter † (f) livre. m. admirer 30 (h) beaucoup. inviter 24 à rester. Vous vous en aller - trop tôt arriver à tems. (q) dîner avec 28. (q) envoyer † 29 accompagner 24 souper 28. apporter - 29. (q) aimer à voir le. (q) donner 24 29, si demandiez (f) - le. rester 28, avions 7 tems. m. éviter 1 compagnie, f. connaissez 24. payer 24, avaient argent. prêter (f) (g) 29, demandaient (f) - le.*

**INTERROGATIVELY.** Do I speak<sup>49</sup> too fast? Doest thou advise me to do it<sup>24</sup>? Does he converse well? Do we spend (too much) money<sup>8</sup>? Do you live in town now? Do they call us? Was I striking too hard? Was he speaking french? Were we going too far? Were you eating fruit? Were they scolding you? —Did I hurt<sup>49</sup> him? Did he shut the door? Did we

*(q) 51 parler trop vite? (q) 51 conseiller 24 de faire le? (q) 51 converser bien? 51 dépenser trop argent N.B.? 51 demeurer à la ville f. à présent? 51 appeller 24? (r) 51 frapper 49 trop fort? 51 parler français? (r) 51 aller trop loin? 51 manger fruit m.? 51 gronder 24? —(q) 51 blesser 24? 51 fermer 1 porte f.? 51*

\* The learner must peruse the verbs before he writes these exercises.

† Make the same difference in the verbs which are here given, as is marked in *italic* characters in the verb **BLAMER**, page 112, agreeably to tense, number, and person.‡ See the irregular verb **ENVOYER**, page 117.(r) Do not express the auxiliary words *be, am, art, is, are, was, wast, were*, when they are followed by the present participle in *ing*. Consider them only as signs which indicate the tense in which the verb which follows them must be in french.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*VERBS in *er*.

gain any thing? *Did* you invite them? *Did* they insult you?  
*gagner quelque chose ? (q) inviter 24 ? insulter 24*

—*Shall* I begin<sup>49</sup> it<sup>24</sup> again? *Will* he bring it with him?  
*(q) 51 recommencer le — ? (q) apporter 24 23*

*Shall* we divide it amongst us? *Will* you think of me? *Will*  
*partager 24 entre 28 ? penser à 28 ?*

they take it<sup>24</sup> along with them? —*Should* I lend it him<sup>29</sup>, it  
*emporter le — avec 28 ? (q) 51 prêter 24 (f),*

he asked me for it? *Would* he stay with us, if we asked him?  
*demandait 24 — 29 ? (q) rester avec 28, en priions 24*

*Should* we dance, if it was not so late? *Would* you shew it<sup>24</sup> me,  
*(q) danser, (i) était 55 si tard ? (q) montrer 29,*

if I called at (your house)? *Would* they change it, if I sent it  
*passais chez vous ? (q) changer 24, si renvoyais*

back to them? *Would* they forgive me, if I begged their pardon?  
*— — 29 ? pardonner 24, demandais leur 24 pardon ?*

NEGATIVELY. I do not blame you. He does not deny it. We  
*(q) 55 blâmer 49 24 (q) 55 nier 24*

do not breakfast so soon. You do not give me money<sup>8</sup> enough.  
*55 déjeuner 49 si tôt. 55 donner 24 argent<sup>N.B.</sup> assez.*

They do not cost (so much.)—I was not touching it. He was  
*55 coûter tant. (r) 55 toucher 49 y 24.*

not taking it away. We were not disputing. You were not listening  
*emporter le 24 — (r) disputer 49 écouter*

to me. They were not looking at you.—I did not speak to  
*— 24 regarder — 24. (q) 55 parler 49*

her. She did not look at me. We did not shew it to them.  
*24 regarder — 24 montrer 24 29*

You did not eat any<sup>24</sup>. They did not invite us.—I shall not stay<sup>49</sup>  
*manger\* (g) inviter 24 (q) 55 rester*

long. He will not incommode you. We shall not play to-night.  
*long tems. (q) incommoder 24 jouer ce soir.*

You will not fail to ask for it<sup>24</sup>. They will not shew it<sup>24</sup> you.  
*manquer de demander — le. montrer 29*

I should not like<sup>49</sup> to go there. He would not borrow money<sup>8</sup>, if he  
*(q) 55 aimer à aller y 24. (q) emprunter argent<sup>N.B.</sup>, s'*

had any<sup>24</sup>. We should not despise others, if we had no pride<sup>8</sup>.  
*avait (g) mépriser les autres, si n'avions pas orgueil<sup>N.B.</sup>.*

You would never pardon him, if you knew what he has done.  
*55 pardonner lui 24, saviez 40 fait*

They would not blame me, if they knew the pains I have taken.  
*blâmer 24, savaient peines (n) prises.*

NEGATIVELY and INTERROGATIVELY. Do I not begin<sup>49</sup> right?  
*(q) 51 55 commencer bien ?*

Does she not dance well? Do we not incommode you? Do you  
*(q) 51 55 danser bien ? 51 57 incommoder 24 ? 51*

\* See note \*, page 110.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*VERBS in *er*.

not breakfast this morning? *Do they not deserve it?*—*Was I*  
<sup>53</sup> *déjeuner* <sup>1</sup> *matin m. ?* <sup>51</sup> *mériter* *le<sup>24</sup> ?* (r) <sup>51</sup>

not relating it right? *Was he not shaking the table?* *Were we not*  
<sup>53</sup> *raconter* <sup>24</sup> *bien ?* <sup>51</sup> *remuer* *table f. ?* (r) <sup>51</sup>

walking too fast? *Were you not speaking to me?* *Were they not*  
*marcher trop vite ?* <sup>51</sup> *parler* — <sup>24</sup> ? <sup>51</sup>

asking you for it<sup>29</sup>?—*Did I not shut the door?* *Did he not give*  
*demander* <sup>24</sup> — *le ?* (q) <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> *fermer* *porte f. ?* <sup>51</sup> *donner*

her<sup>24</sup> some? *Did we not stay too long?* *Did you not encourage*  
 (f) (g)<sup>29</sup> ? <sup>51</sup> *rester trop long tems ?* <sup>51</sup> *encourager*

hem? *Did they not accompany you?*—*Shall I not bring it<sup>24</sup> you?*  
<sup>24</sup> ? <sup>51</sup> *accompagner* <sup>24</sup> ? (q) <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> *apporter le* <sup>29</sup> ?

*Will he not marry her?* *Shall we not sing a song?* *Will you not*  
 (q) <sup>51</sup> *épouser* <sup>24</sup> ? <sup>51</sup> *chanter* *chanson f. ?* <sup>55</sup>

grant him<sup>24</sup> that favour? *Will they not refuse it<sup>24</sup> me?*—*Would not*  
*accorder* (f) <sup>1</sup> *grâce f. ?* *refuser le* <sup>29</sup> ? (q) <sup>55</sup>

that book cost less in London than here? *Would not your father*  
<sup>52</sup> *coûter moins à Londres qu' ici ?* (q) <sup>55</sup> <sup>52</sup>

send him to France, if he was older? *Would he not go himself,*  
*envoyer\** <sup>24</sup> <sup>6</sup> *était âgé<sup>18</sup> ?* (q) <sup>51</sup> *aller† lui-même,*

if he had time? *Would not your sister go with him, if he went?*  
*avait* <sup>7</sup> *tems m. ?* (q) <sup>52</sup> *aller†* <sup>28</sup> , *s' il y allait ?*

VERBS in *ir*. ‡

REGULAR. *I am finishing the work* *I had begun.* *He is building*  
 (r) *finir* <sup>2</sup> *ouvrage (n) avais commencé.* (r) *bâtir*

a new<sup>16</sup> house. *We are demolishing ours.* *You are embellishing it<sup>24</sup>*  
*neuve maison. f.* (r) *démolir* <sup>41</sup> *embellir* <sup>30</sup>

much. *They are filling it<sup>24</sup> with furniture.*—*I was reflecting on*  
*beaucoup.* *remplir* <sup>30</sup> *de meubles.* (r) *réfléchir* <sup>à</sup>

what I have to do. *He was languishing in misery.* *We were*  
<sup>40</sup> *à faire.* *languir* *dans* <sup>7</sup> *misère. f.* (r)

warning them of the danger. *You were not applauding what they*  
*avertir* <sup>24</sup> *danger. m.* <sup>55</sup> *applaudir* <sup>à</sup> <sup>40</sup>

have done. *Were they not betraying us?*—*I punished him severely.*  
*fait.* (r) <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> *trahir* <sup>24</sup> ? *punir* <sup>24</sup> *sévèrement.*

*Did he not accomplish his purpose?* *Did we not obey your orders?*  
 (q) <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> *accomplir* *dessein m. ?* (q) <sup>51</sup> *obéir à* <sup>1</sup> *ordre ?*

You *did* not choose a good colour. *They matched them as well as*  
 (q) <sup>55</sup> *choisir* *bonne couleur. f.* *assortir* <sup>24</sup> *aussi bien qu'*

they could.—*I will banish him from my house.* *That will rejoice*  
*parent.* (q) *bannir* <sup>24</sup> *de* <sup>1</sup> <sup>45</sup> *réjouir*

us (very much.) *We will bless you (as long) as we live.* *You*  
<sup>24</sup> *beaucoup.* *bénir* <sup>24</sup> *tant* *que* *vivrons.*

\* See the irregular verb ENVOYER, page 117.

† See ALLER, page 116.

‡ See page 118 the regular verb FINIR, and make the same difference in these verbs.



RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*VERBS in *ir.*

REGULAR. *will* fill what you can find. That *will* not impoverish  
 emplir<sup>40</sup>      pouvez trouver.      appauvrir  
 them much.—I *would* cure him, if I could. You *would* finish  
<sup>24</sup> beaucoup. (q) guérir<sup>24</sup>, si      pouvais.      finir  
 at once our misfortunes. We *would* abolish it, if we could. You  
 tout d'un coup<sup>1</sup> malheur.      abolir<sup>24</sup>,      pouvions.  
*would* divert them much. Your brothers *would* succeed better, if  
 divertir<sup>24</sup>      1      réussir (b),  
 they were more careful. *Will* this tree<sup>52</sup> blossom this year? *Did*  
 étaient      soigneux. (q) <sup>2</sup> arbre m. fleurir      1 année f.? (q)  
 it<sup>30</sup> blossom last<sup>16</sup> year? Young trees seldom<sup>54</sup> blossom two years  
<sup>51</sup> fleurir dernière<sup>7</sup> ? 7 Jeunes      rarement fleurir deux  
 together. Do the fruits ripen well? Do they<sup>51</sup> not often<sup>54</sup> wither on  
 (de suite.) (q) <sup>52</sup> m. mûrir ? <sup>30</sup> souvent se flétrir à  
 the tree? Do they<sup>51</sup> not commonly<sup>54</sup> (grow rotten)? (Here are) several  
<sup>2</sup> ? (q) <sup>30</sup> ordinairement      pourrir ? Voici plusieurs  
 sorts of fruit; choose which you like best. Fill† your basket  
 sorte f. <sup>8</sup> ; choisir†<sup>37</sup>      aimer le mieux. Remplir      corbeille f  
 (with it.) Enjoy it while it *will* last. We *will* supply you  
 en<sup>26</sup>. Jouir † en<sup>26</sup> pendant que<sup>30</sup> durer.      fournir<sup>24</sup>  
 with pears and apples, as fast as they *will* ripen. The children  
 - <sup>9</sup>poire f.      <sup>9</sup>pomme f., aussi vite qu'<sup>30</sup> mûrir.      enfant m.  
*will* rejoice (very much,) for they are very<sup>54</sup> fond of fruit, and it  
 se rejouir beaucoup, car - beaucoup aimer - 7fruit, <sup>30</sup>  
 is growing dearer every day. I hope that they *will* obey you, for  
 - encherir - tous les jours. espérer qu' obéir<sup>24</sup>, car  
 children who disobey their parents seldom<sup>54</sup> succeed:  
<sup>7</sup> <sup>52</sup> désobéir à <sup>1</sup> parent rarement réussir.

IRREGULAR. I *am* perusing this book. Does it<sup>51</sup> belong to you?  
 (r) parcourir\*<sup>1</sup> livre. m. (q) <sup>30</sup> appartenir\* - <sup>24</sup> ?  
 It belongs to a friend of mine. Run† fast. Why do not you run  
<sup>30</sup> appartenir\*      43 Courir vite. Pourquoi <sup>55</sup> courir  
 faster? We are running as hard as we can. For whom are  
 vite <sup>18</sup> ? (r) courir <sup>30</sup> vite <sup>20</sup> pouvons. Pour <sup>34</sup> (r)  
 you gathering these flowers? We are gathering them for your  
 cueillir <sup>1</sup> fleur ? cueillir <sup>24</sup> pour  
 mother. I *will* offer them to her, that she *may* remember me.  
 offrir<sup>24</sup> - <sup>29</sup>, afinqu' se souvenir de <sup>28</sup>  
 Does not your mother hate me? Why *should* she hate you?  
 (q) <sup>52</sup> haïr <sup>24</sup> ? <sup>51</sup> haïr <sup>24</sup> ?  
 Because she never comes to see us. He maintains that he has not  
 Parceque <sup>55</sup> venir - voir <sup>24</sup>. soutenir qu' <sup>55</sup>  
 done it, but I firmly<sup>54</sup> believe that he lies. Was your sister asleep,  
 fait <sup>25</sup>, fermement crois qu' mentir. (r) <sup>53</sup> dormir,  
 when we set out? They came in as we *were* going out.  
 quand partir - ? entrer - comme (r) sortir -

\* See the table of the irregular verbs in *ir*, p. 120.

† 2d person imperative

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*VERBS *in ir.*

IRREGULAR. They *were* running to us, when we discovered  
*accourir vers* <sup>23</sup>, *découvrir*  
 them. I came yesterday to see you, but you were not in. I went out  
<sup>24</sup> *venir pour* <sup>24</sup>, *étiez* <sup>55</sup> *y* <sup>24</sup>, *sortir* -  
 early in the morning, and I *did* not return till late. I met  
*de bon* - - *matin, m.* (q) *ne\** *revenir que\** *tard.* *rencontrer*  
 your father, and he consented to every thing that I proposed to  
*consentir à tout ce que proposer*  
 him. *Did* my father offer you any money? He offered me all  
<sup>24</sup> (q) <sup>52</sup> *offrir* <sup>24</sup> <sup>9</sup> *argent ?* *offrir* <sup>24</sup> *tout*  
 the money that I should want. We went out (as soon) as the  
*dont aurais besoin.* *sortir* - *aussitôt que*  
 dinner was over. You *did* not set out so soon as you intended.  
*diner m. fut fini.* *partir* - *si tôt que* (*aviez dessein.*)  
 They detained us a good while at the inn. At what time *will*  
*retenir* <sup>24</sup> - *long tems à* <sup>2</sup> *auberge.* *à* <sup>38</sup> *heure f.* (q)  
 you set out to-morrow? We *shall* set out as soon as we are  
*partir* - *demain ?* (q) *partir* - *aussitôt que serons*  
 ready. When *will* you return? We *shall* not return before the  
*prêt* <sup>13</sup>. *Quand revenir ?* <sup>55</sup> *revenir avant*  
 end of next<sup>16</sup> week. *Shall* I help you to a glass of wine?  
*fin f. prochaine* *7semaine. f.* *servir* <sup>24</sup> - *verre m.* <sup>8</sup> *vin ?*  
 Help yourself first. I *will* help myself after you. I *will*  
*Servir vous* <sup>26</sup> *le premier.* *servir me* <sup>24</sup> *après* <sup>28</sup>  
 never consent (to it.) You grow more ceremonious every day.  
<sup>55</sup> *consentir y* <sup>24</sup>. *devenir* *cérémonieux* *touts les jours.*  
 Why *do* you not come to see us oftener? Why *does* not  
*Pourquoi* <sup>55</sup> *venir* - *voir* <sup>24</sup> *souvent* <sup>18</sup> ?  
 your sister come with you? When *will* your brother return from  
<sup>52</sup> *venir avec* <sup>23</sup> ? <sup>52</sup> *revenir de*  
 his journey? *Will* he not set out as soon as he hears that  
*voyage m. ?* <sup>55</sup> *partir* - *aussitôt qu'* *apprendra que*  
 you are going (to be married?) *Will* your mother consent to your  
*aller vous marier ?* <sup>52</sup> *consentir*  
 marriage? *Will* she not obtain your father's consent? If I were.  
*mariage ?* <sup>55</sup> *obtenir* <sup>11</sup> *consentement m. ?* *étais*  
 in your place, I *would* not go out so soon. *Would* my brother  
*à place,* (q) <sup>55</sup> *sortir* - *si tôt.* (q) <sup>52</sup>  
 obtain that place, if he asked for it<sup>24</sup>? *Should* the children go  
*obtenir* <sup>1</sup> *place, f.* *demandait* - <sup>30</sup> (h) ? <sup>52</sup> *sortir*  
 out, if it was fine weather? It is too late; they *would* not  
 -, *s' il faisait beau tems ?* (i) *trop tard ;* <sup>55</sup>  
 return in time for supper. They would not remember it<sup>24</sup>.  
*revenir à tems pour souper.* <sup>55</sup> *se souvenir en* <sup>29</sup>.  
 They *would* soon<sup>24</sup> feel the want (of it.)  
*bientôt sentir besoin m. en* <sup>24</sup>.

\* *Ne que*, without *pas*, expresses not till.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*VERBS in *oir*.\*

Does that man<sup>53</sup> owe you any thing? He owes me a  
 (q) <sup>2</sup> homme devoir <sup>24</sup> quelque chose ? devoir <sup>24</sup> -  
 (great deal) of money. (How much) does he owe you? I do not  
 beaucoup <sup>8</sup> argent. m. Combien devoir <sup>24</sup> ? <sup>53</sup>  
 know exactly; but I can get nothing from him. You should tell  
 savoir au juste; ne pouvoir tirer rien de <sup>28</sup> devoir (s) dire  
 him<sup>24</sup> that you want it. You should get him arrested. He is  
 (f) que avez besoin en<sup>24</sup>. (s) faire <sup>24</sup> arrêter. devoir (t)  
 to pay me part (of it) in a day or two. If you receive it<sup>24</sup>  
 - payer <sup>24</sup> une partie <sup>24</sup> en <sup>29</sup> dans jour m. ou deux. recevoir <sup>30</sup>  
 to-morrow, will you lend me eighteen or twenty pounds? I  
 demain, vouloir prêter <sup>24</sup> dix huit ou vingt livres sterling?  
 can not<sup>55</sup> lend you (so much.) I can lend you<sup>24</sup> ten or twelve  
 pouvoir prêter <sup>24</sup> tant. pouvoir prêter vous en<sup>29</sup> dix douze.  
 Lend me what you can. Were we not to take a walk this  
 Prêter <sup>26</sup> <sup>40</sup> pouvez. Devoir (t) <sup>55</sup> - faire un tour de promenade  
 evening? Yes, we were; but the master will not let me (go out)  
 soir m. ? Oui, le devoir (t); vouloir laisser <sup>24</sup> sortir  
 before I have said my lesson. Can you say it<sup>24</sup> now? I do  
 (avant que) aie dit <sup>1</sup> leçon. f. Pouvoir dire <sup>30</sup> à présent ?  
 not know whether I can say it<sup>24</sup> or not; but I knew it<sup>24</sup>, when  
 savoir si pouvoir dire <sup>30</sup> ou non; savais <sup>30</sup>, quand  
 I came in. You do not know it<sup>24</sup> yet. I shall know it<sup>24</sup> in a little<sup>8</sup>  
 suis entré. savoir <sup>30</sup> encore. savoir <sup>30</sup> en - peu<sup>N.B.</sup>  
 time. I can say it<sup>24</sup> now. I see your sister who is coming  
 tems. pouvoir dire <sup>30</sup> à présent. voir <sup>32</sup> (r) venir  
 to help us. We do not see her often, but we sometimes hear  
 - aider <sup>24</sup> voir <sup>24</sup> souvent, quelquefois <sup>54</sup> recevoir  
 (from her.) You shall see her to-morrow, if you will, for I  
 (de ses nouvelles.) voir <sup>24</sup> demain, vouloir, car  
 know that she intends to call upon you. If you will believe me,  
 savoir qu' (a dessein) de passer chez <sup>28</sup> vouloir croire <sup>24</sup>,  
 we will go. I think that it will rain soon. If it rains, do  
 s'en aller. penser pleuvoir bientôt. pleuvoir,  
 you know what we will do? We will sit down under that large  
 savoir <sup>40</sup> ferons ? s'asseoir sous (p) gros<sup>17</sup>  
 tree, until the rain is over. I can not<sup>55</sup> stay. I do not  
 arbre m. (jusqu' à ce que) pluie f. soit passée. pouvoir rester.  
 know what I must do. It will not rain much. It is only a shower.  
 savoir <sup>40</sup> devoir faire. pleuvoir Ce n'est qu' <sup>1</sup> ondée. f.

\* See the table of verbs in *oir*, page 134, 135.

(s) Should, denoting duty, or the necessity of doing a thing, is expressed by the conditional of DEVOIR; as, You should or ought to do it. Vous DEVRIEZ le faire.

(t) The present tense of the verb BE, *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, and the imperfect *was*, *were*, followed by the infinitive of a verb, are expressed by the same tenses of DEVOIR; as, I am to go there. Je DOIS y aller. I was to go there. Je DEVAIS y aller.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*VERBS in *re*.\*

What <sup>39</sup> *are* you doing there? I *am* waiting for my brother  
 (r) <sup>51</sup> *faire* là ? (r) *attendre* -

He *is* learning his lesson in the garden. If you see him,  
 (r) *apprendre* <sup>1</sup> *leçon* f. dans *jardin*. m. *voir* <sup>21</sup>,

tell him <sup>26</sup> that I *am* waiting for him here. I hear you. Why  
*dire* (f) *que* *attendre* <sup>24</sup> *ici*, *entendre* <sup>24</sup>. *Pourquoi*  
 do you interrupt<sup>1</sup> me so often? Do you pretend to know that better  
 (q) *interrompre* <sup>24</sup> *si* souvent? *prétendre* - *savoir* <sup>45</sup> (b)  
 than I do? I *will* not interrupt you (any more.) These people  
*que* <sup>23</sup> - ? (q) *ne interrompre* <sup>24</sup> *plus* <sup>55</sup> <sup>1</sup> *gens*

sell <sup>10</sup>very bad<sup>17</sup> wine. They sell it<sup>24</sup> very dear. I never drink  
*vendre* *très mauvais vin*. m. *vendre* <sup>30</sup> *cher*. <sup>55</sup> *boire*

wine<sup>8</sup>, when they<sup>46</sup> sell it<sup>24</sup> so dear. Do you hear that man?  
*vin* N.B., *quand* N.B. *vendre* <sup>30</sup> *si* (q) *entendre* <sup>2</sup> ?

He *is* speaking to us. I hear him, but I *do* not understand what  
 (r) *parler* - <sup>24</sup>. *entendre* <sup>24</sup>, *comprendre* <sup>40</sup>

he says. I *was* answering your letter, when I heard that you were  
*dire*. (r) *répondre* à *lettre*, *quand* (ai appris) *que* *étiez*

in town. You surprise us quite, for we *did* not expect you  
*en ville*. *surprendre* <sup>24</sup> (*tout à fait*), *car* (q) *attendre* <sup>24</sup>

so soon. I came down as soon as I heard you. If I return  
*is* *tôt*. *descendre* - *aussitôt* *que* *entendre* <sup>21</sup>. *rendre*

them<sup>24</sup> their goods, *will* they return me my money? They *would*  
 (f) *marchandise*, *rendre* <sup>24</sup> <sup>2</sup> *argent* ?

not return you one half (of it.) I *would* lose the whole rather  
*rendre* <sup>24</sup> *la moitié* <sup>24</sup> *en* <sup>29</sup>. *perdre* *tout* m. *plutôt*

than submit to such terms. What *are* you learning now?  
*que* (*de me soumettre*) à <sup>10</sup>*telles conditions*. <sup>39</sup> (r) *apprendre* *à présent* ?

I *am* learning mathematicks. Do you understand them well? I  
*apprendre* *mathématiques*. *entendre* <sup>24</sup> *bien* ?

understand them pretty well. If you take <sup>9</sup> pains, you *will* make  
*entendre* <sup>24</sup> *assez bien*. *prendre de la peine*, *faire*

great<sup>17</sup> progress in a short<sup>8</sup> time. Does your sister learn <sup>7</sup>music  
<sup>10</sup> *progrès* *en* - *peu* N.B. (q) <sup>52</sup> *apprendre* *musique*

still <sup>53</sup>? No; she *is* learning french<sup>7</sup> and geography. Do you read  
*encore* ? *Non*; (r) *apprendre* *français* m. <sup>7</sup>*géographie*. f. (q) *lire*

french<sup>16</sup> books now? I *am* reading Marmontel's tales. I *do* not  
<sup>9</sup>*lire* *à présent* ? (r) *lire* <sup>11</sup> <sup>7</sup>*contes*.

like tales. I like plays. Do you translate any book? I translate  
*aimer* <sup>7</sup> <sup>7</sup>*comédies*. *traduire* *quelque* ? *traduire*

english<sup>16</sup> histories into french. I pity you much. Why *do* you  
*anglais* <sup>13</sup> <sup>9</sup>*histoire* f. *en* *français*. *plaindre* <sup>24</sup> *fort*. *Pourquoi*

pity me? Because you are losing your time, and you displease all  
*plaindre* <sup>24</sup> ? *Parceque* (r) *perdre* *temps*, *et* *que* *déplaire* *à tout* <sup>13</sup>

your friends. I *do* not fear them. I *do* not depend upon them.  
<sup>1</sup> *ami*. m. *craindre* <sup>24</sup>. *dépendre* *d'* <sup>28</sup>.

\* See the table of verbs in *re*, p. 146, 147, 148.



RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

## VERBS in re.

I *will* do what I think proper. That man *is* always<sup>54</sup> laughing.  
*faire* <sup>40</sup> *croire* à propos. <sup>2</sup> (r) *toujours* *rire*.

Do you know what he *is* laughing at? He *does* not know it<sup>24</sup>  
*savoir* <sup>39</sup> (r) *rire* *de* <sup>58</sup> ? <sup>55</sup> *savoir* *le*

himself. Let us drink\* your friend's health. What *shall* we drink ?  
*lui-même.* - - *boire* à <sup>11</sup> <sup>7</sup>santé. f. <sup>39</sup> (q) *boire* ?

Drink a glass of wine. I *will* drink a glass of beer. I *will* not  
*Boire* † *verre* m. <sup>8</sup> (q) *boire* <sup>8</sup> *bière.* <sup>55</sup>

permit you to do that. Promise me not to do it<sup>24</sup>. Well! I  
*permettre* <sup>24</sup> *de faire* <sup>45</sup> *Promettre* † <sup>28</sup> *de ne pas* *faire* *le.* *Eh bien !*

promise it to you. You always promise, but you seldom<sup>54</sup> keep  
*promettre* <sup>24</sup> - <sup>29</sup> *toujours*<sup>54</sup> *promettre,* *mais* *rarement* *tenir*

your word. I *do* not believe what he says. Why *do* not you  
*parole.* <sup>55</sup> *croire* <sup>40</sup> *dire.* *Pourquoi* <sup>55</sup> <sup>51</sup>

believe him? Do you mean to say that he lies? I *do* not say  
*croire* <sup>24</sup> ? <sup>51</sup> *vouloir* - *dire* *qu'* *mentir* ? <sup>55</sup> *dire*

so; I only<sup>54</sup> say that people often<sup>54</sup> promise what they<sup>45</sup> *do* not  
*cela;* *seulement.* *dire* *que* <sup>45</sup> N.B. *souvent* *promettre* <sup>40</sup> N.B. <sup>55</sup>

intend to perform. What *are* you sewing there? I *am* making a  
*avoir dessein de faire.* <sup>39</sup> (r) *coudre* *là* ? (r) *faire* <sup>1</sup>

gown for a sister of mine. For which of your sisters *are* you  
*robe* f. *pour* <sup>43</sup> <sup>36</sup> <sup>1</sup> (r)

making it<sup>24</sup>? For the youngest. You *are* always<sup>54</sup> doing and undoing the  
*faire* <sup>30</sup> ? *jeune* <sup>21</sup> *toujours* *faire* *défaire* <sup>1</sup>

same thing over again. Put out one of these candles. Put† these  
*même chose* f. - - *Eteindre* † *une* (p) *chandelles.* f. *Remettre* (p)

books into their places again. Why *do* you not pay attention to  
*livre* à <sup>1</sup> - *Pourquoi* *faire* *attention*

what I say to you? Will the master permit us to (go out)  
<sup>40</sup> *dire* - <sup>24</sup> ? <sup>52</sup> *permettre* <sup>24</sup> *de* *sortir*

to-day? I *do* not know; ask it<sup>28</sup> him<sup>29</sup>. He *will* not live long,  
*aujourd'hui* ? *savoir;* *demander* *le* (f). *vivre* (long tems)

if he drinks (so much.) Yet, he appears to enjoy good health.  
*si* *boire* *tant.* *Cependant,* *paraître* - *jouir d'une* *bonne* *santé.* f.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Have you seen my mother? I have seen her, but I have not spoken  
*voir* ? *voir* † <sup>25</sup> , *parler*

to her. Has your sister done what she had promised me to do?  
<sup>25</sup> <sup>52</sup> *faire* <sup>40</sup> *avait* *promettre* <sup>25</sup> *de faire* ?

Why has she not done it? Has your father forbid her to do  
*Pourquoi* <sup>55</sup> *faire* <sup>25</sup> ? <sup>52</sup> *défendre* *lui*<sup>25</sup> *de faire*

it<sup>24</sup>? Has your brother been where I had told him? Has he  
<sup>52</sup> *être* *où* *avais* *dire* *lui*<sup>25</sup> ?

received the letter which<sup>32</sup> my sister has sent him<sup>25</sup>? Have you read  
*recevoir* *lettre* f. (m) *envoyer* † (f) ? *lire* †

\* 1st person imperative. † 2nd person imperative. ‡ This participle must be feminine

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

it<sup>25</sup>? Has your father bought the horse which<sup>32</sup> I had recommended  
<sup>30</sup> (h)? <sup>52</sup> acheter (m) <sup>52</sup> avais recommander  
 to him<sup>25</sup>? Has he tried it? Has my mother brought any body  
 (f)? <sup>52</sup> essayer <sup>25</sup>? <sup>52</sup> amener <sup>52</sup> quelqu'un  
 with her? Are your brothers gone out? Have your sisters  
 avec <sup>28</sup>? <sup>52</sup> sortir plur. -? <sup>52</sup>  
 finished the work they had begun? They *would* not have done  
 finir ouvrage (n) avaient commencer? <sup>55</sup> faire  
 it so soon, if they had not been compelled (to it.) I have met  
<sup>25</sup> si tôt, avaient <sup>55</sup> forcées y <sup>25</sup>. rencontrer  
 a man on (horseback) who has asked me the way to (your house).  
 à cheval demander <sup>25</sup> chemin m. chez vous <sup>28</sup>.

## REFLECTIVE VERBS.†

AFFIRMAT. I *am* getting up. He *is* washing himself. We  
 (r) se lever - (r) se laver <sup>24</sup>  
 are dressing ourselves. You *are* amusing yourselves. They *are*  
 (r) s'habiller <sup>24</sup> s'amuser <sup>24</sup>  
 getting ready to (go out). I *was* getting up, when you called me.  
 s'appréter - à sortir - (r) se lever -, quand appeler <sup>24</sup>  
 He *was* warming himself in the parlour. We *were* conversing by  
 se chauffer <sup>24</sup> dans salle f. (r) s'entretenir près  
 the fire. You *were* (making merry). They *were* laughing at us.  
 du feu. se divertir. se moquer de <sup>28</sup>.

INTERROG. Do I get up too late? Does that man (run away)?  
 (q) <sup>51</sup> se lever - trop tard? (q) <sup>2</sup> <sup>52</sup> s'enfuir?  
 Does your bird<sup>32</sup> (grow tame)? Do we warm ourselves  
 (q) oiseau m. s'approprier? <sup>51</sup> se chauffer <sup>24</sup>  
 (too much)? How do you do? How does your sister do?  
 trop? Comment <sup>51</sup> se porter? <sup>52</sup> se porter?  
 Was I coming too near? Was he hiding himself? Did we  
 (r) s'approcher près? se cacher <sup>24</sup>? <sup>51</sup>  
 expose ourselves (too much)? Were you inquiring after them?  
 s'exposer <sup>24</sup> trop? s'informer d' <sup>28</sup>?

NEGATIV. I *do* not care for him. He *does* not mistrust them.  
 (q) <sup>55</sup> se soucier de <sup>23</sup> (q) <sup>55</sup> se méfier de <sup>23</sup>  
 We *do* not repent (of it<sup>20</sup>). You *do* not rise early enough. They  
 se repentir en<sup>24</sup>. se lever assez matin.  
 do not meddle with his affairs. I *did* not stop. He *did* not  
 se mêler de <sup>1</sup> affaire. (q) s'arrêter. <sup>55</sup>  
 undress himself. We *did* not sit down. You *did* not awake in  
 se déshabiller <sup>24</sup> s'asseoir - s'éveiller à  
 time. I *did* not expect that they<sup>45</sup> *would* have called me up so soon.  
 tems. s'attendre N.B. (q) éveiller <sup>25</sup> - si tôt.

† See the reflective verb *se blâmer*, p. 114.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

## REFLECTIVE VERBS.

INTERR. *and* NEGAT. *An*: I not mistaken? *Does* he not apply to  
 (r) <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> *se tromper* ? (q) <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> *s'appliquer*  
 study? *Do* we not walk to-day? *Why* do not you (make  
<sup>51</sup> *se promener* aujourd'hui? *Pourquoi* <sup>55</sup> <sup>51</sup> *se*  
 haste)? *Why* do not you (get ready)? *Do* you not rejoice (at the)  
*dépêcher*? <sup>51</sup> *s'apprêter* ? <sup>51</sup> *se réjouir* <sup>des</sup>  
 good<sup>13</sup> news we have received? *Do* you not remember what I  
<sup>17</sup> *nouvelles f. (n.)* *reçues* ? *se souvenir de* <sup>40</sup>  
 have told you? No; I do not remember it<sup>29</sup>. I do not recollect it<sup>29</sup>.  
*dî*: <sup>25</sup> *se souvenir* *en*<sup>24</sup>. *se rappeler* *le*<sup>24</sup>

## COMPOUND TENSES.

AFFIR. I have (gone to bed) late. Thou hast soon (fallen asleep).  
<sup>\*</sup> *se coucher* *tard.* <sup>\*</sup> *bientôt* *s'endormir.*†  
 He has awoke early. We have (got up) before you. You have  
<sup>\*</sup> *s'éveiller de bon matin.* <sup>\*</sup> *se lever*† *avant* <sup>23</sup> <sup>\*</sup>  
 hurried yourself (too much). They have dressed themselves in haste.  
*se presser*† *trop*†. <sup>\*</sup> *s'habiller*† *à la hâte.*

INTER. Have I (gone away) too soon? Hast thou bathed lately?  
<sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup> *s'en aller*† *trop tôt* ? <sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup> *se baigner depuis peu*?  
 Has he amused himself well? Have we undressed ourselves  
<sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup> *s'amuser* *bien*†? <sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup> *se déshabiller*†  
 too soon? Have you been well since I saw you? Have  
<sup>tôt</sup> ? <sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup> *se porter* † *depuis que* *n'ai vu* <sup>25</sup> ? <sup>\*</sup>  
 they stopped too long? Have they (got ready) in time?  
<sup>51</sup> *s'arrêter*† *trop long tems*? <sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup> *s'apprêter*† *à tems* ?

NEGAT. I have not been well to-day. Thou hast not complained (of it).  
<sup>\*</sup> <sup>55</sup> *se porter* † <sup>\*</sup> <sup>55</sup> *se plaindre* *en* <sup>23</sup>  
 He has not perceived it much. We have not walked long.  
<sup>\*</sup> <sup>55</sup> *s'apercevoir en*<sup>29</sup> † <sup>\*</sup> <sup>55</sup> *se promener*† *long tems.*  
 You have not rested enough. They have not (sat down) a moment.  
<sup>\*</sup> <sup>55</sup> *se reposer*† *assez.* † <sup>\*</sup> <sup>55</sup> *s'asseoir* † *un moment.*

INTER *and* NEGAT. Have I not (made haste) enough? Hast thou  
<sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> *se dépêcher* † *assez* † ? <sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup>  
 not (caught cold)? Has she not married too young? Have we  
<sup>55</sup> *s'enrhumer*? <sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> *se marier* † *jeune*? <sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup>  
 not mistaken the way? Have you not inquired after them?  
<sup>55</sup> *se méprendre* † *de chemin*? <sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> *s'informer* † *d'* <sup>23</sup> ?  
 Have they not applied to you? Have they not (been mistaken)?  
<sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> *s'adresser* † <sup>23</sup> ? <sup>\*</sup> <sup>51</sup> <sup>55</sup> *se tromper* † ?

\* In the compound tenses of the verbs that are made reflective, the auxiliary verb HAVE can never be expressed by the verb AVOIR; it must be expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary verb ÊTRE to BE. See the compound tenses of the reflective verb BLÂMER, page 115.

† This participle must agree in gender and number with the nominative of the verb. See SYNTAX, Rule 158.

‡ This adverb must be placed before the participle in french. See SYNTAX, Rule 183.

THE  
CONJUGATIONS  
OR  
ACCIDENCE OF VERBS.

105

A VERB, as has been seen, page 91, is a word which expresses either *being* or *acting*.

As the same action may be performed in *different manners*, at *different times*, and by *different persons*, it was found necessary to *modify* or *vary* the same word, so as to denote the MANNER in which an action is done, the TIME in which it is done, and the PERSON or PERSONS by whom it is done, and this is what grammarians call *conjugation*.

The MANNERS of acting, in grammar called MODES or MOODS, are *four*; INFINITIVE, IMPERATIVE, INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, or CONJUNCTIVE.

The TIMES, in grammar called TENSES, are properly *three* only; PAST, PRESENT, and FUTURE; but, in order to express time with more precision, these are again divided into other tenses, the use of which will be seen in the syntax of verbs.

The PERSONS who act in a verb are generally *three* for each number.

1. The *person* or persons *who speak*; as, *I* BLAME; *we* BLAME.
2. The *person* or persons *spoken to*; as, *thou* BLAMEST; *you* BLAME.
3. The *person*, persons, or things *spoken of*; as, *he, she, my brother, my sister* BLAMES; *they, my brothers, my sisters* BLAME.

The *modifications* or *variations* by which these moods, tenses, and persons are known, *differ*, according to the different languages.

In english, the difference is shewn by the means of certain *signs* prefixed to the verb; as, *do* BLAME; *did* BLAME; *shall* or *will* BLAME; *should* or *would* BLAME; *may* BLAME, *might* BLAME.

In french, it is made by *changing the last syllable* of the word; as, *je* BLÂM *e*, *tu* BLÂM *es*, *il* BLÂM *e*, *nous* BLÂM *ons*, *vous* BLÂM *ez*, *ils* BLÂM *ent*; *je* BLÂM *ais*; *je* BLÂM *ai*; *je* BLÂMER *ai*; *je* BLÂMER *ais*, &c.\*

This *variation* in the *tenses* and *persons*, simple as it is, because it is nearly uniform, is nevertheless found embarrassing by some persons.

The difficulty lies chiefly in the *present* and *perfect* tenses of the *indicative* and *subjunctive* moods, and in the *imperative*.

In order to remove it as much as possible, I have placed *in one point of view*, the tenses which are either *similar* or partly similar, or *formed from one another*, that, by perceiving at once the similarity or the difference, the learner's mind may be more easily impressed with it.

\* The signs by which these inflections or variations are made, not being the same in all verbs, the conjugations must also be various.

The number of them is not exactly fixed, and varies in almost every grammar. Some fix it at *four*, some at *six*, some at *ten*, some at *eleven*, some at *twelve*.

It appears to me that their number must either be limited to *four*, or extended to *twelve*.

As amongst such a number of conjugations, out of which there will still be a great number of irregular verbs, it is very difficult for learners to distinguish of what conjugation a verb is; and as the infinitive of all the french verbs ends in one of these terminations ER, IR, OIR, RE, the only signs by which each different conjugation may be discriminated, I have thought it more simple to fix their number at *four*.

All verbs which may be conjugated after the same manner as one of these four, are called *regular*.

Those verbs which can not be conjugated like one of these four, are called *irregular*, and set in an alphabetical order after the regular, so that the learner can never be mistaken as to the manner of conjugating any verb which he may have need of, by paying attention to the termination of the infinitive only,



## INFINITIVE MOOD OR MANNER

To HAVE. *AVoir*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

have. *aie, sing.* *ayez, plur.\**  
 Let us have. *ayons.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present tense.	I have	<i>J'</i> † <i>ai</i> <sup>5</sup> .‡	<i>J'</i> <i>aie</i> <sup>6</sup> .	have, may have.
	Thou hast.	<i>Tu</i> <i>as</i> <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Tu</i> <i>aies</i> .	
	He has.	<i>Il</i> <i>a</i> .	<i>Il</i> <i>ait</i> <sup>26</sup> .	
	We have.	<i>Nous</i> <sup>25</sup> <i>av ons</i> <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Nous</i> <i>ayons</i> <sup>4</sup> .	
	You have.	<i>Vous</i> <i>avez</i> <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Vous</i> <i>ayez</i> .	
Imperfect tense.	They have.	<i>Ils</i> <i>ont</i> <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> <i>aient</i> <sup>6</sup> .	had, might have.
	I had.	<i>J'</i> <i>av ais</i> <sup>5</sup> .		
	Thou hadst.	<i>Tu</i> <i>av ais</i> .§		
	He had.	<i>Il</i> <i>av ait</i> <sup>26</sup> .		
	We had.	<i>Nous</i> <sup>25</sup> <i>av ions</i> .		
Perfect tense.	You had.	<i>Vous</i> <i>av iez</i> .		had, might have.
	They had.	<i>Ils</i> <i>av aient</i> <sup>6</sup> .		
	I had.	<i>J'</i> † <i>eus</i> <sup>12</sup> .	<i>J'</i> <i>eusse</i> <sup>2</sup> .	
	Thou hadst.	<i>Tu</i> <i>eus</i> .	<i>Tu</i> <i>eusses</i> <sup>23</sup> .	
	He had.	<i>Il</i> <i>eut</i> <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Il</i> <i>eût</i> <sup>26</sup> .	
Future positive.	We had.	<i>Nous</i> <sup>25</sup> <i>eûmes</i> .	<i>Nous</i> <i>eussions</i> .	had, might have.
	You had.	<i>Vous</i> <i>eûtes</i> <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Vous</i> <i>eussiez</i> .	
	They had.	<i>Ils</i> <i>eurent</i> <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> <i>eussent</i> <sup>18</sup> .	
	I shall or will have.	<i>J'</i> <i>aurai</i> <sup>5</sup> .		
	Thou shalt, wilt have.	<i>Tu</i> <i>auras</i> <sup>26</sup> .		
Fut. conditional.	He shall, will have.	<i>Il</i> <i>aura</i> .		have we? &c.
	We shall, will have.	<i>Nous</i> <sup>25</sup> <i>aurons</i> .		
	You shall, will have.	<i>Vous</i> <i>aurez</i> .		
	They shall, will have.	<i>Ils</i> <i>auront</i> <sup>26</sup> .		
	I should, wld. have.	<i>J'</i> <i>aurais</i> <sup>6</sup> .		
	Thou shd. wld. have.	<i>Tu</i> <i>aurais</i> .§		
	He shd. wld. have.	<i>Il</i> <i>aurait</i> <sup>26</sup> .		
	We shd. wld. have.	<i>Nous</i> <sup>25</sup> <i>aurions</i> .		
	You shd. wld. have.	<i>Vous</i> <i>auriez</i> .		
	They shd. wld. have.	<i>Ils</i> <i>auraient</i> <sup>6</sup> .		

## GERUND, or present participle.

having. *ayant.*

## PARTICIPLE past.

*eu.* *had.*

## The same verb conjugated Interrogatively.

Have I?	<i>ai-je</i> <sup>51</sup> ?	<i>AVONS-nous</i> <sup>51</sup> ?	have we? &c.
Hast thou?	<i>as-tu</i> <sup>51</sup> ?	<i>AVEZ-vous</i> <sup>51</sup> ?	
Has he?	<i>a-t-il</i> <sup>51</sup> ?	<i>ont-ils</i> <sup>51</sup> ?	
Has she?	<i>a-t-elle</i> <sup>51</sup> ?	<i>ont-elles</i> <sup>51</sup> ?	
Has my brother?	<i>mon frère a-t-il</i> <sup>52</sup> ?	<i>mes frères ont-ils</i> <sup>52</sup> ?	
Has my sister?	<i>ma sœur a-t-elle</i> <sup>52</sup> ?	<i>mes sœurs ont-elles</i> <sup>52</sup> ?	

\* The plural is generally used instead of the singular, though speaking to a single person.

† See note \* page 23. ‡ These figures refer to the pronunciation, see page 4.

§ See note 6, page 6. || See, syntax of verbs, the distinction between *avais* and *eus*

*The same verb AVOIR conjugated negatively.*

INFINITIVE.

Not to HAVE

*Ne pas AVOIR.*

IMPERATIVE.

Have *not*.

N' aie, or N' ayez

Let us *not* have.

N' ayons } *pas. †*

INDICATIVE.

I have <i>not</i> .	Je	n' ai <sup>5</sup>	} <i>pas. †</i>
Thou hast <i>not</i> .	Tu	n' as	
He has <i>not</i> .	Il	n' a	
We } have <i>not</i> .	Nous	n' avons <sup>26</sup>	
You } have <i>not</i> .	Vous	n' avez	
They	Ils	n' ont <sup>23</sup>	

I	Je	n' avais <sup>6</sup>	} <i>pas.</i>
Thou	Tu	n' avais	
He	Il	n' avait <sup>23</sup>	
We } had <i>not</i> .	Nous	n' avions	
You } had <i>not</i> .	Vous	n' aviez	
They	Ils	n' avaient <sup>6</sup>	

I	Je	n' eus <sup>26</sup>	} <i>pas.</i>
Thou	Tu	n' eus	
He	Il	n' eut <sup>23</sup>	
We } had <i>not</i> .	Nous	n' eûmes	
You } had <i>not</i> .	Vous	n' eûtes	
They	Ils	n' eurent <sup>18</sup>	

I	Je	n' aurai <sup>5</sup>	} <i>pas.</i>
Thou	Tu	n' auras	
He } shall, will	Il	n' aura	
We } not have.	Nous	n' aurons	
You } not have.	Vous	n' aurez	
They	Ils	n' auront <sup>26</sup>	

I	Je	n' aurais <sup>6</sup>	} <i>pas.</i>
Thou	Tu	n' aurais	
He } shld. wld.	Il	n' aurait	
We } not have.	Nous	n' aurions	
You } not have.	Vous	n' auriez	
They	Ils	n' auraient <sup>6</sup>	

SUBJUNCTIVE

Je	n' aie <sup>6</sup>	} <i>pas</i>
Tu	n' aies	
Il	n' ait <sup>26</sup>	
Nous	n' ayons	
Vous	n' ayez	
Ils	n' aient <sup>18</sup>	

may *not* have.

Je	n' eusse	} <i>pas.</i>
Tu	n' eusses	
Il	n' eût <sup>23</sup>	
Nous	n' eussions	
Vous	n' eussiez	
Ils	n' eussent <sup>18</sup>	

might *not* have

GERUND.

*not* having. N' ayant *pas*.

PARTICIPLE.

*pas* eu. *Not* had.

*The same verb conjugated negatively and interrogatively.*

Have I	} <i>not?</i>	N' ai-je <sup>51</sup>	} <i>pas?</i>	N' avons-nous	} <i>pas?</i>
Hast thou		N' as-tu <sup>51</sup>		N' avez-vous	
Has he		N' a-t-il <sup>51</sup>		N' ont-ils <sup>51</sup>	
Has she		N' a-t-elle		N' ont-elles <sup>51</sup>	
Has <i>not</i> my brother?		mon frère n'a-t-il <sup>52</sup>	<i>pas?</i>	mes frères n' ont-ils <i>pas?</i>	
Has <i>not</i> my sister?		ma sœur n'a-t-elle <sup>52</sup>	<i>pas?</i>	mes sœurs n' ont-elles <i>pas?</i>	

\* See note \* page 28.

† See the negative adverbs, rule 55, page 94.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

To BE.

Être.

## IMPERATIVE.

be.                   sois, *sing.*   soyez, *plur.\**  
 Let us be.                   soyons.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I am.</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> †suis <sup>29</sup> .
	<i>Thou art.</i>	<i>Tu</i> es <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>He is.</i>	<i>Il</i> est <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We are.</i>	<i>Nous</i> sommes.
Imperfect tense.	<i>You are.</i>	<i>Vous</i> êtes <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>They are.</i>	<i>Ils</i> sont <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>I was.</i>	<i>J'</i> étais <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou wast.</i>	<i>Tu</i> étais.
Perfect tense.	<i>He was.</i>	<i>Il</i> était <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We were.</i>	<i>Nous</i> étions <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>You were.</i>	<i>Vous</i> étiez.
	<i>They were.</i>	<i>Ils</i> étaient <sup>6</sup> .
Future positive.	<i>I shall or will be.</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> †fus <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>Thou shalt, will be.</i>	<i>Tu</i> fus.†
	<i>He shall, will be.</i>	<i>Il</i> fut <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We shall, will be.</i>	<i>Nous</i> fûmes.
Fut. conditional.	<i>You shall, will be.</i>	<i>Vous</i> fûtes <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>They shall, will be.</i>	<i>Ils</i> furent <sup>18</sup> .
	<i>I should, wld. be.</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> serais <sup>5</sup> .
	<i>Thou shd. wld. be.</i>	<i>Tu</i> seras <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>He shd. wld. be.</i>	<i>Il</i> sera.
	<i>We shd. wld. be.</i>	<i>Nous</i> serons.
	<i>You shd. wld. be.</i>	<i>Vous</i> serez <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>They shd. wld. be.</i>	<i>Ils</i> seront <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>I should, wld. be.</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> serais <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou shd. wld. be.</i>	<i>Tu</i> serais.
	<i>He shd. wld. be.</i>	<i>Il</i> serait <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We shd. wld. be.</i>	<i>Nous</i> serions.
	<i>You shd. wld. be.</i>	<i>Vous</i> seriez.
	<i>They shd. wld. be.</i>	<i>Ils</i> seraient <sup>6</sup> .

GERUND, or present *participle*.

## PARTICIPLE past.

Being.                   ÉT ant.

Été.                   been.

*The same verb conjugated Interrogatively.*

Am I?	suis-je <sup>51</sup> ?	sommes-nous <sup>51</sup> ?	are we? &c.
Art thou?	es-tu <sup>51</sup> ?	êtes-vous <sup>51</sup> ?	
Is he?	est-il <sup>51</sup> ?	sont-ils <sup>51</sup> ?	
Is she?	est-elle <sup>51</sup> ?	sont-elles <sup>51</sup> ?	
Is my brother?	mon frère est-il <sup>52</sup> ?	Mes frères sont-ils <sup>52</sup> ?	
Is my sister?	ma sœur est-elle <sup>52</sup> ?	Mes sœurs sont-elles <sup>52</sup> ?	

\* The plural is generally used instead of the singular, though speaking to a single person

† See note 2, page 1.

‡ See, syntax of verbs, the distinction between *étais* and *fus*

# AUXILIARY VERB *ÊTRE*.

109

*The same verb ÊTRE conjugated negatively.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Not to BE.*

*Ne pas ÊTRE.*

## IMPERATIVE.

*Be not.*

*Ne sois, or Ne soyez*

*Let us not be.*

*Ne soyons* } *pas.*

## INDICATIVE.

I am <i>not</i> .	Je <sup>3</sup>	<i>ne suis</i>	} <i>pas.</i>
Thou art <i>not</i> .	Tu	<i>n' es<sup>25</sup></i>	
He is <i>not</i> .	Il	<i>n' est<sup>25</sup></i>	
We } <i>are not</i> .	Nous	<i>ne sommes</i>	
You } <i>are not</i> .	Vous	<i>n' êtes</i>	
They }	Ils	<i>ne sont<sup>25</sup></i>	
I }	Je <sup>3</sup>	<i>n' étais<sup>6</sup></i>	} <i>pas.</i>
Thou } <i>was not</i> .	Tu	<i>n' étais*</i>	
He }	Il	<i>n' était<sup>25</sup></i>	
We }	Nous	<i>n' étions</i>	
You } <i>were not</i> .	Vous	<i>n' étiez</i>	
They }	Ils	<i>n' étaient<sup>6</sup></i>	
I }	Je <sup>3</sup>	<i>ne fus</i>	} <i>pas.</i>
Thou } <i>was not</i> .	Tu	<i>ne fus*</i>	
He }	Il	<i>ne fut<sup>25</sup></i>	
We }	Nous	<i>ne fûmes</i>	
You } <i>were not</i> .	Vous	<i>ne fûtes</i>	
They }	Ils	<i>ne furent<sup>18</sup></i>	
I }	Je <sup>3</sup>	<i>ne serai<sup>5</sup></i>	} <i>pas.</i>
Thou }	Tu	<i>ne seras</i>	
He } <i>shall, will</i>	Il	<i>ne sera</i>	
We } <i>not be</i> .	Nous	<i>ne serons</i>	
You }	Vous	<i>ne serez</i>	
They }	Ils	<i>ne seront<sup>25</sup></i>	
I }	Je <sup>3</sup>	<i>ne serais<sup>6</sup></i>	} <i>pas.</i>
Thou }	Tu	<i>ne serais</i>	
He } <i>shld. wld.</i>	Il	<i>ne serait</i>	
We } <i>not be</i> .	Nous	<i>ne serions</i>	
You }	Vous	<i>ne seriez</i>	
They }	Ils	<i>ne seraient<sup>6</sup></i>	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je <sup>3</sup>	<i>ne sois<sup>23</sup></i>	} <i>pas.</i>
Tu	<i>ne sois</i>	
Il	<i>ne soit<sup>23</sup></i>	
Nous	<i>ne soyons</i>	
Vous	<i>ne soyez</i>	
Ils	<i>ne soient<sup>18</sup></i>	

*may not be.*

Je <sup>3</sup>	<i>ne fusse</i>	} <i>pas.</i>
Tu	<i>ne fusses</i>	
Il	<i>ne fût<sup>25</sup></i>	
Nous	<i>ne fussions</i>	
Vous	<i>ne fussiez</i>	
Ils	<i>ne fussent<sup>18</sup></i>	

*might not be.*

## GERUND.

*being not. N'étant pas.*

## PARTICIPLE

*pas été Not been*

*The same verb conjugated negatively and interrogatively.*

Am I	} <i>not?</i>	<i>ne suis-je</i>	} <i>pas?</i>	<i>ne sommes-nous</i>	} <i>pas?</i>
Art thou		<i>N' es-tu</i>		<i>N' êtes-vous</i>	
Is he		<i>N' est-il</i>		<i>ne sont-ils</i>	
Is she		<i>N' est-elle</i>		<i>ne sont-elles</i>	
Is not my brother?		mon frère <i>n'est-il pas?</i>		mes frères <i>ne sont-ils pas?</i>	
Is not my sister?		ma sœur <i>n'est-elle pas?</i>		mes sœurs <i>ne sont-elles pas?</i>	

\* See, syntax, rule 140, the distinction between *avais* and *eus*; *étais* and *fus*.



A TABLE shewing in one point of view, the difference between the

ER.				IR.			
INFINIT.	GERUND	PARTIC.		INFINIT.	GERUND	PART.	
BLÂM <i>er.</i>	<i>ant.</i>	<i>é.</i>		FIN <i>ir.</i>	<i>issant.</i>	<i>i.</i>	
INDICAT.	IMPERAT.	SUBJUNCT.		INDICAT.	IMPERAT.	SUBJUNCT.	
Present tense.				FIN			
<i>Je</i> BLÂM	<i>e.</i>	<i>e.</i>		<i>is.</i>		<i>isse.</i>	
<i>Tu</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>es.</i>		<i>is.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>isses.</i>	
<i>Il</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>e.</i>		<i>it.</i>		<i>isse.</i>	
<i>Nous</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ions.</i>		<i>issons.</i>	<i>issons.</i>	<i>issions.</i>	
<i>Vous</i>	<i>ez.</i>	<i>iez.</i>		<i>issez.</i>	<i>issez.</i>	<i>issiez.</i>	
<i>Ils.</i>	<i>ent.</i>	<i>ent.</i>		<i>issent.</i>		<i>issent.</i>	
Imperfect tense.				FIN			
<i>Je</i> BLÂM	<i>ais.†</i>			<i>issais.†</i>			
<i>Tu</i>	<i>ais.</i>			<i>issais.</i>			
<i>Il</i>	<i>ait.</i>			<i>issait.</i>			
<i>Nous</i>	<i>ions.</i>			<i>issions.</i>			
<i>Vous</i>	<i>iez.</i>			<i>issiez.</i>			
<i>Ils</i>	<i>aient.</i>			<i>issaient.</i>			
Perfect tense.				FIN			
<i>Je</i> BLÂM	<i>ai.</i>	<i>asse.</i>		<i>is.</i>		<i>isse.</i>	
<i>Tu</i>	<i>as.</i>	<i>asses.</i>		<i>is.</i>		<i>isses.</i>	
<i>Il</i>	<i>a.</i>	<i>ât.</i>		<i>it.</i>		<i>ît.</i>	
<i>Nous</i>	<i>âmes.</i>	<i>assions.</i>		<i>îmes.</i>		<i>issions.</i>	
<i>Vous</i>	<i>âtes.</i>	<i>assiez.</i>		<i>îtes.</i>		<i>issiez.</i>	
<i>Ils</i>	<i>èrent.</i>	<i>assent.</i>		<i>irent.</i>		<i>issent.</i>	
Future positive.				FINIR			
<i>Je</i> BLÂMER	<i>ai.</i>			<i>ai.</i>			
<i>Tu</i>	<i>as.</i>			<i>as.</i>			
<i>Il</i>	<i>a.</i>			<i>a.</i>			
<i>Nous</i>	<i>ons.</i>			<i>ons.</i>			
<i>Vous</i>	<i>ez.</i>			<i>ez.</i>			
<i>Ils</i>	<i>ont.</i>			<i>ont.</i>			
Fut. conditional.				FINIR			
<i>Je</i> BLÂMER	<i>ais.†</i>			<i>ais.†</i>			
<i>Tu</i>	<i>ais.</i>			<i>ais.</i>			
<i>Il</i>	<i>ait.</i>			<i>ait.</i>			
<i>Nous</i>	<i>ions.</i>			<i>ions.</i>			
<i>Vous</i>	<i>iez.</i>			<i>iez.</i>			
<i>Ils</i>	<i>aient.</i>			<i>aient.</i>			

\* After the same manner as BLÂMER are conjugated *all* the verbs the infinitive of which ends in *ER*, (about 2700 in number) except ALLER and ENVOYER. Observe only, that in the verbs in *ger*, as, CHANGER, MANGER, SONGER, the *e* is retained before *a*, *o*, in order to soften the sound of *g*; so instead of saying CHANGONS, MANGONS, SONGONS; CHANGAIS, MANGAIS, SONGAIS; we say, CHANGEONS, MANGEONS, SONGEONS; CHANGEAIS, MANGEAIS, &c.

After the same manner as FINIR are conjugated about 220 verbs in *ir*, both *primitive* and *compound*.

Compound verbs are those whose signification changes by the means of a preposition prefixed to them; as, *déflourir*, to lose the blossom; *refleurir*, to blossom again; which are conjugated like their primitive *fleurir*, to blossom: *défaire*, to undo; *refaire*, to do again; which are conjugated like their primitive *faire*, to do.

\* These are the *only signs* by which it can be known to what conjugation a verb belongs. By marked in *italic*, i. e. those ending in *er* after BLÂM *er*, those in *ir* after FIN *ir*, those in *oir* after I

ONS *ER, IR, OIR, RE*.\*

OR conjugations, and how the tenses of a verb proceed from one another.

## OIR.

## RE.

INFINIT.	GERUND	PARTIC.
DEV <i>oir.</i>	<i>ant.</i>	Dû.
INDICAT.	IMPERAT.	SUBJUNCT.
DOIS.		DOIVE.
DOIS.	DOIS.	DOIVES.
DOIT.		DOIVE.
DEV <i>ons.</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ions.</i>
<i>ez.</i>	<i>ez.</i>	<i>iez.</i>
doivent.		doivent.
DEV <i>ais.†</i>		
<i>ais.</i>		
<i>ait.</i>		
<i>ions.</i>		
<i>iez.</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
DUS.		DUSSE.
DUS.		DUSSES.
DUT.		DÛT.
DÛMES		DUSSIONS.
DÛTES		DUSSIEZ.
DURENT.		DUSSENT.
DEV <i>rai.</i>		
<i>ras.</i>		
<i>ra.</i>		
<i>rons.</i>		
<i>rez.</i>		
<i>ront.</i>		
DEV <i>rais.†</i>		
<i>rais.</i>		
<i>rait.</i>		
<i>rions.</i>		
<i>riez.</i>		
<i>raient.</i>		

After the same manner as DEVOIR are conjugated REDEVOIR, PERCEVOIR, APERCEVOIR, S'APERCEVOIR, CONCEVOIR, RECEVOIR.

N. B. This verb is not regular; if it is found here amongst the regular, it is because its termination requires a conjugation of its own. The words which are *irregular* are printed wholly in *roman* characters; the *regular* are the *italic* terminations added to the *capital* letters.

INFINIT.	GERUND	PARTIC.
ATTEND <i>re.</i>	<i>ant.</i>	<i>u.</i>
INDICAT.	IMPERAT.	SUBJUNCT.
ATTEND <i>s.</i>		<i>e.</i>
<i>s.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>es.</i>
ATTEND		<i>e.</i>
<i>ons.</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ions.</i>
<i>ez.</i>	<i>ez.</i>	<i>iez.</i>
<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>
ATTEND <i>ais.†</i>		
<i>ais.</i>		
<i>ait.</i>		
<i>ions.</i>		
<i>iez.</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
ATTEND <i>is.</i>		<i>isse.</i>
<i>is.</i>		<i>isses.</i>
<i>it.</i>		<i>ît.</i>
<i>îmes.</i>		<i>issions.</i>
<i>îtes.</i>		<i>issiez.</i>
<i>irent.</i>		<i>issent.</i>
ATTENDR <i>ai.</i>		
<i>as.</i>		
<i>a.</i>		
<i>ons.</i>		
<i>ez.</i>		
<i>ont.</i>		
ATTENDR <i>ais.†</i>		
<i>ais.</i>		
<i>ait.</i>		
<i>ions.</i>		
<i>iez.</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		

After the same manner as ATTENDRE are conjugated BATRE, ABATRE, COMBATRE, DEBATRE, RABATRE, REBATRE, FENDRE, DÉFENDRE, DESCENDRE, CONDESCENDRE, FONDRE, CONFONDRE, REFONDRE, MORFONDRE, ROMPRE, CORROMPRE, INTERROMPRE, PONDRE, RÉPONDRE, CORRESPONDRE, RÉPANDRE, MORDRE, DÉMORDRE, TENDRE, ÉTENDRE, ENTENDRE, PRÉTENDRE, RENDRE, PENDRE, DÉPENDRE, VENDRE, PERDRE, TORRE, RETORDRE, TONDRE.

paying attention to the *termination* of the *infinitive*, and *altering* the same number of *letters* as are here *voir*, and those in *re* after ATT ND *re*, and with the assistance of the tables of the *irregular* verbs, it

† See note 6, page 6.

## INFINITE MOOD

To BLAME.

BLÂM *er*.

## IMPERATIVE.

blame.

BLÂM *e*, *sing.*BLÂM *ez*, *plur.*

Let us blame.

BLÂM *ons*.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> blame, or <i>am</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup>	BLÂM <i>e</i> <sup>2</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> blamest, <i>art</i>	<i>Tu</i>	BLÂM <i>es</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>He</i> blames, or <i>is</i>	<i>Il</i>	BLÂM <i>e</i> .
	<i>We</i> { blame, are	<i>Nous</i>	BLÂM <i>ons</i> .
	<i>You</i> { blaming.*	<i>Vous</i>	BLÂM <i>ez</i> .
	<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> <sup>25</sup>	BLÂM <i>ent</i> <sup>18</sup> .
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> { <i>was</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup>	BLÂM <i>ais</i> <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> { blaming.*	<i>Tu</i>	BLÂM <i>ais</i> .
	<i>He</i> {	<i>Il</i>	BLÂM <i>ait</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> { <i>were</i>	<i>Nous</i>	BLÂM <i>ions</i> .
	<i>You</i> { blaming.	<i>Vous</i>	BLÂM <i>iez</i> .
	<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> <sup>26</sup>	BLÂM <i>aient</i> <sup>9</sup> .
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup>	BLÂM <i>ai</i> <sup>5</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i>	BLÂM <i>as</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>He</i> { blamed or	<i>Il</i>	BLÂM <i>a</i> .
	<i>We</i> { <i>did</i> blame.	<i>Nous</i>	BLÂM <i>âmes</i> .
	<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i>	BLÂM <i>âtes</i> .
	<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> <sup>26</sup>	BLÂM <i>èrent</i> <sup>18</sup> .
Future positive.	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup>	BLÂMER <i>ai</i> <sup>5</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i>	BLÂMER <i>as</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>He</i>	<i>Il</i>	BLÂMER <i>a</i> .
	<i>We</i> { blame, or	<i>Nous</i>	BLÂMER <i>ons</i> .
	<i>You</i> { <i>be</i> blaming.	<i>Vous</i>	BLÂMER <i>ez</i> .
	<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> <sup>25</sup>	BLÂMER <i>ont</i> <sup>26</sup> .
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup>	BLÂMER <i>ais</i> <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i>	BLÂMER <i>ais</i> .
	<i>He</i> { <i>should, would</i>	<i>Il</i>	BLÂMER <i>ait</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> { blame, or	<i>Nous</i>	BLÂMER <i>ions</i> .
	<i>You</i> { <i>be</i> blaming.	<i>Vous</i>	BLÂMER <i>iez</i> .
	<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> <sup>26</sup>	BLÂMER <i>aient</i> <sup>6</sup> .

## GERUND.

## PARTICIPLE

blaming.		BLÂM <i>ant</i> .		BLÂM <i>é</i> .		blamed.
Interrogatively.		Negatively.		Interrogativ. and Negativ.		
BLÂME- <i>je</i> ?	do I blame?	<i>Je</i>	<i>ne</i> BLÂME	I do not blame.	<i>Ne</i> BLÂME- <i>je</i>	do I not blame?
BLÂMES- <i>tu</i> ?		<i>Tu</i>	<i>ne</i> BLÂMES		<i>Ne</i> BLÂMES- <i>tu</i>	
BLÂME-t- <i>il</i> ?		<i>Il</i>	<i>ne</i> BLÂME		<i>Ne</i> BLÂME-t- <i>il</i>	
BLÂMONS- <i>nous</i>		<i>Nous</i>	<i>ne</i> BLÂMONS		<i>Ne</i> BLÂMONS- <i>nous</i>	
BLÂMEZ- <i>vous</i> ?		<i>Vous</i>	<i>ne</i> BLÂMEZ		<i>Ne</i> BLÂMEZ- <i>vous</i>	
BLÂMENT- <i>ils</i> ?	&c.	<i>Ils</i>	<i>ne</i> BLÂMENT		<i>Ne</i> BLÂMENT- <i>ils</i>	

N. B. After the same manner as BLÂMER conjugate all the verbs, the infinite of which ends in *ER*, except ALLER and ENVOYER, p. 116, 117.†

\* Never say *je suis blâmant*, *tu es blâmant*, *il'est blâmant*, *j' étais blâmant*, &c. See note (r) p. 95.

† See note \* page 110.

*Compound tenses of the verb* BLÂMER,

*Formed by adding the participle* BLÂMÉ *to the auxiliary* AVOIR.

INFINITIVE COMPOUND.

*To have blamed.*

*Avoir* BLÂMÉ.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. comprind.</i>	I have	J' ai	} BLÂMÉ.*
	Thou hast	Tu as	
	He has	Il a	
	We	Nous avons	
	You	Vous avez	
	They	Ils ont	

	J' aie	} BLÂMÉ.
	Tu aies	
	Il ait	
	Nous ayons	
	Vous ayez	
	Ils aient.	

*may have blamed.*

<i>Imperf. comprind.</i>	I	J' avais	} BLÂMÉ.
	Thou	Tu avais	
	He	Il avait	
	We	Nous avions	
	You	Vous aviez	
	They	Ils avaient	

<i>Perf. comprind.</i>	I	J' eus	} BLÂMÉ.
	Thou	Tu eus	
	He	Il eut	
	We	Nous eûmes	
	You	Vous eûtes	
	They	Ils eurent	

	J' eusse	} BLÂMÉ.
	Tu eusses	
	Il eût	
	Nous eussions	
	Vous eussiez	
	Ils eussent	

*might have blamed.*

<i>Future comprind.</i>	I	J' aurai	} BLÂMÉ.
	Thou	Tu auras	
	He	Il aura	
	We	Nous aurons	
	You	Vous aurez	
	They	Ils auront	

<i>Condit. comprind.</i>	I	J' aurais	} BLÂMÉ.
	Thou	Tu aurais	
	He	Il aurait	
	We	Nous aurions	
	You	Vous auriez	
	They	Ils auraient	

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE

having blamed. *ayant* BLÂMÉ.

*eu* BLÂMÉ. had blamed.

<i>Interrogatively.</i>		<i>Negatively.</i>	
Ai-je	} BLÂMÉ?	Je n'ai	} pas BLÂMÉ.
As-tu		Tu n'as	
A-t-il		Il n'a	
Avons-nous		Nous n'avons	
Avez-vous		vous n'avez	
Ont-ils		ils n'ont	

<i>Interrogatively and Negatively.</i>	
N'ai-je	} pas BLÂMÉ?
N'as-tu	
N'a-t-il	
N'avons-nous	
N'avez-vous	
N'ont-ils	

\* See, syntax of verbs, the rules on the *past participle*.



The verb **BLAMER** made reflective.\*

## INFINITIVE.

To BLAME oneself.

SE BLÂMER.

## IMPERATIVE.

Commanding 26 rule, page 77.

blame thyself. blâm e - TOI.

yourself. blâm ez - VOUS.

let us blame ourselves. blâm ons-NOUS.

Forbidding 27 rule, page 77.

NE TE blâm e } pas  
NE VOUS blâm ez }  
NE NOUS blâm ons }

## INDICATIVE.

<i>I</i>	} blame	myself.	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup>	ME	blâm e.
<i>Thou</i>		thyself.	<i>Tu</i>	TE	blâm es.
<i>He</i>		himself.	<i>Il</i>	SE	blâm e.
<i>We</i>		ourselves.	<i>Nous</i>	NOUS	blâm ons.
<i>You</i>		yourselves.	<i>Vous</i>	VOUS	blâm ez.
<i>They</i>		themselves.	<i>Ils</i>	SE	blâm ent.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup>	ME	blâm e.
<i>Tu</i>	TE	blâm es.
<i>Il</i>	SE	blâm e.
<i>Nous</i>	NOUS	blâm ions.
<i>Vous</i>	VOUS	blâm iez.
<i>Ils</i>	SE	blâm ent.

may blame myself.

<i>I</i>	} was blaming.	myself.	<i>Je</i>	ME	blâm ais.
<i>Thou</i>		thyself.	<i>Tu</i>	TE	blâm ais.
<i>He</i>		himself.	<i>Il</i>	SE	blâm ait.
<i>We</i>		ourselves.	<i>Nous</i>	NOUS	blâm ions.
<i>You</i>		yourselves.	<i>Vous</i>	VOUS	blâm iez.
<i>They</i>		themselves.	<i>Ils</i>	SE	blâm aient

<i>I</i>	} blamed	myself.	<i>Je</i>	ME	blâm ai
<i>Thou</i>		thyself.	<i>Tu</i>	TE	blâm as.
<i>He</i>		himself.	<i>Il</i>	SE	blâm a.
<i>We</i>		ourselves.	<i>Nous</i>	NOUS	blâm âmes
<i>You</i>		yourselves.	<i>Vous</i>	VOUS	blâm âtes.
<i>They</i>		themselves.	<i>Ils</i>	SE	blâm èrent.

<i>Je</i>	ME	blâm asse
<i>Tu</i>	TE	blâm asses.
<i>Il</i>	SE	blâm ât.
<i>Nous</i>	NOUS	blâm assions.
<i>Vous</i>	VOUS	blâm assiez.
<i>Ils</i>	SE	blâm assent.

might blame myself.

<i>I</i>	} shall will blame.	myself.	<i>Je</i>	ME	blâmer ai.
<i>Thou</i>		thyself.	<i>Tu</i>	TE	blâmer as.
<i>He</i>		himself.	<i>Il</i>	SE	blâmer a.
<i>We</i>		ourselves.	<i>Nous</i>	NOUS	blâmer ons.
<i>You</i>		yourselves.	<i>Vous</i>	VOUS	blâmer ez.
<i>They</i>		themselves.	<i>Ils</i>	SE	blâmer ont.

<i>I</i>	} shd. wd. blame	myself.	<i>Je</i>	ME	blâmer ais.
<i>Thou</i>		thyself.	<i>Tu</i>	TE	blâmer ais.
<i>He</i>		himself.	<i>Il</i>	SE	blâmer ait.
<i>We</i>		ourselves.	<i>Nous</i>	NOUS	blâmer ions.
<i>You</i>		yourselves.	<i>Vous</i>	VOUS	blâmer iez.
<i>They</i>		themselves.	<i>Ils</i>	SE	blâmer aient.

Interrogatively.

Negatively

Interrogatively and Negatively.

ME	blâme-je ?	<i>Je ne</i>	ME	blâme	} pas.	NE ME	blâme-je	} pas ?
TE	blâmes-tu ?	<i>tu ne</i>	TE	blâmes		NE TE	blâmes-tu	
SE	blâme-t-il ?	<i>il ne</i>	SE	blâme		NE SE	blâme-t-il	
NOUS	blâmons-nous ?	<i>nous ne</i>	NOUS	blâmons pas.	NE NOUS	blâmons-nous pas ?		
VOUS	blâmez-vous ?	<i>vous ne</i>	VOUS	blâmez pas.	NE VOUS	blâmez-vous pas ?		
SE	blâment-ils ?	<i>ils ne</i>	SE	blâment pas.	NE SE	blâment-ils pas ?		

\* Sometimes it happens that the agent or person who acts is also the object, i. e. acts upon himself, as when I say ; *I blame myself ; Thou preparest thyself ; He distinguishes himself ; We wash ourselves ; You dress yourself ; They expose themselves* &c by which

Compound tenses of the reflective verb *SE BLÂMER*,  
formed by adding the participle *BLÂMÉ*, to the auxiliary verb *ÊTRE*.

INFINITIVE COMPOUND.

To have blamed oneself.

*s'être BLÂMÉ.*

INDICATIVE.

<i>I</i>	} <i>have blamed</i>	<i>myself.</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>ME</i>	<i>suis</i>
<i>Thou</i>		<i>thyself.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>T</i> <sup>3*</sup>	<i>es</i>
<i>He</i>		<i>himself.</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>s'</i>	<i>est</i>
<i>We</i>		<i>ourselves.</i>	<i>Nous</i>	<i>NOUS</i>	<i>sommes</i>
<i>You</i>		<i>yourselves.</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i>VOUS</i>	<i>êtes</i>
<i>They</i>		<i>themselves.</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>SE</i>	<i>sont</i>

<i>I</i>	<i>had blamed</i>	<i>myself.</i>	<i>Je</i>	<i>m'</i>	<i>étais</i>
<i>Thou</i>		<i>thyself.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>t'</i>	<i>étais</i>
<i>He</i>		<i>himself.</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>s'</i>	<i>était</i>
<i>We</i>		<i>ourselves.</i>	<i>Nous</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>étions</i>
<i>You</i>		<i>yourselves.</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>étiez</i>
<i>They</i>		<i>themselves.</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>s'</i>	<i>étaient</i>

<i>I</i>	<i>had blamed</i>	<i>myself.</i>	<i>Je</i>	<i>ME</i>	<i>fus</i>
<i>Thou</i>		<i>thyself.</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>TE</i>	<i>fus</i>
<i>He</i>		<i>himself.</i>	<i>Il</i>	<i>SE</i>	<i>fut</i>
<i>We</i>		<i>ourselves.</i>	<i>Nous</i>	<i>NOUS</i>	<i>fûmes</i>
<i>You</i>		<i>yourselves.</i>	<i>Vous</i>	<i>VOUS</i>	<i>fûtes</i>
<i>They</i>		<i>themselves.</i>	<i>Ils</i>	<i>SE</i>	<i>furent</i>

<i>I</i>	sh. will have bla	myself.	<i>Je</i>	ME	<i>serai</i>
<i>Thou</i>		thyself.	<i>Tu</i>	TE	<i>seras</i>
<i>He</i>		himself.	<i>Il</i>	SE	<i>sera</i>
<i>We</i>		ourselves.	<i>Nous</i>	NOUS	<i>serons</i>
<i>You</i>		yourselves.	<i>Vous</i>	VOUS	<i>serez</i>
<i>They</i>		themselves.	<i>Ils</i>	SE	<i>seront</i>

I	shd have blam	myself.	Je	ME	serais
Thou		thyself.	Tu	TE	serais
He		himself.	Il	SE	serait
We		ourselves.	Nous	NOUS	serions
You		yourselves.	Vous	VOUS	seriez
They		themselves.	Ils	SE	seraient

Interrogatively.		Negatively.	
ME suis-je	BLÂMÉ?	Je ne ME suis	pas BLÂMÉ.
T' es-tu		Tu ne T' es	
s' est-il		il ne s' est	
NOUS sommes-nous	BLÂMÉS	Nous ne NOUS sommes p	pas BLÂMÉS
VOUS êtes-vous		vous ne VOUS êtes pas	
SE sont-ils		ils ne SE sont pas	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je	ME	sois
Tu	TE	sois
Il	SE	soit
Nous	NOUS	soyons
Vous	VOUS	soyez
Ils	SE	soient

Je	ME	fusse
Tu	TE	fusses
Il	SE	fût
Nous	NOUS	fussions
Vous	VOUS	fussiez
Ils	SE	fussent

Je	ME	fusse
Tu	TE	fusses
Il	SE	fût
Nous	NOUS	fussions
Vous	VOUS	fussiez
Ils	SE	fussent

Je	ME	serai
Tu	TE	seras
Il	SE	sera
Nous	NOUS	serons
Vous	VOUS	serez
Ils	SE	seront

Je	ME	serais
Tu	TE	serais
Il	SE	serait
Nous	NOUS	serions
Vous	VOUS	seriez
Ils	SE	seraient

*BLÂMÉ. may have blamed.*

*BLÂME. might have blamed.*

you see that the person who is the *agent*, performs the action on *himself*, and consequently is also the *object*. These verbs the French call *réfléchis*, i. e. reflective, or reflected, because the energy of the verb returns to its agent. They differ in nothing from the other verbs, but in requiring an OBJECTIVE pronoun of the same number and person as the agent, or nominative, and in having their compound tenses formed with the auxiliary *ÊTRE*, instead of the auxiliary *AVOIR*.

N. B. These verbs are known in the dictionaries by having *SE* before their infinitive.

\* See note \* page 28.

† See, syntax of verbs, the rules on the *past participle*.

## INFINITIVE.

To GO. ALLer.

## IMPERATIVE.

GO. va, *sing.* ALL ez, *plur.*  
 Let us go. ALL ons.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i>	go, or <i>am</i> <i>going</i> .	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup>	vais <sup>6</sup> .	<i>J'</i>	aille.	<i>GO, may go.</i>
	<i>Thou</i>	goest, <i>art</i> <i>going</i> .	<i>Tu</i>	vas <sup>23</sup> .	<i>Tu</i>	ailles.	
	<i>He</i>	goes, or <i>is</i> <i>going</i> .	<i>Il</i>	va.	<i>Il</i>	aille.	
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i>	ALL ons.	<i>Nous</i>	ALL ions.	
	<i>You</i>	{ go, or	<i>Vous</i>	ALL ez.	<i>Vous</i>	ALL iez.	
Imperfect tense.	<i>They</i>	{ are going.	<i>Ils</i>	vont <sup>23</sup> .	<i>Ils</i>	aillent <sup>18</sup> .	<i>went, might go.</i>
	<i>I</i>		<i>J'</i>	ALL ais <sup>6</sup> .			
	<i>Thou</i>	{ was going.	<i>Tu</i>	ALL ais.			
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i>	ALL ait <sup>23</sup> .			
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i>	ALL ions.			
Perfect tense.	<i>You</i>	{ were going.	<i>Vous</i>	ALL iez.			
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	ALL aient <sup>6</sup> .			
	<i>I</i>		<i>J'</i>	ALL ai <sup>5</sup> .†	<i>J'</i>	ALL asse <sup>2</sup> .	
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	ALL as <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Tu</i>	ALL asses.	
	<i>He</i>	{ went, or	<i>Il</i>	ALL a.	<i>Il</i>	ALL ât <sup>26</sup> .	
Future positive.	<i>We</i>	{ did go.	<i>Nous</i>	ALL âmes.	<i>Nous</i>	ALL assions.	
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	ALL âtes.	<i>Vous</i>	ALL assiez.	
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	ALL èrent <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i>	ALL assent.	
	<i>I</i>		<i>J'</i>	irai <sup>5</sup> .			
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	iras <sup>26</sup> .			
Fut. conditional.	<i>He</i>	{ shall, will go,	<i>Il</i>	ira.			
	<i>We</i>	{ or be going.	<i>Nous</i>	irons.			
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	irez.			
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	iront <sup>26</sup> .			
	<i>I</i>		<i>J'</i>	irais <sup>6</sup> .			
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i>	irais.			
	<i>He</i>	{ should, wd. go,	<i>Il</i>	irait <sup>23</sup> .			
	<i>We</i>	{ or be going.	<i>Nous</i>	irions.			
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i>	iriez.			
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i>	iraient <sup>5</sup> .			

## GERUND.

going. ALL ant.

## PARTICIPLE.

ALL é. Gone.

N. B. ALLER, to go, requires a place mentioned after it; as,  
*Je VAIS à la maison, à la ville, &c.* I am going home, to town, &c.  
 If no place is mentioned, we make the verb reflective as follows:

\* A verb is called *irregular*, when all its tenses and persons cannot be formed from the infinitive, by changing only the last syllable, as you see in the verb *BLAMER*.

In order to render the difference more obvious, the tenses or persons which are formed regularly from the infinitive, have their terminations printed in *italic* characters, the words which are *irregular* are printed wholly in *roman*.

† *Fus, Fus, Fut*; *Fûmes, Fûtes, Furent*, the perfect tense of *ETRE*, is often used instead of *Allai, Allas, Alla*; *Allâmes, Allâtes, Allèrent*, the perfect of *ALLER*; as, *J' allai or je fus en France l' année dernière*; I went to France last year. I would prefer *allai* to *fus*.

INFINITIVE.

To go away.

S'en ALL *er*.

IMPERATIVE.

Commanding rule 26, p. 77.

GO away, or } *va-t-en*, sing.  
be gone, } *ALLEZ-VOUS-en*, pl.  
let us go away, *ALLONS-NOUS-en*.

Forbidding rule 27, page 77

ne t'en va pas. } do not go  
ne VOUS en ALLEZ pas. } away.  
ne NOUS en ALLONS pas. let us not go.

INDICATIVE.

*I* go, or am } *Je m'en vais*  
*Thou* goest, art } *Tu t'en vas.*  
*He* goes, or is } *Il s'en va.*  
*We* } go, are } *Nous NOUS en ALLONS.*  
*You* } going away. } *Vous VOUS en ALLEZ.*  
*They* } *Ils s'en vont.*  
*I* was going away. *Je m'en ALLAIS.*  
*I* went away. *Je m'en ALLAI.*  
*I shll, will* go away. *Je m'en IRAI.*  
*I shd, wld* go away. *Je m'en IRAIS.*  
*I am not* going away. *Je ne m'en vais pas, &c.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Je m'en aille.*  
*Tu t'en ailles.*  
*Il s'en aille.*  
*Nous NOUS en ALLIONS.*  
*Vous VOUS en ALLIEZ.*  
*Ils s'en aillent.*  
*Je m'en ALLASSE.*

Compound tenses, formed by adding the participle ALLÉ to the auxiliary verb ÊTRE.

*I have* } *Je m'en suis ALLÉ.*  
*Thou hast* } *Tu t'en es ALLÉ.*  
*He has* } *Il s'en est ALLÉ.*  
*We have* } *Nous NOUS en sommes ALLÉS.*  
*You have* } *Vous VOUS en êtes ALLÉS.*  
*They have* } *Ils s' en sont ALLÉS.*

ENVOYER.

To SEND.

The sole irregularity of this verb is in the *future* and in the *conditional*, the other tenses being formed regularly in the same manner as BLÂMER.

INFINITIVE.

To SEND.

ENVOY *er*.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *I* send. *J' ENVOYE.*  
Imp. *I did* send. *J' ENVOYAIS.*  
Perf. *I* sent. *J' ENVOYAI, &c.*  
Futu. *I* } *J' envèrai<sup>s</sup>.*  
*Thou* } *Tu envèras.*  
*He* } *Il envèra.*  
*We* } *Nous envèrons.*  
*You* } *Vous envèrez.*  
*They* } *Ils envèront<sup>ts</sup>.*  
Cond. *I* } *J' envèrais<sup>s</sup>.*  
*Thou* } *Tu envèrais.*  
*He* } *Il envèrait<sup>ts</sup>.*  
*We* } *Nous envèrions.*  
*You* } *Vous envèriez.*  
*They* } *Ils envèraient<sup>s</sup>.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*J' ENVOYE, &c.*  
*J' ENVOYASSE, &c*

Conjugate in the same manner, RENVOY *er*, to Send back, to Dismiss.



## INFINITIVE.

To FINISH.

FIN *ir*.

## IMPERATIVE.

finish. FIN *is*, sing. FIN *issez*, plur.Let us finish. FIN *issons*.

## INDICATIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> finish, or am	<i>finishing</i> .	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> <sup>20</sup> FIN <i>is</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> finishest, art		<i>Tu</i> FIN <i>is</i> .
	<i>He</i> finishes, or is		<i>Il</i> FIN <i>it</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> } finish, or <i>You</i> } are finishing. <i>They</i> }		<i>Nous</i> FIN <i>issons</i> . <i>Vous</i> FIN <i>issez</i> . <i>Ils</i> FIN <i>issent</i> <sup>18</sup> .
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> } <i>Thou</i> } was finishing. <i>He</i> } <i>We</i> } <i>You</i> } were finishing. <i>They</i> }		<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> FIN <i>issais</i> <sup>6</sup> . <i>Tu</i> FIN <i>issais</i> . <i>Il</i> FIN <i>issait</i> <sup>26</sup> . <i>Nous</i> FIN <i>issions</i> . <i>Vous</i> FIN <i>issiez</i> . <i>Ils</i> FIN <i>issaient</i> <sup>6</sup> .
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } <i>Thou</i> } <i>He</i> } finished, <i>We</i> } did finish. <i>You</i> } <i>They</i> }		<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> FIN <i>is</i> <sup>26</sup> . <i>Tu</i> FIN <i>is</i> . <i>Il</i> FIN <i>it</i> <sup>23</sup> . <i>Nous</i> FIN <i>îmes</i> . <i>Vous</i> FIN <i>îtes</i> . <i>Ils</i> FIN <i>irent</i> <sup>13</sup> .
Future positive.	<i>I</i> } <i>Thou</i> } shall, will <i>He</i> } finish, <i>We</i> } be finishing. <i>You</i> } <i>They</i> }		<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> FINIR <i>ai</i> <sup>5</sup> . <i>Tu</i> FINIR <i>as</i> . <i>Il</i> FINIR <i>a</i> . <i>Nous</i> FINIR <i>ons</i> <i>Vous</i> FINIR <i>ez</i> . <i>Ils</i> FINIR <i>ont</i> <sup>0</sup> .
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> } <i>Thou</i> } should, would <i>He</i> } finish, <i>We</i> } be finishing. <i>You</i> } <i>They</i> }		<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> FINIR <i>ais</i> <sup>6</sup> . <i>Tu</i> FINIR <i>ais</i> . <i>Il</i> FINIR <i>ait</i> <sup>26</sup> . <i>Nous</i> FINIR <i>ions</i> . <i>Vous</i> FINIR <i>iez</i> . <i>Ils</i> FINIR <i>aient</i> <sup>3</sup> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> <sup>20</sup> FIN <i>isse</i> <sup>2</sup> .
<i>Tu</i> FIN <i>isses</i> .
<i>Il</i> FIN <i>isse</i> .
<i>Nous</i> FIN <i>issions</i> .
<i>Vous</i> FIN <i>issiez</i> .
<i>Ils</i> FIN <i>issent</i> <sup>18</sup> .

finish, may finish.

finished, might finish.

## GERUND.

finishing.

FIN *issant*.

Interrogatively.

Negatively.

FINIS- <i>je</i> ?	do I fin?	<i>Je</i> ne FINIS	} pas. I do not finish.
FINIS- <i>tu</i> ?	do thou fin?	<i>Tu</i> ne FINIS	
FINIT- <i>il</i> ?	do he fin?	<i>Il</i> ne FINIT	
FINISSONS- <i>nous</i> ?	do we fin?	<i>Nous</i> ne FINISSONS	
FINISSEZ - <i>vous</i> ?	do you fin?	<i>Vous</i> ne FINISSEZ	}
FINISSENT- <i>ils</i> ?	do they fin?	<i>Ils</i> ne FINISSENT	

## PARTICIPLE.

FIN *i*.

finished.

Interrogatively and Negat.

ne FINIS- <i>je</i> }	do I not finish?
ne FINIS- <i>tu</i> }	do thou not finish?
ne FINIT- <i>il</i> }	do he not finish?
ne FINISSONS- <i>nous</i> p.	do we not finish?
ne FINISSEZ - <i>vous</i> p.	do you not finish?
ne FINISSENT- <i>ils</i> pas }	do they not finish?

After the same manner as FINIR, are conjugated the following verbs,  
*s'Abatardir*, to degenerate. *Abolir*, to abolish.  
*s'Abêtir*, to grow stupid. *Abonnir*, to better.

Aboutir, to end.

*s'Abrutir*, to become stupid.

Accomplir

Acomplir, to accomplish.	Dérougir, to take off redness.	Périr, to perish.
Accourir, to shorten.	Désobéir, to disobey.	Pervertir, to pervert.
s'Accroupir, to sit squat.	se Dessaisir, to give up.	Pétrir, to knead.
Adoucir, to soften.	Désunir, to disunite.	Polir, to polish.
Affadir, to render tasteless.	Divertir, to divert.	Pourir, to grow rotten.
Affermir, to strengthen.	Durcir, to harden.	Prémunir, to provide.
Affaiblir, to weaken.	Eblourir, to dazzle.	Punir, to punish.
Affranchir, to free.	Eclaircir, to brighten.	Raccourcir, to shorten.
Agir, to act.	Elargir, to widen.	Racornir, to make tough.
Agrandir, to enlarge.	Embellir, to embellish.	Radoucir, to soften.
Aguerrir, to inure to war.	Emplir, to fill.	Raffermer, to strengthen again.
Aigrir, to exasperate.	Encherir, to grow dearer.	Ratraichir, to refresh.
Alentir, to slacken.	Endurcir, to harden.	Ragrandir, to enlarge again.
Amaigrir, to grow lean.	Enforcer, to grow strong.	Rajeunir, to grow young again.
Ameubler, to make moveable.	Enfouir, to bury.	Ralentir, to slacken.
Amoindrir, to lessen.	Enhardir, to embolden.	Ramotir, to moisten.
Amollir, to soften.	Engloutir, to swallow up.	Ramollir, to soften.
Amortir, to redeem.	Engourdir, to benumb.	Rancir, to grow rancid.
Anéantir, to annihilate.	Enlaidir, to grow ugly.	Ravilir, to debase.
Anoblir, to ennoble.	s'Enorgueillir, to grow proud.	Ravir, to ravish, to delight.
Appauvrir, to impoverish.	Enrichir, to enrich.	Rebâtir, to build again.
Appesantir, to make heavy.	Ensevelir, to put in a shroud.	Reblanchir, to whiten again.
Applanir, to level.	Envahir, to invade.	Rebondir, to rebound.
Applatisir, to flatten.	Epaissir, to thicken.	Réfléchir, to reflect.
Applaudir, to applaud.	Epanouir, the bud opening.	Refleurir, to blossom again.
Approfondir, to fathom.	Equarrir, to square.	Refroidir, to cool.
Asservir, to enslave.	Etablir, to establish.	Régir, to rule, to govern.
Assortir, to match.	Etourdir, to stun.	Rejaillir, to spurt up.
Assoupir, to make drowsy.	Etrécir, to narrow.	Réjouir, to rejoice.
Assouplir, to supple.	s'Evanouir, to faint.	Rembrunir, to darken.
Assourdir, to deafen.	Farcir, to stuff.	Remplir, to fill again.
Assouvir, to glut, to satiate.	Fléchir, to bend, to move.	Renchérir, to grow dearer.
Assujettir, to subdue.	Flétrir, to wither.	Rendurcir, to make harder.
Attendrir, to move to pity.	Fleurir, to blossom, to flourish.	Renhardir, to grow bold again.
Atterrir, to approach the land.	Fouir, to dig.	Répartir, to distribute equally.
Avertir, to warn.	Fourbir, to furbish.	Repolir, to polish again.
Avilir, to revile, to debase.	Fournir, to supply.	Résaisir, to seize again.
Bannir, to banish.	Franchir, to leap over.	Resplendir, to shine.
Bâtir, to build.	Frémir, to shudder.	Ressortir, to resort.
Bénir, to bless.	se Froidir, to grow cold.	Retentir, to resound.
Blanchir, to whiten.	Garantir, to warrant.	Rétrécir, to straiten.
Blémir, to grow pale.	Garnir, to furnish.	Reverdir, to grow green again.
Bleuir, to make blue.	Gémir, to groan.	Réunir, to reunite.
Blondir, to grow fair.	Grandir, to grow tall.	Réussir, to succeed.
se Blottir, to lie squat.	Grossir, to grow big.	Rôtir, to roast.
Bondir, to skip.	Guérir, to cure.	Rougir, to blush.
Brandir, to brandish.	Hennir, to neigh.	Rouir, to steep.
Brouir, to blast.	Investir, to invest.	Roussir, to make reddish.
Brunir, to burnish.	Jaillir, to spout out.	Rugir, to roar.
Candir, to candy.	Jaunir, to grow yellow.	Saillir, to gush out.
Chérir, to cherish.	Jouir, to enjoy.	Saisir, to seize.
Choisir, to choose.	Languir, to languish.	Salir, to soil.
Clapir, to squat, to clap.	Meurtrir, to bruise.	Sévir, to exercise severity.
Compatir, to compassionate.	Moisir, to grow mouldy.	Subir, to undergo.
Convertir, to convert.	Mollir, to grow soft.	Subvertir, to subvert.
Crépir, to roughcast.	Mugir, to low.	se Tapir, to squat.
Croupir, to stagnate.	Munir, to store.	Tarir, to drain.
Débrutir, to take the roughness.	Mûrir, to ripen.	Ternir, to tarnish.
Définir, to define.	Nantir, to give security.	Terrir, to land.
Déflourir, to lose the blossom.	Noircir, to blacken.	Trahir, to betray.
Dégarnir, to disgarnish.	Nourrir, to feed.	Transir, to chill.
Dégourdir, to warm a little.	Obéir, to obey.	Travestir, to disguise.
Déguerpir, to move off.	Obscurcir, to obscure.	Unir, to unite.
Démolir, to demolish.	Ourdir, to warp.	Verdir, to grow green.
Dépérir, to decay.	Pâleur, to grow pale.	Vernir, to varnish.
Dépolir, to unpolish.	Parfournir, to make up.	Veillir, to grow old.
Déroidir, to take off stiffness.	Pâtir, to suffer.	Vomir, to vomit.

*The IRREGULAR verbs belonging to this conjugation are,*

s'Abstenir, to abstain.....	like VENIR.	Obtenir, to obtain.....	like VENIR.
Accourir, to run to.....	like COURIR.	Offrir, to offer.....	like OUVIR.
Accueillir, to welcome.....	like CUEILLIR.	OUVRIR, to open.....	page 127.
Appartenir, to belong.....	like VENIR.	Parcourir, to over-run.....	like COURIR.
AQUERIR, to acquire.....	page 121.	Partir, to set out.....	} like SENTIR.
BOUILLIR, to boil.....	page 122.	Pressentir, to have a foresight.....	
Concourir, to concur.....	like COURIR.	Parvenir, to attain.....	} like VENIR.
Conquérir, to conquer.....	like AQUERIR.	Prévenir, to prevent.....	
Consentir, to consent.....	like SENTIR.	Provenir, to proceed.....	} like OUVIR.
Contenir, to contain.....	} like VENIR.	Querir, to fetch.†.....	
Contrevenir, to contravene.....		Recourir, to have recourse to.....	like COURIR.
Convénir, to agree.....	} like OUVIR.	Recouvrir, to cover again.....	like OUVIR.
COURIR, to run.....		Recueillir, to collect.....	like CUEILLIR.
Couvrir, to cover.....	like OUVIR.	Redevenir, to become again.....	like VENIR.
CUEILLIR, to gather.....	page 124.	se Rendormir, to sleep again.....	} like SENTIR.
Décourir, to discover.....	like OUVIR.	Repartir, to set out again.....	
Démentir, to give the lie.....	} like SENTIR.	se Repentir, to repent.....	} like AQUÉRIR.
se Départir, to give up.....		Requérir, to require.....	
Désservir, to take off the.....	} like VENIR.	Ressentir, to resent.....	} like SENTIR.
Détenir, to detain..[dishes].....		Ressortir, to go out again.....	
Devenir, to become.....	like VENIR.	Ressouvenir, to remember.....	} like VENIR.
se Dévêtir, to undress.....	like REVÊTIR.	Retenir, to retain.....	
Disconvenir, to disagree.....	like VENIR.	Revenir, to return.....	} page 128.
Discourir, to discourse.....	like COURIR.	REVÊTIR, to invest.....	
Dormir, to sleep.....	} like SENTIR.	Secourir, to succour.....	like COURIR.
Endormir, to lull asleep.....		SENTIR, to feel, to smell.....	page 129.
s'Endormir, to fall asleep.....	} like COURIR.	Servir, to serve, to use.....	} like SENTIR.
Encourir, to incur.....		Sortir, to go out.....	
s'Enfuir, to run away.....	like FUIR.	Souffrir, to suffer.....	like OUVIR.
Entretenir, to keep up.....	like VENIR.	Soutenir, to maintain.....	} like VENIR.
Entr'ouvrir, to open a little.....	like OUVIR.	se Souvenir, to remember.....	
FUIR, to flee, to shun, to avoid.....	} page 125.	Subvenir, to afford.....	} like VENIR.
Hair, to hate.†.....		Survenir, to befall.....	
Intervenir, to intervene.....	} like VENIR.	Tenir, to hold.....	} page 130.
Maintenir, to maintain.....		TRESSAILLIR, to start.....	
Mentir, to lie.....	like SENTIR.	VENIR, to come.....	page 131.
MOURIR, to die.....	page 126.	Vêtir, to clothe.....	like REVÊTIR.

\* Several of these irregular verbs having a similarity in their conjugation, as, for example, the verbs in *tir*, which are all but two (*vêtir* and *revêtir*) conjugated like *SENTIR*, the verbs in *enir* which are conjugated like *VENIR*; I have conjugated only one verb of each termination, as a model for the others; and all the verbs which may be conjugated in the same manner as that verb are found under it.

† *HAIR* is regular only in the *first*, *second*, and *third* persons singular of the *present* of the *indicative*, and in the *second* person singular of the *imperative*, where *ai* are pronounced in *one* syllable,

Je <i>hais</i> .	I hate.	pronounce	<i>haye</i> .
Tu <i>hais</i> .	Thou hatest.		<i>hayé</i> .
Il <i>hait</i> .	He hates.		<i>hay</i> .

in the other tenses and persons *ai* are pronounced in *two* distinct syllables, and the *i* is marked over with *two* dots,

Nous <i>haïssons</i> .	We hate.	pronounce	<i>ha-ïsson</i> .
Vous <i>haïssez</i> .	You hate.		<i>ha-ïssay</i> .
Ils <i>haïssent</i> .	They hate.		<i>ha-ïss</i> .
Je <i>haïssais</i> .	I did hate.		<i>ha-ïssaye</i> .
Je <i>haïs</i> .	I hated.		<i>ha-ee</i> .
Je <i>haïrai</i> .	I shall hate.		<i>ha-ee-ray</i> .
Je <i>haïrais</i> .	I should hate, &c. like <i>FIN IR</i> .		

‡ Used only in the *infinitive* after *Aller* and *Envoyer*: as,

*Aller querir*, to go and fetch.

*Envoyer querir*, to send for.

INFINITIVE.

To ACQUIRE.

\*AQUÉRir.

IMPERATIVE.

acquire.

Aquiers, *sing.* AQUÉR *ez, plur.*

Let us acquire.

AQUÉR *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present tense.*  
I acquire, or *am*  
Thou acquirest, *art*  
He acquires, or *is*  
We } acquire,  
You } are acquiring.  
They }

*J* \*aquiers.  
*Tu* aquiers.  
*Il* aquiert<sup>23</sup>.  
*Nous* aquér *ons.*  
*Vous* aquér *ez.*  
*Ils* aquièrement<sup>18</sup>.

*J* \*aquièrè.  
*Tu* aquièrès.  
*Il* aquièrè.  
*Nous* aquér *ions.*  
*Vous* aquér *iez.*  
*Ils* aquièrement<sup>18</sup>.

acquire, *may* acquire.

*Imperfect tense.*  
I }  
Thou } was acquiring.  
He }  
We }  
You } were acquiring.  
They }

*J* \*aquérais<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* aquér *ais.*  
*Il* aquér *ait*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* aquér *ions.*  
*Vous* aquér *iez.*  
*Ils* aquér *aient*<sup>5</sup>.

*J* \*aquisse<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* aquisse.  
*Il* aquit<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* aquissons.  
*Vous* aquissez.  
*Ils* aquissent<sup>18</sup>.

acquired, *might* acquire.

*Perfect tense.*  
I }  
Thou } acquired,  
He } did acquire.  
We }  
You }  
They }

*J* \*aquis.†  
*Tu* aquis.  
*Il* aquit<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* aquîmes.  
*Vous* aquîtes.  
*Ils* aquirent.

*Future positive.*  
I }  
Thou } shall, will  
He } acquire,  
We } be acquiring.  
You }  
They }

*J* \*aquerrais<sup>5</sup>.†  
*Tu* aquerras.  
*Il* aquerra.  
*Nous* aquer rons.  
*Vous* aquer rez.  
*Ils* aquer ront<sup>26</sup>.

*Fut. conditional*  
I }  
Thou } should, would  
He } acquire,  
We } be acquiring.  
You }  
They }

*J* \*aquerrais<sup>6</sup>.†  
*Tu* aquerrais.  
*Il* aquerrait<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* aquer rions.  
*Vous* aquer riez.  
*Ils* aquerraient<sup>6</sup>.

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

Acquiring.

AQUÉR *ant.*

Aquis.

Acquired.

Conjugate in the same manner,

REQUÉRir, to require, and CONQUÉRir, to conquer.

N. B. CONQUÉR *ir* is used only in the *infinitive*, in the *gerund* CONQUÉRANT, in the *participle* CONQUIS, and in the *perfect*

*Je* conquis.

*I* conquered.

*Je* conquisse.

*Tu* conquis.

*Thou* conqueredst.

*Tu* conquisses.

*Il* conquît.

*He* conquered.

*Il* conquît.

*Nous* conquîmes, &c.

*We* conquered.

*Nous* conquissions.

*might* conq.

• See *qu*, page 13.

† See note 4, page 2.

‡ These two *rr* must be sounded distinctly; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first *r*



## INFINITIVE.

To BOIL.

BOUILLir.

## IMPERATIVE.

Boil.

Bous, sing.

BOUILL ez plur.

Let us boil.

BOUILL ons.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> boil, or am	boiling.	<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> bous <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Je</i> bouill e.	boil, may boil.
	<i>Thou</i> boilest, art		<i>Tu</i> bous.	<i>Tu</i> bouill es.	
	<i>He</i> boils, or is		<i>Il</i> bout <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Il</i> bouill e.	
	<i>We</i> } boil, or		<i>Nous</i> bouill ons.	<i>Nous</i> bouill ions.	
Imperfect tense.	<i>You</i> } are boiling.		<i>Vous</i> bouill ez.	<i>Vous</i> bouill iez.	boiled, might boil.
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> bouill ent <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> bouill ent <sup>18</sup> .	
	<i>I</i> } was boiling.		<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> bouill ais <sup>6</sup> .		
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu</i> bouill ais.		
Perfect tense	<i>He</i> } were boiling.		<i>Il</i> bouill ait <sup>26</sup> .		
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous</i> bouill ions.		
	<i>You</i> }		<i>Vous</i> bouill iez.		
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> bouill aient <sup>6</sup> .		
Future tense	<i>I</i> } boiled,		<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> bouill is <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Je</i> bouill isse <sup>2</sup> .	
	<i>Thou</i> } did boil.		<i>Tu</i> bouill is.	<i>Tu</i> bouill isses.	
	<i>He</i> }		<i>Il</i> bouill it <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Il</i> bouill it <sup>26</sup> .	
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous</i> bouill îmes.	<i>Nous</i> bouill issions.	
Future positive.	<i>You</i> }		<i>Vous</i> bouill îtes.	<i>Vous</i> bouill issiez.	
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> bouill irent <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> bouill issent.	
	<i>I</i> } shll, wll boil,		<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> bouillir ai <sup>5</sup> .		
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu</i> bouillir as.		
Fut. conditional.	<i>He</i> } be boiling.		<i>Il</i> bouillir a.		
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous</i> bouillir ons.		
	<i>You</i> }		<i>Vous</i> bouillir ez.		
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> bouillir ont <sup>26</sup> .		
	<i>I</i> } shd, wd boil,		<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> bouillir ais. <sup>6</sup>		
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu</i> bouillir ais.		
	<i>He</i> } be boiling.		<i>Il</i> bouillir ait <sup>26</sup> .		
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous</i> bouillir ions.		
	<i>You</i> }		<i>Vous</i> bouillir iez.		
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> bouillir aient <sup>6</sup> .		

## GERUND.

Boiling.

BOUILL ant.

## PARTICIPLE.

BOUILL i. Boiled.

N. B. To BOIL, used in an active sense, *i. e.* followed by an object, is not expressed by *bouillir*, but by *faire bouillir*; as,

<i>I</i> } boil, or	} water, meat, &c.	<i>Je</i> fais	bouillir	} de l'eau, de la viande,
<i>Thou</i> } am boiling		<i>Tu</i> fais	bouillir	
<i>He</i> }		<i>Il</i> fait	bouillir	
<i>We</i> } boil, or are		<i>Nous</i> faisons	bouillir	
<i>You</i> } boiling.	}	<i>Vous</i> faites	bouillir	
<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> font	bouillir	

*I have* } boiled, or been boiling.

*J' ai* } fait bouillir, &c.

And so on, by adding the infinitive BOUILLIR to the verb *faire*. See FAIRE.

INFINITIVE.

To RUN. <sup>14</sup>COUR *ir.*

IMPERATIVE.

run. COUR *s, sing.* COUR *ez, plur.*  
Let us run. COUR *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

*Present tense.*  
I run, or *am*  
Thou runnest, *art*  
He runs, or *is*  
We } run, or  
You } are running.  
They }

*running.*  
*Je* <sup>3</sup> <sup>14</sup>cour *s<sup>26</sup>.*  
*Tu* cour *s.*  
*Il* cour *t<sup>26</sup>.*  
*Nous* cour *ons.*  
*Vous* cour *ez.*  
*Ils* cour *ent<sup>19</sup>.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Je* <sup>14</sup>cour *e.*  
*Tu* cour *es.*  
*Il* cour *e.*  
*Nous* cour *ions.*  
*Vous* cour *iez.*  
*Ils* cour *ent<sup>18</sup>.*

*run, may run.*

*Imperfect tense.*  
I }  
Thou } was running.  
He }  
We }  
You } were running.  
They }

*Je* <sup>14</sup>cour *ais<sup>6</sup>.*  
*Tu* cour *ais.*  
*Il* cour *ait<sup>26</sup>.*  
*Nous* cour *ions.*  
*Vous* cour *iez.*  
*Ils* cour *aient<sup>6</sup>.*

*Perfect tense.*  
I }  
Thou }  
He } ran,  
We } did run.  
You }  
They }

*Je* <sup>14</sup>cour *us<sup>26</sup>.*  
*Tu* cour *us.*  
*Il* cour *ut<sup>26</sup>.*  
*Nous* cour *ûmes.*  
*Vous* cour *ûtes.*  
*Ils* cour *urent<sup>18</sup>.*

*Je* <sup>14</sup>cour *usse<sup>2</sup>.*  
*Tu* cour *usses.*  
*Il* cour *ût<sup>26</sup>.*  
*Nous* cour *ussions.*  
*Vous* cour *ussiez.*  
*Ils* cour *ussent.*

*ran, might run.*

*Future positive.*  
I }  
Thou }  
He } shll, wll run,  
We } be running.  
You }  
They }

*Je* <sup>14</sup>cour *rai<sup>5</sup>.\**  
*Tu* cour *ras.*  
*Il* cour *ra.*  
*Nous* cour *rons.*  
*Vous* cour *rez.*  
*Ils* cour *ront<sup>26</sup>.*

*Future conditional.*  
I }  
Thou }  
He } shd, wd run  
We } be running.  
You }  
They }

*Je* <sup>14</sup>cour *rais<sup>6</sup>.\**  
*Tu* cour *rais.*  
*Il* cour *rait<sup>26</sup>.*  
*Nous* cour *riens.*  
*Vous* cour *riez.*  
*Ils* cour *raient<sup>6</sup>.*

GERUND.

running. COUR *ant.*

PARTICIPLE.

COUR *u.* RUN.

After the same manner as COURIR, conjugate

ACCOURIR. to run to.  
CONCOURIR. to concur.  
DISCOURIR. to discourse.  
ENCONOURIR. to incur.

PARCOURIR. to peruse, to overrun.  
RECOURIR. { to run again, to have  
recourse to.  
SECOURIR. to succour, to relieve.

N. B. The compound tenses of ACCOURIR are formed with either *Avoir* or *Etre*; as,

I have run, *J'* ai accouru, or *Je* suis accouru.  
Thou hast run, *Tu* as accouru, *Tu* es accouru.  
He has run, *Il* a accouru, *Il* est accouru.  
We have run, &c. *Nous* avons accouru, *Nous* sommes accourus, &c.

\* These two *rr* must be sounded distinctly; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first

## INFINITIVE.

To GATHER.

CUEILL\**ir*.

## IMPERATIVE.

gather.      cueill *es*, *sing.*      CUEILL *ez. plur.*  
 Let us gather.      CUEILL *ons.*

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.  
*I* gather, or *am*  
*Thou* gatherest, *art*  
*He* gathers, or *is*  
*We* } gather or  
*You* } are gathering.  
*They*

*Je*<sup>s</sup> cueill\**e.*  
*Tu* cueill *es*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* cueill *e.*  
*Nous* cueill *ons.*  
*Vous* cueill *ez.*  
*Ils* cueill *ent*<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* cueill *e.*  
*Tu* cueill *es.*  
*Il* cueill *e.*  
*Nous* cueill *ions.*  
*Vous* cueill *iez.*  
*Ils* cueill *ent*<sup>18</sup>.

Imperfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* } *was* gathering.  
*He* }  
*We* }  
*You* } *were* gathering.  
*They* }

*Je* cueill *ais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* cueill *ais.*  
*Il* cueill *ait*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* cueill *ions.*  
*Vous* cueill *iez.*  
*Ils* cueill *aient*<sup>3</sup>.

Perfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } gathered,  
*We* } *did* gather.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* cueill *is*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* cueill *is.*  
*Il* cueill *it*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* cueill *îmes.*  
*Vous* cueill *îtes.*  
*Ils* cueill *irent*<sup>18</sup>.

*Je*<sup>s</sup> cueill *isse*<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* cueill *isses.*  
*Il* cueill *ît*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* cueill *issions.*  
*Vous* cueill *issiez.*  
*Ils* cueill *issent.*

Future positive.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } *shll, wd* gather  
*We* } *be* gathering.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* cueill *erai*<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* cueill *eras.*  
*Il* cueill *era.*  
*Nous* cueill *erons.*  
*Vous* cueill *erez.*  
*Ils* cueill *eront*<sup>26</sup>.

Fut. conditional.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } *shd, wd* gather,  
*We* } *be* gathering.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* cueill *erais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* cueill *erais.*  
*Il* cueill *erait*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* cueill *erions.*  
*Vous* cueill *eriez.*  
*Ils* cueill *eraient*<sup>6</sup>.

## GERUND.

gathering.

CUEILL *ant.*

## PARTICIPLE.

CUEILL *i.* gathered

After the same manner as CUEILLIR are conjugated,

ACCUEILLIR, to welcome, and RECUEILLIR, to receive, to collect.

N. B. ACCUEILLIR is now rather obsolete, instead of it, we use *Faire bon accueil*; as,  
 They welcomed us.      *Ils nous firent bon accueil.*

TO BE WELCOME is, *Etre bien venu*; as,  
 You are welcome.

*Vous êtes bien venu.*

\* The nearest idea that I can give with letters, of the sound of CUEILL, is *kheughtl*.

INFINITIVE.

To SHUN; To FLEE. FU *ir*.

IMPERATIVE.

shun. FU *is, sing.* FUI *ez, plur.*  
let us shun. FUI *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

Present tense.	I shun, or am	shunning.	Je <sup>3</sup> fu is <sup>26</sup> .
	Thou shunnest, art		Tu fu is.
	He shuns, or is		Il fu it <sup>26</sup> .
	We } shun, or		Nous fu yons.
Imperfect tense.	You } are shunning.		Vous fu yez.
	They }		Ils fu ient <sup>18</sup> .
	I } was shunning.		Je <sup>4</sup> fu yais <sup>6</sup> .
	Thou }		Tu fu yais.
Perfect tense.	He } did shun.		Il fu yait <sup>26</sup> .
	We }		Nous fu yions.
	You }		Vous fu yiez.
	They }		Ils fu yaient <sup>6</sup> .
Future positive.	I } shall, will shun,		Je fu is <sup>26</sup> .
	Thou }		Tu fu is.
	He } be shunning.		Il fu it <sup>26</sup> .
	We }		Nous fu imes.
Fut. conditional.	You }		Vous fu ites.
	They }		Ils fu irent <sup>18</sup> .
	I } shd, wd shun		Je fuir ais <sup>5</sup> .
	Thou }		Tu fuir as.
GERUND.	He } be shunning.		Il fuir a.
	We }		Nous fuir ons.
	You }		Vous fuir ez.
	They }		Ils fuir ont <sup>26</sup> .
PARTICIPLE.	I } shd, wd shun		Je fuir ais <sup>5</sup> .
	Thou }		Tu fuir ais.
	He } be shunning.		Il fuir ait <sup>26</sup> .
	We }		Nous fuir ions.
FUI <i>i.</i>	You }		Vous fuir iez.
	They }		Ils fuir aient <sup>6</sup> .

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je	fu ie.	shun, may shun.
Tu	fu ies.	
Il	fu ie.	
Nous	fu yions.	
Vous	fu yiez.	
Ils	fu ient.	
Je	fu isse <sup>2</sup> .	shunned, might shun.
Tu	fu isses.	
Il	fu it <sup>26</sup> .	
Nous	fu issions.	
Vous	fu issiez.	
Ils	fu issent.	

GERUND.

shunning. FUY ant<sup>26</sup>.

PARTICIPLE.

FUI *i.* shunned.

After the same manner is conjugated s'ENFUIR, to run away; thus,

I run, or am	} running away.	Je	M'	enfuis.
Thou runnest, art		Tu	T'	enfuis.
He runs, or is		Il	S'	enfuit <sup>26</sup> .
We run, are		Nous	NOUS	enfuyons.
You run, are		Vous	VOUS	enfuyez.
They run, are		Ils	S'	enfuiant <sup>18</sup> .

N. B. The compound tenses of s'ENFUIR are formed with *Etre*, not *Avoir*; as,

I have run away.	Je	ME	suis	} ENFUI, &c.
Thou hast run away.	Tu	T'	es	
He has run away	Il	S'	est	



## INFINITIVE.

To DIE.

MOUR *ir*.

## IMPERATIVE.

die. Meurs, *sing.* MOUR *ez, plur*  
 Let us die. MOUR *ons.*

## INDICATIVE.

Present tense.  
*I* die, or *am* dying.  
*Thou* diest, *art* dying.  
*He* dies, or *is* dying.  
*We* } die, or  
*You* } are dying.  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>13</sup>meurs<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* meurs.  
*Il* meurt<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* mour *ons.*  
*Vous* mour *ez.*  
*Ils* meurent<sup>18</sup>.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Je* meure.  
*Tu* meures.  
*Il* meure.  
*Nous* mour *ions.*  
*Vous* mour *iez.*  
*Ils* meurent.

die, may die.

Imperfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* } was dying.  
*He* }  
*We* }  
*You* } were dying.  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>14</sup>mour *ais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* mour *ais.*  
*Il* mour *ait*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* mour *ions.*  
*Vous* mour *iez.*  
*Ils* mour *aient*<sup>6</sup>.

Perfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } died,  
*We* } did die.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>14</sup>mour *us*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* mour *us.*  
*Il* mour *ut*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* mour *ûmes.*  
*Vous* mour *ûtes.*  
*Ils* mour *urent*<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* mour *usse*<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* mour *usses.*  
*Il* mour *ût*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* mour *ussions.*  
*Vous* mour *ussiez.*  
*Ils* mour *ussent.*

died, might die.

Future positive.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shll, will die,  
*We* } be dying.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>14</sup>mour *rai*<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* mour *ras.*  
*Il* mour *ra.*  
*Nous* mour *rons.*  
*Vous* mour *rez.*  
*Ils* mour *ront*<sup>26</sup>.

Future conditional.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shd, wd die,  
*We* } be dying.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>14</sup>mour *rais*<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* mour *rais.*  
*Il* mour *rait*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* mour *riens.*  
*Vous* mour *riez.*  
*Ils* mour *raient*<sup>5</sup>.

## GERUND.

dying.

MOUR *ant*<sup>26</sup>.

## PARTICIPLE.

Mort<sup>26</sup>.

dead.

After the same manner as MOURIR is conjugated se MOURIR, to be dying ;

*Je* ME meurs.  
*Tu* TE meurs.  
*Il* SE meurt.  
*Nous* NOUS mour *ons.*  
*Vous* VOUS mour *ez.*  
*Ils* SE meurent.

*I* am  
*Thou* art  
*He* is  
*We* are  
*You* are  
*They* are } dying away.

N. B. The compound tenses of MOURIR are formed by adding *Mort* to the auxiliary  
*Etre*; as, He has died. *Il est mort.*  
 They have died. *Ils sont morts, &c.*

\* These two *rr* must be sounded distinctly; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first *r*

INFINITIVE.

To OPEN.

OUVR *ir.*

IMPERATIVE.

open. OUVR *es, sing.* OUVR *ez, plur.*  
let us open. OUVR *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I open, or am opening.	J' <sup>14</sup> ouvr <i>e.</i>	J' <sup>14</sup> ouvr <i>e.</i>	open, may open.
	Thou openest, art opening.	Tu ouvr <i>es.</i>	Tu ouvr <i>es.</i>	
	He opens, or is opening.	Il ouvr <i>e.</i>	Il ouvr <i>e.</i>	
	We } open, or You } are opening.	Nous ouvr <i>ons.</i>	Nous ouvr <i>ions.</i>	
	They }	Vous ouvr <i>iez.</i>	Vous ouvr <i>iez.</i>	
		Ils ouvr <i>ent<sup>15</sup>.</i>	Ils ouvr <i>ent.</i>	
Imperfect tense.	I } was opening.	J' <sup>14</sup> ouvr <i>ais<sup>2</sup>.</i>		opened, might open.
	Thou }	Tu ouvr <i>ais.</i>		
	He }	Il ouvr <i>ait<sup>26</sup>.</i>		
	We } were opening.	Nous ouvr <i>ions.</i>		
	You }	Vous ouvr <i>iez.</i>		
	They }	Ils ouvr <i>aient<sup>16</sup>.</i>		
Perfect tense.	I } opened,	J' <sup>14</sup> ouvr <i>is<sup>26</sup>.</i>	J' <sup>14</sup> ouvr <i>isse<sup>2</sup>.</i>	
	Thou } did open.	Tu ouvr <i>is.</i>	Tu ouvr <i>isses.</i>	
	He }	Il ouvr <i>it<sup>26</sup>.</i>	Il ouvr <i>it<sup>26</sup>.</i>	
	We }	Nous ouvr <i>îmes.</i>	Nous ouvr <i>issions.</i>	
	You }	Vous ouvr <i>îtes.</i>	Vous ouvr <i>issiez.</i>	
	They }	Ils ouvr <i>irent<sup>18</sup>.</i>	Ils ouvr <i>issent.</i>	
Future positive.	I } shall, will open,	J' <sup>14</sup> ouvrir <i>ai<sup>5</sup>.</i>		
	Thou } be opening.	Tu ouvrir <i>as.</i>		
	He }	Il ouvrir <i>a.</i>		
	We }	Nous ouvrir <i>ons.</i>		
	You }	Vous ouvrir <i>ez.</i>		
	They }	Ils ouvrir <i>ont<sup>25</sup>.</i>		
Fut. conditional.	I } shd, wd open,	J' <sup>14</sup> ouvrir <i>ais<sup>6</sup>.</i>		
	Thou } be opening.	Tu ouvrir <i>ais.</i>		
	He }	Il ouvrir <i>ait<sup>26</sup>.</i>		
	We }	Nous ouvrir <i>ions.</i>		
	You }	Vous ouvrir <i>iez.</i>		
	They }	Ils ouvrir <i>aient<sup>6</sup>.</i>		

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

opening. OUVR *ant<sup>25</sup>.* ouvert<sup>27</sup>. opened.

After the same manner as OUVRIIR, are conjugated

ENTR'OUVRIIR, to open a little.

RECOUVRIIR, to cover again

COUVRIIR, to cover.

OFFRIIR, to offer.

DÉCOUVRIIR, to discover.

SOUFFRIIR, to suffer.

## INFINITIVE.

To INVEST *with*.\*REVÊT *ir*.

## IMPERATIVE.

invest. REVÊT *s, sing.*REVÊT *ez, plur.*

let us invest.

REVÊT *ons.*

## INDICATIVE.

*Present tense.*  
*I* invest, or *am* investing.  
*Thou* investest, *art* investing.  
*He* invests, or *is* investing.  
*We* } invest,  
*You* } are investing.  
*They* }

*Imperfect tense.*  
*I* } was investing.  
*Thou* }  
*He* }  
*We* }  
*You* } were investing.  
*They* }

*Perfect tense.*  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } invested,  
*We* } did invest.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Future positive.*  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shall, will invest,  
*We* } be investing.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Fut. conditional.*  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } should, would invest,  
*We* } be investing.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je*<sup>3</sup> revêt *s*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* revêt *s*.  
*Il* revêt *s*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* revêt *ons*.  
*Vous* revêt *ez*.  
*Ils* revêt *ent*<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* revêt *ais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* revêt *ais*.  
*Il* revêt *ait*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* revêt *ions*.  
*Vous* revêt *iez*.  
*Ils* revêt *aient*<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* revêt *is*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* revêt *is*.  
*Il* revêt *it*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* revêt *îmes*.  
*Vous* revêt *îtes*.  
*Ils* revêt *irent*<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* revêtir *ai*<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* revêtir *as*.  
*Il* revêtir *a*.  
*Nous* revêtir *ons*.  
*Vous* revêtir *ez*.  
*Ils* revêtir *ont*<sup>26</sup>.

*Je* revêtir *ais*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* revêtir *ais*.  
*Il* revêtir *ait*.  
*Nous* revêtir *ions*.  
*Vous* revêtir *iez*.  
*Ils* revêtir *aient*<sup>6</sup>.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Je* revêt *e*.  
*Tu* revêt *es*.  
*Il* revêt *e*.  
*Nous* revêt *ions*.  
*Vous* revêt *iez*.  
*Ils* revêt *ent*.

*Je* revêt *isse*.  
*Tu* revêt *isses*.  
*Il* revêt *ît*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* revêt *issions*.  
*Vous* revêt *issiez*.  
*Ils* revêt *issent*.

invest, may invest.

invested, might invest.

## GERUND.

investing. REVÊT *ant*<sup>26</sup>.

## PARTICIPLE.

REVÊT *u*. invested.

After the same manner as REVÊTIR, are conjugated

VÊTIR, to clothe; and DÉVÊTIR, to undress;

but these two verbs are seldom used, except in the infinitive VÊTIR, DÉVÊTIR, and in the participle VÊTU, clothed; instead of the former, we make use of HABILLER, to clothe, to dress; and instead of the latter, we use DÉSHABILLER, to undress.

\* To invest with honours, dignities, &amp;c. but not to surround.

*INFINITIVE.*  
*To FEEL; To SMELL.*      *SENT ir.*

*IMPERATIVE.*  
feel.      sens, *sing.*      *SENT ez, plur.*  
let us feel.      *SENT ons.*

		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE		
Present tense.	<i>I</i> feel, or am	feeling.	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> <sup>16</sup> sens <sup>25</sup> .	<i>Je</i>	sent e <sup>2</sup> .	feel, may feel.
	<i>Thou</i> feelest, art		<i>Tu</i> sens.	<i>Tu</i>	sent es.	
	<i>He</i> feels, or is		<i>Il</i> sent <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Il</i>	sent e.	
	<i>We</i>	} feel, are feeling.	<i>Nous</i> sent ons.	<i>Nous</i>	sent ions.	
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i> sent ez.	<i>Vous</i>	sent iez.	
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i> sent ent <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i>	sent ent <sup>18</sup> .	
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i>	} was feeling.    were feeling.	<i>Je</i> sent ais <sup>5</sup> .			
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i> sent ais.			
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i> sent ait <sup>23</sup> .			
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i> sent ions			
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i> sent iez.			
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i> sent aient <sup>5</sup> .			
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i>	} felt, did feel.	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> sent is <sup>23</sup> .	<i>Je</i>	sent isse <sup>2</sup> .	felt, might feel.
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i> sent is.	<i>Tu</i>	sent isses.	
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i> sent it <sup>25</sup> .	<i>Il</i>	sent ît. <sup>23</sup>	
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i> sent îmes.	<i>Nous</i>	sent issions.	
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i> sent îtes.	<i>Vous</i>	sent issiez.	
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i> sent irent <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i>	sent issent.	
Future positive.	<i>I</i>	} shall, will feel, be feeling.	<i>Je</i> sentir ai <sup>5</sup> .			
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i> sentir as.			
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i> sentir a.			
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i> sentir ons.			
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i> sentir ez.			
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i> sentir ont <sup>26</sup> .			
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i>	} shd, wd feel, be feeling.	<i>Je</i> sentir ais <sup>6</sup> .			
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i> sentir ais.			
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i> sentir ait.			
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i> sentir ions.			
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i> sentir iez			
	<i>They</i>		<i>Ils</i> sentir aient <sup>6</sup> .			

*GERUND.*      *SENT ant*<sup>26</sup>.      *PARTICIPLE.*      *SENT i.*      *Felt.*

*After the same manner as SENTIR are conjugated*

CONSENTIR, to consent.	PARTIR, to set out; to depart.
DÉMENTIR, to give the lie.	PRESSSENTIR, to have a foresight.
se DÉPARTIR, to give up.	REPARTIR, to set out again; to reply
DESSERVIR, to take off the dishes;	se REPENTIR, to repent.
DORMIR, to sleep. [to do an ill office.	RESSSENTIR, to resent.
ENDORMIR, to lull asleep.	RESSORTIR, to go out again.
s'ENDORMIR, to fall asleep.	SERVIR, to serve; se SERVIR to use.*
MENTIR, to lie; to tell a lie.	SORTIR, to go out.

\* Observe that the third person singular of the present tense of SERVIR, is: *ert*, not *serv*



## INFINITIVE.

*To LEAP for joy.*  
*To START out of fear.* } TRESSAILL *ir de joie, de peur.\**

## IMPERATIVE.

start. TRESSAILL *es, sing.* TRESSAILL *ez, plur.*  
 Let us start. TRESSAILL *ons.*

## INDICATIVE.

Present tense.  
*I start, or am starting.*  
*Thou startest, art starting.*  
*He starts, or is starting.*  
*We start, are starting.*  
*You start, are starting.*  
*They start, are starting.*

*Je* tressaill *e.†*  
*Tu* tressaill *es.*  
*Il* tressaill *e.*  
*Nous* tressaill *ons.*  
*Vous* tressaill *ez.*  
*Ils* tressaill *ent<sup>18</sup>.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Je* tressaill *e.*  
*Tu* tressaill *es.*  
*Il* tressaill *e.*  
*Nous* tressaill *ions.*  
*Vous* tressaill *iez.*  
*Ils* tressaill *ent.*

may start.

Imperfect tense.  
*I was starting.*  
*Thou was starting.*  
*He was starting.*  
*We were starting.*  
*You were starting.*  
*They were starting.*

*Je* tressaill *ais<sup>6</sup>.*  
*Tu* tressaill *ais.*  
*Il* tressaill *ait<sup>26</sup>.*  
*Nous* tressaill *ions.*  
*Vous* tressaill *iez.*  
*Ils* tressaill *aient<sup>6</sup>.*

Perfect tense.  
*I started, did start.*  
*Thou started, did start.*  
*He started, did start.*  
*We started, did start.*  
*You started, did start.*  
*They started, did start.*

*Je* tressaill *is<sup>26</sup>.*  
*Tu* tressaill *is.*  
*Il* tressaill *it<sup>26</sup>.*  
*Nous* tressaill *îmes.*  
*Vous* tressaill *îtes.*  
*Ils* tressaill *irent<sup>18</sup>.*

*Je* tressaill *isse<sup>2</sup>.*  
*Tu* tressaill *isses.*  
*Il* tressaill *ît.*  
*Nous* tressaill *issions.*  
*Vous* tressaill *issiez.*  
*Ils* tressaill *issent.*

might start.

Future positive.  
*I shall, will start, be starting.*  
*Thou shall, will start, be starting.*  
*He shall, will start, be starting.*  
*We shall, will start, be starting.*  
*You shall, will start, be starting.*  
*They shall, will start, be starting.*

*Je* tressaillir *ai<sup>5</sup>.*  
*Tu* tressaillir *as.*  
*Il* tressaillir *a.*  
*Nous* tressaillir *ons.*  
*Vous* tressaillir *ez.*  
*Ils* tressaillir *ont<sup>26</sup>.*

Future conditional.  
*I should, would start, be starting.*  
*Thou should, would start, be starting.*  
*He should, would start, be starting.*  
*We should, would start, be starting.*  
*You should, would start, be starting.*  
*They should, would start, be starting.*

*Je* tressaillir *ais<sup>6</sup>.*  
*Tu* tressaillir *ais.*  
*Il* tressaillir *ait<sup>26</sup>.*  
*Nous* tressaillir *ions.*  
*Vous* tressaillir *iez.*  
*Ils* tressaillir *aient<sup>6</sup>.*

## GERUND.

starting. TRESSAILL *ant<sup>26</sup>.*

## PARTICIPLE.

TRESSAILL *i.* started.

*After the same manner as TRESSAILLIR are conjugated*

ASSAILLIR, *to assault*, but it is not used in the *first, second, and third persons singular* of the *present tense*, and is seldom used, except in the infinitive ASSAILLIR, and in the participle ASSAILLI, *assaulted*.

SAILLIR, *to jet out*, used only in the *infinitive* SAILLIR, in the *gerund* SAILLANT, in the *participle* SAILLI, and in the *third person* of each tense

\* TRESSAILLIR is seldom used without the words *joie, joy* ; or *peur, fear*.

† See *il* preceded by *i*, page 11 and 12.

To COME, VEN *ir*.

IMPERATIVE.

come. viens, *sing.* VEN *ez plur.*  
let us come. VEN *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I come, or am coming.	Je <sup>3</sup> viens <sup>23</sup> .	Je <sup>3</sup> vienne <sup>2</sup> .	come, may come.
	Thou comest, art coming.	Tu viens.	Tu viennes.	
	He comes, or is coming.	Il vient <sup>25</sup> .	Il vienne.	
Imperfect tense.	We } come, or	Nous ven ons.	Nous ven ions.	
	You } are coming.	Vous ven ez.	Vous ven iez.	
	They }	Ils viennent <sup>18</sup> .	Ils viennent.	
	I } was coming.	Je <sup>3</sup> ven ais <sup>6</sup> .		
	Thou }	Tu ven ais		
	He }	Il ven ait <sup>26</sup> .		
	We } were coming.	Nous ven ions.		
	You }	Vous ven iez.		
	They }	Ils ven aient <sup>5</sup> .		
Perfect tense.	I } came, or	Je <sup>19</sup> vins <sup>23</sup> .	Je <sup>3</sup> vinsse <sup>2</sup> .	came, might come
	Thou }	Tu vins.	Tu vinsses.	
	He } did come.	Il vint <sup>23</sup> .	Il vînt <sup>26</sup> .	
	We }	Nous vinmes.	Nous vinssions.	
	You }	Vous vintes.	Vous vinssiez.	
	They }	Ils vinrent <sup>18</sup> .	Ils vinssent <sup>18</sup> .	
Future positive.	I } shall, will come,	Je <sup>3</sup> viendrai <sup>5</sup> .		
	Thou }	Tu viendras.		
	He } or be coming.	Il viendra.		
	We }	Nous viendrons.		
	You }	Vous viendrez.		
	They }	Ils viendront <sup>26</sup> .		
Fut. conditional.	I } shd, wd come,	Je <sup>3</sup> viendrais.		
	Thou }	Tu viendrais.		
	He } or be coming.	Il viendrait <sup>26</sup> .		
	We }	Nous viendrions.		
	You }	Vous viendriez.		
	They }	Ils viendraient <sup>6</sup> .		

coming. VEN *ant*<sup>26</sup>. VEN *u.* come.

After the same manner as VENIR are conjugated,

s'ABSTENIR, to abstain.	OBTENIR, to obtain.
APPARTENIR, to belong.	PARVENIR, to attain, to arrive.
CONVENIR, to agree, to become.	PRÉVENIR, to prevent, to anticipate.
CONTREVENIR, to contravene.	PROVENIR, to proceed.
CONTENIR, to contain.	REVENIR, to come again, to return.
DISCONVENIR, to disagree, to disown.	RETENIR, to retain, to keep.
DÉTENIR, to detain.	SOUTENIR, to maintain.
DEVENIR, to become.	se SOUVENIR, to remember.
ENTRETENIR, to keep up.	SUBVENIR, to afford.
INTERVENIR, to intervene.	SURVENIR, to befall, to happen.
MAINTENIR, to maintain.	TENIR, to hold.

N. B. The compound tenses of VENIR, CONVENIR, DEVENIR, DISCONVENIR, PARVENIR, PROVENIR, REVENIR, and SURVENIR, are formed with the auxiliary Être, not Avoir as, I have agreed, *Je suis convenu* ; not *J'ai convenu*.

## A TABLE shewing, in one point of view, how to c

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.		INFIN.	GER.	PART.		INFIN.	GER.	PART.
	FIN <i>ir</i> ,	issant,	i.		BOUILL <i>ir</i> ,	ant,	i.		CUEILL <i>ir</i> ,	ant,	
Present tense.	INDIC.	IMPER.	SUBJ.		INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.		INDIC.	IMP.	
Present tense. Imperf. tense. Perfect tense. Fut. Positive. Fut. condit.	<i>Je</i> FIN	<i>is</i>				bous	<i>e</i>		CUEILL <i>e</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>			bous	bous	<i>es</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>es</i>	
	<i>Il</i>	<i>it</i>				bout		<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>issons</i>	<i>issons</i>		BOUILL	<i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>issez</i>	<i>issez</i>			<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>issent.</i>	<i>issent.</i>			<i>ent</i>		<i>ent.</i>	<i>ent.</i>		
	<i>Je</i>	<i>issais</i>				<i>ais</i>			<i>ais</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>issais</i>				<i>ais</i>			<i>ais</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>issait</i>				<i>ait</i>			<i>ait</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>issions</i>				<i>ions</i>			<i>ions</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>issiez</i>				<i>iez</i>			<i>iez</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>issaient</i>				<i>aient</i>			<i>aient.</i>		
Present tense. Imperf. tense. Perfect tense. Fut. Positive. Fut. condit.	<i>Je</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>isse</i>			<i>is</i>		<i>isse</i>	<i>is</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>isses</i>			<i>is</i>		<i>isses</i>	<i>is</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>it</i>	<i>ît</i>			<i>it</i>		<i>it</i>	<i>it</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>îmes</i>	<i>issions</i>			<i>îmes</i>		<i>issions</i>	<i>îmes</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>îtes</i>	<i>issiez</i>			<i>îtes</i>		<i>issiez</i>	<i>îtes</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>irent.</i>	<i>issent.</i>			<i>irent.</i>		<i>issent.</i>	<i>irent.</i>		
	<i>Je</i> FINIR	<i>ai</i>			BOUILLIR	<i>ai</i>			CUEILL	<i>erai</i>	
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>as</i>				<i>as</i>			<i>eras</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>a</i>				<i>a</i>			<i>era</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ons</i>				<i>ons</i>			<i>erons</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>ez</i>				<i>ez</i>			<i>erez</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>ont.</i>				<i>ont.</i>			<i>eront.</i>		
	<i>Je</i>	<i>ais</i>				<i>ais</i>			<i>erais</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>ais</i>				<i>ais</i>			<i>erais</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>ait</i>				<i>ait</i>			<i>erait</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ions</i>				<i>ions</i>			<i>erions</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>iez</i>				<i>iez</i>			<i>eriez</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>aient.</i>				<i>aient.</i>			<i>eraient.</i>		
Present tense. Imperf. tense. Perfect tense. Fut. positive. Fut. condit.	AQUÉR <i>ir</i> ,	<i>ant,</i>	<i>aquis.</i>		COUR	<i>ir, ant,</i>	<i>u.</i>		FU	<i>ir, yant,</i>	
	<i>J'</i>	<i>aquiers</i>	<i>aquière</i>			<i>s</i>	<i>e</i>		<i>is</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>aquiers</i>	<i>aquiers</i>			<i>s</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	
	<i>Il</i>	<i>aquiert</i>	<i>aquière</i>			<i>t</i>		<i>e</i>	<i>it</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>			<i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>	<i>yons</i>	<i>yons</i>	
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>			<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>	<i>yez</i>	<i>yez</i>	
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>aquièrement.</i>	<i>aquièrement.</i>			<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>	<i>ient.</i>		
	<i>J'AQUER</i>	<i>ais</i>				<i>ais</i>			<i>yais</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>ais</i>				<i>ais</i>			<i>yais</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>ait</i>				<i>ait</i>			<i>yait</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ions</i>				<i>ions</i>			<i>yions</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>iez</i>				<i>iez</i>			<i>yiez</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>aient.</i>				<i>aient.</i>			<i>yaient.</i>		
Present tense. Imperf. tense. Perfect tense. Fut. positive. Fut. condit.	<i>J'</i>	<i>aquis</i>	<i>aquisse</i>			<i>us</i>		<i>usse</i>	<i>is</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>aquis</i>	<i>aquisses</i>			<i>us</i>		<i>usses</i>	<i>is</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>aquit</i>	<i>aquit</i>			<i>ut</i>		<i>ût</i>	<i>it</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>aquimes</i>	<i>aquissions</i>			<i>îmes</i>		<i>ussions</i>	<i>îmes</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>aquîtes</i>	<i>aquissiez</i>			<i>ûtes</i>		<i>ussiez</i>	<i>îtes</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>aquirent.</i>	<i>aquissent.</i>			<i>urent.</i>		<i>ussent.</i>	<i>irent.</i>		
	<i>J'AQUER</i>	<i>rai</i>			COUR	<i>rai</i>			FUIR	<i>ai</i>	
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>ras</i>				<i>ras</i>			<i>as</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>ra</i>				<i>ra</i>			<i>a</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>rons</i>				<i>rons</i>			<i>ons</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>rez</i>				<i>rez</i>			<i>ez</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>ront.</i>				<i>ront.</i>			<i>ont.</i>		
	<i>J'</i>	<i>rais</i>				<i>rais</i>			<i>ais</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>rais</i>				<i>rais</i>			<i>ais</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>rait</i>				<i>rait</i>			<i>ait</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>rions</i>				<i>rions</i>			<i>ions</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>riez</i>				<i>riez</i>			<i>iez</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>raient.</i>				<i>raient.</i>			<i>aient.</i>		

In the same manner conjugate Conquerir, Requerir.

Like COURIR conjugate Accourir, Concourir, Discourir, Encourir, Parcourir, Recourir, Secourir.

Like FUIR conjugate to run away.

all the verbs in IR, both regular and irregular

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
MOUR <i>ir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>mort.</i>
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
meurs		meure
meurs	meurs	meures
meurt		meure.
MOUR <i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>
meurent.		meurent.
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>us</i>	<i>usse</i>	
<i>us</i>	<i>usses</i>	
<i>ut</i>	<i>ût</i>	
<i>ûmes</i>	<i>ussions</i>	
<i>ûtes</i>	<i>ussiez</i>	
<i>urent.</i>	<i>ussent.</i>	
MOUR <i>rai</i>		
<i>ras</i>		
<i>ra</i>		
<i>rons</i>		
<i>rez</i>		
<i>ront.</i>		
<i>rais</i>		
<i>rais</i>		
<i>rait</i>		
<i>rions</i>		
<i>riez</i>		
<i>raient.</i>	<i>se Mourir.</i>	

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
REVÊT <i>ir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>u.</i>
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
REVET <i>s</i>		<i>e</i>
<i>s</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>es</i>
revet		<i>e</i>
<i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>
<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>
REVET <i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>is</i>	<i>isse</i>	
<i>is</i>	<i>isses</i>	
<i>it</i>	<i>ît</i>	
<i>îmes</i>	<i>issions</i>	
<i>îtes</i>	<i>issiez</i>	
<i>irent.</i>	<i>issent.</i>	
REVÊTIR <i>ai</i>		
<i>as</i>		
<i>a</i>		
<i>ons</i>		
<i>ez</i>		
<i>ont.</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>	<i>Vêtir, se Dêvêtir.</i>	

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
TRESSAIL <i>ir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>i.</i>
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
TRES- SAILL <i>e</i>		<i>e</i>
<i>e</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>es</i>
<i>e</i>		<i>e</i>
<i>ons</i>	<i>on</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>
<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>is</i>	<i>isse</i>	
<i>is</i>	<i>isses</i>	
<i>it</i>	<i>ît</i>	
<i>îmes</i>	<i>issions</i>	
<i>îtes</i>	<i>issiez</i>	
<i>irent.</i>	<i>issent</i>	
TRES- SAILLIR <i>ai</i>		
<i>as</i>		
<i>a</i>		
<i>ons</i>		
<i>ez</i>		
<i>ont.</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>	<i>Assaillir, Sallir.</i>	

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
OUVR <i>ir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>ouvert.</i>
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>	
<i>es</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>es</i>
<i>e</i>		<i>e</i>
<i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>
<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>is</i>	<i>isse</i>	
<i>is</i>	<i>isses</i>	
<i>it</i>	<i>ît</i>	
<i>îmes</i>	<i>issions</i>	
<i>îtes</i>	<i>issiez</i>	
<i>irent.</i>	<i>issent.</i>	

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
SENT <i>ir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>i.</i>
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
<i>sens</i>	<i>e</i>	
<i>sens</i>	<i>sens</i>	<i>es</i>
<i>sent</i>		<i>e</i>
SENT <i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>
<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>is</i>	<i>isse</i>	
<i>is</i>	<i>isses</i>	
<i>it</i>	<i>ît</i>	
<i>îmes</i>	<i>issions</i>	
<i>îtes</i>	<i>issiez</i>	
<i>irent.</i>	<i>issent.</i>	

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
VEN <i>ir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>u.</i>
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
<i>viens</i>		<i>vienn</i>
<i>viens</i>	<i>viens</i>	<i>viennes</i>
<i>vient</i>		<i>vienn</i>
VEN <i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>
<i>viennent.</i>		<i>viennent</i>
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>vins</i>	<i>vinse</i>	
<i>vins</i>	<i>vinse</i>	
<i>vint</i>	<i>vint</i>	
<i>vinmes</i>	<i>vinssions</i>	
<i>vintes</i>	<i>vinssiez</i>	
<i>vinrent.</i>	<i>vinssent.</i>	

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
OUVRIR <i>ai</i>		
<i>as</i>		
<i>a</i>		
<i>ons</i>		
<i>ez</i>		
<i>ont.</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
SENTIR <i>ai</i>		
<i>as</i>		
<i>a</i>		
<i>ons</i>		
<i>ez</i>		
<i>ont.</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>viendrai</i>		
<i>viendras</i>		
<i>viendra</i>		
<i>viendrons</i>		
<i>viendrez</i>		
<i>viendront.</i>		
<i>viendrais</i>		
<i>viendrais</i>		
<i>viendrait</i>		
<i>viendriers</i>		
<i>viendriez</i>	<i>Conve-</i>	
<i>viendraient.</i>	<i>nir, Contrevenir,</i>	
	<i>Devenir, Discon-</i>	
	<i>venir, Intervenir, Parvenir, Prévenir,</i>	
	<i>Provenir, Revenir, se Souvenir, Sub-</i>	
	<i>venir, Survenir, Tenir, s'Abstenir, Ap-</i>	
	<i>partenir, Contenir, Détenir, Entretenir</i>	
	<i>Maintenir, Obtenir, Retenir, Soutenir</i>	

In the same manner conjugate  
Ent'ouvrir, Couvrir, Découvrir, Re-  
ouvrir, Offrir, Souffrir.

Consentir, Pressentir, Ressentir,  
Mentir, Démentir, Partir, Repartir,  
se Départir, Sortir, Ressortir, se  
Repentir, Servir, Dêsservir, Dormir  
Endormir, s'Endormir.

venir, Intervenir, Parvenir, Prévenir,  
Provenir, Revenir, se Souvenir, Sub-  
venir, Survenir, Tenir, s'Abstenir, Ap-  
partenir, Contenir, Détenir, Entretenir  
Maintenir, Obtenir, Retenir, Soutenir



## INFINITIVE.

To owe.

DEV *oir*.

## IMPERATIVE.

owe.      *dois, sing.*DEV *ez, plur.*

Let us owe.

DEV *ons.*

## INDICATIVE.

Present tense.

I owe.

Thou owest.

He owes.

We

You } owe.

They

Je <sup>23</sup>dois<sup>26</sup>.

Tu dois.

Il doit<sup>26</sup>.Nous DEV *ons.*Vous DEV *ez.*Ils doivent<sup>18</sup>.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je doive<sup>2</sup>.

Tu doives.

Il doive.

Nous DEV *ions.*Vous DEV *iez.*

Ils doivent.

owe, may owe.

Imperfect tense.

I

Thou

He

We

You

They

} did owe.

Je<sup>3</sup> DEV *ais*<sup>6</sup>.Tu DEV *ais.*Il DEV *ait*<sup>26</sup>.Nous DEV *ions.*Vous DEV *iez.*Ils DEV *aient*<sup>6</sup>.

Perfect tense.

I

Thou

He

We

You

They

} owed.

Je *dus*.†Tu *dus.*Il *dut*<sup>26</sup>.Nous *dûmes.*Vous *dûtes.*Ils *durent*<sup>18</sup>.Je *dusse*<sup>2</sup>.Tu *dusses.*Il *dût*<sup>26</sup>.Nous *dussions.*Vous *dussiez.*Ils *dussent*<sup>18</sup>.

owed, might owe.

Future positive.

I

Thou

He

We

You

They

} shall, will owe.

Je DEV *rai*<sup>3</sup>.Tu DEV *ras.*Il DEV *ra.*Nous DEV *rons.*Vous DEV *rez.*Ils DEV *ront*<sup>26</sup>.

Fut. conditional.

I

Thou

He

We

You

They

} shld, wld owe.

Je DEV *rais*<sup>6</sup>.Tu DEV *rais.*Il DEV *rait*<sup>26</sup>.Nous DEV *rions.*Vous DEV *riez.*Ils DEV *raient*<sup>6</sup>.

## GERUND.

owing.

DEV *ant*<sup>26</sup>.

Interrogatively.

Negatively.

dois-je?

dois-tu?

doit-il?

devons-nous?

devez-vous?

doivent-ils? &amp;c.

Je

tu

il

nous ne devons

vous ne devez

ils ne doivent

} *pas*

I do not owe.

## PARTICIPLE.

dû.

owed.

Interrogatively and Negativ.

ne dois-je

ne dois-tu

ne doit-il

ne devons-nous

ne devez-vous

ne doivent-ils

} *pas?*

do I not owe?

After the same manner as DEVOIR are conjugated,

APERCEVOIR, } to perceive.

s APERCEVOIR, }

CONCEVOIR, } to conceive.

PERCEVOIR, (a law term) to receive.

RECEVOIR, } to receive.

REDEVOIR, } to owe still.

\* See N. B. under DEVOIR, page 111.

† See note 2, page 1.

*The IRREGULAR verbs belonging to this conjugation are*

ASSEOIR, } to sit down ; page 136.	PREVOIR, to foresee ; ... page 139.
s'ASSEOIR, }	Prévaloir, to prevail ; .... } see VALOIR.
Choir, to fall .....	sePrévaloir, to avail oneself ; }
Déchoir, to decay .....	Revaloir, return like for like ; like VALOIR.
Echoir, to expire, to be out. }	Rasseoir, } to sit down } ... like ASSEOIR.
Emouvoir, to stir up..... like MOUVOIR.	se Rasseoir, } again ; .....
Entrevoir, to have a glimpse ; like VOIR.	Revoir, to see again ; ..... like VOIR.
Equivaloir, to be equivalent ; like VALOIR.	SAVOIR, to know ; ..... page 140.
Falloir, must ; to be necessary. †	Seoir, to fit, to suit, to become ; †
MOUVOIR, to move ; .... page 137.	urseoir, to supersede ; ... see PREVOIR.
Pleuvoir, to rain ; ..... †	VALOIR, to be worth ; ... page 141.
Pourvoir, to provide ; ..... see PREVOIR.	VOIR, to see ; ..... page 142.
POUVOIR, to be able ; ... page 138.	VOULOIR, to will, to be willing ; page 143.

\* These three verbs are now hardly ever used, but are found in many ancient writings, they are conjugated thus :

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
CHoir.	To fall.	CHU.	fallen. No other tenses.
DECHoir.	To decay.	DECHU.	decayed.
INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Je déchois.	I decay, or am	Je déchoie.	I
Tu déchois.	Thou decayest, art	Tu déchoies.	Thou
Il déchoit.	He decays, or is	Il déchoie.	He
Nous déchoyons.	We	Nous déchoyions.	We
Vous déchoyez.	You	Vous déchoyiez.	You
Ils déchoient.	They	Ils déchoient.	They
Je déchus.	I	Je déchusse.	I
Tu déchus.	Thou	Tu déchusses.	Thou
Il déchut.	He	Il déchût.	He
Nous déchûmes.	We	Nous déchussions.	We
Vous déchûtes.	You	Vous déchussiez.	You
Ils déchûrent.	They	Ils déchussent.	They
Je décherrai.	I		
Tu décherras.	Thou		
Il décherra.	He		
Nous décherrons.	We		
Vous décherrez.	You		
Ils décherront.	They		
Je décherrois.	I		
Tu décherrois.	Thou		
Il décheroit.	He		
Nous décherrions.	We		
Vous décheriez.	You		
Ils décheroient.	They		
INFINITIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
ECHOIR.	To Expire ; speaking of the end of a term ; as,		
The rent is due, the time is expired.	La rente est due, le terme est échu.		
INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pres. Il échoit.	It expires.	Il échoie.	It may expire.
Perf. Il échut.	It expired.	Il échût.	It might expire.
Fut. Il écherra.	It will expire.		
Con. Il écherroit.	It would expire.		
GERUND.		PARTICIPLE.	
ECHE ant.	expiring.	ECHU.	expired.

+ FALLOIR, PLEUVOIR, see the IMPERSONAL VERBS, page 172, 174.

† SEOIR, To fit, to suit, to become, has only the third person of each tense in use.  
 Il siéd. It fits. Ils séioit. It fitted. Il siéra. It will fit. Il siérait. It would fit.  
 Ils siérent. They fit. Ils séioient. They fitted. Ils siéront. They will fit. Ils siéraient. They wd fit

## INFINITIVE.

To sit down.

S'ASSE oir.

## IMPERATIVE.

sit down.

Assieds-toi, *sing.*ASSÉ iez-vous, *plur.*

Let us sit down.

ASSÉ ions-nous

## INDICATIVE.

Present tense.  
*I sit, or am*  
*Thou sittest, art*  
*He sits, or is*  
*We* { sit, are  
*You* { sitting down.  
*They*

*Je* *m'* <sup>23</sup>assieds<sup>23</sup>.  
*Tu* *t'* assieds.  
*Il* *s'* assied<sup>23</sup>.  
*Nous* *NOUS* assé ions.  
*Vous* *VOUS* assé iez.  
*Ils* *s'* assé ient<sup>18</sup>.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Je* *m'* assé ie<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* *t'* assé ies.  
*Il* *s'* assé ie.  
*Nous* *NOUS* assé yons.  
*Vous* *VOUS* assé yez.  
*Ils* *s'* assé ient.

Imperfect tense.  
*I* { was sitting  
*Thou* { down.  
*He* {  
*We* { were sitting  
*You* { down.  
*They*

*Je* *m'* assé iais<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* *t'* assé iais.  
*Il* *s'* assé iait<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* *NOUS* assé yons<sup>4</sup>.  
*Vous* *VOUS* assé yez.  
*Ils* *s'* assé iaient<sup>6</sup>.

Perfect tense.  
*I* {  
*Thou* { sat, did  
*He* { sit down.  
*We* {  
*You* {  
*They*

*Je* *m'* assis<sup>23</sup>.  
*Tu* *t'* assis.  
*Il* *s'* assit<sup>23</sup>.  
*Nous* *NOUS* assîmes.  
*Vous* *VOUS* assîtes.  
*Ils* *s'* assirent<sup>19</sup>.

*Je* *m'* assisse<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* *t'* assisses.  
*Il* *s'* assît<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* *NOUS* assissions.  
*Vous* *VOUS* assissiez.  
*Ils* *s'* assissent.

Future positive.  
*I* {  
*Thou* {  
*He* { shll, wll sit,  
*We* { be sitting dn.  
*You* {  
*They*

*Je* *m'* <sup>10</sup>asseirai<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* *t'* asseiras.  
*Il* *s'* asseira.  
*Nous* *NOUS* asseirons.  
*Vous* *VOUS* asseirez.  
*Ils* *s'* asseiront<sup>26</sup>.

Fut. conditional.  
*I* {  
*Thou* {  
*He* { shd, wd sit,  
*We* { be sitting dn.  
*You* {  
*They*

*Je* *m'* asseirais<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* *t'* asseirais.  
*Il* *s'* asseirait<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* *NOUS* asseirions.  
*Vous* *VOUS* asseiriez.  
*Ils* *s'* asseiraient<sup>6</sup>.

## GERUND.

sitting down.

s'ASSÉ yant<sup>26</sup>.

## PARTICIPLE.

assis. sat down.

Interrogatively.  
*m'* assieds-je?  
*t'* assieds-tu?  
*s'* assied-il?

Negatively.  
*Je ne m'* assieds }  
*tu ne t'* assieds } pas.  
*il ne s'* assied }

Interrogat. and Negat.  
*Ne m'* assieds-je }  
*ne t'* assieds-tu } pas?  
*ne s'* assied-il }

COMPOUND TENSES formed by adding ASSIS to the auxiliary ETRE.

*I have* {  
*Thou hast* {  
*He has* {  
*We have* {  
*Je* *ME* suis  
*tu* *t'* es  
*il* *s'* est  
*Nous* *NOUS* sommes

*Je* *ME* sois  
*tu* *TE* sois  
*il* *SE* soit  
*Nous* *NOUS* soyons

In the same manner, conjugate RASSEOIR, se RASSEOIR, to sit down again.

INFINITIVE.

To MOVE.

MOUV *oir*\*.

IMPERATIVE.

Move.

MEUS, *sing.*

MOUV *ez, plur.*

Let us move.

MOUV *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I move, or <i>am</i>	Je <sup>12</sup> meus <sup>26</sup> .	Je <i>meuve</i> <sup>2</sup> .	move, <i>may</i> move.
	Thou movest, <i>art</i>	Tu meus.	Tu <i>meuves</i> <sup>23</sup> .	
	He moves or <i>is</i>	Il meut <sup>23</sup> .	Il <i>meuve</i> .	
	We } move,	Nous mouv <i>ons.</i>	Nous mouv <i>ions.</i>	
	You } are moving.	Vous mouv <i>ez.</i>	Vous mouv <i>iez.</i>	
	They }	Ils meuvent <sup>18</sup> .	Ils meuvent.	
Imperfect tense.	I } was moving.	Je <sup>14</sup> mouv <i>ais</i> <sup>6</sup> .		
	Thou }	Tu mouv <i>ais.</i>		
	He }	Il mouv <i>ait</i> <sup>26</sup> .		
	We } were moving.	Nous mouv <i>ions.</i>		
	You }	Vous mouv <i>iez.</i>		
	They }	Ils mouv <i>aient</i> <sup>6</sup> .		
Perfect tense.	I } moved,	Je †mus <sup>23</sup> .	Je <i>musse</i> <sup>2</sup> .	moved, <i>might</i> move.
	Thou }	Tu mus.	Tu <i>musses.</i>	
	He } did move.	Il mut <sup>23</sup> .	Il <i>mût</i> <sup>26</sup> .	
	We }	Nous mûmes.	Nous <i>mussions.</i>	
	You }	Vous mûtes.	Vous <i>mussiez.</i>	
	They }	Ils murent <sup>18</sup> .	Ils <i>mussent</i> <sup>18</sup> .	
Future positive.	I } shll, <i>will</i> move,	Je <sup>14</sup> mouv <i>rai</i> <sup>5</sup> .		
	Thou }	Tu mouv <i>ras</i> <sup>23</sup> .		
	He } be moving.	Il mouv <i>ra.</i>		
	We }	Nous mouv <i>rons.</i>		
	You }	Vous mouv <i>rez.</i>		
	They }	Ils mouv <i>ront</i> <sup>26</sup> .		
Fut. conditional.	I } shd, <i>wd</i> move,	Je <sup>14</sup> mouv <i>rais</i> <sup>6</sup> .		
	Thou }	Tu mouv <i>rais.</i>		
	He } be moving.	Il mouv <i>rait</i> <sup>23</sup> .		
	We }	Nous mouv <i>rions.</i>		
	You }	Vous mouv <i>riez.</i>		
	They }	Ils mouv <i>raient</i> <sup>6</sup> .		

GERUND.

Moving.

MOUV *ant*<sup>26</sup>.

PARTICIPLE.

MU.

Moved.

After the same manner as *MOUVOIR* is conjugated *ÉMOUVOIR*, to move, to stir up, speaking of vapours, or the passions; as,

*Le soleil émeut les vapeurs.* The sun stirs up the vapours.

*Cet homme s'émeut de rien.* That man is moved with the least thing

\* *MOUVOIR* is a technical term, used only in some general propositions; as for example Every free body moves in a straight line. *Tout corps libre se meut en ligne droite.*

The general acceptance of *MOVE* is *REMUER*; as, Move your arm, your leg, your foot, the chair, the dish, the table, &c. *Remuez le bras, la jambe, le pied, la chaise, le plat, la table, &c.*

† See note 2 page 1.



INFINITIVE.			POUV oir.	
To be ABLE.				
INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Present tense.	I can, or <i>am</i> able.	<i>Je</i> <sup>23</sup> puis <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Je</i> puisse <sup>2</sup> .	may, * <i>may</i> be able.
	<i>Thou</i> canst, <i>art</i> able.	<i>Tu</i> <sup>12</sup> peux.	<i>Tu</i> puisses <sup>26</sup> .	
	<i>He</i> can, or <i>is</i> able.	<i>Il</i> peut. <sup>26</sup>	<i>Il</i> puisse.	
	<i>We</i> } can, <i>are</i> able.	<i>Nous</i> pouv ons.	<i>Nous</i> puissions.	
	<i>You</i> } can, <i>are</i> able.	<i>Vous</i> pouv ez.	<i>Vous</i> puissiez.	
Imperfect tense.	<i>They</i> } can, <i>are</i> able.	<i>Ils</i> peuvent <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> puissent <sup>18</sup> .	might, * <i>might</i> be able.
	<i>I</i> } could, <i>was</i> able.	<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> pouv ais <sup>6</sup> .		
	<i>Thou</i> } could, <i>was</i> able.	<i>Tu</i> pouv ais.		
	<i>He</i> } could, <i>was</i> able.	<i>Il</i> pouv ait <sup>26</sup> .		
	<i>We</i> } could, <i>were</i> able.	<i>Nous</i> pouv ions.		
Perfect tense.	<i>You</i> } could, <i>were</i> able.	<i>Vous</i> pouv iez.		
	<i>They</i> } could, <i>were</i> able.	<i>Ils</i> pouv aient <sup>6</sup> .		
	<i>I</i> } could, <i>was</i> able.	<i>Je</i> †pus <sup>23</sup> .	<i>Je</i> pusse <sup>2</sup> .	
	<i>Thou</i> } could, <i>was</i> able.	<i>Tu</i> pus.	<i>Tu</i> pusses.	
	<i>He</i> } could, <i>was</i> able.	<i>Il</i> put <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Il</i> pût <sup>26</sup> .	
Future positive.	<i>We</i> } could, <i>were</i> able.	<i>Nous</i> pûmes.	<i>Nous</i> pussions.	
	<i>You</i> } could, <i>were</i> able.	<i>Vous</i> pûtes.	<i>Vous</i> pussiez.	
	<i>They</i> } could, <i>were</i> able.	<i>Ils</i> purent <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> pussent <sup>18</sup> .	
	<i>I</i> } shll, <i>will</i> be able.	<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> pourai <sup>5</sup> .		
	<i>Thou</i> } shll, <i>will</i> be able.	<i>Tu</i> pouras <sup>26</sup> .		
Fut. conditional.	<i>He</i> } shll, <i>will</i> be able.	<i>Il</i> pourra.		
	<i>We</i> } shll, <i>will</i> be able.	<i>Nous</i> pourons.		
	<i>You</i> } shll, <i>will</i> be able.	<i>Vous</i> pourrez.		
	<i>They</i> } shll, <i>will</i> be able.	<i>Ils</i> pourront <sup>26</sup> .		
	<i>I</i> } could, shd, <i>wd</i> be able.	<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> pourais <sup>6</sup> .		
	<i>Thou</i> } could, shd, <i>wd</i> be able.	<i>Tu</i> pourais.		
	<i>He</i> } could, shd, <i>wd</i> be able.	<i>Il</i> pourrait <sup>26</sup> .		
	<i>We</i> } could, shd, <i>wd</i> be able.	<i>Nous</i> pourions.		
	<i>You</i> } could, shd, <i>wd</i> be able.	<i>Vous</i> pouriez.		
	<i>They</i> } could, shd, <i>wd</i> be able.	<i>Ils</i> pourraient <sup>6</sup> .		
GERUND.			PARTICIPLE.	
being able.			pu.	Been able
			POUV ant <sup>26</sup> .	

\* MAY, MIGHT have, through the verbs, been considered only as *signs* of the *subjunctive mood*; but these words are not always *signs*; they are sometimes *verbs* denoting *power*.

In order to discriminate whether MAY, MIGHT, are *verbs*, or only *signs*, change them into the tenses of the verb BE, that will make the best sense with the word *power* or *able*.

If MAY, MIGHT, thus changed, answer to the tenses of the *indicative* of the verb BE, they must be expressed by the *same tenses* of the verb *POUVOIR*; as,

*I may* see it, if I choose, *i. e.* it is in my *power*, or *I am* able to see it, if I choose.

*Je puis* le voir, si je veux.

*I might* see it, if I chose, *i. e.* it would be in my *power*, or *I should* be able to see it, if I chose. *Je pourais* le voir, si je voulais.

If MAY, MIGHT, answer to the tenses of the *subjunctive* of the verb BE, they may be expressed either by the *subjunctive* of the following verb, or by the *subjunctive* of *POUVOIR*; as,

Bring it me, that *I may* see it, *i. e.* that *I may* be able to see it.

Apportez-le-moi, afin que je le voie, or afin que je puisse le voir.

He brought it me, that *I might* see it, *i. e.* that *I might* be able to see it

Il me l'apporta, afin que je le visse, or afin que je pusse le voir.

† See note 2, page 1.

N. B. MAY,

INFINITIVE.

To FORESEE.

PRÉV *oir*.

IMPERATIVE.

foresee. PRÉV *ois*, sing.

PRÉV *oyez*, plur.

Let us foresee.

PRÉV *oyons*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> foresee.	<i>Je</i> prév <i>ois</i> <sup>23</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> foreseest.	<i>Tu</i> prév <i>ois</i> .
	<i>He</i> foresees.	<i>Il</i> prév <i>oit</i> <sup>23</sup> .
	<i>We</i> } foresee.	<i>Nous</i> prév <i>oyons</i> <sup>4</sup> .
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> prév <i>oyez</i> .
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> prév <i>oient</i> <sup>18</sup> .
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> } did foresee.	<i>Je</i> prév <i>oyais</i> <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> prév <i>oyais</i> .
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> prév <i>oyait</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> prév <i>oyions</i> .
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> prév <i>oyiez</i> .
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> prév <i>oyaient</i> <sup>6</sup> .
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } foresaw,	<i>Je</i> prév <i>is</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> prév <i>is</i> .
	<i>He</i> } did foresee.	<i>Il</i> prév <i>ît</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> prév <i>îmes</i> .
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> prév <i>îtes</i> .
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> prév <i>irent</i> <sup>18</sup> .
Future positive.	<i>I</i> } shall, will foresee.	<i>Je</i> prévoir <i>ai</i> <sup>3</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> prévoir <i>as</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> prévoir <i>a</i> .
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> prévoir <i>ons</i> .
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> prévoir <i>ez</i> .
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> prévoir <i>ont</i> <sup>26</sup> .
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> } should, would foresee.	<i>Je</i> prévoir <i>ais</i> <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> prévoir <i>ais</i> .
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> prévoir <i>ait</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> prévoir <i>ions</i> .
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> prévoir <i>iez</i> .
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> prévoir <i>aient</i> <sup>6</sup> .

foreseeing. PRÉV *oyant*<sup>26</sup>.

PRÉV *u*. foreseen

After the same manner is conjugated *SURSEoir*, to supersede, participle

*SURsis*. *POURvoir*, to provide, except the perfect tense,

<i>I</i> } provided,	<i>Je</i> pourv <i>us</i> .	<i>Je</i> pourv <i>usse</i> <sup>2</sup> .	might provide.
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> pourv <i>us</i> .	<i>Tu</i> pourv <i>usses</i> .	
<i>He</i> } did provide.	<i>Il</i> pourv <i>ût</i> <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Il</i> pourv <i>ût</i> <sup>26</sup> .	
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> pourv <i>ûmes</i> .	<i>Nous</i> pourv <i>ussions</i> .	
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> pourv <i>ûtes</i> .	<i>Vous</i> pourv <i>ussiez</i> .	
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> pourv <i>urent</i> <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> pourv <i>ussent</i> <sup>18</sup> .	

N.B. *MAY*, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present of the subjunctive of *POUvoir* ;

as, May you be happy ! Puissiez-vous être heureux !

But observe that, these instances excepted, the subjunctive never begins a sentence ; so this, May I see it ? is, Puis-je le voir ? Not *Le* voie-je, or *Puisse-je* le voir ?

## INFINITIVE.

To KNOW.

SAV oir.\*

## IMPERATIVE.

know. saches, *sing.* sachez, *plur.*  
 Let us know. sachons.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I know.	Je sais <sup>6</sup> .	Je sache.†	know, <i>may</i> know.
	Thou knowest.	Tu sais.	Tu saches <sup>26</sup> .	
	He knows.	Il sait <sup>66</sup> .	Il sache.	
	We } know.	Nous sav ons	Nous sachions.	
	You } know.	Vous sav ez.	Vous sachiez.	
Imperfect tense.	They } know.	Ils sav ent <sup>18</sup> .	Ils sachent <sup>18</sup> .	knew, <i>might</i> know.
	I } did know.	Je sav ais <sup>6</sup> .		
	Thou } did know.	Tu sav ais.		
	He } did know.	Il sav ait <sup>26</sup> .		
	We } did know.	Nous sav ions.		
Perfect tense.	You } did know.	Vous sav iez.		
	They } did know.	Ils sav aient <sup>6</sup> .		
	I } knew,	Je sus <sup>26</sup> .	Je susse <sup>2</sup> .	
	Thou } knew,	Tu sus.	Tu susses.	
	He } knew,	Il sut <sup>26</sup> .	Il sût <sup>26</sup> .	
Future positive.	We } knew.	Nous sûmes.	Nous sussions.	
	You } knew.	Vous sûtes.	Vous sussiez.	
	They } knew.	Ils surent <sup>18</sup> .	Ils sussent <sup>18</sup> .	
	I } shall, will	Je s'aurai <sup>5</sup> .		
	Thou } shall, will	Tu sauras <sup>26</sup> .		
Fut. conditional.	He } shall, will	Il saura.		
	We } shall, will	Nous saurons.		
	You } shall, will	Vous saurez.		
	They } shall, will	Ils sauront <sup>26</sup> .		
	I } should,	Je s'aurais <sup>6</sup> .		
	Thou } should,	Tu saurais.		
	He } should,	Il saurait <sup>26</sup> .		
	We } should,	Nous saurions.		
	You } should,	Vous sauriez.		
	They } should,	Ils sauraient <sup>6</sup> .		

## GERUND.

## PARTICIPLE.

knowing.

sachant<sup>26</sup>.

su.

known.

\* Meaning *mental knowledge, science, information*; as,

I know my lesson, French, English, mathematics.

Je sais ma leçon, le Français, l'Anglais, les mathématiques.

I know your brother will come.

Je sais que votre frère viendra.

But To KNOW, meaning to be *acquainted with*, to know by sight, is not expressed by SAVOIR, it is expressed by CONNAÎTRE; as,

I know your brother, your sister, i. e. I am *acquainted with* them, I know them by sight. Je connais votre frère, votre sœur, &c. See CONNAÎTRE.

† Not that I know, &c. so often used in answer to a question, is expressed by the present of the subjunctive of this verb; thus,

Not that I know.

Non pas que je sache.

Not that we know.

Non pas que nous sachions.

INFINITIVE.

To be WORTH.

VAL *oir*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I am</i> worth.	<i>Je</i> <sup>8</sup> vaux <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>Thou art</i> worth.	<i>Tu</i> vaux.
	<i>He is</i> worth.	<i>Il</i> vaut <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> val ons.
	<i>You</i> } are worth.	<i>Vous</i> val ez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> val ent <sup>18</sup> .
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> val ais <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> } was worth.	<i>Tu</i> val ais.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> val ait <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> val ions.
	<i>You</i> } were worth.	<i>Vous</i> val iez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> val aient <sup>6</sup> .
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> val us <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> } was worth.	<i>Tu</i> val us.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> val ut <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> val ûmes.
	<i>You</i> } were worth.	<i>Vous</i> val ûtes.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> val urent <sup>18</sup> .
Future positive.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> <sup>8</sup> vaudrai <sup>5</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> vaudras <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>He</i> } shall, will	<i>Il</i> vaudra.
	<i>We</i> } be worth.	<i>Nous</i> vaudrons.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> vaudrez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> vaudront <sup>26</sup> .
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> <sup>8</sup> vaudrais <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> vaudrais.
	<i>He</i> } should, would	<i>Il</i> vaudrait <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> } be worth.	<i>Nous</i> vaudrions.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> vaudriez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> vaudraient <sup>6</sup> .

*may be worth.*

*might be worth.*

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

Being worth.

VAL *ant*<sup>26</sup>.

VAL *u*.

Been worth

After the same manner as VALOIR are conjugated

EQUIVALOIR, to be equivalent.

PRÉVALOIR, to prevail.

REVALOIR, to return like for like.

se PRÉVALOIR, to avail oneself

But observe that PRÉVALOIR and se PRÉVALOIR have an imperative.

prevail.

prévaux, sing.

PRÉVAL ez. plur.

Let us prevail.

PRÉVAL ons.

And, I may  
Thou mayest  
He may  
We may  
You may  
They may

} prevail, is

*Je* prév ale,  
*Tu* prév ales,  
*Il* prév ale,  
*Nous* prév alions,  
*Vous* prév aliez,  
*Ils* prév alent

} not prév aille, &c.

\* See *il* preceded by *i*, page 11 and 12.



## INFINITIVE.

To SEE.

V *oir*.

## IMPERATIVE.

see, v *ois*, sing.v *oyez*, plur.

Let us see,

v *oyons*.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*I* see.  
*Thou* seest.  
*He* sees.  
*We* }  
*You* } see.  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>23</sup>v *ois*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* v *ois*.  
*Il* v *oit*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* v *oyons*<sup>4</sup>.  
*Vous* v *oyez*.  
*Ils* v *oient*<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* v *oie*<sup>23</sup>.  
*Tu* v *oies*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* v *oie*.  
*Nous* v *oyions*.  
*Vous* v *oyiez*.  
*Ils* v *oient*.

see, may see.

*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } did see.  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* v *oyais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* v *oyais*.  
*Il* v *oyait*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* v *oyions*.  
*Vous* v *oyiez*.  
*Ils* v *oyaient*<sup>6</sup>.

*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } saw, did see.  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* v *is*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* v *is*.  
*Il* v *it*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* v *îmes*.  
*Vous* v *îtes*.  
*Ils* v *irent*<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* v *isse*<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* v *isses*.  
*Il* v *ît*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* v *issions*.  
*Vous* v *issiez*.  
*Ils* v *issent*<sup>19</sup>.

saw, might see.

*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shall, will see.  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>\*</sup>v *errai*<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* v *erras*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* v *erra*.  
*Nous* v *errons*.  
*Vous* v *errez*.  
*Ils* v *erront*<sup>26</sup>.

*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shld, wld see.  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>\*</sup>v *errais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* v *errais*.  
*Il* v *errait*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* v *errions*.  
*Vous* v *eriez*.  
*Ils* v *erraient*<sup>6</sup>.

## GERUND.

seeing

v *oyant*<sup>26</sup>.

## PARTICIPLE.

v *u*.

seen

*After the same manner as VOIR are conjugated*

ENTREVOIR, to have a glimpse.

REVOIR, to see again.

\* Only one *r* is sounded, the other *r* serves to make the preceding *e* long.

INFINITIVE.

To WILL, To be WILLING.

VOUL *oir*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.  
I will,\* or am willing.  
Thou wilt, art willing.  
He wills, or is willing.  
We } will,  
You } are willing.  
They }

Je <sup>12</sup>veux<sup>23</sup>.  
Tu veux.  
Il veut<sup>23</sup>.  
Nous voul ons.  
Vous voul ez.  
Ils veulent<sup>18</sup>.

Je veuille<sup>2</sup>.  
Tu veuilles<sup>26</sup>.  
Il veuille.  
Nous voul ions.  
Vous voul iez.  
Ils veuillent<sup>1</sup>.

may be willing.

Imperfect tense.  
I } would,\*  
Thou } was willing.  
He }  
We } would,  
You } were willing.  
They }

Je <sup>14</sup>voul ais<sup>5</sup>.  
Tu voul ais.  
Il voul ait<sup>26</sup>.  
Nous voul ions.  
Vous voul iez.  
Ils voul aient<sup>3</sup>.

Perfect tense.  
I }  
Thou } would,  
He } willed.  
We }  
You }  
They }

Je <sup>14</sup>voul us<sup>25</sup>.  
Tu voul us.  
Il voul ut<sup>26</sup>.  
Nous voul ûmes.  
Vous voul ûtes.  
Ils voul urent<sup>18</sup>.

Je voul usse<sup>2</sup>.  
Tu voul usses.  
Il voul ût<sup>26</sup>.  
Nous voul ussions.  
Vous voul ussiez.  
Ils voul ussent<sup>18</sup>.

might be willing

Future positive.  
I }  
Thou } will,\*  
He } shall, will  
We } be willing.  
You }  
They }

Je <sup>14</sup>voudrai<sup>5</sup>.  
Tu voudras.  
Il voudra.  
Nous voudrons.  
Vous voudrez.  
Ils voudront<sup>26</sup>.

Fut. conditional.  
I }  
Thou } would,\*  
He } should, wld  
We } be willing.  
You }  
They }

Je <sup>14</sup>voudrais<sup>6</sup>.  
Tu voudrais.  
Il voudrait<sup>26</sup>.  
Nous voudrions.  
Vous voudriez.  
Ils voudraient<sup>6</sup>.

GERUND.

Being willing. VOUL ant<sup>26</sup>.

PARTICIPLE.

VOUL u. been willing.

\* Frequent mistakes are committed in the use of the word WILL, which sometimes is a VERB implying *will, wish, desire, inclination*, and sometimes, as has been seen through the conjugations, only the SIGN of some of the tenses of verbs.

Though the distinction between WILL, the *verb*, and WILL, the *sign*, in some instances be nice, yet it is necessary it should be made, as it changes the idea.

If WILL, WOULD can be changed into the words *be willing*, they denote the WILL, and are expressed by the tenses of VOULOIR as above.

If WILL, WOULD can not properly be changed into *be willing*, they are mere SIGNS expressed in french by the *termination* of the verb. This sentence, for example ;

Will you go to the play to-night ? may be translated these two ways ;

VOULEZ-vous aller à la comédie ce soir ? or, IREZ-vous à la comédie ce soir ? with this difference, that in the first instance, I inquire whether it is the *wish, desire, or inclination* of the person I am speaking to, to go to the play, yet he may not go for all that ; in the second, I do not consult his *will or inclination*, for a person may do a thing against his inclination ; but I ask whether his *going* to the play will *actually* take place, either because he has *resolved* to go, or because he is *compelled* to go.

## A TABLE shewing, in one point of view, how to conjugate

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
	DEV oir,	ant,	dû.	POUV oir,	ant,	pu.
Present tense.	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
	Je	dois	doive	puis	puisse	puisse
	Tu	dois,	doives	peux	puisses	puisses
	Il	doit	doive	peut	puisse	puisse
	Nous	DEV ons	ions	POUV ons	puissions	puissions
	Vous	ez,	iez	ez	puissiez	puissiez
	Ils	doivent.	doivent.	peuvent.	puissent.	puissent.
	Je	ais		ais		
	Tu	ais		ais		
	Il	ait		ait		
Imperf. tense.	Nous	ions		ions		
	Vous	iez		iez		
	Ils	aient.		aient		
	Je	dus	dusse	pus	pusse	
	Tu	dus	dusses	pus	pusses	
	Il	dut	dût	put	pût	
	Nous	dûmes	dussions	pûmes	puissions	
	Vous	dûtes	dussiez	pûtes	puissiez	
	Ils	durent	dussent.	purent.	pussent.	
	Perfect tense.	Je	DEV rai		pourai	
Tu		ras		pouras		
Il		ra		poura		
Nous		rons		pourons		
Vous		rez		pourrez		
Ils		ront.		pouront		
Je		rais		pourais		
Tu		rais		pourais		
Il		rait		pourait		
Nous		rions	Like DEVOIR conjugate	pourions		
Vous	riez	Redevoir, Percevoir,	pouriez			
Ils	raient.	Apercevoir, Concevoir, Recevoir.	pouraient.			
Fut. positive.	ASSE oir,	yant,	assis.	PRÉV oir,	oyant,	u.
	J'	assieds	ie	ois		oie
	Tu	assieds,	assieds, ies	ois,	ois,	oies
	Il	assied	ie	oit		oie
	Nous	ASSÉ ions,	ions,	oyons,	oyons,	oyions
	Vous	iez,	iez,	oyez,	ez,	oyiez
	Ils	ient.	ient.	vient.		oient.
	J'	iais		oyais		
	Tu	iais		oyais		
	Il	iait		oyait		
Imperf. tense.	Nous	yons		oyions		
	Vous	yez		oyiez		
	Ils	iaient.		oyaient.		
	J'	assis	assisse	is		isse
	Tu	assis	assisses	is		isses
	Il	assit	assît	it		ît
	Nous	assîmes	assissions	îmes		issions
	Vous	assîtes	assissiez	îtes		issiez
	Ils	assirent	assissent.	irent.		issent
	Perfect tense.	J'	asseirai		PRÉVOIR ai	
Tu		asseiras		as		
Il		asseira		a		
Nous		asseirons		ons		
Vous		asseirez		ez		
Ils		asseiront.		ont.		
J'		asseirais		ais		
Tu		asseirais		ais		
Il		asseirait		ait		
Nous		asseirions		ions		
Vous	asseiriez		iez			
Ils	asseiraient.		aient.			

Like ASSEoir, conjugate s'Asseoir, Rasseoir, se Rasseoir.

Pourvoir, perfect Pourvus, Pourvuus not Pourvis. Surseoir, participle Surs

Of the verbs in OIR, both regular and irregular.

INFIN.	GER.	PART.	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
SAV oir,	sachant,	su.	Voir,	oyant,	u.
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
sais		sache	Vois		oie
sais,	saches,	saches	ois,	ois,	oies
sait		sache	oit		oie
SAV ons,	sachons,	sachions	oyons,	oyons,	oyions
ez,	sachez,	sachiez	oyez,	oyez,	oyiez
ent.		sachent.	oient.		oient.
aïs			oyais		
aïs			oyais		
ait			oyait		
ions			oyions		
iez			oyiez		
aient.			oyaient.		
sus		susse	is		isse
sus		susses	is		isses
sut		sût	it		ît
sûmes		sussions	îmes		issions
sûtes		sussiez	îtes		issiez
surent		sussent.	irent.		issent.
aurai			verrai		
auras			verras		
aura			verra		
aurons			verrons		
auriez			verrez		
auront.			verront.		
aurais			verrais		
aurais			verrais		
aurait			verrait		
aurions			verrions		
auriez			verriez		
auraient.			verraient.	Entrevoir, Revoir.	

---

VAL oir,	ant,	u.	VOUL oir,	ant,	u.
vaux		vaille	veux		veuille
vaux		vailles	veux		veuilles
vaut		vaille	veut		veuille
VAL ons		ions	VOUL ons		ions
ez		iez	ez		iez
ent.		vaillent.	veulent		veullent
aïs			aïs		
aïs			aïs		
ait			ait		
ions			ions		
iez			iez		
aient.			aient.		
us		usse	us		usse
us		usses	us		usses
ut		ût	ut		ît
ûmes		ussions	ûmes		ussions
ûtes		ussiez	ûtes		ussiez
urent.		ussent.	urent.		ussent.
audrai			voudrai		
audras			voudras		
audra			voudra		
audrons			voudrons		
audrez			voudrez		
audront.			voudront.		
audrais			voudrais		
audrais			voudrais		
audrait			voudrait		
audrions			voudrions		
audriez			voudriez		
audraient.			voudraient.		

Equivaloir, Revaloir, (Prévaloir, *se Prévaloir*, subjunctive, Prévale, not Prévaille.)



## INFINITIVE.

To WAIT for, To EXPECT.

ATTEND *re*

## IMPERATIVE.

wait.

ATTEND *s*, *sing*.ATTEND *ez*, *plur*.

Let us wait.

ATTEND *ons*.

## INDICATIVE.

Present tense.  
*I* wait, or *am* waiting.  
*Thou* waitest, *art* waiting.  
*He* waits, or *is* waiting.  
*We* } wait,  
*You* } are waiting.  
*They* }

*J'* ATTEND *s*<sup>16</sup>.  
*Tu* ATTEND *s*.  
*Il* ATTEND *s*.  
*Nous* ATTEND *ons*.  
*Vous* ATTEND *ez*.  
*Ils* ATTEND *ent*<sup>18</sup>.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*J'* ATTEND *e*<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* ATTEND *es*.<sup>26</sup>  
*Il* ATTEND *e*.  
*Nous* ATTEND *ions*.  
*Vous* ATTEND *iez*.  
*Ils* ATTEND *ent*<sup>18</sup>.

wait, may wait.

Imperfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* } was waiting.  
*He* }  
*We* }  
*You* } were waiting.  
*They* }

*J'* ATTEND *ais*.<sup>3</sup>  
*Tu* ATTEND *ais*.  
*Il* ATTEND *ait*.<sup>26</sup>  
*Nous* ATTEND *ions*.  
*Vous* ATTEND *iez*.  
*Ils* ATTEND *aient*.<sup>3</sup>

Perfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* } waited,  
*He* } did wait.  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They* }

*J'* ATTEND *is*.<sup>26</sup>  
*Tu* ATTEND *is*.  
*Il* ATTEND *it*.<sup>26</sup>  
*Nous* ATTEND *îmes*.  
*Vous* ATTEND *îtes*.  
*Ils* ATTEND *irent*.<sup>18</sup>

*J'* ATTEND *isse*.<sup>2</sup>  
*Tu* ATTEND *isses*.  
*Il* ATTEND *ît*.<sup>26</sup>  
*Nous* ATTEND *issions*.  
*Vous* ATTEND *issiez*.  
*Ils* ATTEND *issent*.<sup>18</sup>

waited, might wait.

Future positive.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shall, will wait,  
*We* } be waiting.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*J'* ATTENDR *ai*.<sup>5</sup>  
*Tu* ATTENDR *as*.  
*Il* ATTENDR *a*.  
*Nous* ATTENDR *ons*.  
*Vous* ATTENDR *ez*.  
*Ils* ATTENDR *ont*.<sup>26</sup>

Future conditional.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } should, would wait,  
*We* } be waiting.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*J'* ATTENDR *ais*.<sup>6</sup>  
*Tu* ATTENDR *ais*.  
*Il* ATTENDR *ait*.<sup>26</sup>  
*Nous* ATTENDR *ions*.  
*Vous* ATTENDR *iez*.  
*Ils* ATTENDR *aient*.<sup>6</sup>

waiting.

ATTEND *ant*.<sup>26</sup>ATTEND *u*.

waited.

After the same manner as ATTENDRE, are conjugated

Battre, to beat, to fight.	Descendre, to go or come down.	Ré battre, to beat again, to repeat
Abattre, to pull down.	Entendre, to hear, understand.	Refondre, to melt again.
Combattre, to fight.	Etendre, to stretch, to spread.	Rendre, to render, to return.
Condescendre, to condescend.	Fendre, to cleave, to split.	se Rendre, to surrender.
Confondre, to confound.	Fondre, to melt, to cast.	Répandre, to spill, to shed.
Correspondre, to correspond.	Interrompre, to interrupt.	Répondre, to answer.
Corrompre, to corrupt.	Mordre, to bite.	Retordre, to twist anew.
Débattre, to debate.	se Morfondre, to grow cold.	Rompre, to break.
se Débattre, to struggle.	Pendre, to hang	Suspendre, to suspend.
Défendre, to forbid.	Perdre, to lose, to ruin.	Tendre, to tend, to bend.
se Défendre, to defend oneself.	Pondre, to lay eggs.	Tondre, to shear.
Démordre, to relax.	Prétendre, to pretend.	Tordre, to twist, to wring.
Dépendre, to depend.	Rabattre, to abate.	Vendre, to sell.

*The IRREGULAR verbs belonging to this conjugation are*

<i>Absoudre</i> , to absolve,.....	see RESOUDRE.	<i>Enceindre</i> , to encompass,...	like FEINDRE.
<i>Abstraire</i> , to abstract,.....	see TRAIRE.	<i>Enclore</i> , to enclose.†	
<i>Accroître</i> , to accrue,.....	like CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Enduire</i> , to daub,.....	like INSTRUIRE
<i>Admettre</i> , to admit,.....	like METTRE.	<i>Enfreindre</i> , to infringe,....	like FEINDRE.
<i>Apparaître</i> , to appear,.....	like CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Enjoindre</i> , to enjoin,.....	like FEINDRE.
<b>APPRENDRE</b> , to learn, ...	page 149.	<i>s'Entremettre</i> , intermeddle,	like METTRE.
<i>Astraindre</i> , to restrain,....		<i>Entreprendre</i> , to undertake,	like APPRENDRE
<i>Atteindre</i> , to reach, to hit,..	like FEINDRE.	<i>Epreindre</i> , to squeeze out,	like FEINDRE.
<b>BOIRE</b> , to drink,.....	page 150.	<i>Eteindre</i> , to extinguish,...	like FEINDRE.
<i>Braire</i> , to bray.*		<i>Exclure</i> , to exclude,.....	see CONCLURE.
<i>Ceindre</i> , to gird,.....	like FEINDRE.	<i>Extraire</i> , to extract,.....	like TRAIRE.
<i>Circoncire</i> , to circumcise,....	see DIRE.	<b>FAIRE</b> , to do, to make,....	page 157.
<i>Circonscrire</i> , to circumscribe,	like ÉCRIRE.	<b>FEINDRE</b> , to feign,.....	page 158.
<i>Clore</i> , to close, to shut.†		<i>Frîre</i> , to fry,.....	see RIRE.
<i>Commettre</i> , to commit,.....	like METTRE.	<i>Induire</i> , to induce,.....	like INSTRUIRE.
<i>Comparaître</i> , to appear,.....	like CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Inscrire</i> , to inscribe,.....	like ÉCRIRE.
<i>Complaire</i> , to comply with, ..	like PLAIRE.	<b>INSTRUIRE</b> , to instruct, ..	page 159.
<i>Comprendre</i> , to understand, ..	like APPRENDRE.	<i>Interdire</i> , to interdict,....	see DIRE.
<i>Compromettre</i> , compromise, ..	like METTRE.	<i>Introduire</i> , to introduce,...	like INSTRUIRE.
<b>CONCLURE</b> , to conclude,....	page 151.	<i>Joindre</i> , to join,.....	like FEINDRE.
<i>Conduire</i> , to conduct, to lead,	like INSTRUIRE.	<b>LIRE</b> , to read,.....	page 160.
<i>Confîre</i> , to pickle,.....	see DIRE.	<i>Luire</i> , to shine,.....	see INSTRUIRE.
<i>Conjoindre</i> , to join together, ..	like FEINDRE.	<i>Maudire</i> , to curse,.....	see DIRE.
<b>CONNAÎTRE</b> , to know,....	page 152.	<i>Médire</i> , to slander,.....	see DIRE.
<i>Construire</i> , to construct, ..	like INSTRUIRE.	<i>Méconnaître</i> , not to know, ..	like CONNAÎTRE.
<i>Contraindre</i> , to compel,.....	like FEINDRE.	<i>se Méprendre</i> , to mistake, ..	like APPRENDRE
<i>Contredire</i> , to contradict,....	see DIRE.	<b>METTRE</b> , to put,.....	page 161.
<i>Contrefaire</i> , to counterfeit,....	like FAIRE.	<b>MOUDRE</b> , to grind,.....	page 162.
<i>Convaincre</i> , to convince,....	like VAINCRE.	<i>Naître</i> , to come to life,....	see CONNAÎTRE.
<b>COUDRE</b> , to sew,.....	page 153.	<i>Nuire</i> , to harm, to hurt, ...	see INSTRUIRE.
<i>Craindre</i> , to fear,.....	like FEINDRE.	<i>Oindre</i> , to anoint,.....	like FEINDRE.
<b>CROIRE</b> , to believe,.....	page 154.	<i>Omettre</i> , to omit,.....	like METTRE.
<i>Croître</i> , to grow up,.....	like CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Pâître</i> , to graze,.....	like CONNAÎTRE.
<i>Cuire</i> , to do victuals, to cook,	see INSTRUIRE.	<i>Paraître</i> , to appear,.....	like FEINDRE.
<i>Découdre</i> , to unsew,.....	like COUDRE.	<i>Peindre</i> , to paint,.....	like METTRE.
<i>Décrire</i> , to describe,.....	like ÉCRIRE.	<i>Permettre</i> , to permit,....	like METTRE.
<i>Décroître</i> , to decrease,.....	like CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Plaindre</i> , to pity,.....	like FEINDRE.
<i>se Dédire</i> , to recant, to retract,	see DIRE.	<i>se Plaindre</i> , to complain, ..	like FEINDRE.
<i>Déduire</i> , to deduct,.....	like INSTRUIRE.	<b>PLAIRE</b> , to please,.....	page 163.
<i>Défaire</i> , to undo, to defeat, ..	like FAIRE.	<i>se Plaire à</i> , to delight in,...	like PLAIRE.
<i>se Défaire</i> , to get rid of, ...	like FAIRE.	<i>Poursuivre</i> , to pursue,.....	like SUIVRE.
<i>Déjoindre</i> , to disjoin,.....	like FEINDRE.	<i>Prédire</i> , to foretel,.....	see DIRE.
<i>Démêtrer</i> , to disjoint,.....	like METTRE.	<i>Prendre</i> , to take,.....	like APPRENDRE.
<i>se Démêtrer</i> , to abdicate,....	like METTRE.	<i>Précrire</i> , to prescribe,....	like ÉCRIRE.
<i>Déplaîre</i> , to displease,.....	like PLAIRE.	<i>Produire</i> , to produce,.....	like INSTRUIRE.
<i>Désapprendre</i> , to unlearn,....	like APPRENDRE.	<i>Promettre</i> , to promise,....	like METTRE.
<i>Déteindre</i> , to take off the die,	like FEINDRE.	<i>Proscrire</i> , to proscribe,....	like ÉCRIRE.
<i>Détruire</i> , to destroy,.....	like INSTRUIRE.	<i>Reboire</i> , to drink again,....	like BOIRE.
<b>DIRE</b> , to say,.....	page 155.	<i>Reconduire</i> , to lead back, ...	like INSTRUIRE.
<i>Disparaître</i> , to disappear,....	like CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Reconnaître</i> , to know again,	like CONNAÎTRE.
<i>Dissoudre</i> , to dissolve,.....	like RESOUDRE.	<i>Recoudre</i> , to sew again, ...	like COUDRE.
<i>Distraire</i> , disturb attention, ..	like TRAIRE.	<i>Récrire</i> , to write again,....	like ÉCRIRE.
<i>Éclore</i> , to hatch.†		<i>Recuire</i> , to do or cook again,	see INSTRUIRE.
<b>ÉCRIRE</b> , to write,.....	page 156.	<i>Redéfaire</i> , to undo again, ...	like FAIRE.
<i>Élire</i> , to elect,.....	like LIRE.	<i>Redire</i> , to say again,.....	like DIRE.
<i>Emoudre</i> , to whet, to grind, ..	like MOUDRE.	<i>Réduire</i> , to reduce,.....	like INSTRUIRE.

\* BRAIRE is used only in the following tenses and persons ;

*Present.*

*Future.*

*Conditional.*

*Il brait, He, it brays. Il braira, He, it will bray. Il brairait, He, it would bray.*  
*Ils braient, They, bray. Ils brairont, They will bray. Ils brairaient, They would bray.*

† CLORE, and its compounds ECLORE, ENCLOSE, have only the following tenses and

<i>Refaire</i> , to do again, ..... like FAIRE.	<i>Sourire</i> , to smile, ..... like RIRE.
<i>Relire</i> , to read again, ..... like LIRE.	<i>Souscrire</i> , to subscribe, ..... like ÉCRIRE.
<i>Reluire</i> , to shine, ..... like INSTRUIRE.	<i>Soustraire</i> , to subtract, ..... like TRAIRE.
<i>Remettre</i> , to put again, ... like METTRE.	<i>SUIVRE</i> , to follow, ..... page 166.
<i>Rémoudre</i> , to grind again, . like MOUDRE.	<i>Suffire</i> , to be sufficient, ..... see DIRE.
<i>Renaitre</i> , to revive, ..... see CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Surfaire</i> , to exact, ..... like FAIRE.
<i>Rentraire</i> , to finedraw, ... like TRAIRE.	<i>Surprendre</i> , to surprise, .... like APPRENDRE
<i>Repâître</i> , to feed, ..... see CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Survivre</i> , to outlive, survive, . like VIVRE.
<i>Reprendre</i> , to take again, .. like APPRENDRE.	<i>se Taire</i> , to hold one's tongue, . like PLAIRE.
<i>RESOUDRE</i> , to resolve, . page 164.	<i>Teindre</i> , to dye, ..... like FEINDRE.
<i>Restreindre</i> , to restringe, .. like FEINDRE.	<i>Traduire</i> , to translate, ..... like INSTRUIRE.
<i>Revivre</i> , to live again, .... like VIVRE.	<i>TRAIRE</i> , to milk, ..... page 167.
<i>RIRE</i> , to laugh, ..... page 165.	<i>Transcrire</i> , to transcribe, ... like ÉCRIRE.
<i>Satisfaire</i> , to satisfy, .... like FAIRE.	<i>Transmettre</i> , to transmit, .... like METTRE.
<i>Séduire</i> , to seduce, ..... like INSTRUIRE.	<i>VAINCRE</i> , to vanquish, ... page 168.
<i>Soumettre</i> , to submit, ..... like METTRE.	<i>VIVRE</i> , to live, ..... page 169.

persons in use :

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.		
CLO <i>re</i> .	To close.	CLO <i>s</i> .	closed.	
INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		may close.
<i>Je</i> clo <i>s</i> .	<i>I</i> close, or <i>am</i> closing.	<i>Je</i> close.		
<i>Tu</i> clo <i>s</i> .	<i>Tou</i> closest, <i>art</i> closing.	<i>Tu</i> closes.		
<i>Il</i> clo <i>t</i> .	<i>He</i> closes, <i>is</i> closing.	<i>Il</i> close.		
<i>Je</i> clor <i>ai</i> .	<i>I</i>			
<i>Tu</i> clor <i>as</i> .	<i>Thou</i>			
<i>Il</i> clor <i>a</i> .	<i>He</i>			
<i>Nous</i> clor <i>ons</i> .	<i>We</i>			
<i>Vous</i> clor <i>ez</i> .	<i>You</i>			
<i>Ils</i> clor <i>ont</i> .	<i>They</i>			
<i>Je</i> clor <i>ais</i> .	<i>I</i>			
<i>Tu</i> clor <i>ais</i> .	<i>Thou</i>			
<i>Il</i> clor <i>ait</i> .	<i>He</i>			
<i>Nous</i> clor <i>ions</i> .	<i>We</i>			
<i>Vous</i> clor <i>iez</i> .	<i>You</i>			
<i>Ils</i> clor <i>aient</i> .	<i>They</i>			

## COMPOUND TENSES.

<i>I have</i>	<i>J'</i> ai	<i>J'</i> aie	} clos.	may have closed
<i>Thou hast</i>	<i>Tu</i> as	<i>Tu</i> aies		
<i>He has</i>	<i>Il</i> a	<i>Il</i> ait		
<i>We have</i>	<i>Nous</i> avons	<i>Nous</i> ayons		
<i>You have</i>	<i>Vous</i> avez	<i>Vous</i> ayez		
<i>They have</i>	<i>Ils</i> ont	<i>Ils</i> aient		
<i>I had</i> closed, &c.	<i>J'</i> avais clos, &c.			

Conjugate in the same manner, ENCLOSE, To enclose.

ÉCLORE has only the following tenses and persons in use :

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.		
ÉCLO <i>re</i> .	To be hatching.	ÉCLO <i>s</i> .	hatched.	
INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		may be hatching
<i>Il</i> écrot.	<i>It</i> is hatching.	<i>Il</i> éclore.		
<i>Ils</i> éclosent.	<i>They</i> are hatching.	<i>Ils</i> éclosent.		
<i>Il</i> écloga.	<i>It</i> will be hatching.			
<i>Ils</i> éclogeront.	<i>They</i> will be hatching.			
<i>Il</i> éclograit.	<i>It</i> would be hatching.			
<i>Ils</i> éclograient.	<i>They</i> would be hatching.			

INFINITIVE.

To LEARN.

\*APPREND *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

learn. APPREND *s, sing.* apprenez, *plur.*  
let us learn. apprenons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I learn, or <i>am</i>	learning <sup>g</sup> .	<i>J</i> † *apprend <i>s</i> <sup>23</sup> .	<i>J</i> apprenne <sup>2</sup> .	learn, <i>may</i> learn.
	<i>Thou</i> learnest, <i>art</i>		<i>Tu</i> <sup>16</sup> apprend <i>s</i> .	<i>Tu</i> apprennes <sup>26</sup> .	
	<i>He</i> learns, or <i>is</i>		<i>Il</i> apprend <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Il</i> apprenne.	
Imperfect tense.	<i>We</i> {	learn,	<i>Nous</i> apprenons.	<i>Nous</i> apprenions.	learned, <i>might</i> learn.
	<i>You</i> {	are learning.	<i>Vous</i> apprenez.	<i>Vous</i> appreniez.	
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> apprennent <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> apprennent.	
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> {		<i>J</i> apprenais <sup>6</sup> .	<i>J</i> apprîs <sup>23</sup> .	
	<i>Thou</i> {	was learning.	<i>Tu</i> apprenais.	<i>Tu</i> apprîs.	
	<i>He</i> {		<i>Il</i> apprenait <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Il</i> apprît <sup>26</sup> .	
Future positive.	<i>We</i> {	were learning.	<i>Nous</i> apprenions.	<i>Nous</i> apprîmes.	
	<i>You</i> {		<i>Vous</i> appreniez.	<i>Vous</i> apprîtes.	
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> apprenaient <sup>6</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> apprissent <sup>18</sup> .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> {		<i>J</i> apprendr <i>ai</i> <sup>3</sup> .	<i>J</i> apprendr <i>ais</i> <sup>6</sup> .	
	<i>Thou</i> {		<i>Tu</i> apprendr <i>as</i> <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Tu</i> apprendr <i>ais</i> .	
	<i>He</i> {	shall, will learn,	<i>Il</i> apprendr <i>a</i> .	<i>Il</i> apprendr <i>ait</i> <sup>26</sup> .	
	<i>We</i> {	be learning.	<i>Nous</i> apprendr <i>ons</i> .	<i>Nous</i> apprendr <i>ions</i> .	
	<i>You</i> {		<i>Vous</i> apprendr <i>ez</i> .	<i>Vous</i> apprendr <i>iez</i> .	
	<i>They</i> }		<i>Ils</i> apprendr <i>ont</i> <sup>23</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> apprendr <i>aient</i> <sup>6</sup> .	

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

Learning. apprenant<sup>23</sup>.

Appris<sup>23</sup>. Learned.

After the same manner as APPRENDRE, are conjugated [mistake.  
DÉSAPPRENDRE, to unlearn. se MÉPRENDRE, to commit a  
PRENDRE, to take. REPRENDRE, { to take again,  
COMPRENDRE, to comprehend, to understand. { to rebuke.  
ENTREPRENDRE, to undertake. SURPRENDRE, to surprise.

\* Sound only one *p*.; see *pp.* page 13.

† See note \* page 26.



## INFINITIVE.

To DRINK.

BOI *re*.

## IMPERATIVE.

drink.

BOI *s*, *sing*.Buvez, *plur*.Let *us* drink.

Buvons.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.  
*I* drink, or *am* drinking.  
*Thou* drinkest, *art* drinking.  
*He* drinks, or *is* drinking.  
*We* } drink,  
*You* } are drinking.  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>26</sup>boi *s*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* boi *s*.  
*Il* boi *t*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* buvons.  
*Vous* buvez.  
*Ils* boi *vent*<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* <sup>23</sup>boi *ve*<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* boi *ves*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* boi *ve*.  
*Nous* buvions.  
*Vous* buviez.  
*Ils* boi *vent*<sup>19</sup>.

drink, may drink

Imperfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* } was drinking.  
*He* }  
*We* }  
*You* } were drinking.  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>\*</sup>buvais<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* buvais.  
*Il* buvait<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* buvions.  
*Vous* buviez.  
*Ils* buvaient<sup>4</sup>.

Perfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } drank,  
*We* } did drink.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>\*</sup>bus<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* bus.  
*Il* but<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* bûmes.  
*Vous* bûtes<sup>26</sup>.  
*Ils* burent<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* <sup>\*</sup>busse<sup>8</sup>.  
*Tu* busses.  
*Il* bût<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* bussions.  
*Vous* bussiez.  
*Ils* bussent<sup>19</sup>.

drank, might drink.

Future positive.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shall, will drink,  
*We* } be drinking.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>23</sup>boir *ais*<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* boir *as*<sup>23</sup>.  
*Il* boir *a*.  
*Nous* boir *ons*.  
*Vous* boir *ez*.  
*Ils* boir *ont*<sup>26</sup>.

Fut. conditional.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shd, wd drink,  
*We* } be drinking.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* <sup>23</sup>boir *ais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* boir *ais*.  
*Il* boir *ait*<sup>23</sup>.  
*Nous* boir *ions*.  
*Vous* boir *iez*.  
*Ils* boir *aient*<sup>6</sup>.

## GERUND.

## PARTICIPLE.

drinking.

Buvant<sup>26</sup>.

Bu.

drunk.

After the same manner as *BOIRE* is conjugated  
*REBOIRE*, to drink again; to drink afresh.

\* See note 2, page 1.

INFINITIVE.

To CONCLUDE.

CONCLU *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

conclude. CONCLU *s, sing.*

CONCLU *ez, plur.*

Let *us* conclude.

CONCLU *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.  
*I* conclude, or *am* concluding.  
*Thou* concludest, art concluding.  
*He* concludes, or *is* concluding.  
*We* } conclude, are concluding.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* conclu *e<sup>s</sup>*.  
*Tu* conclu *s*.  
*Il* conclu *t<sup>s</sup>*.  
*Nous* conclu *ons*.  
*Vous* conclu *ez*.  
*Ils* conclu *ent<sup>18</sup>*.

conclude, may conclude.

Imperfect tense.  
*I* } *was* concluding.  
*Thou* }  
*He* }  
*We* } *were* concluding.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* *21*conclu *aïs<sup>6</sup>*.  
*Tu* conclu *aïs*.  
*Il* conclu *ait<sup>26</sup>*.  
*Nous* conclu *ions*.  
*Vous* conclu *iez*.  
*Ils* conclu *aient<sup>6</sup>*.

Perfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* } concluded,  
*He* } *did* conclude.  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* *21*conclu *s<sup>26</sup>*.  
*Tu* conclu *s*.  
*Il* conclu *t<sup>26</sup>*.  
*Nous* conclu *mes*.  
*Vous* conclu *tes*.  
*Ils* conclu *rent<sup>18</sup>*.

*Je* conclu *sse<sup>2</sup>*.  
*Tu* conclu *sses*.  
*Il* conclu *t<sup>26</sup>*.  
*Nous* conclu *ssions*.  
*Vous* conclu *ssiez*.  
*Ils* conclu *ssent<sup>18</sup>*.

concluded, might conclude.

Future positive.  
*I* }  
*Thou* } *shall, will*  
*He* } conclude,  
*We* } *be* concluding.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* *21*conclur *ai<sup>5</sup>*.  
*Tu* conclur *as<sup>23</sup>*.  
*Il* conclur *a*.  
*Nous* conclur *ons*.  
*Vous* conclur *ez*.  
*Ils* conclur *ont<sup>26</sup>*.

Fut. conditional.  
*I* }  
*Thou* } *should, would*  
*He* } conclude,  
*We* } *be* concluding.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* *21*conclur *aïs<sup>6</sup>*.  
*Tu* conclur *aïs*.  
*Il* conclur *ait<sup>26</sup>*.  
*Nous* conclur *ions*.  
*Vous* conclur *iez*.  
*Ils* conclur *aient<sup>5</sup>*.

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

concluding. CONCLU *ant<sup>26</sup>*.

CONCLU. concluded.

*After the same manner as CONCLUDE, is conjugated*

EXCLUDE, to exclude; observe only that the participle of EXCLUDE is EXCLUS, excluded.

## INFINITIVE.

TO KNOW.\*

†CONNAIT *re*.

## IMPERATIVE.

KNOW.      connais, *sing.*      connaissez, *plur.*

Let us know.      connaissons.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I know.	Je <sup>3</sup> †connais <sup>6</sup> .	Je connaisse <sup>2</sup> .	know, <i>may</i> know.
	Thou knowest.	Tu connais.	Tu connaisse <sup>26</sup> .	
	He knows.	Il connaît <sup>26</sup> .	Il connaisse.	
	We } know.	Nous connaissons.	Nous connaissions	
	You } know.	Vous connaissez.	Vous connaissiez.	
	They } know.	Ils connaissent <sup>18</sup> .	* Ils connaissent <sup>18</sup> .	
Imperfect tense.	I } did know.	Je connaissais <sup>6</sup> .		knew, <i>might</i> know.
	Thou } did know.	Tu connaissais.		
	He } did know.	Il connaissait <sup>26</sup> .		
	We } did know.	Nous connaissions.		
	You } did know.	Vous connaissiez.		
	They } did know.	Ils connaissaient <sup>6</sup> .		
Perfect tense.	I } knew, did know.	Je connus <sup>23</sup> .	Je connusse <sup>2</sup> .	knew, <i>might</i> know.
	Thou } knew, did know.	Tu connus.	Tu connusses.	
	He } knew, did know.	Il connut <sup>26</sup> .	Il connût <sup>20</sup> .	
	We } knew, did know.	Nous connûmes.	Nous connussions.	
	You } knew, did know.	Vous connûtes.	Vous connussiez.	
	They } knew, did know.	Ils connurent <sup>18</sup> .	Ils connussent <sup>18</sup> .	
Future positive.	I } shall, will know.	Je connaîtr ai <sup>5</sup> .		
	Thou } shall, will know.	Tu connaîtr as <sup>26</sup> .		
	He } shall, will know.	Il connaîtr a.		
	We } shall, will know.	Nous connaîtr ons.		
	You } shall, will know.	Vous connaîtr ez.		
	They } shall, will know.	Ils connaîtr ont <sup>26</sup> .		
Fut. conditional.	I } should, would know.	Je connaîtr ais <sup>6</sup> .		
	Thou } should, would know.	Tu connaîtr ais.		
	He } should, would know.	Il connaîtr ait <sup>26</sup> .		
	We } should, would know.	Nous connaîtr ions.		
	You } should, would know.	Vous connaîtr iez.		
	They } should, would know.	Ils connaîtr aient <sup>6</sup> .		

knowing.

connaissant<sup>26</sup>.

connu.

known.

After the same manner as CONNAÎTRE, are conjugated

MÉCONNAÎTRE, not to know.	PARAÎTRE, to appear.
RECONNAÎTRE, to know again.	APPARAÎTRE, to appear, speaking of ghosts.
CROÎTRE, to grow up, to encrease.	COMPARAÎTRE, (a law term,) to appear.
ACCROÎTRE, to accrue.	DISPARAÎTRE, to disappear.
DÉCROÎTRE, to decrease.	PAÎTRE, to graze.
RECROÎTRE, to grow again.	REPAÎTRE, to feed.
RENAÎTRE, to revive.	
NAÎTRE, to come to life, part. NÉ.	{ perf. ind. NAQU -is, -is, it; -îmes, -îtes, -irent. { perf. sub. NAQU-isse, -isses, -ît; -issions, -issiez, issent.

\* Meaning to know by sight, or to be acquainted with; as,

I know that man, this horse, that house, your brother, your sister, i. e. by sight.  
Je connais cet homme, ce cheval, cette maison, votre frère, votre sœur.

See SAVOIR, page 140.

† Sound only one n, and lay the accent upon o.

INFINITIVE.

To SEW.

COUD *re*

IMPERATIVE.

sew. coud *s, sing.*

cousez, *plur.*

Let us sew.

cousons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> sew, or <i>am</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> <sup>14</sup> coud <sup>s<sup>26</sup></sup> .	<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> couse <sup>2</sup> .	<i>sew, may sew.</i>
	<i>Thou</i> sewest, <i>art</i> .	<i>Tu</i> coud <i>s</i> .	<i>Tu</i> couses <sup>26</sup> .	
	<i>He</i> sews, or <i>is</i>	<i>Il</i> coud <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Il</i> couse.	
	<i>We</i> } sew,	<i>Nous</i> cousons.	<i>Nous</i> cousions.	
	<i>You</i> } are sewing.	<i>Vous</i> cousez.*	<i>Vous</i> cousiez.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> couSENT <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> couSENT <sup>18</sup> .	

Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> cousais <sup>6</sup> .	<i>sewed, might sew.</i>
	<i>Thou</i> } was sewing.	<i>Tu</i> cousais.	
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> cousait <sup>26</sup> .	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> cousions.	
	<i>You</i> } were sewing.	<i>Vous</i> cousiez.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> couSaient <sup>6</sup> .	

Perfect tense.	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> cousis.†	<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> cousisse <sup>2</sup> .	<i>sewed, might sew.</i>
	<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i> cousis <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Tu</i> cousisses.	
	<i>He</i> } sewed,	<i>Il</i> couSait <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Il</i> couSît <sup>26</sup> .	
	<i>We</i> } did sew.	<i>Nous</i> couSîmes.	<i>Nous</i> cousissions.	
	<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i> couSîtes.	<i>Vous</i> cousissiez.	
	<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> couSîrent <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> couSissent <sup>18</sup> .	

Future positive.	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> coudr ai <sup>5</sup> .	
	<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i> coudr as <sup>26</sup> .	
	<i>He</i> } shll, wll sew,	<i>Il</i> coudr a.	
	<i>We</i> } be sewing.	<i>Nous</i> coudr ons.	
	<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i> coudr ez.	
	<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> coudr ont <sup>26</sup> .	

Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>14</sup> coudr ais <sup>6</sup> .	
	<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i> coudr ais.	
	<i>He</i> } shd, wd sew,	<i>Il</i> coudr ait <sup>26</sup> .	
	<i>We</i> } be sewing.	<i>Nous</i> coudr ions.	
	<i>You</i>	<i>Vous</i> coudr iez.	
	<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> coudr aient <sup>6</sup> .	

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

sewing. couSant<sup>26</sup>.

cousu. sewed.

After the same manner as COUDRE, are conjugated

DÉCOUDRE, to unsew.

RECoudre, to sew again.

\* See *s* between two vowels page 14.

† See note 4, page 2.



## INFINITIVE.

To BELIEVE.

CROI *re*.

## IMPERATIVE.

believe crois, *sing.*

let us believe.

croyez, *plur*

croyons.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> believe.	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> croi s <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> believest.	<i>Tu</i> <sup>23</sup> croi s.
	<i>He</i> believes.	<i>Il</i> croi t <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> } believe.	<i>Nous</i> croyons.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> croyez <sup>4</sup> .
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> croi ent <sup>18</sup>

<i>Je</i> <sup>23</sup> croi e.
<i>Tu</i> croi es <sup>26</sup> .
<i>Il</i> croi e.
<i>Nous</i> croyions.
<i>Vous</i> croyiez.
<i>Ils</i> croi ent <sup>18</sup> .

believe *may* believe.

Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> <sup>23</sup> croyais <sup>4</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> croyais.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> croyait <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> } did believe.	<i>Nous</i> croyions.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> croyiez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> croyaient <sup>6</sup>

Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> crus <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> crus.*
	<i>He</i> } believed,	<i>Il</i> crut <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> } did believe.	<i>Nous</i> crûmes.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> crûtes.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> crurent <sup>18</sup> .

<i>Je</i> crusse <sup>2</sup> .
<i>Tu</i> crusses.
<i>Il</i> crût <sup>26</sup> .
<i>Nous</i> crussions.
<i>Vous</i> crussiez.
<i>Ils</i> crussent <sup>12</sup> .

believed, *might* believe.

Future positive.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> <sup>26</sup> croir ai <sup>5</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> croir as <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>He</i> } shall, will	<i>Il</i> croir a.
	<i>We</i> } believe.	<i>Nous</i> croir ons.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> croir ez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> croir ont <sup>26</sup> .

Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> <sup>23</sup> croir ais <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> croir ais.
	<i>He</i> } should, would	<i>Il</i> croir ait <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> } believe.	<i>Nous</i> croir ions.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> croir iez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> croir aient <sup>6</sup> .

## GERUND.

## PARTICIPLE.

believing. croyant<sup>25</sup>.

cru. believed

\* See note 2, page 1.

INFINITIVE.

To SAY, To TELL.

Di re.

IMPERATIVE.

say. DI s, sing.  
Let us say.

dites, plur.  
DI sons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I say, or am saying.	Je <sup>s</sup> di s <sup>26</sup> .
	Thou sayest, art saying.	Tu di s.
	He says, or is saying.	Il di t <sup>26</sup> .
	We } say,	Nous di sons.
	You } are saying.	Vous dites <sup>26</sup> .
	They }	Ils di sent <sup>18</sup> .
Imperfect tense.	I } was saying.	Je di sais <sup>5</sup> .
	Thou }	Tu di sais.
	He }	Il di sait <sup>26</sup> .
	We } were saying.	Nous di sions.
	You }	Vous di siez.
	They }	Ils di saient <sup>6</sup> .
Perfect tense.	I } said, did say.	Je di s <sup>26</sup> .
	Thou }	Tu di s.
	He }	Il di t <sup>26</sup> .
	We }	Nous di mes.
	You }	Vous di tes.
	They }	Ils di rent <sup>18</sup> .
Future positive.	I } shll, wll say,	Je dir ai <sup>5</sup> .
	Thou }	Tu dir as <sup>26</sup> .
	He } be saying.	Il dir a.
	We }	Nous dir ons.
	You }	Vous dir ez.
	They }	Ils dir ont <sup>26</sup> .
Fut. conditional.	I } shd, wd say,	Je dir ais <sup>6</sup> .
	Thou }	Tu dir ais.
	He } be saying.	Il dir ait <sup>26</sup> .
	We }	Nous dir ions.
	You }	Vous dir iez.
	They }	Ils dir aient <sup>6</sup> .

Je	di se <sup>2</sup> .	say, may say.
Tu	di ses <sup>26</sup> .	
Il	di se.	
Nous	di sions.	
Vous	di siez.	
Ils	di sent <sup>18</sup> .	

Je	di sse <sup>2</sup> .	said, might say.
Tu	di sses.	
Il	di t <sup>26</sup> .	
Nous	di ssions.	
Vous	di ssiez.	
Ils	di ssent <sup>18</sup> .	

saying.

DI sant<sup>26</sup>.

DI t<sup>26</sup>.

said.

After the same manner as DIRE, are conjugated

CONTREDIRE, to contradict.	PRÉDIRE, to foretell.
se DÉDIRE, to retract, to recant.	REDIRE, to say again.
INTERDIRE, to interdict.	CONFIRE, to confect, preserve fruit in sugar.
MAUDIRE, to curse.	CIRCONCIRE, to circumcise. part. CIRCONCIS.
MÉDIRE, to slander.	SUFFIRE, to be sufficient. part. SUFFI.

Observe only, that except REDIRE, the second person plural of the present of the indicative, and of the imperative of all these verbs ends in *sez*, and not in *tes*; so, *Vous Confisez, Vous Contredisez*; and that in MAUDIRE the *s* is doubled in the middle of the word; so, *Nous Maudissons, Vous Maudissez*; *Je Maudissais, &c.* not *Nous Maudisons, &c.*

## INFINITIVE.

To WRITE.

ÉCRI *re*.

## IMPERATIVE.

write.

ÉCRI *s, sing.*ÉCRI *vez, plur.*Let *us* write.ÉCRI *vons.*

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.  
*I* write, or *am* writing.  
*Thou* writest, *art* writing.  
*He* writes, or *is* writing.  
*We* } write,  
*You* } are writing.  
*They* }

*J'\** écri *s*<sup>25</sup>.  
*Tu* écri *s.†*  
*Il* écri *t*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* écri *vons.*  
*Vous* écri *vez.*  
*Ils* écri *vent*<sup>18</sup>.

*J'* écri *ve*<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* écri *ves*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* écri *ve.*  
*Nous* écri *vions.*  
*Vous* écri *viez.*  
*Ils* écri *vent*<sup>19</sup>.

write, may write.

Imperfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* } was writing.  
*He* }  
*We* }  
*You* } were writing.  
*They* }

*J'\** écri *vais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* écri *vais.*  
*Il* écri *vait*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* écri *vions.*  
*Vous* écri *viez.*  
*Ils* écri *vaients*<sup>6</sup>.

Perfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } wrote,  
*We* } did write.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*J'* écri *vis.†*  
*Tu* écri *vis.*  
*Il* écri *vit*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* écri *vîmes.*  
*Vous* écri *vîtes.*  
*Ils* écri *virent*<sup>18</sup>.

*J'* écri *visse*<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* écri *visses.*  
*Il* écri *vît*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* écri *vissions.*  
*Vous* écri *vissiez.*  
*Ils* écri *vissent*<sup>19</sup>.

wrote, might write.

Future positive  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shll, wll write,  
*We* } be writing.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*J'* écri *ai*<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* écri *as*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* écri *a.*  
*Nous* écri *ons.*  
*Vous* écri *ez.*  
*Ils* écri *ont*<sup>26</sup>.

Fut. conditional.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shd, wd write,  
*We* } be writing.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*J'* écri *ais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* écri *ais.*  
*Il* écri *ait*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* écri *ions.*  
*Vous* écri *iez.*  
*Ils* écri *aient*<sup>6</sup>.

## GERUND.

writing.

ÉCRI *vant*<sup>26</sup>.

## PARTICIPLE.

ÉCRI *t*<sup>20</sup>.

written.

After the same manner as ÉCRIRE, are conjugated

CIRCONSCRIRE, to circumscribe.

PROSCRIRE, to proscribe.

DÉCRIRE, to describe.

RÉCRIRE, to write again.

INSCRIRE, to inscribe.

SOUSCRIRE, to subscribe.

PRESCRIRE, to prescribe.

TRANSCRIRE, to transcribe, to copy.

\* See note \* page 23.

† See note 4, page 2.

INFINITIVE.

*To DO, TO MAKE.*

*FAI re.*

IMPERATIVE.

DO  
Let us do.

*FAI s, sing. faites, plur.  
FAI sons.*

INDICATIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> do, or <i>am</i> doing.	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> <i>fai s</i> <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> doest, <i>art</i> doing.	<i>Tu</i> <i>fai s</i> .
	<i>He</i> does, or <i>is</i> doing.	<i>Il</i> <i>fai t</i> <sup>23</sup> .
	<i>We</i> } do, <i>You</i> } are doing. <i>They</i> }	<i>Nous</i> <i>fai sons</i> . <i>Vous</i> <i>faites</i> . <i>Ils</i> <i>font</i> <sup>23</sup> .
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> } <i>Thou</i> } was doing. <i>He</i> } <i>We</i> } <i>You</i> } were doing. <i>They</i> }	<i>J'</i> <i>fai sais</i> <sup>6</sup> . <i>Tu</i> <i>fai sais</i> .* <i>Il</i> <i>fai sait</i> <sup>26</sup> . <i>Nous</i> <i>fai sions</i> . <i>Vous</i> <i>fai siez</i> . <i>Ils</i> <i>fai saient</i> <sup>8</sup> .
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } <i>Thou</i> } did, or made. <i>He</i> } <i>We</i> } <i>You</i> } <i>They</i> }	<i>Je</i> <i>fis</i> <sup>26</sup> . <i>Tu</i> <i>fis</i> . <i>Il</i> <i>fit</i> <sup>25</sup> . <i>Nous</i> <i>fîmes</i> . <i>Vous</i> <i>fîtes</i> . <i>Ils</i> <i>fîrent</i> <sup>18</sup> .
Future positive.	<i>I</i> } <i>Thou</i> } <i>He</i> } shall, will do, <i>We</i> } be doing. <i>You</i> } <i>They</i> }	<i>Je</i> † <i>ferai</i> <sup>15</sup> . <i>Tu</i> <i>feras</i> <sup>26</sup> . <i>Il</i> <i>fera</i> . <i>Nous</i> <i>ferons</i> . <i>Vous</i> <i>feriez</i> . <i>Ils</i> <i>feront</i> <sup>23</sup> .
Future conditional.	<i>I</i> } <i>Thou</i> } <i>He</i> } shd, wld do, <i>We</i> } be doing. <i>You</i> } <i>They</i> }	<i>Je</i> † <i>ferais</i> <sup>6</sup> . <i>Tu</i> <i>ferais</i> . <i>Il</i> <i>ferait</i> <sup>26</sup> . <i>Nous</i> <i>ferions</i> . <i>Vous</i> <i>feriez</i> . <i>Ils</i> <i>feraient</i> <sup>3</sup> .

SUBJUNCTIVE

*Je* *fasse*<sup>2</sup>. †  
*Tu* *fasses*<sup>23</sup>.  
*Il* *fasse*.  
*Nous* *fassions*.  
*Vous* *fassiez*.  
*Ils* *fassent*<sup>18</sup>.

do, may do.

*Je* *fisse*<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* *fisses*.  
*Il* *fît*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* *fissions*.  
*Vous* *fissiez*.  
*Ils* *fissent*<sup>18</sup>.

did, might do

GERUND.

doing. *FAI sant*<sup>26</sup>.

PARTICIPLE

*FAI t*<sup>26</sup>. Done, Made.

*After the same manner as FAIRE, are conjugated*

CONTREFAIRE, to counterfeit.

REFAIRE, to do again.

DÉFAIRE, to undo, to defeat.

SATISFAIRE, to satisfy.

se DÉFAIRE, to get rid of.

SURFAIRE, to exact, to ask too much.

REDEFAIRE, to undo again.

\* See s between two vowels, page 14. † Pronounce *fray*, *fraw*, &c. ‡ See ss, p. 15.



## INFINITIVE.

*To* PRETEND, *to* FEIGN.FEIND *re*.

## IMPERATIVE.

pretend. feins, *sing.*feignez, *plu*Let *us* pretend.

feignons.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> pretend.	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> feins <sup>27</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> pretendest.	<i>Tu</i> <sup>19</sup> feins.
	<i>He</i> pretends.	<i>Il</i> feint <sup>29</sup> .
	<i>We</i> } pretend.	<i>Nous</i> feignons.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> feignez.
Imperfect tense.	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> feignent <sup>18</sup> .
	<i>I</i> } <i>was</i> pretending.	<i>Je</i> <sup>19</sup> feignais <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> feignais.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> feignait <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> feignions.
Perfect tense.	<i>You</i> } <i>were</i> pretending.	<i>Vous</i> feigniez.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> feignaient <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>I</i> } pretended,	<i>Je</i> <sup>19</sup> feignis <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> feignis.
	<i>He</i> } <i>did</i> pretend.	<i>Il</i> feignit <sup>26</sup> .
Future positive.	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> feignîmes.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> feignîtes.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> feignirent <sup>18</sup> .
	<i>I</i> } <i>shall, will</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>19</sup> feindr <i>ai</i> <sup>5</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> feindr <i>as</i> <sup>23</sup> .
Fut. conditional.	<i>He</i> } pretend.	<i>Il</i> feindr <i>a</i> .
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> feindr <i>ons</i> .
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> feindr <i>ez</i> .
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> feindr <i>ont</i> <sup>25</sup> .
	<i>I</i> } <i>should, would</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>19</sup> feindr <i>ais</i> <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> feindr <i>ais</i> .
	<i>He</i> } pretend.	<i>Il</i> feindr <i>ait</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> feindr <i>ions</i> .
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> feindr <i>iez</i> .
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> feindr <i>aient</i> <sup>6</sup> .

pretending.

feignant<sup>23</sup>.feint<sup>26</sup>. pretended*After the same manner as* FEINDRE, *are conjugated*

ASTREINDRE, <i>to tie, to bind.</i>	OINDRE, <i>to anoint.</i>
CRAINDRE, <i>to fear.</i>	TEINDRE, <i>to die.</i>
CONTRAINDRE, <i>to constrain.</i>	DÉTEINDRE, <i>to take off the die.</i>
CEINDRE, <i>to gird.</i>	ÉTEINDRE, <i>to extinguish, to put out.</i>
ENCEINDRE, <i>to encompass.</i>	ATEINDRE, <i>to reach.</i>
JOINDRE, <i>to join.</i>	PEINDRE, <i>to paint.</i>
CONJOINDRE, <i>to unite.</i>	PLAINDRE, <i>to pity.</i>
DÉJOINDRE, <i>to disjoin.</i>	<i>se</i> PLAINDRE, <i>to complain.</i>
ENJOINDRE, <i>to enjoin.</i>	RESTREINDRE, <i>to restrain, to limit.</i>
ENFREINDRE, <i>to infringe.</i>	ÉPREINDRE, <i>to squeeze out, to strain.</i>

pretend, *may* pretend.pretended, *might* pretend.

INFINITIVE. INSTRUUI re.

IMPERATIVE.  
instruct. INSTRUI s, sing. INSTRUI sez, plur.  
Let us instruct. INSTRUI sons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I instruct, or am	instructing.	J' <sup>19</sup> instrui s <sup>25</sup> .	J' <sup>19</sup> instrui se <sup>2</sup> .	instruct, may instruct.
	Thou instructest, art		Tu instrui s.	Tu instrui ses <sup>25</sup> .	
	He instructs, or is		Il instrui t <sup>25</sup> .	Il instrui se.	
Imperfect tense.	We	are instructing.	Nous instrui sons.	Nous instrui sions.	instructed, might instruct.
	You		Vous instrui sez.	Vous instrui siez.	
	They		Ils instrui sent <sup>18</sup> .	Ils instrui sent <sup>18</sup> .	
Perfect tense.	I	was instructing.	J' <sup>19</sup> instrui sais <sup>6</sup> .	J' <sup>19</sup> instrui sisse <sup>2</sup> .	
	Thou		Tu instrui sais.	Tu instrui sisses.	
	He		Il instrui sait <sup>25</sup> .	Il instrui sît <sup>25</sup> .	
Future positive.	We	were instructing	Nous instrui sions.	Nous instrui sissions.	
	You		Vous instrui siez.	Vous instrui sissiez.	
	They		Ils instrui saient <sup>3</sup> .	Ils instrui sissent.	
Fut. conditional.	I	did instruct.	J' <sup>19</sup> instrui sis <sup>20</sup> .	J' <sup>19</sup> instrui sisse <sup>2</sup> .	
	Thou		Tu instrui sis.	Tu instrui sisses.	
	He		Il instrui sit <sup>26</sup> .	Il instrui sît <sup>25</sup> .	
	We	be instructing.	Nous instrui sîmes.	Nous instrui sissions.	
	You		Vous instrui sîtes.	Vous instrui sissiez.	
	They		Ils instrui sirent <sup>6</sup> .	Ils instrui sissent.	
	I	shl, wl instruct,	J' <sup>19</sup> instruire ai <sup>5</sup> .	J' <sup>19</sup> instruire ai <sup>5</sup> .	
	Thou		Tu instruire as <sup>21</sup> .	Tu instruire as <sup>21</sup> .	
	He		Il instruire a.	Il instruire a.	
	We	be instructing.	Nous instruire ons.	Nous instruire ons.	
	You		Vous instruire ez.	Vous instruire ez.	
	They		Ils instruire ont <sup>20</sup> .	Ils instruire ont <sup>20</sup> .	
	I	shd, wd instruct,	J' <sup>19</sup> instruire ais.	J' <sup>19</sup> instruire ais.	
	Thou		Tu instruire ais.	Tu instruire ais.	
	He		Il instruire ait <sup>23</sup> .	Il instruire ait <sup>23</sup> .	
	We	be instructing.	Nous instruire ions.	Nous instruire ions.	
	You		Vous instruire iez.	Vous instruire iez.	
	They		Ils instruire aient <sup>6</sup> .	Ils instruire aient <sup>6</sup> .	

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

Instructing. INSTRUI sant<sup>26</sup>. INSTRUI t<sup>23</sup>. instructed

After the same manner as INSTRUIRE, are conjugated

CONDUIRE, to conduct.	INTRODUIRE, to introduce.
RECONDUIRE, to take or lead back.	LUIRE, } to shine, part. LUI, RELUI.
CONSTRUIRE, to construct.	RELUIRE, }
CUIRE, to do victuals, to cook.*	NUIRE, to hurt, to injure, part. NUI.
RECUIRE, to do or cook over again.	PRODUIRE, to produce.
DÉDUIRE, to deduct.	RÉDUIRE, to reduce, to compel.
DÉTRUIRE, to destroy.	SÉDUIRE, to seduce.
ENDUIRE, to daub.	TRADUIRE, to translate.

\* To cook, followed by an object, is generally expressed by *Faire cuire*; as, I cook, or am cooking meat, fish, &c. Je fais cuire de la viande, du poisson, &c.

## INFINITIVE

To READ.

\*LI *re*.

## IMPERATIVE.

read. LI *s*, *sing*.  
 Let us read.

LI *sez*, *plur*.  
 LI *sons*

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.  
 I read, or *am* reading.  
 Thou readest, *art* reading.  
 He reads, or *is* reading.  
 We } read,  
 You } are reading.  
 They }

*Je* <sup>3</sup> \*li *s*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* li *s*.  
*Il* li *t*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* li *sons*.†  
*Vous* li *sez*.  
*Ils* li *sent*<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* \*li *se*<sup>2</sup>.†  
*Tu* li *ses*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* li *se*.  
*Nous* li *sions*.  
*Vous* li *siez*.  
*Ils* li *sent*<sup>18</sup>.

Imperfect tense.  
 I }  
 Thou } was reading.  
 He }  
 We } were reading.  
 You }  
 They }

*Je* \*li *sais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* li *sais*.†  
*Il* li *sait*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* li *sions*.  
*Vous* li *siez*.  
*Ils* li *saient*<sup>6</sup>.

Perfect tense.  
 I }  
 Thou } read,  
 He } did read.  
 We }  
 You }  
 They }

*Je* lus<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* †lus.  
*Il* lut<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* lûmes.  
*Vous* lûtes.  
*Ils* lurent<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* †lusse<sup>3</sup>.  
*Tu* lusses.  
*Il* lût<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* lussions.  
*Vous* lussiez.  
*Ils* lussent<sup>18</sup>.

Future positive.  
 I }  
 Thou } shall, will read,  
 He } be reading.  
 We }  
 You }  
 They }

*Je* \*li *ai*<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* li *as*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* li *a*.  
*Nous* li *ons*.  
*Vous* li *ez*.  
*Ils* li *ont*<sup>26</sup>.

Fut. conditional.  
 I }  
 Thou } shld, wld read,  
 He } be reading.  
 We }  
 You }  
 They }

*Je* \*li *ais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* li *ais*.  
*Il* li *ait*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* li *ions*.  
*Vous* li *iez*.  
*Ils* li *aient*<sup>3</sup>.

## GERUND.

## PARTICIPLE.

reading. LI *sant*<sup>26</sup>.

Lu. Read

After the same manner as *LIRE*, are conjugated  
*ÉLIRE*, to elect.

*RELIRE*, to read again.

\* See note 4, page 2.

† See p. 14, s between two vowels.

‡ See note 2, p. 1.

INFINITIVE.

To PUT.

\*METT *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

Put.            Mets, *sing.*

METT *ez, plur.*

Let *us* put.

METT *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> put, or <i>am</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>23</sup> mets <sup>23</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> puttest, <i>art</i>	<i>Tu</i> mets.
	<i>He</i> puts, or <i>is</i>	<i>Il</i> met <sup>23</sup> .
	<i>We</i> } put,	<i>Nous</i> mett <i>ons.</i>
Imperfect tense.	<i>You</i> } are putting.	<i>Vous</i> mett <i>ez.</i>
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> mett <i>ent</i> <sup>18</sup> .
	<i>I</i> } was putting.	<i>Je</i> *mett <i>ais</i> <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> mett <i>ais.</i>
Perfect tense.	<i>He</i> } were putting.	<i>Il</i> mett <i>ait</i> <sup>25</sup> .
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> mett <i>ions.</i>
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> mett <i>iez.</i>
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> mett <i>aient</i> <sup>6</sup> .
Future positive.	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> †mis <sup>23</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> mis.
	<i>He</i> } put,	<i>Il</i> mit <sup>23</sup> .
	<i>We</i> } did put.	<i>Nous</i> mîmes.
Fut. conditional	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> mîtes.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> mirent <sup>18</sup> .
	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> *mettr <i>ai</i> <sup>3</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> mettr <i>as</i> <sup>26</sup> .
	<i>He</i> } shll, wll put,	<i>Il</i> mettr <i>a.</i>
	<i>We</i> } be putting.	<i>Nous</i> mettr <i>ons.</i>
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> mettr <i>ez.</i>
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> mettr <i>ont</i> <sup>23</sup> .
	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> *mettr <i>ais</i> <sup>6</sup> .
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> mettr <i>ais.</i>
	<i>He</i> } shd, wd put,	<i>Il</i> mettr <i>ait</i> <sup>25</sup> .
	<i>We</i> } be putting	<i>Nous</i> mettr <i>ions.</i>
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> mettr <i>iez.</i>
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> mettr <i>aient</i> <sup>6</sup> .

<i>Je</i> *mett <i>e</i> <sup>2</sup> .	put, may put.
<i>Tu</i> mett <i>es</i> <sup>26</sup> .	
<i>Il</i> mett <i>e.</i>	
<i>Nous</i> mett <i>ions.</i>	
<i>Vous</i> mett <i>iez.</i>	
<i>Ils</i> mett <i>ent</i> <sup>18</sup> .	

<i>Je</i> †misse <sup>2</sup> .	put, might put.
<i>Tu</i> misses.	
<i>Il</i> mît <sup>26</sup> .	
<i>Nous</i> missions.	
<i>Vous</i> missiez.	
<i>Ils</i> missent <sup>18</sup> .	

GERUND.

putting.

METT *ant*<sup>26</sup>.

PARTICIPLE.

Mis.

Put.

After the same manner as *METTRE*, are conjugated

ADMETTRE, to admit.	OMETTRE, to omit.
COMMETTRE, to commit.	PERMETTRE, to permit.
COMPROMETTRE, to compromise.	PROMETTRE, to promise.
DÉMETTRE, to put out of joint.	REMETTRE, to put again, to deliver up.
se DÉMETTRE, to abdicate.	SOUMETTRE, to submit.
s'ENTREMETTRE, to intermeddle.	TRANSMETTRE, to transmit.

\* Sound only one *t*.

† See note 4, page 2



## INFINITIVE.

To GRIND.

MOUD *re*.

## IMPERATIVE.

grind.                      MOUD *s, sing.*                      moulez, *plur.*  
 Let us grind.                      moulons.

## INDICATIVE.

*Present tense.*  
 I grind, or am grinding.                      Je <sup>14</sup>moud *s*<sup>26</sup>.  
 Thou grindest, art grinding.                      Tu moud *s*.  
 He grinds, or is grinding.                      Il moud<sup>25</sup>.  
 We } grind,                      Nous moulons.  
 You } are grinding.                      Vous moulez.  
 They }                      Ils moulent<sup>18</sup>.

*Imperfect tense.*  
 I }                      Je <sup>14</sup>moulais<sup>6</sup>.  
 Thou } was grinding.                      Tu moulais.  
 He }                      Il moulait<sup>26</sup>.  
 We }                      Nous moulions.  
 You } were grinding.                      Vous mouliez.  
 They }                      Ils moulaient<sup>6</sup>.

*Perfect tense.*  
 I }                      Je <sup>14</sup>moulus<sup>23</sup>.  
 Thou }                      Tu moulus.\*  
 He } ground,                      Il moulut<sup>26</sup>.  
 We } did grind.                      Nous moulûmes.  
 You }                      Vous moulûtes.  
 They }                      Ils moulurent<sup>18</sup>.

*Future positive.*  
 I }                      Je <sup>14</sup>moudr *ai*<sup>5</sup>.  
 Thou }                      Tu moudr *as*<sup>26</sup>.  
 He } shall, will grind,                      Il moudr *a*.  
 We } be grinding.                      Nous moudr *ons*.  
 You }                      Vous moudr *ez*.  
 They }                      Ils moudr *ont*<sup>26</sup>.

*Fut. conditional.*  
 I }                      Je <sup>14</sup>moudr *ais*<sup>6</sup>.  
 Thou }                      Tu moudr *ais*.  
 He } shd, wd grind,                      Il moudr *ait*<sup>26</sup>.  
 We } be grinding.                      Nous moudr *ions*.  
 You }                      Vous moudr *iez*.  
 They }                      Ils moudr *aient*<sup>6</sup>.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*grind, may grind.*  
 Je <sup>14</sup>moule<sup>2</sup>.  
 Tu moulés<sup>26</sup>.  
 Il moule.  
 Nous moulions.  
 Vous mouliez.  
 Ils moulent<sup>18</sup>.

*ground, might grind.*  
 Je <sup>14</sup>moulusse<sup>2</sup>.  
 Tu moulusses.  
 Il moulût<sup>26</sup>.  
 Nous moulussions.  
 Vous moulussiez.  
 Ils moulussent<sup>18</sup>.

## GERUND.

grinding.

moulant<sup>26</sup>.

## PARTICIPLE.

moulu.                      ground.

*After the same manner as MOUDRE, are conjugated*

ÉMOUDRE, to grind, to whet.

RÉMOUDRE, to grind again.

\* See note 2, page 1

INFINITIVE.

To PLEASE.

PLAI *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

please. PLAII *s, sing.*

PLAI *sez, plur.*

Let *us* please.

PLAI *sons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.  
*I* please.  
*Thou* pleasest.  
*He* pleases.  
*We* }  
*You* } please.  
*They* }

*Je* plai *s*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* plai *s*.  
*Il* plai<sup>t</sup> *s*.  
*Nous* plai *sons*.  
*Vous* plai *sez*.<sup>\*</sup>  
*Ils* plai *sent*<sup>18</sup>

*Je* plai *se*<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* plai *ses*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* plai *se*.  
*Nous* plai *sions*.  
*Vous* plai *siez*.  
*Ils* plai *sent*<sup>18</sup>.

please, *may* please.

Imperfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } did please.  
*We* }  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* plai *sais*<sup>9</sup>.  
*Tu* plai *sais*.<sup>\*</sup>  
*Il* plai *sait*<sup>23</sup>.  
*Nous* plai *sions*.  
*Vous* plai *siez*.  
*Ils* plai *saient*<sup>6</sup>.

Perfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } pleased,  
*We* } did please.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* †plai<sup>s</sup>.  
*Tu* plus.  
*Il* plut<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* plûmes.  
*Vous* plûtes.  
*Ils* plurent<sup>19</sup>.

*Je* †plusse<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* plusses.  
*Il* plût<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* plussions.  
*Vous* plussiez.  
*Ils* plussent<sup>18</sup>.

pleased, *might* please.

Future positive.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shall,  
*We* } will please.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* plair *ai*<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* plair *as*<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* plair *a*.  
*Nous* plair *ons*.  
*Vous* plair *ez*.  
*Ils* plair *ont*<sup>26</sup>.

Future conditional.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } should,  
*We* } would please.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je* plair *ais*<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* plair *ais*.  
*Il* plair *ait*.<sup>26</sup>  
*Nous* plair *ions*.  
*Vous* plair *iez*.  
*Ils* plair *aient*<sup>6</sup>.

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

pleasing.

PLAI *sant*<sup>26</sup>.

PLU.

pleased

*After the same manner as PLAIRE, are conjugated*

COMPLAIRE, to comply.

*se PLAIRE, to delight in.*

DÉPLAIRE, to displease.

*se TAIRE, to hold one's tongue, to be silent.*

\* See *s* between two vowels, page 14.

† See note 2, page 1.

## INFINITIVE.

TO RESOLVE, TO DISSOLVE.

RÉSOUTD *re*.

## IMPERATIVE.

resolve.      résous, *sing.*  
 let us resolve.

résolvez, *plur.*  
 résolvons.

## INDICATIVE.

*Present tense.*  
 I resolve, or am resolving.  
 Thou resolvest, art resolving.  
 He resolves, or is resolving.  
 We } resolve,  
 You } are resolving.  
 They }

*Imperfect tense.*  
 I }  
 Thou } was resolving.  
 He }  
 We }  
 You } were resolving.  
 They }

*Perfect tense.*  
 I }  
 Thou }  
 He } resolved,  
 We } did resolve.  
 You }  
 They }

*Future positive.*  
 I }  
 Thou }  
 He } shll, wll resolve,  
 We } be resolving.  
 You }  
 They }

*Fut. conditional.*  
 I }  
 Thou }  
 He } shd, wld resolve,  
 We } be resolving.  
 You }  
 They }

Je <sup>14</sup>résous<sup>25</sup>.  
 Tu résous.  
 Il résout<sup>26</sup>.  
 Nous résolvons.  
 Vous résolvez.  
 Ils résolvent<sup>18</sup>.

Je résolvais<sup>6</sup>.  
 Tu résolvais.  
 Il résolvait.  
 Nous résolvions.  
 Vous résolviez.  
 Ils résolvaient<sup>9</sup>.

Je résolus<sup>26</sup>.  
 Tu résolus.  
 Il résolut<sup>26</sup>.  
 Nous résolûmes.  
 Vous résolûtes.  
 Ils résolurent<sup>12</sup>.

Je <sup>14</sup>résoudr ai<sup>5</sup>.  
 Tu résoudr as<sup>26</sup>.  
 Il résoudr a.  
 Nous résoudr ons.  
 Vous résoudr ez.  
 Ils résoudr ont<sup>26</sup>.

Je <sup>14</sup>résoudr ais<sup>6</sup>.  
 Tu résoudr ais.  
 Il résoudr ait<sup>26</sup>.  
 Nous résoudr ions.  
 Vous résoudr iez.  
 Ils résoudr aient<sup>6</sup>.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je résolve<sup>2</sup>.  
 Tu résolves<sup>20</sup>.  
 Il résolve.  
 Nous résolvions.  
 Vous résolviez.  
 Ils résolvent<sup>18</sup>.

Je résolusse<sup>2</sup>.  
 Tu résolusses.  
 Il résolût<sup>26</sup>.  
 Nous résolussions.  
 Vous résolussiez.  
 Ils résolussent<sup>12</sup>.

resolve, may resolve.

resolved, might resolve.

## GERUND.

resolving. }  
 dissolving. } résolvant<sup>25</sup>.

## PARTICIPLE.

résolu. resolved, determined.  
 résous. melted, dissolved.\*

After the same manner as RÉSOUTDRE, are conjugated

ABSOUTDRE, to absolve, part. ABSOUS, absolved; and DISSOUDRE, to dissolve, part. DISSOUS, dissolved.

N. B. These two verbs have no perfect tense.

\* As, Le soleil a resous le brouillard en pluie. The sun has melted the mist into rain.

INFINITIVE.

To LAUGH.

RI *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

Laugh. RI *s*, *sing*.

RI *ez*, *plur*.

Let us laugh.

RI *ons*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.  
I laugh, or am laughing.  
Thou laughest, art laughing.  
He laughs, or is laughing.  
We } laugh,  
You } are laughing.  
They }

*Je*<sup>3</sup> \*ri s<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* ri s.  
*Il* ri t<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* ri ons.  
*Vous* ri ez.  
*Ils* ri ent<sup>18</sup>.

*Je* \*ri e<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* ri es<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* ri e.  
*Nous* rions<sup>4</sup>.  
*Vous* ryez.  
*Ils* ri ent<sup>12</sup>.

Imperfect tense.  
I } was laughing.  
Thou }  
He }  
We }  
You } were laughing.  
They }

*Je* \*ri ais<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* ri ais.  
*Il* ri ait<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* rions<sup>4</sup>.  
*Vous* ryez.  
*Ils* ri aient<sup>9</sup>.

Perfect tense.  
I }  
Thou }  
He } laughed,  
We } did laugh.  
You }  
They }

*Je* \*ri s<sup>26</sup>.  
*Tu* ris.  
*Il* ri t<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* rî mes.  
*Vous* rî tes.  
*Ils* rî rent<sup>13</sup>.

*Je* \*ri sse<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* ri sses.  
*Il* ri t<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* ri ssions.  
*Vous* ri ssiez.  
*Ils* ri ssent<sup>18</sup>.

Future positive.  
I }  
Thou }  
He } shll, will laugh,  
We } be laughing.  
You }  
They }

*Je* \*rir ai<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* rir as<sup>26</sup>.  
*Il* rir a.  
*Nous* rir ons.  
*Vous* rir ez.  
*Ils* rir ont<sup>26</sup>.

Fut. conditional.  
I }  
Thou }  
He } shd, wld laugh,  
We } be laughing.  
You }  
They }

*Je* \*rir ais<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* rir ais.  
*Il* rir ait<sup>26</sup>.  
*Nous* rir ions.  
*Vous* rir iez.  
*Ils* rir aient<sup>6</sup>.

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

Laughing. RI ant<sup>26</sup>.

RI. Laughed.

After the same manner as RIRE, are conjugated

SOURIRE, to smile.

FRIRE, to fry, part. FRIT, fried.

N.B. FRIRE is used only in the 1st, 2d, and 3d person of the present of the indicative, *je fris*, *tu fris*, *il frit*; in the future, *je frirai*, *tu friras*, &c. and in the conditional, *je frirais*, *tu frirais*, &c.; the other tenses are formed with the verb FAIRE, and the infinitive of this verb; so, We fry, *nous faisons frire*; you fry, *vous faites frire*; they fry, *ils font frire*.

Fry this fish, these eggs, that meat. *Faites frire ce poisson, ces œufs, cette viande.*

\* See note 4, page 2



## INFINITIVE.

To FOLLOW.

SUIV *re*.

## IMPERATIVE.

follow.

suis, *sing.*SUIV *ez*, *plur.*Let *us* follow.SUIV *ons*.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.  
*I* follow, or *am* following.  
*Thou* followest, art following.  
*He* follows, or *is* following.  
*We* } follow,  
*You* } are following.  
*They* }

*Je*<sup>s</sup> suis<sup>3s</sup>.  
*Tu*<sup>2s</sup> suis.  
*Il* suit<sup>2s</sup>.  
*Nous* suiv *ons*.  
*Vous* suiv *ez*.  
*Ils* suiv *ent*<sup>1s</sup>.

*Je* suiv *e*<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* suiv *es*<sup>2s</sup>.  
*Il* suiv *e*.  
*Nous* suiv *ions*.  
*Vous* suiv *iez*.  
*Ils* suiv *ent*<sup>1s</sup>.

follow, may follow

Imperfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* } was following.  
*He* }  
*We* }  
*You* } were following.  
*They* }

*Je*<sup>2s</sup> suiv *ais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* suiv *ais*.  
*Il* suiv *ait*<sup>2s</sup>.  
*Nous* suiv *ions*.  
*Vous* suiv *iez*.  
*Ils* suiv *aient*<sup>6</sup>.

Perfect tense.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } followed,  
*We* } did follow.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je*<sup>2s</sup> suiv *is*<sup>2s</sup>.  
*Tu* suiv *is*.  
*Il* suiv *it*<sup>2s</sup>.  
*Nous* suiv *îmes*.  
*Vous* suiv *îtes*.  
*Ils* suiv *irent*<sup>1s</sup>.

*Je* suiv *isse*<sup>2</sup>.  
*Tu* suiv *isses*.  
*Il* suiv *ût*<sup>2s</sup>.  
*Nous* suiv *issions*.  
*Vous* suiv *issiez*.  
*Ils* suiv *issent*<sup>1s</sup>.

followed, might follow.

Future positive.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shall, will follow,  
*We* } be following.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je*<sup>2s</sup> suivr *ai*<sup>5</sup>.  
*Tu* suivr *as*<sup>2s</sup>.  
*Il* suivr *a*.  
*Nous* suivr *ons*.  
*Vous* suivr *ez*.  
*Ils* suivr *ont*<sup>2s</sup>.

Fut. conditional.  
*I* }  
*Thou* }  
*He* } shd, wd follow,  
*We* } be following.  
*You* }  
*They* }

*Je*<sup>2s</sup> suivr *ais*<sup>6</sup>.  
*Tu* suivr *ais*.  
*Il* suivr *ait*<sup>2s</sup>.  
*Nous* suivr *ions*.  
*Vous* suivr *iez*.  
*Ils* suivr *aient*<sup>5</sup>.

## GERUND.

## PARTICIPLE.

following.

SUIV *ant*<sup>2s</sup>.SUIV *i*. followed

After the same manner as *SUIVRE*, are conjugated

*S'ENSUIVRE*, to follow from, i. e. a consequence.

*POURSUIVRE*, to pursue.

INFINITIVE.

TO MILK.

TRAIR *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

milk.                      TRAIR *s, sing.*  
let us milk.

trayez, *plur.*  
trayons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> milk, or am milking.	<i>Je</i> <sup>3</sup> trair <i>s</i> <sup>3</sup> .	<i>Je</i> trair <i>e</i> <sup>2</sup> .	milk, may milk.
	<i>Thou</i> milkest, art milking.	<i>Tu</i> trair <i>s</i> .	<i>Tu</i> trair <i>es</i> <sup>23</sup> .	
	<i>He</i> milks, or is milking.	<i>Il</i> trair <i>t</i> <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Il</i> trair <i>e</i> .	
Imperfect tense.	<i>We</i> } milk,	<i>Nous</i> trayons <sup>4</sup> .	<i>Nous</i> trayions.	
	<i>You</i> } are milking.	<i>Vous</i> trayez.	<i>Vous</i> trayiez.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> trair <i>ent</i> <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> trair <i>ent</i> <sup>19</sup> .	
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } was milking.	<i>Je</i> <sup>4</sup> trayais <sup>6</sup> .		milked, might milk.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> trayais.		
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> trayait <sup>26</sup> .		
Future tense.	<i>We</i> } were milking.	<i>Nous</i> trayions.		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> trayiez.		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> trayaient <sup>6</sup> .		
Future positive.	<i>I</i> } shall, will milk,	<i>Je</i> trair <i>ai</i> <sup>5</sup> .	<i>Je</i> tirasse <sup>2</sup> .	
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> trair <i>as</i> <sup>23</sup> .	<i>Tu</i> tirasses.	
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> trair <i>a</i> .	<i>Il</i> tirât <sup>26</sup> .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>We</i> } be milking.	<i>Nous</i> trair <i>ons</i> .	<i>Nous</i> tirassions.	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> trair <i>ez</i> .	<i>Vous</i> tirassiez.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> trair <i>ont</i> <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> tirassent <sup>18</sup> .	
	<i>I</i> } shld, wld milk,	<i>Je</i> trair <i>ais</i> <sup>6</sup> .		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> trair <i>ais</i> .		
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> trair <i>ait</i> <sup>26</sup> .		
	<i>We</i> } be milking.	<i>Nous</i> trair <i>ions</i> .		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> trair <i>iez</i> .		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> trair <i>aient</i> <sup>6</sup> .		

GERUND.

milking.                      Trayant<sup>26</sup>.

PARTICIPLE.

TRAIR *t*<sup>26</sup>.                      Milked.

After the same manner as *TRAIRE*, are conjugated

ABSTRAIRE, to abstract.

RENTRAIRE, to finedraw.

DISTRAIRE, to disturb one's attention.

SOUSTRAIRE, to subtract.

EXTRAIRE, to extract.      N. B. These verbs have no perfect tense.

\* *TRAIRE* having no perfect tense, we supply its place with the perfect of the verb *TIRER*, which may be used in the same sense as *TRAIRE*; example,

*I* milked my cows, my goats, &c.

*Je* tirai mes vaches, mes chèvres, &c.

## INFINITIVE.

To VANQUISH.

VAINC *re*.

## IMPERATIVE.

vanquish. VAINC *s, sing.* vainquez, *plur.*  
 Let us vanquish. vainquons.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> vanquish, or <i>am</i>	<i>Je</i> <sup>s</sup> vainc <i>s</i> <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Je</i> vainque †	<i>may</i> vanquish.
	<i>Thou</i> vanquishest, <i>art</i>	<i>Tu</i> <sup>19</sup> vainc <i>s</i> .	<i>Tu</i> vainques <sup>26</sup> .	
	<i>He</i> vanquishes, or <i>is</i>	<i>Il</i> vainc *	<i>Il</i> vainque.	
	<i>We</i> } vanquish,	<i>Nous</i> vainquons.	<i>Nous</i> vainquions.	
	<i>You</i> } are vanquishing.	<i>Vous</i> vainquez. †	<i>Vous</i> vainquiez.	
Imperfect tense.	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> vainquent <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> vainquent <sup>18</sup> .	
	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> <sup>19</sup> vainquais <sup>6</sup> .		
	<i>Thou</i> } was vanquishing.	<i>Tu</i> vainquais. †		
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> vainquait <sup>26</sup> .		
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> vainquions.		
Perfect tense.	<i>You</i> } were vanquishing.	<i>Vous</i> vainquiez.		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> vainquaient <sup>6</sup> .		
	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> <sup>19</sup> vainquis <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Je</i> vainquisse <sup>2</sup> .	
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> vainquis. †	<i>Tu</i> vainquisses.	
	<i>He</i> } vanquished,	<i>Il</i> vainquit <sup>26</sup> .	<i>Il</i> vainquit <sup>26</sup> .	
Future tense.	<i>We</i> } did vanquish.	<i>Nous</i> vainquîmes.	<i>Nous</i> vainquissions.	<i>might</i> vanquish.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> vainquîtes.	<i>Vous</i> vainquissiez.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> vainquirent <sup>18</sup> .	<i>Ils</i> vainquissent <sup>18</sup> .	
	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> <sup>19</sup> vaincr ai <sup>5</sup> .		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> vaincr as <sup>26</sup> .		
Future positive.	<i>He</i> } shll, wll vanquish,	<i>Il</i> vaincr a.		
	<i>We</i> } be vanquishing.	<i>Nous</i> vaincr ons.		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> vaincr ez.		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> vaincr ont <sup>26</sup> .		
	<i>I</i> }	<i>Je</i> <sup>19</sup> vaincr ais <sup>6</sup> .		
Fut. conditional.	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> vaincr ais.		
	<i>He</i> } shd, wd vanquish,	<i>Il</i> vaincr ait <sup>26</sup> .		
	<i>We</i> } be vanquishing.	<i>Nous</i> vaincr ions.		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> vaincr iez.		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> vaincr aient <sup>6</sup> .		

## GERUND.

## PARTICIPLE.

vanquishing. vainquant<sup>26</sup>. vaincu. vanquished.

*After the same manner as VAINCRE, is conjugated*

CONVAINCRE, to convince.

\* The 1st, 2d, and 3d person singular of the present of the indicative, are not much used.

† See *qu*, page 13.

INFINITIVE.

To live, to have Life.\* VIV *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

Live. VIS, *sing.* VIV *ez, plur*  
Let us live. VIV *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

Present tense.  
I live. Je<sup>3</sup> †vis<sup>26</sup>.  
Thou livest. Tu vis.  
He lives. Il vit<sup>26</sup>.  
We } Nous viv *ons.*  
You } live. Vous viv *ez.*  
They } Ils viv *ent*<sup>18</sup>.

Imperfect tense.  
I } Je †viv *ais*<sup>6</sup>.  
Thou } Tu viv *ais.*  
He } Il viv *ait*<sup>26</sup>.  
We } did live. Nous viv *ions.*  
You } Vous viv *iez.*  
They } Ils viv *aient*<sup>6</sup>.

Perfect tense.  
I } Je vécus.†  
Thou } Tu vécus.  
He } lived, Il vécut<sup>26</sup>.  
We } did live. Nous vécûmes.  
You } Vous vécûtes.  
They } Ils vécurent<sup>18</sup>.

Future positive.  
I } Je †vivr *ai*<sup>3</sup>.  
Thou } Tu vivr *as*<sup>26</sup>.  
He } shall, Il vivr *a.*  
We } will live. Nous vivr *ons.*  
You } Vous vivr *ez.*  
They } Ils vivr *ont*<sup>26</sup>.

Fut. conditional.  
I } Je †vivr *ais*<sup>6</sup>.  
Thou } Tu vivr *ais.*  
He } should, Il vivr *ait*<sup>26</sup>.  
We } wld live. Nous vivr *ions.*  
You } Vous vivr *iez.*  
They } Ils vivr *aient*<sup>6</sup>.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

live, may live.  
Je viv *e*<sup>2</sup>.  
Tu viv *es*<sup>26</sup>.  
Il viv *e.*  
Nous viv *ions.*  
Vous viv *iez.*  
Ils viv *ent*<sup>18</sup>.

lived, might live.  
Je vécusse<sup>2</sup>.  
Tu vécusses.  
Il vécût<sup>26</sup>.  
Nous vécussions.  
Vous vécussiez.  
Ils vécussent<sup>18</sup>.

GERUND.

Living. VIV *ant*<sup>26</sup>.

PARTICIPLE.

vécu. Lived.

After the same manner as *VIVRE*, are conjugated

REVIVRE, to revive, to come to life again. SURVIVRE, to survive, to outlive

\* To LIVE, meaning to dwell, is expressed by *demeurer* ; as,  
We live in London, in town, in the country.

Nous demeurons à Londres, à la vil e, à la campagne.

† See note 4, page 2.

‡ See note 2, page 1.





A TABLE shewing, in one point of view, how to conjugate all the verbs in RE, both regular and irregular.\*

ATTEND re, <i>attendant, attendant.</i>					BOIRE ai, <i>boire, boire.</i>					CROIRE ai, <i>croire, croire.</i>					ECRIRE ai, <i>écrire, écrire.</i>					FAIRE ai, <i>faire, faire.</i>					LIRE ai, <i>lire, lire.</i>					PLAIRE ai, <i>plaire, plaire.</i>					SUIVRE ai, <i>suivre, suivre.</i>				
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.	GER.	PART.	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.	GER.	PART.	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.	GER.	PART.	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.	GER.	PART.	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.	GER.	PART.	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.	GER.	PART.	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.	GER.	PART.					
J' attends	s, attends	e, attende			J' bois	s, boive	e, boive			J' crois	s, croie	e, croie			J' écris	s, écrive	e, écrive			J' fais	s, fasse	e, fasse			J' lis	s, lise	e, lise			J' suis	s, suive	e, suive							
Nous attendons	ons, attendent	ions, attendent			Nous buvons	ons, boivent	ions, boivent			Nous croyons	ons, croient	ions, croient			Nous faisons	ons, font	ions, font			Nous faisons	ons, font	ions, font			Nous faisons	ons, font	ions, font			Nous faisons	ons, font	ions, font							
Ils attendent	ent, attendent	ent, attendent			Ils boivent	ent, boivent	ent, boivent			Ils croient	ent, croient	ent, croient			Ils font	ent, font	ent, font			Ils font	ent, font	ent, font			Ils font	ent, font	ent, font			Ils font	ent, font	ent, font							
J' attends	ais, attends	ais, attende			J' bois	ais, boive	ais, boive			J' crois	ais, croie	ais, croie			J' écris	ais, écrive	ais, écrive			J' fais	ais, fasse	ais, fasse			J' lis	ais, lise	ais, lise			J' suis	ais, suive	ais, suive							
Nous attendons	ons, attendent	ions, attendent			Nous buvons	ons, boivent	ions, boivent			Nous croyons	ons, croient	ions, croient			Nous faisons	ons, font	ions, font			Nous faisons	ons, font	ions, font			Nous faisons	ons, font	ions, font			Nous faisons	ons, font	ions, font							
Ils attendent	ent, attendent	ent, attendent			Ils boivent	ent, boivent	ent, boivent			Ils croient	ent, croient	ent, croient			Ils font	ent, font	ent, font			Ils font	ent, font	ent, font			Ils font	ent, font	ent, font			Ils font	ent, font	ent, font							
J' attends	is, attends	is, attende			J' bois	is, boive	is, boive			J' crois	is, croie	is, croie			J' écris	is, écrive	is, écrive			J' fais	is, fasse	is, fasse			J' lis	is, lise	is, lise			J' suis	is, suive	is, suive							
Nous attendons	ons, attendent	ions, attendent			Nous buvons	ons, boivent	ions, boivent			Nous croyons	ons, croient	ions, croient			Nous faisons	ons, font	ions, font			Nous faisons	ons, font	ions, font			Nous faisons	ons, font	ions, font			Nous faisons	ons, font	ions, font							
Ils attendent	ent, attendent	ent, attendent			Ils boivent	ent, boivent	ent, boivent			Ils croient	ent, croient	ent, croient			Ils font	ent, font	ent, font			Ils font	ent, font	ent, font			Ils font	ent, font	ent, font			Ils font	ent, font	ent, font							
Battre, and its compounds; Fendre, Défendre, Descendre, Condescendre, Fondre, Confondre, se Morfondre, Rompre, Corrompre, Interrompre, Pondre, Répondre, Correspondre, Répandre, Mordre, Demordre, Tendre, Etendre, Entendre, Prétendre, Rendre, Pendre, Dépendre, Suspendre, Vendre, Perdre, Tordre, Tondre.					Conjugate in the same manner Reboire.										Inscrire, Prescrire, Proscrire, Récrire, Souscrire, Transcrire.					Contrefaire, Défaire, se Défaire, Refaire, Redéfaire, Satisfaire, Surfaire.					Like LIRE conjugate Elire, Relire.					Complaire, Déplaire, se Plaire, se Taire.					s'Ensuivre, Poursuivre.				
APPREND re, <i>apprenant, appris.</i>					CONNAIT re, <i>onnaissant, connu.</i>					DI re, <i>sunt, t.</i>					FEIND re, <i>feignant, feint.</i>					INSTRUI re, <i>sant, t.</i>					METT re, <i>unt, mis.</i>					RI re, <i>ant, ri.</i>					VIV re, <i>ant, vécu.</i>				
J' apprends	s, apprends	e, apprenne			J' connais	s, connaisse	e, connaisse			J' dis	s, dise	e, dise			J' feins	s, feigne	e, feigne			J' instruis	s, instruisse	e, instruisse			J' mets	s, mette	e, mette			J' ris	s, rie	e, rie							
Nous apprenons	ons, apprennent	ions, apprennent			Nous connaissons	ons, connaissent	ions, connaissent			Nous disons	ons, disent	ions, disent			Nous feignons	ons, feignent	ions, feignent			Nous instruisons	ons, instruisent	ions, instruisent			Nous mettons	ons, mettent	ions, mettent			Nous rions	ons, rient	ions, rient							
Ils apprennent	ent, apprennent	ent, apprennent			Ils connaissent	ent, connaissent	ent, connaissent			Ils disent	ent, disent	ent, disent			Ils feignent	ent, feignent	ent, feignent			Ils instruisent	ent, instruisent	ent, instruisent			Ils mettent	ent, mettent	ent, mettent			Ils rient	ent, rient	ent, rient							
J' apprenais	ais, apprenais	ais, apprenne			J' connaissais	ais, connaissais	ais, connaissais			J' disais	ais, disais	ais, disais			J' feignais	ais, feignais	ais, feignais			J' instruisais	ais, instruisais	ais, instruisais			J' mettais	ais, mettais	ais, mettais			J' risais	ais, risais	ais, risais							
Nous apprenions	ons, apprenions	ions, apprenions			Nous connaissions	ons, connaissions	ions, connaissions			Nous disions	ons, disions	ions, disions			Nous feignions	ons, feignions	ions, feignions			Nous instruisions	ons, instruisions	ions, instruisions			Nous mettions	ons, mettions	ions, mettions			Nous rions	ons, rions	ions, rions							
Ils apprenaient	ent, apprenaient	ent, apprenaient			Ils connaissaient	ent, connaissaient	ent, connaissaient			Ils disaient	ent, disaient	ent, disaient			Ils feignaient	ent, feignaient	ent, feignaient			Ils instruisaient	ent, instruisaient	ent, instruisaient			Ils mettaient	ent, mettaient	ent, mettaient			Ils riaient	ent, riaient	ent, riaient							
J' appris	s, appris	e, apprenne			J' connus	s, connus	e, connus			J' disais	s, disais	e, disais			J' feignis	s, feignis	e, feignis			J' instruis	s, instruis	e, instruis			J' mis	s, mis	e, mis			J' ris	s, ris	e, ris							
Nous apprîmes	ons, apprîmes	ions, apprîmes			Nous connus	ons, connus	ions, connus			Nous disions	ons, disions	ions, disions			Nous feignîmes	ons, feignîmes	ions, feignîmes			Nous instruisîmes	ons, instruisîmes	ions, instruisîmes			Nous mîmes	ons, mîmes	ions, mîmes			Nous rîmes	ons, rîmes	ions, rîmes							
Ils apprirent	ent, apprirent	ent, apprirent			Ils connurent	ent, connurent	ent, connurent			Ils dirent	ent, dirent	ent, dirent			Ils feignirent	ent, feignirent	ent, feignirent			Ils instruisirent	ent, instruisirent	ent, instruisirent			Ils mirent	ent, mirent	ent, mirent			Ils rirent	ent, rirent	ent, rirent							
J' apprends	ais, apprends	ais, apprenne			J' connais	ais, connais	ais, connais			J' dis	ais, dis	ais, dis			J' feins	ais, feins	ais, feins			J' instruis	ais, instruis	ais, instruis			J' mets	ais, mets	ais, mets			J' ris	ais, ris	ais, ris							
Nous apprenons	ons, apprennent	ions, apprennent			Nous connaissons	ons, connaissent	ions, connaissent			Nous disons	ons, disent	ions, disent			Nous feignons	ons, feignent	ions, feignent			Nous instruisons	ons, instruisent	ions, instruisent			Nous mettons	ons, mettent	ions, mettent			Nous rions	ons, rient	ions, rient							
Ils apprennent	ent, apprennent	ent, apprennent			Ils connaissent	ent, connaissent	ent, connaissent			Ils disent	ent, disent	ent, disent			Ils feignent	ent, feignent	ent, feignent			Ils instruisent	ent, instruisent	ent, instruisent			Ils mettent	ent, mettent	ent, mettent			Ils rient	ent, rient	ent, rient							
J' apprenais	ais, apprenais	ais, apprenne			J' connaissais	ais, connaissais	ais, connaissais			J' disais	ais, disais	ais, disais			J' feignais	ais, feignais	ais, feignais			J' instruisais	ais, instruisais	ais, instruisais			J' mettais	ais, mettais	ais, mettais			J' risais	ais, risais	ais, risais							
Nous apprenions	ons, apprenions	ions, apprenions			Nous connaissions	ons, connaissions	ions, connaissions			Nous disions	ons, disions	ions, disions			Nous feignions	ons, feignions	ions, feignions			Nous instruisions	ons, instruisions	ions, instruisions			Nous mettions	ons, mettions	ions, mettions			Nous rions	ons, rions	ions, rions							
Ils apprenaient	ent, apprenaient	ent, apprenaient			Ils connaissaient	ent, connaissaient	ent, connaissaient			Ils disaient	ent, disaient	ent, disaient			Ils feignaient	ent, feignaient	ent, feignaient			Ils instruisaient	ent, instruisaient	ent, instruisaient			Ils mettaient	ent, mettaient	ent, mettaient			Ils riaient	ent, riaient	ent, riaient							
Like Apprendre are conjugated					Conjugate under Connaître, p. 152.										Conjugate under Dire, p. 155.					Conjugate under Instruire, p. 159.					Conjugate under Mettre, p. 161.					Conjugate under Rire, p. 163.					Conjugate under Vivre, p. 165.				
Desapprendre, Prendre, Comprendre, Entreprendre, se Meprendre, Reprendre, Surprendre.																				Recuire, Lait, Reluire, Nuire. (See Instruire page 159.)					Permettre, Promettre, Remettre, Soumettre, Transmettre.														

The verbs CONCLURE, to conclude ; COUDRE, to sew  
alphabetical order amongst the verbs in RE

MOUDRE, to grind; RESOUDRE, to resolve; TRAIRE, to milk; VAINCRE, to vanquish; which are not frequently used, have been left out of this table, in order to render it more convenient; they may be seen in their  
 † IMPERATIVE the same as the indicative

Some verbs which have only the *third person singular*, and sometimes the *third person plural* of their tenses in use, are called *impersonal*, though they would perhaps be more properly called *monopersonal*, i. e. verbs of *one person*; the most frequently used are the following:

## INFINITIVE.

TONNER. ÉCLAIRER. PLEUVOIR. GELER. NEIGER. GRÊLER. VENTER.  
To Thunder. To Lighten. To Rain. To Freeze. To Snow. To Hail. To Blow.

## INDICATIVE.

*Present tense.*  
*It* thunders. *Il* tonne.  
*It* lightens. *Il* éclaire.  
*It* rains. *Il* pleut.  
*It* freezes. *Il* gèle.  
*It* snows. *Il* neige.  
*It* hails. *Il* grêle.  
The wind blows. *Il* vente.  
*Imperfect tense.*  
*It did* thunder. *Il* tonnait.  
*It did* lighten. *Il* éclairait.  
*It did* rain. *Il* pleuvait.  
*It did* freeze. *Il* gelait.  
*It did* snow. *Il* neigeait.  
*It did* hail. *Il* grêlait.  
The wind *did* blow. *Il* ventait.  
*Perfect tense.*  
*It* thundered. *Il* tonna.  
*It* lightened. *Il* éclaira.  
*It* rained. *Il* plut.  
*It* froze. *Il* gela.  
*It* snowed. *Il* neigea.  
*It* hailed. *Il* grêla.  
The wind blew. *Il* venta.  
*Future positive.*  
*It will* thunder. *Il* tonnera.  
*It will* lighten. *Il* éclairera.  
*It will* rain. *Il* pleuvra.  
*It will* freeze. *Il* gèlera.  
*It will* snow. *Il* neigera.  
*It will* hail. *Il* grêlera.  
The wind *will* blow. *Il* ventera.  
*Future conditional.*  
*It would* thunder. *Il* tonnerait.  
*It would* lighten. *Il* éclairerait.  
*It would* rain. *Il* pleuvrait.  
*It would* freeze. *Il* gèlerait.  
*It would* snow. *Il* neigerait.  
*It would* hail. *Il* grèlerait.  
The wind *would* blow. *Il* venterait.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Il* tonne.  
*Il* éclaire.  
*Il* pleuve.  
*Il* gèle.  
*Il* neige.  
*Il* grêle.  
*Il* vente.

*Il* tonnât.  
*Il* éclairât.  
*Il* plût.  
*Il* gelât.  
*Il* neigeât.  
*Il* grêlât.  
*Il* ventât.

*it may thunder, &c.*

*it might thunder, &c.*

## Interrogatively.

Tonne-t-il?  
Éclaire-t-il?  
Pleut-il?  
Gèle-t-il?  
Neige-t-il?  
Grêle-t-il?

## Negatively.

*Il ne* tonne  
*Il n'* éclaire  
*Il ne* pleut  
*Il ne* gèle  
*Il ne* neige  
*Il ne* grêle

*it does not thunder.*

## Interrogatively &amp; Negatively

Ne tonne-t-il?  
N' éclaire-t-il?  
Ne pleut-il?  
Ne gèle-t-il?  
Ne neige-t-il?  
Ne grêle-t-il?

*does it not thunder?*

INFINITIVE.

*There* BE.

Y AVOIR.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Affirmatively.*

*There* is,  
*There* are . . . . . Il *y* a.  
*There* was,  
*There* were . . . . . Il *y* avait.  
*There* was,  
*There* were . . . . . Il *y* eut.  
*There* will be . . . . . Il *y* aura.  
*There* would be . . . . . Il *y* aurait.  
*There* is not,  
*There* are not . . . . . Il *n'y* a pas.  
*There* was not,  
*There* were not . . . . . Il *n'y* avait pas.  
*There* was not,  
*There* were not . . . . . Il *n'y* eut pas.  
*There* will not be . . . . . Il *n'y* aura pas.  
*There* would not be . . . . . Il *n'y* aurait pas.

Il *y* ait.

Il *y* eût.

Il *n'y* ait pas.

Il *n'y* eût pas.

*there* may be.

*there* may not be.

*Interrogatively.*

*Is there*,  
*Are there*? . . . . . Y a-t-il?  
*Was there*,  
*Were there*? . . . . . Y avait-il?  
*Was there*,  
*Were there*? . . . . . Y eut-il?  
*Will there* be? . . . . . Y aura-t-il?  
*Would there* be? . . . . . Y aurait-il?  
*Is there* not,  
*Are there* not? . . . . . N'y a-t-il pas?  
*Was there* not,  
*Were there* not? . . . . . N'y avait-il pas?  
*Was there* not,  
*Were there* not? . . . . . N'y eut-il pas?  
*Will not there* be? . . . . . N'y aura-t-il pas?  
*Would not there* be? . . . . . N'y aurait-il pas?

COMPOUND TENSES.

*There* has been,  
*There* have been . . . . . Il *y* a eu.  
*There* had been . . . . . Il *y* avait eu.  
*There* had been . . . . . Il *y* eut eu.  
*There* will have been. Il *y* aura eu.  
*There* wd have been. Il *y* aurait eu.

Il *y* ait eu.

Il *y* eût eu.

*There* has not been,  
*There* have not been. Il *n'y* a pas eu.

*Has there* been? Y a-t-il eu? *Has not there* been? N'y a-t-il pas eu?



## MUST.

## FALLOIR.

The verb **MUST** is conjugated through its *different persons*; but its representative **FALLOIR** has only the *third PERSON singular* of *each tense*, with *Il* for nominative; then the *nominative* of **MUST** becomes the *nominative* of the *following verb* in *french*, which verb must be in the *present* of the *subjunctive* after *Il faut*, *Il faudra*; and in the *perfect*, after *Il fallait*, *Il fallut*, *Il faudrait*, as appears by the following example,

<i>I must</i>	} go out.	<i>Il faut</i>	<i>que je sorte.</i>
<i>Thou must</i>			<i>que tu sortes.</i>
<i>He must</i>			<i>qu' il sorte.</i>
<i>My brother must</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte.</i>
<i>We must</i>			<i>que nous sortions.</i>
<i>You must</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I, thou,</i> <i>he, &amp;c. should</i> go out.	<i>Il fallait</i> <i>Il fallut</i>	<i>que vous sortiez.</i>
<i>They must</i>			<i>qu' ils sortent.</i>
<i>for me</i>			<i>que je sortisse.</i>
<i>for thee</i>			<i>que tu sortisses.</i>
<i>for him</i>			<i>qu' il sortît.</i>
<i>for my brother</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I go out.</i>	<i>Il faudra</i>	<i>que mon frère sortît.</i>
<i>for us</i>			<i>que nous sortissions.</i>
<i>for you</i>			<i>que vous sortissiez.</i>
<i>for them</i>			<i>qu' ils sortissent</i>
<i>for me</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I should</i> go out.	<i>Il faudrait</i>	<i>que je sorte.</i>
<i>for thee</i>			<i>que tu sortes.</i>
<i>for him</i>			<i>qu' il sorte.</i>
<i>for my brother</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte.</i>
<i>for us</i>			<i>que nous sortions.</i>
<i>for you</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I should</i> go out.	<i>Il faudrait</i>	<i>que vous sortiez.</i>
<i>for them</i>			<i>qu' ils sortent.</i>
<i>for me</i>			<i>que je sortisse.</i>
<i>for thee</i>			<i>que tu sortisses.</i>
<i>for him</i>			<i>qu' il sortît.</i>
<i>for my brother</i>	} to go out, or that <i>I should</i> go out.	<i>Il faudrait</i>	<i>que mon frère sortît.</i>
<i>for us</i>			<i>que nous sortissions.</i>
<i>for you</i>			<i>que vous sortissiez.</i>
<i>for them</i>			<i>qu' ils sortissent.</i>

*Negatively.*

<i>I must not</i>	} go out.	<i>Il ne faut pas</i>	<i>que je sorte.</i>
<i>Thou must not</i>			<i>que tu sortes.</i>
<i>He must not</i>			<i>qu' il sorte.</i>
<i>My brother must not</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte.</i>

*Interrogatively.*

<i>Must I</i>	} go out?	<i>Faut-il</i>	<i>que je sorte?</i>
<i>Must thou</i>			<i>que tu sortes?</i>
<i>Must he</i>			<i>qu' il sorte?</i>
<i>Must my brother</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte?</i>
<i>Must I not</i>	} go out?	<i>Ne faut-il pas</i>	<i>que je sorte?</i>
<i>Must thou not</i>			<i>que tu sortes?</i>
<i>Must he not</i>			<i>qu' il sorte?</i>
<i>Must not my brother</i>			<i>que mon frère sorte?</i>

MUST HAVE, meaning *To be in need* of a thing, is expressed thus :

<i>I</i> must have	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{money, books;} \\ \text{or, } I, \text{ thou, he, \&c.} \\ \text{want money,} \\ \text{books.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> ME	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{faut de l'argent, des} \\ \text{livres.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>Thou</i> must have		<i>Il</i> TE	
<i>He</i> must have		<i>Il</i> LUI	
<i>We</i> must have		<i>Il</i> NOUS	
<i>You</i> must have		<i>Il</i> VOUS	
<i>They</i> must have		<i>Il</i> LEUR	
<i>My brother</i> must have		<i>Il</i> faut des livres à mon frère.	

<i>It was necessary</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to have money,} \\ \text{books; or, } I \text{ wanted} \\ \text{money, books.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> ME	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{fallait, or fallut de} \\ \text{l'argent, des livres.} \end{array} \right\}$
for <i>thee</i>		<i>Il</i> TE	
for <i>him</i>		<i>Il</i> LUI	
for <i>us</i>		<i>Il</i> NOUS	
for <i>you</i>		<i>Il</i> VOUS	
for <i>them</i>		<i>Il</i> LEUR	

<i>It will be necessary</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to have money,} \\ \text{books; or, } I \text{ shall} \\ \text{want money, \&c.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> ME	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{faudra de l'argent,} \\ \text{des livres.} \end{array} \right\}$
for <i>thee</i>		<i>Il</i> TE	
for <i>him</i>		<i>Il</i> LUI	
for <i>us</i>		<i>Il</i> NOUS	
for <i>you</i>		<i>Il</i> VOUS	
for <i>them</i>		<i>Il</i> LEUR	

<i>It wd be necessary</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to have money,} \\ \text{books; or, } I \text{ should} \\ \text{want money, \&c.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> ME	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{faudrait de l'argent,} \\ \text{des livres.} \end{array} \right\}$
for <i>thee</i>		<i>Il</i> TE	
for <i>him</i>		<i>Il</i> LUI	
for <i>us</i>		<i>Il</i> NOUS	
for <i>you</i>		<i>Il</i> VOUS	
for <i>them</i>		<i>Il</i> LEUR	

The impersonal verb **TARDER**, *To long*, is also conjugated in the same manner as the above ;

<i>I</i> long	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to see her,} \\ \text{to go there.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> ME	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{tarde de la voir, d'y} \\ \text{aller.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>Thou</i> longest		<i>Il</i> TE	
<i>He</i> longs		<i>Il</i> LUI	
<i>We</i> long		<i>Il</i> NOUS	
<i>You</i> long		<i>Il</i> VOUS	
<i>They</i> long		<i>Il</i> LEUR	
<i>My brother</i> longs		<i>Il</i> tarde à mon frère de la voir.	

<i>I</i> did long	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to see her,} \\ \text{to go there.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> ME	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{tardait de la voir, d'y} \\ \text{aller.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>Thou</i> didst long		<i>Il</i> TE	
<i>He</i> did long		<i>Il</i> LUI	
<i>We</i> did long		<i>Il</i> NOUS	
<i>You</i> did long		<i>Il</i> VOUS	
<i>They</i> did long		<i>Il</i> LEUR	

<i>I</i> } longed,	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to see her,} \\ \text{to go there.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> ME	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{tarda de la voir, d'y} \\ \text{aller.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>Thou</i> } did long		<i>Il</i> TE	
<i>He</i> }		<i>Il</i> LUI	

<i>I</i> } shall	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{to see her,} \\ \text{to go there.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Il</i> ME	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{tardera de la voir, d'y} \\ \text{aller.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>Thou</i> } will long		<i>Il</i> TE	
<i>He</i> }		<i>Il</i> LUI	

<i>I</i> should long to see her, &c.	<i>Il</i> ME	tarderait de la voir
--------------------------------------	--------------	----------------------

I.	1,	one.	* <i>Un, m. Une, f</i>
II.	2,	two.	<i>Deux.</i>
III.	3,	three.	<i>Trois.†</i>
IV.	4,	four.	<i>Quatre.</i>
V.	5,	five.	<i>Cinq.</i>
VI.	6,	six.	<i>Six.</i>
VII.	7,	seven.	<i>Sept.</i>
VIII.	8,	eight.	<i>Huit.</i>
IX.	9,	nine.	<i>Neuf.</i>
X.	10,	ten.	<i>Dix.</i>
XI.	11,	eleven.	<i>Onze.</i>
XII.	12,	twelve.	<i>Douze.</i>
XIII.	13,	thirteen.	<i>Treize.</i>
XIV.	14,	fourteen.	<i>Quatorze.</i>
XV.	15,	fifteen.	<i>Quinze.</i>
XVI.	16,	sixteen.	<i>Seize.</i>
XVII.	17,	seventeen.	<i>Dix-sept.</i>
XVIII.	18,	eighteen.	<i>Dix-huit.</i>
XIX.	19,	nineteen.	<i>Dix-neuf.</i>
XX.	20,	twenty.	<i>Vingt.</i>
XXI.	21,	twenty-one.	<i>Vingt et un.</i>
XXII.	22,	twenty-two.	<i>Vingt-deux.</i>
XXIII.	23,	twenty-three.	<i>Vingt-trois.</i>
XXIV.	24,	twenty-four.	<i>Vingt-quatre.</i>
XXV.	25,	twenty-five.	<i>Vingt-cinq.</i>
XXVI.	26,	twenty-six.	<i>Vingt-six.</i>
XXVII.	27,	twenty-seven.	<i>Vingt-sept.</i>
XXVIII.	28,	twenty-eight.	<i>Vingt-huit.</i>
XXIX.	29,	twenty-nine.	<i>Vingt-neuf.</i>
XXX.	30,	thirty.	<i>Trente.</i>
XXXI.	31,	thirty-one.	<i>Trente et un.</i>
XXXII.	32,	thirty-two, &c.	<i>Trente-deux, &amp;c.</i>
XXXIX.	39,	thirty-nine.	<i>Trente-neuf.</i>
XL.	40,	forty.	<i>Quarante.</i>
XLI.	41,	forty-one.	<i>Quarante et un.</i>
XLII.	42,	forty-two, &c.	<i>Quarante-deux, &amp;c.</i>
XLIX.	49,	forty-nine.	<i>Quarante-neuf.</i>
L.	50,	fifty.	<i>Cinquante.</i>
LI.	51,	fifty-one.	<i>Cinquante et un.</i>
LII.	52,	fifty-two, &c.	<i>Cinquante-deux, &amp;c.</i>
LIX.	59,	fifty-nine.	<i>Cinquante-neuf.</i>
LX.	60,	sixty.	<i>Soixante.</i>
LXI.	61,	sixty-one, &c.	<i>Soixante et un, &amp;c.</i>
LXIX.	69,	sixty-nine.	<i>Soixante-neuf.</i>
LXX.	70,	seventy.	<i>Soixante-dix.</i>
LXXI.	71,	seventy-one.	<i>Soixante-onze.</i>

\* These words are both *Articles* and *Substantives*.

*Articles* when prefixed to a noun; as, *Un homme, Une femme; Un livre, Deux livres; Trois hommes; Quatre maisons; Cinq chevaux; Dix écus, &c.*

*Substantives* when preceded by an article; as, *un Deux; un Trois; un Quatre; le Deux le Trois, le Quatre; de janvier, de février, de cœur, de pique, &c. des Trois; des Quatre, &c.*

† The chapter on pronounciation contains rules which shew how to pronounce all these words.

LXXII.	72,	seventy-two.	<i>Soixante-douze.</i>
LXXIII.	73,	seventy-three.	<i>Soixante-treize.</i>
LXXIV.	74,	seventy-four.	<i>Soixante-quatorze.</i>
LXXV.	75,	seventy-five.	<i>Soixante-quinze.</i>
LXXVI.	76,	seventy-six.	<i>Soixante-seize.</i>
LXXVII.	77,	seventy-seven.	<i>Soixante-dix-sept.</i>
LXXVIII.	78,	seventy-eight.	<i>Soixante-dix-huit.</i>
LXXIX.	79,	seventy-nine.	<i>Soixante-dix-neuf</i>
LXXX.	80,	eighty.	<i>Quatre-vingt.</i>
LXXXI.	81,	eighty-one.	<i>Quatre-vingt-un.</i>
LXXXII.	82,	eighty-two.	<i>Quatre-vingt-deux.</i>
LXXXIII.	83,	eighty-three.	<i>Quatre-vingt-trois.</i>
LXXXIV.	84,	eighty-four.	<i>Quatre-vingt-quatre.</i>
LXXXV.	85,	eighty-five.	<i>Quatre-vingt-cinq.</i>
LXXXVI.	86,	eighty-six.	<i>Quatre-vingt-six.</i>
LXXXVII.	87,	eighty-seven.	<i>Quatre-vingt-sept.</i>
LXXXVIII.	88,	eighty-eight.	<i>Quatre-vingt-huit.</i>
LXXXIX.	89,	eighty-nine.	<i>Quatre-vingt-neuf.</i>
XC.	90,	ninety.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix.</i>
XCI.	91,	ninety-one.	<i>Quatre-vingt-onze.</i>
XCII.	92,	ninety-two.	<i>Quatre-vingt-douze.</i>
XCIII.	93,	ninety-three.	<i>Quatre-vingt-treize.</i>
XCIV.	94,	ninety-four.	<i>Quatre-vingt-quatorze</i>
XCV.	95,	ninety-five.	<i>Quatre-vingt-quinze.</i>
XCVI.	96,	ninety-six.	<i>Quatre-vingt-seize.</i>
XCVII.	97,	ninety-seven.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-sept</i>
XCVIII.	98,	ninety-eight.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-huit.</i>
XCIX.	99,	ninety-nine.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf</i>
C.	100,	a hundred.	<i>Cent.</i>
CI.	101,	a hundred & one.*	<i>Cent un.</i>
CII.	102,	a hundred & two, &c	<i>Cent deux, &amp;c.</i>
CX.	110,	a hundred & ten.	<i>Cent dix.</i>
CXX.	120,	a hundred & twenty.	<i>Cent vingt.</i>
CC.	200,	two hundred.	<i>Deux cents.†</i>
CCL.	250,	two hundred & fifty.	<i>Deux cent cinquante.</i>
CCC.	300,	three hundred.	<i>Trois cents.</i>
CM.	900,	nine hundred.	<i>Neuf cents.</i>
M.	1000,	a thousand.‡	<i>Mille.</i>
C.	100,	one hundred.	<i>Un cent.</i>
CC.	200,	two hundred.	<i>Deux cents.</i>
M.	1000,	one thousand.	<i>Un mille.‡</i>
MM.	2000,	two thousand.	<i>Deux mille.</i>

\* The article *A*, and the conjunction *And*, are omitted with these numbers in french.

† *Quatre vingt* and *Cent*, followed by a noun plural, require *s*; as, *Quatre vingts ans*, eighty years; *Deux cents hommes*, two hundred men; but not when they are followed by another number; as *Quatre vingt dix ans*; *Deux cent cinquante hommes*.

Observe also, that the noun which follows the number *One*, after another number, must be singular in french, though it is plural in english; as, *One and twenty years*. *Vingt et un an*. *One and thirty men*. *Trente et un homme*; but if the noun is followed by an adjective, the adjective must be plural; as, *Vingt et un an accomplis*. *Trente et un homme armés*.

‡ In the date of the year, *One* is omitted, and *Thousand* is spelt *Mil*, not *Mille*; so we write 1819, *Mil huit cent dix neuf*, not *Un mille huit cent dix neuf*.



From the foregoing numbers are formed the *adjectives of number* ;

1 <sup>st</sup> ,	the first.	le <i>Premier</i> , m. la <i>Première</i> , f.
2 <sup>nd</sup> ,	the second.	{ le <i>Second</i> , m. la <i>Seconde</i> , f. le or la <i>Deuxième</i> , m. and f.*
3 <sup>rd</sup> ,	the third.	le <i>Troisième</i> .
4 <sup>th</sup> ,	the fourth.	le <i>Quatrième</i> .
5 <sup>th</sup> ,	the fifth.	le <i>Cinquième</i> .
6 <sup>th</sup> ,	the sixth.	le <i>Sixième</i> .
7 <sup>th</sup> ,	the seventh.	le <i>Septième</i> .
8 <sup>th</sup> ,	the eighth.	le <i>Huitième</i> .
9 <sup>th</sup> ,	the ninth.	le <i>Neuvième</i> .
10 <sup>th</sup> ,	the tenth.	le <i>Dixième</i> .
11 <sup>th</sup> ,	the eleventh.	le <i>Onzième</i> , or l' <i>Onzième</i> .
12 <sup>th</sup> ,	the twelfth.	le <i>Douzième</i> .
13 <sup>th</sup> ,	the thirteenth.	le <i>Treizième</i> .
14 <sup>th</sup> ,	the fourteenth.	le <i>Quatorzième</i> .
15 <sup>th</sup> ,	the fifteenth.	le <i>Quinzième</i> .
16 <sup>th</sup> ,	the sixteenth.	le <i>Seizième</i> .
17 <sup>th</sup> ,	the seventeenth.	le <i>Dix-septième</i> .
18 <sup>th</sup> ,	the eighteenth.	le <i>Dix-huitième</i> .
19 <sup>th</sup> ,	the nineteenth.	le <i>Dix-neuvième</i> .
20 <sup>th</sup> ,	the twentieth.	le <i>Vingtième</i> .
21 <sup>st</sup> ,	the twenty-first.	le <i>Vingt et unième</i> .
22 <sup>nd</sup> ,	the twenty-second.	le <i>Vingt-deuxième</i> .
23 <sup>rd</sup> ,	the twenty-third.	le <i>Vingt-troisième</i> .
24 <sup>th</sup> ,	the twenty-fourth.	le <i>Vingt-quatrième</i> .
25 <sup>th</sup> ,	the twenty-fifth.	le <i>Vingt-cinquième</i> .
26 <sup>th</sup> ,	the twenty-sixth.	le <i>Vingt-sixième</i> .
27 <sup>th</sup> ,	the twenty-seventh.	le <i>Vingt-septième</i> .
28 <sup>th</sup> ,	the twenty-eighth.	le <i>Vingt-huitième</i> .
29 <sup>th</sup> ,	the twenty-ninth.	le <i>Vingt-neuvième</i> .
30 <sup>th</sup> ,	the thirtieth.	le <i>Trentième</i> .
31 <sup>st</sup> ,	the thirty-first.	le <i>Trent et unième</i> .
32 <sup>nd</sup> ,	the thirty-second, &c.	le <i>Trente-deuxième</i> , and so on, by adding <i>ième</i> , to the substantive numbers, page 176, 177.

Observe only, that in those ending in *e*, the *e* is left out; as, *Quatre*, *Quatrième*; *Douze*, *Douzième*; and in those ending in *f*, the *f* is changed into *v*, for softness of sound; as, *Neuf*, *Neuvième*; *Dix-neuf*, *Dix-neuvième*.

From the above adjectives are also formed the *numeral adverbs*;

1 <sup>stly</sup> ,	firstly.	<i>Premièrement</i> .
2 <sup>ndly</sup> ,	secondly.	{ <i>Secondement</i> . <i>Deuxièmement</i> .
3 <sup>rdly</sup> ,	thirdly.	<i>Troisièmement</i> .
4 <sup>thly</sup> ,	fourthly.	<i>Quatrièmement</i> .
5 <sup>thly</sup> ,	fifthly.	<i>Cinquièmement</i> .
6 <sup>thly</sup> ,	sixthly.	<i>Sixièmement</i> ,

and so on, by adding *ment* to the above adjectives.

\* *Second* and *Deuxième* are used indiscriminately, when they are followed by a noun; as, *Le second*, or *Le deuxième jour*; *La seconde*, or *La deuxième semaine*; but after another number, *Deuxième* alone can be used; so we could not say, *Vingt second*; *Trente second*; we must say, *Vingt deuxième*; *Trente deuxième*, &c.

THE SYNTAX,  
CONTAINING  
*THE GENERAL PRINCIPLES*  
OF  
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE  
WITH  
PARTICULAR RULES  
AND  
EXCEPTIONS,  
*NOT COMPRISED IN THE INTRODUCTION.\**

=====

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, like most of the living languages, is composed of NINE different sorts of words, commonly known by the names of

NOUN,	PRONOUN,	PREPOSITION,
ARTICLE,	VERB,	CONJUNCTION,
ADJECTIVE,	ADVERB,	INTERJECTION.†

\* Some of the general rules contained in the introduction are repeated in the syntax, because they are necessary to connect the different rules together. But each part must be considered as a distinct work, designed for different persons. The introduction is intended for children, and for persons who, not being accustomed to the study of languages, could not at once comprehend such a multiplicity of rules. The syntax, which includes all the rules which are necessary to a perfect knowledge of the language, is intended for the same persons, after they are sufficiently grounded in the introductory rules, and for persons of a comprehensive mind, who have no need of an introduction.

† Ever since the art of speaking has been reduced into a system, grammarians, and the philosophers who have written on the subject, have differed upon the parts, or different species of words of which it is composed. Some argue that there are but two, the NOUN and the VERB, and assert that the rest are only corruptions or abbreviations of these; others add the ARTICLE and the CONJUNCTION; others the PRONOUN, and so on to the INTERJECTION. It does not belong to a production of this kind to inquire into these different opinions; and I have adopted the most prevalent, because it has appeared to me, that whether they be *words*, or only *abbreviations of words*, there are NINE sorts, which are subject to *different* rules.

Those who are desirous to see ingenious dissertations on this subject, may read HARRIS'S *Hermes*, and TOOKE'S *Diversions of Purley*.

## CHAP. I.

## NOUN.

EVERY WORD is called a NOUN which names a *substance* or *being*, either real, as *man, house, tree, &c.*; or ideal, as *god, heaven, glory, &c.*

Nouns are distinguished into *proper* and *common*.

A noun *proper*, or *proper* name, is that which belongs only to *one* being; as, *John, the Thames, London, Paris, England, France, &c.\**

A noun *common*, or *common* name, is that which belongs to *all* beings of the same kind; as, *man, woman, river, city, country, &c.*

N. B. In this class are comprised the abstract names of *virtue, vice, pleasure, pain, love, desire, fear, hatred, glory, honor*, and such like.

Two

---

\* Though proper names should remain invariably the same in all languages, yet the French have given to the names of countries, and of some capital cities, names or terminations adapted to their own language; so, Asia is called *Asie*; Africa, *Afrique*; America, *Amérique*; England, *Angleterre*; Scotland, *Ecosse*; Loudon, *Londres*; Spain, *Espagne*; Mexico, *Mélique*; Jamaica, *Jamaïque*; Italy, *Italie*; Tuscany, *Toscagne*; Sardinia, *Sardaigne*; Sicily, *Sicile*; Leghorn, *Livourne*; Mantua, *Mantoue*; Geneva, *Genève*; Genoa, *Gènes*; Switzerland, *Suisse*; Germany, *Allemagne*; Hungary, *Hongrie*; Bohemia, *Bohème*; Vienna, *Vienne*; Poland, *Pologne*; Warsaw, *Varsovie*; Craeow, *Cracovie*; Russia, *Russie*; Prussia, *Prusse*; Sweden, *Suède, &c.* for which no rule can be given; but as they are single words, and are generally found in the dictionaries, when they have been seen once or twice, they are easily retained.

The names of persons, derived from the living languages, do not vary; so, *For, Pitt, White, Brown*, are in french, *For, Pitt, White, Brown*, as in english; but the names of persons, derived from the greek and latin languages, generally change their terminations, agreeably to the following rules.

Names ending in *al, ar, or, is, os, on*, do not vary; as, *Annibal, Adherbal, Cæsar, Hamilcar, Mentor, Nestor, Adonis, Sésostris, Minos, Atropos, Damon, Solon, &c.* nor the names of men ending in *a*, as, *Numa, Nerva, Sylla, Agrippa, Dolabella*; except *Seneca*, which is *Sénéque*.

The finals *as* and *es*, are changed into *e*: as, *Pythagoras, Pythagore*; *Mecenas, Mécène*; *Eneas, Enée*; *Socrates, Socrate*; *Demosthenes, Demosthène, &c.*; except *Agésilus, Léonidas, Pélopidas, Phidias, Pythias, Pausanias, Epaminondas, Eudamidas, Calchas, Olympias, Cérès, Xerxes, Périclès*, and a few others not often met with.

The finals *us* and *ius*, are also generally changed into *e*; as, *Augustus, Auguste*; *Titus, Tite*; *Tiberius, Tibère*; *Julius Cæsar, Jule César*; *Tacitus, Tacite*; *Virgilius, Virgile*; *Horatius, Horace*; *Eolus, Eole*; *Œdipus, Oedipe*; except *Appius, Baccus, Brutus, Cincinnatus, Claudius, Cræsus, Cyrus, Darius, Decius, Dentatus, Gallus, Germanicus, Janus, Junius, Manlius, Marius, Ménénus, Métellus, Mutius, Papirius, Plautius, Pompeius, Porus, Pyrrhus, Remus, Romulus, Silvius, Valerius, Venus, Tullus*, and a few others not frequently met with; and *Coriolanus, Tarquinius*, which lose the finals *us, ius*; thus, *Coriolan, Tarquin*.

Nouns in *chus*, change *chus* into *que*; as, *Telemachus, Télémaque*; *Lysimachus, Lysimaque*; *Gracchus, Graque*; except *Antiochus*.

Nouns ending in *o* take the addition of *n*; as, *Cato, Caton*; *Cicero, Ciceron*; *Scipio, Scipion*; *Plato, Platon*; *Apollo, Apollon*; *Pluto, Pluton*; *Juno, Junon*; *Dido, Didon*; except *Calpso, Clio, Clotho, Sappho, Echo*.

The final *der* is changed into *dre*; as, *Alexander, Alexandre*; *Lysander, Lysandre*.

Names of women ending in *a*, change *a* into *e* mute; as, *Julia, Julie*; *Amelia, Amélie*; *Agrippina, Agrippine*; *Cleopatra, Cléopatre*; *Minerva, Minerve, &c.*

Those ending in *e, é*, retain their termination; as, *Cybele, Melpomene, Circé, Cloé, Daphné, Hécé, Thïsé*; except the following, in which the French do not sound the final *e*; *Ariadne, Euridice, Pénélope*.

Two things are to be considered in nouns ; the *gender* and the *number*.  
The *gender* is the distinction between the *sexes*.

The french language admits of *two genders* only, the *masculine* and the *feminine*.

By *masculine* is meant the *male being* ; by *feminine*, the *female*.

The names of beings whose sex is unknown, and of those *inanimate* beings, commonly called *things*, which are of the *neuter gender* in english, are either *masculine*, or *feminine*, in french, according to custom.\*

There

\* The *difference* of gender is generally known by the *termination* of the noun.

Nouns of the following *Terminations* are  
MASCULINE.

Nouns of the following *Terminations* are  
FEMININE.

- A. un Opéra, *an opera* ; un Sopha, *a sofa* ;  
du Quinquina, *peruvian bark*.
- AI sounded A ; as,  
un Plat, *a dish* ; un Combat, *a battle*.
- B. du Plomb, *lead* ; le Radoub, *refitting* ;  
un Rumb, *a point of the compass*.
- C. le Bec, *the beak* ; du Suc, *gravy* ,  
du Porc, *pork* ; du Tabac, *tobacco*.
- D. du Lard, *bacon* ; du Fard, *paint* ;  
un Regard, *a look* ; le Hasard, *chance*.
- É preceded by any letter but T ;  
du Blé, *corn* ; un Pré, *a meadow* ;  
un Congé, *a holiday* ; du Caffé, *coffee*.  
Except l'Amitié, *friendship* ;  
la Moitié, *the half* ; la Pitié, *pity*.
- ER sounded E ; as,  
un Baiser, *a kiss* ; le Danger, *danger* ;  
un Métier, *a trade* ; un Panier, *a basket*.
- AI. sounded É ; as,  
un Geai, *a jay* ; un Balai, *a broom* ,  
un Essai, *an essay* ; un Délai, *a delay*.
- AIT, ET sounded É ; as,  
un Fait, *a fact* ; un Portrait, *a picture* ;  
un Sujet, *a subject* ; un Objet, *an object*.
- F. un Nerf, *a sinew* ; un Œuf, *an egg* ;  
du Bœuf, *beef* ; du Suif, *tallow*.  
Except une Clef, *a key* ; la Soif, *thirst* ;  
la Nef, *the body of a church*.
- G. le Rang, *rank* ; le Sang, *the blood* ;  
un Étang, *a pond* ; un hareng, *a herring*.
- I. un Etui, *a case* ; un Défi, *a challenge* ;  
un Lit, *a bed* : un Habit, *a coat*.  
Except une Fourmi, *an ant* ; la Nuit, *night*.
- OI. un Envoi, *an invoice* ; un Convoi, *a convoy* ;  
un Emploi, *an employ* ; le Doigt, *the finger*.  
Except la Foi, *faith* ; la Loi, *law*.
- L. un Mal, *an evil* ; le Travail, *labour* ;  
un Hôtel, *an hotel* ; le Sommeil, *sleep*.
- M. le Nom, *the name* ; le Parfum, *perfume* ;  
du Thim, *thyme*.  
Except la Faim, *hunger*

- TE. la Liberté, *liberty* ; la Santé, *health* ;  
la Beauté, *beauty* ; la Bonté, *goodness* ;  
la Majesté, *majesty* ; la Divinité, *divinity*.  
Except l'Été, *summer* ; un Comté, *a county* ,  
le Côté, *the side* ; un Père, *a pie* ; un Comité,  
*a committee* ; un Traité, *a treaty, a treatise* ;  
du Thé, *some tea*.



There are *two* numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*.

A noun is *singular*, when we speak of *one being only*; as, a book, *un livre*; a house, *une maison*; a tree, *un arbre*; a ship, *un navire*, &c.

A noun

MASCULINE Terminations.

- N. All the terminations in N which are not ION, or SON soft, i. e. sounded ZON, viz.
- AN. du Bran, *bran*; du Saffran, *saffron*.
- ANT, ENT sounded AN; as, un Diamant, *a diamond*; un Présent, *a present*; le Vent, *the wind*. Except une Dent, *a tooth*.
- AIN. du Pain, *bread*; un Bain, *a bath*. Exc. la Main, [the hand].
- IN, EIN sounded AIN; as, du Vin, *some wine*; le Matin, *morning*; le Sein, *the bosom*; le Teint, *the complexion*. Except la Fin, *the end*.
- OIN. le Soin, *care*; un Coin, *a corner*.
- IEN. un Lien, *a tie*; du Bien, *wealth*.
- CON. un Balcon, *a balcony*; un Flacon, *a decanter*.
- LON. un Violon, *a violin*; un Papillon, *a butterfly*.
- SSON. un Buisson, *a bush*; du Poisson, *fish*. Except la Moisson, *the harvest*; la Boisson, *drink*; une Chanson, *a song*.
- ÇON. un Hameçon, *a fish-hook*; un Limaçon, *a snail*. Except une Leçon, *a lesson*; une Rançon, *a ransom*; la Façon, *the making*.
- TON. un Bâton, *a stick*; un Bouton, *a button*.
- O. un Echo, *an echo*; un Duo, *a duet*.
- OT sounded O; as, un Mot, *a word*; un Complot, *a plot*; un Pot, *a pot*; un Gigot, *a leg of mutton*.
- EAU sounded O; as, un Couteau, *a knife*; un Chapeau, *a hat*. Except l'Eau, *water*; la Peau, *the skin*.
- P. un Cap, *a cape*; un Cep, *a stock of a vine*; un Champ, *a field*; le Galop, *the gallop*.
- Q. un Cinq, *a five*; un Coq, *a cock*.
- R. All the terminations in R, which are not EUR.
- AIR. l'Air, *the air*; un Eclair, *a flash of lightning*. Except la Chair, *the flesh*.
- ER. le Fer, *iron*; l'Enfer, *hell*. Except la Mer, *the sea*; une Cuiller, *a spoon*.
- IR. le Désir, *desire*; le Plaisir, *pleasure*.
- OIR. le Soir, *evening*; un Mouchoir, *a handkerchief*.
- OR. l'Or, *gold*; un Trésor, *a treasure*.
- ORD. l'ORT, sounded OR; as, le Bord, *the border*; un Fort, *a fort*; le Sort, *fate*. Except la Mort, *death*.
- OUR. le Jour, *the day*; un Tour, *a trick*. Except la Cour, *the court*, the yard; une Tour, *a tower*.

FEMININE Terminations.

- ION. une Action, *an action*; une Caution, *a bail*; une Portion, *a portion*.
- Except un Bastion, *a bastion*; un Crayon, *a pencil*; un Rayon, *a ray*; un Pion, *a man at drafts*; le Tallion, *retaliation*; un Scorpion, *a scorpion*; le Septentrion, *the north*; le Croupion, *the rump of fowls and birds*; un Million, *a million*.
- SON, une Maison, *a house*; la Raison, *reason*; la Saison, *the season*.
- ZON. Except le Gazon, *turf*; du Poison, *poison*; un Tison, *a firebrand*; un Oison, *a gosling*; l'Horizon, *the horizon*; le Blason, *heraldry*.

- EUR. la Peur, *fear*; la Chaleur, *heat*; une Fleur, *a flower*; la Couleur, *colour*.

Except le Bonheur, *luck, happiness*; le Malheur, *misfortune*; l'Honneur, *honour*; le Déshonneur, *dishonour*; le Cœur, *the heart*; l'Equateur, *the equator*; l'Intérieur, *the interior*; l'Extérieur, *the exterior*.

Except also the nouns in EUR, which belong only to persons; as, un Auteur, *an author*; un Docteur, *a doctor*; &c.

See also, page 189, how some nouns feminine are formed from the masculine, in the same manner as adjectives, by changing the termination.

A noun is *plural* when we speak of *more than one*.

*N. B.* The plural is generally formed in french, as in english, by adding *s* to the singular ; as, *des livres*, books ; *des maisons*, houses, &c.

Nouns

MASCULINE Terminations.

- S. le Bras, *the arm* ; le Repos, *repose* ;  
du Bois, *wood* ; le Succès, *success* ;  
Except une Brebis, *a sheep* ; une Souris,  
*a mouse* ; une Vis, *a screw* ; Fois, *time*.
- T. un Plat, *a dish* ; un Lit, *a bed* ;  
le Vent, *the wind* ; un Accident, *an accident*.  
Exe. une Part, *a share* ; une Forêt, *a forest* ;  
la Nuit, *night* ; une Dot, *a dowery* ; une  
Dent, *a tooth* ; la Mort, *death*.
- U. un Ecu, *a crown* ; un Fétu, *a straw*.  
Except la Vertu, *virtue* ; une Tribu, *a tribe* ;  
de la Glu, *bird-line*.
- UT sounded *u* ; as,  
le But, *the aim* ; le Scorbut, *the scurvy*.
- EU. le Feu, *fire* ; un Lieu, *a place*.
- OU. un Trou, *a hole* ; un Chou, *a cabbage*.
- X. un Faix, *a burthen* ; le Choix, *choice*.  
Except la Paix, *peace* ; la Voix, *the voice* ;  
une Noix, *nut* ; de la Poix, *pitch* ; une  
Croix, *a cross* ; la Toux, *cough* ; une Per-  
drix, *a partridge* ; une Faux, *a scythe*.

FEMININE Terminations.

From the above rules it appears that nouns ending with a consonant, or any vowel but *e* mute, are generally masculine ; but there is a great number of nouns ending in *e* mute, part of which are masculine, and part feminine, which can not be reduced to such certain rules.\*

GENERAL RULES.

All NAMES of COUNTRIES ending with *e* mute are feminine ; as,  
la France, *France* ; la Hollande, *Holland* ; l'Angleterre, *England* ; la Suisse, *Switzerland*, &c. except le Mexique, *Mexico*. Those ending with any other vowel, as *Canada*, *Chili*, *Pérou*, &c., or with a consonant, as *Denmark*, *Portugal*, *Japon*, &c. are masculine.

- Êe. All COMMON NAMES ending in *e* mute, preceded by another vowel, are feminine ; as,  
Ie. une Epée, *a sword* ; une Armée, *an army* ; une Guinée, *a guinea* ; la Vie, *life* ; la Rue,  
Ue. the street ; la Vue, *the sight* ; la Joie, *joy* ; la Joue, *the cheek* ; la Pluie, *rain*, &c.

Except le Foie, *the liver* ; un Incendie, *a conflagration* ; le Génie, *genius* ; le Messie, *the messiah* ; un Parapluie, *an umbrella* ; un Trophée, *a trophy* ; un Pignée, *a pigmy* ; le Caducée, *caduceus* ; l'Hyménée, *hymen* ; un Mausolée, *a mausoleum* ; and nouns ending in *GUE* and *QUE*, which are subject to a particular rule. See *GUE*, *QUE*.

PARTICULAR RULES.

- BE. There are *Thirty-four* nouns ending in *BE*, *Eleven* of which  
are masculine ; the most commonly used are,  
un Adverbe, *an adverb* ; un Proverbe, *a proverb* ;  
un Cube, *a cube* ; un Tube, *a tube* ;  
un Globe, *a globe* ; un Téorbe, *a theorb* ;  
un Orbe, *an orb* ; un Verbe, *a verb* ;  
} Twenty-three other nouns end-  
ing in *BE* are feminine.

\* The discrimination between the genders of nouns is a difficulty which the learner finds hard to overcome. In order to attain it, he must consider the greatest number of words of each termination which are either masculine or feminine, as a general rule, and retain as many words of the exception as he can. Besides this, when he reads a french author, he must pay particular attention to the article which precedes each noun, and consider it as its necessary appendage. By these means the difficulty will insensibly lessen, and his mistakes will be but few. Not to overload his memory with a multiplicity of words, I have omitted in the list of nouns given *a* exceptions, those which are either obsolete or little used.

Nouns ending in *s* or *x* in the singular, are the same in the plural; as, *mon fils*, my son; *mes fils*, my sons; *une brebis*, a sheep; *des brebis*, sheep; *une voix*, a voice; *des voix*, voices; *une noix*, a nut; *des noix*, nuts.

Nouns

MASCULINE Terminations.

FEMININE Terminations.

CE There are *Three hundred* nouns ending in CE, *Thirty-four*

of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,  
 un Appendice, *an appendix*; un Indice, *an indication*;  
 un Armistice, *an armistice*; le Négoce, *traffic*;  
 un Artifice, *an artifice*; un Office, *an office*;  
 un Auspice, *an auspice*; un Orifice, *an orifice*;  
 un Bénéfice, *a benefit*; le Pouce, *the thumb*;  
 un Calice, *a chalice*; un Précipice, *a precipice*;  
 le Caprice, *caprice*; le Préjudice, *injury*;  
 un Cilice, *a hair-cloth*; un Sacrifice, *a sacrifice*;  
 le Commerce, *commerce*; un Service, *a service*;  
 le Délice, *delight*; le Silence, *silence*;  
 un Edifice, *an edifice*; le Solstice, *the solstice*;  
 un Exercice, *an exercise*; le Supplice, *punishment*,  
 le Frontispice, *frontispiece*; le Vice, *vice*.

Two hundred and sixty-six other nouns ending in CE are feminine.

DE. There are *Two hundred* nouns ending in DE, *Twenty-seven*

of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,  
 un Camarade, *a companion*; le Monde, *the world*;  
 un Code, *a code*; un Période, *a period of time*;  
 le Coude, *the elbow*; un Remède, *a remedy*;  
 un Fluide, *a fluid*; un Sphéroïde, *a spheroid*;  
 un Grade, *a degree*; un Subside, *a subsidy*;  
 un Guide, *a guide*; le Suicide, *suicide*;  
 un Mode, *a mode*; le Vide, *Vacuum*.

One hundred and seventy-three other nouns ending in DE are feminine.

FE. There are *Twenty* nouns ending in FE, PHE, *Eight* of which

PHE. are *masculine*; they are,

un Golfe, *a gulph*; un Parafe, *a paraph*;  
 un Greffe, *a court register*; un Paragraphe, *a paragraph*;  
 un Hiéroglyphe, *a hieroglyph*; un Triomphe, *a triumph*;  
 un Logogriphe, *a riddle*; un Télégraphe, *a telegraph*;

Twelve other nouns ending in FE, PHE, are feminine.

GE. There are *Eighty* nouns ending in GE, *Thirty-two* of which

are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,  
 un ange, *an angel*; un Mensonge, *a lie*;  
 un archange, *an archangel*; un Prestige, *a prestige*;  
 le Change, *the 'change*; un Privilège, *a privilege*;  
 un Cierge, *a taper*; un Prodige, *a prodigy*;  
 un Collège, *a college*; un Rechange, *a change*;  
 un Cortège, *a retinue*; un Refuge, *a refuge*;  
 le Déluge, *the deluge*; un Sacrilège, *a sacrilege*;  
 un Echange, *an exchange*; un Siège, *a seat, a siege*;  
 un Eloge, *an encomium*; un Singe, *an ape*;  
 du Liège, *cork*; un Songe, *a dream*;  
 du Linge, *linen*; un Subterfuge, *a subterfuge*;  
 le Manège, *riding school*; un Vertige, *a giddiness*;  
 un Mélange, *a mixture*; un Vestige, *a track*.

Forty-eight other nouns ending in GE are feminine.

AGE. All nouns ending in AGE are *masculine*; as,

un Avantage, *an advantage*; le Mariage, *marriage*;  
 un Badinage, *a joke*; le Ménage, *housekeeping*;  
 un Bocage, *a grove*; un Orage, *a storm*;  
 le Courage, *courage*; un Ouvrage, *a work*;  
 du Fromage, *some cheese*; le Rivage, *the shore*;  
 le Jardinage, *gardening*; le Veuvage, *widowhood*;  
 un Hermitage, *an hermitage*; le Visage, *the face, &c.*

Except une Cage, *a cage*;  
 une Image, *an image*; la  
 Nage, *swimming*; une Page,  
*a page*; la Plage, *a poetical*  
*word for sea*; la Rage, *rage*.

Nouns ending in *u* take *x* instead of *s* for the sign of the plural number ; as, *chapeau*, hat ; *chapeaux*, hats ; *chou*, cabbage ; *choux*, cabbages ; *lieu*, place ; *lieux*, places ; *feu*, fire ; *feux*, fires ; *jeu*, game ; *jeux*, games, &c.

Except

## MASCULINE Terminations.

## FEMININE Terminations.

**GUE.** There are *Thirty-five* nouns ending in **GU.**, *Twelve* of which are *masculine* ; the most commonly used are,  
 un Catalogue, *a catalogue* ; un Dogue, *a bull-dog* ;  
 le Décalogue, *the decalogue* ; un Orgue, *an organ* ;  
 un Dialogue, *a dialogue* ; le Prologue, *the prologue* ;

} *Twenty-three* other nouns ending in **GUE** are *feminine*.

**CHE.** There are *One hundred* nouns ending in **CHE**, *Twelve* of which are *masculine* ; the most commonly used are,  
 un Acrostiche, *an acrostic* ; un Panache, *a plume* ;  
 le Coche, *the stage coach* ; du Ponche, *punch* ;  
 un Dimanche, *a sunday* ; un Prêche, *a dissenting sermon* ;  
 un Hémistiche, *an hemistich* ; un Reproche, *a reproach* ;  
 un Manche, *a handle* ; un Tournebroche, *a jack* ; ...

} *Eighty-eight* other nouns ending in **CHE** are *feminine*.  
 une Manche, *a sleeve*.

**LE.** There are *Four hundred* nouns ending in **LE**, *One hundred* of which are *masculine* ; the most commonly used are,  
 un Aigle, *an eagle* ; un Obstacle, *an obstacle* ;  
 un Angle, *an angle* ; un Ongle, *a nail* ;  
 un Article, *an article* ; un Oracle, *an oracle* ;  
 un Asile, *an asylum* ; le Parallèle, *the parallel* ;  
 un Buffle, *a buffalo* ; un Pécule, *spare money* ;  
 un Câble, *a cable* ; un Pendule, *a pendulum* ; ...  
 le Capitole, *the capitol* ; le Peuple, *the people* ;  
 le Centuple, *the centuple* ; un Poêle, *a stove* ; .....  
 un Cercle, *a circle* ; le Pôle, *the pole* ;  
 du Chèvre-feuille, *woodbine* ; un Portefeuille, *a portfolio* ;  
 le Chile, *the chyle* ; le Préambule, *the preamble* ;  
 le Comble, *the top* ; un Quadrangle, *a quadrangle* ;  
 un Concile, *a council* ; le Quadrille, *quadril* ;  
 le Contrôle, *the control* ; le Quadruple, *quadruple* ;  
 un Couvercle, *a lid* ; un Réceptacle, *a receptacle* ;  
 le Crépuscule, *the twilight* ; un Rôle, *a roll, the part of an*  
 un Crible, *a sieve* ; le Sable, *the sand* ; [actor ;  
 un Crocodile, *a crocodile* ; un Saule, *a willow* ;  
 le Diable, *the devil* ; le Scandale, *scandal* ;  
 un Disciple, *a disciple* ; le Scrupule, *the scruple* ;  
 un Domicile, *a domicile* ; du Seigle, *rye* ;  
 le Double, *the double* ; un Siècle, *an age* ;  
 un Drôle, *a fellow* ; le Symbole, *the symbol* ;  
 l'Évangile, *the gospel* ; le Souffle, *the breath* ;  
 un Exemple, *an example* ; un Spectacle, *a spectacle* ;  
 du Girofle, *clove-spice* ; le Stile, *the style* ;  
 le Hâle, *the burning sun* ; le Tabernacle, *the tabernacle* ;  
 un Intervalle, *an interval* ; un Temple, *a temple* ;  
 un Libelle, *a libel* ; le Trèfle, *trefoil* ;  
 un Marouffe, *a scoundrel* ; le Tremble, *the asp tree* ;  
 un Merle, *a blackbird* ; le Triple, *the treble* ;  
 le Meuble, *the furniture* ; le Trouble, *disturbance* ;  
 un Mille, *a mile* ; un Vaudeville, *a ballad* ;  
 un Miracle, *a miracle* ; un Vestibule, *a vestibule* ;  
 un Modèle, *a model* ; un Vignoble, *a vineyard* ;  
 un Monopole, *a monopoly* ; un Violoncelle, *a violoncello* ;  
 un Moule, *a mould* ; un Voile, *a veil* ; .....  
 le Mufle, *the muzzle* ; le Zèle, *the zeal* ;

une Pendule, *a clock*.

une Poêle, *a fryingpan*.

} *Three hundred* other nouns ending in **LE** are *feminine*.

une Voile, *a sail*.



Except *clou*, nail; *bijou*, jewel; *fou*, mad; *filou*, sharper; *trou*, hole; *sou*, penny; *matou*, ram cat; and *individu*, individual; which require *s* for their plural, *clous*, nails; *bijous*, jewels; *fous*, mad people; *filous*, &c.

Nouns

MASCULINE Terminations.

FEMININE Terminations.

ME. There are *One hundred and seventy-two* nouns ending in ME, *Forty-three* of which are feminine; the most commonly used are,

*One hundred and twenty-nine* other nouns ending in ME are masculine.

l' Ame, the soul ;	la Gourme, the strangles ;
une Arme, an arm ;	un Idiotisme, an idiom ;
la Brume, the fog ;	la Lame, the blade ;
la Cime, the top ;	une Larme, a tear ;
la Coutume, the custom ;	la Légitime, a child's portion ;
la Crème, cream ;	une Lime, a file ;
la Dîme, the tithe ;	une Maxime, a maxim ;
l' Ecume, the foam ;	la Paume, the palm, tennis ;
une Enclume, an anvil ;	une Plate-forme, a platform ;
une Enigme, an enigma ;	une Plume, a pen ;
une Epigramme, an epigram ;	une Pomme, an apple ;
l' Escrime, fencing ;	la Prime, the prime ;
l' Estime, esteem ;	une Rame, an oar, a ream ;
une Ferme, a farm ;	la Réforme, the reform ;
la Flamme, the flame ;	la Rime, the rhyme ;
la Forme, the form ;	une Somme, a sum ;
la Gamme, the gamut ;	la Trame, the thread ;
la Gomme, gum ;	une Victime, a victim.

NE. There are *Two hundred and forty-six* nouns in NE, *Thirty*

of which are masculine; the most commonly used are,

de l'Antimoine, antimony ;	le Jeûne, fasting ;
un Aune, an elder ;	un Organe, an organ ;
l' Automne, autumn ;	le Patrimoine, patrimony ;
le Capricorne, the capricorn ;	un Peigne, a comb ;
un Cerne, a magical ring ;	le Pêne, the bolt of a lock ;
un Chêne, an oak ;	un Pentagone, a pentagon ;
un Cygne, a swan ;	un Phénomène, a phenomenon ;
un Cône, a cone ;	un Polygone, a polygon ;
le Crâne, the skull ;	un Prône, a sermon ;
un Décagone, a decagon ;	le Règne, the reign ;
un Domaine, a domain ;	un Renne, a rein deer ;
un Faune, a faun ;	un Signe, a sign ;
du Filigrane, filigrama ;	un Trône, a throne.
un Frêne, an ash tree ;	

*Two hundred and sixteen* other nouns ending in NE are feminine

PE. There are *Sixty-eight* nouns ending in PE, *Twelve* of which are masculine; the most commonly used are,

un Groupe, a group ;	un Participe, a participle ;
un Horoscope, a horoscope ;	un Polype, a polypus ;
du Jaspe, jasper ;	un Principe, a principle ;
un Microscope, a microscope ;	un Télescope, a telescope.

*Fifty-six* other nouns ending in PE are feminine.

QUE. There are *One hundred* nouns ending in QUE, *Thirty-four*

un Asterisque, an asterisk ;	le Panégyrique, panegyric ;
un Cantique, a canticle ;	le Pentateuque, the pentateuch ;
un Casque, a cask ;	un Portique, a portico ;
un Caustique, a caustic ;	le Risque, the risk ;
un Cirque, a circus ;	un Soliloque, a soliloquy ;
un Disque, a disk ;	un Spécifique, a specific ;
un Émétique, an emetic ;	le Tropicque, the tropic ;
un Obélisque, an obelisk ;	le Viatique, viaticum ;
un Manque, a want ;	le Zodiaque, the zodiac.
un Masque, a mask ;	

*Sixty-six* other nouns ending in QUE are feminine.

Nouns ending in *al*, *ail*, change *l* or *il* into *ux* for the plural; as, *mal*, evils; *maux*, evils; *cheval*, horse; *chevaux*, horses; *canal*, canal; *canaux*, canals; *travail*, labour; *travaux*, labours.

Except

## MASCULINE Terminations.

## FEMININE Terminations.

RE.	There are Six hundred and thirty-two nouns ending in RE, Two hundred and twenty-three of which are masculine; the most commonly used are,	
	un Adultère, an adultery;	le Directoire, the directory;
	l' Albâtre, alabaster;	un Douaire, a dowery;
	l' Ambre, amber;	un Empire, an empire;
	un Amphithéâtre, an amphitheatre;	un Emplâtre, a plaster;
	un Anniversaire, an anniversary;	l' Equilibre, the equilibrium;
	un Antre, a den;	un Etre, a being;
	un Arbre, a tree;	un Exemple, a copy of a book;
	un Artère, an artery;	un Fiacre, a hackney coach;
	un Astre, a star;	un Fife, a fife;
	l' Atmosphère, the atmosphere;	un Formulaire, a formulary;
	un Atre, an hearth;	du Genièvre, juniper;
	un Auditoire, an auditory;	le Genre, the gender;
	un Augure, an omen;	du Gingembre, ginger;
	du Babeure, buttermilk;	un Gouffre, a gulf;
	du Beurre, butter;	un Havre, a harbour;
	un Baromètre, a barometer;	l' Hémisphère, the hemisphere;
	le Bien-être, happy state;	un Hêtre, a beech tree;
	un Cadavre, a corpse;	un Inventaire, an inventory;
	un Cadre, a frame;	un Interrogatoire, an interrogatory;
	le Calibre, the bore;	de l'Ivoire, ivory;
	du Camphre, camphire;	un Laboratoire, a laboratory,
	un Cancré, a crab;	du Lierre, ivy;
	un Candélabre, a chandelier;	un Lièvre, a hare;
	le Caractère, the character;	un Livre, a book; . . . . . une Livre, a pound.
	un Cédre, a cedar;	le Lustre, the lustre;
	le Centre, the centre;	un Luminaire, a luminary;
	un Chancré, a shanker;	le Maigre, the lean;
	du Chanvre, hemp;	du Marbre, marble;
	un Chapitre, a chapter;	le Martyre, martyrdom;
	un Chef-d'œuvre, a masterpiece;	un Massacre, a massacre;
	un Chiffre, a figure;	un Membre, a limb;
	du Cidre, cider;	un Mémoire, a memorial; . . . . . laMémoire, memory
	un Cilindre, a cylinder;	du Mercure, mercury;
	un Cimetière, a cimeter;	un Météore, a meteor;
	un Cimetière, a church yard;	un Meurtre, a murder;
	un Cintre, an arch;	le Ministère, the ministry;
	un Cystère, a glister;	un Mystère, a mystery;
	un Coffre, a chest;	un Monastère, a monastery;
	un Commentaire, a commentary;	un Monstre, a monster;
	un Concombre, a cucumber;	un Murmure, a murmur;
	un Congre, a conger;	du Nacre, mother of pearl;
	un Corollaire, a corollary;	un Navire, a ship;
	le Contraire, the contrary;	le Nécessaire, the necessities;
	un Corsaire, a corsair;	du Nitre, nitre;
	du Cuivre, copper;	un Nombre, a number;
	le Décombre, the rubbish;	un Observatoire, an observatory;
	le Délire, delirium;	un Opprobre, a reproach;
	un Dépositaire, a depositary;	un Orchestre, an orchestre;
	le Derrière, the back part;	un Ordinaire, an ordinary;
	un Désastre, a disaster;	un Ordre, an order;
	le Désordre, the disorder;	le Parterre, the pit of a playhouse;
	le Diamètre, the diameter;	un Pâtre, a herdsman;
	un Dictionnaire, a dictionary;	un Phare, a lighthouse;
		du Phosphore,

Four hundred and nine other nouns ending in RE are feminine.

Except *bal*, ball; *détail*, detail; *épouvantail*, bugbear; *évantail*, fan; *gouvernail*, rudder; *portail*, portal; *sérail*, seraglio; the plural of which is formed by adding *s* to the singular; *bals*, balls; *détails*, details; *épouvantails*

## MASCULINE Terminations.

## FEMININE Terminations.

RE.	du Phosphore, <i>phosphorus</i> ;	le Sommaire, <i>the compendium</i> ;
	du Plâtre, <i>plaster</i> ;	du Soufre, <i>brimstone</i> ;
	du Poivre, <i>pepper</i> ;	du Sucre, <i>sugar</i> ;
	un Pôre, <i>a pore</i> ;	un Tertre, <i>a hillock</i> ;
	les Préliminaires, <i>preliminaries</i> ;	un Territoire, <i>a territory</i> ;
	un Presbîtere, <i>a parsonage house</i> ;	un Théâtre, <i>a theatre</i> ;
	un Promontoire, <i>a promontory</i> ;	un Thermomètre, <i>a thermometer</i> ;
	un Pupitre, <i>a desk</i> ;	un Timbre, <i>a clock bell</i> ;
	le Purgatoire, <i>purgatory</i> ;	un Tire-bourre, <i>screw of a ramrod</i> ;
	un Réfectoire, <i>an eatingroom</i> ;	un Titre, <i>a title</i> ;
	un Registre, <i>a register</i> ;	le Tonnerre, <i>thunder</i> ;
	un Repaire, <i>a den</i> ;	un Ulcère, <i>an ulcer</i> ;
	un Réverbère, <i>a reflector</i> ;	le Ventre, <i>the belly</i> ;
	un Sabre, <i>a sabre</i> ;	un Vertèbre, <i>a vertebra</i> ;
	le Sacre, <i>the coronation</i> ;	un Verre, <i>a glass</i> ;
	du Salpêtre, <i>saltpetre</i> ;	un Vésicatoire, <i>a blister</i> ;
	un Sanctuaire, <i>a sanctuary</i> ;	du Vinaigre, <i>vinegar</i> ;
	un Sceptre, <i>a sceptre</i> ;	un Vocabulaire, <i>a vocabulary</i> ;
	un Secrétaire, <i>a secretary</i> ;	un Vomitoire, <i>a vomit</i> ;
	un Séminaire, <i>a seminary</i> ;	le Vulgaire, <i>the vulgar</i> ;
	un Sépulcre, <i>a sepulchre</i> ;	un Vulnéraire, <i>a vulnerary</i> .
	un Séquestre, <i>a sequestration</i> ;	

Four hundred and nine other nouns ending in RE are feminine.

SE.	There are Two hundred and fifty nouns ending in SE, Fourteen of which are masculine; the most commonly used are,	
	l' Aïse, <i>ease</i> ;	un Narcisse, <i>a narcissus</i> ;
	un Carosse, <i>a coach</i> ;	le Parnasse, <i>parnassus</i> ;
	un Colosse, <i>a colossus</i> ;	un Thyrsé, <i>a thyrsis</i> ;
	un Diocèse, <i>a diocess</i> ;	un Trapèze, <i>a trapezium</i> ;
	le Malaise, <i>uneasiness</i> ;	un Vase, <i>a vessel</i> .

Two hundred and thirty-six other nouns ending in SE are feminine.

TE.	There are Three hundred and seventy-five nouns in TE, Thirty-nine of which are masculine; the most commonly used are,	
	un Acte, <i>an act</i> ;	un Geste, <i>a gesture</i> ;
	un Antidote, <i>a antidote</i> ;	un Gîte, <i>the seat of a hare</i> ;
	un Arbuste, <i>a shrub</i> ;	un Inceste, <i>an incest</i> ;
	un Aromate, <i>an aromatic</i> ;	un Insecte, <i>an insect</i> ;
	un Automate, <i>an automaton</i> ;	un Labyrinthe, <i>a labyrinth</i> ;
	un Buste, <i>a bust</i> ;	un Manifeste, <i>a manifesto</i> ;
	un Cassetête, <i>a puzzlebrain</i> ;	un Mécompte, <i>a misreckoning</i> ;
	un Ceste, <i>a cestus</i> ;	le Mérite, <i>merit</i> ;
	un Compte, <i>an account</i> ;	un Myrte, <i>a myrtle</i> ;
	un Conte, <i>a tale</i> ;	l' Omoplate, <i>the omoplate</i> ;
	un Contraste, <i>a contrast</i> ;	un Pacte, <i>a pact</i> ;
	le Culte, <i>the worship</i> ;	un Poste, <i>a station</i> ;
	un Décompte, <i>a discount</i> ;	un Précepte, <i>a precept</i> ;
	le Démentite, <i>demerit</i> ;	un Prétexte, <i>a pretext</i> ;
	le Doute, <i>the doubt</i> ;	le Reste, <i>the rest</i> ;
	un Entr'acte, <i>an interlude</i> ;	un Squelette, <i>a skeleton</i> ;
	l' Escompte, <i>the discount</i> ;	le Texte, <i>the text</i> ;
	le Faîte, <i>the top</i> ;	un Tirebotte, <i>a bootjack</i> ;
	le Faste, <i>pomp</i> ;	le Tumulte, <i>tumult</i> .

Three hundred and thirty-six other nouns ending in TE are feminine.

la Poste, *post office*.

NE.	There are Forty-two nouns ending in VE, Four of which are masculine,	
	un Conclave, <i>a conclave</i> ;	un Glaive, <i>a sword</i> ;
	un Fleuve, <i>a river</i> ;	un Rêve, <i>a dream</i> .

Thirty-eight other nouns ending in VE are feminine.

*épouvantails*, bugbears; *éventails*, fans; *gouvernails*, rudders; *portails*, portals; *sérails*, seraglios; and *bétail*, cattle, the plural of which is *bestiaux*.

## MASCULINE Terminations.

## FEMININE Terminations.

XE. There are *Ten* nouns ending in XE, *Five* of which are masculine.

un Axe, <i>an axis</i> ;	un Paradoxe, <i>a paradox</i> ;	} The other <i>Five</i> nouns ending in XE are feminine.
l' Equinoxe, <i>the equinox</i> ;	le Sexe, <i>the sex</i> ;	
le Luxe, <i>luxury</i> ;		

ZE. There are *Two* nouns ending in ZE, *One* of which is masculine, viz. du Bronze, *bronze*. One fem. viz. de la Gâze, *gauze*.

Some nouns feminine are formed in the same manner as the feminine of adjectives, by adding *e* mute to the masculine, or by changing the termination; these are;

1st. The nouns denoting *trade, profession, business, &c.* as,

un Acteur,	<i>an actor</i> ;	une Actrice,	<i>an actress</i> .
un Berger,	<i>a shepherd</i> ;	une Bergère,	<i>a shepherdess</i> .
un Boucher,	<i>a butcher</i> ;	une Bouchère,	<i>a female butcher</i> .
un Boulanger,	<i>a baker</i> ;	une Boulangère,	<i>a female baker</i> .
un Comédien,	<i>a player</i> ;	une Comédienne,	<i>a female player</i> .
un Cuisinier,	<i>a cook</i> ;	une Cuisinière,	<i>a female cook</i> .
un Epicier,	<i>a grocer</i> ;	une Epicière,	<i>a female grocer</i> .
un Fermier,	<i>a farmer</i> ;	une Fermière,	<i>a female farmer</i> .
un Marchand,	<i>a dealer</i> ;	une Marchande,	<i>a female dealer</i> .
un Ouvrier, &c.	<i>a workman</i> ;	une Ouvrière,	<i>a workwoman</i> .

2d. The following, as being the most frequently used;

un Amant,	<i>a lover</i> ;	une Amante,	<i>she who loves</i> .
un Ami,	<i>a male friend</i> ;	une Amie,	<i>a female friend</i> .
un Chat,	<i>a male cat</i> ;	une Chatte,	<i>a female cat</i> .
un Chien,	<i>a dog</i> ;	une Chienne,	<i>a bitch</i> .
un Chanteur,	<i>a male singer</i> ;	une Chanteuse,	<i>a female singer</i> .
un Citoyen,	<i>a citizen</i> ;	une Citoyenne,	<i>a citizeness</i> .
un Compagnon,	<i>a male companion</i> ;	une Compagne,	<i>a female companion</i> .
un Cousin,	<i>a male cousin</i> ;	une Cousine,	<i>a female cousin</i> .
un Danseur,	<i>a male dancer</i> ;	une Danseuse,	<i>a female dancer</i> .
un Diable,	<i>a male devil</i> ;	une Diablesse,	<i>a female devil</i> .
un Ecolier,	<i>a male scholar</i> ;	une Ecolière,	<i>a female scholar</i> .
un Epoux,	<i>a husband</i> ;	une Epouse,	<i>a wife</i> .
un Héritier,	<i>an heir</i> ;	une Héritière,	<i>an heiress</i> .
un Héros,	<i>a hero</i> ;	une Héroïne,	<i>a heroine</i> .
un Hôte,	<i>a landlord</i> ;	une Hôtesse,	<i>a landlady</i> .
un Ivrogne,	<i>a drunken man</i> ;	une Ivrognesse,	<i>a drunken woman</i> .
un Juif,	<i>a Jew</i> ;	une Juive,	<i>a Jewess</i> .
un Lapin,	<i>a buck rabbit</i> ;	une Lapine,	<i>a doe rabbit</i> .
un Lévrier,	<i>a greyhound</i> ;	une Lévrerie,	<i>a greyhound bitch</i> .
un Lion,	<i>a lion</i> ;	une Lionne,	<i>a lioness</i> .
un Loup,	<i>a male wolf</i> ;	une Louve,	<i>a female wolf</i> .
le Maître,	<i>the master</i> ;	la Maîtresse,	<i>the mistress</i> .
le Marié,	<i>the bridegroom</i> ;	la Mariée,	<i>the bride</i> .
un Menteur,	<i>a man who lies</i> ;	une Menteuse,	<i>a woman who lies</i> .
un Orphelin,	<i>a male orphan</i> ;	une Orpheline,	<i>a female orphan</i> .
un Parent,	<i>a male relation</i> ;	une Parente,	<i>a female relation</i> .
un Paysan,	<i>a countryman</i> ;	une Paysanne,	<i>a countrywoman</i> .
un Prisonnier,	<i>a male prisoner</i> ;	une Prisonnière,	<i>a female prisoner</i> .
un Sultan,	<i>a sultan</i> ;	une Sultane,	<i>a sultana</i> .
un Tigre,	<i>a tiger</i> ;	une Tigresse,	<i>a tigress</i> .
un Tuteur,	<i>a male guardian</i> ;	une Tutrice,	<i>a female guardian</i> .
un Veuf,	<i>a widower</i> ;	une Veuve,	<i>a widow</i> .
un Voisin,	<i>a male neighbour</i> ;	une Voisine,	<i>a female neighbour</i> .



## CHAP II.

## ARTICLE.

AN ARTICLE is a *sign* prefixed to a *noun*, to *shew* the *sense* in which that noun is used.

These *signs* are *various*, and generally derive their appellation from the office which they perform in the sentence. They are called in this treatise **DEFINITE, PARTITIVE, NUMERAL, DEMONSTRATIVE, POSSESSIVE.\***

## CHAP. III.

## ARTICLE and NOUN

## GENERAL RULES.

- 1 The **ARTICLE** must be of the same **GENDER** and **NUMBER** as the **NOUN** which follows it; this is called *agreement* of the *article* with the *noun*; ex.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
Masculine.				Feminine.			Masculine and Feminine.
<i>The</i>	LE	<i>Vin.</i>	<i>the</i>	LA	<i>Gloire.</i>	<i>the</i>	LES <i>Plaisirs.</i>
<i>of The</i>	DU	<i>Vin.</i>	<i>of the</i>	de LA	<i>Gloire.</i>	<i>of the</i>	DES <i>Plaisirs.</i>
<i>to The</i>	AU	<i>Vin.</i>	<i>to the</i>	à LA	<i>Gloire.</i>	<i>to the</i>	AUX <i>Plaisirs.</i>
<i>Some</i>	DU	<i>Vin.</i>	<i>some</i>	de LA	<i>Gloire.</i>	<i>some</i>	DES <i>Plaisirs.</i>
<i>A</i>	UN	<i>Verre.</i>	<i>a</i>	UNE	<i>Tasse.</i>	<i>these</i> <i>those</i> }	CES <i>Plaisirs.</i>
<i>This</i>	CE	<i>Verre.</i>	<i>this</i>	CETTE	<i>Tasse.</i>		
<i>That</i>			<i>that</i>				
<i>My†</i>	MON	<i>Vin.</i>	<i>my</i>	MA	<i>Gloire.</i>	<i>my</i>	MES <i>Plaisirs.</i>
<i>Thy</i>	TON	<i>Vin.</i>	<i>thy</i>	TA	<i>Gloire.</i>	<i>thy</i>	TES <i>Plaisirs.</i>
<i>His</i>	SON	<i>Vin.</i>	<i>his</i>	SA	<i>Gloire.</i>	<i>his</i>	SES <i>Plaisirs.</i>
<i>Her</i>	SON	<i>Vin.</i>	<i>her</i>	SA	<i>Gloire.</i>	<i>her</i>	SES <i>Plaisirs.</i>
<i>Ours†</i>	NOTRE	<i>Vin.</i>	<i>our</i>	NOTRE	<i>Gloire.</i>	<i>our</i>	NOS <i>Plaisirs.</i>
<i>Your</i>	VOTRE	<i>Vin.</i>	<i>your</i>	VOTRE	<i>Gloire.</i>	<i>your</i>	VOS <i>Plaisirs.</i>
<i>Their</i>	LEUR	<i>Vin.</i>	<i>their</i>	LEUR	<i>Gloire.</i>	<i>their</i>	LEURS <i>Plaisirs.</i>

- 2 If the noun which follows the **ARTICLE** is *singular*, and begins with a **VOWEL** or **H mute†**, whether it is *masculine* or *feminine*, **MELODY** requires

L' <i>instead of</i>	LE, LA;	as, <i>The</i>	L' <i>Honneur.</i> m.	L' <i>Amitié.</i> f.
de L' <i>instead of</i>	DU, de LA;	<i>of The</i>	de L' <i>Honneur.</i>	de L' <i>Amitié.</i>
à L' <i>instead of</i>	AU, à LA;	<i>to The</i>	à L' <i>Honneur.</i>	à L' <i>Amitié.</i>
CET	CE;	<i>This or That</i>	GET <i>Honneur.</i>	CETTE <i>Amitié.</i>
MON	MA;	<i>My</i>	MON <i>Honneur.</i>	MON <i>Amitié.</i>
TON	TA;	<i>Thy</i>	TON <i>Honneur.</i>	TON <i>Amitié.</i>
SON	SA;	<i>His or Her</i>	SON <i>Honneur.</i>	SON <i>Amitié.</i>

- 3 The **ARTICLE** must be *repeated* before every noun in french, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of each noun, though the nouns are in the same sentence, and though the article is not repeated in english; as,

*The* brother, sister and cousins. LE frère, LA sœur et LES cousins.

*Some* wine, glory and pleasures. DU vin, de LA gloire et DES plaisirs.

\* See page 61, a table of the words called **ARTICLE**.

† See note \* page 31

‡ H mute is marked through these exercises with an apostrophe, this mark ' before it.

## PARTICULAR RULES.

## PROPER NAMES.

The NAMES of *PERSONS* and *PLACES*, i. e. of *cities, towns, villages, &c.* 4  
are used in french as in english, *without* any of the signs called *article*; as,

I have seen	Cæsar,	J'ai vu	Cæsar, (a)
	Rome.		Rome.
The statue	of Cæsar,	La statue	DE Cæsar,
	at Rome.		à Rome. (b)

But the NAMES of *COUNTRIES* and *PROVINCES* which are used *without* 5  
an article in english, require, in french, the *definite* article *LE, LA, LES*;  
DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX, the same as common names; ex.

I have seen	France,	J'ai vu	LA France,
	Italy.		L' Italie.

The beauties	of France,	Les beautés	de LA France,
	of Italy.		de L' Italie.

It belongs	to France, &c.	Il appartient	à LA France, &c. (c)
------------	----------------	---------------	----------------------

Yet the NAMES of *COUNTRIES* and *PROVINCES* are used *without the* 6  
*article*, when they come after verbs denoting *dwelling* or *movement*; such  
as, *TO BE in, TO LIVE in, TO GO to, TO COME from.*

In these instances, *IN, TO*, are expressed by *EN*, and *FROM* by *DE*; as,

I am going	to France,	Je vais	EN France,
	to Italy.		EN Italie.

I have been	in France	J'ai été	EN France,
	in Italy.		EN Italie.

I come	from France,	Je viens	EN France,
	from Italy.		D' Italie. (d)

(a) Some names of *persons*, derived from *common* names, such as, *Le Brun, Le Blanc, Le Noir, La Porte, La Grange, La Fontaine, &c.* are always preceded by an article, but that article is considered as a syllable of the name, and never varies.

(b) Except *le Caire, Cairo*; *le Catelet, la Chapelle, la Charité, la Ferté, la Flèche, le Havre, la Havanne, Hayannah*; *la Haye, the Hague*; *la Hogue, le Mans, la Mecque, Mecca*; *le Plessis, le Pui, le Quenoi, la Rochelle*, which require the definite article, for we say, *Je viens du Havre. I come from Havre. Je vais à la Rochelle. I am going to Rochelle.*

(c) Some names of *countries*, which take their name from their capital city, such as, *Alger, Algiers*; *Avignon, Gènes, Genoa*; *Genève, Geneva*; *Florence, Maroc, Morocco*; *Naples, Orange, Tunis, Tripoli, Venise*; or from the name of some person; as, *St. Domingue, St. Domingo*; *St. Vincent, &c.* do not require the article.

(d) From this rule must be excepted the *countries* discovered by the navigators, and some countries in *Asia* and *Africa*, which are never used without the article. The most essential to be known, on account of their being frequented by the Europeans, are

l' Archipel,	Archipelago.	la Floride,	Florida.	le Mississipi,	Mississippi.
les Barbades,	Barbadoes.	la Grénade,	Grenada	le Mogol,	Mogul Emp.
le Bengal,	Bengal.	la Guadeloupe,	Guadeloupe.	les Moluques,	Moluccal Isles.
la Bermude,	Bermuda.	la Guienne,	Guiana.	la Nigritie,	[terre, Nigritia.
le Brésil,	Brasil.	l' Inde,	India.	la Nouvelle Angle-	New England.
la Californie,	California.	l' Indostan,	Indostan.	le Paraguay,	Paraguay.
le Canada,	Canada.	la Jamaïque,	Jamaica.	le Péloponèse,	Peloponesus.
la Caroline,	Carolina.	le Japon,	Japan.	la Pensylvanie,	Pensylvania.
le Chili,	Chili.	le Levant,	The Levant.	le Pérou,	Peru.
la Chine,	China.	la Louisiane,	Louisiana.	les Philippines,	The Phil. Isles.
la Cochinchine,	Cochinchina.	la Martinique,	Martinique.	la Sonde,	Sunda.
le Congo,	Congo.	le Mexique,	Mexico.	la Virginie,	Virginia.

For we say; *J' ai été au Canada. I have been in Canada. Je vais à la Jamaïque, au Mexique, au Pérou, &c. I am going to Jamaica, to Mexico, to Peru, &c. Je viens du Japon, de la Chine, des Indes, &c. I come from Japan, China, the Indies, &c.*

## COMMON NAMES.

## DEFINITE ARTICLE.

THE, LE, LA, LES; DU, *de* LA, DES; AU, *à* LA, AUX.

- 7 Every *COMMON* name used in a *GENERAL* sense, i. e. implying the *whole*\* of the substance spoken of, or in a *PARTICULAR* sense, i. e. implying some *particular sort*\* of the substance, requires before it one of the definite signs LE, LA, LES; DU, *de* LA, DES; AU, *à* LA, AUX, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; ex.

*GENERAL* sense, *no article* in english before the noun.

I like wine,

J'aime LE *vin*,

glory,

LA gloire,

money,

L' argent,

pleasures.

LES plaisirs

The love of wine, of glory.

L'amour DU *vin*, de LA gloire, &c.

He owes it to wine, to glory.

Il le doit AU *vin*, à LA gloire, &c.*PARTICULAR* sense, in english *THE* before the noun.This is *the* wineVoici LE *vin*,*the* glory

LA gloire,

*the* money

L' argent,

These are *the* pleasures

LES plaisirs

A glass of *the* wine I like.Un verre DU *vin* que j'aime.*OF* expressed by *DE*; not by *du, de la, des*.

- 8 In the above examples you see *OF* expressed by *du, de la, des*, but observe that this preposition coming after a noun used in a *partitive* sense,\* can not be expressed by *du, de la, des*, which would then *particularize*\* the substance spoken of, and mean of *THE*; it must be expressed by *DE* only, without any regard to the gender or number of the noun; so we say,

We have a pipe of wine,

Nous avons une pipe DE *vin*,

plenty of money,

quantité d'argent,

a variety of pleasures.

une variété DE plaisirs.

Not, *une pipe du vin, quantité de l'argent, &c.* which would mean a pipe of *the* wine, quantity of *the* money, &c.†

N. B. In this rule must be included the following words which, though

\* When you speak of a substance, you either mean it *Whole*, or in *Parts*.

If you mean the *Whole* of the substance of which you are speaking, the noun that names it, is said to be used in a *General sense*; as, *Wine cheers the heart of man*, i. e. that substance in general known by the name of *Wine*, cheers the heart of man.

If you mean some *Particular sort* of the substance of which you are speaking, the noun is said to be used in a *Particular sense*; as, *The wine which we drank was good*; in speaking thus, I do not mean to say, that all the substance called wine is good, for there is bad wine, but that *particular sort* which we drank was good.

If you neither mean the whole, nor any particular sort of the substance spoken of, but a certain *Portion*, or *Quantity* of it; as when you say, *Give me some wine, A glass of wine*; i. e. a *portion* of the substance called wine, the noun is said to be used in a *Partitive sense*.

† It appears from the foregoing examples that, when two nouns come together in french, they must be connected by some sign, and this sign is determined by the sense in which the nouns are used.

If, as in the first instance (rule 7.), the nouns are used in an *unlimited* signification, they must be connected by the sign which denotes that idea, viz. *du, de la, des*.

But if, as in the second instance (rule 8), the extent of the *second* noun is determined by the *first*, then a simple preposition is sufficient to connect them.

they have no sign after them in english, require in french the connective particle *DE* to unite them to the noun which follows them;

ASSEZ, <i>enough</i> ;	as, <i>assez</i>	DE vin
BEAUCOUP, <i>much, many</i> ; (e)	<i>Beaucoup</i>	D' argent.
COMBIEN, <i>how much, how many</i> ;	<i>combien</i>	DE gloire.
TANT, <i>so much, so many</i> ;	<i>Tant</i>	DE plaisirs.
AUTANT, <i>as much, as many</i> ;	<i>Autant</i>	DE vin.
PLUS, <i>more</i> ;	<i>plus</i>	D' argent.
MOINS, <i>less</i> ;	<i>moins</i>	DE gloire.
TROP, <i>too much, too many</i> ;	<i>Trop</i>	DE plaisirs.
PEU, } <i>little, few</i> ;	<i>Peu</i>	DE vin.
GUÈRE, }	<i>Guère</i>	D' argent.
PAS, } <i>no, not</i> ;	<i>Pas, or</i>	DE gloire.
POINT, }	<i>point</i>	
JAMAIS, <i>never</i> ;	<i>Jamais</i>	DE plaisirs.

## PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

SOME, ANY; DU, de LA, DES.

Every *COMMON* name used in a *PARTITIVE* sense\* i. e. implying only a *portion* of the substance spoken of, requires one of the *partitive* signs *DU, de LA, DES*, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; as,

We have <i>some</i> wine,	<i>Nous avons DU vin,</i>
<i>some</i> glory,	de LA gloire,
<i>some</i> money,	de L' argent,
<i>some</i> pleasures.	DES plaisirs.

*N. B.* The sign *SOME* is often understood in english before *collective* substantives, such as, *men, bread, meat, money, clothes, wine, fruit, pleasure, &c.* but the corresponding sign can not be omitted in french, and it must be *repeated* before every noun; as,

We have wine, glory, money, pleasures; i. e. *some* wine, *some* &c.  
*Nous avons DU vin, de LA gloire, de L'argent, DES plaisirs.*

Exception. *SOME, ANY* expressed by *DE*; not by *du, de la, des*.

The *partitive* signs *du, de la, des*, require the noun *immediately* after them, therefore, if a noun used in a *partitive* sense is *preceded* by an *adjective*, use *DE* before that *adjective* without *any* regard to *gender* or *number*, instead of *du, de la, des* before the noun; as,

We have <i>excellent</i> wine,	<i>Nous avons d' excellent vin,</i>
<i>fresh</i> glory,	DE nouvelle gloire,
<i>very good</i> money,	DE très bon argent,
<i>true</i> pleasures.	DE vrais plaisirs.

But if, agreeably to the general rule, the adjective comes after the noun, then the noun resumes its proper sign, viz. *DU, de LA, DES*; as,

<i>Nous avons DU vin excellent,</i>	<i>We have excellent wine,</i>
de LA gloire bien acquise,	well acquired glory,
de L' argent comptant,	ready money,
DES plaisirs champêtres.	rural pleasures.

(e) *Much, Many*, are expressed by *Beaucoup* or by *Bien*, with this difference only, that *Beaucoup* requires *DE* after it, and *Bien* requires *DU, de LA, DES*; so we say,  
*Beaucoup de vin, de gloire, d' argent, de plaisirs.*

Or, *Bien du vin, de la gloire, de l' argent, des plaisirs.*

\* See note \* page 192.



## NUMERAL ARTICLE.

A, AN; UN, UNE.

- 11 A, AN denoting *individuality*, i. e. *one* only of the substance spoken of, is expressed in french by the number UN, UNE, and no distinction is made between A and ONE; as,

A or one bottle.	UNE bouteille.
A or one pound.	UNE livre.
A or one dozen.	UNE douzaine.
A or one hundred.	UN cent. (f)

- 12 But A, AN before the names of *measure, weight, number and periods of time*, used in a *collective* sense, i. e. not denoting *individuality*, is not expressed by UN, UNE, it is expressed by LE, LA; as,

Wine sells at six shillings a bottle;	Le vin se vend six shélins	LA bou-
i. e. six shillings per bottle.	teille; not,	UNE bouteille.
Butter twenty pence a pound;	Le beurre vingt sous	LA livre;
i. e. per pound.	not,	UNE livre.
Eggs a shilling a dozen;	Les œufs un shélin	LA douzaine;
i. e. one shilling per dozen.	not,	UNE douzaine.
Oranges a guinea a hundred;	Les Oranges une guinée	LE cent;
i. e. one guinea per hundred.	not,	une guinée UN cent.
I go to town once a day;	Je vais à la ville une fois	LE jour,
i. e. each day, or daily.	or PAR jour; not,	UN jour.
Three times a week, or weekly.	Trois fois	LA semaine, or PAR sem.

By these words *a* bottle, *a* pound, *a* dozen, *a* hundred, I do not mean that *one single* or individual bottle, pound, dozen or hundred sells at that price; but *each* bottle, pound, dozen, or hundred; nor that I go to town *one single* day or week; but *each* day, *each* week.

## DEMONSTRATIVE ARTICLE.

THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE; CE, CET, CETTE, CES.

The *demonstrative* words, CE, CET, CETTE, CES are used in the same instances as the corresponding signs are in english; they serve to point out the objects we name, and follow the same rule as LE, LA, LES; ex.

I like <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> wine,	J'aime CE vin,
<i>this</i> or <i>that</i> beer,	CETTE bière,
<i>this</i> or <i>that</i> money,	CET argent,
<i>these</i> or <i>those</i> fruits.	CES fruits.

N. B. CE, CET, CETTE, CES do not express that local distinction which is implied in the words *THIS, THESE; THAT, THOSE*; so, if you wish to make the same distinction in french, you must add to the noun, CI to denote the *nearest* object, and LÀ to denote the *remotest*; as,

I prefer <i>this</i> wine to that,	Je préfère CE vin - CI à celui-LÀ.
<i>this</i> beer to that.*	CETTE bière-CI à celle-LÀ.
I prefer <i>that</i> wine to this,	Je préfère CE vin - LÀ à celui-CI.
<i>that</i> beer to this,*	CETTE bière-LÀ à celle-CI.
<i>this</i> money to that,	CET argent-CI à celui-LÀ.
<i>those</i> fruits to these.	CES fruits-LÀ à ceux-CI.

(f) Any number prefixed to a noun may be considered as an article, since, like the article, it serves to determine the acceptance of that noun; as, *Deux hommes, two men; Trois femmes, three women; Quatre livres, four books; Six bouteilles, six bottles, &c*

\* THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE are also pronouns; see note (p) page 89.

## POSSESSIVE ARTICLE.

MY, THY, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR.

MON, MA, MES; TON, TA, TES; SON, SA, SES; NOTRE, &amp;c.

These words follow the same rule as the article LE, LA, LES; they agree in *gender* and *number* with the *noun* which follows them; so, 14

Her father, is, SON père. His or her son, SON fils.

His mother, SA mère. His or her daughter, SA fille. 15

The *possessive* article MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR is expressed by the *definite* LE, LA, LES, when prefixed to the name of any part of the body, after a verb denoting a *natural action* of the body; as,

I open my	} mouth.	J' ouvre	} LA bouche;
Thou openest thy		Tu ouvres	
He opens his		Il ouvre	

Or when the verb denotes an action done upon the body; as,

I have cut my	} finger.	Je ME suis	} coupé LE doigt.*
Thou hast cut thy		Tu t' es	
He has cut his		Il s' est†	

Never say; J'ai coupé MON doigt; Tu as coupé TON doigt; Il a coupé SON doigt, &c.

N. B. Observe that in speaking of an action done upon the body, the person on whom the action is done must be denoted by a *personal pronoun*; so, if the verb is not *reflective*, i. e. if the agent does not act upon itself, as it does above, one of the pronouns ME, NOUS, TE, VOUS, LUI, LEUR, agreeably to *number* and *person*, must be added to the verb; as,

He has cut	} finger.	Il M'	} a coupé LE doigt.
thy		Il T'	
his or her		Il LUI	
He has cut	} fingers.	Il NOUS	} a coupé LES doigts.
your		Il VOUS	
their		Il LEUR	

Never say; Il a coupé MON doigt; Il a coupé TON doigt; Il a coupé SON doigt, &c.

If, in instances similar to the above, i. e. before the names of the parts of the body, the *possessive* words MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR come with the verbs, To have a pain, Avoir mal; To hurt, se Faire mal; To be cold, Avoir froid; To be warm, Avoir chaud; they are expressed by AU, à LA, AUX; as, 16

I have a pain in my	} finger.	J' ai	} mal AU doigt,
Thou hast a pain in thy		Tu as	
He has a pain in his		Il a	
I have hurt my	} hand.	Je ME suis	} fait mal à LA main;
Thou hast hurt thy		Tu t' es	
He has hurt his		Il s' est†	
My feet are	} cold.	J' ai	} froid AUX pieds;
Thy feet are		Tu as‡	
His or her feet are†		Il or elle a	

\* When I say, J'ouvre LA bouche, I open the mouth; the hearer understands that it is of my own mouth that I am speaking, for if it was the mouth of another being, I should name that being. Again, Je ME suis coupé LE doigt, corresponds with the english, I have cut myself in the finger; and J'ai mal AU doigt, with, I have a pain in the finger. Here also the possession being sufficiently determined by the pronoun ME, or by the verb J'AI, any other possessive expression would be superfluous; however, these are idioms which practice alone can render familiar. † See 237 rule. ‡ See 239 rule.

- 17 *ITS* and *THEIR* neuter, are also expressed by *LE, LA, LES*, and the pronoun *EN* is added to the verb, when the noun to which they are prefixed is not governed by the *same* verb as the noun to which they refer; as,  
That tree is fine, but *its* fruit is good for nothing.

*Cet arbre est beau, mais LE fruit n'EN vaut rien; i. e. the fruit of it.*  
But they are expressed by *SON, SA, SES, LEUR*, if the nouns are governed by the *same* verb; as,

I like that tree, *its* shape and *its* leaves.

*J'aime cet arbre, SA forme et SES feuilles.*

- 18 The *possessive* *MON, MA, MES* must be *prefixed* to names of *kindred* and *friendship*, when we *call* or *answer* any one by those names; as,

Come here, brother.

*Venez ici, MON frère.*

I can not, sister.

*Je ne saurais, MA sœur.*

- 19 The *article* is *left out* in french, when expressed in english, at the *title* page, or before any of the *parts* of a book; as,

A french grammar.

*Grammaire française.*

The preface. The first part.

*Préface. Première partie.*

- 20 The *article* *A, AN* which comes after *WHAT*, is *omitted* in french; as,

What a man!

*Quel homme! not quel UN homme!*

What a woman!

*Quelle femme! – quelle UNE femme!*

- 21 The *article* *A, AN* coming before *HUNDRED* or *THOUSAND*, followed by a noun, or relating to a noun,\* is *not expressed* in french, the words *CENT* and *MILLE* having the property of an *article*\*; as,

I have won a thousand guineas; *J'ai gagné MILLE guinées;*

Will you have a hundred of them? *En voulez-vous CENT? not, UN cent.*

- 22 No *article* is used in french, before a noun added to *illustrate* or *explain* another noun; and the *article* which is prefixed to such nouns in english, must be *omitted* in french; as,

Zaira a tragedy of Voltaire.

*Zaïre tragédie de Voltaire.*

Paris the capital of France.

*Paris capitale de la France.*

Never, *Zaïre UNE tragédie; nor Paris LA capitale &c.*

- 23 But if we left out the first noun, we should say; *J'ai vu UNE tragédie de Voltaire. J'ai vu LA capitale de la France.*

The *article* *A, AN* is also *omitted* in french after some neuter verbs, such as *Être*, to be; *Dévenir*, to become; *se Faire*, to turn; *Passer pour*, to be reckoned, to pass for; the noun which follows these verbs being considered as an *adjective* which serves to *illustrate* their nominative; as,

Is he a Frenchman?

*Est-il Français?*

He passes for a German.

*Il passe pour Allemand.*

His father is a merchant.

*Son père est négociant; not, UN négoc.*

But the *article* must be *expressed*, if the noun is attended by an *adjective* or by a *relative* pronoun, for it then returns into the class of *substantives*;

His father is a wealthy merchant. *Son père est UN riche négociant.*

- 24 No *article* is used in french before a noun which, being joined to a verb, forms only one idea with that verb; as, *Avoir peur*, to fear, to be afraid; *Avoir mal*, to ache, to have a pain; *Avoir raison*, to be right, to be in the right, &c.; these expressions are found in the dictionaries.

\* See note (f) page 194.



*How to place TWO NOUNS together.*

Sometimes *TWO NOUNS* come together, having a dependence on each other, and forming a kind of complex idea; as, 25

*John's horse. The prince's sword. The lady's gown. A silk gown.*

The English have *TWO* ways of using these *NOUNS*; they say,

1. The horse *of John*. The sword *of the prince*. The gown *of the lady*. A gown *of silk*.

2. *John's horse. The prince's sword. The lady's gown. A silk gown.*

The French, on the contrary, have only *ONE* of these modes of placing *TWO NOUNS* together; they, as in the 1st instance, always place *FIRST* the noun which is the *SUBJECT* of *discourse*, with *DU, de LA, DES, DE, or À* *BEFORE* the second noun, agreeably to the sense in which it is used; as,

*John's horse. Le cheval de Jean; i. e. the horse of John. 4. rule.*

*The prince's sword. L'épée du prince; the sword of the prince. 7*

*The lady's gown. La robe de la dame; the gown of the lady. 7*

*A silk gown. Une robe de soie; a gown of silk. 8 rule.*

Sometimes however the order of the nouns could not be changed in the above manner in english, without changing also the meaning; for ex. these expressions, a *wine glass*, a *tea spoon*, could not be turned into a *glass* of wine, a *spoon* of tea; yet the nouns require this order in french: instead of changing the order of the words to alter the idea, as the English do, the French change the preposition, and instead of *DE*, they use *À*; so, 26

A glass of wine, is, *Un verre de vin*; and

A wine glass, is, *Un verre à vin*; i. e. a glass used for wine.\*

*N. B.* When the nouns are compounded of the words *fair, FOIRE*; *market, MARCHÉ*, and in speaking of *messes*, and the *ingredients* which they are made of, the *TWO NOUNS* are connected by *AU, à LA, AUX*; as,

*The hay market. Le marché au foin; i. e. the market for hay.*

*Some cream tarts. Des tartes à la crème; tarts made with cream.*

Sometimes the *name* of a *COUNTRY* is changed in english into an *adjective*, and prefixed to the name of its production; as *spanish wine*, *french brandy*, *english beer*, *dutch cheese*, &c.; that *adjective* must be expressed by the *substantive* in french, and placed *AFTER* the name of the production, connected by the preposition *DE*; as, 27

*Spanish wine. Vin d'Espagne; i. e. wine of Spain.*

*French brandy. Eau-de-vie de France; i. e. brandy of France.*

Before the *name* of a *COUNTRY*, after a noun denoting *dignity* or *authority*, such as *emperor, king, prince*, &c. *OF* is expressed by *DE*; as, 28

*The emperor of Russia. L'empereur de Russie.*

*The parliament of England. Le parlement d'Angleterre.*

After any other noun, *OF* is expressed by *DU, de LA, DES*; as,

*The south of France. Le sud de la France.*

*The north of England. Le nord de l'Angleterre.*

\* This rule is not without some exceptions, for we say, *Un pot de chambre*, a chamber pot; *Une fille de chambre*, a chamber maid; *Un bonnet de nuit*, a night cap; *Un mouchoir de poche*, a pocket handkerchief; *Un cheval de carosse*, a coach horse; *Un cochon de lait*, a suckling pig, &c. these few exceptions will be learnt by reading, and in conversation.

*N. B.* Many of these *compound names* are expressed by a *single word* in french; as, *Coachman, Cocher*; *Footman, Laquais*; *Countinghouse, Comptoir*; *Coachhouse, Remise*. These expressions are found in the dictionaries, and will be learnt by reading.



## ADJECTIVE.

AN ADJECTIVE is a word *added* to a NOUN, to denote some *quality* or *circumstance* belonging to that noun ; as, *good* wine, *fine* flowers.

- 29 The ADJECTIVE must be of the *same* GENDER and *NUMBER* as the noun to which it is added ; as,

That is a *handsome* man. *Voilà un BEL homme.*

That is a *handsome* woman. *Voilà une BELLE femme.(g)*

N. B. A *past participle*, used to qualify a substantive, follows the same rules as an adjective ; ex.

He is very well *made*. *Il est très bien FAIT.*

She is very well *made*. *Elle est très bien FAITE.*

- 30 When an adjective qualifies *several* nouns *singular* of the *same* GENDER, that adjective must be of the *same* GENDER as those nouns, and *PLURAL* ; as,

My father and brother are *gone* out. *Mon père et mon frère sont SORTIS.*

My mother and sister are *gone* out. *Ma mère et ma sœur sont SORTIES.*

- 31 But if the nouns are of *different* GENDERS, the adjective must be of the *MASCULINE* gender, and in the *PLURAL* number ; as,  
My father and mother are *gone* out. *Mon père et ma mère sont SORTIS.*  
He found his son and daughter *dead*. *Il trouva son fils et sa fille MORTS.(h)*

(g) The *feminine* gender of an *adjective*, or of a *participle* used *adjectively*, is formed by adding *e* *mute*, that is to say, *e* not accented, to the *masculine* ; as,

loved ; pretty ; lost ; great ; fine ; last ; precise ; little ; learned.

Masc. aimé, joli, perdu, grand, fin, dernier. précis, petit, savant.

Fem. aimée. jolie. perdue. grande. fine. dernière. précise. petite. savante.

## EXCEPTIONS.

E. Adjectives ending in *e* *mute*, are the *same* for both genders ; as, Un *honnête* homme, an *honest* man. Une *honnête* femme ; an *honest* woman. Un *jeune* homme *aimable* ; an *amiable* young man. Une *jeune* femme *aimable* ; an *amiable* young woman.

I. The *feminine* of *béni*, blessed, is *bénite* ; that of *favori*, favourite, is *favorite*.

U. The *feminine* of *beau*, fine ; *nouveau*, new ; *mou*, soft ; *fou*, mad ; is *belle*, *nouvelle*, *molle*, *folle*, from *bel*, *nouvel*, *mol*, *fol* used before a noun *masculine* beginning with a vowel.

C. The *feminine* of *blanc*, white ; *franc*, frank ; *sec*, dry ; *caduc*, decayed ; *public*, public ; *grec*, greek ; *turc*, turkish ; is *blanche*, *franche*, *sèche*, *caduque*, *publique*, *grecque*, *turque*.

D. The *feminine* of *nud*, naked ; *crud*, raw ; is *nue*, *crue* ; and that of *verd*, green, is *verte*.

F. Adjectives ending in *f*, change *f* into *ve* for the *feminine* ; as,

Masc. *bref*, brief ; *neuf*, new ; *naïf*, candid ; *actif*, active ; *plaintif*, sorrowful.

Fem. *brève*, brief ; *neuve*, new ; *naïve*, candid ; *active*, active ; *plaintive*, sorrowful.

G. The *feminine* of *long*, long, the only adjective ending in *g*, is *longue*.

L, N, } Adjectives ending in *el*, *eil*, *ul*, *un*, *ien*, *on*, *as*, *uis*, *es*, *et*, *os*, *ot*, double the final S, T, } consonant, and take *e* *mute* for the *feminine* gender ; as,

cruel ; rosy ; null ; ancient ; good ; big ; fat ; thick ; clean ; foolish.

Masc. *cruel*, *vermeil*, *nul*, *ancien*, *bon*, *gros*, *gras*, *épais*, *net*, *sot*.

Fem. *cruelle*, *vermeille*, *nulle*, *ancienne*, *bonne*, *grosse*, *grasse*, *épaisse*, *nette*, *sotte*.

Except the adjectives of nations ; as, *français*, french ; *anglais*, english ; &c. *mauvais*, bad ; *niais*, silly ; *ras*, shorn ; *complet*, complete ; *discret*, discreet ; *inquiet*, uneasy ; *replet*, replete ; *secret*, secret ; which follow the general rule, *française*, *anglaise*, *mauvaise* ; &c. *frais*, fresh ; *tiers*, third ; which make *fraiche*, *tierce* ; and *benin*, benign ; *malin*, mischievous ; which make *benigne*, *maligne*, in the *feminine*.

X. Adjectives ending in *x*, change *x* into *se* for the *feminine* ; as,

Masc. *heureux*, happy ;  *paresseux*, lazy ;  *jaloux*, jealous ;  *faux*, false ;

Fem. *heureuse*, happy.  *paresseuse*, lazy.  *jalouse*, jealous.  *fausse*, false.

Except *doux*, sweet, soft ; which makes *douce* ; and *vicux*, old, which makes *vieille*.

N. B. The *plural* of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, by adding *s* to the *singular*.

(h) When the adjective is not separated from the nouns by a verb, some authors make it agree with the last noun, thus, *Il trouva son fils et sa fille MORTÉ* ; but they except the

Adjectives in english are generally placed **BEFORE** the noun, in french they are generally placed **AFTER** it; as,

A <i>black</i> coat.	<i>Un habit NOIR.</i>
A <i>well made</i> man.	<i>Un homme bien FAIT.</i>
The <i>french</i> language.	<i>La langue FRANÇAISE.</i>

Except these adjectives, which are generally placed **BEFORE** the noun; 33

PREMIER, 1st; SECOND, 2nd; and other adjectives of *number*.

BEAU, BEL, <i>m.</i> } <i>fine,</i>	MÉCHANT, <i>wicked.</i>
BELLE, <i>fem.</i> } <i>handsome.</i>	MEILLEUR, <i>better.</i>
BON, <i>m.</i> BONNE, <i>f.</i> <i>good.</i>	MÊME, <i>same.</i>
GRAND, <i>great, large.</i>	MOINDRE, <i>less.</i>
GROS, <i>m.</i> GROSSE, <i>f.</i> <i>big.</i>	PETIT, <i>little, small.</i>
JEUNE, <i>young.</i>	PLUSIEURS, <i>several.</i>
JOLI, <i>pretty.</i>	TOUT, <i>all, whole.</i>
MAUVAIS, <i>bad.</i>	VIEUX, <i>m.</i> VIEILLE, <i>f.</i> <i>old; as,</i>
She is a <i>handsome</i> woman.	<i>C'est une BELLE femme.</i>
She has a <i>good</i> husband.	<i>Elle a un BON mari.</i>

But if any one of the above adjectives comes with another adjective that can not be placed before the noun, they must *both* be placed **AFTER**, connected by a *conjunction*; as, 34

A *handsome, amiable* woman. *Une femme BELLE et AIMABLE.*

A *good, complaisant* husband. *Un mari BON et COMPLAISANT. (i)*

adjectives which express union; as, *Il trouva son fils et sa fille RÉUNIS, RÉCONCILIÉS, &c.*

These exceptions and exceptions of exceptions are very difficult for learners to retain; therefore I would advise them to follow the general rule, which is perfectly agreeable to the fundamental principles of the french language.

(i) The rules for the placing of adjectives are not very strictly adhered to, especially in poetry. Even in prose many adjectives may be placed either *before* or *after* the noun, according as their position is more agreeable to the ear, of which a learner can be no judge; so his surest way is to follow the rules, and to notice in reading, those adjectives which he finds sometimes *before* and sometimes *after* the noun. Yet custom, for want of other expressions, has fixed a place for some adjectives which must be attended to, as the placing the adjective *before* or *after* the noun *changes the idea*; the most common are,

Un <i>brave</i> homme.	A well behaved man.	Un <i>vilain</i> homme.	A disagreeable man.
Un homme <i>brave</i> .	A courageous man.	Un homme <i>vilain</i> .	A niggardly fellow.
De <i>braves</i> gens.	Well behaved people.	Un <i>pauvre</i> homme.	A man without genius.
Des gens <i>braves</i> .	Courageous people.	Un homme <i>pauvre</i> .	A poor man.
Un <i>bon</i> homme.	A simple man.	Une <i>cruelle</i> femme.	An unfeeling woman.
Un homme <i>bon</i> .	A good natured man.	Une femme <i>cruelle</i> .	A cruel woman.
Un <i>honnête</i> homme.	An honest man.	Une <i>sage</i> femme.	A midwife.
Un homme <i>honnête</i> .	A civil man.	Une femme <i>sage</i> .	A wise woman.
D' <i>honnêtes</i> gens.	Honest people.	Une <i>grosse</i> femme.	A big, fat woman.
Des gens <i>honnêtes</i> .	Civil people.	Une femme <i>grosse</i> .	A woman with child.
Un <i>gentil</i> homme.	A noble man.	Un <i>furieux</i> animal.	A huge creature.
Un homme <i>gentil</i> .	A genteel man.	Un animal <i>furieux</i> .	A fierce animal.
Un <i>galant</i> homme.	A liberal man.	Une <i>certaine</i> nouvelle.	A certain piece of news.
Un homme <i>galant</i> .	A galant.	Une <i>nouvelle certaine</i> .	True or sure news.
Un <i>grand</i> homme.	A great man.	De <i>nouveau</i> vin.	Fresh wine.
Un homme <i>grand</i> .	A tall man.	Du vin <i>nouveau</i> .	Wine newly made.
Un <i>plaisant</i> homme.	An odd sort of a fellow.	La <i>morte</i> eau.	The neap tides.
Un homme <i>plaisant</i> .	A pleasant man.	De l' <i>eau morte</i> .	Standing water.

The adjective *Cher* placed before the noun signifies *dear, affectionate*; as, *Mon cher père*, my dear father; placed after it, it signifies *of high price*; as, *Un livre cher*, a dear book.

*New* is both *Neuf* and *Nouveau*; *Neuf* is said of things newly made; as, A new coat, *Un habit neuf*, i. e. made of new cloth; *un livre neuf*, a new book, i. e. a book that has not been used, &c. *Nouveau* is said of things newly invented, of new productions; as, *Un habit nouveau*, a coat of a new fashion; *Un nouveau livre*, or *un livre nouveau*, a new book, i. e. a new production. *Un nouvel habit* means a new dress.

**35** The adjectives of number, *PREMIER, first*; *SECOND, DEUXIÈME, second*, *TROISIÈME, third*; *QUATRIÈME, fourth*; *CINQUIÈME, fifth*, &c. are placed in french as in english, *before* the noun; as,

The *first* day.

Le *PREMIER* jour.

The *fourth* month.

Le *QUATRIÈME* mois.

**36** But when the adjectives *third, fourth, fifth, sixth*, &c. are used as a *distinction* to some *personage*; as, *George the third, Henry the eighth*; or to *date* the months; as, *July 14th, November 5th*; they are changed into the *substantive* numbers *deux, trois, quatre, cinq, six*, &c.

If used as a *distinction*, they are put *after* the name of the *personage*, as;

*George the third.*

*George TROIS, i. e. george three.*

*Henry the eighth.*

*Henri HUIT, i. e. henry eight.*

If used as a *date*, they are put *before* the name of the month, joined to it by *DE*; as, *July 14th.*

Le *QUATORZE* de *Juillet.*

*November 5th.*

Le *CINQ* de *Novembre.*(k)

**37** Adjectives of *measure* and *dimension*, such as, *high, tall, low, deep, thick, big, wide, broad, long, short*, &c. which are placed *after* the number in english, must be placed *before* it in french, joined to it by *DE*; as,

A room twelve feet *long*, and ten *broad*.

*Une chambre LONGUE de douze pieds, et LARGE de dix*;

*Literal.* A room *long* of twelve feet, and *broad* of ten.

A wall ten feet *high*, and two feet *thick*.

*Un mur HAUT de dix pieds, et ÉPAIS de deux*;

*Literal.* A wall *high* of ten feet, and *thick* of two.

*N. B.* The adjectives of *measure* and *dimension* are frequently expressed in french by their *substantives*;† then the words remain in the same order in french as they are in english, but both the number and the noun of measure must be preceded by *DE*; as,

A room twelve feet *long*, and ten *broad*.

*Une chambre de douze pieds de LONGUEUR, et de dix de LARGEUR.*

*Literal.* A room of twelve feet of *length*, and of ten of *breadth*.

A wall ten feet *high*, and two feet *thick*.

*Un mur de dix pieds de HAUTEUR, et de deux d'ÉPAISSEUR*;

*Literal.* A wall of ten feet of *height*, and of two of *thickness*.

But observe that when the *adjective* is changed into its *substantive*, the verb *ÊTRE* must be changed into *AVOIR*, and *DE* is omitted before the number; as, Our room *is* twelve feet long, and ten broad.

*Adject.* Notre chambre *EST* LONGUE de douze pieds, et LARGE de dix.

*Subst.* Notre chambre *A* douze pieds de LONGUEUR, et dix de LARGEUR;

*i. e.* Our room *has* twelve feet of length, and ten of breadth.

*Adject.* Ce mur *EST* HAUT de dix pieds, et ÉPAIS de deux.

*Subst.* Ce mur *A* dix pieds de HAUTEUR, et deux d'ÉPAISSEUR;

*i. e.* This wall *has* ten feet of height, and two of thickness.

(k) Except *Premier* in dating the days, and *Premier* and *Second* when used for a distinction; for we do not say, *Le un* de Janvier, the *one* of January; but, *Le premier* de Janvier, *Le deux*, *Le trois*, &c. nor do we say, *George un*, *George one*; *George deux*, *George two*; but *George premier*, *George second*, and then, *George trois*, *George three*; *George quatre*, &c.

† The substantive may be formed by adding *ur* to the adjective when it ends with a vowel; as, *Large, largeur*; and *eur* when it ends with a consonant; as, *Haut, hauteur*, &c.



## REMARKS ON THE ADJECTIVES.

The ADJECTIVE can *not* be separated by an article from the NOUN which it qualifies, therefore those *articles* which come *between* the adjective and the noun in english, must be placed *BEFORE* them in french; as, 38

Such a man. UN *tel* homme; not *tel* UN homme.

So great a thing. UNE *si* grande chose.

Except *TOUT*, *all*, *whole*, which requires the article *after* it; as,

All *his* time. Tout SON *tems*.

The whole day. Tout LE *jour*.

A whole day. Tout UN *jour*.\*

Except also, when the adjective is used to *distinguish* some particular person from another person of the same name; as,

Peter *the* cruel. Pierre LE *cruel*.

Cato *the* elder. Caton L'*ancien*.

Alexander *the* great. Alexandre LE *grand*.

By *prefixing* to an *adjective*, an ARTICLE of the same gender and number as the noun to which it refers, that *adjective* has often the property of a *SUBSTANTIVE*, and the words *man*, *woman*, *people* which are expressed in english, may be omitted in french; as, 39

The wise *man* is happy. LE SAGE *est* heureux.

He is a troublesome *man*. C'est un IMPORTUN.

She is a little brown *woman*. C'est une PETITE BRUNE.

The great; the covetous *people*. Les GRANDS; les AVARES.†

As an ARTICLE *prefixed* to an ADJECTIVE without a noun, gives to it the property of a *SUBSTANTIVE*, so when the ARTICLE is *taken from* a NOUN, that noun assumes the power of an ADJECTIVE; for example, 40

I know a *poet*.

I speak of a *philosopher*.

Here the words *poet* and *philosopher* are *SUBSTANTIVES*, because they name the *objects* spoken of, consequently they require an article; so,

Je connais un POÈTE.

Je parle d'un PHILOSOPHE. But when I say,

The *man* I speak of is a *poet* and a *philosopher*.

He is a *poet*, but he is not a *philosopher*.

The substance I am speaking of is *man*, the words *poet* and *philosopher* are only *attributes* of that substance, and they no more require an article than if I said; the man I speak of is *witty*, is *wise*; so the French,

L'homme dont je parle est POÈTE et PHILOSOPHE.

Il est POÈTE, mais il n'est pas PHILOSOPHE.

A *philosopher* is seldom a *poet*, but a *poet* is seldomer a *philosopher*.

*Philosopher* in the 1st part of the sentence is a *substanz*. in the 2nd an *adj*.

*Poet* in the 1st part of the sentence is an *adjective*, in the 2nd a *substantive*;

So the French,

Rarement UN philosophe est POÈTE, mais plus rarement UN poète est PHILOSOPHE. (See the 23rd rule.)

\* And if *TOUT* is governed by a preposition, the preposition must be placed *before* *TOUT*, and the article *after*; as,

Of the whole regiment. De tout LE régiment. To the whole fleet. À toute LA flotte.

† This rule extends to many adjectives, but not to all; they should be taken notice of in reading.



## COMPARISONS

The same words which serve to *qualify* nouns, serve also, by the means of certain ADVERBS *prefixed* to them, to *COMPARE* their qualities.

The quality of a substance, when compared with another, is either SUPERIOR, INFERIOR, or EQUAL to the other; this is called *COMPARATIVE*.

Or the quality is *raised* ABOVE, or *lowered* BELOW several others, and this is called *SUPERLATIVE*.

## OF COMPARATIVES.

- 41 The comparative of SUPERIORITY *MORE* before the adjective, or *R* or *ER* added to it, as *more* strong or stronger, is formed in french by PLUS before the adjective;\* as,

My horse is *more* strong or stronger *than* yours.

*Mon cheval est PLUS fort QUE le vôtre.*

- 42 The comparative of INFERIORITY *LESS* before the adjective, is formed in french by MOINS before the adjective;† as,

My horse is *less* strong *than* yours.

*Mon cheval est MOINS fort QUE le vôtre.*

The same comparative formed by *so* before the adjective, and *as* after it, is expressed, *so* before the adjective by SI, and *as* after it by QUE; as,

My horse is not *so* strong *as* yours.

*Mon cheval n'est pas SI fort QUE le vôtre.*

- 43 The comparative of EQUALITY *AS* before, and *as* after the adjective, is expressed, *as* before the adjective by AUSSI, and *as* after it by QUE; as,

My horse is *as* strong *as* yours.

*Mon cheval est AUSSI fort QUE le vôtre.*

## OF SUPERLATIVES.

- 44 The superlative formed by *MOST* or *LEAST* before the adjective, or by *ST* or *EST* added to it; as, *most* strong or strongest, is formed in french by adding LE, LA, LES to the comparative words PLUS, MOINS; as,

*Comp.* stronger, PLUS fort, m. PLUS forte, f.

*Sup.* strongest, LE PLUS fort, LA PLUS forte, LES PLUS forts, LES PLUS fortes.

*Comp.* less strong, MOINS fort, m. MOINS forte, f.

*Super.* least strong, LE MOINS fort, LA MOINS forte, LES MOINS forts, LES MOINS fortes, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

My pony is the *strongest* of my horses.

*Mon bidet est LE PLUS fort de mes chevaux.*

My mare is the *least* strong of the two.

*Ma jument est LA MOINS forte des deux.(l)*

N. B. The comparison of *adverbs* is formed like that of *adjectives*; as, Strongly, *Fortement.* more strongly, PLUS *fortement.*

*Most* strongly, LE PLUS *fortement.* less strongly, MOINS *fortement,* &c.

\* Except MEILLEUR, better; PIRE, worse, adjectives, } which are comparatives of  
MIEUX, better; PIS, worse, adverbs, } themselves.

† Except MOINDRE, less,

(l) Observe what is said, note \* page 33, that two of the signs called ARTICLE, can not be prefixed to the same noun; so,

My strongest horse; is, Mon PLUS fort cheval; Not, Mon le PLUS fort cheval.

Observe also, that if the adjective is placed first, the article needs not to be repeated before the noun; but if the noun is first, the article must be repeated before the adjective; as, It is the *strongest* horse I have seen.

C'est le PLUS fort cheval que j'ai vu; or C'est le cheval le PLUS fort que j'ai vu.

## REMARKS on the COMPARATIVE and SUPERLATIVE.

When the *comparison* runs between *TWO* PARTS of a sentence, an **ARTICLE** is added to the *comparative* in english; as, 45

*The more you study, the more you learn;*

This **ARTICLE** is *omitted* in french;

PLUS vous étudiez, PLUS vous apprenez.

And the **ADJECTIVE** or **NOUN** which, in these instances, comes *before* the *verb* in english, must be placed *AFTER* it in french; as,

*The longer the day is, the shorter is the night.*

PLUS le jour est LONG, PLUS la nuit est COURTE;

*Literal. More the day is long, more the night is short.*

*The more populous a country is, the richer it is.*

PLUS un pays est PEUPLÉ, PLUS il est RICHE;

*Literal. More a country is populous, more it is rich.*

The *comparative* words PLUS, MOINS, SI, AUSSI must be *repeated* **BEFORE every adjective**, though they are in the same sentence; as, 46

*She is as rich and handsome as her cousin.*

Elle est AUSSI riche et AUSSI belle que sa cousine.

The *comparative* words PLUS, MOINS, MOINDRE, MEILLEUR, MIEUX, **PIRE, PIS** require *NE* before the *verb* which follows them; as, 47

*This is better than I thought.*

Ceci est MEILLEUR que je NE pensais.

However *NE* is not required if the following *verb* is in the *infinitive*, or if it is preceded by a *conjunction*; as,

*It is greater to forgive than to revenge.*

Il est plus grand de PARDONNER que de\* se VENGER.

*I am better now than when I was in town.*

Je me porte mieux à présent que QUAND j'étais à la ville.

The particles *BY* and *THAN* coming after the *COMPARATIVE*, or after the *adverbs* MORE, LESS followed by a word denoting *quantity*, not *quality*, are expressed by *DE*, not by *QUE* or *PAR*; as, 48

*It is stronger by much.*

Il est plus fort DE beaucoup.

*It costs more than ten guineas.* Il coûte plus DE dix guinées.

The preposition *IN*, after a *superlative* in english, is expressed in french *in the same manner* as *OF*, agreeably to the rules on the article; as, 49

*He is the richest merchant in London.*

C'est le plus riche négociant DE Londres; i. e. of London.

*She is the most virtuous woman in the city.*

C'est la femme la plus vertueuse de LA ville; i. e. of the city.

The *superlative* followed by the *relative* or definite *pronoun*, *QUI*, *QUE*, **DONT** requires the following *verb* in the *subjunctive mood*; as, 50

*She is the prettiest woman that was at the ball.*

C'est la plus jolie femme QUI FÛT au bal.

*He is the handsomest man that I have ever seen.*

C'est le plus bel homme QUE j'AIE jamais vu.

\* The same preposition which follows the comparative must be repeated after *QUE*; as,  
We are more inclined to revenge, than to forgive.  
Nous sommes PLUS portés à nous venger QU'à pardonner.

## PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is a word used to represent a NOUN, as when I say *I* instead of naming *my own name*; *THOU, YOU, HE, SHE, IT, THEY* instead of naming that of *another being*.

There are various sorts of pronouns, generally known by the names of PERSONAL, RELATIVE, POSSESSIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE, INDEFINITE.

## SECT. I.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

As there are THREE persons in grammar, so there are THREE sorts of words to represent them, but sometimes the same person is represented by SEVERAL words, as appears from the following table.

Agents or NOMINATIVES of Verbs.			OBJECTS of Verbs, or of Prepositions.*		
1st per.	I, JE, MOI.		ME, ME, MOI.		
	WE; NOUS,		US; NOUS.		
2nd per.	THOU, TU, TOI.		THEE, TE, TOI.		
	YOU; VOUS.		YOU; VOUS,		
3rd p. m.	HE, IL, LUI.		HIM, LE, LUI.		
	THEY; ILS. EUX.		THEM; LES, LEUR, EUX		
3rd p. f.	SHE, ELLE,		HER, LA, LUI, ELLE.		
	THEY; ELLES.		THEM; LES, LEUR, ELLES.		
3rd p. n.	IT, IL, m. ELLE. f.		IT, LE, m. LA, f. EN, Y.		
	THEY; ILS, m. ELLES. f.		THEM; LES, m. & f. EN, Y.		
3rd pers. common	}		HIMself,	}	SE, SOI:
			HERself,		
			ITself,		
			THEMselfs;		

And as these words are not used indiscriminately, it is necessary to attend to the following observations.

\* In every action there is an Agent, doer, or performer; as *I* write, *I* teach, *Thou* teachest, *He* teaches, *The master* teaches; and if the action is of a nature to be communicated, there is also generally a Patient or receiver; as, *I* write a Letter, *I* teach *You*, *Him*, *Her*, *Them*, *French*, *English*, &c. This Agent or doer, in grammar, is called the NOMINATIVE of the verb, and the Patient or receiver, is called the OBJECT; so, *I*, *Thou*, *He*, *The master* are NOMINATIVES; *Letter*, *You*, *Him*, *Her*, &c. are OBJECTS of the verb.

Until now I have avoided speaking of Cases, because if a case be what it seems to be, a modification or variation from the original word, it is evident that in french there are no cases in nouns; and it is astonishing that grammarians should still persist in giving six cases to our nouns, as is done in Latin. Whether a noun be the giver or receiver of an action, i.e. whether it be the nominative or the object of the verb, it remains invariably the same; for ex.

Mon frère aime votre sœur.

My brother loves your sister.

Votre sœur aime mon frère.

Your sister loves my brother.

In the first instance, *Frère*, brother, is the nominative of the verb; in the second, it is the object. *Sœur*, sister, in the first instance, is the object of the verb; in the second, it is the nominative; and in both instances, the words are the same.

But it is not so with the Personal, and Relative pronouns. The same substantive, when the object of the verb, is not always expressed by the same word as when it is the agent or nominative; so we do not say,

IL aime ELLE, ELLE aime IL;  
we say, IL L'aime ELLE L'aime;

He loves she, she loves he;  
He loves her, she loves him.

If it be asked why this variation in the pronouns and not in nouns; it may be answered, that the pronouns having been invented to prevent the tiresome repetition of the same noun, if there had been only one word to supply its place, the repetition of that word must have been too frequent, and only half the inconvenience would have been removed.



*Agents, or NOMINATIVE Pronouns.*

*I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY.*

These pronouns are sometimes *singly* the *nominative* of a *verb*; as *I AM, thou ART, he IS*; sometimes *jointly* with another *substantive*\*; as, *you and I ARE*; *he and his brother ARE*; and sometimes they are used absolutely *without* a verb; as, *Who is there? I.*

When *I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY* are attended by a verb 51  
that agrees with them in *number* and *person*, they are;

<i>I,</i>	<i>JE.</i>	<i>HE, IT, m.</i>	<i>IL.</i>
<i>THOU,</i>	<i>TU.</i>	<i>THEY, mas.</i>	<i>ILS.</i>
<i>WE,</i>	<i>NOUS.</i>	<i>SHE, IT, f.</i>	<i>ELLE.</i>
<i>YOU.</i>	<i>VOUS.</i>	<i>THEY, fem.</i>	<i>ELLES.</i>

These words keep the *same place* in the sentence in french as in english;† *ex.*

*I am, thou art, he is, she is. JE suis, TU es, IL est, ELLE est.*

*Am I? Art thou? Is he? Is she? Suis-JE? Es-TU? Est-IL? Est-ELLE?*

If *I, THOU, HE, SHE, WE, YOU, THEY* are joined to another *substan-* 52  
*tive*,\* for a *nominative* to the *same verb*, or if they are used *without* a verb to agree with them, they are;

<i>I,</i>	<i>MOI.</i>	<i>HE,</i>	<i>LUI.</i>
<i>THOU,</i>	<i>TOI.</i>	<i>THEY, mas.</i>	<i>EUX.</i>
<i>WE,</i>	<i>NOUS.</i>	<i>SHE,</i>	<i>ELLE.</i>
<i>YOU,</i>	<i>VOUS.</i>	<i>THEY, fem.</i>	<i>ELLES; ex.</i>

*In CONJUNCTION with another substantive:*

*You and I are ready. VOUS et MOI nous sommes prêts.*

*He and his sister are ready. LUI et sa SŒUR sont prêts.*

*You and they are ready. VOUS et EUX vous<sup>es</sup> êtes prêts.*

*They and their friends are here. EUX et leurs AMIS sont ici. (m)*

*WITHOUT a verb to agree with:*

*Who is ready to go? I. Qui est prêt à partir? MOI.*

*It is I who will go first. C' est MOI qui irai le premier*

*It is he who will go first. C' est LUI qui ira le premier.*

*It is they who will go first. Ce sont EUX qui iront les premiers.*

When a personal pronoun is the agent or *nominative* of several verbs, 53  
it is generally *repeated* with *each verb*; as,

*I say and maintain that, &c. JE dis et JE soutiens que, &c.*

*He is poor, and will always be so. IL est pauvre, et IL le sera toujours.†*

\* Observe that by *substantive* I do not mean *nouns* only, I mean also the *personal pronouns*; for the word which represents a *substantive*, is as much a *substantive* as the word which names it.

† See the verbs, page 106 and following.

(m) The pronouns *MOI, TOI, NOUS, VOUS* are sometimes added to *Je, Tu, Nous, Vous*, to point out more clearly a contradistinction; as,

*You will write and I will read. Vous écrirez, et MOI je lirai.*

*You come from Paris, and we are going there. Vous venez de Paris, et NOUS nous y allons.*

N. B. The words, *Myself, Thyself, &c.* which are often used by way of *emphasis* at the end of a sentence; as, *I will do it myself*; are expressed, *Myself, moi-même; Thyself, toi-même; Himself, lui-même; Herself, elle-même; Ourselves, nous-mêmes; Yourselves, vous-mêmes; Themselves, eux-mêmes, m. ELLES-mêmes, f.*

‡ If the verbs are in the *same tense*, and used in the *same sense*, as in the example, *I say and maintain*, the pronoun may be omitted before the second verb, *JE dis et soutiens*; but if the verbs are in different tenses, as in the other example, *He is poor, and will always be so*; or if the verbs are used in different senses, i. e. one affirmatively and the other negatively, the pronoun must be repeated.



## OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM.

Now let us see when *ME* is *ME* or *MOI*; *THEE*, *TE* or *TOI*; *HIM*, *LE* or *LUI*; *HER*, *LA* or *LUI*; *THEM*, *LES*, *LEUR*, *EUX*, *ELLES*.

The *OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS* are always *attended* by some *VERB* or *PREPOSITION* which *governs* them.

They are *placed* sometimes *BEFORE* the *verb*, and sometimes *AFTER* it; and it is the *place* which they keep in the sentence that *determines* which word is to be used.

*The ORDER which the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep with the VERB.*

## GENERAL RULE.

54 When the *OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS* *ME*, *THEE*, *US*, *YOU*, *HIM*, &c. are governed by a *verb*, place them *immediately BEFORE* that *verb*, and express

ME,	} by ME.	to HIM,	} by LUI.
to ME;		to HER;	
THEE,	} TE.	to THEM;	LEUR.
to THEE;			
US,	} NOUS.	to IT,	} neut. Y.
to US;		to THEM,	
YOU,	} VOUS.	of IT,	} neut. EN.
to YOU;		of THEM,	
HIM, IT;	LE.	HIM-HERself,	} SE; thus,
HER, IT;	LA.	ITself,	
THEM;	LES.	THEMselfes;	

He looks at	me.	Il ME regarde.
	thee.	Il TE regarde.
	us.	Il NOUS regarde.
	you.	Il VOUS regarde.
	him, or it.	Il LE regarde.
	her, or it.	Il LA regarde.
	them.	Il LES regarde.
Does he look at me?	ME	regarde-t-il ?*
He does not look at me.	Il ne ME	regarde pas.
Does he not look at me?	Ne ME	regarde-t-il pas ?

55 Observe that if the *OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS* are governed by a *verb* compounded of the *auxiliary verbs* *AVOIR* or *ÊTRE*, and of a *participle past*, they must be placed *BEFORE* the *auxiliary verb*, not *between* the *auxiliary* and the *participle*; thus,

He has spoken	to me.	Il M' A parlé.
	to thee.	Il T'† A parlé.
	to us.	Il NOUS A parlé.
	to you.	Il VOUS A parlé.
	to him, to her.	Il LUI A parlé.
	to them.	Il LEUR A parlé.
	of it, of them.	Il EN A parlé.
Has he spoken to me?	M' A-t-il	parlé ?*
He has not spoken to me.	Il ne M' A	pas parlé.
Has he not spoken to me?	Ne M' A-t-il	pas parlé ? &c.

\* This *t* is added for the sake of *melody*; see note \* page 92. † See note \* page 28

*The ORDER which the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep with the VERB.*

**1st Exception.** When the **OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS** *ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM* are governed by the **IMPERATIVE** of a verb used in a **COMMANDING sense**, *i. e. without a negation*, the pronouns which represent them are placed **immediately AFTER** the verb ;

In these instances *ME* is expressed by *MOI*, and *THEE* by *TOI*.

But if the **IMPERATIVE** is used in a **FORBIDDING sense**, *i. e. if it is attended by a negation*, the pronouns must be placed **immediately BEFORE** the verb, agreeably to the general rule ;

Then *ME* is expressed by *ME*, and *THEE* by *TE* ; ex.

*Imperative COMMANDING, 56 rule.*

Look at *me*.      *Regarde-MOI.*

*thyself.*      *TOI.*

Look at *us*.      *Regardez-NOUS.*

*yourself.*      *VOUS.*

Let us look at *him or it*. *Regardons-LE.*

*her or it*      *LA.*

*them.*      *LES. (n)*

*Imperative FORBIDDING, 57 rule.*

*Ne ME* } *regarde pas.*

*Ne TE* } *do not look at me.*

*Ne NOUS* } *regardez pas.*

*Ne VOUS* }

*Ne LE* } *regardons pas.*

*Ne LA* }

*Ne LES* }

**2nd Exception.** The **OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS** are not always the **object of verbs**, they are sometimes governed by a **PREPOSITION** which some verbs require to unite them to the substantive which follows them ; then the pronoun being the **object of the preposition**, not the object of the verb, it is placed **AFTER** the **preposition**, and *ME* is expressed by *MOI* ; *THEE*, by *TOI* ; *HIM*, by *LUI* ; *HER*, by *ELLE* ; *US*, by *NOUS* ; *YOU*, by *VOUS* ; *THEM*, masc. by *EUX* ; *THEM*, fé m. by *ELLES* ; ex.

He came to *me*.      *Il vint à MOI.*

He complained of *thee*.      *Il se plaignit de TOI.*

He applied to *him, to her, to them*. *Il s'adressa à LUI, à ELLE, à EUX, &c. (o)*

(n) With two imperatives governing the same pronouns, to avoid monotony, we say

*Donnez-LE-MOI, ou ME LE rendez.*      Give it *me* or sell it *me*.

*Voyez-LE, et LE consolez.*      See *him*, and comfort *him*.

(o) Some difficulty arises here with respect to the preposition *À*, which, like the preposition *TO*, is generally implied in the pronoun ; for we say

*Il ME donna un livre,*      He gave *me* a book ; instead of

*Il donna un livre à MOI ;*      He gave a book to *me*.

*Je LUI prêtai de l'argent,*      I lent *him* money ; instead of

*Je prêtai de l'argent à LUI ;*      I lent money to *him*.

But in some instances this preposition can not be left out ; for though we say, *He gave ME a book ; I lent HIM money ;* we could not say, *He came ME ; I went HIM ;* we must say, *He came to ME ; I went to HIM.*

The verbs which require the preposition *À* to unite them to the pronoun, are the following ; 1st, all the **REFLECTIVE VERBS**, which, as they always have a pronoun attached to them for their object, can not govern another substantive, without a preposition ; as,

*Il s'est adressé à MOI, à TOI, &c.*      He has applied to *me, to thee, &c.*

*Ne vous fiez pas à LUI, à ELLE, &c.*      Do not trust *him, her, &c.*

2dly, A few **NEUTER VERBS** which also require a preposition to unite them to the pronoun which attends them. The most frequently met with are :

*ALLER, to go ; as,*      *N'allez pas à LUI.*      Do not go to *him*.

*BOIRE, to drink ;*      *Je bois à vous.*      I drink to *you*.

*COURIR, ACCOURIR, to run ;*      *Il accourt à nous.*      He is running to *us*.

*DESCENDRE, to go or come down ;*      *Elle descendit à MOI.*      She came down to *me*.

*ETRE, to be, viz. to belong ;*      *Ceci est à EUX.*      This belongs to *them*.

*MONTRE, to go or come up ;*      *Je monterai à ELLE.*      I shall go up to *her*.

*PENSER, to think ;*      *Pensez à nous.*      Think of *us*.

*RECOURIR, to have recourse ;*      *Recourez à EUX.*      Have recourse to *them*

*VENIR, to come ;*      *Ils vinrent à MOI.*      They came to *me*.

*The ORDER which SEVERAL OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep TOGETHER.*

**59** When *SEVERAL* OBJECTIVE pronouns are governed by the *same* verb, a *precedency* must be given to some of them.

If, agreeably to the *general rule*, the pronouns are placed *BEFORE* the verb,

ME,  
NOUS, } *have the precedency over* LE, LA, LES, Y, EN.  
TE,  
VOUS,  
SE

LE,  
LA,  
LES } *have the precedency over* LUI, LEUR, Y, EN.

LUI,  
LEUR } *have the precedency over* Y, EN.

Y *has the precedency over* EN ; \* *as,*

Will he give him or it to me,	ME LE	} <i>donnera-t-il ?</i>
her or it to me,	ME LA	
them to me ?	ME LES*	

He promised him or it to us,	Il NOUS L'	} <sup>133</sup> <i>a promis.</i>
her or it to us,	Il NOUS L'	
them to us,	Il NOUS LES	

Will he not lend it to you,	Ne VOUS LE	} <i>prêtera-t-il pas ?</i>
her or it to you,	Ne VOUS LA	
them to you ?	Ne VOUS LES	

He will send it to me there,	Il ME L'Y	} <i>envèra.</i>
some to me there, (p)	Il M'Y EN	
some to you there.	Il VOUS Y EN	

He will not send it him or her,	Il ne LE LUI	} <i>envèra pas.*</i>
any to him, to her, (p)	Il ne LUI EN	
them to them.	Il ne LES LEUR	

**60** But if, agreeably to the *56th rule*, the pronouns are placed *AFTER* the verb, in which instances *MOI, TOI* are used instead of *ME, TE*, then

LE,  
LA,  
LES,  
Y } *have the precedency over* MOI, TOI ; *as,*

Send him, or it to me.	Envoyez LE-MOI.
her or it to me.	LA-MOI.
them to me.	LES-MOI.
them to me there.	LES-Y-MOI.*

**61** Observe also that if *ME, THEE* after an imperative, are followed by *SOME, of IT, of THEM*, they are not expressed by *MOI, TOI*, as above ; *ME some, ME of it, &c.* are expressed by *M'EN* ; *THEE some, &c.* are expressed by *T'EN*, whether they come *before* or *after* the verb ; *ex.*  
He has sent me some. Il M'EN a envoyé. send me some. Envoyez-M'EN.  
Dost thou remember it ? T'EN souviens-tu ? remember it. souviens-T'EN.

\* See, page 78, 79, a table which shews how to arrange *several* pronouns together.  
(p) *SOME, ANY*, implying *of IT, of THEM*, are rendered by *EN*.

## REMARKS on the PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

As there are only two genders in french, the masculine and the feminine, the neuter pronouns *IT*, *THEY*, *THEM* must be expressed by *IL*, *ELLE*, *ILS*, *ELLES*, *LE*, *LA*, *LES*, the same as *HE*, *SHE*, *THEY*, *HIM*, *HER*, *THEM*, masculine or feminine, agreeably to the gender of the noun which they represent; so we say,

Of a man or a coach;

*IL vient*; *je LE vois*, *He* or *IT* is coming; I see *HIM* or *IT*.  
(See note h, page 80.)

Of a woman or a watch;  
*ELLE est belle*; regardez *LA*. *She* or *IT* is fine; look at *HER* or *IT*.

N. B. *IT* is often used in an impersonal sense, i. e. without reference to any substantive mentioned before; as,

*It* is glorious, shameful, necessary, proper, &c.

In these instances, *IT* is always expressed by *IL*, or by *CE*.

*IT* is expressed by *IL*, if the verb is followed by an adjective; as,

*It* is glorious, shameful, necessary, proper, &c.

*IL est glorieux, honteux, nécessaire, à propos, &c.*

*IT* is expressed by *CE*, when the verb is followed by a substantive, either with or without an adjective; as,

Is *it* you? *It* is he. *It* is his son. *It* is a shameful thing.

*Est-ce vous? C'est lui. C'est son fils. C'est une chose honteuse.*

not, *Est-il vous? IL est lui. IL est son fils*, means *HE* is his son.

Though *LUI* and *LEUR* may be said of beings that have life, such as brutes and plants; as,

That tree is withered, give *it* some water.

*Cet arbre est flétri, donnez LUI de l'eau;*

They can not be said of lifeless beings, commonly called things; (*q*) in speaking of things, to *IT*, to *THEM* must be expressed by *Y*; as,

She loves reading, she gives all her time to *it*.

*Elle aime la lecture, elle y donne tout son tems.*

*LUI*, *ELLE*, *EUX*, *ELLES*, after a preposition, are said only of persons; in speaking of brutes or things, the preposition must be changed into some adverb which implies the meaning of both the preposition and pronoun; as,

Take this horse, and get upon *it*.

*Prenez ce cheval, et montez DESSUS*, not *sur LUI*. (*q*)

If an adverb can not be found to supply the place of the preposition,\* give another turn to the sentence, by which the preposition will disappear; as,

He is come with *it*; *Il l' a apporté*, i. e. he has brought *it*.

not, *Il est venu avec LUI*, which would imply a person, not a thing.

(*q*) Except those that are generally personified, such as Heaven, Fortune, Providence, the Elements, some Virtues and Vices; as,

Love is the tyrant of reason, yet there are people who sacrifice every thing to *it*.

*L'amour est le tiran de la raison, cependant il y a des gens qui LUI sacrifient tout.*

Or when in a metaphorical sense, we attribute to things, what in a proper sense can only be attributed to persons; so, speaking of a sword, we say;

*Je LUI dois la vie*, I owe my life to *it*.

Of a Book; *Ces livres me coutent cher, mais je LEUR dois mon instruction*

These books cost me dear, but I owe my instruction to them.

But in speaking of the same things without giving rational attributes to them, we could not use *LUI*, *LEUR*, we must use *Y*; as,

*It* is an old sword, but I have got a new hilt put to *it*.

*C'est une vieille épée, mais j'y ai fait mettre une garde neuve.*

\* You find in the dictionaries the words which are both prepositions and adverbs.



## REMARKS ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

- 65 *HE, SHE, IT, THEY* coming with the verb *BE*, followed by a *substantive*, are generally expressed by *CE*; as,

*He* is an officer.

*c' est un officier.*

*She* is a seamstress.

*c' est une couturière*

*They* are merchants.

*CE sont des négociants.*

If the substantive which follows the verb, denotes *rank, state, trade, or profession*, *HE, SHE, THEY* may be expressed by *IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES*, but the *article* must be *left out*; as,

*IL est officier.*

*ELLE est couturière.*

*ILS sont négociants.*

not, *IL est un officier.*

*ELLE est UNE couturière.*

*ILS sont DES négociants.* (see 23 rule.)

- 66 *HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM* are sometimes used without reference to any noun expressed before them, but imply the words *man, woman, or people* understood; in this sense they are expressed,

*HE,* } *by CELUI;*  
*HIM,* }

*SHE,* } *by CELLE;*  
*HER,* }

*THEY,* } *by CEUX;* as,  
*THEM,* }

*He who* can live dishonored, does not deserve to live, i. e. *the man who*  
*CELUI QUI peut vivre déshonoré ne mérite pas de vivre.*

I have met *her whom* you wished so much to see, i. e. *the woman whom*  
*J'ai rencontré CELLE QUE vous souhaitiez si fort de voir.*

N. B. The pronouns *CELUI, CELLE, CEUX*, and the relative *QUI, QUE, DONT* which attends them, must not be separated, as the corresponding words are sometimes in english; they must be *placed together*;

*They* are mistaken *who* think that riches make men happy.

*CEUX QUI pensent que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux se trompent.*  
i. e. *They who* think that riches make men happy are mistaken.\*

- 67 *HIS, HER, THEIR* are also sometimes used in the same sense as the above pronouns, i. e. implying the words *man, woman, or people* understood, and are then expressed,

*HIS*, by *de CELUI*; *HER*, by *de CELLE*; *THEIR*, by *de CEUX*; as,

We<sup>90</sup> always blame *their* conduct *who* do not succeed.

On<sup>90</sup> blâme toujours la conduite de *CEUX* qui ne réussissent pas.

i. e. We blame always the conduct of *those*, viz. of *the people* who do not succeed.

- 68 When an *objective* pronoun is governed by *several verbs*, that pronoun must be *repeated* with every verb by which it is governed; as,

*She* loves and esteems *you*.

*Elle vous aime et vous estime.*

*Speak* or *write* to *her*

*Parlez LUI ou LUI écrivez.*

- 69 It sometimes happens that the verb by which the *objective* pronouns are governed, is preceded by *another verb*; as,

*I can* not do it; *He will* not give it me; *You may* lend it to him.

In these instances, it is better to place the pronouns *before* the *last verb* than before the *first*; so, instead of saying,

*Je ne LE puis pas faire;* say, *Je ne puis pas LE faire.*

*Il ne ME LE veut pas donner;* *Il ne veut pas ME LE donner.*†

\* These sentences may also be expressed without changing the order of the words; thus

*CEUX-là se trompent QUI pensent que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux;*

or, *C'EST se tromper QUE de penser que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux.*

But these expressions are more adapted to poetry and oratory, than to conversation.

† This rule is not strictly adhered to by french writers, especially ancient authors; however it makes the sentence clearer, and it is the surest for a foreigner, as there are no exceptions to this rule, and there are several to the other, which he might be liable to mistake.

## REMARKS ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

LE, LA, LES, EN, Y are often used when the corresponding words are not requisite in english; for example, in answer to these questions; 70

Are you mr. B? *Etes-vous monsieur B?*

Is that your house? *Est-ce là votre maison?*

Are these your gloves? *Sont-ce ici vos gants?*

It would not be sufficient in french, as it is in english, to answer with the auxiliary verb only, and say, *Oui, je suis*; yes, I am.

*Non, ce n'est pas*; no, it is not. *Oui, ce sont*; yes, they are.

We are obliged to add one of the above pronouns, and say;

*Oui, je le suis. Non, ce ne l'est pas. Oui, ce les sont.*(r)

You have got fine apples. *Vous avez de belles pommes.*

Will you have some? (of them). *EN voulez-vous quelques-unes?*

Yes, give me a few. i. e. (of them). *Oui, donnez m'EN quelques-unes.*

N. B. And if the auxiliary verb with which the question is asked is attended by another verb, that verb must also be repeated; as,

Has he done it? *L'a-t-il fait?*

No, he has not, i. e. (done it). *Non, il ne l'a pas fait.*

Do you remember it? *Vous EN souvenez-vous?*

Yes, I do, i. e. (remember it). *Oui, je m'EN SOUVIENS.*

Are you going to the play? *Allez-vous à la comédie?*

No, I am not, i. e. (going there). *Non, je n'Y VAIS pas.*

If the pronoun is added to represent a noun, it must be one of the words 71  
LE, LA, LES, agreeably to the gender and number of that noun; as,

Are you the son of mr. A? *Etes-vous le FILS de monsieur A?*

Yes, I am, i. e. (the son). *Oui, je le suis.*

Are you the daughter of Mrs. B? *Etes-vous la FILLE de madame B?*

No, I am not, (the daughter). *Non, je ne la suis pas.*

Are these your gloves? *Sont-ce ici vos gants?*

Yes, they are, i. e. (my gloves). *Oui, ce les sont.*

But if the word to be represented is an adjective, an adverb, or a whole 72  
sentence, LE is used without regard to gender or number; as,

Are you married, sir? *Etes-vous MARIÉ, monsieur?*

Yes, I am, i. e. (married). *Oui, je le suis.*

Are you married, madam? *Etes-vous MARIÉE, madame?*

No, I am not, i. e. (I am not so). *Non, je ne le suis pas.*

Are you contented, ladies? *Etes-vous CONTENTES, mesdames?*

Yes, we are, i. e. (we are so). *Oui, nous le sommes.*

EN, Y, which are generally applied to things, may, in answer to a ques- 73  
tion or a command, be applied to persons, EN instead of *de moi, de toi, de nous, de vous, de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles*; Y instead of *à moi, à toi, à nous, à vous, à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles*; as,

Remember me. *Souvenez-vous de moi.*

I will, i. e. (remember you) *Je m'EN souviendrai.*

Have you thought of us? *Avez-vous pensé à nous?*

Yes, we have, i. e. (thought of you). *Oui, nous Y avons pensé.*

(r) If the answer is made with the pronouns HE, SHE, THEY, relating to persons. *LUI, ELLE, EUX, ELLES* added to the verb, render the other words unnecessary;

Is that your brother? Yes, he is. Is that your sister? No, she is not.

*Est-ce là votre frère? Oui, c'est lui. Est-ce là votre sœur? Non, ce n'est pas elle.*

## RELATIVE or distinctive PRONOUN

WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, WHAT.

QUI, QUE, DONT, QUOI, QUEL, LEQUEL.

74 When *WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH* come after one or several substantives which they *particularize*, they are expressed,

Nomin.	WHO,	} QUI;	The man <i>who</i>	} comes.	L' homme QUI	} vient.
	THAT,		The horse <i>that</i>		Le cheval QUI	
	WHICH,		The chaise <i>which</i>		La chaise QUI	
Object.	WHOM,	} QUE;	The man <i>whom</i>	} I see. (s)	L' homme QUE	} je vois.
	THAT,		The horse <i>which</i>		Le cheval QUE	
	WHICH,		The coach <i>that</i>		Le carosse QUE	
(see note m, page 82.)						
Possess.	WHOSE,	} DONT;	The man <i>of whom</i>	} I speak.	L' homme DONT	} je parle.
	of WHOM,		The horse <i>of which</i>		Le cheval DONT	
	of WHICH,		The chaise <i>of which</i>		La chaise DONT	

75 QUI, QUE, DONT, whatever be the order of the corresponding words in english, must be *placed immediately after* the noun to which they relate; Is the gentleman come, *who* is<sup>242</sup> to dine with us?

Le MONSIEUR QUI doit<sup>242</sup> dîner avec nous, est-il venu?

i. e. the gentleman who is to dine with us, is he<sup>184</sup> come?

N. B. DONT, besides being placed immediately after the noun to which it relates, must be followed by a substantive in the *nominative*; as,

He is a man *whose* probity is known.

C'est un homme DONT la probité est connue, or, DONT on connaît la &c.

If *WHOSE* is followed by a noun governed by a *preposition*, it can not be expressed by DONT, it must be expressed by *duQUEL, de laQUELLE, desQUELS, desQUELLES*, agreeably to *gender and number*; as,

He is a man on whose probity one may rely; i.e. on the probity of whom

C'est un homme sur la probité DUQUEL on peut compter;

not, C'est un homme DONT sur la probité, nor sur la probité DONT. (t)

(s) The distinctive words WHOM, THAT, WHICH are often left out; as, *The man I saw, for the man whom I saw; The wine we drank, for the wine which we drank*; but the corresponding words QUI, QUE, DONT must never be omitted, and if they are the *nominative*, or the object of several verbs they must be repeated with each verb; as,

The man I saw,	i. e. whom I saw.	L'homme QUE je vis.
The wine we drank,	i. e. which we drank.	Le vin QUE nous bûmes.
The woman I speak of,	i. e. of whom I speak.	La femme DONT je parle.

(t) When a relative pronoun comes after two nouns, and relates only to one of them, if the noun to which it relates is not the last in french, WHO, WHOM, THAT, WHICH must be expressed by *leQUEL, laQUELLE, lesQUELS, lesQUELLES*; of WHOM, of WHICH, by *auQUEL, de laQUELLE, desQUELS, desQUELLES*; to WHOM, to WHICH, by *auQUEL, à laQUELLE, auxQUELS, auxQUELLES*, agreeably to the *gender and number* of the noun, to avoid the ambiguity that might arise from QUI, QUE, DONT, which are generally understood to relate to the last noun; as,

This is that young man's sister of whom we were speaking.

Voici la sœur de ce jeune homme DE LAQUELLE nous parlions.

But this being done for the sole purpose of removing the ambiguity which would arise from QUI, QUE, DONT; if a relative pronoun, coming after two nouns, was followed by a *verb*, or by an *adjective* that would sufficiently denote to which noun it refers, it would be better to use QUI, QUE, DONT, than LEQUEL, LAQUELLE, &c. which are rather formal expressions; the following sentence, for example, would not be ambiguous,

That young man's sister who is so handsome.

Ju sœur de ce jeune homme QUI est si belle; QUI being determined by *belle*.

But, if these words can not be used without obscurity, the principal object of a language being to express our thoughts with precision, elegance must yield to perspicuity.



After any *preposition* but *OF*, or a *preposition* synonymous to it, *WHOM* is expressed by *QUI*, for both genders and numbers;

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
WHICH	le QUEL,	la QUELLE,	les QUELS,	les QUELLES;
From WHICH	du QUEL,	de la QUELLE,	des QUELS,	des QUELLES;
To, at WHICH	au QUEL,	à la QUELLE,	aux QUELS,	aux QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates; as,

The man <i>with whom</i>	} he is.	L'homme avec QUI	} il est.
The horse <i>on which</i>		Le cheval sur LEQUEL	
The chaise <i>in which</i>		La chaise dans LAQUELLE	
The man <i>from whom</i>	} he comes	L'homme de QUI	} il vient
The horse <i>from which</i>		Le cheval DUQUEL	
The chaise <i>from which</i>		(v) La chaise de LAQUELLE	
The man <i>to whom</i>	} he goes.	L'homme à QUI	} il va.
The horse <i>to which</i>		Le cheval AUQUEL	
The chaise <i>to which</i>		(x) La chaise à LAQUELLE	

*WHO*, *WHOM* used *absolutely*, i.e. without reference to a noun mentioned before, imply the word *person* understood, and are expressed by *QUI*; as, *Who* has done that? 77

i. e. *what person* has done that? QUI a fait cela?

I know *whom* you mean;

i. e. *what person* you mean. Je sais QUI vous voulez dire.

78

*WHOSE* used *absolutely*, implies also the word *person* understood.

If it can be changed into *of WHOM*, it is expressed by *de QUI*; as,

*Whose* daughter is she?

i. e. *of whom* is she the daughter? De QUI est-elle fille?

I know *whose* relation she is.

i. e. *of whom*, or *of what person*. Je sais de QUI elle est parente.

If *WHOSE* can be changed into *to WHOM*, it is expressed by *à QUI*; as, *Whose* house is that?

i. e. *to whom* does that house belong? À QUI est cette maison?

I do not know *whose* it is. Je ne sais pas à QUI elle est.

(u) After a *preposition*, *WHICH*, relating to the word *Thing*, is expressed by *à QUOI*; as, It is a thing *of which* I did not think. C'est une chose à QUOI je ne pensais pas. I see nothing *to which* he can apply. Je ne vois rien à QUOI il puisse s'appliquer.

(v) With a verb denoting dwelling or movement, even in a figurative sense, *WHICH*, after a *preposition*, is generally expressed by *où*; as,

The city *in which* I live. La ville dans laquelle, or où je demeure.

The happiness *to which* I aspire. Le bonheur auquel, or où j'aspire.

But we could not say, *Le bonheur où je pense*, the happiness *on which* I think; because *penser* does not denote movement; we must say, *Le bonheur AUQUEL je pense*.

In the same sense, *from WHICH* is expressed by *d'où*, and *through WHICH*, by *par où*; as, The country *from which* I come. Le pays d'où, or d'où je viens.

The town *through which* I have passed. La ville par laquelle, or par où j'ai passé.

(x) The distinctive word *WHICH* coming after an *Indefinite expression*, or after a *Noun without an article* in french, can not be rendered by any of the relative words which correspond with it in english; so these sentences,

I have obtained leave, *which* was the only thing that I asked; } can not be

The earth is ravaged *through ambition* *which* is the scourge of mankind, } translated,

J'ai obtenu permission QUI or LAQUELLE était la seule chose que je demandais;

On ravage la terre par ambition QUI or LAQUELLE est le fléau du genre humain: say,

J'ai obtenu permission, c'était la seule chose que je demandais.

On ravage la terre par ambition, et l'AMBITION est le fléau du genre humain.



## WHICH INTERROGATIVE.

In an INTERROGATIVE sentence, *WHICH* requires THREE *distinctions*

*WHICH* INTERROGATIVE is either joined to the noun like an adjective.

i. e. *without* the help of a *preposition*; as,

WHICH *man*? WHICH *carriage*? WHICH *horses*?

Or like a *substantive*, it is joined to it by the *preposition of*; as,

WHICH *of the men*? WHICH *of the carriages*? WHICH *of my horses*?

Or like a *pronoun*, it is used *absolutely* after the noun; as,

It is one of these men; WHICH *is it*?

I came in one of these carriages. *In which did you come*?

79

*WHICH* INTERROGATIVE joined like an *adjective*, i. e. *without* a *preposition*, to the noun to which it relates, is

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
WHICH;	QUEL,	QUELLE,	QUELS,	QUELLES;
Of, from WHICH;	de QUEL,	de QUELLE,	de QUELS,	de QUELLES;
To, at WHICH;	à QUEL,	à QUELLE,	à QUELS,	à QUELLES;

agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; as,

Which man	do you prefer?	QUEL homme	} préférez-vous?
Which carriage		QUELLE voiture	
Which horses		QUELS chevaux	

80

*WHICH* INTERROGATIVE joined by a *preposition* to the noun to which it relates, or coming after it *absolutely*, i. e. *without* a *noun*, is,

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
WHICH;	le QUEL,	la QUELLE,	les QUELS,	les QUELLES;
Of, from WHICH;	du QUEL,	de la QUELLE,	des QUELS,	des QUELLES;
To, at WHICH;	au QUEL,	à la QUELLE,	aux QUELS,	aux QUELLES;

agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; as,

Which of these men	} do you prefer?	LEQUEL de ces hommes	} préférez-vous?
Which of the coaches		LAQUELLE des voitures *	
Which of my horses		LESQUELS de mes chevaux	
Which is the tallest?		LEQUEL est le plus haut?	
Which is the finest?		LAQUELLE est la plus belle?	
Which are the best?		LESQUELS sont les meilleurs?	

81

*WHICH* sometimes implies the DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *THAT* or *THOSE* understood; as,

Which of these horses shall I ride?

You may ride *which* you will, i. e. *that which* you will.

This DEMONSTRATIVE word can *not* be omitted in french, and *WHICH* as including the two words, is expressed by

CELUI QUE, m.	} THAT which;	CEUX QUE, m.	} THOSE which.
CELLE QUE, f.		CELLES QUE, f.	

agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun to which it relates; as,

Which of these horses shall I ride? *Lequel de ces chevaux monterai-je?*

Ride *which*, i. e. *that which* you will. *Montez CELUI QUE vous voudrez.*

In which carriage will you go?

*Dans quelle voiture voulez-vous aller?*

I will go in *which* you please.

*J'irai dans CELLE qu'il vous plaira.*

\* The pronoun may be either *singular* or *plural*, agreeably to the number that is meant; for ex. Which of these horses will you ride? may be translated

LEQUEL or LESQUELS de ces chevaux voulez-vous monter?

LEQUEL meaning one horse; LESQUELS meaning that the person is to ride more than one.

*WHAT* requires the *same distinctions* as *WHICH*.

*WHAT* followed by a noun, or relating to a noun mentioned before, is **82** expressed,

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
<i>WHAT</i> ;	QUEL,	QUELLE,	QUELS,	QUELLES;
<i>Of, from WHAT</i> ;	<i>de</i> QUEL,	<i>de</i> QUELLE,	<i>de</i> QUELS,	<i>de</i> QUELLES;
<i>To, at WHAT</i> ;	<i>à</i> QUEL,	<i>à</i> QUELLE,	<i>à</i> QUELS,	<i>à</i> QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

<i>What man</i>	} will you have?	QUEL homme	} voulez-vous?
<i>What carriage</i>		QUELLE voiture	
<i>What horses</i>		QUELS chevaux	
<i>What are your reasons?</i>		QUELLES sont vos raisons?	

*WHAT* used ABSOLUTELY, *i. e.* without reference to a noun mentioned, **83** implies the word *THING* understood, and is expressed by *QUE* or by *QUOI*.

*WHAT* is expressed by *QUE*, when it is the *object* of a verb; as,

*What are you doing there?* QUE faites-vous là?

I do not know *what* to say to her. *Je ne sais QUE lui dire.*(y)

*WHAT* is expressed by *QUOI*, when it is governed by a *preposition*, or used as an *interjection*; ex.

*What do you meddle with?* De QUOI vous melez-vous?

*What! you have not done yet.* QUOI! vous n'avez pas encore fini.

*WHAT* sometimes implies the DEMONSTRATIVE pronoun *THAT*, and the **84** DISTINCTIVE *WHICH*; it is then expressed,

Nom. *WHAT*, CE QUI; Always do *what* is right; *i. e.* *that which* is right.  
*Faites toujours CE QUI est juste.*

Objec. *WHAT*, CE QUE; *What* I say is true; *i. e.* *that which* I say is true.  
CE QUE je dis est vrai.(z)

But with the *prepositions OF, TO*, or any preposition that is synonymous to them, it is necessary to consider whether the *preposition* comes before or after *WHAT*; for,

OF *WHAT* is de CE QUI, { I speak of *what* is true; *i. e.* OF *that which*, &c.  
de CE QUE; { *Je parle de CE QUI est vrai.*

*WHAT* OF is CE DONT; as, *What* he speaks of is not true; *i. e.* *that of which*  
CE DONT il parle n'est pas vrai.

TO *WHAT* is à CE QUI, { Apply to *what* is useful; *i. e.* TO *that which* is, &c.  
à CE QUE; { Appliquez-vous à CE QUI est utile.

*WHAT* TO is CE à QUOI; as, *What* you apply to is not useful; *i. e.* *that to which*  
CE à QUOI vous vous appliquez n'est pas utile.

(y) *WHAT*, in this sense, used interrogatively, is generally expressed in conversation by *qu'est-ce que*, an idiomatic expression; as,

*What do you say?*

QUE dites-vous, or QU'EST-CE QUE vous dites?

*What are you doing?*

QUE faites-vous, or QU'EST-CE QUE vous faites?

And with the verb *BE*, it is always expressed by *qu'est-ce que*; as,

*What is it?*

QU'EST-CE QUE c'est?

*What is that to you?*

QU'EST-CE QUE cela vous fait?

(z) Though the words *CE QUI*, *CE QUE*, being compounded of the pronoun substantive *CE*, and of the distinctive *QUI*, *QUE*, should have two verbs either to govern or to be governed; yet, when these words come before the verb *ÊTRE* followed by another verb, or by a noun in the plural number, another *CE* must be put before *ÊTRE*; as,

*What vexes me is*, that he will not study. *CE QUI me fâche, c'est qu'il ne veut pas étudier.*

*What I detest most, are idle people* CE QUE je déteste le plus, CE sont les oisifs.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
MINE ;	le MIEN,	la MIENNE,	les MIENS,	les MIENNES.
Of, from MINE ;	du MIEN,	de la MIENNE,	des MIENS,	des MIENNES.
To, at MINE ;	au MIEN,	à la MIENNE,	aux MIENS,	aux MIENNES.
THINE ;	le TIEN,	la TIENNE,	les TIENS,	les TIENNES.
HIS, } HERS ; }	le SIEN,	la SIENNE,	les SIENS,	les SIENNES.
OURS ;	le NÔTRE,	la NÔTRE,	les NÔTRES,	les NÔTRES.
YOURS ;	le VÔTRE,	la VÔTRE,	les VÔTRES,	les VÔTRES.
THEIRS ;	le LEUR,	la LEUR,	les LEURS,	les LEURS.

- 85 The POSSESSIVE pronouns *le MIEN, le TIEN, le SIEN, &c.* must be of the same *gender* and *number* as the noun which they represent ; ex.

Your hat is better than *hers*, i. e. *her hat*.

*Votre chapeau est meilleur que LE SIEN.*

My watch is not so fine as *his*, i. e. *his watch*.

*Ma montre n'est pas si belle que LA SIENNE.*

- 86 The POSSESSIVE words *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS* do not always represent a noun mentioned before them ; they are often used instead of the *personal* pronouns *ME, THEE, HIM, HER, US, YOU, THEM*, with the verb *BE*, meaning to *BELONG* ; as for example, *This book is MINE, i. e. belongs to ME* ; in this sense *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS* are expressed by à MOI, à TOI, à LUI, à ELLE, à NOUS, à VOUS, à EUX, *m. à ELLES, f.* ; as,

This book is <i>mine</i> .	<i>Ce livre est à MOI ;</i>	<i>i. e. belongs to me.</i>
is <i>thine</i> .	<i>est à TOI ;</i>	<i>to thee.</i>
is <i>his</i> .	<i>est à LUI ;</i>	<i>to him.</i>
is <i>hers</i> .	<i>est à ELLE ;</i>	<i>to her.</i>
is <i>ours</i> .	<i>est à NOUS ;</i>	<i>to us.</i>
is <i>yours</i> .	<i>est à VOUS ;</i>	<i>to you.</i>
is <i>theirs</i> .	<i>est à EUX, m. à ELLES, f.</i>	<i>to them. (aa)</i>

- 87 The POSSESSIVE pronouns *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS*, by an idiom peculiar to the english language, are sometimes joined to the noun to which they relate by the preposition *OF* ; as, A FRIEND OF MINE ; A BOOK OF YOURS ; this POSSESSIVE pronoun can not be expressed by the POSSESSIVE pronoun in french ; it must be expressed by the *possessive ARTICLE* MES, TES, SES, NOS, VOS, LEURS placed BEFORE the noun, which must always be *PLURAL* in french ; as,

A friend of <i>mine</i> .	<i>un de MES amis ;</i>	<i>i. e. one of my</i>	} friends
of <i>thine</i> .	<i>un de TES amis ;</i>	<i>one of thy</i>	
of <i>his</i> .	<i>un de SES amis ;</i>	<i>one of his</i>	
of <i>hers</i> .	<i>un de SES amis ;</i>	<i>one of her</i>	
of <i>ours</i> .	<i>un de NOS amis ;</i>	<i>one of our</i>	
of <i>yours</i> .	<i>un de VOS amis ;</i>	<i>one of your</i>	
of <i>theirs</i> .	<i>un de LEURS amis ;</i>	<i>one of their</i>	

Never say ; *Un ami de MES, nor Un ami des MIENS ; Un ami de TES ; Un ami de SES, &c.*

(aa) Yet when a question is asked with *EST-CE* ; as, *EST-CE là votre livre ?* Is that your book ? we may answer, *Où, c'est le MIEN*, or *il est à MOI*, Yes, it is mine. *EST-CE là sa maison ?* Is that his house ? No, it is not *his*, it is his sister's ; *Non, ce n'est pas la SIENNE, c'est CELLE de sa sœur*, or *Elle n'est pas à LUI, elle est à sa sœur*.



DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

Masc. SING. Fem.		Masc. PLUR. Fem.	
THIS,	} CELUI, CELLE.	THESE,	} CEUX, CELLES.
THAT;		THOSE;	

The DEMONSTRATIVE pronouns CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES must be of the same gender and number as the noun which they represent; ex. 88

Bring my hat and *that* of my sister; i. e. the *hat* of &c.

*Apportez mon chapeau et CELUI de ma sœur.*

He has lost his watch and *that* of his brother; i. e. the *watch* of &c.

*Il a perdu sa montre et CELLE de son frère.*

Have you seen these (*bb*) gloves and *those* which I had on yesterday?

*Avez-vous vu ces gants et CEUX que j'avais hier?*

N. B. The DEMONSTRATIVE words *THIS, THESE, THAT, THOSE* imply a local distinction which CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES do not express; therefore, when a distinction is to be made between two objects, the adverbial particle *CI, here*, to denote the *nearest* object, and *LÀ, there*, to denote the *remotest*, must be added to these pronouns; as,

*This hat is better than that.*

*Ce chapeau-CI est meilleur que CELUI-LÀ; i. e. this hat here—that there.*

*That watch is not so fine as this.*

*Cette montre-LÀ n'est pas si belle que CELLE-CI; i. e. as this here.*

But the particles *CI, LÀ*, being added merely to discriminate the objects, if the DEMONSTRATIVE pronoun is followed by a *relative* pronoun, or by a *noun* in the *possessive state*, which makes the distinction sufficiently clear, these particles would be *useless*, and they must be *left out*; as,

*This hat is better than that of your brother.*

*Ce chapeau-CI est meilleur que CELUI de votre frère.*

*This watch is not so fine as that which you have lost.*

*Cette montre-CI n'est pas si belle que CELLE que vous avez perdue.*

If *THIS, THAT* not followed by a noun, nor relate to a noun mentioned before, they imply the word *THING* understood, and are expressed, 89

*THIS, by CECI; THAT, by CELA; as,*

*This is good; i. e. this thing is good. CECI est bon.*

*That is better; i. e. that thing is better. CELA est meilleur.*

(*bb*) It is not unnecessary perhaps to recall here to the attention of the learner, that the words *THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE* have already been seen in the chapter of articles, and he must take care not to confound them.

If *THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE* are followed by a noun, they have the property of a demonstrative article, and are expressed by *CE, CETTE, CES*, as has been seen, rule 1.

*CE vin, CETTE gloire, CES plaisirs. This wine, That glory, Those pleasures.*

If *THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE* do not point out a noun after them, but represent one mentioned before, they are pronouns, and are expressed by *CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun which they represent; as,

*Il a perdu sa montre et CELLE de son frère.* He has lost his watch and *that* of his brother.

If *THIS, THAT* do not point out a noun after them, nor represent one mentioned before, they may be considered as *substantives* implying the word *THING*, and are expressed, *THIS, by CECI; THAT, by CELA; as,*

*CECI est bon, mais CELA est meilleur. i. e. This thing is good, but that thing is better.*

N. B. *THAT*, joining two sentences, is a conjunction, and is always expressed by *QUE; as,*  
I know *that* he is come. *Je sais qu'il est venu.*

This conjunction is often understood in english, but it must always be expressed in french;  
Do you think he is come? *Pensez-vous qu'il soit venu? [see conjunctions.]*



## INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

- 90 *ONE, WE* } used in an INDEFINITE sense, i. e. not relating to any  
*THEY, PEOPLE* } particular person, are expressed by ON.  
 N. B. ON is always the *nominative* of a verb, and though it represents *WE, THEY, PEOPLE*, which are *plural*, it requires the verb in the 3rd person sing.; as,  
*One* says, }  
*They* say, *people* say. } ON dit; i. e. *one* says, (See note \* p. 33.)
- 91 The following and other like INDEFINITE expressions, are also expressed in french by ON, with the verb in its *active* sense; as,  
*It was* said. ON disoit; i. e. *one* said.  
*It has been* reported. ON a rapporté; *one* has reported.
- 92 The english PASSIVE verbs used indefinitely, require the *active* signification in french, with ON for *nominative*; but by adding ON to the sentence, the *nominative* of the verb in english, becomes its *object* in french;  
*I have been* told that *news* has been received. } i. e. *one* has told me that *one*  
 ON m'a dit qu'ON a reçu des nouvelles; } has received news.
- 93 *ONESELF, HIMSELF* used indefinitely, } are expressed by SOI; as,  
*ITSELF* after a preposition }  
 Every one thinks well of himself. Chacun a bonne opinion de soi.  
 Virtue is amiable of itself. La vertu est aimable de soi.
- 94 *SOME*, repeated in a sentence of two parts, is in the first part LES UNS, in the second part LES AUTRES; as,  
*Some* laugh, *some* cry. LES UNS rient, LES AUTRES pleurent.
- 95 *SOMEBODY, SOME ONE* is QUELQU'UN for both genders; as,  
*Somebody* has taken my book. QUELQU'UN a pris mon livre.
- 96 *SOME, ANY, FEW* followed by a noun or a pronoun in the possessive state, are expressed by QUELQU'UN, QUELQUES UNS, *m.* QUELQU'UNE, QUELQUES UNES, *f.* agreeably to gender and number; as,  
 Take some of these oranges. Prenez QUELQUES UNES de ces oranges.  
 Give me a few of them. Donnez-m'en QUELQUES UNES.
- 97 *NOBODY, NOT ANY BODY, PERSONNE*; } require Ne before the verb;  
*NOBODY WHATEVER, QUI QUE CE SOIT* }  
 Nobody loves that man. PERSONNE n'aime cet homme.  
 He trusts nobody whatever. Il ne se fie à QUI QUE CE SOIT.
- 98 *SOMETHING* is QUELQUE CHOSE; as,  
 He gave me something good. Il me donna QUELQUE CHOSE de bon(cc)
- 99 *NOTHING, NOT ANY THING, RIEN*; } require Ne before the verb;  
*NOTHING WHATEVER, QUOI QUE CE SOIT* } as,  
 Nothing is more agreeable. RIEN n'est plus agréable.  
 He applies to nothing whatever. Il ne s'applique à QUOI QUE CE SOIT.
- 100 *NONE, NOT ANY*, followed by a substantive in the possessive state, are expressed by AUCUN, *m.* AUCUNE, *f.* with Ne before the verb; as,  
 None of your sisters is come. AUCUNE de vos sœurs n'est venue.

(cc) QUELQU'UN, PERSONNE, QUELQUE CHOSE, RIEN followed by an adjective or a past participle, require DE after them; as *Somebody* wounded. Quelqu'un de blessé. Something good. Quelque chose de bon. Nobody come. Personne de venu. Nothing new. Rien de nouveau.

**NONE, NUL ;** } used *absolutely*, are synonymous to **PERSONNE** and **101**  
**NOT ONE, PAS UN** } require *ne* before the verb ; as,

*None* are free from faults. **NUL** *n'est exempt de défauts.*

*Not one* believes it. **PAS UN, OR PERSONNE** *ne le croit* (dd)

**EACH**, joined to a *noun*, is expressed by **CHAQUE** for *both genders* ; as, **102**

*Each* boy had a shilling. **CHAQUE** *garçon eut un shelin.*

*Each* girl earned six pence. **CHAQUE** *fille gagna six sous.*

**EACH**, followed by a *noun* in the *possessive* state, or relating to a *noun* **103**  
 already mentioned, is **CHACUN, m. CHACUNE, f.** as,

*Each* of these books has its price. **CHACUN** *de ces livres a son prix.*

Put them *each* in *their* places. **Mettez-les CHACUN** *à sa place.*

**EVERY**, followed by a *noun*, requires a distinction.

If **EVERY** denotes *individuality*, it is expressed by **CHAQUE** ; as, **104**

*Every* language has its properties. **CHAQUE** *langue a ses propriétés ;*

i. e. *each* language has &c.

If **EVERY** denotes a *totality*, it is expressed by **TOUT, m. TOUTE, f.**

*Every* man is fallible, i. e. *all men* ; **TOUT** *homme est faillible.*

**EVERY ONE** requires the same distinction as **EVERY**. **105**

**EVERY ONE**, implying every one taken *individually*, is **CHACUN** ;

*Every one* lives after his own way. **CHACUN** *vit à sa manière.*

i. e. *each person* lives &c.

**EVERY ONE**, implying every one *collectively*, is **TOUTS, m. TOUTES, f.**

*Every one* of them were taken ; } **Ils furent TOUTS** *pris, m.*

i. e. they were *all* taken.

} **Elles furent TOUTES** *prises, f.*

**EVERY BODY** is **TOUT le MONDE** ; as, **106**

*Every body* speaks ill of her. **TOUT le MONDE** *parle mal d'elle.*

She speaks ill of *every body*. **Elle** *parle mal de TOUT le MONDE.*

**EVERY THING** is expressed by **TOUT** ; as, **107**

*Every thing* is right. **TOUT** *est bien.*

She complains of *every thing*. **Elle** *se plaint de TOUT.*

**ANY BODY, ANY ONE**, used in the sense of *some body, some one*, are **108**  
 expressed by **QUELQU'UN** ; as,

Has *any body* asked for me ? **QUELQU'UN** *m'a-t-il demandé ?*

**ANY BODY, ANY ONE**, used in the sense of *every body*, are expressed by **109**

**TOUT le MONDE, OR IL N'Y A PERSONNE QUI ne** ; as,

*Any body* will tell you the same, i. e. *every body* will &c.

**TOUT le MONDE** *vous dira la même chose ;*

or, **IL N'Y A PERSONNE QUI ne** *vous dise la même chose.*

With a verb denoting *admiration* or *doubt*, or after a *comparative*, **ANY** **110**

**BODY** is expressed by **PERSONNE**, but without *ne*, because *personne*

attended by *ne*, signifies *NOBODY* ; as,

Did ever *any body* see that ! **PERSONNE** *a-t-il jamais vu cela !*

He will do it better than *any body*. **Il** *le fera mieux que PERSONNE.*

(dd) **RIEN, AUCUN, PAS UN, PERSONNE** followed by **QUI, QUE, DONT** require the fol-  
 lowing verb in the *subjunctive* ; as,

Have you found *nothing* that suits you ? **N'avez-vous trouvé RIEN** *qui vous convienne ?*

I do not know *any body* who can do it. **Je ne connais PERSONNE** *qui puisse le faire.*

- 111 *ANY THING*, in the sense of *something*, is *QUELQUE CHOSE* ; as,  
Has *any thing* happened? *Est-il arrivé QUELQUE CHOSE ?*
- 112 *ANY THING*, used in the sense of *every thing*, is expressed by *TOUT* ;  
Do *any thing* you please. *Faites TOUT ce qu'il vous plaira.*
- 113 With a verb denoting *admiration* or *doubt*, *ANY THING* is expressed by  
*RIEN*, but without *ne* ; for *rien* attended by *ne*, expresses *NOTHING* ; as,  
Is there *any thing* finer ! *Y a-t-il RIEN de plus beau !*
- 114 *WHOEVER*, *WHOSOEVER* joined to a substantive, or relating to a sub-  
stantive before mentioned, is expressed by *QUELQUE*, *QUELSQUE*, *m.*  
*QUELLEQUE*, *QUELLESQUE*, *f.* with the verb in the *subjunctive* ; and if  
the nominative is a *noun*, it is placed *after* the verb ; as,  
*Whoever* that man is, I shall have him punished.  
*QUELQUE soit cet homme, je le ferai punir.*
- 115 *WHOEVER*, *WHOSOEVER*, *WHOMSOEVER*, meaning *any person soever*, is  
expressed by *QUI QUE CE SOIT*, with a *relative pronoun* after it, and the  
verb in the *subjunctive* ; as,  
*Whoever* has done it, he shall repent of it ; i. e. *whoever that person be* ;  
*QUI QUE CE SOIT QUI l'a fait, il s'en repentira.*  
*Whomsoever* you meet, do not stop ; i. e. *whosoever that person be* ;  
*QUI QUE CE SOIT QUE vous rencontriez, ne vous arrêtez pas.*
- 116 *WHOEVER*, *WHOMSOEVER*, meaning *every body*, is *TOUTS CEUX* ;  
He stops *whomsoever* he meets. *Il arrête TOUTS CEUX qu'il rencontre.*  
*N. B.* In proverbial sentences, *WHOEVER* is *QUICONQUE* ; as,  
*Whoever* is rich is every thing. *QUICONQUE est riche est tout.*
- 117 *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOEVER*, with a substantive, requires a distinction.  
If the substantive to which *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOEVER* is joined, is  
the *nominative* of a verb, it is expressed by *QUELQUE*, *QUELSQUE*, *m.*  
*QUELLEQUE*, *QUELLESQUE*, *f.* with the verb in the *subjunctive*, and if the  
nominative is a *noun*, it is placed *after* the verb ; as,  
*Whatever* his reasons are, they will not be heard.  
*QUELLESQUE soient ses raisons, elles ne seront pas écoutées.*  
If the substantive to which *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOEVER* is joined, is the  
*object* of a verb, *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOEVER* is expressed by *QUELQUE*, *sing.*  
*QUELQUES*, *plur.* for *both genders*, with *QUE* *after* the substantive, and  
the verb in the *subjunctive* ; as,  
*Whatever* reasons he gives, he will not be excused.  
*QUELQUES raisons qu'il donne, il ne sera pas excusé.*
- 118 *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOEVER*, implying *whatever a thing may be*, is ex-  
pressed by *QUOI QUE CE SOIT*, with a *relative pronoun* after it, and the  
verb in the *subjunctive* ; as,  
*Whatever* happens let me know it ; i. e. *whatever the thing be* &c.  
*QUOI QUE CE SOIT QUI arrive, faites-le-moi savoir.*
- 119 *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOEVER*, implying *Any thing*, or *every thing*, is ex-  
pressed by *TOUT CE QUI*, *nomin.* *TOUT CE QUE*, *object.* as,  
*Whatever* is right, is not always approved ; i. e. *every thing* that &c.  
*TOUT CE QUI est bien n'est pas toujours approuvé.*  
Do *whatever* you will ; i. e. *any thing*, or *every thing* you will.  
*Faites TOUT CE QUE vous voudrez.*



**OTHER** is **AUTRE**, *substantive and adjective, of both genders*; as,  
 Give me an *other* pen. *Donnez-moi une AUTRE plume.*  
*Others* think differently. *D'AUTRES pensent différemment.\**

**EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER**;  
 masc. SING. fem. masc. PLURAL. fem.  
*l'un l'autre, l'une l'autre, les uns les autres, les unes les autres*;  
*of, from ONE ANOTHER*;  
*l'un de l'autre, l'une de l'autre, les uns des autres, les unes des autres*;  
*to, at ONE ANOTHER*;  
*l'un à l'autre, l'une à l'autre, les uns aux autres, les unes aux autres*;  
 agreeably to *gender and number*; but observe that the *preposition* which  
 comes *before ONE ANOTHER* in english, must be placed *between* the two  
 words *l'un, l'autre* in french; as,

They can not live *without* one another; *i. e.* the one *without* the other.  
*Ils ne sauraient vivre l'un sans l'autre, m. l'une sans l'autre, f.*

**BOTH**; mas. SING. fem. masc. PLUR. fem.  
*l'un et l'autre, l'une et l'autre, tous deux, toutes deux*;  
*of, from BOTH*;  
*de l'un et de l'autre, de l'une et de l'autre, de tous deux, de toutes deux*;  
*to, at BOTH*;  
*à l'un et à l'autre. à l'une et à l'autre, à tous deux à toutes deux*;  
 Your sisters are *both* right. } Speaking of two individual objects only as,

*Vos sœurs ont raison l'une et l'autre, or ont TOUTES DEUX raison.*

**BOTH**; *les uns et les autres, les unes et les autres*;  
*of, from BOTH*; *des uns et des autres, des unes et des autres*;  
*to, at BOTH*; *aux uns et aux autres, aux unes et aux autres*;  
 The French and the Dutch are united, let us beat *both*. } Speaking of a greater number of individuals, but considered as two parties; as,

*Les Français et les Hollandais sont unis, battons les uns et les autres.*

**EITHER**; m. SING. fem. masc. PLURAL. fem.  
*l'un ou l'autre, l'une ou l'autre, les uns ou les autres, les unes ou les autres*;  
*of, from EITHER*;  
*de l'un ou de l'autre, de l'une ou de l'autre, des uns ou des autres, des unes ou des autres*;  
*to, at EITHER*;  
*à l'un ou à l'autre, à l'une ou à l'autre, aux uns ou aux autres, aux unes ou aux autres*;  
*Either* of them will come.

*L'un ou l'autre viendra, m. l'une ou l'autre viendra, f.*

You may use *either* of them.

*Vous pouvez vous servir de l'un ou de l'autre, m. de l'une ou de l'autre, f.*

**NEITHER, NOT EITHER**;  
 masc. SING. fem. masc. PLURAL. fem.  
*Ni l'un ni l'autre, ni l'une ni l'autre, ni les uns ni les autres, [ni les autres,*  
*of, from NEITHER*;  
*Ni de l'un ni de l'autre, ni de l'une ni de l'autre; Ni des uns ni des autres, [ni des autres,*  
*to, at NEITHER*;  
*Ni à l'un ni à l'autre, ni à l'une ni à l'autre; Ni aux uns ni aux autres, [ni aux autres.*

These words require *ne* before the verb which attends them; as,

I care for *neither* of them.

*Je ne me soucie ni de l'un ni de l'autre, m. ni de l'une ni de l'autre, f.*

**N. B.** When these words are the *nominative* of a verb, they are generally placed *after* the verb, and **ILS** or **ELLES** is *added* to the verb; as,

*Neither* of them will come.

*Ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendra; or ils ne viendront ni l'un ni l'autre, m.*

*Ni l'une ni l'autre ne viendra; or elles ne viendront ni l'une ni l'autre, f.*

\* In proverbial sentences, **OTHERS** after **OF, TO** is generally rendered by **AUTRUI**; as,  
 Do not do to *others* what you would not like to be done to.

*Né faites pas à AUTRUI ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fît.*



## VERB.

## AGREEMENT of the VERB with its NOMINATIVE.

A VERB expressing either *being* or *acting*, necessarily implies a *subject* or *agent*, generally known in grammar by the name of *NOMINATIVE*.

- 125 The VERB must be of the *same NUMBER* and *PERSON* as the *agent*, or *nominative*; this is called *agreement* of the verb with its *NOMINATIVE*; as,

	Singular.	Plural.	
I speak.	Je PARLE.	Nous PARLONS.	we speak, &c.
Thou speakest.	Tu PARLES.	Vous PARLEZ.	
He	Il } PARLE.	Ils } PARLENT.	
She	Elle } PARLE.	Elles } PARLENT.	
My brother	Mon frère } PARLE.	Mes frères } PARLENT.	
My sister	Ma sœur } PARLE.	Mes sœurs } PARLENT.	

- 126 When *TWO* or *more* substantives in the *singular* are the *NOMINATIVE* of the *same* VERB, that verb must be in the *PLURAL* number; as,  
My sister and he speak french. Ma sœur et lui PARLENT français.

- 127 If the substantives which are the *nominative* of the verb, are of *DIFFERENT* persons,\* the verb *does not agree* with either of them; we add *NOUS* or *VOUS* to the sentence with which we make the verb *agree*.

We add *NOUS*, if there is in the sentence a substantive\* of the *first* person; as,

He and I speak french. Lui et moi NOUS parlons français;  
i. e. he and I we speak french.

We add *VOUS*, if there is in the sentence a substantive\* of the *second* person, and none of the *first*; as,

You and they speak french. Vous et eux VOUS parlez français;  
i. e. you and they you speak french.

- 128 If the *nominative* of the verb is the relative pronoun *QUI*, the verb must be of the *same NUMBER* and *PERSON* as the *substantive\** to which that pronoun *relates*; as,

It is I who speak best.	C' est MOI qui parle le mieux
It is thou who speakest best.	C' est TOI qui parles le mieux.
It is he who speaks best.	C' est LUI qui parle le mieux.
It is we who speak best.	C' est NOUS qui parlons le mieux.
It is you who speak best.	C' est VOUS qui parlez le mieux
It is they who speak best.	Ce sont EUX qui parlent le mieux.

- 129 If *QUI* refers to *several* substantives of *DIFFERENT* persons,\* it *agrees* with the *FIRST* person in preference to the *second*, and with the *SECOND* in preference to the *third*; as,

It is you and I who speak best. C' est vous et moi qui parlons le mieux.  
It is you and he who speak best. C' est vous et lui qui parlez le mieux.

- 130 The collective substantives *La PLUPART*, *INFINITÉ*, *NOMBRE*, *QUANTITÉ*, *TROUPE*, *MULTITUDE* followed by another substantive, require the verb of the *same number* as that *second substantive*; ex.

Most people are of that opinion.

La plupart du MONDE pense ainsi, or La plupart des GENS pensent ainsi.

- 131 *Le QUART*, *Le TIERS*, *La MOITIÉ* require the verb in the *singular*; as,  
One fourth of my books are lost. Le QUART de mes livres EST perdu.

PLACING of the NOMINATIVE with the VERB.

In a DECLARATIVE sentence, *i. e.* when a question is not asked, the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb is placed in french as in english, *BEFORE* the VERB; ex.

*I speak french well.* JE parle bien français.  
*He speaks french well.* IL parle bien français.  
*My brother speaks french well.* Mon FRÈRE parle bien français.  
*My sister speaks french well.* Ma SŒUR parle bien français. (*ee*)

But when the sentence is INTERROGATIVE, it is necessary to consider whether the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb is a *NOUN* or a *PRONOUN*.

If, when you *ask* a QUESTION, the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb is one of the *PRONOUNS* JE, TU, IL, ELLE, NOUS, VOUS, ILS, ELLES, ON, or CE, this pronoun is *placed* in french, as the corresponding words are in english, *IMMEDIATELY AFTER* the VERB; ex.

Do *I* speak french well? Parle-JE bien français? \*  
 Does *he* speak french well? Parle-t-IL bien français?  
 Does *she* speak french well? Parle-t-ELLE bien français?  
 Do *people* speak french well? Parle-t-ON bien français?

If, when you *ask* a QUESTION, the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb is a *NOUN*, that *noun* is placed *BEFORE* the VERB, the same as in *declarative* sentences; but to *shew* that a QUESTION is *asked*, one of the pronouns IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun, must be placed *IMMEDIATELY AFTER* the VERB; as,

Does my *brother* speak french well? Mon frère parle-t-IL bien français? (*ff*)  
 Does my *sister* speak french well? Ma sœur parle-t-ELLE bien français?  
 Do my *brothers* speak french well? Mes frères parlent-ILS bien français?  
 Do my *sisters* speak french well? Mes sœurs parlent-ELLES bien français?

(*ee*) The *nominative* is generally placed after the verb in a *declarative* sentence.

1. When the verb is used as a PARENTHESIS; ex.

You are wrong, said her mother to her. Vous avez tort, lui dit sa MÈRE.

2. When the sentence begins with *TEI*, or *AINSI*; as,

Such was his advice. TEL était son AVIS.  
 Thus ended the business. AINSI se termina l'AFFAIRE.

3. When the *nominative* is attended by several words which can not be separated from it, or can not be placed before the verb, without suspending the sense of the sentence;

D'un côté on voyait une rivière où se FORMAIENT des ILES bordées de tilleuls fleuris.  
 On one side was seen a river from which sprung islands lined with lime trees in bloom.  
 Là coulent mille RUISSEAUX qui distribuent par tout une eau claire.

There a thousand rivulets run which carry every where a clear water. FENELON.

These sentences would not be so clear, if they were expressed thus:

D'un côté on voyait une rivière où des ILES bordées de tilleuls fleuris se FORMAIENT.  
 Là, mille RUISSEAUX, qui distribuent par tout une eau claire coulent.

4. When the verb is preceded by *QUE*, *SE*, or *OÙ*; as,

The money which my father sent me. L'argent QUE m'envoya mon PÈRE.  
 The field where the battle was fought. Le champ où se donna la BATAILLE.

5. JE, NOUS, TU, VOUS, IL, ILS, ELLE, ELLES, ON, CE are generally placed after the verb, when the sentence begins with one of these words, *AINSI*, so, therefore; *AU MOINS*, at least; *EN VAIN*, in vain; *À PEINE*, hardly; *PEUT-ÊTRE*, perhaps; as,

You were hardly gone, when she came in. À PEINE étiez vous sorti qu'elle entra.

\* Except the pronoun *Je*, when the verb to which it is joined ends with several consonants, so instead of saying; *COURS-je?* do I run? *MENTS-je?* do I lie? *DORS-je?* do I sleep? which are hard to pronounce, we say, *EST-CE QUE je cours?* *EST-CE QUE je ments?*

(*ff*) When an interrogative sentence begins with *QUE*, (*what*); *OÙ*, (*where*); we generally place the noun after the verb, without adding a pronoun to it; as,  
 Où est votre frère? Where is your brother? Où est votre sœur? Where is your sister?  
 QUE fait votre frère? What is your brother doing? QUE fait votre sœur? What is your &c.?

132

133

134

## MOODS and TENSES.

## INDICATIVE MOOD OR MANNER.

When we *declare* that a thing *is*, or *is not*, or that it *is*, *was*, *will be*, or *would be* in our power to have it so, this manner of expressing ourselves is called *INDICATIVE* or *declarative*.

## PRESENT TENSE OR TIME.

J' AI,	I have,	} now, to-day, this week, this month, this year, this age, in any period of time not entirely elapsed.†
Je SUIS,	I am,	
Je PARLE,*	I speak, or am speaking;	

135 The *PRESENT* tense in french does not differ from the same tense in english; it expresses the being or acting at the *time* in which *we are*; as,  
I now have. I now am. I now speak, or am speaking.

À présent j'AI. À présent je SUIS. À présent je PARLE.

## PAST TENSES.

COMPOUND of the *PRESENT*.

J' AI EU,	I had, or have had,	} lately, to-day, this week, &c. in any period of time, not entirely elapsed; this is the nearest time to the present.
J' AI ÉTÉ,	I was, have been,	
J' AI PARLÉ,	I spoke, did speak, have spoken;	

136 If we speak of an *ACTION* *recently* PAST, without *mentioning* the *TIME* in which it passed, or if we *mention* a *PERIOD*† which is still *lasting*, such as, *to-day, this WEEK, this MONTH, this YEAR, &c.* the *action* being *past*, and the *period* of time mentioned being *still present*, we make the verb partake of both the *present* and *past* tenses, by adding the *PAST PARTICIPLE* to the *PRESENT* tense of the auxiliary verbs AVOIR or ÊTRE; ex.

## NO TIME MENTIONED.

*Were* you ever at paris?

turn, *Have* you ever *been* at paris? AVEZ-vous jamais ÉTÉ à paris?

No, I never *was* there;

turn, No, I *have* never *been* there. Non, je n'y AI jamais ÉTÉ.

I *had* no opportunity to go;

turn, I *have had* no opportunity &c. Je n'AI pas EU occasion d'y aller.

*Did* you ever *see* Buonaparte?

turn, *Have* you ever *seen* B.? AVEZ-vous jamais VU Buonaparte?

## PERIOD MENTIONED, BUT NOT ELAPSED.

I *was* at your house this morning;

turn, I *have been* at your house &c. J'AI ÉTÉ chez vous ce matin.

*Did* you *find* any body there?

turn, *Have* you *found* any body &c. Y AVEZ-vous TROUVÉ quelqu'un?

I *saw* your sister, and *spoke* to her;

turn, I *have seen* your sister, and &c. J'AI VU votre sœur, et je lui AI PARLÉ.

*Did* you not *see* my mother?

turn, *Have* you not *seen* &c.? N'AVEZ-vous pas VU ma mère?

\* In order to render the elucidation of this interesting part of the language more obvious, I have laid down the two auxiliary verbs AVOIR, to *Have*; and ÊTRE, to *Be*, which are generally found the most embarrassing, and the familiar verb PARLER, to *Speak*, which may serve as a model for all the rest.

† A *period of time* is a certain *quantity* of time, the duration of which is *fixed* and *agreed* upon, and which being *elapsed*, that period ceases; such as a *Day*, a *Week*, a *Fortnight*, a *Month*, a *Year*, an *Age*, the four seasons of the year, *Spring*, *Summer*, *Autumn*, *Winter*; or any other portion of time, the beginning and end of which can be ascertained.

‡ The french generally use the participle ÉTÉ, instead of the participle ALLÉ, to express that a person has *gone* to a place whence he is *returned*.



INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT TENSE.

J' EUS, I had, } yesterday, last week, last month, last year, a fortnight ago, in any period of time  
 Je FUS, I was, } entirely past; *this is the remotest time from the present.*  
 Je PARLAI, I spoke, did speak;

If we speak of an action PAST, in a PERIOD of time which is also entirely PAST; such as *Yesterday, last WEEK, a fortnight ago, last MONTH, last YEAR*, any year previous to that in which we live, then both the *time* and *action* being *past* or *accomplished*, we use the *PERFECT tense* of the verb; viz. EUS, FUS, PARLAI; as,

I called at your house yesterday. Je PASSAI hier chez vous.  
 Did you find any body there? Y TROUVÂTES-vous quelqu'un ? \*  
 I saw your sister and spoke to her. Je VIS votre sœur et je lui PARLAI.  
 Did you go to the ball with her? ALLÂTES-vous au bal avec elle ? \*  
 No, I did not; i.e. go there. (70 Rule N.B.) Non, je n'y ALLAI pas. (70 Rule N.B.)  
 Did you not speak to my mother? Ne PARLÂTES-vous pas à ma mère ?  
 Yes, I did; i.e. speak to her. (70 Rule N.B.) Oui, je lui PARLAI. (70 Rule N.B.)

IMPERFECT TENSE.

J' AVAIS, I had, }  
 J' ÉTAIS, I was, } then, at that time, when that happened, in a time imperfect or uncertain.  
 Je PARLAIS, I spoke, did speak ;

The *IMPERFECT* is used in *THREE different* instances.

1st. When we speak of an action that *was passing*, and consequently *imperfect* or *incomplete* at a time we allude to, though at the time in which we relate it, it is perfect or accomplished, we use the *IMPERFECT tense* of the verb: viz. AVAIS, ÉTAIS, PARLAIS, &c.

These instances are generally expressed in english by the *gerund* or present *participle* in *ing* added to *was* or *were*; as,

What were you doing there? Que FAISIEZ-vous là  
 I was writing to a friend. J'ÉCRIVAIS à un ami.  
 I was getting ready to go out. Je m'APPRÊTAIS à sortir.  
 I was going to call upon you. J'ALLAIS passer chez vous.  
 I was talking of you just now. Je PARLAIS de vous tout à l'heure.  
 I was going out, as you came in. Je SORTAIS, comme vous ENTRIEZ.

2nd. When we wish to denote that the action of which we speak was *habitual*, or has been *reiterated*, we must use the *IMPERFECT*.

In these instances, the english verb may be changed into the *infinitive*, with *did use*, or *used*, before it; as,

Where did you walk in London  
 viz. Where did you use to walk &c. Où vous PROMENIEZ-vous à Londres ?  
 I generally walked in the park. [le parc.  
 or, I used to walk &c. Je me PROMENAIS ordinairement dans  
 I often met frenchmen there.  
 or, I used to meet &c. J'y RENCONTRAIS souvent des français.  
 I always spoke french with them.  
 or, I used to speak &c. Je PARLAIS toujours français avec eux.

\* It is not necessary in order to use the past tenses, that every verb should be attended by an expression denoting a time past; it is sufficient that the time be mentioned or alluded to at the beginning of the discourse, because the mind naturally goes back to the period which has either been mentioned or alluded to.



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

140

3rd. Another very extensive use of the *IMPERFECT* is in *descriptions* for whenever we describe the *qualities* of persons, or things, the *state, place, situation, order, disposition* in which they were in a *time past*, we use the *IMPERFECT*; as,

Where *were* you yesterday?

I *was* in the country.

I *was*<sup>241</sup> not well.\*

I *had* a bad head-ache.

*Was* the country pleasant?

Yes; but it *was*<sup>240</sup> rather hot.

Où ÉTIEZ-vous hier?

J'ÉTAIS à la campagne.

Je ne me PORTAIS<sup>241</sup> pas bien.

J'AVAIS grand mal à la tête.\*

La campagne ÉTAIT-elle agréable?

Oui; mais il FAISAIT<sup>240</sup> un peu chaud.

N B. Observe however, that if the *duration* of the state, &c. which we wish to describe was *limited* to a *period* of which the *end was known*, we

\* The greatest difficulty attending the past tenses is how to discriminate this last instance of the *imperfect* from the *perfect*, i. e. how to distinguish an *action* from a *state of being*, and indeed the distinction is sometimes so nice, that it is not surprising foreigners should err in the use of them; for example,

## FIRST instance.

I *WAS* very wet in going into the country.

He *WAS* killed in falling from his horse.

He *HAD* his leg carried off by a cannon ball.

## SECOND instance.

I *WAS* so wet that I could not stay

He *WAS* dead when we found him.

He *HAD* also a wound in his breast.

*was* and *HAD* in these various instances can not be expressed by the same tense in french.

When, in the first instance, I say; I *WAS* very wet in going into the country; He *WAS* killed in falling; He *HAD* his leg carried off &c. I am relating facts, events which happened, of the end of which a perfect idea may be formed, and these must be expressed by the *perfect*.

But when, in the second instance, I say; I *WAS* so wet that I could not stay; He *WAS* dead when we found him; He *HAD* also a wound in his breast; I no longer express the facts themselves, of being wet, of being killed &c. but describe a state of being, i. e. I *WAS* in a wet state; He *WAS* in a dead state; He *WAS* in a wounded state, the duration of which is not limited to any time, and can not be ascertained, and these are expressed by the *imperfect*; thus,

## FIRST instance."

Je *FUS* très mouillé en allant à la campagne.

Il *FUT* tué en tombant de cheval.

Il *EUT* la jambe emportée d'un coup de canon.

## SECOND instance.

J'ÉTAIS si mouillé que je ne pus pas rester.

Il ÉTAIT mort quand nous le trouvâmes.

Il AVAIT aussi une blessure à la poitrine.

In order to elucidate this still more, and try the rules that have just been laid down, let us peruse a piece of history where the difference between a narration and a description, a fact and an incident, will appear obvious.

Calipso could not console herself for the departure of Ulysses. In her grief, she considered her immortality as a misfortune. Her grotto no longer resounded with the sweet harmony of her voice. The nymphs who attended her, dared not to speak to her. She often walked alone upon the flowery turf which an eternal spring diffused round her island; but these charming abodes, far from assuaging her grief, served only to recall the sad remembrance of Ulysses, whom she had so many times seen by her side. Frequently she stood motionless on the beach of the sea, which she watered with her tears, and she was incessantly turned towards that quarter where the ship of Ulysses, plowing the waves, had disappeared from her eyes. All on a sudden, she PERCEIVED pieces of a ship which had just been wrecked; then she DESCRIBED two men at a distance, one of

Calipso ne POUVAIT<sup>140</sup> se consoler du départ d'Ulysse. Dans sa douleur, elle se TROUVAIT<sup>140</sup> malheureuse d'être immortelle. Sa grotte ne RESONNAIT<sup>140</sup> plus du doux chant de sa voix. Les nymphes qui la SERVAIENT<sup>140</sup> n'OSAIENT<sup>140</sup> lui parler. Elle se PROMENAIT<sup>139</sup> souvent seule sur les gazons fleuris dont un printemps éternel BORDAIT<sup>140</sup> son île; mais ces beaux lieux, loin de modérer sa douleur ne FAISAIENT<sup>139</sup> que lui rappeler le triste souvenir d'Ulysse qu'elle y AVAIT<sup>140</sup> vu tant de fois auprès d'elle. Souvent elle DEMEURAIT<sup>139</sup> immobile sur le rivage de la mer qu'elle ARROSAIT<sup>139</sup> de ses larmes, et elle ÉTAIT<sup>140</sup> sans cesse tournée vers le côté où le vaisseau d'Ulysse, fendait les ondes, AVAIT<sup>140</sup> disparu à ses yeux. Tout à coup, elle APPERÇUT<sup>137</sup> les débris d'un navire qui VENAIT<sup>140</sup> de faire naufrage; puis elle DECOUVRIT<sup>137</sup> de loin

INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

should not use the imperfect; we should use either the *compound* of the *present* or the *perfect*, according to the period mentioned, or alluded to; for though I should say,

*J'ÉTAIS malade ce matin.* I was ill this morning.

*J'AVAIS hier grand mal à la tête.* I had a bad head-ache yesterday  
I would not say:

*J'ÉTAIS malade,* but *j'AI ÉTÉ malade toute la matinée.*

*J'AVAIS mal à la tête,* but *j'EUS mal à la tête toute la journée;*

Because the state which I describe is known to have ended with the period mentioned, viz. *la matinée, la journée.*

whom was seemingly in years; the other, though a youth, resembled Ulysses. He had his sweet and lofty look, with his size and majestic deportment. The goddess UNDERSTOOD that it was Telemachus the son of that hero, but she COULD not find out who that venerable man was by whom Telemachus was accompanied.

*deux hommes dont l'un PARAÎSSAIT<sup>140</sup> âgé; l'autre, quoique jeune, RESSEMBLAIT<sup>140</sup> à Ulysse. Il AVAIT<sup>140</sup> sa douceur et sa fierté, avec sa taille et sa démarche majestueuse. La déesse COMPRIT<sup>137</sup> que c'ÉTAIT<sup>140</sup> Télémaque fils de ce héros, mais elle ne PUT<sup>137</sup> découvrir qui ÉTAIT<sup>140</sup> cet homme vénérable dont Télémaque ÉTAIT<sup>140</sup> accompagné.*

Now, if we select from the above passage the facts that constitute the ground of the narration, we shall find them to be these:

Calypso, standing on her island, perceived the wreck of a ship; then she described two men, the one young and the other old. She understood the young one to be Telemachus, but she could not recognise the other. And the verbs expressing these facts are in the *perfect*. The verbs which form only incidents, such as the description of Calypso and her island, of Telemachus and his shipwreck, and which might be left out of the narration, without impairing it, but not without stripping it of its beauties, are in the *imperfect*.

Let us examine another piece of the same author, in which there will be more narration, and less description, or more facts and fewer incidents.

Telemachus, relating the manner in which he escaped the danger of being taken by the Trojan fleet, says:

The affability and the courage of the sage Mentor charmed me; but I was still more surprised, when I saw with what address he delivered us from the Trojans. At the moment when the skies began to clear, and the Trojans, having a nearer view of us, would infallibly have known us; he observed one of their ships that was almost similar to ours, which the storm had separated from the rest. Her poop was adorned with particular flowers. He hastened to put upon our poop garlands of flowers similar to theirs. He fastened them himself with fillets of the same colour as those of the Trojans. He ordered all our rowers to stoop as much as they could along their benches, that they might not be known by the enemy. In this manner we passed through the middle of their fleet, and whilst they were driven by the impetuosity of the winds towards Africa, we made all our endeavours to reach the neighbouring coast of Sicily. There indeed we arrived; but &c.

*La douceur et le courage du sage Mentor me CHARMERENT<sup>137</sup>; mais je FUS<sup>137</sup> encore bien plus surpris, quand je VIS<sup>137</sup> avec quelle adresse il nous DELIVRA<sup>137</sup> des Troyens. Dans le moment où le ciel COMMENÇAIT<sup>138</sup> à s'éclaircir et que les Troyens, nous voyant de plus près, n'auraient pas manqué de nous reconnaître; il REMARQUA<sup>137</sup> un de leurs vaisseaux qui ÉTAIT<sup>140</sup> presque semblable au nôtre, et que la tempête AVAIT<sup>140</sup> écarté. La poupe en ÉTAIT<sup>140</sup> couronnée de certaines fleurs. Il se HÂTA<sup>137</sup> de mettre sur notre poupe des couronnes de fleurs semblables. Il les ATTACHA<sup>137</sup> lui même avec des bandelettes de la même couleur que celles des Troyens. Il ORDONNA<sup>137</sup> à tous nos rameurs de se baisser le plus qu'ils pourraient le long de leurs bancs, pour n'être point reconnus des ennemis. En cet état nous PASSAMES<sup>137</sup> au milieu de leur flotte, et pendant que les vents impétueux LES POUSSAIENT<sup>138</sup> vers l'Afrique, nous FIMES<sup>137</sup> les derniers efforts pour arriver sur la côte voisine de Sicile. Nous y ARRIVAMES<sup>137</sup> en effet; mais &c. FENELON.*

The narrative part of this history is; the affability &c. of the sage Mentor charmed me, but I was still more surprised when I saw with what address he delivered us from the Trojans. He observed one of their ships with flowers on her poop. He hastened to put similar flowers upon ours. He fastened them himself with fillets of the same colour as those of the Trojans. He ordered all our rowers to stoop along their benches, that we might not be known by the enemy. In this manner we passed through the middle of their fleet, and made all our efforts to reach the coast of Sicily, where we arrived &c. by which you see that all the verbs which are necessary to the train of the narration, because they declare facts, are in the *perfect tense*, those which denote only incidents, are in the *imperfect*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## FUTURE POSITIVE.

J' AURAI,	I shall, will have,	} soon, by and by, tomorrow, next week, next month next year, &c. in any time to come.
Je SERAI,	I shall, will be,	
Je PARLERAI,	I shall, will speak ;	

141 The *FUTURE tense* is used in french as in english, to express what is to happen in a *time to come* ; as,

I will call upon you by and by. Je PASSERAI tantôt chez vous.

142 The *PRESENT tense* is sometimes used in both languages, instead of the *future* ; so we say,

Où ALLEZ-vous ce soir?	Where do you go this evening?
for, Où IREZ-vous ce soir ?	Where shall you go this evening?

N. B. But if *TWO* verbs denoting *futurity* come in the same sentence, the *second* verb can *not* be put in the *present* tense in french, as it is sometimes in english, it must be put in the *FUTURE* ; as,

Call upon me, when you are ready ; the *time* for calling and for being ready, *having yet to come*, I would not say in french,

PASSEZ chez moi, quand vous ÊTES prêt, which would denote that the person is ready at the time I am speaking ; I must say,

PASSEZ chez moi, quand vous SEREZ prêt, i. e. when you will be ready. I will call as soon as I have dined.

Je PASSERAI aussi tôt que j' AURAI dîné ; not, aussi tôt que j' AI dîné, which would denote that the person had dined at the time he is speaking.

This generally happens after the words *when, as soon as, as long, as after*.

## FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

J' AURAI,	I should, would have,	} if I could, if I would, if I had time, if such a thing happened.
SERAIS,	I should, would be,	
PARLERAIS,	I should, would speak ;	

143 The *CONDITIONAL* has also the same properties in french as in english ; it denotes that a thing would be done, if some condition was granted ; as,

I would call there, if I could. J'y PASSERAI, si je pouvais.

144 After the conjunction *IF, SI* ; *SHALL, WILL* must not be considered as signs of the *future*, nor *SHOULD, WOULD* as signs of the *conditional* of the verb which follows them ; *WILL* is then the *present* tense, and *WOULD* the *imperfect* of the verb *TO WILL*, *to BE WILLING*, and they must be expressed, *WILL* by the *present*, and *WOULD* by the *imperfect* of the verb *VOULOIR*, with the following verb in the *INFINITIVE* in french ; as,

I will go with you, if you will come with me ; i. e. if you are willing to come

J'IRAI avec vous, si vous VOULEZ venir avec moi.\* [(gg)

I would go with you, if you would come with me ; i. e. if you were willing

J'IRAIS avec vous, si vous VOULIEZ venir avec moi.\* [to come.

N. B. If *SHOULD* is the sign that follows *IF*, it must be left out, and the following verb put in the *IMPERFECT* ; as,

If he should come, what should I say to him ? S'il VENAIT, que lui dirais-je ?

\* In these examples, you see *will* used first as a sign of the *future* of the following verb, then as the *present* of the verb *to will* ; *would* first used as a sign of the *conditional*, then as the *imperfect* of the verb *to will*. If the learner finds himself embarrassed how to distinguish the verb from the sign, let him try to substitute in the place of *will, would* some verb of the same meaning, i. e. denoting *will, wish, inclination, desire, such as please, like, choose, be willing* ; and he will know by the sense it will make, which is the verb and which is the sign. See also note \* page 143.

(gg) If *SI* is used for *WHETHER* ; *SHALL, WILL* must be expressed by the *future*, and *SHOULD, WOULD* by the *conditional* ; as,

Do you know whether he will come ?

I want to know whether he would come.

Savez-vous s' il VIENDRA ?

Je veux savoir s' il VIENDRAIT.



SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

It has been said, (p. 224,) that when we *declare* that a thing *is* or *is not*, or that it *is in our power* to have it so, that mode of expression is called *INDICATIVE*, or *declarative*; but if the thing spoken of *is not asserted* to be or not to be; if it is mentioned only as a thing which *may* or *may not be*, and *is not to be depended upon*, this mode of expression is called *potential, conjunctive*, or *SUBJUNCTIVE*.\*

If we speak of an action the event of which is *uncertain*, which is generally the case when, in a sentence of *TWO PARTS* connected by the conjunction *QUE*, the *first PART* is either *INTERROGATIVE* or *NEGATIVE*, or is attended by some expression denoting *DOUBT*; as for ex. when I say;

*Do you think your sister will come?*

*I do not think she will come to-day.*

*If I hear that she comes, I will let you know;*

In which instances it remains *uncertain* whether the person will come or not; this *uncertainty* is imparted in french, by putting the verb in the *second part* of the sentence in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*; thus,

*Pensez-vous que votre sœur VIENNE?* not, *VIENDRA*.

*Je NE pense PAS qu'elle VIENNE aujourd'hui;* not, *VIENDRA*.

*Si j'apprends qu'elle VIENNE, je vous le ferai savoir.*

*VIENDRA* and *VIENT* would assert as a *fact*, what the first part of the sentence shews to be *doubtful*.

*N.B.* With respect to *INTERROGATIVE* sentences, it must be observed, that it is only when we wish to impart *ignorance* or *doubt* of the thing inquired after, that the *subjunctive* is required after them; for if we knew that a thing *is* or *will be*, and only enquired whether the person to whom we speak knows it likewise, we should use the *INDICATIVE*; as,

*Do you not believe that she will come? Ne croyez-vous pas qu'elle VIENDRA?*

*Do not you know that she is married? Ne savez-vous pas qu'elle EST mariée?* which sentences express the same idea as these;

*She will come, do you not believe it? She is married, do not you know it?*

\* A few examples will make the difference between the *INDICATIVE* and *SUBJUNCTIVE* moods more obvious:

*They say that peace is made.*

*I believe that peace is made.*

By these expressions I declare, in a *positive manner*, that, in the opinion of some person, the thing of which I am speaking (*peace*) *does* or *does not exist*, and this positive assertion must be made with the *indicative*; thus,

*On dit que la paix EST faite.*

*Je crois que la paix EST faite.*

But by these expressions;

*Do they say that peace is made?*

*I do not believe that peace is made.*

I do not assert that peace *does* or *does not exist*; I either declare that I am *ignorant* of it, or that I *doubt* its existence; but a thing may exist, though I am ignorant of it; it may exist, though I am not convinced of its existence, and this *uncertainty*, whether the thing is or is not, is imparted to the hearer by means of the *subjunctive* mood;

*Dit-on que la paix SOIT faite?*

*Je ne crois pas que la paix SOIT faite.*

Again, I know somebody who *will lend* me money. He promised that he *would lend* me some

These are *positive* assertions, and they must be made with the *indicative*;

*Je connais quelqu'un qui me PRÊTERA de l'argent.*

*Il a promis qu'il m'en PRÊTERAIT.* But in these other instances;

*I seek for somebody who will lend me money.*

*Do you know any body who would lend me money?*

It is *not asserted* whether the thing I am speaking of, *will*, or *will not be*, i. e. whether the money *will be lent* or *not*; the event remains *uncertain*, and this uncertainty must be expressed by the *subjunctive*;

*Je cherche quelqu'un qui me PRÊTE, or qui VEUILLE me prêter de l'argent.*

*Connaissez-vous quelqu'un qui VOULÛT me prêter de l'argent?*

The *indicative* mood (says Harris) which, in all grammars, is the first in order, is also the first, both in dignity and use; it is this which publishes our sublimest perceptions, which exhibits the soul in her purest energies, superior to the imperfections of desires and wants, which includes the whole of time and its minutest distinctions.

As to the potential (*subjunctive*) mood, it is only of a subordinate nature, and it implies but a *dubious* and *conjectural* assertion; whereas that of the *indicative* is *absolute*, and without *reserve*. (HERMFS, page 158, 159.)



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

146

The *SUBJUNCTIVE* mood is required after all *verbs* and *adjectives*, denoting *will, wish, desire, command, fear, wonder, surprise, astonishment, joy, gladness, grief, sorrow*, in short, after all expressions which denote any *passion or emotion* of the mind;\* as,

*I will have you do that.*

*I wish you may succeed.*

*I desired it to be got ready.*

*I am afraid he will spoil it.*

*I am surprised he is not here.*

*I am glad you are come.*

*I am sorry he has not seen it.*

*Je veux que vous FASSIEZ cela.*

*Je souhaite que vous RÉUSSISSEZ.*

*J'ai ordonné qu'on le PRÉPARE.*

*Je crains qu'il ne le GÂTE.*

*Je suis surpris qu'il ne SOIT pas ici.*

*Je suis bien aise que vous SOYEZ venu.*

*Je suis fâché qu'il ne l'AIT pas vu.*

147

The *SUBJUNCTIVE* mood is also required in french after the following *verbs* and *adjectives*, though they neither denote *doubt* nor *passion* ;

*Il FAUT* } *que je le VOIE.*

*Il est TEMS* }

*C'est le SEUL ami que j'AIÉ.*

*Il CONVIENT* }

*Il IMPORTE* } *que j'y AILLE.*

*Il VAUT MIEUX* }

*Il SUFFIT* }

*Il est À PROPOS* } *que je lui PARLE.*

*Il est NÉCESSAIRE* }

*Il est INDIFFÉRENT* }

*Il est CRUEL* } *que cela SOIT.*

*Il est HONTEUX* }

*Il est JUSTE* }

*Il est INJUSTE* }

*Il est POSSIBLE* }

*Il est IMPOSSIBLE* }

*I must see him.*

*It is time that I should see him.*

*He is the only friend I have.*

*It is becoming* }

*It is material* } *that I should go.*

*It is better* }

*It is sufficient* }

*It is fit* } *that I speak to him.*

*It is necessary* }

*It is indifferent* }

*It is cruel.* } *that it should be so.*

*It is shameful* }

*It is just* }

*It is unjust* }

*It is possible* } *that he should do it.*

*It is impossible* }

After an *ADJECTIVE* in the *superlative* degree, (see 50 rule.)

After *RIEN, AUCUN, PAS UN, PERSONNE*, (note *dd*, p. 219.)

After *QUELQUE, QUI QUE CE SOIT, QUOI QUE CE SOIT*, (114, 115, 117, 118 rules.)

After the conjunctions *AFINQUE, QUOIQUE, &c.* (see 218 rule.)

\* The ingenious Mr. HARRIS, (HERMES, p. 15, 16.) gives the following definition of the powers of the soul, which may throw some light upon this intricate subject.

The powers of the soul may be included in those of *PERCEPTION*, and those of *VOLITION*.

By the powers of *PERCEPTION*, I mean the *senses* and the *intellect*. By the powers of *VOLITION*, I mean not only the *will*, but the several *passions* and *appetites*; in short, *all that moves to action, whether rational or irrational*.

If the leading powers of the soul be these two, it is plain that every speech or sentence, as far as it exhibits the soul, must of course respect one or other of these.

If we *assert*, then it is a sentence which respects the powers of *PERCEPTION*; for what, indeed, is it to assert, but to publish some *perception*, either of the *senses*, or of the *intellect*.

If we *interrogate*, if we *command*, if we *pray*, if we *wish*, what do we but publish so many different *VOLITIONS*? for, Who is it that *questions*? He who has a *desire* to be informed. Who is it that *commands*? He who has a *will*, which he would have obeyed. What are those beings who either *wish* or *pray*? Those who feel certain *wants*, either for themselves or for others.

If then the soul's leading powers be the two above mentioned, and if it be true that *all speech* is a publication of these powers, it will follow, that every sentence will be either a sentence of *ASSERTION*, or a sentence of *VOLITION*.

To this may be added that sentences of *assertion* require the *INDICATIVE*, and sentences of *volition* require the *SUBJUNCTIVE* mood after them.

TENSES of the SUBJUNCTIVE.

The *SUBJUNCTIVE* mood being always *subordinate* to a verb that *precedes* it,\* its tenses are *regulated* by this *foregoing* verb.

PRESENT TENSE.

J' AIE,	I have,	may have,	} used after the present and future of the indicative.
Je SOIS,	I be,	may be,	
Je PARLE,	I speak,	may speak;	

The *PRESENT* of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* is used, when the verb which requires the *SUBJUNCTIVE* after it, is in the *present* or *future* of the *INDICATIVE*; as,

Present. Do you think	{	I shall have time?	PENSEZ-VOUS	{	que j' AIE le tems?
		I shall be ready?			que je SOIS prêt?
		I shall speak to her?			que je lui PARLE?
Future. He will wait	{	till I have time;	Il ATTENDRA	{	que j' AIE le tems;
		till I am ready;			que je SOIS prêt;
		till I speak to her.			que je lui PARLE.

PERFECT TENSE.

J' EUSSE,	I had,	might have,	} used after the perfect, imperfect, and conditional tenses.
Je FUSSES,	I were,	might be,	
Je PARLASSE,	I spoke,	might speak;	

The *PERFECT* of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* is used, when the verb which requires the *SUBJUNCTIVE* after it, is in the *perfect*, *imperfect*, or *conditional*; as,

Perfect. He waited	{	till I had time;	Il ATTENDIT	{	que j' EUSSE le tems;
		till I was ready;			que je FUSSE prêt;
		till I spoke to her.			que je lui PARLASSE.
Imperf. He was waiting	{	till I had time;	Il ATTENDAIT	{	que j' EUSSE le tems;
		till I should be ready;			que je FUSSE prêt;
		till I should speak to her			que je lui PARLASSE.
Conditi. Would he wait	{	till I had time?	ATTENDRAIT il	{	que j' EUSSE le tems?
		till I should be ready?			que je FUSSE prêt?
		till I should speak to her?			que je lui PARLASSE?

N.B. The *PERFECT* of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* is also used, though the foregoing verb is in the *present* of the *indicative*, if after the *subjunctive* there is another verb in the *imperfect*, or some *conditional* expression; as,

Do you think I *might* speak to her, if I *went* now?

Pensez-vous que je FUSSE lui parler, si j'y ALLAIS à présent?

I do not think I *should* have succeeded without your assistance.

Je ne pense pas que j'EUSSE réussi SANS votre secours; i.e. if you had not assisted me.

And also when the action expressed by the verb is *past*; as,

It is no wonder that he *was* wicked.

Il n'EST pas étonnant qu'il FÛT méchant.

If, after a verb in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*, there is another verb, preceded by the *conjunction* QUE, that verb must also be in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*; as,

Do you think she *expects* that I *shall* come?

Pensez-vous qu'elle s'ATTENDE que je VIENNE?

\* Except in some sentences of *WISH*, where the verb *wish* is understood; as,  
 God be blessed! Dieu SOIT béni!  
 May you be happy! PUISSIEZ-vous être heureux!  
 Would to God I had never seen him! PLUT à dieu que je ne l' EUSSE jamais vu!





EU, *had*, *PAST PARTICIPLE*.  
 ÊTÉ, *been*, N.B. ÊTÉ never varies its termination.  
 PARLÉ, *spoken*;

The *PAST PARTICIPLE* joined to a *noun*, has the property of an *ADJECTIVE*, and agrees in *gender* and *number* with that *noun*; 157

A well *made* man. *Un homme bien FAIT.*

A well *made* woman. *Une femme bien FAITE.*

After the auxiliary verbs *AVOIR* and *ÊTRE*, a *distinction* must be made.

After *ÊTRE*, *to BE*, the *PAST PARTICIPLE* must be of the same *gender* and *number* as the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb; *ex.* 158

IL *est* bien FAIT.

ILS *sont* bien FAITS.

ELLE *est* bien FAITE.

ELLES *sont* bien FAITES.

After *AVOIR*, *to HAVE*, the *PAST PARTICIPLE* does *not* agree with the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb; so we say, 159

IL *a* bien FAIT.

ILS *ont* bien FAIT.

ELLE *a* bien FAIT.

ELLES *ont* bien FAIT.

In these instances you must consider whether the *PARTICIPLE* has an *OBJECT*, and whether this *OBJECT* comes *before* or *after* the *PARTICIPLE*.

If the *PARTICIPLE* comes *BEFORE* its *OBJECT*, it *does not* require any agreement with it; but if it comes *AFTER* the *OBJECT*, it must *agree* like an *ADJECTIVE* in *gender* and *number* with that *OBJECT*; *ex.*

*PARTICIPLE BEFORE ITS OBJECT.*

My brother has *made a mistake*. *Mon frère a FAIT une faute.*

My sister has *made a mistake*. *Ma sœur a FAIT une faute.*

My brothers have *made a mistake*. *Mes frères ont FAIT une faute.*

*PARTICIPLE AFTER ITS OBJECT.*

Here is the *mistake* he has *made*. *Voici la faute qu'il a FAITE.*

Here is the *mistake* she has *made*. *Voici la faute qu'elle a FAITE.*

Here is the *mistake* they have *made*. *Voici la faute qu'ils ont FAITE.*

N.B. Observe that the *participle* agrees only with its *direct object* (see 162 rule); for if the *object* is governed by a *preposition* expressed or understood, the *participle* *does not* agree with that *object*; so, though we say, *Il nous a vus*, he has *seen* us; we could not say, *Il nous a dits des nouvelles*, he has *told* us news; we must say, *il nous a dit*; because *nous* is here used for *à nous*, to us.

Sometimes after the *PARTICIPLE* preceded by an *OBJECT*, there is a *verb* in the *INFINITIVE*, then it is necessary to consider whether the *OBJECT* is governed by the *PARTICIPLE*, or by the *INFINITIVE* which follows it. 160

If the *OBJECT* is governed by the *PARTICIPLE*, the *participle* must be of the same *gender* and *number* as that *OBJECT*; *ex.*

The letter I have *given* him to copy. *La LETTRE que je lui ai donnée à copier.*

If the *OBJECT* is governed by the *INFINITIVE* which follows the *participle*, the *participle* has no agreement with the *object*; as,

The letter I have *told* him to copy. *La LETTRE que je lui ai dit de copier.\**

The *participles* *PLU*, *pleased*; *dû*, *owed*, *ought*; *PU*, *been able*; and *VOULU*, *been willing*; do not agree with the *object* that precedes them, because the *infinitive* of the foregoing verb is *understood* after them; *ex.* 161

*Je lui ai rendu tous les SERVICES que j'ai PU, lui RENDRE understood.*

I have done him all the *services* that I have *been able*, to *do understood*.

\* If you are uncertain whether the *object* is governed by the *participle*, or by the *infinitive* which follows it, *transpose* the words, and see after which the *object* may more properly be placed.

If the *object* can be placed *after* the *participle*, as in the first instance, *The letter I have given him to copy*, which may be turned, *I have given him the letter to copy*; the *participle* *given* governs the *object* *letter*, and it must agree with it.

If the *object* comes more properly after the *infinitive*, as in the second instance, *The letter I have told him to copy*, which might be turned, *I have told him to copy the letter*, (not, *the letter to copy*) the *object* *letter* is governed by the *infinitive* *to copy*, and the *participle* has no agreement with it.



## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

- 162** When a verb governs *TWO SUBSTANTIVES* (see note \* page 205) one of them is the *direct OBJECT* of the verb, and does not require *any preposition*; the other is an *indirect OBJECT*, and requires *a preposition*, expressed before a noun, and generally *implied* in the pronouns\*; as,  
 I gave *her* a nosegay. *Je LUI ai donné un BOUQUET.*  
 Q. I gave *what*? A. a nosegay. To *whom*? to *her*.  
*Nosegay* is the *direct object* of the verb; to *her* is the *indirect*.  
 Do not tell your mother of it. *Ne LE dites pas à votre MÈRE.*  
 Do not tell *what*? do not tell *it*. To *whom*? to your mother;  
 For it is the *thing* you tell, not the *person* you tell it to, which is the *object* of the verb.
- 163** When a verb governs *TWO OBJECTS*, the *direct OBJECT* is generally placed *BEFORE* the *indirect*; as,  
 I gave your sister a nosegay. *J'ai donné un BOUQUET à votre SŒUR.*  
 Yet the *indirect OBJECT* must be placed *first*, if by placing it *last*, it made the meaning *equivocal*; for example, we say,  
*Elle a jetté son BOUQUET dans la RUE.*  
 She has thrown her nosegay into the street; but we do not say:  
*Elle a jetté le BOUQUET que vous lui aviez donné dans la RUE.*  
 She has thrown *the nosegay* which you had given her *into the street*; because, *dans la RUE*, after *donné*, might be understood that the nosegay was *given* in the street, not that it was *thrown* into the street; we say:  
*Elle a jetté dans la RUE, le BOUQUET que vous lui aviez donné.*  
 She has thrown *into the STREET*, *the NOSEGAY* which you had given her.†
- 164** The *same NOUN* may be governed by *TWO VERBS* which are both used *without a PREPOSITION*, or which require both the *same PREPOSITION*; as,  
 They attacked and took the place. *Ils ATTAQUÈRENT et PRIRENT la place.*  
 But if one of the verbs requires *a PREPOSITION* after it, and the other does not, or if the two verbs require *different PREPOSITIONS*, the *noun* must be made the *object* of the *FIRST* verb, and an *objective* pronoun must be added for an *object* to the *SECOND* verb; so we could not say:  
*Ils ATTAQUÈRENT et se RENDIRENT maîtres de la place.*  
 They attacked and made themselves masters of the place; because *Rendre maître* requires a preposition after it, and *Attaquer* does not; we say:  
*Ils ATTAQUÈRENT la place, et s'EN RENDIRENT maîtres.*  
 They attacked the place, and made themselves masters of *IT*.
- 165** The *same VERB* may likewise govern *several PARTS* of a sentence, provided they are used in the *same SENSE*; as,  
 I expect much from him, but still more from you.  
*J'ATTENDS BEAUCOUP de lui, mais ENCORE PLUS de vous.*  
 But if one of the parts is *affirmative*, and the other *negative*, the verb must be repeated in the *second* part; as,  
 I expect every thing from you, and nothing from him.  
*J'ATTENDS TOUT de vous, et je N'ATTENDS RIEN de lui.*
- 166** Some verbs govern indifferently the *infinitive* or the *subjunctive* mood; but if they govern *two VERBS*, they must be both in the *same MOOD*; as,  
 I will prevent him from going out, and from doing you any harm.  
*Je l'empêcherai de SORTIR, et de vous FAIRE du mal; or*  
*J'empêcherai qu'il ne SORTE, et qu'il ne vous FASSE du mal.*

\* See a table of the pronouns, page 74.

† The English should pay particular attention to this rule; they are very apt to act contrary to it, both in speaking and writing.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

167

**PASSIVE** VERBS require **DE** or **PAR** before the noun which they govern. They require **DE**, when the verb expresses an action *wholly of the mind*; as, Your brother *is loved and esteemed* by all who know him.

*Votre frère est AIMÉ et ESTIMÉ DE tous ceux qui le connaissent.*

They require **PAR**, when the *bodily faculties* participate in the action; as, He *was beaten by* a sailor, and *robbed by* a soldier.

*Il a ÉTÉ BATTU PAR un matelot, et VOLÉ PAR un soldat.*

But instead of these *passive* expressions, it is better in french to use the *active sense* of the verb, and say:

*Tous ceux qui connaissent votre frère l'AIMENT et l'ESTIMENT.*

All those who know your brother *love and esteem* him. (ii)

When **TWO VERBS** come together, without being joined by a **CONJUNCTION**, the *latter* is governed by the *former* in the **INFINITIVE**, sometimes *with*, and sometimes *without* a **PREPOSITION**.

The *preposition TO*, the sign of the *infinitive mood* in english, is expressed by **DE**, **À**, **POUR**, in french, but not indiscriminately. (kk)

(ii) Grammarians distinguish *three* SORTS of verbs, which they call **ACTIVE**, **PASSIVE**, and **NEUTER**.

**ACTIVE**, when the *action* of the verb *passes* from the *agent* to some *object*; as,

*I TEACH your sister.*

**PASSIVE**, when the *receiver* of the *action* is made the *leading power* of the verb; this is done by adding the *past participle* to the *auxiliary verb BE*; as,

*Your sister IS TAUGHT by me.*

**NEUTER**, i. e. neither *active* nor *passive*, when the whole *energy* of the verb *remains* in the *agent*, and is not *communicated* to any *object*; as,

*I THINK, I WALK, I STAND, I SIT, I SLEEP, &c.*

These distinctions are common to all languages.

But the English have a facility of changing **ACTIVE verbs** into **NEUTER verbs**, which the French have not; for example, when I say;

*We MET your brothers quarrelling; we PARTED them.*

Here *met* and *parted* are *active*, because the *energy* of the verbs *met, parted* *passes* from the *agent we*, to an *object brothers*; if I take away the *object*, and say: *we met, we parted*; then *met* and *parted* are *neuter*, because the whole *energy* of the verb *remains* in the *agent we*.

Again; *I OPENED the door*; here *opened* is **ACTIVE**, because it has an *object, door*.

*The door OPENED*; here *opened* is **NEUTER**, because the *action* *remains* in the *door* itself.

To leave out this *object* would not render the verb *neuter* in french, it would only make the sentence incomplete.

To answer the same end, and give to the verb a *neuter* signification, the French add to it an *objective PRONOUN* of the same *PERSON* as the *agent* or *nominative*, by which means the whole *energy* of the verb *remains* in the same being; hence the number of *reflective verbs* with which the french language abounds: so in the first instance,

*We MET your brothers, we PARTED them*; the French say:

*Nous RENCONTRÂMES vos frères, nous les SEPARÂMES.*

In the second,

*We MET; we PARTED.* *Nous nous RENCONTRÂMES; Nous nous SEPARÂMES; i. e.* we ourselves *met*; we ourselves *parted*.

*They STOPPED me; Ils m'ARRETERENT.* *They STOPPED; Ils s'ARRETERENT; i. e.* they *stopped* themselves.

*He OPENED the door; Il OUVRIT la porte.* *The door OPENED; La porte s'OUVRIT; i. e.* the *door* *opened* itself.

N. B. The genius of the french language requires also that some verbs which have a kind of *passive* or *neuter* signification in english, should be made *reflective*, when we wish to shew that the *action* expressed by the verb is *not limited* to the *instance* of which we speak, but is *applicable* to all *instances* of the same kind; for example:

*Ce mot n'EST pas bien PLACÉ; This word is not rightly PLACED; i. e.* in this instance

*Il se PLACE ordinairement avant le verbe; It is generally PLACED before the verb; i. e.* its usual place is before the verb. These instances may also be expressed by **ON**; on *le place ordinairement avant le verbe.* See 92 rule.

(kk) When two verbs come together, without a *conjunction* between them, the *latter* is governed by the *former* in the **INFINITIVE**, whether the sign **TO** be expressed or not.

## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

168

*To*, before an *INFINITIVE*, is expressed by *DE*, when it can be changed into *OF* or *FROM*, and the *infinitive* into the *GERUND* or *present participle*;

*N.B.* This commonly happens after nouns used in a *definite* sense; as,

He has the pleasure of *seeing* her. *Il a le plaisir DE la VOIR.*

She has the vanity to think so. *Elle a la vanité DE le PENSER.\**

\* As this rule does not apply to all instances in which *TO* is expressed by *DE*, here is a list of the *verbs* and *adjectives* which require *DE* before the *infinitive* which follows them :

s' Abstenir de,	Abstain from.	se Garder de,	Take care to.
Accuser de,	Accuse of.	Gronder de,	Scold for.
Achever de,	Finish to.	se Hâter de,	Haste to.
Affecter de,	Affect to.	Heureux de,	Happy to.
Affligé de,	Afflicted to.	Impossible de,	Impossible to.
Aise de,	Glud to.	Incapable de,	Incapable of.
Appréhender de,	Fear to.	Inspirer de,	Inspire to.
s' Attendre de, à, †	Expect to.	Juger à propos de,	Think proper to.
Avertir de,	Warn to.	Jurer de,	Swear to.
s' Aviser de,	Bethink to.	Juste de,	Just to.
Blâmer de,	Blame to.	Lassé de,	Tired of, with.
Capable de,	Capable of, to.	Libre de,	At liberty to.
Cesser de,	Cease to.	Mander de,	Send word to.
Charger de,	Charge to.	Manquer de,	Fail to.
Charmé de, Ravide,	Delighted with.	Menacer de,	Threaten to.
Commander de,	Command to.	Mériter de,	Deserve to.
Commencer de, à, †	Begin to.	Nécessaire de,	Necessary to.
Conjurer de,	Entreat to.	Négliger de,	Neglect to.
Conseiller de,	Advise to.	Offrir de,	Offer to.
Consoler de,	Console for.	Omettre de,	Omit to.
Content de,	Content to.	Ordonner de,	Order to.
Continuer de, à, †	Continue to.	Oublier de,	Forget to.
Convaincre de,	Convince to.	Pardonner de,	Forgive for.
Convenir de,	Agree to.	Permettre de,	Permit to.
Craindre de,	Fear to.	Persuader de,	Persuade to.
Curieux de,	Curious to.	se Piquer de,	Pretend to.
Décourager de	Discourage with.	Plaindre de,	Pity to, for.
Défendre de,	Forbid to.	Possible de,	Possible to.
se Dépêcher de,	Make haste to.	Prescrire de,	Prescribe to.
Désespérer de,	Despair to.	Presser de,	Press to.
Désirer de,	Wish to.	Prier de,	Request to.
Déterminer de,	Determine to.	Promettre de,	Promise to.
Détourner de,	Divert from.	Proposer de,	Propose to.
Différer de,	Defer to, Delay to.	Recommander de,	Recommend to
Dire de,	Tell to.	Refuser de,	Refuse to.
Discontinuer de,	Discontinue to.	Regretter de,	Regret to.
Disconvenir de,	Disown to.	se Réjouir de,	Rejoice to.
Dispenser de,	Dispense with.	Remercier de,	Thank for.
Dissuader de,	Dissuade from.	se Repentir de,	Repent of, to.
Doux de,	Pleasant to.	Reprocher de,	Reproach for.
Ecrire de,	Write to.	Résoudre de,	Resolve to.
s' Efforcer de,	Endeavour to.	Risquer de,	Risk to.
Enjoindre de,	Enjoin to.	Rougir de,	Blush to.
Empêcher de,	Prevent to.	Satisfait de,	Satisfied to, with.
s' Empresser de,	Eager to.	Solliciter de,	Solicit to.
Ennuyé de,	Tired of.	Sommer de,	Summon to.
Enragé de,	Enraged at.	se Soucier de,	Care to.
Entreprendre de,	Undertake to.	Souhaiter de,	Wish to.
Essayer de, à, †	Try to.	Soupçonner de,	Suspect to.
Etonné de,	Astonished at.	se Souvenir de,	Remember to
Éviter de,	Avoid to.	Suffire de,	Sufficient to.
Excuser de,	Excuse to.	Suggerer de,	Suggest to.
Exempter de,	Exempt from.	Supplier de,	Entreat to.
Exorter de, à, †	Exhort to.	Sûr de,	Sure to.
Fâché de,	Sorry to.	Surpris de,	Surprised to.
Feindre de,	Feign to.	Tâcher de,	Endeavour to.
Finir de,	Finish to.	Tarder de,	Long to.
se Flatter de,	Flatter to.	se Vanter de,	Boast of.

† As it sounds best, i. e. *de* to avoid the sound of several *a*, and *a* to avoid the sound of several *de*



## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

To, before an *INFINITIVE*, is expressed by *à*, when it can be changed into *IN*, and the english *infinitive* into the *GERUND* or *present participle*; **169**  
*N.B.* This is generally the case after nouns used in a *partitive* sense; as,  
 He has pleasure *in seeing* her. *Il a du plaisir à la VOIR.*  
 Is there vanity *to think* so? *Y a-t-il de la vanité à le PENSER?*†

† As this rule is not applicable to all instances in which *to* is expressed by *à*, here is a list of the verbs and adjectives which require *à* before the *infinitive* which follows them:

s' Abaisser à,	Stoop to.	Exercer à,	Exercise to.
Accoutumer à,	Accustom to.	Exciter à,	Excite to.
Admettre à,	Admit to.	Exposer à,	Expose to.
Admirable à, de,*	Wonderful to.	Facile à, de,*	Easy to.
Affreux à, de,*	Dreadful to.	se Fatiguer à,	Get tired with.
Agréable à, de,*	Agreeable to.	Forcer à, de,†	Force to.
Aider à,	Help to.	Gagner à,	Gain to.
Aimer à,	Like to.	Habile à,	Clever to.
Aisé à,	Easy to.	Habituer à,	Accustom to.
Amuser à,	Amuse to, with.	Hésiter à,	Hesitate to.
Amuser à,	Animate to.	Horrible à, de,*	Horrid to.
s' Appliquer à,	Apply to.	Inciter à,	Incite to.
Apprendre à,	Learn to.	Ingenieux à,	Ingenious to.
s' Appréter à,	Get ready to.	Inviter à,	Invite to.
Aspirer à,	Aspire to.	Laid à,	Ugly to.
Assidu à,	Assiduous to.	Lent à,	Slow to.
s' Attacher à,	Stick to.	Manquer à,	Omit to.
Autoriser à,	Authorise to.	se Mettre à,	Set about to.
Avoir à,	Have to.	Montrer à,	Show to.
Beau à, de,*	Fine to.	Obliger à, de,†	Oblige to.
Bon à, de,*	Good to.	s' Obstiner à,	Obstinate to.
Charmant à,	Charming to.	Occupé à,	Busy to.
Chercher à,	Seek to.	s' Opiniâtrer à,	Obstinate to.
Condamner à,	Condemn to.	Parvenir à,	Arrive to.
Condescendre à,	Condescend to.	Passer à,	Spend in.
Consister à,	Consist to, in.	Penser à,	Think of.
Contraire à, de,†	Compel to.	Perdre à,	Lose in.
Contribuer à,	Contribute to.	Persister à,	Persist in.
Demander à,	Ask to.	se Plaire à,	Delight in.
Dépenser à,	Spend to, in.	Porter à,	Induce to.
Dernier à,	Last to.	Premier à,	First to.
Désagréable à, de,*	Disagreeable to.	Préparer à,	Prepare to.
Destiner à,	Destine to.	Prêt à,	Ready to.
Déterminer à,	Resolve upon.	Prompt à,	Quick to.
Difficile à, de,*	Difficult to.	Propre à,	Fit to.
Diligent à,	Diligent to.	Recommencer à,	Begin again to.
Disposer à,	Dispose to.	Renoncer à,	Renounce to.
Donner à,	Give to.	Résoudre à,	Resolve to.
s' Echauffer à,	Heat to.	Rester à,	Stay to.
s' Efforcer à,	Spend oneself to, in.	Réussir à,	Succeed to, in.
Effroyable à, de,*	Frightful to.	Servir à,	Serve to.
Employer à,	Employ to, Use to.	Soigneux à,	Careful to.
Encourager à,	Encourage to.	Songer à,	Think of.
Enclin à,	Inclined to.	Sujet à,	Subject to, apt to
Engager à,	Induce to.	Tâcher à,	Aim at.
Enhardir à,	Embolden to.	Tarder à,	Delay to.
Enseigner à,	Teach to.	Tendre à,	Tend to.
s' Etudier à,	Study to.	Terrible à, de,*	Terrible to.
Etre à,	Be to.	Travailler à,	Work to.
Exact à,	Exact to.	Venir à,	Come to.

\* These adjectives require *à*, when the verb which precedes them has a *personal* nominative; they require *de*, when the nominative is *impersonal*; ex.

Cela est agréable, bon, beau à voir, à dire, à faire, That is agreeable, fine to see, &c.  
 Il est agréable, bon, beau de voir, de dire, de faire, It is agreeable, fine to see, &c.

† De or à, as it sounds best in the active sense; always *de* in the passive; as,  
 On m'a obligé de or à le faire; They have obliged me to do it.  
 J' ai été obligé de le faire; I have been obliged to do it.



## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS

**170** *To*, before an *INFINITIVE*, is expressed by *POUR*, when the words *in order*, or *with an intention*, may be prefixed to it; as,

I did it *to* (in order to) oblige you. *Je l'ai fait POUR vous OBLIGER.*

We went there *to* see you. *Nous y allâmes POUR vous VOIR.*

*N. B.* The *english GERUND* preceded by the preposition *FOR*, explaining why a thing is done, is also expressed by the *INFINITIVE* with *POUR*;

He was hanged *for having* robbed. *Il a été pendu POUR AVOIR volé.*

He was flogged *for telling* lies. *Il a été fouetté POUR AVOIR menti.*

**171** The *INFINITIVE* is used *without* a *PREPOSITION in french*, when it is the *nominative* of another verb; as,

*To be* rich is nothing; *ÊTRE riche n'EST rien;*

*To be* happy is every thing. *Le tout est d'ÊTRE heureux.*

**172** The *INFINITIVE* is also used *without* a *PREPOSITION in french*, after the following verbs: viz.

AIMER mieux;	<i>J'aime mieux le FAIRE.</i> (ll)	I would rather <i>do</i> it.
ALLER;	<i>Allons nous PROMENER.</i>	Let us go <i>to take</i> a walk.
APPERCEVOIR;	<i>Je l'apperçois MOUVOIR.</i>	I perceive it <i>move</i> .
ASSURER;	<i>Il assure l'AVOIR fait.</i>	He asserts <i>to have</i> done it.
CROIRE;	<i>Il croit me TROMPER.</i>	He thinks <i>to deceive</i> me.
COMPTER;	<i>Il compte PARTIR en peu.</i>	He purposes <i>to go</i> soon.
DAIGNER;	<i>Daignez me DIRE quand.</i>	Deign <i>to tell</i> me when.
DECLARER;	<i>Il déclare le SAVOIR.</i>	He declares <i>to know</i> it.
DEVOIR;	<i>Il doit me l'ENVOYER.</i>	He is <i>to send</i> it me.
ENTENDRE;	<i>Je l'entends PARLER.</i>	I hear him <i>speak</i> .
ENVOYER;	<i>Envoyez le CHERCHER.</i>	Send <i>for</i> it, or <i>to fetch</i> it.
ESPÉRER;	<i>J'espère le RENCONTRER.</i>	I expect <i>to meet</i> him.
FALLOIR;	<i>Il faut lui AIDER.</i>	It is necessary <i>to help</i> him.
s'IMAGINER;	<i>Je m'imagine y ÊTRE.</i>	I fancy myself <i>to be</i> there.
LAISSER;	<i>Laissez-le DIRE et FAIRE.</i>	Let him <i>say</i> and <i>do</i> .
OSER;	<i>Il n'ose l'AVOUE.</i>	He dares not <i>confess</i> it.
PARAÎTRE;	<i>Il paraît l'ENTENDRE.</i>	He seems <i>to understand</i> it.
PENSER;	<i>Il a pensé TOMBER.</i>	He had like <i>to have</i> fallen.
PRETENDRE;	<i>Prétend-il le FAIRE ?</i>	Does he <i>pretend</i> <i>to do</i> it ?
POUVOIR;	<i>Il n'a pas pu me le DIRE.</i>	He could not <i>tell</i> it me.
RECONNAÎTRE;	<i>Je reconnais l'AVOIR dit.</i>	I acknowledge <i>to have</i> said it.
REGARDER;	<i>Je vous regarde FAIRE.</i>	I am looking at you <i>doing</i> it.
RETOURNER;	<i>Elle retourna la VOIR.</i>	She returned <i>to see</i> him.
SAVOIR;	<i>Il sait où la TROUVER.</i>	He knows where <i>to find</i> her.
SEMBLER;	<i>Elle semble AVOIR peur.</i>	She seems <i>to be</i> afraid.
SOUHAITER;	<i>Je souhaite la VOIR.*</i>	I wish <i>to see</i> her.
SOUTENIR;	<i>Il soutient l'AVOIR vu.</i>	He maintains <i>to have</i> seen it.
VALOIR mieux;	<i>Il vaut mieux lui ÉCRIRE.</i> (ll)	It is better <i>to write</i> to her.
VENIR;	<i>Viendrez-vous me VOIR? (mm)</i>	Will you come <i>to see</i> me ?
VOIR;	<i>Je vois VENIR votre sœur.</i>	I see your sister <i>coming</i> .
VOULOIR;	<i>Elle ne veut pas RESTER.</i>	She will not <i>stay</i> .

(ll) AIMER MIEUX, VALOIR MIEUX, followed by another verb in the infinitive, require *DE* before the *second* infinitive; as,

I would rather stay than go;

*J'aimerais mieux rester que d'y aller.*

It is better to go than stay alone;

*Il vaut mieux y aller que DE rester seul.*

\* Souhaiter may also be used with *de*; as, *Je souhaite le voir*, or *de le voir*; I wish to see him.

(mm) VENIR used for *to be just*, *to have just*, requires *DE* before the following infinitive; and in the sense of *to happen*, it requires *À*; as,

I have just seen her;

*Je viens DE la voir.*

If she should happen to know it;

*Si elle venait À le savoir.*

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

WILL, WOULD.

If, by *WILL, WOULD*, you wish to denote *will, wish, desire*, you must express them by the corresponding tenses of the verb *VOULOIR*, with the following verb in the *infinitive*; if you wish to express a *determination*, to make a *positive assertion*, *WILL* must be considered as the sign of the *future*, and *WOULD* as the sign of the *conditional* of the following verb; ex.

My brother *will* not stay; } *Mon frère ne VEUT pas rester.*  
 viz. *Is not willing* to stay.  
 He *positively will* not stay. } *Mon frère ne RESTERA pas.* [see note \*  
 My brother *would* not stay; } *Mon frère ne VOULAIT pas rester.*  
 viz. *Had no desire* to stay.  
*Would* he not stay, if I asked him? *Ne RESTERAIT-il pas, si j'en priais?*

WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE.

If *WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE* are used to denote the *wish, the desire* to possess an object, they are expressed by the corresponding tenses of *VOULOIR* as above, and *HAVE* is left out; if they are used to denote not the *wish* to possess, but an *assurance* of the *possession* itself, they are expressed by the *future* or by the *conditional* of *AVOIR*; ex.

My brother *will have* this book; } *Mon frère VEUT ce livre.*  
 viz. My brother *wishes* to have &c.  
 He *will have* it, if he behaves well. *Il l'AURA, s'il se comporte bien.*  
 My brother *would have* this book; } *Mon frère VOULAIT ce livre.*  
 viz. My brother *wished* to have &c.  
 He *would have* it, if he behaved well. *Il l'aurait, s'il se comportait bien.*

N. B. If *WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE*, in the sense of *wish, choose*, are followed by another *VERB*, the object of *HAVE* becomes the *nominative* of the following *VERB*, which must be in the *subjunctive* in french; as,

He *will have* his sister go with him; } *Il VEUT que sa sœur AILLE avec lui.*  
 i.e. He *wishes* that his sister *should* go.  
 He *will not have* her stay alone. *Il ne VEUT pas qu' elle RESTE seule.\**

*WOULD HAVE* in the sense of *chosen, wished, been willing*, followed by a *PAST PARTICIPLE*, is expressed by the *imperfect* or by the *conditional* of *AVOIR* with the participle *VOULU*, and the english *participle* is expressed by the *infinitive* in french; as,

If you *would have* told him of it. *Si vous AVIEZ VOULU le lui dire.*  
 He *would not have believed* me. *Il n'aurait pas VOULU me croire.*

SHOULD.

*SHOULD*, which is generally a *sign* of the *conditional* tense, is sometimes used, in the sense of *OUGHT*, i. e. denoting *duty or necessity*, and is then expressed by the *conditional* tense of the verb *DEVOIR*; as,

You *should* go and see him (*ought*). *Vous DEVRIEZ aller le voir.*  
 He *should* let me know it. *Il DEVRAIT me le faire savoir.*

SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT TO HAVE.

*SHOULD HAVE, and OUGHT TO HAVE*, followed by a *PAST PARTICIPLE*, are expressed by the *conditional* of *AVOIR*, with the *participle* *DÛ*, and the english *participle* is expressed by the *infinitive* in french; as,

You *ought to have seen* him. *Vous AURIEZ DÛ le voir.*  
 He *should have let* me know of it. *Il AURAIT DÛ me le faire savoir.*

\* When you say *I will have you*, or *I would have you do such a thing*, it is not the *person* that you wish to have, but you wish that the *person would do the thing* you mention; so we could not say, *je vous veux*, nor *je veux vous avoir*, nor *je vous curai*, which would mean that you want the *person*, not that you want the *thing* to be done; we must say, *je veux que vous fassiez telle chose*

173

174

175

176

177

## REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

## MAY, MIGHT.

- 178 If *MAY*, *MIGHT* are used to denote *power*, *MAY* is expressed by the *present* of the verb *POUVOIR*, viz. *puis*; and *MIGHT* by the *conditional* *pourrais*, with the following verb in the *INFINITIVE*; as,

I *may* or *can* see it, if I choose; } *Je PUIS le voir, si je veux.*  
 i. e. It is in my *power* to see it, if &c. } [See note page 138.]  
 I *might* or *could* see it, if I chose; } *Je POURAIS le voir, si je voulais.*  
 i. e. It would be in my *power* to &c. }

If *MAY*, *MIGHT* denote a mere *possibility*, they may be expressed by the *subjunctive* of *POUVOIR*, or the *subjunctive* of the following *VERB*; as,

Bring it, that I *may* see it; } *Apportez-le, afin que je le VOIE* ;  
 i. e. That it *may* be in my *power* to see } or, *afin que je PUISSE le voir.*  
 He brought it, that I *might* see it; } *Il l'apporta, afin que je le VISSE* ;  
 i. e. That it *might* be in my *power* &c. } or, *afin que je PUSSE le voir.*

- 179 *COULD HAVE*, *MIGHT HAVE* followed by a *past PARTICIPLE* are expressed by the *imperfect* or the *conditional* of *AVOIR*, with the *participle* *PU*, and the english *participle* is made by the *INFINITIVE* in french; as,

If he *could have come* sooner. *S'il AVAIT PU venir plutôt.*  
 He *might have seen* it too. *Il AURAIT PU le voir aussi.*

## WISH.

- 180 The *present* tense of the verb *WISH*, followed by another verb in the *imperfect*, or in the *conditional*, is expressed by the *conditional* of *SOUHAITER*, and the verb which is in the *imperfect*, or in the *conditional* in english, must be in the *perfect* of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* in french; as,

I *wish* she *had* seen it. *Je SOUHAITERAIS qu'elle l'eût vu.*  
 I *wish* he *would* come. *Je SOUHAITERAIS qu'il voulût venir.*  
 I *wish* I *had* done it. *Je SOUHAITERAIS l'AVOIR fait. (nn)*

## MUST, NECESSARY.

- 181 *MUST* is conjugated through its *different persons*, but its representative *FALLOIR* has only the *third PERSON singular* of each tense, with *IL* for *nominative*; then the *nominative* of *MUST* becomes the *nominative* of the following *VERB*, which must be in the *SUBJUNCTIVE* in french; as,

I *must* do it. *Il FAUT que je le FASSE.*  
 You *must* do it. *Il FAUT que vous le FASSIEZ.*  
 My brother *must* do it. *Il FAUT que mon frère le FASSE.*  
 It *was necessary* for me to do it. *Il FALLAIT que je le FISSE, &c.\**

*N. B.* When the *nominative* of *MUST* is *indefinite*, the French *leave it out*, and put the following verb in the *INFINITIVE*; as,

One *must* be mad to think so. *Il FAUT ÊTRE fou pour le penser.*

## MUST HAVE.

- 182 *MUST HAVE*, meaning *need to have*, is also expressed by *FALLOIR*, and the *nominative* of *MUST HAVE* is made the *object* of *FALLOIR*; as,

I *must have* money. *Il ME FAUT de l'argent.*  
 He *must have* books. *Il LUI FAUT des livres.*  
 My brother *must have* a horse. *Il FAUT un cheval à mon FRÈRE.†*

(nn) When two *VERBS* in the same *SENTENCE* have the same *PERSON* for their *nominative*, the French generally put the *second VERB* in the *INFINITIVE*; as,

I am afraid I shall spoil it; *Je crains de le GÂTER.*  
 I wish I could do it; *Je souhaiterais POUVOIR le faire.*

\* See the different modifications of *FALLOIR*, p. 174.

† See *FALLOIR*, p. 175



## ADVERB.

An **ADVERB** is to a verb what an *adjective* is to a noun; it is a word added to the *verb*, to denote some *circumstance* belonging to it, or the *manner* in which an action is done; as,

*I walk* **FAST**. *You walk* **SLOWLY**. *He* **OFTEN** *reads*. *She* **SELDOM** *writes*.

There are adverbs of *time*, of *place*, of *order*, of *quality*, *affirmative*, and *negative*, but their properties being the same in both languages, it is needless to enumerate them here.\*

**ADVERBS** in general keep the same place with the verb in french as in english; they are placed **AFTER** the *verb*, when the tense is *simple*, and **BETWEEN** the *auxiliary* and the *participle* when the tense is *compound*; as,

*I always* esteem him *much*. *Je l'estime* **TOUJOURS** **FORT**.

*I have always* esteemed him *much*. *Je l'ai* **TOUJOURS** **FORT** *estimé*.†

**N. B.** The **ADVERB** expressing some circumstance of the verb, must be placed *as near* to the verb which it modifies, as can be done without infringing upon other rules; ex.

*I saw* your sister *yesterday*. *Je vis* **HIER** *votre sœur*.

*She speaks* french *very well*. *Elle parle* **TRÈS BIEN** *français*.

*She likes* reading *very much*. *Elle aime* **FORT** *la lecture*.‡

Some **ADVERBS** may be placed in english, either *before* or *after* the verb which they modify; as, *I* **OFTEN** *see him*, or *I see him* **OFTEN**; but the corresponding adverbs must always be placed **AFTER** the verb in french; as,

*I often* walk alone. *Je me promène* **SOUVENT** *seul*.

*I seldom* go to town. *Je vais* **RAREMENT** *à la ville*.

*I always* go into the country. *Je vais* **TOUJOURS** *à la campagne*.

\* Most of the **ADVERBS** are formed from the **ADJECTIVES**; in english by adding **LY**; in french by adding **MENT**; as,

**ADJECTIVE.****ADVERB.**

Wise,  
Assured,  
Polite,  
Assiduous,

Sage,  
Assuré.  
Poli.  
Assidu.

Wisely,  
Assuredly  
Politely,  
Assiduously,

Sagement.  
Assurement.  
Poliment.  
Assidument,

But observe that *ment* requires a vowel before it; so that, if the adjective ends with a consonant in the masculine, the adverb must be formed by adding *ment* to the feminine; as,

	<b>MASC.</b>	<b>FEM.</b>
Frank,	<i>Franç.</i>	<i>Franchè.</i>
Public,	<i>Public.</i>	<i>Publique.</i>
Real,	<i>Réel.</i>	<i>Réelle.</i>
Good,	<i>Bon.</i>	<i>Bonne.</i>
Soft,	<i>Doux.</i>	<i>Douce.</i>
Generous,	<i>Généreux.</i>	<i>Généreuse.</i>
Exc. Gentil,	<i>Pretty,</i> which makes	

Frankly,	<i>Franchement.</i>
Publicly,	<i>Publiquement.</i>
Really,	<i>Réellement.</i>
Goodly,	<i>Bonnement.</i>
Softly,	<i>Doucement.</i>
Generously,	<i>Généreusement.</i>
Gentily,	<i>Prettily.</i>

Except also the adjectives ending in *nt*, which require *nt* to be changed into *nment*, as,

Constant,	<i>Constant.</i>	<i>Constantly.</i>	<i>Constamment.</i>
Decent,	<i>Décent.</i>	<i>Decently.</i>	<i>Décemment.</i>
Diligent,	<i>Diligent.</i>	<i>Diligently.</i>	<i>Diligemment.</i>

Exc. *Présentement*, *Presently*; *Lentement*, *Slowly*, which follow the general rule.

† Observe only that the adverbs compounded of *several words* generally come *after* the *participle*, so we say, *Je l'ai vu* très souvent. *Je lui ai parlé* depuis peu. *Vous êtes venu* à propos. Not, *Je l'ai très souvent vu*. *Je lui ai depuis peu parlé*. *Vous êtes à propos venu*. Yet, in some instances, the ear alone is consulted; for we say, *je l'avais tout à fait oublié*; I had quite forgotten it. *Je ne me suis jamais si bien divertí*; I never diverted myself so well. These variations must be noticed in reading.

‡ The perspicuity of a sentence depends often upon the right placing of the adverbs; for example, *J'aime* **BEAUCOUP** *à marcher*. *J'aime à marcher* **BEAUCOUP**.

These two sentences, though they are formed with the same words, by changing the place of the adverb *beaucoup*, express two different ideas. *J'aime beaucoup à marcher*, means, I am fond of walking; *J'aime à marcher* beaucoup, means, I like to walk a great deal.

Again; *Je NE l'ai PAS fait pour vous déplaire*; and, *Je l'ai fait pour NE PAS vous déplaire* express also different ideas; the first implies *no design*; the second implies *one*, that of *not displeasing*. The English, in general, do not pay sufficient attention to the *placing* of the *adverbs*.



## REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.

## HOW; QUE, COMBIEN, COMMENT.

185 *HOW*, denoting *admiration*, is expressed by *QUE*, and the *adjective* or *adverb* which follows *HOW*, must be placed *AFTER* the *verb* in *french*; as,

*How pretty* this is!

*QUE ceci est JOLI!*

*How well* it is done!

*QU'il est BIEN fait!*

In asking a *question HOW* is expressed by *COMMENT*, to denote the *manner*, and by *COMBIEN*, to denote *number* or *quantity*; as,

*How will* you do that?

*COMMENT ferez-vous cela?*

*How often* have you done it?

*COMBIEN de fois l'avez-vous fait?*

## HOW LONG.

## COMBIEN, COMBIEN DE TEMS, JUSQU'À QUAND.

186 *HOW LONG*, referring to the *beginning* of time, is expressed by *COMBIEN*; referring to the *duration*, it is expressed by *COMBIEN DE TEMS*; and referring to the *end*, it is expressed by *JUSQU'À QUAND*; as,

*How long* have you been in *France*? *COMBIEN ya-t-il que vous ÊTES en France?*  
or *COMBIEN de TEMS AVEZ-VOUS ÉTÉ en France?*

N. B. Few learners make a distinction between these two ways of expression; yet the ideas which they express are quite different. By the first, *vous êtes en France*, it is understood that the person is in *France still*; by the second, *vous avez été en France*, it is understood that the person is *no longer* there.

*How long will* } *COMBIEN de TEMS resterez-vous?* i. e. *what length* of time?  
*you stay?* } *JUSQU'À QUAND resterez-vous?* i. e. *until what time?*

\* A list of adverbial expressions, which can not be expressed literally, as learners are apt to do, some of which are not to be found in the dictionaries;

ABOUT,	Environ.	That EXCEPTED,	A celu près.
There ABOUTS,	A peu près.	FAIRLY,	De bonne foi.
Here ABOUTS,	Ici autour.	How FAR,	Jusqu' où.
Round ABOUT,	A l'entour.	As FAR as here,	Jusqu'ici.
ALoud,	A haute voix.	As FAR as there,	Jusque là.
AMICABLY,	A l'amiable.	AFAR off,	De loin.
ASIDE,	A côté, à part.	After the FASHION,	A la mode.
On an AVERAGE,	L'un dans l'autre.	After the FRENCH,	A la française.
BACKWARDS,	En arrière. (falling)	The ENGLISH fashion,	A l'Anglaise.
BACKWARDS,	A reculons. (walking)	At FIRST,	D'abord.
Into the BARGAIN,	Par dessus le marché.	On the same FLOOR,	De plein pied.
BETIMES,	De bonne heure.	Within a FORTNIGHT,	Dans quinze jours.
BETTER and better,	De mieux en mieux.	For FUN,	En badinant.
So much the BETTER,	Tant mieux.	For the FUTURE,	A l'avenir.
ABREAST,	De front.	GROPING,	A tâtons.
BY and BY,	Tantôt.	On the GROUND,	Par terre.
By CHANCE,	Par cas fortuit.	HAND over HEAD,	A corps perdu
CHEAP,	A bon marché.	HARD by,	Ici près.
Most COMMONLY,	Presque toujours.	HARDLY ever,	Presque jamais.
In DAY time,	De jour.	In HASTE,	A la hâte.
In open DAY,	En plein jour.	HEARTILY,	De bon cœur.
Every DAY,	Touts les jours.	HERE and THERE,	Par ci par là.
From DAY to DAY,	De jour en jour.	HELTHER skelter,	Pêle mêle.
Every other DAY,	De deux jours l'un.	HITHERTO,	Jusqu'ici.
This DAY week,	{ Ily a aujourd' hui 8 jours.	HOURLY,	D'heure en heure.
This DAY se'night,	{ Ily a aujourd' hui en huit.	Every HOUR,	A toute heure.
This DAY fortnight,	{ Ily a aujourd' hui 15 jours.	INADVERTENTLY,	Par mégarde.
	{ D'aujourd' hui en quinze.	INCONSIDERATELY,	Sans y faire atten
This DAY month,	{ Ily a aujourd' hui un mois.	TO all INTENTS and	[tion.
	{ D'aujourd' hui en un mois.	[purposes,	De fond encomble
DESERVEDLY,	A bon droit.	LARGELY,	A pleines mains.
DIRECTLY,	Tout à l'heure.	LATELY,	Depuis peu.
In DISORDER,	A l'abandon.	At LAST,	Enfin.
By DROPS,	Goute à goutte.	At LEAST,	Au moins.
EARLY,	De bon matin.	For LESS,	A moins.
In good EARNEST,	Tout de bon.	So much the LESS,	D'autant moins.
EMPTY,	A vide.	By LITTLE and LITTLE,	Peu à peu.
In EMULATION,	A l'envi.	Ever so LITTLE,	Tant soit peu.

## REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.

## HOW FAR; COMBIEN, JUSQU'OU.

*How FAR*, meaning *what distance*, is expressed by *COMBIEN*; and when used for *to what distance*, it is expressed by *JUSQU'OU*; as,

*How far* is it from here? *COMBIEN y a-t-il d'ici?*

*How far* shall we go? *JUSQU'OU irons-nous?*

## HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER, LET; QUELQUE.

*HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER*, before an *adjective*, a *participle*, or an *adverb*, is expressed by *QUELQUE* with *QUE*, after the *adjective*, *participle* or *adverb*, and the following verb in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*;

*However* rich she is; } *QUELQUE riche qu'elle soit.*  
or *Let* her be ever so rich.

*N.B.* If the nominative is a *noun*, it is generally placed after the verb; as,

*However* rich her sister is; } *QUELQUE riche QUE soit sa sœur.*  
or *Let* her sister be ever so rich.

## QUITE, ENTIRELY; TOUT.

*QUITE, ENTIRELY*, before an *adjective*, or a *participle*, are generally expressed by *TOUT*; as,

Those men are *quite* astonished. *Ces hommes sont TOUT étonnés.*

Those women are *quite* astonished. *Ces femmes sont TOUT étonnées.\**

How long ?	<i>Jusqu' à quand ?</i>	STEP by STEP,	<i>Pas à pas.</i>
As LONG as,	<i>Tant que.</i>	STRAIGHT ON,	<i>Tout droit.</i>
In the same MANNER,	<i>De même.</i>	THOROUGHLY,	<i>A fond.</i>
Through MISTAKE,	<i>Par mégarde.</i>	This long TIME,	{ <i>De long tems.</i>
MORE than is necessary,	<i>Plus qu'il n'en faut.</i>	For a long TIME,	{ <i>Depuis long tems.</i>
Neither MORE nor LESS,	<i>Ni plus ni moins.</i>	From TIME to TIME,	<i>De tems en tems.</i>
MORE and MORE,	<i>De plus en plus.</i>	One TIME or other,	<i>Tôt ou tard.</i>
Much MORE so,	<i>A plus forte raison.</i>	TO and FRO,	<i>Cà et là.</i>
So much the MORE,	<i>D'autant plus.</i>	From TOP to BOTTOM,	<i>De fond en comble.</i>
At MOST,	<i>Tout au plus.</i>	TOPSY TURVY,	<i>Sens dessus dessous.</i>
How MUCH ?	<i>Combien ?</i>	In a TRICE,	<i>En moins de rien.</i>
As MUCH,	<i>Autant.</i>	By TURNS,	<i>Tour à tour.</i>
So MUCH,	<i>Tant.</i>	At every TURN,	<i>A tout bout de champ.</i>
Through ill NATURE,	<i>Par malice.</i>	In the TWINKLING of	
Nothing NEAR,	<i>A beaucoup près.</i>	[an eye,	<i>En un clin d'œil.</i>
Just NOW,	<i>Tout de suite.</i>	UNAWARES,	<i>Sans y penser.</i>
NOW and then,	<i>De tems en tems.</i>	UP and DOWN,	<i>De côté et d'autre.</i>
All at ONCE,	<i>Tout d'un coup.</i>	UPWARDS,	<i>En haut.</i>
OPPOSITE,	<i>Vis-à-vis.</i>	UNSEASONABLY,	<i>A contre tems.</i>
PURPOSELY,	{ <i>A dessein, Exprès.</i>	VISIBLY,	<i>A vue d'œil.</i>
On PURPOSE,	{ <i>De propos délibéré.</i>	With a low VOICE,	<i>Tout bas.</i>
To what PURPOSE ?	<i>A quoi bon ?</i>	The wrong WAY,	<i>A contre sens.</i>
At RANDOM,	<i>A tort et à travers.</i>	In a WEEK,	[day, <i>Dans huit jours.</i>
In every RESPECT,	<i>A tous égards.</i>	It was a WEEK yester-	<i>Il y eut hier 8 jours.</i>
SEASONABLY,	<i>A propos.</i>	It will be a WEEK to-	<i>Il y aura demain 8</i>
On both SIDES,	<i>De part et d'autre.</i>	WHEREVER [morrow,	<i>Par tout où. [jours.</i>
The wrong SIDE out,	<i>A l'envers.</i>	In no WISE,	<i>En nulle manière.</i>
The wrong SIDE up,	<i>A rebours.</i>	WORSE and WORSE,	<i>De pis en pis.</i>
SOONER or LATER,	<i>Tôt ou tard.</i>	So much the WORSE,	<i>Tant pis.</i>
SOUNDLY,	<i>Comme il faut.</i>	A YEAR hence,	<i>Il y a un an. [an.</i>
With all SPEED,	<i>Au plus vite.</i>	This day 12 MONTHS,	<i>Il y a aujourd'hui un</i>
At full SPEED,	{ <i>A bride abattue.</i>	Against one's WILL,	<i>A contre cœur.</i>
On a SUDDEN,	{ <i>Ventre à terre.</i>	Whether one WILL or	<i>Bon gré mal gré.</i>
	<i>Tout à coup.</i>	YONDER,	[not, <i>Là bas.</i>

\* When the adjective which follows *TOUT* is *feminine*, and begins with a *consonant*, we make it agree in *gender* and *number* with the *noun*; as,

This house is *quite* new, *Cette maison est TOUTE neuve.*

These women are *quite* ugly. *Ces femmes sont TOUTES laides.*

But, as this is done solely for the sake of melody, it would be better, especially when the *noun* is *femal*, to make use of *Tout à fait*, since the hearer is sometimes at a loss, whether *TOUTES* means *quite* or *all*.

## NEGATIVE ADVERBS

NO, NOT ;	NE—PAS, NE—POINT *
NO MORE,	} NE—PLUS.
NOT ANY MORE ;	
NEVER ;	NE—JAMAIS.
BUT LITTLE,	} NE—GUÈRE.
VERY LITTLE ;	
BY NO MEANS ;	NE—NULLEMENT.†

- 190 The *NEGATIVE* expressions NE—PAS, NE—POINT, &c. form only one *negation*; NE is always placed *BEFORE* the *verb*, and PAS, POINT, &c. like the other adverbs, are placed *AFTER* the *verb*, when the tense is simple and *BETWEEN* the *auxiliary* and the *participle*, when it is compound; as,  
 I do *not* like her. *Je NE l'aime PAS, or POINT.*  
 I will *not* see her *any more.* *Je NE veux PLUS la voir.*  
 I will *never* speak to her again. *Je NE lui reparlerai JAMAIS.*  
 You have thought of it *but little.* *Vous n'y avez GUÈRE pensé.*

N. B. If the verb which follows *NOT* is in the *infinitive*, the two negative words NE—PAS, or POINT, NE—PLUS, NE—JAMAIS, may be, and are generally placed *TOGETHER* before the verb; as,

I am determined *not* to see her. *J'ai résolu de NE PAS la voir.*  
*Not* to speak to her *any more.* *De NE PLUS lui parler.*  
*Never* to write to her again. *De NE JAMAIS lui récrire.*

- 191 Without a verb, *NO* is expressed by *NON*, and *NOT* by *NON PAS*; as,  
 Will you go to town to-morrow? *Irez-vous demain à la ville?*  
*No*; I will go, but *not* to-morrow. *NON*; *j'y irai, mais NON PAS demain.*

## REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

- 192 With the verb *CAN*, rendered by the *conditional* tense of *SAVOIR*, instead of the *present* of *POUVOIR*, and with *WHY*, rendered by *QUE*, instead of *POUR QUOI*, *NOT* is expressed by *NE* only before the verb; as,

I can *not* do it. *J'EN PEUX PAS, or JE NE SAURAI le faire.*  
*Why* does he *not* do it himself? *QUE NE le fait-il lui-même?*

N. B. We also generally *suppress* PAS, POINT, with the verbs *OSER*, to *dare*; *CESSER*, to *cease*; and with *SAVOIR*, to *know*; when it is followed by *SI*, *OU*, *QUE*, *QUAND*, *QUEL*, *COMBIEN*, *COMMENT*; as,

I *dare not* do it. *Je N'OSE le faire.*  
 I do *not know* what to say to her. *Je NE sais QUE lui dire.*  
 She is *incessantly* plaguing me. *Elle NE cesse de me tourmenter.*

\* PAS, POINT, are used indiscriminately, except in sentences of interrogation, when, according to the french academy, POINT intimates a doubt, and PAS a kind of affirmation; so, *N'avez-vous POINT pris mon livre?* means, Have not you taken my book?

and *N'avez-vous PAS pris mon livre?* means, You have taken my book, have not you? Perhaps it would be better to give another turn to the sentence than to give these different properties to two monosyllables which may be so easily mistaken one for the other.

Some grammarians, and even the french academy, make several other distinctions between PAS, POINT; viz. that POINT means *not at all, never*, and denies more strongly than PAS; that PAS is said of something momentary, and POINT of things that are permanent; so *Il NE lit PAS*, means, He does not read now; and *Il NE lit POINT*, means, He never reads; these distinctions seem to me merely ideal; I have endeavoured to ascertain them, and I have not found any author who has observed them; the ear alone is consulted. There are in our language, as well as in our manners, trifles which reason does not scruple to overlook.

† MOT and GOUTE are also negative expressions, but used only with the verbs *DIRE* and *VOIR*; as,

*Il NE dit MOT*; He did not say a word. *Il NE voit GOUTE*; He does not see at all.



## REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

**NOT**, after the verb *take care*, *PRENDRE GARDE*, is not expressed in french, when the verb which follows it is in the *INFINITIVE*, and it is expressed by *NE*, if the following verb is in any *other* mood; as,

Take care of falling, or *not* to fall. *Prenez garde de tomber.*

Take care that he does *not* fall. *Prenez garde qu'il NE tombe.*

The verb *EMPÊCHER*, to *Hinder*, *prevent*, *keep from*, requires *NE* before the following verb, if that verb is *not* in the *infinitive*; so we say;

*Je l'empêcherai de jouer;*  
or *J'empêcherai qu'il NE joue.* } I will hinder him from playing.

The verbs *CRAINdre*, *AVOIR PEUR*, *APPRÉHENDER*; to *fear*, to be *Afraid*; the conjunctions *DE PEUR QUE*, *DE CRAINTE QUE*, *Lest*, for *fear that*, require *NE* before the following verb, if we fear that the action *will happen*; then the verb has *no negation* in english; as,

I am afraid that he will come. *Je crains qu'il NE vienne.*

Come in, lest he should see you. *Entrez, de peur qu'il NE vous voie.*

But *NE* is *left out*, if the following verb is in the *INFINITIVE*; as,

I am afraid of spoiling it. *Je crains, or j'ai peur de le gâter.*

If we fear that the action *will not happen*, there is a *negation* in english, and it must be expressed by the *corresponding negation* in french; as,

I fear he will come *no more*. *Je crains qu'il NE vienne PLUS.*

I am afraid he *has not* seen me. *J'ai peur qu'il ne m'ait PAS vu.*

*N.B.* The verbs *NIER*, to *deny*, and *DOUTER*, to *doubt*, used negatively, the conjunction *À MOINS QUE*, *unless*, and *SI* in the sense of *à moins que*, require also *NE* before the following verb; as,

He does not deny having seen her. *Il ne nie pas qu'il NE l'ait vue.*

I do not doubt but she will come. *Je ne doute pas qu'elle NE vienne.*

*IL Y A—QUE*, *It is—since*; *DE PUIS QUE*, *since*, require *NE* before the verb which follows them, when we wish to denote that *no action* has taken place since the period we mention; then the verb may also have a *negation* in english;

*It is long since* I have seen him; } *Il y a long tems que je NE l'ai vu.*  
or I have *not* seen him this long while. }

But *NE* is not required, if there has been an *action*, and *no negation* could be used in english; as,

It is not long since I *have seen* him; } *Il n'y a pas long tems que je l'ai vu.*  
or I *have seen* him not long since. }

The *NEGATIVE* particle *NE* is required before the verb which follows *197*  
*AUTRE*, *other*; *AUTREMENT*, *otherwise*; as,

He is quite *another* than I thought. *Il est tout autre que je NE pensais.*

He speaks *otherwise* than he thinks. *Il parle autrement qu'il NE pense.*

After the *comparative* words *PLUS*, *MIEUX*, *MEILLEUR*, *MOINS*, see 47 rule; as also with *PERSONNE*, *QUI QUE CE SOIT*, see 97 rule; *RIEN*, *QUOI QUE CE SOIT*, 99; *AUCUN*, 100; *NUL*, *PAS UN*, 101; *NI L'UN NI L'AUTRE*, 124.

**BUT**, used in the sense of the adverb *ONLY*, is expressed by *NE* before *198*  
the verb, and *QUE* after it; as,

She is *but* fifteen (i. e. *only* 15). *Elle n'a QUE quinze ans.*

I have seen her *but* once. *Je NE l'ai vue QU'une fois.*

**BUT** is sometimes used in the sense of a *relative pronoun*, and is then *199*  
expressed by *QUI NE*, with the following verb in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*; as,

There are few people *but* can do it, i. e. *who* can *not* do it.

*Il y a peu de gens QUI NE puissent le faire.*



## PREPOSITION.

PREPOSITIONS are certain monosyllables added to *nouns, verbs, and Adjectives* in order to extend their meaning to the word which follows them; as,

*I came FROM Paris, THROUGH Canterbury, TO London.*

The words FROM, THROUGH, TO, which express a relation between the verb *came* and the *substantives* which follow it, are called PREPOSITIONS.

*The PREPOSITIONS are in french ;*

À	At, To.	EXCEPTÉ,	} Save, But, Except.
APRÈS,	After.	HORMIS,	
AVEC,	With.	MOYENNANT,	For, By the Means of.
AVANT,	Before.	MALGRÉ,	Against, In Spite of.
CHEZ,	At the House of.	NONOBTANT,	Notwithstanding.
CONTRE,	Against.	OUTRE,	Besides.
DANS,	In, Into.	PAR,	By, Through.
DE,	Of, From, By.	PARMI,	Among, Amongst.
DÈS,	From.	PENDANT,	During, For.
DEPUIS,	Since, From, For.	POUR,	For, In Order to.
DEVANT,	Before.	SANS,	Without.
DERRIÈRE,	Behind.	SELON,	} According to.
DURANT,	During, For.	SUIVANT,	
EN,	In, Into.	SOUS,	Under, Beneath.
ENTRE,	Between, Betwixt.	SUR,	On, Upon, Over.
ENVERS,	To, Towards.	TOUCHANT,	Concerning, About.
ENVIRON,	About.	VERS,	Towards, About.

\* The following expressions are found in several french grammars, and even in the dictionary of the french academy, in the class of prepositions:

AUPRÈS de,	Near, By, Close to.	à FORCE de,	By dint of.
AUTOUR de,	Round.	JUSQU'À,	To, Till, Until.
à CAUSE de,	On account of.	HORS de,	Out of.
à CÔTÉ de,	By, By the side of.	au LIEU de,	Instead of, in the place of.
en DEÇÀ de,	On this side of.	LOIN de,	Far from.
au DELÀ de,	On that side of.	le LONG de,	Along.
au DESSOUS de,	} Under, Below.	à MOINS de,	Under, For less.
par DESSOUS,		au MOYEN de,	By the means of.
au DESSUS de,	} Above, Over, Upon.	PRÈS de,	} Near to, Nigh, By.
par DESSUS,		PROCHE de,	
au DEVANT de,	} Before, In the fore part of.	par RAPPORT à,	With respect to.
par DEVANT,		à TRAVERS,	} Across, Through.
au DERRIÈRE de,	Behind, In the back of.	au TRAVERS de,	
à l'ÉGARD de,	As to, With respect to.	vis à vis de,	Over against, Facing.

And a few others which I have not thought proper to notice, because they certainly do not belong to this class. But these words are so far from being prepositions, that it is only by the means of the preposition DE or À, that they can be connected with the word which follows them. It is evident that they are *Nouns*, preceded and followed as you see, by an *Article*, or by a *Preposition*, and coming under the rules that have been given on nouns. According to the french academy, some of these words are both *Prepositions* and *Adverbs*. They are *Prepositions* when they govern a substantive after them, and they are *Adverbs* when they are used *absolutely* without a substantive. This distinction is right, but its application is not always so; for example, *J'étais à côté de la porte*, I was *by the side of* the door; here *à côté* is a *preposition*. *Il était sur la porte, et j'étais à côté*; He was *on the door*, and I was *by the side of* it; here *à côté*, is an *adverb*. With due respect to the french academy, I must say that *à côté*, in these instances, seems to me of the same nature as the substantive *side*, which represents it in english. Certain it is, that these words called *prepositions* are all derived from *nouns* or *verbs*. If then our poverty of expression obliged us to have recourse to this benevolent family, I think their generosity should not be abused, and their nature changed without a necessity which, in these instances, does not seem to exist.

## DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH and ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

Having found it impossible to make rules sufficiently explicit for the use of the prepositions, I have subjoined a list of all the *VERBS* and *ADJECTIVES* which require a preposition *different* from the preposition which generally corresponds with it in english, by means of which the learner may always remove any doubt he may have respecting the prepositions.\*

200

Agree	ABOUT,	<i>Convenir</i>	DE ;	as	Nous sommes <i>convenus</i> DE ceci.
Carry	ABOUT,	<i>Porter</i>	SUR ;		Je ne <i>portes</i> pas d'argent SUR moi.
Concerned	ABOUT, }	<i>Inquiet</i>	DE ;		Je suis <i>inquiet</i> DE sa santé.
Uneasy	ABOUT, }				
Discourse	ABOUT,	<i>Discourir</i>	DE ;		Nous <i>discourons</i> DE nos affaires.
Easy	ABOUT,	<i>Tranquille</i>	SUR ;		Je suis <i>tranquille</i> SUR cela.
Inquire	ABOUT,	s' <i>Inform</i>	DE ;		<i>Inform</i> ez-vous DE son retour.
Talk	ABOUT,	<i>Parler</i>	DE ;		Parlons d'autres choses.
Greedy	AFTER,	<i>Avide</i>	DE ;		Il est trop <i>avide</i> DE richesses.
Inquire	AFTER,	s' <i>Inform</i>	DE ;		Il s' <i>inform</i> e souvent DE vous.
Thirst	AFTER,	<i>Altéré</i>	DE ;		Il est <i>altéré</i> DE sang.
Angry	AT	a person, a thing, }			
Offended	AT				
Vexed	AT				
Angry	AT				
Offended	AT	<i>Fâché</i>	DE ;		Etre <i>fâché</i> DE quelque chose.
Vexed	AT				
Astonished	AT,	<i>Etonné</i>	DE ;		Je ne suis pas <i>étonné</i> DE cela.
Blush	AT,	<i>Rougir</i>	DE ;		Elle <i>rougit</i> DE sa folie.
Exasperated	AT,	<i>Ou<tré< i=""></tré<></i>	DE ;		Il fut <i>ou<tré< i=""> DE ce discours.</tré<></i>
Grieve	AT,	s' <i>Affliger</i>	DE ;		Il s' <i>afflige</i> DE sa perte.
Laugh	AT,	<i>Rire</i>	DE ;		Il <i>rit</i> or se <i>moque</i> DE tout.
Laugh	AT,	se <i>Moquer</i>	DE ;		Il se <i>moque</i> DE tout le monde.
Rejoice	AT,	se <i>Réjoir</i>	DE ;		Je me <i>réjois</i> DE votre succès.
Scandalised	AT,	<i>Scandaliser</i>	DE ;		Je fus <i>scandalisé</i> DE son action.
Smile	AT,	<i>Sourire</i>	DE ;		Elle <i>sourit</i> DE ma confusion.
Surprized	AT,	<i>Surpris</i>	DE ;		Je ne suis pas <i>surpris</i> DE cela.
Wonder	AT,	<i>Etonné</i>	DE ;		Je n' EN suis pas <i>étonné</i> .
Followed	BY,	<i>Suivi</i>	DE ;		Il était <i>suivi</i> DE ses gens.
Gain	BY,	<i>Gagner</i>	À ;		Il n' a rien <i>gagné</i> À cela.
Get	BY,				
Preceded	BY,	<i>Précédé</i>	DE ;		Le souper fut <i>précédé</i> d'un bal.
Profit	BY,	<i>Profiter</i>	DE ;		Il n'a pas <i>profité</i> DE vos leçons.
Answer	FOR,	<i>Répondre</i>	DE ;		<i>Repondez</i> -vous DE lui? DE cela?
Blame	FOR,	<i>Blâmer</i>	DE ;		Je le <i>blâme</i> DE ses défauts.
Bless	FOR,	<i>Bénir</i>	DE ;		<i>Béni</i> sons-le DE sa bonté.
Care	FOR,	se <i>Soucier</i>	DE ;		Je ne me <i>soucie</i> pas DE lui.
Chastise	FOR,	<i>Châtier</i>	DE ;		Il sera <i>châtié</i> DE sa malice.
Console	FOR,	<i>Consoler</i>	DE ;		<i>Consolez</i> -le DE sa perte.
Design	FOR,	<i>Destiner</i>	À ;		À quoi le <i>destinez</i> -vous?

\* Some grammarians have endeavoured to analyze the different *relations* which the prepositions have with the words which they connect: so, according to them, all verbs and adjectives expressing *desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, forgetfulness, care, fear, guilt, innocence, fulness, emptiness, plenty, want, measure, dimension*, require DE; the verbs and adjectives which express *submission, relation, pleasure, displeasure, duty, resistance, opposition, facility, difficulty, likeness, inclination, aptness, fitness, advantage, profit*, require A; but these terms are so indefinite, and notwithstanding their latitude, they leave so great a chasm in the field of prepositions, that I have not met with any person who has derived the least advantage from them.

## DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH and ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

Fit	FOR,	<i>Propre</i>	À ; as	À quoi cela est-il <i>propre</i> ?
Good	FOR,	<i>Bon</i>	À ;	Cela n'est <i>bon</i> À rien.
Grieve	FOR,	s' <i>Affliger</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>affligé</i> DE ses fautes.
Obliged	FOR,	<i>Obligé</i>	DE ;	Je lui suis <i>obligé</i> DE sa lettre.
Pity	FOR,	<i>Plaindre</i>	DE ;	Je le <i> plains</i> DE sa faiblesse.
Praise	FOR,	<i>Louer</i>	DE ;	On le <i>loua</i> DE sa candeur.
Provide	FOR,	<i>Pourvoir</i>	À ;	Qui <i>pourvoye</i> À ses besoins ?
Punish	FOR,	<i>Punir</i>	DE ;	Il sera <i>puni</i> DE sa témérité.
Sorry	FOR,	<i>Fâché</i>	DE ;	Je suis <i>fâché</i> DE son malheur
Sufficient	FOR,	<i>Suffire</i>	À ;	Cela ne LUI* <i>suffit</i> pas.
Thank	FOR,	<i>Remercier</i>	DE ;	<i>Remerciez-le</i> DE ses bontés.
Borrow	FROM,	<i>Emprunter</i>	À ;	Il l'a <i>emprunté</i> À votre père.
Conceal	FROM,	<i>Cacher</i>	À ;	Ne le <i>cachez</i> pas À votre ami.
Escape	FROM,	<i>Echapper</i>	DE ;	<i>Echapper</i> D'un endroit.
Escape	FROM,	<i>Echapper</i>	À ;	<i>Echapper</i> À une personne.
Hear	FROM,	<i>Ouir dire</i>	À ;	Je l'ai <i>ouï dire</i> À mon père.
Take	FROM,	<i>Oter</i>	À ;	Ne l'ôtez pas À cet enfant.
Take	FROM,	<i>Prendre</i>	À ;	Il le LUI* a <i>pris</i> or <i>ôté</i> .
Acquiesce	IN,	<i>Acquiescer</i>	À ;	J' <i>acquiesce</i> À votre demande.
Interested	IN,	s' <i>Intéresser</i>	À ;	Je m' <i>intéresse</i> À son bien-être.
Delight	IN,	se <i>Plaire</i>	À ;	Il se <i>plait</i> AU jardinage.
Dexterous	IN,	<i>Adroit</i>	À ;	Il est <i>adroit</i> AUX exercices.
Glory	IN,	se <i>Glorifier</i>	DE ;	Il se <i>glorifie</i> DE ses richesses.
Pride	IN,	s' <i>Enorgueillir</i>	DE ;	Il s' <i>enorgueillit</i> DE sa naissance.
Ask	OF,	<i>Demander</i>	À ;	<i>Demandez-le</i> À cet homme.
Sensible	OF,	<i>Sensible</i>	À ;	Il est très <i>sensible</i> AU froid.
Think	OF,†	<i>Penser</i>	À ;	Avez-vous <i>pensé</i> À moi ?
Think	OF,	<i>Songer</i>	À ;	Vous ne <i>songez</i> À rien.
Think	ON,	<i>Penser</i>	À ;	Avez-vous <i>pensé</i> À mon affaire ?
Have pity	ON,	<i>Avoir pitié</i>	DE ;	Vous n'avez <i>pitié</i> DE personne.
Play	ON,	<i>Jouer</i>	DE ;	<i>Joue-t-il</i> DE quelque instrument ?
Triumph	OVER,	<i>Triompher</i>	DE ;	Il a <i>triomphé</i> DE ses ennemis.
Pretend	TO,	se <i>Piquer</i>	DE ;	Il se <i>pique</i> DE générosité.
Agree	UPON,	<i>Convenir</i>	DE ;	<i>Convenons</i> DE quelque chose.
Call	UPON,	<i>Passer</i>	CHEZ ;	Quand <i>passerez-vous</i> CHEZ moi ?
Congratulate	UPON,	<i>Féliciter</i>	DE ;	Je vous <i>félicite</i> DE votre retour.
Depend	UPON,	<i>Dépendre</i>	DE ;	Vous ne <i>dépendez</i> pas DE lui.
Feed	UPON, se	<i>Nourrir</i>	DE ;	Il se <i>nourrit</i> DE pain et DE lait.
Impose	UPON, en	<i>Imposer</i>	À ;	Il en <i>impose</i> AUX gens.
Live	UPON,	<i>Vivre</i>	DE ;	Il <i>vit</i> DE fruit et DE légumes.
Prevail	UPON,	<i>Persuader</i>	À ;	Je LUI* <i>persuadai</i> de s'en aller.
Seize	UPON, se	<i>Saisir</i>	DE ;	On se <i>saisit</i> aussitôt DE lui.
Smile	UPON,	<i>Sourire</i>	À ;	Il <i>souriait</i> À ses amis.
Take	UPON, se	<i>Charger</i>	DE ;	Il s'est <i>chargé</i> DE cette affaire.
Abound	WITH,	<i>Abonder</i>	EN ;	La France <i>abonde</i> EN fruit.
Acquainted	WITH,	<i>Connu</i>	DE ;	Je ne suis pas <i>connu</i> DE lui.
Adorn	WITH,	<i>Orner</i>	DE ;	Une chambre <i>ornée</i> DE tableaux.
Angry	WITH,	<i>Fâché</i>	CONTRE ;	Il est très <i>fâché</i> CONTRE vous.

\* Observe that the *preposition* à is implied in LUI, which means to him. See table of the pronouns, p. 74.

† When *think* is used in the sense of to have an opinion, of is expressed by *de*, not by *à* ; as, What do you think of that ? *Que pensez-vous de cela ?* not, *à cela ?*



## DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH and ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

Amuse	WITH,	<i>Amuser</i>	DE ;	Il l' <i>amusait</i> DE promesses.
Animated	WITH,	<i>Animé</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>animé</i> DE zèle.
Armed	WITH,	<i>Armé</i>	DE ;	Il était <i>armé</i> d'un pistolet.
Bathe	WITH,	<i>Baigner</i>	DE ;	Elle le <i>baigna</i> DE ses larmes.
Charge	WITH,	<i>Accuser</i>	DE ;	On l' <i>accuse</i> DE trahison.
Charmed	WITH,	<i>Charmé</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>charmé</i> DE ses manières.
Compare	WITH,	<i>Comparer</i>	À ;	<i>Comparez</i> -vous ceci À cela ?
Comply	WITH,	<i>Condescendre</i>	À ;	Il <i>condescend</i> À ses caprices.
Contented	WITH,	<i>Content</i>	DE ;	Je ne suis pas <i>content</i> DE cela.
Cover	WITH,	<i>Couvrir</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>couvert</i> DE poussière.
Delighted	WITH,	<i>Charmé</i>	DE ;	Il fut <i>charmé</i> DE son esprit.
Die	WITH,	<i>Mourir</i>	DE ;	Je <i>meurs</i> DE faim, DE soif.
Disgusted	WITH,	<i>Dégoûté</i>	DE ;	Je suis <i>dégoûté</i> DU monde.
Dispense	WITH,	<i>Dispenser</i>	DE ;	<i>Dispensez</i> -moi DE cela.
Displeased	WITH,	<i>Mécontent</i>	DE ;	Je suis <i>mécontent</i> DE lui.
Do	WITH,	<i>Faire</i>	DE ;	Que <i>fera</i> -t-on DE cet homme ?
Embellish	WITH,	<i>Embellir</i>	DE ;	Un jardin <i>embelli</i> DE fleurs.
Endue	WITH,	<i>Douer</i>	DE ;	Il n'est <i>doué</i> d'aucun esprit.
Enflame	WITH,	<i>Enflamer</i>	DE ;	Il était <i>enflamé</i> DE colère.
Feed	WITH,	<i>Nourir</i>	DE ;	On le <i>nourit</i> DE pain et d'eau.
Fill	WITH,	<i>Emplir</i>	DE ;	<i>Emplissez</i> votre verre DE vin.
Glut	WITH,	<i>Assouvir</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>assouvi</i> DE carnage.
In love	WITH,	<i>Amoureux</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>amoureux</i> DE cette fille.
Load	WITH,	<i>Charger</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>chargé</i> DE butin.
Meddle	WITH, se	<i>Mêler</i>	DE ;	<i>Mélez</i> -vous DE vos affaires.
Moved	WITH,	<i>Touché</i>	DE ;	Il fut <i>touché</i> DE compassion.
Overjoyed	WITH,	<i>Ravi</i>	DE ;	Il fut <i>ravi</i> DE cette nouvelle.
Overwhelm	WITH,	<i>Accabler</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>accablé</i> DE chagrin.
Part	WITH, se	<i>Défaire</i>	DE ;	Il s'est <i>défait</i> DE son cheval.
Perish	WITH,	<i>Périr</i>	DE ;	Il <i>périt</i> DE faim et DE misère.
Pleased	WITH,	<i>Content</i>	DE ;	Elle n'est pas <i>contente</i> DE lui.
Prevail	WITH,	<i>Persuader</i>	À ;	<i>Persuadez</i> -LUI de le faire.
Provide	WITH,	<i>Fournir</i>	DE ;	Ils <i>fournissent</i> l'armée DE blé.
Provided	WITH,	<i>Pourvu</i>	DE ;	Il est bien <i>pourvu</i> d'habits.
Puffed up	WITH,	<i>Enflé</i>	DE ;	Il est tout <i>enflé</i> d'orgueil.
Refresh	WITH, se	<i>Rafranchir</i>	DE ;	Se <i>rafranchir</i> d'un verre de vin.
Satiated	WITH,	<i>Rassasié</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>rassasié</i> DE plaisirs.
Satisfied	WITH,	<i>Satisfait</i>	DE ;	Il n'est pas <i>satisfait</i> DE cela.
Set	WITH,	<i>Garnir</i>	DE ;	Une boîte <i>garnie</i> DE diamants.
Sport	WITH, se	<i>Jouer</i>	DE ;	Elle se <i>joue</i> DE sa crédulité.
Store	WITH,	<i>Munir</i>	DE ;	La place est <i>munie</i> DE provisions.
Struck	WITH,	<i>Frappé</i>	DE ;	Il fut <i>frappé</i> d'étonnement.
Surrounded	WITH,	<i>Entouré</i>	DE ;	Il était <i>entouré</i> DE flatteurs.
Swarm	WITH,	<i>Fourmiller</i>	DE ;	Le pays <i>fourmille</i> DE voleurs.
Taken up	WITH,	<i>Occupé</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>trop occupé</i> DE lui-même.
Tax	WITH,	<i>Taxer</i>	DE ;	On le <i>taxe</i> DE sédition.
Threaten	WITH,	<i>Menacer</i>	DE ;	On le <i>menaça</i> DE la mort.
Tire	WITH,	<i>Ennuyer</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>ennuyé</i> DE ces choses.
Tormented	WITH,	<i>Tourmenté</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>tourmenté</i> DE remords.
Transported	WITH,	<i>Transporté</i>	DE ;	Elle est <i>transportée</i> DE joie.
Do	WITHOUT, se	<i>Passer</i>	DE ;	Il ne peut pas se <i>passer</i> d'elle.



## DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH and ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

201

Sometimes a verb requires a PREPOSITION after it in english, and will not admit of it in french; such are,

Look	AT;	Look at that man;	Regardez cet homme.
Ask	FOR;	He asks for you;	Il vous demande.
Buy	FOR;	I bought this for a penny;	J'ai acheté ceci un sou.
Go	FOR;	Go for your book;	Allez chercher votre livre.
Look	FOR;	Look for it;	Cherchez-le, not, pour lui
Sell	FOR;	I have sold it for two pence;	Je l'ai vendu deux sous.
Stay	FOR;	Stay for me;	Attendez-moi, not, pour moi.
Wait	FOR;	Do not wait for me;	Ne m'attendez pas.
Wish	FOR;	I wish for your company;	Jesouhaite votre compagnie.
Accept	OF;	Please to accept of this;	Daignez accepter ceci.
Admit	OF;	He will not admit of that;	Il n'admettra pas cela.
Approve	OF;	Do you approve of it?	L'approuvez-vous?
Beg	OF;	I beg of you to see her;	Je vous prie de la voir.
Ignorant	OF;	She was quite ignorant of it;	Elle l'ignorait tout à fait.
Tyrannise	OVER;	She tyrannises over me;	Elle me tyrannise.
Listen	TO;	Listen to me;	Ecoutez-moi, not à moi.
Look	UPON;	Look upon me as a friend;	Regardez-moi comme ami.
Prevail	UPON;	Prevail upon her to stay;	Engagez-la à rester.
Prevail	WITH;	Prevail with him to come;	Engagez-le à venir.
Resolve	UPON;	Has he resolved upon any thing?	A-t-il résolu quelque chose?
Bear	WITH;	I bear with his importunities;	J'endure ses importunités.
Meet	WITH;	I met with a robber;	Je rencontraï un voleur.
Put up	WITH;	I put up with his impertinence;	Je souffris son impertinence.

202

In other instances it is the reverse, and the verb which has no PREPOSITION in english, must have a PREPOSITION after it in french; such are,

Abuser	DE;	Il abuse DE ma patience;	He abuses my patience.
s'Appercevoir	DE;	Je m'apperçois DE cela;	I perceive that.
Avoir besoin	DE;	J'ai besoin D'argent;	I want money.
Avoir pitié	DE;	Il n'a pas pitié DE moi;	He does not pity me.
Changer	DE;	Il a changé DE dessein;	He has changed his design.
se Défier	DE;	Vous défiez-vous DE lui?	Do you mistrust him?
se Démettre	DE;	Il s'est démis DE sa place;	He has given up his place.
Disconvenir	DE;	Il n'EN* disconvient pas;	He does not disown it.
Douter	DE;	Il doute DE tout;	He doubts every thing.
s'Embarasser	DE;	Il ne s'embarasse DE rien;	He minds nothing.
Gémir	DE;	Il gémit DE ses fautes;	He laments his errors.
Hériter	DE;	Il a hérité D'un gros bien;	He inherited a large estate.
Jouir	DE;	Il jouit D'une bonne santé;	He enjoys good health.
Manquer	DE;	Il ne manque DE rien;	He wants nothing.
Médire	DE;	Il médit DES gens;	He slanders people.
se Méfier	DE;	Il se méfie DE ses amis;	He mistrusts his friends.
se Méprendre	DE;	Il s'est mépris DE chemin;	He has mistaken his way.
se Moquer	DE;	Il se moque DES sages;	He mocks wise people.
se Passer	DE;	Il ne peut pas s'EN* passer;	He can not spare it.
se Servir	DE;	Il se sert DE mon nom;	He uses my name.
se Souvenir	DE;	Je me souviens DE cela;	I remember that.
User	DE;	Il a usé DE violence;	He has used violence.
se Venger	DE;	Je m'EN* vengerai;	I will revenge it.
Attenter	À;	Il a attenté À ma vie;	He has attempted my life.
Commander	À;	Commandez-LUI† d'y aller;	Bid him to go there.
Compatir	À;	Je compatiss À sa peine;	I compassionate his pain.
Convenir	À;	Cela LUI† convient, or	} That suits or becomes him wonderfully.
Seoir	À;	Cela LUI† sied à merveille;	

\* The preposition *de* is implied in the pronoun *EN*, which means *of it*; see a table of the pronouns page 74.

† See note \* page 251.

DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH and ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

Défendre	à ;	Défendez-LUI* de le dire ;	Forbid him to tell it.
Déplaire	à ;	Il déplaît à son père ;	He displeases his father.
Désobéir	à ;	Il désobéit à sa mère ;	He disobeys his mother.
se Fier	à ;	Il ne se fie à personne ;	He trusts nobody.
Manquer	à ;	Il manque à sa parole ;	He breaks his word.
Importer	à ;	Il LUI* importe de le voir ;	It concerns her to see it.
Nuire	à ;	Ne nuisez à personne ;	Do not injure any body.
Obéir	à ;	Obéissez à vos parents ;	Obey your parents.
Obvier	à ;	Il n'a pu obvier à cela ;	He could not prevent that.
s Opposer	à ;	Opposez-vous à l'injustice ;	Oppose injustice.
Ordonner	à ;	Ordonnez-LUI* de le faire ;	Order him to do it.
Pardonner	à ;	Pardonnez à vos ennemis ;	Forgive your enemies.
Permettre	à ;	Permettez-LUI* de s'en aller ;	Permit her to go.
Persuader	à ;	Persuadez-LUI* de la voir ;	Persuade him to see her.
Plaire	à ;	Elle plaît à tout le monde ;	She pleases every body.
Prend garde	à ;	Il prend garde à tout ;	He minds every thing.
Promettre	à ;	Il LUI* a promis de venir ;	He promised her to come.
Renoncer	à ;	Il a renoncé au jeu ;	He has given up gaming.
Répondre	à ;	Répondez à ma question ;	Answer my question.
Résister	à ;	Résistez à la tentation ;	Resist temptation.
Ressembler	à ;	Elle ressemble à sa mère ;	She resembles her mother.
Subvenir	à ;	Il subvient à ses besoins ;	He supplies her wants.
Succéder	à ;	Il succédera à son oncle ;	He will succeed his uncle.
Survivre	à ;	Elle ne LUI* survivra pas ;	She will not outlive him.
Toucher	à ;	Ne touchez pas à ce livre ;	Do not touch that book.

In some instances the *PREPOSITION* may be placed in english, either *before* or *after* the substantive which it governs ; but in french, the *PREPOSITION* must always be placed *immediately BEFORE* its object ; as,

With whom were you ?	}	AVEC qui étiez-vous ?
or Whom were you with ?		
To whom shall I give this ?	}	À qui donnerai-je ceci ?
or Whom shall I give this to ?		

The *PREPOSITIONS* must be repeated in french *before EVERY word* which they govern, though these words are in the same sentence, and the preposition is not repeated in english ; as,

I come from France and Italy ; Je viens DE France et d'Italie.  
I have been to Paris and Rome ; J'ai été À Paris et À Rome.†

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

FOR ; DEPUIS, PENDANT, DURANT, POUR.

For, before a period of time, is expressed by DEPUIS, to denote the two extremes of the period ; by PENDANT, or DURANT, to denote its duration ; and by POUR, to denote the end ; as,

I have not seen him for a month ;	
i. e. a month since.	Je ne l'ai pas vu DEPUIS un mois.
They fought for two days ;	
i. e. during two days.	Ils se batirent PENDANT deux jours.
They have provisions for a year ;	
i. e. to last a year.	Ils ont des provisions POUR un an.

\* The preposition à is implied in the pronoun LUI, which expresses to him, to her. See a table of the pronouns, p. 74.

† This repetition is not always necessary, but the surest way for a foreigner is to make it a general rule, until he has learned by reading when the preposition may be left out.

## REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

## BEFORE; AVANT, DEVANT.

- 206 Speaking of *time*, or *order*, *BEFORE* is expressed by *AVANT*, the opposite of which is *APRÈS*, *after*; speaking of *place* or *in presence*, it is expressed by *DEVANT*, the opposite of which is *DERRIÈRE*, *behind*; as,  
 Do not walk *before* me. *Ne marchez pas* DEVANT moi.  
 I want to arrive *before* you. *Je veux arriver* AVANT vous.  
 N. B. Without an object after it, *BEFORE* is *AUPARAVANT*; as,  
 I had seen it *before*. *Je l'avais vu* AUPARAVANT.

## BY; PRÈS DE, À CÔTÉ DE.

- 207 *By*, used in the sense of *NEAR*, is *PRÈS DE*, or *À CÔTÉ DE*; as,  
 He was sitting *by* or *near* me. *Il était assis* à côté de moi.  
 He passed *by* or *near* us. *Il passa* PRÈS de nous, à côté de nous  
 N. B. With the words *MYSELF*, *THYSELF*, *HIMSELF*, &c., *BY* is often used in the sense of *alone*, and is expressed by the adjective *SEUL*; as,  
 I like to be *by myself*, i. e. *alone*. *J'aime à être* SEUL; not, *PAR moi-même*.  
 She was *by herself* all the day. *Elle a été* SEULE toute la journée.

## AT, TO; CHEZ.

- 208 *AT*, *TO*, denoting *being AT*, or *going TO* a person's *house*, are expressed by *CHEZ*, and the word *house* is *left out* in French; as,  
 I must go *to* my sister's; } *Il faut que j'aille* CHEZ ma sœur.  
 or *to* my sister's *house*.  
 She is *AT* your mother's. *Elle est* CHEZ votre mère.  
 N. B. If the word *house*, instead of being preceded by a noun, is preceded by one of the *possessive PRONOMINAL articles* *MY*, *THY*, *HIS*, *HER*, *OUR*, *YOUR*, *THEIR*, the word *house* is also omitted, and the *possessive ARTICLE* is changed into a *personal PRONOUN*, thus;  
 At *my* house; *Chez* MOI. At *our* house; *Chez* NOUS.  
 At *thy* house; *Chez* TOI. At *your* house; *Chez* VOUS.  
 At *his* house; *Chez* LUI. At *their* house; *Chez* EUX. m.  
 At *her* house; *Chez* ELLE. At *their* house; *Chez* ELLES. f.

## FROM; De CHEZ.

- 209 *FROM*, with verbs denoting *coming* or *going FROM* a person's *house*, is expressed by *de* *CHEZ*, and the word *house* is *left out*; as,  
 I come *from* my sister's; } *Je viens de* CHEZ ma sœur.  
 or *from* my sister's *house*.  
 Is she returned *from* my mother's? *Est-elle revenue de* CHEZ ma mère?

N. B. If the word *house* is preceded by the *possessive PRONOMINAL article* *MY*, *THY*, *HIS*, *HER*, *OUR*, *YOUR*, *THEIR*, that article is changed into a *personal PRONOUN*, as follows;

From <i>my</i> house; <i>De</i> chez MOI.	From <i>our</i> house; <i>De</i> chez NOUS.
From <i>thy</i> house; <i>De</i> chez TOI.	From <i>your</i> house; <i>De</i> chez VOUS.
From <i>his</i> house; <i>De</i> chez LUI.	From <i>their</i> house; <i>De</i> chez EUX. m.
From <i>her</i> house; <i>De</i> chez ELLE.	From <i>their</i> house; <i>De</i> chez ELLES. f.

## FROM; De la PART.

- 210 *FROM*, with the verbs to *go*, to *come*, not *from the HOUSE* of a person, but *from the PERSON himself*, is expressed by *de la PART*; as,  
 Go *from me* to my daughter's. *Allez de* MA PART chez ma fille.  
 Whom do you come *from*? *De la PART* de QUI venez-vous?



## REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

## IN, INTO; DANS, EN.

Before the names of *persons* and *places*, *IN*, *INTO* are expressed by **211**  
*DANS*; as,

I have read that *in* Voltaire. *J'ai lu cela DANS Voltaire.*  
 Are there fine streets *in* Paris? *Y a-t-il de belles rues DANS Paris?*  
 N. B. Observe only with respect to *places*, that after verbs denoting residence, *IN* is expressed by *à*; as,  
 My brother lives *in* Paris. *Mon frère demeure à Paris.*

Before the names of *countries*, with verbs denoting *going* or *residing*, **212**  
*IN*, *INTO* are expressed by *EN*; as,

My brother lives *in* France. *Mon frère demeure EN France.*  
 Has he ever been *into* Italy? *A-t-il jamais été EN Italie?*  
 N. B. In other instances, *IN*, *INTO* before the names of *countries*, may be expressed by *EN* or by *DANS*; observing only that after *DANS*, the noun must have an article, and after *EN*, it must be without; as,  
 There is some *in* France. *Il y en a EN France, DANS la France.*  
 Is there any *in* Italy? *Y en a-t-il EN Italie, or DANS l'Italie?*

Before *common* names used in a *limited* sense, i.e. preceded by any of the **213**  
 signs which have been called *article*, *IN*, *INTO* are expressed by *DANS*;

*In* the last peace. *DANS la dernière paix.*  
*In* this unfortunate war. *DANS cette guerre malheureuse.*  
 There are charms *in* society. *Il y a des charmes DANS la société.*

But when the same *common* names are used in an *unlimited* sense, in **214**  
 which sense they generally have no article, *IN*, *INTO* are expressed by *EN*;

I like to live *in* peace. *J'aime à vivre EN paix.\**  
 We are always *in* broils. *Nous sommes toujours EN querelle.*  
 It is better to live *in* society. *Il vaut mieux vivre EN société.†*

Speaking of *time*, *IN* is expressed by *DANS*, to denote the time *after* **215**  
*which* an action *will be performed*, and by *EN*, to denote the time that will be employed *in performing* it; as,

I shall go to Paris *in* three days.  
*J'irai à Paris DANS trois jours; viz. after three days.*  
*J'irai à Paris EN trois jours; i. e. I shall be three days in going.*

Before nouns denoting any part of the day, *IN* is *not expressed* in french; **216**  
*In* the morning—*In* the evening. *Le matin—Le soir.*

*In* the afternoon. *Après midi, or Après dîné.*  
 N. B. Observe the same rule with *ON*, before the days of the week; as,  
*On* Sunday—*On* Monday. *Dimanche—Lundi; not, sur Lundi.*  
*On* the day he came. *Le jour qu'il est venu.*

\* If in some instances *IN*, *INTO* are expressed by *EN*, without an article in french, before nouns which in english have the article *A*, *AN*; as,

I came *in* a coach; *Je vins EN carrosse.* She fell *into* a passion; *Elle se mit EN colère;*  
 It is because in these instances the noun serves less to name the thing itself, than the manner of being or acting of the agent of the verb, and these words *En carrosse*, *En colère*, may be considered as adverbial expressions; but if we add to the same nouns some word which will render their meaning definite, *IN*, *INTO* must be expressed by *DANS*; as,

I came *in* a fine coach; *Je vins DANS un beau carrosse.*  
 She fell *into* a great passion; *E le se mit DANS une grande colère.*

† *Société*, in these two instances, is used in a different sense; in the first instance, it means that particular state of being called *society*; in the second, it is rather an adverbial expression, and means *socially*.



## CONJUNCTION.

CONJUNCTIONS are certain words, and sometimes short phrases that serve to express the relation which several sentences have together; as,

*Will you come, if I go? I will not go, UNLESS you come.*

The words IF, UNLESS, which denote a relation between the verbs *come* and *go*, are called CONJUNCTIONS.

*The CONJUNCTIONS are in french;*

AFIN QUE,	} That, To the end that.	ET,	And, Both.
POUR QUE,		MAIS,	But.
À MOINS QUE,	Unless.	NI,	Neither, Nor.
AVANT QUE,	Before.	OU,	Either, Or.
AUSSI,	So, Therefore.	PARCE QUE,	Because.
BIEN QUE,	} Though, Although.	POURTANT,	Yet, However
QUOIQUE,		POURVU QUE,	Provided.
CAR,	For, Because.	PUISQUE,	Since.
ENCAS QUE,	If, In case that.	QUE,	That.
CEPENDANT,	Yet, However.	QUAND,	} When.
COMME,	As, Since.	LORSQUE,	
DE CRAINTE QUE,	} Lest, For fear that.	QUAND,	Though, If even.
DE PEUR QUE,		SANS QUE,	Without.
JUSQU'à ce QUE,	Till, Until.	SI,	If, Whether.
NÉANMOINS,	Nevertheless.	SOIT QUE,	Whether.*

\* Several grammarians reckon above one hundred conjunctions, which they call

DECLARATIVE, viz.	SUSPENSIVE, viz.	DISJUNCTIVE, viz.	COPULATIVE, viz.
SAVOIR.	SI.	OU.	ET.
COMME.	SAVOIR SI.	OU bien.	AUSSI.
C'est à DIRE.	C'est à SAVOIR si.	SOIT.	NI.
Par EXEMPLE.	QUOI qu'il en SOIT.	SOIT que.	NON plus.
AUGMENTATIVE, viz.	DIMINUTIVE, viz.	TRANSITIVE, viz.	CONCESSIVE, viz.
D'AILLEURS.	ENCORE.	En EFFET.	QUOI que.
OUTRE.	AU MOINS	AU RESTE.	A la VÉRITÉ.
DE PLUS.	Du MOINS.	À PROPOS.	QUAND, QUAND même.
Au SURPLUS.	Pour le MOINS.	APRÈS tout.	NON que, NON PAS que.
RESTRICTIVE, viz.	ADVERSATIVE, viz.	CONCLUSIVE, viz.	
SINON.	MAIS.	OR, DONC.	
SI ce n'est QUE.	CEPENDANT.	AINSI.	
QUOIQUE.	NE'ANMOINS.	Par CONSÉQUENT.	
POUR, viz. QUOIQUE.	POURTANT.	C'est POUR QUOI.	
ENCORE que.	TOUTE FOIS	TELLEMENT que.	
À MOINS que.	BIEN que.	De sorte que. De	MANIÈRE que.
CAUSATIVE, viz.	COMPARATIVE, viz.	CONDITIONAL, viz.	TIME and ORDER, viz.
CAR.	COMME.	SI.	QUAND, LORSQUE.
COMME.	AINSI.	SINON.	PENDANT que.
PARCE que.	De MÊME.	QUAND, QUAND même.	TANDIS que.
À CAUSE que.	AINSI que.	QUAND bien même.	TANT que.
VU que.	AUSSI BIEN que.	À MOINS que.	AVANT que.
ATTENDU que.	AUSSI PEU que.	POURVU que.	DEPUIS que.
PUIS que.	AUTANT que.	SUPPOSÉ que.	DES que.
POUR quoi.	NON PLUS que.	AU CAS que.	AUSSI TÔT que.
AFIN que.	NI PLUS NI MOINS que.	En CAS que.	APRÈS que.
De PEUR que.	SI que.	À CONDITION que.	CEPENDANT.
De CRAINTE que.	EN, viz. COMME.	Bien ENTENDU que.	à PEINE, ENFIN.

Which, except those mentioned in the table above, are either nouns or adverbs, with puzzling and useless denominations, since their properties are the same in both languages.

Some grammarians add to these *AFIN de*; *À MOINS QUE de*; *AVANT de*; *AVANT QUI de*; *AU LIEU de*; *DE CRAINTE de*; *DE PEUR de*; *FAUTE de*; *LOIN de*; *PLUTÔT QUE de*; *JUSQU' à*; but the only connective part of these words being *DE*, or *À*, which are prepositions, they can hardly be said to belong to the conjunctions.

The CONJUNCTIONS in french *affect* the verbs which follow them, so as to require some *particular mood*.

The following CONJUNCTIONS require the *INDICATIVE mood* after them; **217**

AUSSI,	<i>so, therefore.</i>	OU,	<i>either, or.</i>
CAR,	<i>for, because.</i>	PARCE QUE,	<i>because.</i>
CEPENDANT,	} <i>yet, however.</i>	PUISQUE,	<i>since.</i>
POURTANT,		QUAND,	} <i>when.</i>
COMME,	<i>as, since.</i>	LORSQUE,	
MAIS,	<i>but.</i>	QUAND,	<i>tho', if even.</i>
NÉANMOINS,	<i>nevertheless.</i>	QUE,	<i>that.</i>
NI,	<i>neither, nor.</i>	SI,	<i>if, whether.</i>

The following CONJUNCTIONS require the *SUBJUNCTIVE mood* after them; **218**

AFIN QUE,	} <i>that.</i>	DECRAINTE QUE,*	} <i>lest, for</i>
POUR QUE,		DEPEUR QUE,*	
À MOINS QUE,*	<i>unless.</i>	JUSQU'À CE QUE,	<i>till, until.</i>
AVANT QUE,	<i>before.</i>	POURVU QUE,	<i>provided.</i>
BIEN QUE,	} <i>though, although.</i>	QUE,†	<i>that.</i>
QUOIQUE,		SANS QUE,	<i>without.</i>
ENCAS QUE,	<i>if, in case that.</i>	SOIT QUE,	<i>whether.</i>

When a CONJUNCTION governs *SEVERAL VERBS*, it is expressed before the first verb only, and QUE is added to the other verbs, with the *SAME MOOD* after it, as if the conjunction itself was repeated; ex.

*As he is diligent, and takes pains.*

*COMME il EST diligent, et QU'il PREND de la peine.*

*He learns well, because he is diligent, and takes pains.*

*Il apprend bien, PARCE QU'il EST diligent, et QU'il PREND de la peine.*

*Unless he is diligent, and takes pains.*

*À MOINS QU'il ne SOIT diligent, et QU'il ne PRENNE de la peine.*

When SI, IF, governs *two verbs*, instead of repeating SI before the *second verb*, we use QUE; and the verb which follows this QUE, must be in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*, though the verb which follows SI is in the *indicative*; **220**

*You will learn, if you are diligent, and take pains.*

*Vous apprendrez, SI vous ÊTES diligent, et QUE vous PRENIEZ de la peine.*

*If you come, and I am not at home, you will wait for me.*

*SI vous VENEZ, et QUE je ne SOIS pas au logis, vous m'attendrez. (oo)*

The idiom of the english language often admits an *ellipsis*, i. e. an omission of the conjunction THAT; as, **221**

*I think my sister will come; for, I think THAT my sister will come.*

But the corresponding conjunction must always be expressed in french; as,

*I think my sister will come. Je pense QUE ma sœur viendra.*

*I know she intends to come. Je sais QU'elle a dessein de venir.*

*I hope she will soon be here. J'espère QU'elle sera bientôt ici.*

\* The conjunctions A MOINS que, DE CRAINTE que, DE PEUR que require NE before the verb which follows them; see 195 rule.

† Learners are often mistaken, by considering QUE as requiring always the *subjunctive mood* after it; but QUE does not govern any particular mood; its power depends on the verb or conjunction that precedes it.

(oo) The conjunction IF is often suppressed, and the nominative transposed after the verb; as, *If you should come, or should you come, or were you to come, and I was not at home, you will wait for me*, which turn of expression must be rendered in french by SI before the verb; thus, *SI vous veniez, et QUE je ne fusse pas au logis, vous m'attendrez.*

## REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

BOTH; ET, TANT.

- 222** *BOTH*, a conjunction of emphasis, is expressed by *ET* before an *adjective*, by *ET* or *TANT* before a *substantive*; but observe, that when we use *TANT* before the *first* substantive, we put *QUE* instead of *ET* before the *second*;

She is *both* rich and handsome. *Elle est ET riche ET belle.*

*Both* summer and winter. *TANT en été QU'en hiver.*

N. B. This conjunction in *familiar* writing and in *conversation* is generally *left out* in french; thus,

*Elle est riche et belle. En été et en hiver.*

EITHER, OR; OU, SOIT.

- 223** *EITHER, OR*, are generally expressed by *OU*; as,  
*That* is either good or bad. *Cela est ou bon ou mauvais.*  
*Either* he is rich, or he is poor. *ou il est riche, ou il est pauvre.*  
 N. B. *EITHER, OR*, followed by a *Noun*, may be expressed by *SOIT*; as,  
*Either* through love or caprice, she has married him.  
*soit par amour ou par caprice, ou soit par caprice, elle l'a épousé.*

NEITHER, NOR; NE NI, NI NE.

- 224** *NEITHER, NOR*, followed by a verb in the *indicative* or *subjunctive* mood, are expressed, *NEITHER* by *NE*, and *NOR* by *NI NE*; as,  
*I neither* love nor hate her. *Je NE l'aime NI NE la hais.*  
*I neither* see her nor speak to her. *Je NE la vois NI NE lui parle.*  
 If, after *NEITHER, NOR*, there is a verb in the *infinitive*, an *adjective*, a *Noun*, or a *Pronoun*, *NEITHER* is expressed by *NE* before the verb, and *NI* after it, and *NOR* is expressed by *NI*; as,  
*I care neither* for him nor for her. *Je NE me soucie NI de lui NI d'elle.*  
 She is *neither* rich nor handsome. *Elle N'est NI riche NI belle.*  
 She has *neither* beauty nor riches. *Elle n'a NI beauté NI richesses.*  
 I can *neither* see her, nor speak to her. *Je NE puis NI la voir, NI lui parler.*

WHETHER; SI, QUE, SOIT QUE.

- 225** *WHETHER*, used in the sense of *IF*, is expressed by *SI*, with the following verb in the *INDICATIVE*; as,  
 Do you know *whether* she will come? *Savez-vous SI elle VIENDRA?*  
 I want to know *whether* she will come. *J'ai envie de savoir SI elle VIENDRA.*  
*WHETHER*, used in the sense of *LET*, is expressed by *QUE*, or *SOIT QUE*, with the following verb in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*; as,  
 Come yourself, *whether* she comes } *Venez vous-même, QU'elle vienne ou non;*  
 or not; or *let* her come or not. } *or QU'elle vienne ou QU'elle ne vienne pas.*  
*Whether* she comes or not; or } *soit QU'elle vienne ou non; or QU'elle vienne*  
*let* her come or not, we will go. } *ou QU'elle ne vienne pas, nous y irons.*

THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN; QUAND.

- 226** *THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN*, followed by a *conditional* tense, are generally expressed by *QUAND*; as,  
*Though* she should come, } *QUAND elle viendrait, elle n'irait pas*  
 or *Even if* she should come, } *avec nous. (pp)*  
 She would not go with us.

(pp) These conjunctions are often *left out* in english, and the *nominative* is *put after* the verb, which mode of expression is also rendered in french by *QUAND*; as,  
 Were *she* to come, or, should *she* come now, she would not go with us;  
*Quand elle viendrait à présent, elle n'irait pas avec nous*

## REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, &amp;c. SANS.\*

227

BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR, HAD  
 IT NOT BEEN FOR, are generally expressed by SANS ; as,  
*But for you, I should have starved. SANS vous, je serais mort de faim.*  
*But for his friends,*  
*or If it were not for his friends,*  
*or Had it not been for his friends,* } SANS ses amis, il aurait été puni.  
*he would have been punished.*

## CHAP. X.

## INTERJECTION.

INTERJECTIONS are *natural sounds* caused by some sudden emotion of  
 joy, grief, pain, aversion, disgust, fright, surprise, astonishment, &c.

The sounds most commonly used in french as *interjections* are ;\*

## FOR JOY ;

O !	O !	ô ! si je pouvais le voir.
AH !	Ah !	AH ! que je serais aise !
HA HA !		
HI HI !		
HO HO !		

} Sounds caused by bursts of laughter.

## FOR PAIN AND GRIEF ;

O !	O !	ô ! que je suis à plaindre !
AH !	Ah !	AH ! que je suis malheureux !
HE !	Ho !	HE ! vous me faites mal.
AIE !	Ay !	AIE ! vous me blessez.
OUF !	Oh !	OUF ! que je souffre !
HELAS !	Alas !	HELAS ! j'ai tout perdu.
MON DIEU !	O dear !	MON DIEU ! que ferai-je ?

## FOR AVERSION, DISGUST ;

FIE !	Fie upon !	FI ! n'avez-vous pas de honte ?
-------	------------	---------------------------------

## FOR FRIGHT, SURPRISE, ASTONISHMENT ;

HA !	Ay !	HA ! vous voilà.
EH !	Hah !	EH ! que vous êtes alerte !
OH OH !	Oh !	OH OH ! je vous y prends.
O CIEL !	Heavens !	O CIEL ! qu'allons-nous devenir ?
BON DIEU !	Mercy on us !	BON DIEU ! que vous êtes impatient !

## FOR CALLING ;

HO !		
HOLA !		
HEM !		

} Sounds used when we call out to people.

## FOR SILENCE ;

ST !		
CHUT !		
PAIX !		

} Sounds used when we call for a sudden silence.

\* The number of interjections cannot be ascertained, because any sound which expresses a sudden emotion of the soul may be called an interjection. Some of these sounds called interjections express even different sensations, according to the inflexion which the voice takes, either of joy or grief, of pleasure or pain. The soul is then the only syntax for interjections, and they can never embarrass the learner, since they do not require any rules.



## IDIOMS.

REMARKS on some *IDIOMATICAL* expressions, and words having *different meanings*, in which learners are apt to be mistaken.

PEOPLE; PEUPLE, GENS, PERSONNES, MONDE.

- 228 *PEOPLE*, meaning that *aggregate body* of human beings that compose a *nation*, a *government*, is expressed by *PEUPLE*; as,  
 The french *people*. *Le PEUPLE français.*  
 The will of the *people*. *La volonté du PEUPLE.*  
 N. B. *PEUPLE* is also said of that number of persons without dignity, who compose the *multitude*; as,  
 An insurrection of the *people*. *Un soulèvement du PEUPLE.*

- 229 *PEOPLE*, used to denote a certain number of *individuals*, is expressed by *GENS*, *PERSONNE*, *MONDE*; as,  
 Were there many *people*, i. e. *persons*, at the play?  
*Y avait-il beaucoup de GENS, beaucoup de MONDE à la comédie?*  
 There is a great number of *people* in the street.  
*Il y a un grand nombre de MONDE, de GENS, de PERSONNES dans la rue.*  
 But observe that *GENS* is not used after a *definite number*; so we do not say, *Deux ou trois GENS*; two or three *people*; we say, *Deux ou trois PERSONNES*.  
 Except when *GENS* is attended by an *adjective*; as  
*Deux ou trois honnêtes GENS.* Two or three *honest people*.  
*Cinq ou six jeunes GENS.* Five or six *young people*.  
 Observe also that when *GENS* is attended by an *adjective*, this adjective must be *feminine* if it comes *BEFORE* *GENS*, and it must be *masculine* if it comes *AFTER*; as,  
*Good people, civil people.* *De bonnes GENS, des GENS civils.*  
*Old people are suspicious.* *Les vieilles GENS sont soupçonneux.*

COUNTRY; PAYS, CAMPAGNE.

- 230 *PAYS* is said of a *large extent* of country, such as the *dominions* of a government, a *county*, a *province*; *CAMPAGNE* is said of a certain extent of *fields*, and is the opposite of *VILLE*, *town*; as,  
 France is a fine *country*. *La France est un beau PAYS.*  
 I prefer the *country* to the town. *Je préfère la CAMPAGNE à la ville.*

MOUTH; BOUCHE, GUEULE.

- 231 Speaking of *men*, *horses*, *mules*, *asses*, we express *MOUTH* by *BOUCHE*;  
 The *mouth* of a horse, of an ass. *La BOUCHE d'un cheval, d'un âne.*  
 Speaking of other *animals*, we express *MOUTH* by *GUEULE*;  
 The *mouth* of an ox, of a dog, &c. *La GUEULE d'un bœuf, d'un chien.*  
 The *mouth* of a pike, of a trout. *La GUEULE d'un brochet, d'une truite.*

TIME; TEMS, FOIS.

- 232 The word *TIME*, denoting any *period*, or *space*, is expressed by *TEMS*;  
 It is *time* to set out. *Il est TEMS de partir.*  
 We shall not be there in *time*. *Nous n'y serons pas à TEMS.*

But the word *TIME* is sometimes used to *limit* the action of the verb, or to denote a *repetition* of the action; as, the *first time*; *this time*; *another time*; *several times*, and is then expressed by *FOIS*; as,

Pardon me for *this time*. *Pardonnez-moi pour cette FOIS.*  
 I will do it better *next time*. *Je le ferai mieux la prochaine FOIS.*  
 How many *times* have you done it? *Combien de FOIS l'avez-vous fait?*

YEAR; AN, ANNÉE.

DAY; JOUR, JOURNÉE.

AN and JOUR are *indefinite* expressions which serve more to denote the *periods* of time than its duration; they are chiefly used after the cardinal or primitive numbers *un, deux, trois, quatre, &c.*; as,

Un AN, deux ANS, trois ANS; &c. A year, two years, three years, &c.

Un JOUR, deux JOURS, trois JOURS. One day, two days, three days, &c.

ANNÉE, on the contrary, implies *duration*, and will admit of different modifications; so when YEAR is attended by an *article*, or by an *adjective*, or by another *noun*, you must express it by ANNÉE; as,

This year, last year. Cette ANNÉE, l'ANNÉE dernière.

A good, a happy year. Une bonne, une heureuse ANNÉE.

A great number of years. Un grand nombre d'ANNÉES.

JOURNÉE is generally understood of the time which people employ in their occupations from their *rising* to their *going to bed*; as,

I spent the day very well. J'ai bien employé la JOURNÉE.

I have studied the whole day. J'ai étudié toute la JOURNÉE.

MORNING; MATIN, MATINÉE.

EVENING; SOIR, SOIRÉE.

It is the same with MATIN, MATINÉE; SOIR, SOIRÉE, as it is with JOUR, JOURNÉE. MATIN is said of the *first*, and SOIR of the *last part* of the day, but they do not imply any idea of duration. MATINÉE, on the contrary, implies the *whole time* from *day light* till *noon*; but is generally understood to be from the time that *people get up* till *twelve o'clock* at noon; and SOIRÉE implies the *whole time* of *darkness* till *twelve o'clock* at night, or till *people retire*; as,

It was fine this morning. Il faisait beau ce MATIN.

I have studied all the morning. J'ai étudié toute la MATINÉE.

Shall we see you this evening? Vous verrons-nous ce SOIR?

I shall spend the evening with you. Je passerai la SOIRÉE avec vous.

N. B. Saluting people, for *GOOD MORNING*, we say BON JOUR, not *BON matin*; and for *GOOD NIGHT*, we say BON SOIR, in the *early part* of the night, and BONNE NUIT, when the night is *far advanced*.

NIGHT; NUIT, SOIR.

If, by *NIGHT*, you mean the *whole time* of *darkness* on that part of the earth which we inhabit, you express it in french by NUIT; as,

Where did he sleep last night? Où coucha-t-il la NUIT dernière?

He spent the whole night at the ball. Il passa toute la NUIT au bal.

If, by *NIGHT*, you mean only the *first part* of *darkness* which is otherwise called *evening*, you express it by SOIR; as,

Will you go to the play to-night? Irez-vous à la comédie ce SOIR

Were you at the ball last night? Etiez-vous au bal hier au SOIR

TWELVE O'CLOCK; MIDI, MINUIT.

It is twelve o'clock. Il est MIDI (in the day.) Il est MINUIT (at night.)

It is a quarter past 12. Il est MIDI et un quart. Il est MINUIT et un quart.

It is half past twelve. Il est MIDI et demi. Il est MINUIT et demi.

It is three quarters past twelve. } Il est une heure moins un quart.

It wants a quarter to one.

It is one o'clock. Il est une heure.

It is a quarter past one. Il est une heure et un quart, &c.

To HAVE, expressed by ÊTRE.

- 237** The auxiliary verb *HAVE* is expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary ÊTRE, to form the *compound* tenses of *reflective* VERBS; as,  
 I have hurt myself. *Je ME SUIS blessé.*  
 He has gone away. *Il s'en EST allé.*  
 We have sat down. *Nous NOUS SOMMES assis.*  
 You have walked. *Vous VOUS ÊTES promenés.*  
 They have diverted themselves. *Ils SE SONT divertis.* [see page 115.]

- 238** The auxiliary *HAVE* is also expressed by the same tense and person of ÊTRE, when it comes before any of the following participles ;
- |                  |          |                   |             |                   |          |
|------------------|----------|-------------------|-------------|-------------------|----------|
| <i>Agreed,</i>   | CONVENU. | <i>come,</i>      | VENU.       | <i>fallen,</i>    | TOMBÉ.   |
| <i>Arrived,</i>  | ARRIVÉ.  | <i>come in,</i>   | ENTRÉ.      | <i>gone,</i>      | ALLÉ.    |
| <i>Become,</i>   | DEVENU.  | <i>dead,</i>      | MORT.       | <i>returned,</i>  | REVENU.  |
| <i>Befallen,</i> | SURVENU. | <i>deceased,</i>  | DÉCÉDÉ.     | <i>set out,</i>   | PARTI.   |
| <i>Born,</i>     | NÉ.      | <i>disagreed,</i> | DISCONVENU. | <i>succeeded,</i> | PARVENU. |
- I have set out early. *Je SUIS PARTI de bonne heure.*  
 He has agreed to do it. *Il EST CONVENU de le faire.\**  
 We have arrived in time. *Nous SOMMES ARRIVÉS à tems.*  
 You have returned too soon. *Vous ÊTES REVENUS trop tôt.*  
 They have gone too far. *Ils SONT ALLÉS trop loin.*

To BE, expressed by AVOIR.

- 239** The auxiliary verb *BE* is expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary AVOIR, when it is followed by the adjectives *hungry, thirsty, cold, warm, hot* denoting the natural feelings; *right, wrong, ashamed*; because these *adjectives* are expressed by a *substantive* in french; as,  
 I am hungry. *J'AI faim.*  
 He is thirsty. *Il a soif.*  
 His feet are cold. *Il a froid aux pieds.*  
 She is warm or hot. *Elle a chaud; not, Elle EST chaude.*  
 Her hands are warm. *Elle a chaud aux mains.*  
 We are right. *Nous AVONS raison.*  
 They are wrong, ashamed. *Ils ONT tort; ils ONT honte.*  
 N. B. The verb *BE* is also expressed by AVOIR, in speaking of the *age* of beings, because in these instances, as in the above, the French use a *substantive* instead of an adjective; as, [have you?  
 How old are you? *Quel âge AVEZ-vous? i. é. What age*  
 I am sixteen. *J'AI seize ans; not, Je SUIS seize.*  
 How old is your horse? *Quel âge a votre cheval?*

\* When the participle CONVENU means *suited*, it requires AVOIR; as,  
*Cela m'aurait fort bien CONVENU; That would have suited me very well.*

N. B. The participles SORTI, *gone out, been out*; PASSÉ, *gone by*; MONTE, *gone up, ascended*; DESCENDU, *come down*, require AVOIR or ÊTRE, agreeably to the sense in which they are used; but the same distinction, I think, is observed in english;

*Mon père a sorti; My father has been out. Il ÉTAIT sorti; He was gone out.*  
*Il a passé près d'ici; He has passed just by. Il EST passé; He is gone by.*  
*Il a monté la coline; He has ascended the hill. Il EST monté; He is gone up.*  
*Il a descendu l'escalier; He has come down the stairs. Il EST descendu; He is come down.*

DEMEURÉ, used for *lived, dwelt*, requires AVOIR; and for *remained, staid*, it requires ÊTRE; as,

*Il a demeuré à Paris; He has lived in Paris. Il EST demeuré à P.; He has staid in P.*

ACCOURU, *run to*; PÉRI, *perished*; APPARU, *appeared*; DISPARU, *disappeared*; CRU, *grown*; DÉCRU, *grown less*; RECRU, *grown again*, take indifferently AVOIR or ÊTRE.



To BE, expressed by FAIRE.

The verb BE, attended by an *adjective* or a *substantive* denoting the *state* of the *weather*, or of the *atmosphere*, is expressed in french by the same tense of the verb FAIRE, with IL for its *nominative*; as, 240

How is the weather?	Quel tems FAIT-il?
Is the weather fine?	FAIT-il beau tems?
Yes, the weather is very fine.	Oui, il FAIT très beau tems.
It is rather warm.	Il FAIT un peu chaud.
It is very cold.	Il FAIT très froid, or grand froid.
The weather has been bad lately.	Il a FAIT mauvais tems depuis peu.

To BE, To DO, expressed by Se PORTER.

The verbs BE and DO, used to denote the *state* of the *body*, are expressed by the same tense and person of the reflective verb Se PORTER; as, 241

How are you? how do you do?	Comment vous PORTEZ-vous?
I am pretty well, I thank you.	Je me PORTE assez bien, dieu merci.*
I have not been well.	Je ne me suis pas bien PORTÉ. [mère?
How is your mother?	} Comment se PORTE madame† votre
How does your mother do?	

To BE, expressed by DEVOIR.

The present tense of the verb BE, *am, art, is, are*, and the imperfect *was, were*, followed by another verb in the *INFINITIVE*, are expressed by the same tense and person of the verb DEVOIR; as, 242

I am to go there to-night.	Je DOIS y aller ce soir.
He is to come to-morrow.	Il DOIT venir demain; not, I LEST &c.
He was to bring it to-day.	Il DEVAIT l'apporter aujourd'hui.

To BE, not expressed in french.

The *infinitive* word TO BE, followed by a *PAST PARTICIPLE*, is not expressed, but the english *PARTICIPLE* takes the place of the *infinitive* BE, and is expressed by the *INFINITIVE* in french; as, 243

There is nothing to be SEEN.	Il n'y a rien à VOIR.
He caused his head to be CUT off.	Il lui fit COUPER la tête.
This house is to be LET, to be SOLD.	Cette maison est à LOUER, à VENDRE.

To BE Just, To HAVE Just; VENIR DE, Ne FAIRE Que DE.

The verbs HAVE and BE followed by the adverb Just, to denote an action past at the moment we are speaking, are expressed by VENIR de, or Ne FAIRE que DE, in the same tense and person as HAVE or BE are, and the english *participle* is expressed by the *infinitive* in french; thus, 244

I am just come.	{ Je VIENS d'arriver; or,
	{ Je ne FAIS que d'arriver.
My brother had just done.	{ Mon frère VENAIT de finir; or,
	{ Mon frère ne FAISAIT que de finir.†

\* The French do not, as the English do, thank those who inquire after their health. Instead of *Je vous remercie*; they say, *Dieu merci*; *A votre service*; *Vous êtes bien bon, or bien civil*; *Vous avez bien de la bonté*, or they return the compliment after the answer by saying, *Et vous?* and *you?*

† It is customary with the French, in mentioning the relations of the people to whom they are speaking, to add the words *Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle*; as,

*Comment se porte MONSIEUR votre père, MONSIEUR votre frère?*

*J'ai rencontré MADAME votre mère, MADemoisELLE votre sœur*; these words can not be expressed in english.

‡ Do not confound *Ne FAIRE que DE, To be just, To have just*, with *Ne FAIRE que*, which expresses another idea, viz. *To do nothing but*; *DE* added to the first makes the difference between these two expressions.



245

WAS NEAR, WERE NEAR, HAD LIKE; PENSER.

*WAS NEAR, WERE NEAR* followed by a present *participle*, and *HAD LIKE* followed by an *infinitive*, denote an action which was on the point of being effected, and are expressed by the *perfect* tense, or the *present compound*\* of the verb *PENSER*; as,

I was near dying;	} J'ai PENSÉ, or je PENSAI* mourir.
or I had like to have died.	
You were near falling;	} Vous avez PENSÉ tomber.
or You had like to have fallen.	
He was near being killed;	} Il a PENSÉ, or il PENSA* être tué.
or He had like to have been killed.	

THERE IS, THERE ARE, IT IS FAR, IT IS LONG, AGO,  
IT IS SINCE, THIS, THESE; IL Y A; IL Y AVAIT, &c.

246

*THERE IS, THERE ARE, IT IS FAR, IT IS LONG, IT IS SINCE, AGO*, and the demonstrative words *THIS, THESE*, pointing out a period of time, are expressed by the impersonal verb *IL Y A*; *IL Y AVAIT*, &c.;† as,

Is there any news to-day?	Y A-t-IL des nouvelles aujourd'hui?	} Combien Y A-t-IL de calais à Paris?
Are there flowers in his garden?	Y A-t-il des fleurs dans son jardin?	
How far is it from calais to Paris?		
or How far is calais from Paris?		
It is a hundred and fifty miles.	IL Y A cent cinquante milles.	
Calais is 150 miles from Paris.	IL Y A cent cinquante milles de c. à p.	
How long has he lived here?	Combien Y A-t-IL qu'il demeure ici?	
He has been here these six months.	IL Y A six mois qu'il est ici.	
It is 10 years since he was in France	IL Y A dix ans qu'il était en France;	
or He was in France ten years ago.	or, Il était en France IL Y A dix ans.	
It is long since I have seen him.	IL Y A long tems que je NE† l'ai vu.	
or I have not seen him this long while		
It was 12 months since I saw him.	IL Y AVAIT un an que je NE l'avais vu.	
or I had not seen him these 12 months.		

HERE IS, HERE ARE; THIS IS, THESE ARE; VOICI.

THERE IS, THERE ARE; THAT IS, THOSE ARE; VOILÀ.

247

*HERE IS, HERE ARE, THIS IS, THESE ARE*, pointing out any object, are expressed by *VOICI*; *THERE IS, THERE ARE, THAT IS, THOSE ARE*, also pointing out an object, are expressed by *VOILÀ*; as,

Here is, or this is your horse.	VOICI votre cheval.
Here are, or these are your boots.	VOICI vos bottes.
There is, that is a man who says.	VOILÀ un homme qui dit.

N. B. It is to be observed that, when the *nominative* of the verb which attends *HERE, THERE*, in the above sense, *i. e.* pointing out an object, is a *personal pronoun*, this *nominative* pronoun is changed into an *OBJECTIVE* pronoun in French, and placed *BEFORE* *VOICI, VOILÀ*; thus,

Here I am.	ME voici.	Here we are.	NOUS voici.
Here he is.	LE voici.	There she is.	LA voilà.
Here they are.	LES voici.	There they are.	LES voilà.

\* Agreeably to 136, 137 rules.

† See the conjugation of the impersonal verb *Y AVOIR*, page 173. ‡ See the 196 rule.

§ The French do not give to the different periods of time names which correspond with the English. For a week, they say, *huit jours*; for two weeks, or a fortnight, they say, *quinze jours*; three weeks, *trois semaines*; four weeks, *un mois*; for a quarter of a year, they say, *trois mois*; half a year, *six mois*; three quarters of a year, *neuf mois*; twelve months, *un an*.

LET; QUE, LAISSEZ.

**LET**, implying command or permission to a *THIRD* person, is expressed by **QUE**, and the object of **LET** is made the *Nominative* of the following verb, which must be in the *SUBJUNCTIVE* in french; as, 248

Let him do it himself. QU'il le fasse lui-même.  
 Let her go, if she likes. QU'elle y aille, si elle veut.  
 Let them go too. QU'ils, or QU'elles y aillent aussi.  
 Let my brother go alone. QUE mon frère y aille seul.

**LET**, commanding or entreating a *SECOND* person, is expressed by the second person of the *IMPERATIVE* of the verb **LAISSEZ**, with the following verb in the *INFINITIVE*; as,

Let him go; permit him to go. LAISSEZ-le aller.  
 Let her go; permit her to go. LAISSEZ-la aller.  
 Let them go; permit them to go. LAISSEZ-les aller.  
 Let my brother go; suffer him to go. LAISSEZ aller mon frère.

N. B. **LET KNOW**, meaning to *inform*, is expressed by **FAIRE SAVOIR**, agreeably to tense and person; as,

Let him know that I will come. FAITES lui SAVOIR que je viendrai.  
 I will let him know it to-night. Je le lui FERAI SAVOIR ce soir.

To MAKE; FAIRE, RENDRE.

**To MAKE**, meaning to perform some work, or some action, is expressed by **FAIRE**; as, 249

To make a book; to make a noise. FAIRE un livre; FAIRE du bruit.  
 To make great progress. FAIRE de grands progrès.

But to **MAKE**, expressing not the performance of an action, but the *moral* or *natural effects* of one being on another, is expressed by **RENDRE**; as,

Exercise makes the body healthy. L'exercice REND le corps sain.  
 Vice makes men unhappy. Le vice REND les hommes malheureux.  
 Misfortune has made him wise. Le malheur l'a RENDU sage.

To CAUSE, To HAVE, To GET; FAIRE.

The verbs **CAUSE**, and **HAVE**; and **GET**, in the sense of *cause*, meaning to order, or procure a thing to be done, are expressed by the same tense and person of the verb **FAIRE**; and the english *Participle* which follows **HAVE**, or **GET**, is expressed by the *INFINITIVE* in french; as, 250

I had him arrested; }  
 or I have caused him to be arrested. } Je l'AI FAIT arrêter.

I shall have him punished; }  
 or I shall cause him to be punished. } Je le FERAI punir.

Get your watch mended. FAITES raccommoder votre montre.

To CAUSE To BE DONE or MADE, To HAVE or GET DONE or MADE, To ORDER, To BESPEAK; } FAIRE FAIRE.

**To CAUSE TO BE DONE** or **MADE**, **To HAVE** or **GET DONE** or **MADE**, **To ORDER**, **To BESPEAK**, are expressed by the verb **FAIRE** repeated; i. e. the first verb in the same tense and person as *cause*, *have*, *get*, *order*, or *bespeak* is, and the second verb in the *INFINITIVE*; as, 251

I am going to get a watch made. Je vais FAIRE FAIRE une montre.

Where will you have it made? }  
 or Where will you get it done? } Où la FEREZ-vous FAIRE?

I shall have it made in Paris; }  
 or I shall get it done in Paris. } Je la FERAI FAIRE à Paris.

252

To ASK, To DESIRE; DIRE, PRIER, CHARGER.

We say in french as in english, DEMANDER *une chose*, to *ask* for a thing; DÉSIER *une chose*, to *wish for a thing*; but we do not say; DEMANDER *de faire une chose*, to *ask to do a thing*; nor DÉSIER *une personne de faire une chose*, to *desire a person to do a thing*; therefore, when ASK or DESIRE are followed by another verb in the *infinitive*, ASK must be expressed by DIRE or PRIER; and DESIRE by PRIER or CHARGER; as,

He asked me to do it. *Il me DIT, or il me PRIA de le faire.*  
 He desired me to tell you so. *Il m'a PRIÉ, or CHARGÉ de vous le dire.*

253

To LOOK; REGARDER, PARAÎTRE, AVOIR LA MINE.

To LOOK, meaning to *view*, to *consider*, is expressed by REGARDER; Look at this man, at that horse. REGARDEZ *cet homme, ce cheval.*

To LOOK, meaning to *seem*, to *appear*, is PARAÎTRE, AVOIR L'AIR, AVOIR LA MINE, AVOIR APPARENCE; as,

That man looks very proud. *Cet homme a l'AIR bien fier.*  
 You look very well to-day. *Vous AVEZ bonne MINE aujourd'hui.*  
 This bread looks well. *Ce pain PARAÎT bon, or a bonne MINE.\**  
 How does the country look? *Quelle APPARENCE a la campagne?*

254

To SUPPOSE; SUPPOSER, PENSER, S'IMAGINER.

The French say as well as the English, SUPPOSER *une chose*, to *suppose a thing*, i. e. to *take it as granted* for the sake of argument; as, You suppose (i. e. you take for granted) a thing which is not probable. Vous SUPPOSEZ *une chose qui n'est pas probable.*

But the verb SUPPOSE, so often used in english in the sense of to *think*, to *fancy*, to *imagine*, can not be expressed by the verb *supposer* in french; it must be expressed by PENSER or S'IMAGINER; as,

I suppose you know the news, i. e. I think, I imagine, &c.

Je m'IMAGINE que vous savez les nouvelles; not, Je suppose, &c.

It is supposed that there has been a battle; i. e. it is thought, &c.

On PENSE, on s'IMAGINE qu'il y a eu bataille; never, On suppose.

255

To HOPE; ESPÉRER.

To HOPE; Se FLATTER, AIMER à CROIRE, Se PLAIRE à CROIRE.

The verb HOPE followed by a *future* tense, is expressed by ESPÉRER; I hope you will be well by and by, to-morrow, &c.

J'ESPÈRE que vous vous porterez bien tantôt, demain, &c.

N.B. HOPE, being the *expectation* of something to *come*, can never be said in french of what is *past* or *present*; so when the verb HOPE is followed by the *present* or *perfect* tense of another verb, it can not be expressed by *Esperer*; it must be expressed by Se FLATTER, AIMER à CROIRE, Se PLAIRE à CROIRE; as,

I hope you are well. Je me FLATTE, or J'AIME à CROIRE, or

Je me PLAIS à CROIRE que vous vous portez bien; never, J'ESPÈRE.

I hope that I have not kept you waiting.

Je me FLATTE† que je ne vous ai pas fait attendre; never, J'ESPÈRE.

Yet, in these instances, we may also use the verb ESPÉRER, if we trans- pose it in *parenthesis* at the end of the sentence; thus,

Vous vous portez bien, J'ESPÈRE. You are well, I hope.

Je ne vous ai pas fait attendre, J'ESPÈRE. I have not kept you, I hope.

\* MINE is said of the *look of persons*, and of *things* that are *eatable*, such as *bread, meat, fruit, &c.* but it cannot be said of other things.

† Je me FLATTE, in this sense, does not mean I flatter myself; it means, I like to think to persuade myself.



To TAKE; MENER, PORTER.  
To BRING; AMENER, APPORTER.

MENER, to TAKE, is said of beings that have the *natural faculty* of **256**  
*walking*; PORTER is said of the same beings when they have *lost*, or are  
*not able* to use that faculty; and of *things*; as,

Take my horse to the stable. MENEZ mon cheval à l'écurie.  
Take the saddle to the saddler. PORTEZ la selle au sellier.

AMENER and APPORTER are used in the same sense as *mener* and  
*porter*, but they imply a relation to the *place* in which we are; as,  
Bring me my horse. AMENEZ-moi mon cheval.  
Bring me my whip. APPORTEZ-moi mon fouet.

To USE; { Se SERVIR de, USER de, En USER,  
TRAITER, AGIR, AVOIR COUTUME.

To USE, meaning to *make use* of *things*, is expressed by the reflective **257**  
verb *se SERVIR de*; as,

I am *using* my knife, my pen, my book, my horse, &c.  
*Je me SERS de mon couteau, de ma plume, de mon livre, de mon cheval*;  
not *J'USE mon couteau, ma plume, &c.* because *USER une chose*, means, to *wear*  
a thing, not to *make use* of a thing.

Yet speaking of moral or intellectual objects, we express *USE* by *USER de*;  
To *use* patience, violence, reprisals, precaution.  
*USER de patience, de violence, de représailles, de précaution.*

To USE, speaking of the *manner* of *Acting* towards *persons*, is expressed  
by *TRAITER, EN USER avec, AGIR avec*; as,  
He *uses* me well.

*Il me TRAITE bien; Il en USE bien avec moi; Il AGIT bien avec moi.*  
He has not *used* me well. *Il ne m'a pas bien TRAITÉ.*

To USE, meaning to be *accustomed to*, is expressed by *AVOIR COUTUME*,  
or *ÊTRE ACCOUTUMÉ*; as,

You are *used* to it. *Vous y êtes ACCOUTUMÉ.*  
He was not *used* to do so. *Il n'avait pas COUTUME d'agir ainsi.*

To HELP; AIDER, SERVIR.

To HELP, viz. to *assist* a person to do a thing, is expressed by *AIDER*; **258**  
Shall I *help* you to do it? *Vous AIDERAI-je à le faire?*  
My brother will not *help* me. *Mon frère ne veut pas m'AIDER.*

But to *HELP* is often used in the sense of to *take*, to *offer*, to *present*  
a thing to a person; *HELP* is then expressed by *SERVIR*, not the *person*  
to the *thing*, but the *thing* to the *person*; as,

Shall I *help* you to a glass of wine? *Vous SERVIRAI-je un verre de vin?*  
i.e. shall I *help* a glass of wine to you?

*Help* that gentleman to a glass; *SERVEZ un verre à ce monsieur*;  
not, *SERVEZ ce monsieur à un verre*; for it is the glass that you *help* or *pre-*  
*sent* to the gentleman, not the *gentleman* to the glass.

To ATTEND, explained in the following examples;

To *attend* a meeting. *ALLER or ASSISTER à une assemblée.* **259**  
To *attend* to one's duty. *FAIRE or REMPLIR son devoir.*  
To *attend* to what is said. *FAIRE attention à ce qu'on dit.*  
To *attend* to business. *S'APPLIQUER aux affaires.*

To *attend* a sick



To *attend* a sick person. GARDER or SOIGNER un malade.  
 To *attend* a patient, viz. to *visit*. VOIR or VISITER un malade.  
 To *attend* a master, to *wait* upon. SERVIR un maître.  
 To *attend* a master, to be *taught*. PRENDRE leçon d'un maître.  
 To *attend* a pupil, to *give lessons*. DONNER leçon à un écolier.

To WANT; { AVOIR BESOIN, AVOIR ENVIE, DÉSIRER,  
 { SOUHAITER, VOULOIR, DEMANDER.

260 To WANT, meaning to be in *need* of a thing, or under the *necessity* of doing a thing, is expressed by AVOIR BESOIN; as,  
 I *want* money, clothes; *am in need*. J'ai BESOIN d'argent, d'habits.  
 I do not *want* him; *have no need*. Je n'ai pas BESOIN de lui.  
 I *want* to go to town; *i. e. must go*. J'ai BESOIN d'aller à la ville.

But WANT is often used to denote merely *wish* or *desire*; it is then expressed by AVOIR ENVIE, DÉSIRER, SOUHAITER, VOULOIR; as,  
 I *want* to see him; *i. e. I wish*. Je DÉSIRE or SOUHAITE de le voir.  
 I *want* to speak to him; (*wish*) J'ai ENVIE de lui parler.  
 I *want* him to learn french. Je VEUX qu'il apprenne le français.

To WANT a person or a thing, in the sense of *wish*, is DEMANDER;  
 Whom or what do you *want*? Qui or que DEMANDEZ-vous?  
 You are *wanted*; He *wants* you. On vous DEMANDE; Il vous DEMANDE.

To MARRY; MARIER, Se MARIER, ÉPOUSER.

261 If, by MARRY, you mean to *give* a person in marriage, or to *perform* what is called the *ceremony*, you must make use of the verb MARIER. If, by MARRY, you mean to *take* a person in marriage, you use ÉPOUSER;  
 My father has *married* his niece.  
 Mon père a MARIÉ sa nièce; *i. e. has given her in marriage*.  
 Mon père a ÉPOUSÉ sa nièce; *i. e. has taken her for his wife*.  
 That parson has *married* my sister.  
 Ce prêtre a MARIÉ ma sœur; *i. e. has performed the ceremony*.  
 Ce prêtre a ÉPOUSÉ ma sœur; *i. e. has taken her for his wife*.

N. B. MARRIED, in the sense of *taking a wife*, is expressed by ÉPOUSÉ after the auxiliary HAVE, and by MARIÉ after the auxiliary BE; as,  
 I *have married* his sister. J'ai ÉPOUSÉ sa sœur; not MARIÉ.  
 I *am married* to his sister. Je suis MARIÉ à sa sœur; not ÉPOUSÉ.

To MARRY, in a *neuter sense*, *i. e. without an object* added to it, is expressed by the reflective verb se MARIER; as,

When do you *marry*? Quand VOUS MARIEZ-vous?  
 I will never be *married*. Je ne ME MARIERAI jamais.

To RIDE, explained in the following examples;

262 To *ride* well. se TENIR bien à cheval.  
 To *ride* in a coach, on horseback. ALLER en carrosse, ALLER à cheval.  
 To *take a ride* in a coach. { FAIRE UN TOUR en carrosse; or,  
 { se PROMENER en carrosse.  
 To *take a ride* on horseback. { FAIRE UN TOUR à cheval; or  
 { se PROMENER à cheval.

N. B. To RIDE, attended by any particular *object*, *i. e. an object* determined by any of the signs called *Article*, is expressed by ALLER; as,  
 I will *ride* your horse, and you will *ride* in my coach.  
 J'IRAI sur votre cheval, et vous IREZ dans mon carrosse.

*To WALK; MARCHER, Se PROMENER.*

If, by *WALK*, you mean the action of going from place to place, either for *business* or *exercise*, you must use *MARCHER*; as, 263

*Walk* a little faster. *MARCHEZ un peu plus vite.*  
 I can not *walk* any more. *Je ne puis plus MARCHER.*  
 I have *walked* too much to-day. *J'ai trop MARCHÉ aujourd'hui.*

If, by *WALK*, you mean that exercise which is taken for *diversion*, you must use the reflective verb *se PROMENER*; as,

Let us *walk* a little. *PROMENONS-nous un peu. [d'hui.*  
 I have not *walked* to-day. *Je ne me suis pas PROMENÉ aujourd-*

N. B. *To TAKE A WALK* is expressed by *FAIRE un TOUR*, or by *FAIRE une PROMENADE*, *FAIRE un TOUR de PROMENADE*; as,\*

Let us go and *take a walk*. *Allons FAIRE un TOUR de PROMENADE.*  
 Go and *take a walk* in the garden. *Allez FAIRE un TOUR dans le jardin.\**

*To COME; ALLER, VENIR.*

The English often use the verb *COME*, with reference to the *person* to whom they speak; so speaking to a person in the street, they will say: 264

*I will COME and see you to-morrow*, meaning, at the *person's house*;

The French, on the contrary, speak with reference to the *place*, and not to the person; so this sentence:

*I will COME and see you to-morrow*, may be expressed two ways;

*Je VIENDRAI vous voir demain*, being then at the place in which you are *to come* to see the person.

*J'IRAI vous voir demain*, meaning the place where you are *to go* to see the person; for, *VENIR* means to *move* from a *place* in which we are not at the time we are speaking, to a *place* in which we are; *ALLER* means to move from a *place* in which we are, to a *place* in which we are not.

In asking a question, *COME* is expressed by *VENIR*; but in the answer, the verb must be determined by the *place*, not by the *person* you are to go to.

*To RETURN; RETOURNER, REVENIR.*

The English use the verb *RETURN* both for to *go back*, and to *come back*; but in french you must make a distinction. 265

If, by *RETURN*, you mean to *go back*, you must use *RETOURNER*; as, I come from *Paris*, and I will *return* to-morrow; *i. e.* will *go back*.

*Je viens de Paris, et j'y RETOURNERAI demain.*

If, by *RETURN*, you mean to *come back*, you must use *REVENIR*; as, I am going to *Paris*, and I will *return* next week; *i. e.* will *come back*.

*Je vais à Paris, et je REVIENDRAI la semaine prochaine.*

N. B. *To RETURN*, meaning to *give back*, to *restore*, to *repay*, is expressed by *RENDRE*; as,

*Return* me my money. *RENDEZ-moi mon argent.*

Have I not *returned* it to you? *Ne vous l'ai-je pas RENDU?*

*To CALL; PASSER CHEZ.*

*To CALL* a person, is *APPELER quelqu'un*; but *TO CALL AT* a person's, or *UPON* a person is *PASSER CHEZ quelqu'un*; as, 266

When will you *call upon* me? *Quand PASSEREZ-vous CHEZ moi?*

I will *call upon* you to-morrow. *Je PASSERAI demain CHEZ vous.*

Never say, *APPELEZ SUR moi*, *call upon* me; *J'APPELERAI SUR vous, &c.*

\* *Faire un tour* is generally understood of a *short walk*; and *Faire une promenade*, *Faire un tour de promenade* means to take a walk, without any limitation as to time, but rather long than short.

To BREAK; ROMPRE, CASSER.

267

ROMPRE is said of things which require some *effort* to break them, such as *wood and metals*; as,

You have *broken* my stick.

*Vous avez rompu mon bâton.*

CASSER is said of things that are *frail*, such as *glass and earthenware*.

He has *broken* the plates.

*Il a cassé les assiettes.*

The glass and bottle are *broken*. *Le verre et la bouteille sont cassés.*

N. B. In speaking of *bones*, we use indifferently ROMPRE or CASSER;

He has *broken* his leg.

*Il s'est cassé or rompu la jambe.*

Without specifying any particular object, we use CASSER; as,

They *break* every thing in this house. *On casse tout dans cette maison.*

And for *BREAK to pieces*, we say BRISER; as,

The ship was *broken to pieces*. *Le navire fut tout brisé.*

To LIKE; AIMER, TROUVER.

268

To LIKE, meaning to be *fond* of, to have a *liking* for a person or a thing, is expressed by AIMER; as,

I like wine, money, pleasure, France, the country, &c.

*J'aime le vin, l'argent, le plaisir, la France, la campagne, &c.*

But LIKE is often used, especially in asking questions, for to *think*, to *have an opinion*, and is then expressed by PENSER or TROUVER;

How do you like this country? { *i. e.* What *think* you, what is your *opinion* of this country?

*Que pensez-vous de ce pays? or comment trouvez-vous ce pays?*

Yet in the answer we use AIMER; as,

*Je l'aime beaucoup. Je l'aime assez bien. Je ne l'aime pas du tout.*

I like it much.

I like it well enough. I do not like it at all.

To KEEP; GARDER, TENIR, AVOIR.

269

To KEEP, meaning to *preserve*, to *watch*, to *guard*, to *look after*, is expressed by GARDER; as,

Keep it for my sake; *i. e.* *preserve*. *gardez-le pour l'amour de moi.*

This dog *keeps* the house; *watches*. *Ce chien garde la maison.*

This boy *keeps* the flocks; *looks after*. *Ce garçon garde les troupeaux.*

These instances excepted, to KEEP is generally expressed by TENIR

She *keeps* a house, a school.

*Elle tient maison, école.*

He *keeps* an inn, boarders.

*Il tient auberge, des pensionnaires.*

To *keep* in prison, in the house.

*Tenir en prison, dans la maison.*

To *keep* clean, to *keep* ready.

*Tenir propre, tenir prêt.*

To *keep* cows, horses, a coach. *AVOIR des vaches, des chevaux, un carrosse.* Familiarly we say; *rouler carrosse*; to *keep* a coach.

To GET; GAGNER; GOT not expressed in french.

270

The verb GET, meaning to *gain*, to *win*, to *earn*, to *acquire*, is expressed by GAGNER; as,

He *gets* or *earns* five shillings a day. *Il gagne cinq shélins par jour.*

He has *got* or *won* a deal of money. *Il a gagné beaucoup d'argent.*

But the participle *got*, so often added to the verb HAVE, to denote *possession*, is *not expressed* in french, and is perhaps *useless* in english; as,

He has *got* a deal of money.

*Il a beaucoup d'argent.*

Have you *got* any money about you? *Avez-vous de l'argent sur vous?*

You have *got* a new hat.

*Vous avez un chapeau neuf; not,*

*vous avez gagné*, which means, you have *won, gained, earned*, &c.



To SPEND; DÉPENSER, PASSER.

Speaking of *money*, *property*, to SPEND is expressed by DÉPENSER; 271  
 Speaking of *time*, SPEND is expressed by PASSER; as,  
 He spends all his money in gaming. *Il DÉPENSE tout son argent à jouer.*  
 He spends all his time in hunting. *Il PASSE tout son tems à la chasse.*

To CHARGE; PRENDRE, FAIRE PAYER, PRIX.

The verb CHARGE, so often used in speaking of the *price* of things, 272  
 can not be expressed in french by charger, which means to LOAD, or to  
 GIVE IN CHARGE; it must be expressed by PRENDRE, FAIRE PAYER, or  
 by PRIX, with some other verb; as,

How much do you charge a day for a horse? *i. e.* do you require?

*Combien PRENEZ-vous par jour pour un cheval?*

How much do you charge for a saddle? what is the price of a saddle?

*Combien PRENEZ-vous pour une selle? or quel est le PRIX d'une selle?*

You charge too much; *i. e.* the price is too high.

*C'est trop, c'est trop cher, vous PRENEZ trop, vous FAITES PAYER trop;*  
 never, *vous CHARGEZ trop; vous avez CHARGÉ trop.*

To GO to MEET; { ALLER au DEVANT de,  
 { ALLER à la RENCONTRE de; ex.

Let us go and meet your sister. ALLONS au DEVANT de votre sœur. 273

We were going to meet you. { Nous ALLIONS à votre RENCONTRE;  
 { Nous ALLIONS au DEVANT de vous.

To BRING NEAR,

To GO NEAR, To COME NEAR; } APPROCHER, S'APPROCHER de.

APPROCHER means to BRING an object NEAR, and s'APPROCHER de 274  
 means TO GO, or COME NEAR an object; for ex. I shall say:

APPROCHEZ la table. Bring the table near.

But if I said to a person come near or go near the table; I should not say,  
 APPROCHEZ la table; I must say, APPROCHEZ-vous DE la table; for it is the  
 person who is to approach the table, not the table to approach the person.

I brought my sister near me. J'APPROCHAI ma sœur de moi.

I went near my sister. Je m'APPROCHAI DE ma sœur.

To HEAR; ENTENDRE, ENTENDRE des NOUVELLES, &c.

To HEAR a person is ENTENDRE quelqu'un; as,

I hear your sister coming. J'ENTENDS venir votre sœur. 275

But TO HEAR FROM a person, is not ENTENDRE DE quelqu'un; HEAR  
 is then expressed by ENTENDRE des NOUVELLES, APPRENDRE des NOU-  
 VELLES, RECEVOIR des NOUVELLES; as,

Do you hear from your sister often?

ENTENDEZ-vous, or APPRENEZ-vous, or RECEVEZ-vous souvent des NOU-  
 VELLES de votre sœur? not, ENTENDEZ-vous souvent DE votre sœur?

I hear from her almost every day.

J'ENTENDS, or J'APPRENDS, or Je REÇOIS presque tous les jours de ses  
 NOUVELLES, or des NOUVELLES d'elle; not, J'ENTENDS d'elle &c.

IT IS WITH; IL EN EST DE.

IT IS WITH, denoting a similarity between two objects, is expressed 276  
 by IL EN EST DE; as,

It is with you as with me. IL EN EST DE vous comme de moi. [mille.

It is with a state as with a family. IL EN EST d'un état comme d'une fa-



- 277** *WHATEVER, IN VAIN, TO NO PURPOSE; AVOIR BEAU.*  
 AVOIR BEAU is an expression very prevalent in conversation, instead of  
 EN VAIN, INUTILEMENT; so, instead of saying;  
*C'est en vain que je lui dis d'étudier, il n'en fait rien;*  
 It is *in vain* that I tell him to study, he does not do it; we say;  
*J'ai beau lui dire d'étudier, il n'en fait rien.*
- 278** *To FIND FAULT WITH; TROUVER à REDIRE à; ex.*  
 He *finds fault with* every thing. *Il trouve à redire à tout.*  
 What *fault* can be *found with* it? *Que peut-on y trouver à redire?*
- 279** *To TAKE IT KINDLY; SAVOIR BON GRÉ.*  
*To TAKE IT UNKINDLY; SAVOIR MAUVAIS GRÉ; ex.*  
 If he comes, I will *take it kindly.* *S'il vient, je lui en saurai bon gré.*  
 He would *take it unkindly* of me. *Il m'en saurait mauvais gré.*  
*Take it kindly or unkindly. SACHEZ-m'en bon gré ou mauvais gré.*
- 280** *To DO WITHOUT, To BE EASY WITHOUT; Se PASSER de; ex.*  
 Can you *do without* a horse? *Pouvez-vous vous passer de cheval?*  
 I can not *do without* one. } *Je ne puis pas m'en passer.*  
 I am not *easy without* it.
- 281** *WHAT IS THE MATTER, QU'Y A-T-IL, QU'EST-CE QU'IL Y A,*  
*WHAT IS IT ABOUT, QU'EST-CE QUE,*  
*WHAT IS IT? QU'EST-CE QUE C'EST? ex.*  
*What is the matter there? QU'Y A-t-il là; QU'EST-ce qu'il y a là?*  
*What is the matter with you? QU'EST-ce que vous avez?*  
*What is the matter with your hand? QU'EST-ce que vous avez à la main?*  
 N.B. QU'EST-CE QUE is very prevalent in conversation, instead of  
 QUE; so instead of saying:  
 QUE *dites-vous?* *What do you say?*  
 QUE *faites-vous?* *What are you doing? we say:*  
 QU'EST-CE que *vous dites?* *QU'EST-CE que vous faites?*
- 282** *IS IT, IS IT NOT, EST-CE QUE,*  
*DOES IT, DOES IT NOT, N'EST-CE PAS QUE,*  
*HAVE I, HAVE I NOT? N'EST-CE PAS?*  
 These expressions are often used to ask questions; but they serve less  
 to require information, than to shew a kind of *rear* or *surprize*, that the  
 thing about which we inquire should be different from what we thought  
 or wished it to be; the difference will be made obvious in the following  
 examples;  
*Vous en allez-vous? Are you going?*  
*EST-CE QUE vous vous en allez? You are not going, are you?*  
*Ne sortirons-nous pas? Shall we not go out?*  
*N'EST-CE PAS QUE nous sortirons, } We shall go out, shall we not?*  
 or *Nous sortirons, n'EST-CE PAS?*
- It seems to me, however it may seem to other people, that these two  
 ways of asking a question, imply different ideas.\*

\* These are the words which, I have remarked, generally embarrass the learner; but he will find in the course of his studies, several other idiomatical expressions of less importance and too numerous to be explained in a grammar; they are found in the dictionaries, and will be learned by taking notice of them in reading.

## EXERCISES

ON THE

## RULES CONTAINED IN THE SYNTAX.\*

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

- 1 The article must be of the same gender and of the same number  
*article doit être même genre m. et nombre m.*

as the noun ; The horse, the cow, the sheep. The bread, the meat, the  
*que nom ; m. cheval, vache, brebis.† pain, m. viande, f.*  
 clothes. My garden, his house, his trees. Her finger, her ring, her  
*habit.‡ jardin, m. maison, f. arbre. doigt, m. bague, f.*  
 gloves. A dish, a plate. Some butter, some sauce, some pepper,  
*gant. plat, m. assiette, f. beurre, m. sauce, f. poivre, m.*  
 some mustard, some capers. This wine, that beer, those glasses.  
*moutarde, f. capre. vin, m. bière, f. verre.*

2. The article must be pronounced easily with the noun ; Do you<sup>133</sup>  
*doit se prononcer aisément avec —‡ ||*

go<sup>125</sup> to the assembly to-night ? I will go<sup>125</sup> to the opera. Shall you go<sup>125</sup> to  
*aller§ assemblée ce soir ? — aller || opéra. — 133 aller*

school this summer ? I shall go<sup>125</sup> towards the beginning of autumn.  
*école été m. ? — aller vers commencement m. automne.*

(Let us go) (as far as) that tree near the church. Do you hear<sup>125</sup>  
*— — allons jusqu'à arbre m. près de église. — 133 entendre§*

that bird ? Have<sup>125</sup> you heard the history of that man ? He has<sup>125</sup>  
*oiseau ? m. Avoir entendu 'histoire 'homme ? avoir*

sacrificed his honour to the interest of the state. My ingenuity and  
*sacriifié 'honneur intérêt état. ingénuité et*

my exactness have<sup>125</sup> (at last) won her affection and her esteem.  
*exactitude avoir enfin gagné affection estime.*

\* These exercises being intended for persons who have written the introductory exercises, and for persons of a riper understanding who are able to comprehend many rules at once, such rules only will be pointed out in each exercise, as the learner is supposed not to have seen, when he writes that exercise, that he may have an opportunity to exercise his recollection.

† See rules for the formation of the plural number of nouns, p. 183 and following.

‡ A dash under a word shews that the word is not expressed in french.

§ The figures at the top of the lines indicate the paragraph where the rule which that word requires is to be found.

§ The *Infinitive* only of the verb is given here ; the learner must himself find the right tense and person, agreeably to the conjugation to which the verb belongs ; therefore it is necessary that he should peruse the conjugations, before he writes these exercises

## ARTICLE and NOUN.

3. The article must (be repeated) before every noun ; Bring me  
*article doit se répéter avant chaque nom ; Apportez* <sup>56</sup>  
 some pens, <sup>9</sup>ink, and <sup>9</sup>paper. I have a letter to write to my uncle  
<sup>9</sup> *plume, <sup>2</sup>encre et papier. m. lettre f à écrire oncle*  
 and <sup>204</sup>aunt. This paper and ink are<sup>125</sup> not good. Lend me your wax  
*tante. <sup>1</sup> être <sup>190</sup> bon <sup>31</sup> Prêtez <sup>56</sup> cire m*  
 and seal. My father and mother have<sup>125</sup> invited your brother and sister  
*cachet. m. et avoir invité*  
 to dine with us. After dinner we shall walk<sup>125</sup> into the park and  
*à dîner avec <sup>59</sup> Après dîné nous nous promener dans parc m*  
<sup>204</sup>gardens. We shall drink<sup>125</sup> some tea or <sup>9</sup>coffee before we go.<sup>218</sup>  
*jardin. — prendre <sup>9</sup> thé m. ou café m. avant que y allons.*

4. The names of persons, <sup>204</sup>towns and <sup>204</sup>places do not take<sup>125</sup> any<sup>8</sup> article ;  
*nom personne, ville et lieux — <sup>190</sup> prendre N.B.*  
 Molière and Racine are<sup>125</sup> the two best<sup>29</sup> french<sup>32</sup> dramatic<sup>32</sup> authors.  
*et être deux meilleur français dramatique<sup>29</sup> auteur.*  
 Buonaparte and Blucher decided the fate of Paris in the plain of Waterloo.  
*décider<sup>125</sup> du sort de dans plaine f.*  
 Is Paris<sup>134</sup> as large as London ? The city of London is<sup>125</sup> much larger<sup>41</sup>  
*Paris est-il <sup>43</sup> grand <sup>43</sup> Londres ? ville f. être beaucoup grand<sup>29</sup>*  
 than that of Paris. Have<sup>125</sup> you never been at Paris ? No ; I have been  
*que celle Avoir <sup>133</sup> <sup>190</sup> été à ? Non ; <sup>125</sup>*  
 at Nantes, <sup>204</sup>Bordeaux, and <sup>204</sup>Marseilles, but I have not been at Paris.  
*à mais <sup>125</sup> <sup>190</sup>*  
 Next<sup>32</sup> summer I will go<sup>125</sup> to Paris, <sup>204</sup>Geneva, <sup>204</sup>Florence and <sup>204</sup>Rome.  
*Prochain <sup>7</sup>été aller à Genève,*

5. The names of countries require<sup>125</sup> the definite article, LE, LA, LES ; France  
*nom pays demander <sup>2</sup> défini<sup>32</sup> f.*  
 is<sup>125</sup> the most pleasant <sup>7</sup>country in<sup>49</sup> Europe. It<sup>62</sup> is as fertile as Italy, and  
*être plus agréable<sup>32</sup> pays m. de l' <sup>2</sup> Elle <sup>125</sup> <sup>43</sup> <sup>43</sup> <sup>2</sup>Italie*  
 the air of France is more healthful than that of Italy. France is rich  
<sup>2</sup> <sup>125</sup> <sup>41</sup> *sain que celui <sup>2</sup> <sup>125</sup> riche*  
 and very powerful. She has conquered Holland, Switzerland, Italy,  
*très puissant. <sup>29</sup> Elle <sup>125</sup> conquis Hollande f. Suisse, f. <sup>2</sup>*  
 Spain, Portugal, Saxony, Bavaria, Prussia, Austria, part of Poland,  
<sup>2</sup>*Espagne, m. Saxe f. Bavière f. Prusse f. <sup>2</sup>Autriche, une partie Pologne f.*  
 and <sup>204</sup>Russia, and compelled her enemies to make peace with her.  
<sup>\*</sup> *Russie, f. forcé <sup>1</sup> ennemi à faire <sup>7</sup>paix avec elle.*

6. After verbs expressing DWELLING, GOING, COMING, instead of  
*Après <sup>7</sup>verbe qui expriment DEMEURER, ALLER, VENIR,† au lieu de*  
 the article before the names of countries, we<sup>90</sup> use<sup>125</sup> the prepositions  
<sup>2</sup> *avant pays on N.B. employer prépositions*  
 EN and DE ; Have<sup>125</sup> you ever been to France ? I have lived in France  
*et Avoir jamais été ? demeuré*

\* The preposition *Of* must be expressed in french, together with the article, viz. *of the*.

† These verbs being used here as substantives, must be in the *infinitive* in french.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

several years. I went<sup>137</sup> to France as soon as the war was over.  
*plusieurs années. aller<sup>125</sup> aussi tôt que guerre f. fut finie.*

I went<sup>137</sup> afterwards to Germany and <sup>204</sup>Italy. I have lived near  
*aller<sup>125</sup> ensuite Allemagne et Italie. J' ai demeuré près d'*

(twelve months) in Italy. Were you ever in Switzerland? No; I  
*un an \* † jamais Suisse? <sup>191</sup>*

never was.<sup>70</sup> From France I went<sup>137</sup> to Holland and <sup>204</sup>Sweden. I am  
*<sup>190</sup> y ai été. N.B. aller Hollande Suède.*

going<sup>155</sup> to Spain and <sup>204</sup>Portugal; from thence I will go<sup>125</sup> to Greece,  
*aller<sup>125</sup> ; de là aller Grèce,*

<sup>204</sup>Egypt, <sup>204</sup>Bengal, <sup>204</sup>China, and <sup>204</sup>Japan. I have a brother in Ja-  
*Egypte, (d) m. (d) Chine, f. (d) Japon. m. à (d) Ja-*

maica, and another in Martinique. He is going to Mexico, and <sup>3</sup>Peru.  
*maïque, f. un autre à (d) f. - va <sup>155</sup> (d) Mélique, m. (d) Pérou. m.*

7. Common<sup>32</sup> names<sup>7</sup> used<sup>29</sup> in a general or in a particular<sup>32</sup> sense  
*commun <sup>29</sup> nom m. employé dans sens général particulier sens m.*

require<sup>125</sup> the article *le, la, les*; Man<sup>2</sup> is born for society, but love  
*demander <sup>2</sup> article 'Homme né pour société, f. mais <sup>2</sup>amour*

and ambition often<sup>184</sup> disturb the happiness of the social<sup>32</sup> state. Men  
*<sup>2</sup>ambition souvent trouble<sup>125</sup> bonheur m. social <sup>2</sup>état.*

thirst<sup>125</sup> after honours and riches; yet honours and riches seldom<sup>184</sup>  
*soupirer après honneur richesse; cependant rarement*

make<sup>125</sup> men happy. True happiness consists<sup>125</sup> in virtue; for what are  
*rendre heureux. Vrai † consister dans vertu f.; car que*

birth, honours, beauty and riches without virtue? Virtue (of which)  
*naissance, f. beauté f. ? dont*

men speak<sup>125</sup> (so much) is (nothing but) a sincere desire of doing good,  
*parler tant n'est qu' <sup>32</sup> désir m. faire<sup>154</sup> bien, m.*

and of shunning evil. My sister is learning<sup>125</sup> French and Italian  
*éviter<sup>154</sup> mal. m. <sup>155</sup> apprendre Français m. <sup>2</sup>Italien;*

and I am going to<sup>172</sup> learn English, geography and mathematics.  
*<sup>155</sup> aller<sup>125</sup> - Anglais, géographie f. mathématique.*

8. When the preposition *of* comes before a noun used in a general  
*Quand préposition f. of venir<sup>125</sup> avant employé <sup>32</sup>*

sense, but (of which) the quantity is<sup>125</sup> limited by another noun, this  
*sens, m. mais dont quantité f. être limité<sup>29</sup> par un autre , <sup>1</sup>*

preposition can<sup>125</sup> not (be expressed) by *du, de la, des*, which would  
*f. pouvoir <sup>190</sup> (kk) s'exprimer par qui*

render the expression particular, and mean *of THE*; it must (be expressed)  
*rendre<sup>125</sup> <sup>2</sup> particulier <sup>29</sup>, signifierait of THE; il faut (kk) l'exprimer*

by *de* only, without any regard to the gender or number of the  
*seulement, sans avoir égard genre m. ou nombre m.*

\* Twelve months, used to denote the period of a year, is never expressed by *douze mois* in french; it is expressed by *un an*. See note § page 262.

† *Were* being used here to express an *action*, must be expressed in the same manner as *have been*, thus, *have you ever been*, rule 136. † Put this adjective before the noun



## ARTICLE and NOUN.

noun; Have you got any money about you? I have not above<sup>9</sup> three  
<sup>270</sup> <sup>9</sup> *argent sur ?* <sup>190</sup> *plus N.B. trois*  
 or four shillings. I want to buy a basket of fruit. Have you much  
*ou quatre shelin.* *veux* <sup>172</sup> *acheter panier m. fruit.* (e)  
 fruit in your garden this year? (There is) a great<sup>33</sup> quantity of pears  
*dans jardin année f. ?* *Il y a* <sup>246</sup> *grand* <sup>29</sup> *quantité f. poire*  
 and<sup>204</sup> apples, but (there is) no<sup>8</sup> stone<sup>26</sup> fruit. Buy me a bottle of ink,  
*pomme,* *il n'y a pas* <sup>N.B.</sup> *fruit à noyau.* *Achetez* <sup>56</sup> *bouteille f. encre,*  
 a quire of paper, and a dozen of pens. (Were there) many people  
*cahier m. papier,* *douzaine f. plume.* *Y avait-il* (e) *monde m.*  
 at the play last night? (There were) a great number of gentlemen,  
<sup>†</sup> *comédie f. hier au soir ?* *Il y avait grand nombre m. messieurs,*  
 but there were very few<sup>8</sup> ladies. My brother has a pretty<sup>33</sup> collection  
*il y avait très peu* <sup>N.B.</sup> *dame.* <sup>1</sup> *joli* <sup>29</sup> *f.*  
 of shells, <sup>204</sup> plants, <sup>204</sup> birds, and <sup>204</sup> other curious<sup>32</sup> things. He has got  
*coquille, plante, oiseau, autres curieuse* <sup>29</sup> *chose.* <sup>270</sup>  
 a parcel of letters for you. He has had a (great deal) of trouble.  
*paquet m. lettre pour* *eu - beaucoup* (e) *peine. f.*

9. Common<sup>32</sup> names used<sup>29</sup> in a partitive sense require<sup>25</sup> the article  
<sup>29</sup> <sup>nom m.</sup> *employé* <sup>partitif</sup> <sup>32</sup> <sup>sens m.</sup> *demande*

*du, de la, des*; I should like<sup>125</sup> to have some fruit. (Is there) any  
<sup>—</sup> *aimer à avoir fruit. m.* *Y a-t-il* <sup>246</sup>  
 ripe fruit in the garden? Yes; (there are) strawberries, gooseberries,  
<sup>mûr</sup> <sup>32</sup> *dans jardin m. ?* *Oui ;* *il y a* <sup>246</sup> *fraise, groseille,*  
 cherries and apples. We will eat<sup>125</sup> some strawberries and cherries.  
*cerise pomme. — manger*  
 Have<sup>125</sup> you got any (pine apples) in your houses? No; but we have  
<sup>Avoir</sup> <sup>133</sup> <sup>270</sup> *ananas* *serre ? \** <sup>191</sup> *; mais*  
 grapes, figs, and melons in abundance. What shall we drink<sup>125</sup>?  
*raisin, figue, melon en abondance.* *Que* <sup>83</sup> <sup>—</sup> <sup>133</sup> *boire ?*  
 Will<sup>125</sup> you have beer or wine? We shall drink wine, if you have  
<sup>Vouloir</sup> <sup>133</sup> <sup>—</sup> <sup>174</sup> *bière f. ou vin ? m.* <sup>—</sup> <sup>125</sup> *, si*  
 any,<sup>54</sup> and if you have no<sup>8</sup> wine, we will drink cider or water.  
*en, (p)* *n'avez pas* <sup>N.B.</sup> *, —* <sup>125</sup> *cidre, m. ou eau.*

10. A noun used in a partitive sense, preceded by an adjective,  
<sup>employé dans partitif</sup> <sup>32</sup> <sup>, précédé d' adjectif, m.</sup>  
 requires *de* before the adjective, instead of *du, de la, des*, before the  
*demande* <sup>125</sup> *avant* <sup>2</sup> *, au lieu de*  
 noun; (Were there) any pretty<sup>33</sup> women at the ball? (There were)  
<sup>;</sup> *Y avait-il* <sup>246</sup> *joli* <sup>29</sup> *femme* <sup>†</sup> *bal m. ?* *Il n'y avait*  
 few but old<sup>33</sup> women. (There are) fine<sup>30</sup> country<sup>25</sup> houses in England.  
*guère que vieille* <sup>29</sup> *Il y a* <sup>246</sup> *belle* <sup>33</sup> *de campagne maison f. en*  
 Some have large<sup>33</sup> parks and beautiful<sup>33</sup> gardens. (Are there) any  
*Quelques unes* <sup>125</sup> *grand* <sup>29</sup> *parc* *très beaux* *jardin.* *Y a-t-il* <sup>19</sup>

\* *Serre* is the name the French have for all glazed places, where plants are either preserved or forced.  
<sup>†</sup> *At* is expressed by the same preposition as *to*.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

large<sup>33</sup> trees in your garden? No; (They are) only small<sup>33</sup> trees.  
*grand*<sup>29</sup> *arbrem.* *dans* *jardin*? <sup>191</sup>; *Il n'y a*<sup>246</sup> *que* *petit*<sup>29</sup>

Some of the trees have fine<sup>33</sup> fruit on this year. Have you got  
*Quelques uns* *arbres*<sup>125</sup> *beau* *fruit* m. - <sup>1</sup> *année.* f. <sup>133</sup> <sup>270</sup>

any nice<sup>33</sup> flowers? Yes; we have some beautiful<sup>33</sup> pinks.  
<sup>10</sup> *belle*<sup>29</sup> *fleur*? *Oui*; <sup>125</sup> *très beaux* *œillet.*

11. The numeral article A, AN, (is expressed) by *un, une*, the same  
*numeral*<sup>32</sup> *A, AN,* *s'exprime* *par* *de même*

as the number ONE; A glass, a bottle, a pound, a day, a year.  
*que* *nombre* m. ONE; *verre, m.* *bouteille, f.* *livre, f.* *jour, m.* *an, m.*

12. Before names of measure, <sup>204</sup>weight and <sup>204</sup>number used in a  
*Avant* <sup>7</sup>*nom* <sup>8</sup> *mesure,* *poids* *nombre* *pris*

collective sense, A, AN, (are expressed) by *le, la*; I must<sup>181</sup> buy  
*collectif*<sup>32</sup> *A, AN,* *s'expriment* *par*; *Il faut que j' achète*

a pound of plums. (How much) do they sell them a pound? They<sup>90</sup>  
<sup>11</sup> <sup>8</sup> *prune.* *Combien* - *on*<sup>135</sup> *vend* *les*<sup>54</sup> ? *On* N.B.

sell<sup>125</sup> them two pence a dozen. Beer<sup>7</sup> sells<sup>125</sup> at four pence a pint,  
*vendre* *les*<sup>54</sup> *deux sou* *douzaine, f.* *Bière f.* *se vendre* - *quatre sou* *pinte, f.*

wine<sup>7</sup> five shillings a bottle, <sup>7</sup>brandy six pence a glass, and <sup>7</sup>rum  
*vin* m. *cinq shelin*, <sup>2</sup>*eau-de-vie*, *rum* m.

five shillings a quart. I go<sup>125</sup> to <sup>7</sup>school once a day. I take<sup>125</sup> lessons  
*quarte. f.* *aller* <sup>2</sup>*école* *une fois* *prendre leçon*

three times a week. We have (holidays) only once a year.  
*fois* *semaine. f.* *n'avons* *vacances* *qu'*<sup>\*</sup> *une fois* <sup>2</sup>*année.*

13. The demonstrative article THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE, has  
*démonstratif*<sup>32</sup> *THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE,* has  
*CE, CET, CETTE, CES,*

the same properties in french as in english; it<sup>62</sup> serves to (point out)  
*mêmes propriété* *en français qu'* *anglais*; *il servir*<sup>125</sup> *à* *désigner*

the objects; This man, this woman, these children. That horse, that  
*objet*; <sup>2</sup>*homme,* *femme,* *enfant.* *cheval,*

house, those trees This field, that grass, these people, those flocks.  
*maison, f.* *arbre.* *champ, m.* *herbe, f.* *gens,* *troupeau*

N.B. If you wish<sup>125</sup> to shew a distinction between two objects,  
*Si* *vouloir* <sup>72</sup> *marquer* *distinction f.* *entre* *deux objet,*

(you must) add *ci* after the noun to denote the nearer<sup>32</sup> objet, and *là*  
*il faut (kk)* *ajouter* *après* <sup>170</sup> *désigner* *plus près* <sup>7</sup>*objet, m.*

to denote the remoter; This man is taller than that. <sup>88</sup> That woman  
<sup>170</sup> *plus éloigné*; *grand*<sup>41</sup> *celui-là.* N.B.

is handsomer than this.<sup>88</sup> These children play better than those.<sup>88</sup>  
*belle*<sup>41</sup> N.B. *jouer*<sup>125</sup> † N.B.

Those trees are larger than these.<sup>88</sup> This field is better than that.<sup>88</sup>  
<sup>125</sup> *gros*<sup>41</sup> N.B. † N.B.

\* The adverb *Only* may be expressed two ways, either by *Seulement* after the verb, or by *Ne* before the verb, and by *Que* after it; so, *Nous avons vacances SEULEMENT une fois*, or *Nous n'avons vacances qu'une fois &c.* † See note (b) page 72

## ARTICLE and NOUN.

14. The possessive<sup>32</sup> signs *mon, ma, mes; son, sa, ses, &c.* follow  
*possessif*<sup>29</sup> *signe m.* ; *suivre*<sup>125</sup>  
 the same rule as the definite article *le, la, les*; they agree<sup>125</sup> in gender  
*même règle f. que défini*<sup>32</sup> ; ils *s'accorder en genre*  
 and <sup>204</sup>number with the noun which follows<sup>125</sup> them; My book, my  
*nombre avec* <sup>74</sup> *suivre les*<sup>54</sup>; *livre, m.*  
 pen, my papers. His coach, his chaise, his horses; Her coach,  
*plume, f. papier. carrosse, m. chaise, f. chevaux;*  
 her chaise, her horses. Our friends, your children, their relations.  
*ami, enfant, parent.*

15. The possessive<sup>32</sup> signs *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their,*  
*possessif*<sup>29</sup> *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their,*  
 (are expressed) by the definite article *le, la, les*, before the name of the  
*s'expriment défini*<sup>32</sup> *avant nom. m.*  
 parts of the body, when we<sup>90</sup> speak of a natural action of the body;  
*partie corps, m. quand on N.B. parler*<sup>125</sup> *naturelle*<sup>32</sup> *f.* ;  
 Raise your arm. Move your leg. Advance your foot. She shuts<sup>125</sup>  
*Lever\** *bras, m. Remuer\** *jambe, f. Avancer\** *piéd, m. fermer*  
 her eyes, and opens her mouth; or when we<sup>90</sup> speak of an action done  
*yeux, ouvrir*<sup>125</sup> *bouche; f. on N.B.* <sup>125</sup> *qui se fait*  
 upon the body; but, in these instances, we<sup>90</sup> add<sup>125</sup> to the verb one  
*sur; mais, dans* <sup>1</sup> *cas, N.B. ajouter verbe m.*  
 of the pronouns *me, nous, te, vous, se, lui, leur*, (agreeably to) num-  
*pronom m.* *suivant* - <sup>7</sup>*nom-*  
 ber and person; I have<sup>237</sup> hurt my arm. You have<sup>237</sup> cut your hand.  
*bre m. 7personne; f. † blessé † coupé main. f.*  
 He has<sup>237</sup> broken his leg. She has<sup>237</sup> put her foot (out of joint.)  
*† rompu † — démis*  
 You have hurt my arm. He has cut my hand. You have put her foot  
*† blessé † coupé † —*  
 (out of joint.) The carriage ran<sup>136</sup> over his body, and broke<sup>36</sup> his leg.  
*démis voiture f. a passé par-dessus † a rompu †*

16. After the words to have a pain, to hurt, to be cold, to be  
*mot - avoir - mal, - se faire mal, - avoir froid, - avoir*  
 warm, the possessive<sup>32</sup> signs *my, thy, his, her, &c.* (are expressed)  
*chaud, possessif*<sup>29</sup> *my, thy, his, her, &c. s'expriment*  
 by *au, à la, aux*; I have a pain in my head. My mother has a pain  
<sup>24</sup> *mal* \* *tête, f.* <sup>24</sup> *mal*

\* Second person of the imperative.

† These sentences must be expressed as if the words were construed in this manner:  
 I to myself have<sup>237</sup> hurt the arm. You to yourself have<sup>237</sup> cut the hand. He to himself  
*- me suis blessé - vous êtes coupé - s'*  
 has<sup>237</sup> broken the leg. She to herself has<sup>237</sup> disjoined the foot. You to me have hurt  
*est rompu - s' est démis - m' avez blessé*  
 the arm. He to me has cut the hand. You to her have disjoined the foot. The  
*- m' a coupé - lui avez démis*  
 carriage to him has run<sup>136</sup> over the body, and to him has broken<sup>136</sup> the leg.  
*voiture f. - lui a passé par-dessus - lui a rompu*

## ARTICLE and NOUN

in her side. My father has got the gout in his feet. Have<sup>297</sup> you  
 côté. m. <sup>270</sup> goutte f. \* Ne vous êtes - vous

not hurt your leg? No; but I have<sup>297</sup> hurt my knee. In the  
 pas fait mal \* jambe f. <sup>191</sup>; me suis fait mal \* genou. m. Dans

last<sup>29</sup> battle, my brother was wounded in his arm, and I was wounded  
 dernier bataille, f. fut blessé \* , fus blessé

in the shoulder. My hands are<sup>239</sup> warm, but my feet are<sup>239</sup> very cold.  
 \* épaule. avoir chaud,† avoir grand froid.

17. The possessive<sup>32</sup> signs ITS and THEIR (are also<sup>184</sup> expressed) by  
 possessif<sup>20</sup> signe m. ITS THEIR - aussi s'expriment

Le, La, Les, and the pronoun EN (is added) to the verb, when the noun  
 pronom m. s'ajoute verbe, m. quand nom m.

before which<sup>76</sup> they come<sup>125</sup> is not in the same part of the sentence as  
 avant lequel ils <sup>62</sup> se trouver <sup>190</sup> même partie f. phrase f. que

the noun to which they refer;<sup>125</sup> That water is good,<sup>29</sup> I know<sup>125</sup> its  
 auquel<sup>76</sup> <sup>62</sup> se rapporter; eau f. bon, (g) connaître

qualities (turn, the qualities of it,) and I have experienced its effects, (i. e.  
 qualités, en, <sup>54</sup> j'ai éprouvé effet,

the effects of it.) To<sup>170</sup> paint the human heart (it is necessary) to  
 en<sup>55</sup>. Pour peindre humain<sup>32</sup> cœur m. il faut <sup>172</sup> -

know all its springs, (i. e. the springs of it.) London astonishes  
 connaître tous ressort, en, <sup>54</sup> Londres étonner<sup>125</sup>

strangers; They admire its extent, and its riches, i. e. (of it.)  
 étranger; admirer<sup>125</sup> étendue, richesses, f. en, <sup>54</sup>.

18. The possessive<sup>32</sup> signs MON, MA, MES, (are added) to names of  
 possessif<sup>29</sup> s'ajoutent <sup>7</sup>nom <sup>8</sup>

kindred and <sup>204</sup>friendship, when we<sup>90</sup> call<sup>125</sup> any body by those names;  
 parenté amitié, quand on N.B. appeler <sup>108</sup> de <sup>1</sup>;

Mother, you are<sup>92</sup> wanted. I am coming, child. Daughter, are you  
 , on vous demande. J' - y vais, <sup>155</sup> enfant. fille,

ready? Yes, father. Come, friends, (let us be) merry.  
 prêt <sup>29</sup>? Oui, Allons, ami, - - soyons gai. <sup>29</sup>

19. Do not put any<sup>8</sup> article in french before nouns used as  
 - <sup>190</sup> mettre † N.B. avant <sup>7</sup>nom employés en forme

a title; A treatise upon the immortality of the soul. An introduction  
 de titre; traité sur <sup>2</sup>immortalité <sup>2</sup>âme. introduction

to the french<sup>32</sup> language. The preface. The first<sup>29</sup> part. The end.  
 français<sup>39</sup> langue, f. préface. premier partie. f. fin.

20. Do not express the article A, AN, which comes after the word  
 - exprimer † A, AN, <sup>74</sup> venir<sup>125</sup> après mot m.

WHAT; What<sup>186</sup> a pretty dog! What a funny head he has! What  
 WHAT; Quel joli <sup>83</sup> chien! <sup>82</sup> drôle de tête f. ! <sup>82</sup>

\* Say; At the head; at the side; at the feet; at the leg; at the knee; at the arm; at the shoulder. N. B. at the is expressed in the same manner as to the.

† Turn, I have warmth at the hands, but I have great cold at the feet. † 2nd pers. imp.



ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

a large<sup>33</sup> house! What a cold<sup>32</sup> day! What a beautiful woman.  
*grand<sup>29</sup> maison! f. <sup>32</sup> froid jour! m. <sup>32</sup> belle <sup>33</sup> femme!*

21. Do not express the article A, AN, before the numbers HUNDRED  
 — <sup>190</sup> *exprimer\** A, AN, avant nombre HUNDRED

and THOUSAND, because the numbers have the property of articles;  
*et THOUSAND, parceque <sup>125</sup> propriété f. 7 ;*

Can<sup>25</sup> you lend me a thousand pounds? I can<sup>125</sup> lend you<sup>54</sup> a  
*Pouvoir (kk) prêter <sup>54</sup> mille livres sterling? pouvoir prêter vous en<sup>70</sup>*

hundred, but I can not<sup>190</sup> lend you<sup>54</sup> a thousand. We have an army  
*cent, pouvoir<sup>125</sup> vous en<sup>70</sup> mille. <sup>125</sup> armée f*

of a hundred thousand men. They have a hundred field<sup>25</sup> pieces.  
*homme. <sup>125</sup> pièces de campagne.*

22. Do not put any<sup>8</sup> article in french before a noun which serves  
<sup>190</sup> *mettre \* N.B. en nom m. 74 † servir<sup>125</sup>*

to qualify or <sup>204</sup>distinguish another noun; Neptune the god of the  
*à qualifier ou à distinguer un autre ; dieu*

sea. Telemachus an epic poem. Madrid the capital<sup>32</sup> city of Spain.  
*mer. Télémaque épic<sup>32</sup> poëme. capitale ville <sup>5</sup> Espagne.*

My brother is a citizen of Geneva, a small republic between France  
*citoyen Genève, république entre <sup>5</sup> f.*

and Switzerland. He is a counsel and a member of the great council.  
*<sup>5</sup> Suisse. f. avocat membre grand conseil. m.*

23. Do not put any<sup>8</sup> article before the noun which follows *être*,  
 — <sup>190</sup> *mettre \* N.B. nom m. 74 † suivre<sup>125</sup>*

*devenir, se faire, passer pour*, when such noun serves only  
*quand ce servir<sup>125</sup> seulement*

to qualify the nominative of these verbs; Are you a Frenchman?  
*à qualifier nominatif m. <sup>1</sup> verbe ; <sup>133</sup> Français ?*

No; I am a Spaniard. He passes<sup>125</sup> for a Portuguese. His father was  
*<sup>191</sup> ; <sup>125</sup> Espagnol. passer pour Portugais. était*

a physician. He was a jew, and he is turned a christian.  
*médecin. juif, s'est fait chrétien.*

24. Do not put any<sup>8</sup> article before the noun which follows the  
 — *mettre \* N.B. nom m. 74 † suivre<sup>125</sup>*

verbs *Avoir* and *faire*, when this noun forms<sup>125</sup> only one idea with  
*verbe m. <sup>1</sup> ne former qu' idée f.*

those verbs; I am<sup>239</sup> in the right. She is<sup>239</sup> in the wrong. I have a pain  
*<sup>1</sup> † ; avoir — raison. avoir — tort. avoir mal*

in my head. He made<sup>125</sup> me a sign. He has done me an injury.  
*<sup>15</sup> faire <sup>54</sup> signe. faire <sup>55</sup> tort.*

\* Second person of the imperative.

† See note (m) page 82.

‡ In these instances, the noun may generally be changed into a verb; as, *Avoir mal*, to have a pain, or to ache; *Faire offre*, to make an offer, or to offer; *Faire tort*, to do an injury, or to injure; *Faire signe*, to make a sign, or to beckon, &c.

## ARTICLE and NOUN.

25. When two nouns come<sup>125</sup> together to express one idea,  
*Quand deux nom venir ensemble* <sup>170</sup> *exprimer idée, f.*  
 place first the noun which is the subject of discourse, with *de*,  
*placer \* le premier* <sup>74 †</sup> *sujet* <sup>7</sup> *discours, m.*  
*du, de LA, des*, before the second noun, agreeably to the rules on  
*avant second* <sup>33</sup> *conformément règles sur*  
 the article; Which<sup>90</sup> do you admire<sup>125</sup> most, Cato's<sup>4</sup> perseverance, or  
*; Laquelle -* <sup>133</sup> *admirer le plus, Caton* <sup>7</sup> *persévérance, f.*  
 Cæsar's<sup>4</sup> intrepidity? Will you have any London<sup>4</sup> porter? No;  
*César* <sup>2</sup> *intrépidité?* *-* <sup>174</sup> <sup>9</sup> *Londres* *porter? m.* <sup>191</sup> ;  
 I will drink a glass of Lisbon wine. I have lost my gold watch.  
*boire* <sup>125</sup> *verre m. Lisbonne vin.* *perdu or montre. f.*  
 I had it<sup>54</sup> at the park gate. I am afraid<sup>125</sup> I have left it<sup>55</sup>  
*avais l' parc m. porte. f. - craindre (nn) de l* <sup>55</sup> *avoir laissée*  
 (in the) (coffee room.) Put this gentleman's horse into my brother's  
*au café. m. Mettre \* monsieur cheval dans*  
 stable. Have you seen my mother's silk gown, and my sister's new?  
*écurie. vu soie robe, f. nouveau*  
 bonnet? It<sup>65</sup> is a present from the brother of her children's guardian.  
*m.? C' présent m. de tuteur m.*  
 After her husband's death, all his father's friends forsook<sup>137</sup> her.  
*mari mort, f. tous* <sup>7</sup> *ami abandonner* <sup>125</sup> *l* <sup>54</sup>

26. If one of the two nouns denotes<sup>125</sup> the use of the other,  
*Si nom m. désigner* <sup>2</sup> *usage* <sup>2</sup> *autre,*  
 instead of changing the order of the words, as the English do,  
*au lieu changer* <sup>154</sup> *ordre mot, comme Anglais font,*  
 the French change the preposition, and instead of *de, du, de la, des*,  
*Français* <sup>125</sup> *préposition, f.*  
 before the second noun, they use<sup>125</sup> *à*; Bring me a wine glass,  
*avant second* <sup>33</sup> *, employer ; Apporter\* moi* <sup>56</sup> *vin || verre, m.*  
 and a tea spoon. Take the coffee cups into the dining room. He  
*thé cuiller. f. Porter\* café tasse dans dîner chambre. f.*  
 has broken the water pot. Where is my sister's work bag? It<sup>62</sup> is  
*cassé eau pot. m. Où ouvrage sac? m. Il*  
 in my mother's bed room. Have you ever seen a steam mill?  
*dans coucher chambre. f. jamais vu vapeur moulin m.?*  
 No; but I have seen several water mills and many<sup>8</sup> wind mills.  
<sup>191</sup> ; *mais plusieurs eau moulin N.B. vent moulin.*

N.B. After the words *roire, marché*, we<sup>90</sup> use<sup>125</sup> *AU, à LA, AUX*,  
*mot on N.B. employer*  
 before the second noun; Will<sup>125</sup> you come to the horse fair? I want  
*avant* <sup>33</sup> *nom ; Vouloir venir chevaux foire f.? J'ai besoin*  
 to go to the poultry market. Let us go through the hay market.  
*d' aller volaille f. marché. m. - - aller \$ par foire*

\* Second person imperative. † See note (m) page 82. ‡ Put this adjective before the noun.

¶ When I say to a person, bring me a wine glass, it is evident that it is the glass I want, not the wine so I ought to mention the glass first. § First person imperative.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

27. In speaking of the produce of a country, the English denote<sup>125</sup>  
*En parlant*                      *produit m.*                      *pays, m.*                      *Anglais désigner*  
 the name of the country by an adjective; the French denote it by a  
*nom m.*                      *par*                      *adjectif; m.*                      *Français*                      <sup>125</sup> *le*<sup>54</sup>  
 substantive, and place<sup>125</sup> it after the name of the produce; Have you  
*substantif, m.*                      *placer*                      *le*<sup>54</sup>                      ;                      <sup>133</sup>  
 got any french brandy? No; but I have good spanish wine. Do you  
<sup>270</sup> <sup>9</sup> *France eau-de-vie?*                      <sup>191</sup> ;                      <sup>10</sup> *bon Espagne vin. m.*                      -                      <sup>133</sup>  
 like<sup>125</sup> english beer? No; I do<sup>70</sup><sub>N.B.</sub> not; I prefer<sup>125</sup> dutch beer or  
*aimer Angleterre bière f.?*                      <sup>191</sup> ; *Je ne l'aime pas* ; *J'aime mieux Hollande*                      <sup>7</sup>  
 french cider.<sup>7</sup> Will<sup>125</sup> you have english <sup>9</sup>cheese, or swiss cheese?  
*France cidre. m. Vouloir*                      -                      <sup>174</sup> *Angleterre fromage, m.*                      *Suisse*                      <sup>9</sup>                      ?

28. Before the names of countries, *OF* (is expressed) by *de*, after  
*Avant*                      *nom m.*                      *pays*                      , *OF*                      *s'exprime*                      *par*                      ,  
 nouns denoting dignity or authority, by *du, de la, des*, after  
<sup>7</sup> *qui désignent*                      *dignité f.*                      *autorité*                      ,  
 other nouns; The king of Congo. The queen of Angola. The stadtholder  
*les autres*                      ;                      *roi*                                           *reine*                                           *stadhouder*  
 of Holland. The cortes of Spain. The petty states of Italy. The  
*Hollande.*                      *cortes plur.*                      *Espagne.*                      *petits état*                      *Italie.*  
 air of France is more healthful than that<sup>80</sup> of Italy. The soil of  
*air m.*                      *f.*                      *plus salubre*                      *celui*                      *sol m.*  
 Spain and Portugal would be<sup>125</sup> very fertile, if it was well cultivated.  
*m.*                      -                      *être très fertile, s'il était bien cultivé.*  
 The south of England is warmer than the north of France.  
*sud m.*                                           *chaud*<sup>41</sup>                                           *nord m.*

\* The gender of nouns will no longer be marked in these exercises with the initial letters *m. f.*; the learner must now find out the gender by the rules given page 181 and following, according to the termination of the noun. But observe that it is by the *sound* of the last syllable of the word, not by the spelling that we know the gender of the noun. Now suppose you want to find out the gender of these twelve nouns, *France, Pays, Nation, Besoin, Agrément, délice, Vie, Secours, Pêche, Abricot, Fruit, Gibier*, which you will find in the beginning of the following exercise. 1st. *France*; this noun ends in *e mute*; see page 183 a general rule for the mute termination, and you will find it to be *fem.* *Pays*; see either the termination *i* page 181, or *s* page 183, and you will find that these terminations are both *masc.* *Nation*; look for *ION*, page 182; you will find that nouns of this termination, a few excepted, are all *fem.* *Besoin*; look for the termination *ON*, page 182, and you will find it to be *masc.* *Agrément*; look for *ENT*, page 182, you will find that nouns of this termination are all, but one, *masc.* *Délice*; look for the termination *CE*, page 184; you will find *délice, masc.*, being an exception to the general rule, which is *fem.* *Vie*; see page 183, the general rule for common names ending in *e mute*, and you will find it to be *fem.* *Secours*; look for *OUR*, page 182, and you will find it to be a *masc.* termination. *Pêche*; look for *CHE*, page 185; you will not find that word in the exceptions, which are *masc.* then you conclude that it is included in the general rule, which is of the contrary gender. *Abricot*; look for *O* or *OT*, page 182; you will find that nouns of that termination are all *masc.* *Fruit*; look for *I*, page 181, a masculine termination. *Gibier*; look for *ER*, page 182; you will find it to be a *masc.* termination; and so on for any other noun the gender of which you want to know. But impress your mind with the general rule, and read often the exception, that by such frequent readings you may retain the most useful words contained in it; for you must not expect to retain them all at once. The advantage of these rules must appear obvious. By marking the gender at the end of the noun, or by referring to the dictionary for it, you learn only the gender of one word, whilst by referring to these rules, you learn the gender of a whole set of words.



## ARTICLE and NOUN.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.\*

I come from France and Italy. I have been at Paris, Bordeaux,  
*venir*<sup>125</sup> *Italie.* *à* <sup>204</sup>

Lyons, Geneva, Florence, Leghorn, Naples and Rome. How do you  
*Lyon, Genève, Livourne, Comment* - <sup>133</sup>

like<sup>218</sup> France and Italy? I like<sup>125</sup> them both<sup>122</sup> (very much<sup>183</sup>), but  
*trouver* ? *aimer les*<sup>54</sup> *l'une et l'autre beaucoup* <sup>N.B.</sup>,

I would<sup>125</sup> rather live in France than in Italy. France is certainly a  
*aimer mieux* (kk) *vivre qu'* *certainement*

most beautiful country. It<sup>92</sup> has within itself every thing that can<sup>125</sup>  
*très beau* <sup>230</sup> *Elle en elle-même tout ce qui pouvoir*

minister to the wants, comforts and delights of life. France produces<sup>125</sup>,  
*servir* (kk) *besoin, agrément délice vie.* *produire*

almost without the assistance of art, all<sup>29</sup> sorts of delicious fruit ;  
*presque sans secours art, tout sorte délicieux*<sup>32</sup> *fruit ;*

pears, apples, grapes, peaches, apricots, plums, cherries, figs, olives,  
*poire, pomme, raisin, pêche, abricot, prune, cerise, figue,* ,

a (great deal) more corn, wine and oil than the inhabitants can<sup>125</sup>  
*- beaucoup plus blé, vin 'huile que habitant* <sup>47</sup> *pouvoir*

consume; and the country abounds<sup>125</sup> with game, <sup>204</sup>poultry, and <sup>204</sup>cattle.  
*consommer ; pays abonder en gibier, volaille, bétail.*

The population of France, (considering<sup>17</sup> its extent) is immense. They<sup>90</sup>  
*si on en considère l'étendue* *On* <sup>N.B.</sup>

reckon in France twenty-five millions of souls. France is undoubtedly  
*compter*<sup>125</sup> *vingt cinq âme.* <sup>125</sup> *sans contredit*

the most powerful nation in<sup>49</sup> Europe. It<sup>62</sup> alone has withstood the  
*plus puissant*<sup>23</sup> *de l' Elle seule résisté* <sup>202</sup> *aux*

efforts of Russia, Prussia, Germany, England, Holland, Spain,  
*Russie, Prusse, Allemagne, Angleterre, Hollande, Espagne,*

and Sardinia, that wanted to<sup>172</sup> subdue it; but after twenty years of  
*Sardaigne,* <sup>74</sup> *voulaient - subjuguier la*<sup>54</sup> ; *vingt an*

uninterrupted<sup>32</sup> victories, that brave and warlike<sup>32</sup> nation was (at last)  
*continue*<sup>29</sup> *victoire,* <sup>13</sup> <sup>32</sup> *guerrier*<sup>29</sup> *fut enfin*

overcome by all<sup>29</sup> those powers combined,<sup>29</sup> and compelled to submit  
*accablé*<sup>138</sup> *par tout puissance combiné,* <sup>N.B.</sup> *forcé*<sup>29</sup> *de se soumettre*

to the greatest<sup>29</sup> humiliation to which men can<sup>50</sup> be condemned, that<sup>68</sup>  
*plus grand* <sup>70</sup> *puissent être condamnés*<sup>158</sup> , *celle*

of obeying<sup>202</sup> beings whom they despise<sup>125</sup>. Now that I have a little<sup>8</sup>  
<sup>154</sup> *obéir à être* <sup>74</sup> *mépriser.* *À présent que un peu* <sup>N.B.</sup>

time to myself, I am going to<sup>172</sup> travel. I (am fond) of<sup>169</sup> travelling.  
*tems à moi,* <sup>155</sup> *aller*<sup>125</sup> - *voyager.* *aimer*<sup>125</sup> *à voyager*<sup>154</sup>

\* The recapitulatory exercise at the end of each part of speech, is intended to try how far the learner understands the rules on which he has been practising on that part of speech. An infallible way to ascertain it, is to induce him to mark under every word on that part of speech the rule by which he makes use of such word; for instance, in the above exercise on the article and the noun, to make him mark under every noun, the rule by which, or at least to make him give a reason why he uses such and such an article, and so on with the other parts of speech; for unless he can do this, it is evident that he does not understand that part of speech, that he has no foundation to build upon, and he must read the rules over again, till he is able to do it.

† Do not put any article after *en*.



## ARTICLE and NOUN.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

In travelling one sees (so many) new\* things, and every new\*  
*En voyageant on<sup>90</sup> voir<sup>125</sup> tant nouvelle<sup>29</sup> chose, chaque nouvel*  
 object furnishes some new idea to the mind. In a few\* days I will  
*objet fournir<sup>125</sup> † nouvelle idée esprit. Dans – peu<sup>N.B.</sup> jour –*  
 go to France, and after spending some time with my friends at Paris,  
*aller , après avoir passé † avec ami à*  
 I will go to Switzerland, Italy, and Spain, where I will embark<sup>125</sup> for  
*– <sup>125</sup> Suisse, <sup>204</sup> , <sup>204</sup> , où – m'embarquer pour*  
 America. I long to see that country of liberty and independence,  
*Amérique. Il me tarde de voir <sup>13</sup> <sup>230</sup> liberté indépendance,*  
 where rational<sup>32</sup> beings may<sup>125</sup> communicate their ideas to their (fellow  
*où raisonnable<sup>32</sup> être pouvoir communiquer <sup>1</sup> idée*  
 beings) without fearing<sup>154</sup> the holy<sup>29</sup> political<sup>32</sup> or religious inquisition.  
*semblable sans craindre saint\* politique ou religieuse<sup>32</sup>*  
 After having<sup>154</sup> visited the principal<sup>29</sup> cities of the wise republic of the  
*avoir visité \* ville sage \* république*  
 immortal Washington, I will go to Mexico, Chili, and Peru. I want  
*immortel\* , – aller<sup>125</sup> Mexique, , Pérou. ai envie*  
 to see if the tree of liberty, lately<sup>134</sup> planted in the new\* world,  
*de voir si arbre , depuis peu planté , <sup>213</sup> nouveau monde,*  
 is<sup>136</sup> thriving better than it<sup>62</sup> has done in the old, and if it is  
*– réussir<sup>125</sup> mieux qu' il n<sup>47</sup> a faire <sup>213</sup> ancien, <sup>62</sup> <sup>155</sup>*  
 spreading its enlivening<sup>32</sup> branches over the fertile<sup>32</sup> plains of that  
*étendre<sup>125</sup> ses vivifiant<sup>29</sup> sur <sup>29</sup> plaine <sup>13</sup>*  
 immense and rich<sup>32</sup> continent. What a pleasure to see millions of  
*<sup>32</sup> riche Quel plaisir <sup>163</sup> voir <sup>9</sup>*  
 intelligent<sup>32</sup> beings uniting all their energies to<sup>170</sup> break the chains of  
*<sup>29</sup> être unir<sup>154</sup> <sup>29</sup> pour rompre chaîne*  
 superstition and despotism, those two satanic<sup>32</sup> enemies of reason, that  
*despotisme, deux satanique<sup>29</sup> ennemi raison, <sup>13</sup>*  
 divine spark of the supreme wisdom! If the father of light deigns<sup>125</sup>  
*<sup>32</sup> étincelle <sup>32</sup> sagesse ! lumière daigner*  
 to cast a look on the actions of men, it is surely in such a work  
*<sup>172</sup> jeter regard sur , c' sûrement <sup>213</sup> tel <sup>36</sup> ouvrage*  
 that he must delight to see his image employed. What is the reason  
*qu' doit se complaire à voir occupé. Quelle*  
 that trade is so languishing, and that money is so scarce now?  
*que commerce <sup>125</sup> si languissant, argent rare à présent ?*  
 (People in trade) think<sup>125</sup> that it is the war. Oh! war is a dreadful  
*Commerçants penser que <sup>65</sup> guerre. Oh ! <sup>125</sup> affreuse<sup>32</sup>*  
 thing. War is the scourge of mankind. How preferable<sup>29</sup> are  
*chose. fléau genre humain. Combien préférable<sup>185</sup> <sup>125</sup>*  
 peace and harmony amongst all men! If men were reasonable,  
*paix 'harmonie parmi tous ! Si étaient raisonnable,<sup>29</sup>*

\* Put this adjective before the noun. † When the substance is restrained to a little, a few, SOME is expressed by *quelque, quelques*, not by *du, de la, des*, which imply an unlimited number or quantity.

## ARTICLE and NOUN.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

they (would never go to) war. War begets<sup>125</sup> taxes, taxes beget  
*ne se feraient jamais engendrer taxe,* <sup>125</sup>

poverty, and plunge<sup>125</sup> people into misery. Thus whole<sup>32</sup> nations are  
*pauprété, plonger peuple <sup>213</sup> misère. Ainsi entier<sup>59</sup>*

made<sup>158</sup> miserable<sup>29</sup> to gratify the ambition of a few vain<sup>32</sup> beings  
*rendre <sup>170</sup> satisfaire petit nombre vain<sup>29</sup> être*

whom often chance alone raises to the supreme rank, and who have  
*<sup>74</sup> souvent hazard seul élever<sup>125</sup> <sup>32</sup> rang, <sup>74</sup> <sup>125</sup>*

the art of inciting men to slaughter men, by calling them<sup>66</sup> heroes,  
*<sup>2</sup> exciter <sup>154</sup> à égorger en appelant ceux \* héros,*

who<sup>66</sup> are merely the base executioners of their inhuman<sup>32</sup> orders.  
*N.B. ne sont que vil<sup>29</sup> exécuteur inhumain<sup>29</sup> ordre.*

Will you come and take a walk along the river side before dinner?  
*Vouloir <sup>133</sup> venir (nn) faire tour sur rivière bord <sup>206</sup> dîné?*

The sight of the water is pleasant at this time of the year. (Is there)  
*vue eau agréable tems année. Y a-t-il<sup>246</sup>*

any fish in this river? Not much; (there are) eels and carps, and  
*poisson ? Pas ; Il y a <sup>246</sup> anguille carpe,*

some trouts: But we are not far from the sea, and our fish-market  
*† truite: <sup>190</sup> loin de mer, poissonnerie*

is well supplied with sea <sup>25</sup>fish. We have salmon, turbot, soles,  
*bien pourvu<sup>158</sup> de de mer poisson, saumon, sole,*

mackerel, codfish, excellent<sup>25</sup> oysters, crabs, and lobsters. Let us go and  
*maquereau, morue, † <sup>31</sup> huitre, crabe homard. - - Aller (nn)*

see your market. What an abundance of (every thing) (there is in it!)  
*voir marché. Quelle<sup>82</sup> abondance <sup>107</sup> il y a <sup>246</sup> -!*

What a deal of hares, rabbits and partridges! I see people yonder<sup>183</sup>  
*<sup>82</sup> quantité lièvre, lapin perdrix! voir gens<sup>229</sup> là-bas N.B.*

who are selling<sup>125</sup> woodcocks, snipes and (wild pigeons.) (Here are)  
*<sup>75</sup> <sup>155</sup> vendre bécasse, bécassine ramier. <sup>247</sup>*

also pheasants and quails. Do you like quails? Yes; (very much.) We  
*aussi faisan caille. - <sup>133</sup> aimer ? ; beaucoup. Il*

must<sup>181</sup> walk towards home. It<sup>62</sup> is dinner time. Let us walk  
*faut que nous allions vers la maison. C' N.B. dîner heure. - - Entrer*

into the dining room. The dinner is on the table. What have we  
*<sup>213</sup> dîner salle. sur Qu' <sup>83</sup> <sup>125</sup> <sup>133</sup>*

for dinner? A round of beef with cabbage and carrots, and a loin  
*pour ? rouelle bœuf avec choux || carotte, longe*

of veal with peas and spinage. Bring me some mustard, salt, pepper,  
*veau, pois épinards. || Apporter <sup>56</sup> moutarde, sel, poivre,*

a coffee cup, and a table spoon. (How much) do they<sup>60</sup> sell<sup>125</sup> meat  
*café tasse, soupe cuiller. Combien - <sup>138</sup> N.B. vendre viande*

a pound in this town? Beef and mutton sell<sup>125</sup> eight pence a pound,  
*livre <sup>213</sup> ville ? mouton se vendre huit sou*

\* Turn by calling heroes *them who*, &c.

† Put this adjective *after* all these nouns.

† See note † p. 282.

|| This word is plural in french.

## ARTICLE and NOUN.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

and veal seven pence. 'That is very dear. Yet we often buy<sup>122</sup>  
 veau sept C' très cher. Cependant <sup>184</sup> et <sup>70</sup> acheter  
 a hundred pounds weight at a time. Corn sells<sup>125</sup> twelve shillings a  
 cent livre - à <sup>13</sup> fois. Blé se vendre douze shelin  
 bushel, and bread three pence a pound; but good<sup>33</sup> workmen get<sup>125</sup>  
 boisseau, pain trois livre; bon<sup>29</sup> ouvrier gagner  
 four shillings a day. Bring a bottle of wine, and some wine glasses.  
 quatre jour. Apporter\* bouteille vin, verre.  
 Will you have french wine or spanish wine? I will drink a glass  
 Vouloir - <sup>174</sup> France Espagne ? - boire  
 of Port wine, if you have any.<sup>54</sup> (There is) no wine in the bottle.  
 , si en. (p) Il n'y a <sup>246</sup> pas <sup>213</sup>  
 Is there no wine in the wine cellar? Go to the wine merchant,  
 N'y a-t-il pas cave ? Aller\* chez de vin marchand,  
 and tell him to send me<sup>54</sup> a dozen bottles of Port wine at sixty  
 dire\* lui de envoyer m' douzaine de à soixante  
 shillings a dozen. This wine costs me five shillings a bottle. You  
 shelin coûter <sup>54</sup> cinq  
 have a fine gold watch. It<sup>62</sup> has cost a hundred guineas. It<sup>65</sup> is a  
 belle or montre. Elle coûté guinée. C'  
 present from my cousin's guardian. Have you seen my brother's  
 présent cousin tuteur. vu  
 powder bag? It<sup>62</sup> is in my father's bed room. Let us walk up to  
 poudre sac ? Il <sup>213</sup> 'coucher chambre. - - Aller\* -  
 that hill. What<sup>82</sup> a fine prospect we have from here! What a deal  
 colline. Quelle belle perspective d' ici ! <sup>82</sup> quantité  
 of fine<sup>33</sup> flowers (there is) here! Let us gather some<sup>86</sup> to<sup>170</sup>  
 belle<sup>29</sup> fleur il y a ici ! - - Cueillir\* en<sup>70</sup> quelques-unes pour  
 make nosegays for your sister's children who (are so fond of) flowers.  
 faire bouquet pour <sup>74</sup> aiment tant -  
 (Here are) some violets. What a pretty rose bud! I see<sup>125</sup> yonder  
 Voici <sup>247</sup> violette.† <sup>82</sup> joli<sup>33</sup> rose bouton ! voir là-bas  
 some hawthorns, (honey suckles) and sweet<sup>32</sup> briars. (That is) my sister's  
 aubépine †, chèvre-feuille odorant églantier.† Voilà<sup>247</sup>  
 husband's country house. Your father's house is finer<sup>41</sup> than that.<sup>65</sup>  
 mari de campagne maison. belle N.B.  
 (There are) people who are looking<sup>125</sup> at the flower pots which are at  
 Voilà<sup>247</sup> gens<sup>229</sup> <sup>135</sup> regarder <sup>201</sup> fleur pot † <sup>74</sup> à  
 your mother's window. My brother's coachman fell<sup>137</sup> from his horse  
 fenêtre. cocher tomber de - cheval  
 yesterday<sup>183</sup>; He broke<sup>137</sup> his leg, and put<sup>137</sup> his arm out of joint.  
 hier ; N.B. se casser jambe, se démettre bras - - —||

\* Imperative.

† Use the singular in french.

‡ If you mean pots with flowers in, you must say, pots de fleurs; if you mean pots to put flowers in, you must say, pots à fleurs. || Out of joint is expressed in the verb démettre.



## ADJECTIVE

29. The ADJECTIVE must be of the same gender, and of the same number as the noun which it<sup>62</sup> qualifies; That young man is (in love.)  
 2adjectif doit être même genre ,  
 nombre que non 74 il qualifier; (bb) jeune homme amoureux  
 That young woman is (in love.) He is very young. She is very  
 (bb) femme \* très jeune.  
 young. He is married. She is married.<sup>29</sup> He is capricious. She is  
 \* marié. 158 \* N.B. capricieux.  
 capricious. All<sup>29</sup> men are capricious. All<sup>29</sup> women are capricious.  
 \* Tout 7 7 \*

30. When an adjective qualifies several nouns of the same gender,  
 Quand plusieurs genre,  
 the adjective must be of the same gender as those<sup>13</sup> nouns and plural;  
 doit que (bb) pluriel ;  
 Miss A. and Miss B. are (in love.) They are very happy. They  
 Mademoiselle amoureux.\* Elles très heureux.\*  
 will soon<sup>184</sup> be married. That<sup>89</sup> makes the mother and daughter very  
 - bientôt être \* (bb) rendre 3 très  
 proud.\* They are both<sup>122</sup> very capricious; but they are civil and  
 orgueilleux. Elles toutes deux \* ; civil \*  
 obliging. That<sup>13</sup> lady has a gown and a petticoat very well matched.  
 obligeant.\* (bb) dame robe jupe très bien assorti.\*  
 The tea and the sugar are good, but the cream and the water are bad.  
 thé sucre bon, crème eau mauvais.

31. If an adjective qualifies several nouns of different<sup>32</sup> genders, the  
 Si qualifier différent<sup>29</sup>  
 adjective must be of the masculine gender and (in the) plural number;  
 doit être masculin<sup>32</sup> au pluriel — ;  
 Mr. A. and Miss B. are (in love.) They are very happy. Are  
 Monsieur amoureux. Ils  
 they not married yet<sup>183</sup>? They are both<sup>122</sup> very capricious; but they  
 190 marié<sup>158</sup> encore ? tous deux ;  
 are civil and obliging. He makes<sup>123</sup> his son and daughter unhappy.  
 civil obligeant. rendre 3 malheureux.(h)  
 You have a coat and a waistcoat very well matched. The tea and  
 habit veste très assorti. thé  
 the water are good, but the cream and the sugar are very bad.  
 eau bon, crème sucre mauvais.

32. Adjectives are generally<sup>184</sup> placed in french after the noun;  
 7Adjectif - ordinairement se placent en après ;  
 All<sup>29</sup> the polite people in<sup>40</sup> Europe speak the french<sup>29</sup> language.  
 Tout poli<sup>29</sup> gens m. de l' parler français langue.  
 (I am told) that it is a very difficult language. Eat† a piece of new  
 on m'a dit<sup>92</sup> que c' difficile Manger morceau 8 frais

\* See note (g) p. 198, how the feminine gender of adjectives is formed. † Imperative.



## ADJECTIVE.

bread, and drink a glass of white wine. England is a delightful  
 pain, boire \* verre <sup>8</sup> blanc vin. Angleterre délicieux  
 country; but (there is) always a cold and damp air. (There are)  
<sup>230</sup>; il y a <sup>246</sup> froid humide <sup>246</sup>  
 charming<sup>29</sup> women, opulent <sup>9</sup> cities, fruitful <sup>9</sup> lands, and pleasant  
 charmant † <sup>9</sup>, opulent <sup>29</sup> ville, fertile <sup>29</sup> terre, agréable <sup>22</sup>  
 country <sup>25</sup> houses. I like<sup>126</sup> their simple<sup>29</sup> and cordial<sup>29</sup> manners.  
 de campagne <sup>9</sup> maison. aimer <sup>14</sup> simple cordial † manière.

33. The adjectives *beau, bel, belle, bon, grand, gros, jeune, joli,*  
*adjectif*  
*mauvais, meilleur, moindre, petit, tout, vieux, vieille,* and the  
 adjectives of number *premier, second, &c.* are generally<sup>184</sup> placed  
 - ordinairement se placent  
 before<sup>206</sup> the noun; (That is) a large house. It<sup>62</sup> is in a fine situation.  
 avant; Voilà <sup>247</sup> grand <sup>29</sup> Elle <sup>213</sup> belle situation.  
 It belongs to a young man. He has lately married an old woman.  
<sup>52</sup> appartenir jeune depuis peu épousé vieille  
 He<sup>65</sup> is a big man. She is a little woman. They have two pretty children.  
 C' <sup>gros</sup> <sup>65</sup> petit<sup>29</sup> deux joli<sup>29</sup>  
 34. If two adjectives requiring different<sup>32</sup> places qualify the same  
 Si deux (qui demandent) différent<sup>29</sup> <sup>9</sup> qualifier même  
 noun, they<sup>62</sup> (are placed) both<sup>122</sup> after the noun, joined together by  
 , ils se placent tous deux , joint<sup>29</sup> ensemble par  
 a conjunction; (that is) a large convenient house. It<sup>62</sup> is in a fine  
 conjonction; <sup>247</sup> grand<sup>29</sup> commode. Elle <sup>213</sup> belle  
 healthy situation. It belongs to a profligate young man. He has  
 saine <sup>62</sup> appartenir débauché <sup>33</sup> <sup>39</sup>  
 lately married an old rich woman. He<sup>65</sup> is a great man. He is a tall  
 depuis peu épousé riche C' (i) <sup>65</sup> (i)  
 man. They are <sup>10</sup>very honest<sup>29</sup> people. They are very civil<sup>29</sup> people.  
<sup>65</sup> sont très honnête (i) gens. <sup>65</sup> honnête (i) <sup>9</sup>

35. The adjectives of number (are placed) in french as in english,  
 nombre se placent en comme anglais,  
 before the noun; The first day of the week. The third month of the  
<sup>206</sup> † jour semaine. mois  
 year. The fourth year of the reign of the fifth monarch.  
 année. règne monarche.

36. To distinguish some personage from other persons of the same  
<sup>170</sup> distinguer || personnage d' autres personne même  
 name, the English use<sup>125</sup> the adjectives of number; the French use  
 nom, Anglais employer <sup>8</sup>; Français <sup>125</sup>

\* Imperative. † See note (g) page 198, how the feminine gender of adjectives is formed.

‡ See the adjectives of number, p. 178.

|| See note † page 282.

## ADJECTIVE.

the substantives, and leave out the article; Henry the fourth was a great  
 substantif, omettre<sup>125</sup> — Henri \* grand  
 man and a good king; he succeeded Henry the third brother to Charles  
 roi; succéder à \* de  
 the ninth, the greatest villain that<sup>74</sup> ever reigned<sup>136</sup> over a civilized  
 44 scélérat qui † ait<sup>50</sup> jamais régné sur civilisé<sup>32</sup>  
 people. Henry the eighth, after having<sup>154</sup> been the friend of Pope  
 228 Henri \* après avoir été ami 7Pape  
 Clement the seventh, became the greatest enemy of the papal<sup>32</sup> autho-  
 \* devenir 44 ennemi papal<sup>29</sup> auto-  
 rity, and delivered England (from the) shameful yoke of an Italian priest.  
 rité, délivrer 5 du honteux<sup>32</sup> joug Italien<sup>32</sup> prêtre.

37. The adjectives of measure and <sup>204</sup>dimension which (are placed)  
 8 mesure dimension 74 † se placent  
 after the number in english, (are placed) before the number in french,  
 nombre en se placent <sup>206</sup> ,  
 and are always followed by the preposition *de*; Our garden is two  
 toujours suivis de jardin  
 hundred paces long, and a hundred and fifty broad. It<sup>62</sup> is surrounded  
 \* pas long, 21 † large. Il entouré  
 by a wall twelve feet high, two feet thick, and a hundred yards long.  
 d' mur \* pieds haut, épais, 21 verge

N. B. These sentences are more commonly<sup>184</sup> expressed in french  
 (bb) phrase — plus communément s'expriment en  
 by the substantive of dimension in this manner; Our garden has two  
 par substantif 8 de (bb) manière;  
 hundred paces of length, and a hundred and fifty of breadth. It<sup>62</sup> is  
 pas longueur, 21 † largeur. Il  
 surrounded by a wall of twelve feet of height, and of two of thickness.  
 entouré d' pieds hauteur, épaisseur.

But observe that with the adjective (you<sup>181</sup> must) use the verb *Être*,  
 observez qu' avec il N.B. faut employer verbe ,  
 and with the substantive the verb *avoir*; thus, Our garden is long of  
 ; ainsi, long  
 two hundred paces, and broad of a hundred and fifty; or, our garden  
 pas , large 21 † ; ou,  
 has two hundred paces of length, and a hundred and fifty of breadth.  
 pas longueur, largeur.

38. The adjective is<sup>242</sup> not to be separated (from the) noun by *un*,  
 doit 190 — être séparé du par  
*une*, as it<sup>62</sup> is sometimes by *A*, *AN*, in english; this article must be  
 comme il l'<sup>70</sup> est quelque fois A, AN, en ; 2 doit se  
 placed in french before these words; Did<sup>136</sup> you ever see such a man?  
 placer français (bb) mot; Avez jamais vu tel ?

\* See numbers, page 176. † See note (m) page 82. ‡ See note \* page 177.

## ADJECTIVE.

I never saw<sup>136</sup> so tall<sup>29</sup> a woman. It is not so great a thing.  
 190 *ai vu si grand* *Ce 190 si grand<sup>29</sup> chose.*

39. Many<sup>8</sup> adjectives have the property of substantives in french,  
*Beaucoup<sup>N.B.</sup> propriété 7 en*,

and render<sup>125</sup> useless the words MAN, WOMAN, PEOPLE, which the  
*rendre inutiles mot MAN, WOMAN, PEOPLE. 74 \**

(corresponding<sup>32</sup>) adjectives require in english; An English man.  
*qui les représentent demander Anglais*

A French woman. He is a drunken man; a covetous man. She is  
*Française 65 ivrogne ; avare. 65*

an idle woman. They are ungrateful people. Learned men  
 *paresseux (g) 65 sont ingrat 9 Savant 7*

are esteemed.<sup>29</sup> Ignorant people are despised.<sup>29</sup> Take notice of  
*estimé. N.B. Ignorant 7 méprisé. N.B. Faites attention à*

these words in reading authors, and in the dictionaries.  
*(bb) en lisant 7auteur, 213 dictionnaire.*

40. By leaving out the article before<sup>206</sup> the names of distinction and  
*En omettant - avant nom 8 distinction*

of profession which follow the verbs *Être, Devenir, se Faire, Passer*  
*profession \* suivre verbe*

*pour*, these nouns have the property of adjectives; My brother is a  
*, (bb) nom propriété 7*

colonel, and my father is a general. He is the commander in chief.  
*colonel, général. Il commandant en chef.*

That man was a tailor. He lately<sup>184</sup> turned a school<sup>25</sup>master. He  
*2 140 tailleur. depuis peu s'est fait école maître.*

passes for a doctor. His son was a bookseller; now he is a surgeon.  
*passer pour médecin. 140 libraire ; chirurgien.*

The same words which serve to qualify nouns, serve also (by the)  
*mêmes 74 \* servir à qualifier nom 7 , servir aussi au*

means of certain particles to compare their qualities.  
*moyen 8 certaines (i) particule à en comparer les 17 qualité.*

41. The comparative of superiority which (is formed) in english by  
*comparatif 8 supériorité \* se forme † en en*

adding ER to the adjective, (is formed) in french by *plus* before the  
*ajoutant ER 2 , se forme en par 206*

adjective; Spain<sup>5</sup> is larger than France; but France is richer and  
*; 2Espagne grand 29 que 5 ; riche*

more powerful than Spain. This<sup>13</sup> field is better than that,<sup>88</sup> because  
*puissant 29 . N.B. champ † N.B., parce qu'*

it<sup>62</sup> is better cultivated. Your watch is finer than mine, because it<sup>62</sup> is  
*il † cultivé. montre belle 85 elle*

newer and dearer; but mine is better, and will last longer than yours.  
*neuve, cher 29 ; 85 † — durer long tems 85.*

• See note (m) p. 82. † See N. B. under note (ii) p. 235. ‡ See note (b) p. 72.

## ADJECTIVE.

42. The comparative of inferiority, formed in english by LESS, or  
*comparatif* <sup>8</sup> *infériorité*, *formé* *en* *par* LESS, *ou*  
 NOT so before the adjective, (is formed) in french by *moins* or *pas si*  
 NOT so <sup>206</sup> <sup>2</sup> , - *se forme* \* *par* *ou*  
 before the adjective; Spain<sup>5</sup> is not so rich, nor so powerful as France.  
<sup>2</sup> *adjectif*; *Espagne* <sup>190</sup> <sup>29</sup>, *ni* <sup>29</sup> <sup>5</sup>  
 That<sup>13</sup> field is less fruitful than this.<sup>63</sup> Your sister is not so handsome,  
<sup>N.B.</sup> *champ* *fertile* <sup>N.B.</sup> *aimable*,  
 nor so rich as your cousin, but she is not less amiable.  
*cousine*, *aimable*.

43. The comparative of equality, formed in english by AS before  
*égalité*, *en* *par* AS  
 the adjective and AS after it<sup>64</sup>, (is formed) in french by *Aussi* before the  
<sup>2</sup> *AS* - , - *se forme*<sup>125</sup> *par* <sup>2</sup>  
 adjective, and *que* after; Spain is not by much as populous as France.  
 , ; <sup>2</sup> <sup>190</sup> *de beaucoup* *peuplé* <sup>29</sup> <sup>5</sup>  
 That<sup>13</sup> field is as fruitful as this.<sup>63</sup> Your sister is as amiable as your  
<sup>N.B.</sup> *champ* *fertile* <sup>N.B.</sup> *aimable*  
 cousin. My watch is as good<sup>69</sup> as yours, but it is not so fine.  
*cousine*, *montre* *bon (g)* <sup>65</sup>, <sup>62</sup> *belle*.

44. The superlative, formed in english by adding MOST or ST to  
*superlatif*, *formé* *en* *ajoutant* MOST *ou* ST  
 the adjective (is formed) in french by adding the article *Le*, *La*, *Les*, *Du*,  
<sup>2</sup> *se forme*<sup>125</sup>\* *en* (*lh*)  
*de la*, *des*, &c. to the comparative<sup>32</sup> particles *plus*, *moins*; France is  
*comparative*<sup>29</sup> *particule* ; <sup>5</sup>  
 the most populous country in Europe. China is the largest empire  
*peuplé* <sup>3</sup> <sup>230</sup> <sup>49</sup> <sup>5</sup> † <sup>5</sup> *Chine* *grand*  
 in the world. (This is) my finest book. If it<sup>62</sup> is not the finest, it  
<sup>43</sup> *monde*, <sup>247</sup> (*l*) *beau* *S'* *il* , <sup>62</sup>  
 is the best. It is the dearest book that I have ever bought.  
*meilleur*, <sup>65</sup> *cher*<sup>32</sup> <sup>74</sup> <sup>50</sup> *jamais acheté*.

45. Do not express the article, and place the adjective or noun  
 - <sup>190</sup> *exprimer*† , *placer*  
 after the verb, in the following<sup>32</sup> comparative<sup>32</sup> sentences and others  
*verbe*, *suiuant*<sup>29</sup> <sup>29</sup> *phrase* *autres*  
 like; The more you study<sup>125</sup>, the more you learn. The more I see  
*semblables*; *étudier*, *apprendre*, *voir*  
 her, the less I like her. The more I know men, the less I esteem  
<sup>54</sup> , <sup>54</sup> *aimer* <sup>54</sup> *connaître* <sup>7</sup>, *estimer*  
 them. The more difficult a thing is, the more honourable it is.  
<sup>54</sup> *difficile* *chose* , *honorable* <sup>62</sup>  
 I think that the more<sup>9</sup> pains I take,<sup>125</sup> the less<sup>9</sup> progress I make.  
*penser* (*bb*) <sup>N.B.</sup> *plus* <sup>N.B.</sup> *peine* *prendre*, *moins* <sup>N.B.</sup> *progrès* *faire*.

\* See N. B. (ii) page 235.

† See note † p. 65.

‡ Second pers. plur. imperative.



## ADJECTIVE.

46. The comparative<sup>32</sup> particles *plus, moins, si, aussi, inust<sup>125</sup>*  
*comparative<sup>20</sup> particule , devoir*  
 (be repeated) before every<sup>104</sup> adjective; She is more studious<sup>29</sup> and  
 (*kk*) *se répéter*<sup>206</sup> *chaque* ; *studieux (g)*  
 dutiful than her sister. She is already as wise and clever as her  
*obéissant<sup>20</sup> déjà sage habile*  
 mother; but she is so proud and affected that nobody likes<sup>125</sup> her.  
 ; *fier<sup>29</sup> affecté<sup>29</sup> 97 aimer 54*

47. *Que* after the comparative<sup>32</sup> words *plus, moins, moindre, meil-*  
*comparatif<sup>20</sup> mots*  
*leur, mieux, pis, pire*, requires *ne* before the verb which follows it<sup>34</sup>;  
 , *demande*<sup>206</sup> *74 suivre le* ;  
 He has lost more than he has gained. He is richer than he was. He lives  
*perdre gagner. riche 140 vivre*  
 better than he did<sup>139</sup> before. He is less happy than people imagine.  
 (b) p. 72 *faire 206 N.B. heureux 90 N.B. s'imaginer.*

N. B. *Ne* (is left out) if the verb which follows *que* is in the infi-  
*s'omet (ii) N.B. 74 suivre à 2 infi-*  
 nitive, or if it is preceded by a conjunction; it is better to read than  
*nitif, ou 62 précédé d' conjonction ; il vaut mieux 172 lire*  
 be idle. He is more studious now than when he was at school.  
 (*ll*) *oisif. studieux à présent 140 à 2 école.*

48. *THAN, BY*, after *MORE, LESS*, used<sup>157</sup> to denote a quantity,  
*THAN, BY, après MORE, LESS, employés 169 désigner quantité,*  
 not a quality, (are expressed) by *de*, not by *que* or *par*; This does  
*not a qualité, - s'exprimer<sup>125</sup> , non ou 89 -*  
 not cost less than fifty guineas. It is too dear by half. I would not  
<sup>190</sup> *coûter guinée. C' trop moitié.*  
 sell it<sup>54</sup> for less than sixty. I have not had it<sup>56</sup> more than a year.  
 *vendre le à eu l' an.*

49. *IN*, after a superlative (is expressed) in the same manner as  
*IN, superlatif - s'exprimer<sup>125</sup> de même manière que*  
*OF*, agreeably to the rules on the article; (That is) the cleverest boy  
*OF, conformément règle sur 2 ; 247 habile garçon*  
 in the school. His father is the most learned man in the kingdom.  
*2 école. savant royaume.*

His mother is the most sensible<sup>32</sup> woman in the whole town.  
*spirituel<sup>29</sup> 38*

50. An adjective (in the) superlative, followed by one of the relative<sup>68</sup>  
*adjectif au , suivi de relatif<sup>29</sup>*  
 words *qui, que, dont*, requires the following verb (in the) subjunctive;  
*mot , demande suivant<sup>32</sup> au subjonctif ;*  
 Mr. A. is the best friend I have. He is the most honest man I  
*Mons. meilleur (s) 65 honnête (s)*  
 know. His sister is the handsomest woman I have ever seen.  
*connaître. belle (s) jamais vue*

## ADJECTIVE.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.\*

What<sup>82</sup> charming weather! How<sup>185</sup> beautiful the country<sup>230</sup> looks!  
*Quel charmant tems! Que belle campagne être!* <sup>125</sup>

How attractive nature is, when it is arrayed in its verdant charms!  
<sup>185</sup> *attrayant* 7, *quand* <sup>62</sup> *orné* de ses *verdoyant* charme!

How sweet solitude is to innocent minds! Let us go and take  
<sup>185</sup> *doux* (g) *cœur!* - - *aller* (nn) *faire*

a (short walk) in the neighbouring fields, (whilst we wait) till your  
*tour* <sup>263</sup> N.B. <sup>213</sup> *voisin* *champ,* *en attendant* *que*

sister is<sup>218</sup> ready. How<sup>185</sup> is<sup>241</sup> your aunt? She is still very ill.  
*soit prêt.* *Comment se porter* *tante?* *encore* *malade.*

I am sorry (for it.) She is a virtuous, prudent and generous wo-  
*fâché* *en*<sup>54</sup> <sup>65</sup> *vertueux,* (g) *généreux* (g)

man. Her daughter is very handsome, but she is too proud. She  
*filles* *belle,* <sup>51</sup> *trop orgueilleux* (g)

is as haughty as if she were the finest woman in England; yet  
*fier* <sup>140</sup> ; *cependant*

as she is richer and handsomer than her cousin, she will <sup>41</sup> sooner get  
*comme* *belle,* *cousine, f.* - *tôt*<sup>183</sup> *trouver*

a husband; but virtue is more precious than riches. (Something  
*mari;* *vertu* *précieux* (g) *richesse.* (*Il faut*

must be allowed) for her age; she is so young. She is older than I<sup>52</sup>  
*passer quelque chose)* à <sup>2</sup> *âge;* *jeune.* *âgé* *moi*

am. She is as old as my sister who is married. She is<sup>230</sup> not less  
<sup>†</sup> *âgé* <sup>74</sup> *marlé.* <sup>a</sup> N.B.

than twenty. I do not think that she is<sup>230</sup> more than eighteen. She  
*vingt ans.* - *penser* *en* <sup>70</sup> *ait* <sup>145</sup>

is taller by two inches, but she is not so handsome by much. She has  
*grand* *pouce,* *belle*

been spoiled in her infancy. Your sister is the most lovely girl I  
*gâté* <sup>2</sup> *enfance.* *aimable* (s)

know. She is so diligent and<sup>16</sup> attentive. You do not learn so well  
*connaître.* *attentif.* (g) - *apprendre*

as she does, because you are not so studious. My sister learns better  
<sup>†</sup> , *parceque* *studieux.* (g) (b) p. 72.

than I do, because she has a better memory than I have, but I take  
<sup>52</sup> <sup>†</sup> , *mémoire* <sup>52</sup> <sup>†</sup> ,

more pains<sup>8</sup> than she does. I found<sup>136</sup> my exercise easier than I thought.  
*peine*<sup>N. n.</sup> *faire.* <sup>†</sup> *ai trouvé* *thème* *aisé* *penser.*<sup>146</sup>

It is better than I expected. It is less difficult than you imagined.  
*attendre.*<sup>140</sup> <sup>62</sup> *moins difficile* *s'imaginer.*<sup>140</sup>

My son has made greater progress than I expected. (There are)  
<sup>10</sup> <sup>41</sup> *progrès* <sup>47</sup> *espérais*<sup>140</sup> <sup>216</sup>

authors who write better than they speak; there are others who speak  
<sup>auteur</sup> <sup>125</sup> <sup>†</sup> <sup>125</sup> <sup>125</sup>

\* See note \* p. 281. † This auxiliary verb is generally left out in french; if you express it, you must follow rule 47. ‡ See note (b) page 72.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

better than they write. The more I examine this affair, the more  
 125 45 (bb) affaire, f. 45  
 puzzling<sup>89</sup> I find it<sup>62</sup>. Give that<sup>89</sup> to your eldest<sup>232</sup> sister and this<sup>89</sup>  
 embarrassant 54 (bb) ainé 29 \* (bb)  
 to your younger brother. Your writing is bad, but this<sup>88</sup> is worse,  
 jeune 33 \* écriture f. (bb) pire †  
 and that<sup>88</sup> is the worst of all. This ditch is nine feet deep, and  
 (bb) † tout<sup>29</sup>. (bb) fossé † pied profond,  
 six feet broad. That tree is a hundred yards high, and ten feet  
 † large. (bb) 2 arbre 21 verge haut,  
 thick. London<sup>25</sup> bridge, now the finest bridge in England, is seven  
 épais. 7 pont, à présent beau †  
 hundred and sixty-six feet long, and fifty-six feet broad; the center  
 § pieds , large du milieu  
 25 arch is one hundred and fifty feet broad, and thirty-two feet high.  
 arche f. 21 § , hant.  
 Napoleon the first succeeded<sup>1202</sup> Louis the 16th; Louis the 18th succeeded  
 a 136 succédé à ; 136 à  
 Napoleon the 2nd, king of Rome, and second emperor of the French. I  
 , roi , 33 empereur  
 want a watch; but I should not like to give more than ten guineas (for it.)  
 260 montre ; - aimer à donner guinée en<sup>54</sup>  
 You can not get a good one for less than twenty. I will not give more  
 (kk) avoir en<sup>54</sup> à moins - en<sup>70</sup>  
 than twelve. The best quality a man can<sup>125</sup> have, is to be civil and  
 qualité(s) 50 pouvoir (kk), de civil  
 obliging to the most uncivil and disobliging people<sup>7</sup>. The more difficult  
 obligeant incivil désobligeant gens 239 difficile  
 a thing is, the more merit (there is) in doing<sup>169</sup> it<sup>54</sup>. The more we  
 chose , mérite 246 à faire 62  
 contemplate the beauties of nature, the less reason we have to (be  
 contempler beauté 7 , moins sujet de nous  
 proud.) The richer and the more elevated in dignity we are, the  
 enorgueillir. riche élevé en dignité ,  
 less<sup>8</sup> pride we ought to have, and the more we are obliged to be  
 moins 2. B. orgueil devoir 172 avoir, obligé, d'  
 just and reasonable; but most men (of these days) remember  
 juste raisonnable; la plupart des d'aujourd'hui ne se souvenir 130  
 that they are rich and powerful, only to<sup>170</sup> oppress the poor and  
 (bb) 2. B. puissant, que pour opprimer pauvre  
 the weak, and to be more unjust and unreasonable.  
 faible, 170 être injuste déraisonnable.

† See the numbers page 176. \* Eldest and younger cannot be expressed by the comparative nor superlative in french, they must be expressed by the positive, for, as there is only one eldest and one younger there can be no comparison. † See note \* page 202.

§ See note \* page 177.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

51. When I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY, are the nominative  
*Quand I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY,* nominatif  
 of a verb, they (are expressed) I by *je*, THOU by *tu*, HE, IT, *m.* by *il*,  
*verbe, ils s'expriment \* I par , THOU , HE, IT, m.*  
*SHE, IT, f.* by *elle*; WE by *nous*, YOU by *vous*, THEY by *ils*, masc.  
*SHE, IT, f. ; WE , YOU , THEY , masc.*  
 by *elles*, fem.; as, I learn<sup>125</sup> french. Doest thou speak <sup>154</sup> well?  
*, fem. ; comme, apprendre français, m. - 133 parler 62 bien?*  
 He has not learned long. It<sup>62</sup> is not difficult. She is too idle.  
<sup>100</sup> *long-tems. difficile. trop paresseux. (g)*  
 We have not time. You will never learn. They are too fond of play.  
<sup>7</sup> *tems. 190 125 - 183 aimer à jouer.*
52. I (is expressed) by *moi*, THOU by *toi*, HE by *lui*, THEY by  
*I - s'exprimer 125\* par , THOU , HE , THEY*  
*Eux, m. by Elles, f. if two of these pronouns are the nominative of*  
*, deux*  
 the same verb; as, You and I will learn french. He and I will  
*verbe ; , 127 - apprendre -*  
 learn together. You and they have learned before: Or, when they  
<sup>127</sup> *ensemble. 127 auparavant : Ou, ils*  
 are joined to another substantive; as, My brother and I have begun  
*joindre substantif ; , 127 commencer*  
 to learn it<sup>54</sup>. He and his sister learn very well. They and their  
<sup>à le 126 très</sup>  
 master always speak french together: Or, when there is no<sup>8</sup> verb in  
<sup>184 125 : On, il n'y a pas n.b.</sup>  
 the sentence to agree with these pronouns; as, Who learns best?  
*phrase pour s'accorder (bb) ; , le mieux?*  
 He or I? It<sup>62</sup> is I who learn best. It<sup>62</sup> is he who learns best.  
<sup>? n.b. 123 n.b. 123</sup>

53. When a personal<sup>92</sup> pronoun is the nominative of several verbs  
*personnel pronom plusieurs*  
 it is generally<sup>163</sup> repeated with each verb; I believe and will always  
<sup>62 - ordinairement se répéter 125 \* chaque ; croire - 184</sup>  
 believe that it is so. He always promises, but does not keep his  
*que cela ainsi. 184 promettre, - 190 tenir*  
 word. We have seen it<sup>55</sup>, and will see<sup>125</sup> it again.  
*parole. vu le , revoir 54 †*

54. When the pronouns ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM,  
*ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM,*  
 are governed by a verb, the pronouns *me, te, nous, vous, se, le, la,*  
*régir 158 verbe,*  
*LES, lui, leur, y, en,* which represent them, (are placed) in french  
<sup>74 représenter 54 , - se placer 125 \* en</sup>

\* See N.B. under note (ii), page 235,

† Again is expressed by *re* before *voir*,



## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

immediately before that verb; Your brother does not love me. He  
*immédiatement* <sup>206</sup> (bb) *verbe*; - *aimer*<sup>125</sup>

never comes to see us. Does he not speak to you, when he meets  
<sup>190</sup> *venir* <sup>172</sup> *voir*. - <sup>133</sup> *parler* (o), *rencontrer*

you? My mother will not allow me to speak to him. I will write  
 ? *vouloir* (kk) *permettre* de (o) - *écrire*

to her. I will scold her for using you so. Do not say (any thing).  
 (o) - *gronder* de *traiter* ainsi. - *dire*<sup>125</sup> <sup>99</sup>

to her (about it.) She would use me worse (for it.) She would beat  
 (o) *en* - *traiter* plus mal *en* <sup>59</sup> - *battre*

me. If I knew it, I would not suffer it. I must<sup>181</sup> reconcile them.  
*Si* *savais* le, - *souffrir* *Il faut que je reconcilie*

I will invite them to come to see me. I will speak to them to-day.  
 - *inviter* à *venir* <sup>172</sup> *voir* - (o) *aujourd'hui*,

55. If the pronouns *Me, Te, Nous, Vous, se, Le, La, Les, Lui, Leur, y*  
*pronom*

*en* are governed by a tense compounded of the auxiliary verbs *AVOIR*  
*régir*<sup>158</sup> *par* *tems* *composé* *auxiliaire*<sup>52</sup>

or *ÊTRE*, and of a past<sup>32</sup> participle, they must (be placed) before  
*ou*, *passé* *participe*, <sup>62</sup> *devoir* (kk) *se placer* <sup>208</sup>

the auxiliary verb, not between the auxiliary and the participle; Have  
<sup>32</sup>, *non* *entre*;

you seen my brother? I have seen him, but I have not spoken  
*voir* ? , <sup>190</sup> *parler*

to him. My mother has forbidden me to speak to him. Has he  
 (o) *défendre* de (o)

returned you the book which you had lent him? No, he has not  
*rendre* *livre* <sup>74</sup> *aviez* *prêter* \* ? <sup>191</sup> <sup>190</sup>

returned it<sup>62</sup> yet<sup>163</sup>. Has he read it<sup>62</sup>? I do not think<sup>221</sup> he has  
*rendre* le *encore*, *lire* † ? - *penser* <sup>145</sup>

opened it<sup>62</sup>. I am afraid<sup>221</sup> he <sup>195</sup> has lost it<sup>62</sup>. He has told me that  
*ouvrir* † - *craindre* <sup>146</sup> *perdre* † *dire* *que*

you have given it him. I have not given it him. It<sup>62</sup> is not mine.  
*donner* <sup>62</sup> \* <sup>62</sup> \* *Il* <sup>86</sup>

I have borrowed it<sup>62</sup> from a friend. He has asked me for<sup>201</sup> it again.  
*emprunter* † à *redemander* - † †

If the pronouns *ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM* are  
*ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM*

governed by the imperative of a verb, consider whether the sentence  
*régir*<sup>158</sup> *par* *impératif*, *considérer* si *phrase*

commands, or whether it<sup>62</sup> forbids.||

*commander*, *ou* si † *défendre*.

<sup>32</sup> See note (f) p. 79. † See note (h) p. 80. ‡ *Again* is expressed by *re* before *demande*.

|| The verb commands when the action spoken of is to be done; the verb forbids when the action spoken of is not to be done; so, *Wait*, is a command; *Do not wait*, is a forbidding or prohibition.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

56. If you command, place the pronouns after the verb, and express  
 , *placer*\* *après* *verbe*, *exprimer*.  
 ME by *moi*; THEE and THYSELF by *toi*; Wait for me. Get thyself ready.  
 , *THEE* *THYSELF* ; *Attendre*<sup>201</sup> *Appréter* -

57. If you forbid, place the pronouns before the verb, agreeably to  
*défendre,* \* *avant* , *suivant* -  
the general<sup>32</sup> rule, and express ME by *me* ; THEE and THYSELF by *te* ;  
*général* <sup>29</sup> *règle,* *ME* ; *THEE* *THYSELF* ;  
Help<sup>258</sup> me. Do not help me. Help<sup>258</sup> yourself; help him; help her;  
*Aider*\* - <sup>190</sup> *Servir*\* + ; *servir* ; ;  
help them. Do not help him; do not help her; do not help them.  
*servir* - *servir* ; - ; -  
Wait for me. Do not wait for me. Bring me a clean<sup>32</sup> plate.  
*Attendre*\* <sup>201</sup> - <sup>201</sup> *Apporter*\* *blanche assiette.*  
Do not give me such a dirty plate. Bring it<sup>62</sup> here. Do not bring  
- *si* <sup>33</sup> *sale*<sup>33</sup> \* *la* *ici.* -  
it here. Shew it him. Do not shew it him. Take it. Do not  
<sup>62</sup> *Montrer*\* <sup>62</sup> *lui.* ‡ <sup>62</sup> <sup>162</sup> *Prendre* <sup>62</sup> -  
take it. Hear me. Hear him. Do not hear him. Stop her. Do  
<sup>62</sup> *Ecouter*\* - *Arrêter* -  
not stop her. Let<sup>248</sup> her go. Do not let her go. Let them alone.  
*Laisser* *aller.* - <sup>248</sup> *tranquilles.*

58. If the verb which governs the personal pronouns is followed by  
*régir* *personnel*<sup>32</sup> *suivi* *d'*  
a preposition expressed in french, the pronouns (are placed) after the  
*exprimé*<sup>137</sup> *en* , *— se placer*<sup>125</sup>  
preposition, and ME (is expressed) by *moi*; THEE by *toi*; HIM by *lui*;  
, *ME — s'exprimer*<sup>125</sup> *par* ; *THEE* ; *HIM* .  
HER by *elle*; THEM by *eux*, masc., by *elles*, fem.; Come near me.  
*HER* ; *THEM* , , , *s'approcher* † *de*  
Have you thought of<sup>200</sup> me? I always think of you. I was coming  
*penser* *à* ? <sup>184</sup> *penser à* — *venir*<sup>155</sup>  
to you, when they obliged me to go to her. You are laughing<sup>155</sup>  
*à* , *obliger* *d'* *aller à* — *se moquer* †  
at<sup>200</sup> me. Do you know what she says of him? He does not care  
*de* — *savoir*<sup>125</sup> <sup>84</sup> *dire de* ? — *se soucier*  
for<sup>200</sup> her nor for what she says of him. They have enquired  
*d'* *ni de* <sup>84</sup> <sup>237</sup> † *s'informer*  
after you. Have you applied to them? I will not trust<sup>202</sup> them.  
*de*<sup>200</sup> <sup>237</sup> † *s'adresser à* ? *vouloir* *me fier à*  
What reason have you to mistrust<sup>202</sup> them? I do not speak of them.  
<sup>82</sup> *raison* *de vous méfier d'* ?

\* The second person singular of the imperative is seldom used in french, except through familiarity or contempt; the second person plural is used, though speaking to a single person; so instead of saying *Place*, we say *Placez*; instead of *Attends*, we say *Attendez*.

† See reflective verbs, pages 114, 115.

† See note (f) page 79.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

59. If several pronouns are governed by the same verb, they must  
*plusieurs* *régir*<sup>158</sup> *par* , *devoir*<sup>62</sup>  
 (be placed) together in the following order; The pronouns of the  
 (kk) *se placer* *ensemble*<sup>213</sup> *qui suit*<sup>32</sup> *ordre* ;  
 first<sup>129</sup> person *me*, *Nous* ; those of the second *te*, *vous*, and that of the  
<sup>33</sup> *personne* ; <sup>58</sup> *second*<sup>29</sup> , <sup>68</sup>  
 third *se*, (are placed<sup>125</sup>) before any of the other pronouns ; *Le*, *La*, *Les*,  
 - *se placer*<sup>\*</sup> <sup>206</sup> *touts* - *autres* ;  
 (are placed) before *Lui*, *Leur*, *Y*, *EN* ; *Lui*, *Leur* before *Y*, *EN* ; and *Y*  
 - *se placer*<sup>125</sup> <sup>\*</sup> ; <sup>206</sup> ;  
 before *EN* ; I have something to tell you. What<sup>93</sup> is it ? I can not tell  
<sup>†</sup> ; <sup>98</sup> *à dire* (*y*) ? *pouvoir* (kk)  
 it you now. I will tell it you (by and by.) Why will<sup>173</sup> not you  
*le* *à présent*. - *tantôt*. *Pourquoi vouloir*  
 tell it me now ? I have a letter for you. Your brother has sent it<sup>62</sup>  
<sup>?</sup> *lettre pour* *envoyée* <sup>†</sup>  
 me to bring it you. Where is it ? Give it me. Why will<sup>173</sup> not  
<sup>55</sup> <sup>170</sup> *apporter* <sup>†</sup> *Où* <sup>62</sup> <sup>?</sup> *Donner*<sup>62</sup> <sup>60</sup> *vouloir*<sup>125</sup>  
 you give it me ? If you do not give it me immediately, I will<sup>173</sup> not ask  
<sup>62</sup> <sup>?</sup> - <sup>63</sup> *aussitôt*, - *ne*  
 you for<sup>201</sup> it again, and I will tell him<sup>102</sup> of it. Here it is<sup>247</sup>. Shew  
 - || *plus*,<sup>190</sup> - *lui* || *le* *La voici* <sup>N.B.</sup> *Montrer*  
 it<sup>62</sup> me. I will return it to you presently. I have brought you some  
<sup>60</sup> - *rendre*<sup>62</sup> - *tout à l'heure*. *apporter*<sup>55</sup> <sup>9</sup>  
 fruit too. Give us some. What<sup>93</sup> ! you had promised it to us, and  
<sup>aussi</sup>. (*p*) *Quoi !* *aviez promettre*<sup>62</sup> - ,  
 you give it to them. I offered<sup>195</sup> it to you first and you would not  
<sup>62</sup> - *ai offert*<sup>62</sup> - <sup>55</sup> *premièrement* *avez*<sup>136</sup>  
 have it. I will send you some to-morrow. Do not forget to send  
*voulu*<sup>55</sup> - *envoyer* (*p*) *demain*. - *oublier de*  
 me some, for it is long<sup>245</sup> since I<sup>195</sup> have eat any. I will<sup>70</sup> not.  
 (*p*) , *car il y a long-tems que* *mangé* (*p*) <sup>N.B.</sup>

60. When a verb in the imperative governs several pronouns, if  
*Quand* *à* *impératif* *régir* *plusieurs* ,  
*Moi*, *toi* are (in the) number, these two pronouns (are placed) for  
*du* , <sup>13</sup> - *se placer*<sup>125</sup> <sup>\*</sup> *pour*  
 the sake of melody after the other pronouns ; Give it me. Bring  
 - - *mélodie* *autres* ; *Donner*<sup>125</sup> *Amener*  
 her to me. Send them to me there. Send some to me there.  
 - *Envoyer* - *y. (e) p. 74.* -

\* See N. B. under note (ii) p. 235. † See note \* p. 78. ‡ See note (h) p. 80.

|| We do not say in french, *Demander quelqu'un pour une chose*, to ask somebody for a thing ; the thing is always the object of the verb, and the person the object of a preposition ; we say, *Demander une chose à quelqu'un*, to ask a thing to somebody, the same as we say, *Donner une chose à quelqu'un*, to give a thing to somebody. Nor do we say, *Dire une personne d'une chose*, to tell a person of a thing, we say, *Dire une chose à une personne*, to tell a thing to a person.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

61. Except when either<sup>128</sup> of these pronouns meets the pronoun  
*Excepté l'un ou l'autre rencontrer*  
 EN, for, ME SOME, ME of IT, of THEM (are expressed) by *m'en* ;  
*, car, ME SOME, ME of IT, of THEM - s'exprimer<sup>125</sup> par*  
 THEE SOME, THEE of IT, of THEM are expressed<sup>125</sup> by *t'en*,  
*THEE SOME, THEE of IT, of THEM - (ii) N.B.*  
 whether they come before or after the verb; He gave me some.  
*soit que venir<sup>295</sup> ; donner (p)*  
 Give me some. He put<sup>137</sup> me (in mind) (of it.) Put me (in mind)  
*(p) faire souvenir en Faites souvenir*  
 of it. He brought thee some. Recall to thyself the difficulties of it.  
*<sup>53</sup> apporter (p) Rappeler - difficulté<sup>53</sup>*

62. As there are only two genders in french, the masculine and  
*Comme il n'y a que genre en , masculin*  
 the feminine, the neuter<sup>32</sup> pronouns IT, THEY, THEM (are expressed)  
*feminin, neutre<sup>29</sup> IT, THEY, THEM - (ii) N.B.<sup>125</sup>*  
 by *il, Elle, ils, Elles, Le, La, Les*, agreeably to the gender and  
*suivant -*  
 number of the noun to which they refer<sup>125</sup>, the same as when (speak-  
*<sup>3</sup> <sup>76</sup> se rapporter, de même que on parle*  
 ing) of 7persons; Look at that tree; it is well blossomed, yet  
*personne ; Regarder<sup>201</sup> <sup>2</sup> arbre ; fleuri, cependant*  
 it produces no fruit.<sup>3</sup> I will cut it down, if it does not bear  
*produire<sup>190</sup> N.B. abattre, (h) p. 80. \* , - porter*  
 fruit<sup>3</sup> this year. (These are) <sup>10</sup>very fine trees, but they are too  
*N.B. année.<sup>247</sup> très<sup>33</sup> , trop*  
 young to bear fruit yet<sup>183</sup>. They do not bear fruit<sup>3</sup>, when they are  
*jeune<sup>29</sup> pour<sup>9</sup> déjà N.B. - N.B.,*  
 so young. (That is) a fine flower. It is a rose. Will you have<sup>174</sup>  
*si<sup>29</sup> <sup>247</sup> fleur.<sup>65</sup> Vouloir -*  
 it? How sweet it smells! I will take it to my mother.  
*(h) p. 80. <sup>183</sup> bon + sentir!<sup>173</sup> <sup>256</sup> (h) p. 80.*  
 She is so<sup>183</sup> fond of roses. Take some of these cherries; they are  
*- tant aimer - <sup>7</sup> Prendre<sup>93</sup> (bb) cerise ;*  
 very good. They are not quite ripe<sup>29</sup> yet<sup>183</sup> They will be better  
*très<sup>29</sup> tout à fait mûr encore N.B. (b) p. 72.*  
 in another week. It<sup>62</sup> is very pleasant to have a garden near one's  
*<sup>213</sup> une semaine. N.B. agréable d' jardin près de sa*  
 house. It<sup>62</sup> is the greatest<sup>33</sup> pleasure I have. Was it<sup>62</sup> you who  
*N.B. <sup>44</sup> plaisir (s) <sup>50</sup> Etait N.B.*  
 sent<sup>120</sup> us some fruit the other day? No, it<sup>62</sup> was my brother. I  
*envoyer<sup>137</sup> autre jour? Non, N.B. <sup>140</sup>*  
 thought<sup>221</sup> it<sup>62</sup> was you. Did you like<sup>137</sup> it<sup>54</sup>? Yes, it was very nice.  
*penser<sup>140</sup> N.B. - trouver bon ? <sup>140</sup> bon.*

\* To CUT is Couper ; To CUT DOWN is Abattre, not Couper en bas.

† Sweet is here used adverbially, so is Bon, and it does not require any agreement.



## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

63. Though *Lui*, *Leur*, (are used) for all<sup>29</sup> beings that<sup>74</sup> have life  
*Quoique* , , - *s'employer*<sup>125</sup> *pour* <sup>7</sup>*être* (m) p. 82. <sup>7</sup>*vie*  
 such as brutes and plants, as likewise for ideal<sup>32</sup> substances in which  
*tels que brute* <sup>7</sup> <sup>7</sup>*plante*, et aussi *idéa*<sup>32</sup> <sup>7</sup> <sup>7</sup>*substances* <sup>76</sup>  
 we suppose an active principle, such as <sup>7</sup>heaven, providence, fortune,  
*supposer* *actif*<sup>32</sup> *principe*, *telles que ciel*, <sup>7</sup> , <sup>7</sup> ,  
 some virtues and vices; as, Take the horses into the stable, and bring  
<sup>\*</sup> *vertu* <sup>3</sup> ; *comme*, <sup>256</sup> <sup>213</sup> *écurie*, <sup>256</sup>  
 them<sup>55</sup> some hay. This tree is dying<sup>155</sup>, give<sup>163</sup> it a little<sup>8</sup> water.  
 (f) p. <sup>79</sup> <sup>9</sup> *foin*. <sup>2</sup> *arbre* - *se mourir*, *donner* <sup>56</sup> *peu* N.B. *eau*.  
 Most men worship <sup>7</sup>love; they sacrifice every thing to it; They  
*La plupart des* *adorer*<sup>130</sup> *amour*; *sacrifier* <sup>107</sup> <sup>54</sup>; *Ils*  
 can not be used for lifeless<sup>32</sup> beings which are<sup>92</sup> commonly<sup>163</sup> called  
 - (kk) *s'employer* *sans vie* <sup>7</sup> *que on ordinairement appeler*  
 things; in speaking of things, to IT, to THEM are expressed by Y;  
*chuse*; *en parlant* <sup>7</sup> , to IT, to THEM - *s'exprimer* <sup>125</sup> ;  
 Geography is a pleasant study; you should give some time to it. You  
*Géographie* <sup>7</sup> *agréable*<sup>32</sup> *étude*; <sup>176</sup> \* *tems* <sup>54</sup>  
 do not pay sufficient attention to it. I want to learn mathematics; but  
*faire assez* <sup>8</sup> N.B. <sup>54</sup> <sup>260</sup> *mathématique* ;  
 I can not apply to them. I have not time to stick to them.  
 (kk) *m'appliquer* <sup>59</sup> <sup>7</sup> *de m'attacher* <sup>59</sup>

64. *Lui*, *Elle*, *Eux*, *Elles*, after a preposition, (are said) only of  
*préposition ne se disent que*  
 persons and beings that are<sup>92</sup> generally<sup>183</sup> personified; such as heaven,  
<sup>7</sup>*personne* <sup>7</sup> *que on généralement personnifier*<sup>125</sup>; *tels que* <sup>7</sup> ,  
 providence, virtue, love, &c.; as, If men knew<sup>140</sup> virtue, they would  
<sup>7</sup> , <sup>7</sup>*vertu*, <sup>7</sup>*amour*, &c.; *comme*, <sup>7</sup> *connaître* <sup>7</sup> ,  
 burn with love for it, and † own that (there is) no<sup>8</sup> real happiness  
*bruler d'* *pour* , *avouer que* <sup>246</sup> N.B. *vrai* † *bonheur*  
 without it. In speaking of brutes or things, the preposition is gene-  
*sans* *En parlant* <sup>7</sup>*brutes ou* <sup>7</sup> , - <sup>183</sup>  
 rally changed into an adverb, and the pronoun (is left out); as,  
*se changer*<sup>125</sup> *en* - *adverbe*, - *s'omettre*<sup>125</sup>; *comme*,  
 That chair is broken, do not sit<sup>57</sup> upon it. The rails are  
 (bb) *chaise* *rompu*<sup>158</sup>, - *s'asseoir* || *dessus* *barreau*  
 newly painted, do not lean<sup>57</sup> against them. Stand<sup>56</sup> (by the side)  
*fraichement peint* <sup>29</sup> , - *s'appuyer* || *contre* *Se tenir* || *à côté*  
 of them. I have made a terrace in my garden, a grotto under it, and  
<sup>7</sup> *terrasse* <sup>213</sup> , *grotte* *dessous*,  
 planted trees all round it. I am going to make a water spout (in the)  
*planté* <sup>7</sup>*arbre* *autour* <sup>155</sup> <sup>172</sup> *d'eau* <sup>25</sup> *jet* *au*  
 middle of it, and a canal through it. Have you ever been in it?  
*milieu* , *à travers*, *jamais* *dedans*?

\* See note † page 292.

† Put this adjective before the noun.

† Would is here understood in english.

|| See the imperative of a reflexive verb, p. 114.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

65. When HE, SHE, IT, THEY are the nominative of the verb BE,  
 HE, SHE, IT, THEY, BE,  
 followed by a substantive, they<sup>62</sup> are generally expressed by *Ce*;  
 suivi d', ils - <sup>183</sup> s'exprimer<sup>125</sup> par ;  
 Do you know that gentleman who is coming (this way?) He is a  
 - <sup>133</sup> connaître (bb) monsieur - venir<sup>155</sup> (par ici ?)  
 philosopher. He is a very learned man. That is his wife who is with  
 philosophe, très savant C' est là femme  
 him. She is a very haughty<sup>32</sup> woman. Is that their house? Yes,  
<sup>58</sup> hautain<sup>29</sup> femme. Est-ce là ? Oui,  
 it is. It is a very good<sup>20</sup> house. They are very respectable people<sup>9</sup>.  
<sup>70</sup> <sup>33</sup> <sup>82</sup> gens.

66. HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM are sometimes used<sup>125</sup>  
 HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM - quelquefois<sup>183</sup> s'employer  
 without reference to a noun expressed in the discourse, but with  
 rapport exprimé<sup>213</sup> discours, avec  
 reference to the words MAN, WOMAN or PEOPLE understood; then they  
 mot MAN, WOMAN ou PEOPLE sous-entendus; alors  
 (are expressed) HE, HIM by *celui*; SHE, HER by *celle*; THEY, THEM  
 - s'exprimer<sup>125</sup> HE, HIM par ; SHE, HER ; THEY, THEM  
 by *ceux*; Happy he who lives, i. e. the *man who* lives contented with  
 ; Heureux vivre content<sup>200</sup>  
 his lot. Providence never abandons him who does not abandon himself.  
 sort. 7 <sup>190</sup> abandonner - s'abandonner lui-même.  
 She who refuses a husband, is not always sure to <sup>168</sup> find another.  
 refuser mari, sûr<sup>29</sup> en <sup>70</sup> trouver un autre.

N.B. The English, in this kind of sentences, often place<sup>125</sup> the  
 Anglais, <sup>213</sup> (bb) sorte <sup>8</sup> phrase, <sup>184</sup> placer  
 words HE, SHE, &c. and the relative WHO, WHOM, which<sup>74</sup> follows  
 HE, SHE, &c. relatif WHO, WHOM, (m) p. 82. suivre  
 them, in different<sup>92</sup> parts of the sentence; the French (on the)  
<sup>54</sup> , <sup>213</sup> différent<sup>29</sup> partie ; au  
 contrary, generally place *qui*, *que*, *dont* immediately after *celui*,  
 contraire, <sup>184</sup> <sup>125</sup> immédiatement  
*celle*, *ceux*; He is a flatterer who praises men for virtues which<sup>74</sup> they  
 \* ; flatteur louer <sup>7</sup> des (m) p. 82.  
 have not. He can not be happy whose happiness depends upon  
 saurait <sup>192</sup> <sup>74</sup> bonheur <sup>7</sup> dépendre des  
 other people. They are not always happy who seem to be so<sup>54</sup>.†  
 autres, - <sup>39</sup> paraître - - le

67. HIS, HER, THEIR used in the same sense as the above<sup>32</sup> pro-  
 HIS, HER, THEIR employés sens que ci-dessus  
 nouns, i. e. without reference to a noun mentioned, are expressed,  
 rapport (dont il soit fait mention), - s'exprimer<sup>125</sup>,

\* See \* p. 210.

† Turn this sentence in french; *They who* seem happy, are not always so.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

HIS by *de celui*; HER by *de celle*; THEIR by *de ceux*; Every body  
*HIS* ; *HER* ; *THEIR* <sup>106</sup>

blames his manners, i. e. the manners of *him*, who acts without modesty.  
*blâmer* *manière* , *agir* *modestie*.

I would not trust her virtue, who does not care<sup>200</sup> for her reputation.  
*vouloir* *me fier à* *vertu* - *se soucier* *de* <sup>1</sup>

Their labours do not always succeed, who take their measures best.\*  
*travail* - <sup>104</sup> *réussir* *prendre* *mesure* *le mieux*.

68. When a personal<sup>32</sup> pronoun is the object of several verbs, it must  
*personnel* *objet* *plusieurs* , <sup>62</sup> *doit*  
 be repeated with each verb; He saw and heard me. He loves and  
<sup>32</sup> *répéter* <sup>103</sup> ; *voir* *entendre* <sup>54</sup> *aimer*  
 esteems you. I hate and despise him. I entreat and conjure you.  
*estimer* <sup>54</sup> *haïr* *mépriser* <sup>54</sup> *prier* *conjuré* <sup>54</sup>

69. When several verbs come together, the pronouns should (be  
*ensemble* , *devraient* (*se*  
 placed) immediately before the verb which<sup>74</sup> governs them; Will  
*placer*) (m) p. 82. *régir* <sup>54</sup> ; <sup>173</sup>  
 you help me to do it? Can not you do it yourself? He wishes to  
*aider* <sup>169</sup> *faire* <sup>54</sup> ? <sup>192</sup> (m) N.B. ? *souhaiter* <sup>173</sup>  
 marry her. She will not speak to him. She can not bear him.  
*épouser* <sup>54</sup> *vouloir* (*kk*) (*o*) <sup>54</sup> <sup>192</sup> *souffrir* <sup>54</sup>.

70. When, in a sentence of several parts, the subject mentioned  
*Quand* , <sup>213</sup> *phrase* *plusieurs parties* , *sujet dont il est fait mention*  
 in the first<sup>29</sup> part is continued, the french add<sup>125</sup> to the following<sup>32</sup> parts  
*premier* *continuer* , *français ajouter* *suivant* <sup>29</sup>  
 of the sentence one of the pronouns *Le*, *La*, *Les*, *En*, *Y*, agreeably to the  
*suivant* -

idea which<sup>74</sup> they wish to express; Is this the master of the house?  
*idée* (m) p. 82. *vouloir* <sup>172</sup> ; *Est-ce ici* *maître* ?

Yes, he is; i. e. *the master*. He is rich and I am not; i. e. *rich*. He  
 , (*r*) . *riche* (*m*) . †

has friends and I have not; i. e. *any friends*. Are these the books  
<sup>ami</sup> (*m*) . (*p*) † *Sont-ce ici*

of which you were speaking? Yes, they are; i. e. *the books*. Is  
<sup>74</sup> <sup>155</sup> ? <sup>65</sup> . †

your brother at home? No, he is not; i. e. *there*. And if the  
<sup>134</sup> *au logis* ? <sup>191</sup> , <sup>190</sup> . (*e*) p. 74.

auxiliary verb with which we<sup>90</sup> ask the question, is attended by ano-  
*auxiliaire*<sup>32</sup> <sup>76</sup> N.B. *faire* , *accompagné d'*

ther verb, that verb must also be repeated; Have you seen your  
 , (*bb*) *doit* *aussi* - *se répéter* ; (*ii*) N.B. *vu*

\* Turn; The labours of *those who* take best their measures, do not always succeed.

† You do not repeat the noun or adjective, which is understood in english, but you must add one of the above pronouns to the verb, as long as the same subject is continued.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

brother lately? No, I have not, i. e. *seen him*. When you see<sup>142</sup>  
*depuis peu ?* <sup>101</sup> , \* <sup>verrez</sup>  
 him, tell him that I want to speak to him. I will; i. e. *tell it him*. I  
 , *dire lui*<sup>55</sup> (bb) <sup>260</sup> <sup>172</sup> (o) \*  
 do not know what he wants; do you? i. e. *know it?* No, I do not; i. e.  
*savoir* <sup>84</sup> *vouloir*; \* ? <sup>70 N.B.</sup> , \* ;  
*know it*; if I did<sup>140</sup>; i. e. *know it*, I would not have asked you about it.  
<sup>70 N.B.</sup> ; \* ; <sup>70 N.B.</sup> , *demandez* - † <sup>59</sup>

71. If the pronoun, which<sup>74</sup> in these instances (is added) to the sen-  
 , (m) p. 82. (bb) *cas* *s'ajouter* <sup>125</sup>  
 tence, represents a noun, it must be one of the words *le, la, les*,  
 , *représenter* , *doit* *not*  
 agreeably to the gender and number of that noun; Are you the  
*suivant* - <sup>3</sup> (bb) ;  
 brother of that lady? Yes, I am. Are you the sister of that  
 (bb) ? , (bb)  
 gentleman? No, I am not. Are these your horses? Yes, they are.  
*monsieur ?* *Sont-ce ici* *cheval ?* , <sup>65</sup>

72. If you have to represent, in the second part of the sentence,  
*à représenter* <sup>29</sup>  
 an adjective, an adverb, or a member of a sentence, you<sup>181</sup> must add  
 , , *ou un membre* - , *il* N.B. *faut ajouter*  
*le* without regard to gender or number; Sir, are you ready? Yes, I  
*sans* *avoir égard* <sup>7</sup> *ou* <sup>7</sup> ; *prêt ?* ,  
 am; i. e. *ready*. Are you ready, Madam? No, Sir, I am not; i. e. *ready*.  
<sup>29</sup> , ? , ,  
 Are your brothers returned<sup>158</sup>? No, they are not; i. e. *returned*.  
<sup>134</sup> <sup>265</sup> ? , .

73. *En, y*, which<sup>74</sup> are generally said<sup>126</sup> of things only, may, in  
 (m) p. 82. - <sup>153</sup> *se dire* <sup>7</sup> , *peuvent, en*  
 answer to these questions, (be used) for persons; *en*, instead of  
*réponse* (bb) , (kk) *s'employer pour* <sup>7</sup> ; , *au lieu de*  
*de moi, de toi, de nous, de vous, de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles*; *y*,  
 ;  
 instead of *à moi, à toi, à nous, à vous, à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles*;

Were you speaking of me? Yes, I was; i. e. *speaking of you*. Do  
 - <sup>133</sup> <sup>155</sup> <sup>58</sup> ? , \*  
 you care for her? No, I do not; i. e. *care for her*. Will you not  
*se soucier de* <sup>58</sup> ? <sup>191</sup> , \* <sup>173</sup>  
 trust<sup>292</sup> him? No, indeed, I will not; i. e. *trust him*. Have<sup>297</sup> you  
*vous fier à* <sup>58</sup> ? <sup>191</sup> , *en vérité*, \*  
 not applied to them? Yes, we have<sup>297</sup>; i. e. *have applied to them*.  
*s'adresser* <sup>58</sup> ? , \* .

\* These signs, or auxiliary verbs which represent the principal verb in english, have no meaning in french, you must repeat the verb itself.

† See note ] p. 296.

‡ See compound tenses of a reflexive verb used interrogatively, page 115.



## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.\*

Your sister has not used<sup>237</sup> me well. What has she done to you?  
*n'en a pas usé avec* <sup>183 N.B.</sup> <sup>83</sup> *faire (o)* ?

We were at the ball last night; I asked<sup>252</sup> her to dance with me;  
<sup>140</sup> *bal* <sup>235</sup> ; *prier* <sup>137</sup> <sup>168</sup> *danser* ;

she refused me, and after she had refused me, she danced with  
*refuser* <sup>187</sup> , *après que* *eut refusé* , <sup>137</sup>

another. She mentioned it to me this morning. She is very sorry  
<sup>a</sup> <sup>138</sup> *parlé* *en (o)* *(bb)* <sup>234</sup> *fâché* <sup>29</sup>

(for it.) She desired me to tell you so. She did<sup>140</sup> not intend to offend  
*en* *a* <sup>138</sup> *prié* <sup>168</sup> *dire* *le* <sup>54</sup> *avoir* *dessein* <sup>168</sup> *offenser*

you. She had promised to dance with him before you had<sup>218</sup> asked  
*avait promettre* <sup>108</sup> *avant que* *eussiez demander*

her. She ought<sup>177</sup> then to have told me so. She forgot<sup>137</sup> it. She did not  
*lui* *aurait donc - dû* *dire* *le* <sup>54</sup> *oublier* -

think (of it.) I beg you will forgive<sup>202</sup> her. You had promised me  
*penser* <sup>137</sup> *y* *prier* *† de pardonner* *lui* *aviez*

that, when you should come to see me, you would bring me your  
*que, quand* *venir* <sup>172</sup> *voir* , - <sup>256</sup>

children. Why did<sup>135</sup> you not bring them with you? I could not  
*Pourquoi avez* *amenés* ? *ai* <sup>136</sup> *pu*

bring them to-day. I will<sup>173</sup> bring them the next time I come<sup>142</sup>.  
<sup>233</sup> *aujourd'hui.* - <sup>256</sup> *prochaine fois* <sup>221</sup> *viendrai.*

Bring them to me as soon as you can<sup>142</sup>. I will<sup>70</sup>. They have desired  
<sup>256</sup> *(o)* *aussitôt que* *pouvoir.* <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>252</sup>

me to buy<sup>162</sup> them fruit, and to send it to them, but I will take it to  
<sup>168</sup> *acheter (f) p. 79.* <sup>9</sup> , <sup>168</sup> *envoyer (o)* , <sup>256</sup> <sup>62</sup> *(o)*

them myself. I long to see them. It is so long<sup>246</sup> since I have seen  
*(m)* <sup>N.B.</sup> *† de voir* *Il y a si long tems que* <sup>[196]</sup> *vus* <sup>159</sup>

them. They will be very glad<sup>20</sup> to see you. They are very fond of  
*bien aise* <sup>168</sup> - *fort* <sup>183</sup> *aimer* -

you. They are always talking<sup>153</sup> of you. You are so good|| to them.  
<sup>155</sup> <sup>183</sup> *parler* *avez tant de bonté pour*

They like you better than their uncle. He is incessantly teasing<sup>155</sup>  
*aimer* *(b) p. 72.* *oncle.* - *sans cesse* <sup>183</sup> *tourmenter*

them. They will<sup>173</sup> not stay with him. They would rather come to  
*vouloir* *rester* *aiment mieux* *(o)*

me or go to you. They are very amiable<sup>32</sup> children. I often think  
*(o)* <sup>65</sup> *aimable* <sup>29</sup> <sup>9</sup> <sup>184</sup> *penser*

of them. I am much obliged to you. You have got a nice stick.  
<sup>200</sup> *bien obligé* *(o)* <sup>270</sup> *joli bâton.*

Let<sup>243</sup> me look at it. Will you have it? I make you a present (of it.)  
*Laisser* *voir* - *Vouloir* <sup>174</sup> ? *faire* <sup>24</sup> *en*

\* See note \* p. 281. † Turn in french, I beg you to forgive her. ‡ See LONG, p. 175.

|| TO BE SO GOOD, TO BE SO KIND, are expressed by *Avoir tant de bonté* · BE SO GOOD, BE SO KIND, in the imperative, *Ayez la bonté* ; not *Soyez si bon*.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

I thank you. I will<sup>73</sup> not deprive you of it. I do not care (for it.)  
*remercier* *vouloir* (kk) *priver* - *se soucier* *en*

I have bought it with the intention of giving<sup>134</sup> it away. Have you  
*acheter* *dans* *dessein* *donner* - *En*<sup>70</sup>

got another? Yes, I have<sup>70</sup>. Is this your new<sup>32</sup> watch? Yes, it is. It  
<sup>270</sup> *un autre ?* , N.B. *Est-ce ici* *neuve* *montre ?* , *ce* <sup>70</sup> <sup>62</sup>

is silver; I thought<sup>221</sup> it was gold. My uncle has promised me a gold  
*d'argent ;* *pensais*<sup>140</sup> <sup>62</sup> <sup>140</sup> *d'or.* *oncle* *d'or*

one, if I get a prize this year. I wish<sup>221</sup> you may<sup>70</sup>. N.B. Ah!  
<sup>en</sup> <sup>70</sup> , *remporter* *prix* (bb) <sup>233</sup> *souhaiter* *en remportiez un.* Ah!

is it<sup>62</sup> you? How glad I am to see you! If you had not called upon  
 N.B. <sup>?</sup> <sup>185</sup> *aïse* <sup>168</sup> *voir !* *aviez* <sup>266</sup>

me now, I would have called upon you this afternoon. I wanted<sup>260</sup>  
*à présent,* <sup>266</sup> (bb) <sup>?</sup> *après midi.* <sup>140</sup>

to see you. We go to the play to-night; will you come with us?  
*aller* *comédie \** <sup>235</sup> ; <sup>†</sup> *venir* <sup>?</sup>

Will your cousin<sup>134</sup> be there? I think<sup>221</sup> she will<sup>70</sup>. I will go; for I long  
 - <sup>†</sup> *cousine f.* (e) p. 74. *penser* N.B. <sup>†</sup> ; *car* <sup>†</sup>

(very much) to see her. She is a most amiable<sup>32</sup> young lady. You  
*fort* <sup>168</sup> *voir* <sup>65</sup> *des plus aimables* *jeune* *demoiselle.* §

do not know (how much) I love and esteem her. I always think  
 - *savoir* *combien* *aimer* *estimer* <sup>184</sup> *penser*

of her, but I (am afraid)<sup>221</sup> she never thinks of me. What reason  
<sup>200</sup> , *craindre* <sup>190</sup> <sup>200</sup> <sup>82</sup> *raison*

have you to think so? Because, when I meet her, she does not  
<sup>168</sup> *le* <sup>54</sup> *?* *Parceque,* *rencontrer,* - ||

take any notice of me. You should<sup>176</sup> speak to her. You should  
*faire aucune attention à* *devoir* (o) <sup>176</sup>

call upon her. I (am afraid) of offending<sup>154</sup> her. I know<sup>221</sup> she has  
 (kk) <sup>266</sup> *craindre* *déplaïre* <sup>202</sup> *lui* *savoir*

a great regard for you, but I can not say that she loves you.  
 - *beaucoup de respect pour* , (kk) *dire* (bb) N.B.

Yet, I recollect that one day, as I was speaking of you to her,  
*Cependant, se rappeler* *un jour, comme* <sup>155</sup> (o) ,

she asked me if I knew<sup>140</sup> you well. I told her that I did<sup>70</sup>,  
*demander* *connaître* *bien* *dire* (f) p. 79. (bb) N.B. ¶ N.B.

\* *Comédie* in french, does not mean *Comedy* only, but is said of any kind of plays acted upon a stage, and also of the house itself where such plays are acted; you may also express the word *Play* by *Spectacle*. *Théâtre* in french is generally understood of that part of the house called the stage; yet it is said also of the house itself.

† See note \* p. 143.

‡ See the impersonal verb LONG, p. 175.

§ *Demoiselle* is said of all ladies who have never been married, whatever their age may be; *Dame* is said of all ladies who are or have been married.

|| Express *Not* by *ne* only, before the verb, as *aucune* which follows it, supplies the place of *plus* or *point*.

¶ You may express *I did* by *Oui* only, or you may repeat the verb *Connaître*, and say, *I did know* you.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

and she seemed<sup>137</sup> pleased (at it.) If she is at the theatre to night,  
*paraître bien aise en à comédie \** <sup>235</sup>

I will tell her what you have told me. I shall be much obliged  
<sup>81</sup> *bien obligé*

to you, if you do. I see a gentleman in that box yonder who  
 (o) , † *monsieur (bb) loge là-bas* <sup>75 †</sup>

owes me (a great deal) of money, but I dare not ask him for it, for  
*devoir - beaucoup argent, oser \$ , de*

fear of giving him pain; yet I am in great want (of it;) and  
*peur fuir <sup>154</sup> <sup>162</sup> peine ; cependant, avoir grand besoin en ;*

as (you are acquainted with him,) I will be obliged to you, if you  
*comme vous vous connaissez || , (o) ,*

will tell him so, the first time you have an opportunity to  
<sup>144</sup> *dire (f) p. 79. le <sup>54</sup> fois (s) <sup>142</sup> <sup>24</sup> occasion <sup>109</sup>*

mention it to him. Who, Mr. A? I know him very well. He is  
*parler en (o) Qui, Mons. A ? connaître très bien.*

a very honest man; he will pay you, you may be sure of it. I  
*honnête (i) ; payer , pouvoir sûr*

answer for him as for myself. I suppose<sup>221</sup> he has forgotten it.  
*repondre <sup>200</sup> comme <sup>200</sup> moi-même. s'imaginer oublier*

My sisters were talking this morning of going<sup>154</sup> to drink tea<sup>7</sup> at  
<sup>155</sup> *parler (bb) matin aller <sup>172</sup> prendre thé*

your<sup>200</sup> house this afternoon. Shall you be there? Certainly, I shall<sup>70</sup>.  
*N.B. <sup>2</sup> après midi. (e) p. 74. Certainement, N.B.*

I should not like to lose that opportunity of seeing them. I want  
*aimer <sup>169</sup> (bb) occasion <sup>154</sup> <sup>260</sup>*

to return<sup>205</sup> them the book which<sup>74</sup> they have lent me, and to thank  
*N.B. (f) p. 79. (m) p. 82. prêter , remercier*

them (for it.) I have been told that one of them is going to be  
*en <sup>92</sup> une ¶ - <sup>155</sup> <sup>172</sup>*

married<sup>201</sup>. Is it true? They<sup>90</sup> talk of it, but I do not know whether  
*se marier. vrai ? N.B. parler , si*

it is true or not. Ask<sup>162</sup> her. I dare not ask her such a thing;  
*ou non. Demander le (f) p. 79. oser (f) p. 79. <sup>30</sup> chose ;*

she would be angry with me. I met<sup>137</sup> them walking together  
*fâché <sup>29</sup> <sup>200</sup> rencontrer à la promenade ensemble*

the other day, and I related<sup>127</sup> to them what had<sup>238</sup> happened to us,  
*autre , raconter (o) <sup>84</sup> était arriver (o) ,*

after we had left<sup>139</sup> them; they laughed (at it) (very much.) They  
*après que <sup>137</sup> quittées ; ¶ rire <sup>137</sup> en beaucoup. ¶*

\* See note \* p. 303. † Here you may express *Do* by the verb *Faire*, or you may repeat the verb and the pronouns, if you tell it her.

‡ Turn; I see in that box yonder a gentleman who &c.

§ See note || p. 296.

|| Leave out with him; as *Vous vous connaissez* means, you are acquainted with each other.

¶ Mind the gender of the noun which this pronoun represents.

## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

told<sup>157</sup> me they wished<sup>140</sup> that they had been with us. I also<sup>184</sup> shewed<sup>137</sup>  
*dire* <sup>221</sup> \* *souhaiter* (nn) *aussi* *montrer*  
 them the letter which you have written to me, desiring me not<sup>190</sup> to  
 (f) p. 79. (m) p. 82. *écrite* <sup>159</sup> (o) , *pour prier* N. B. <sup>168</sup>  
 mention it to them, for fear<sup>218</sup> your father (should come) to know of  
*parler* *en* (o) , *de peur que* <sup>195</sup> *vint* *à savoir* -  
 it; but I requested them not<sup>190</sup> to mention it to him. Have they  
*le* ; *prier* <sup>137</sup> N. B. *de parler* *en* (o) \*  
 mentioned it to you? No, they have not<sup>70</sup>. They only<sup>184</sup> told<sup>136</sup> me  
*en* (o) <sup>191</sup> , \* N. B. \* *seulement* *ont dit*  
 that they had met you, and that you had<sup>227</sup> walked (a little way)  
 (bb) N. B. \* *avaient* , *étiez* *se promener* *un peu*  
 with them. They were (very well) pleased<sup>30</sup> with you. I was not  
*très* - *content* N. B. <sup>200</sup>  
 less so<sup>54</sup> with them. They have invited me to come and spend an  
*moins* *le* *d'* \* *inviter* <sup>169</sup> *venir* (nn) <sup>251</sup>  
 evening with them. I intend<sup>125</sup> to pay them<sup>102</sup> a visit soon <sup>163</sup>.  
<sup>234</sup> *avec* \* *avoir dessein* <sup>168</sup> *rendre* (f) p. 79. *bientôt*. N. B.  
 Pray give my love to them, and tell them<sup>162</sup> so. I will<sup>70</sup>. Is not  
*faire* *amitiés* (o) † , (f) p. 79. *le* N. B.  
 your country <sup>25</sup>house finished yet<sup>163</sup>? No, it is not, and I do not  
*de campagne* <sup>134</sup> *finir* <sup>138</sup> N. B. <sup>191</sup> , \* <sup>70</sup> , -  
 know when it will be. My father does not like it now. He says  
*savoir* *quand* \* <sup>70</sup> - *aimer* \* (h) p. 80.  
 that it is too near the road. He wants<sup>200</sup> to sell it, and <sup>204</sup>  
 (bb) N. B. • *trop près de* *route*. *avoir envie* <sup>168</sup> \* (h) p. 80. *d'en*<sup>70</sup>  
 build another a little further in the country. I wonder he does  
*bâtir* <sup>120</sup> *un peu* *loin* <sup>41</sup> <sup>213</sup> <sup>230</sup> *s'étonner* <sup>221</sup> -  
 not like it; it seems<sup>125</sup> a good house, and it is in a pleasant  
 \* ; \* *avoir apparence* - † , <sup>213</sup> *agréable*<sup>32</sup>  
 situation. He is going<sup>155</sup> to add a terrace to it, and make a moat  
 - *aller* <sup>172</sup> *ajouter* *terrasse* , *fossé*  
 round it. Have you been in the park? They<sup>90</sup> are making a pond  
*autour* <sup>64</sup> *parc* ? N. B. - *faire* <sup>155</sup> *étang*  
 in the middle of it. (Here is) some fruit. Will you have<sup>74</sup> any?  
*milieu* <sup>64</sup> <sup>247</sup> <sup>9</sup> . (p)  
 I shall be obliged to you, if you will give me some. Take some.  
*obligé* (o) , <sup>144</sup> (p) *Prendre* (p)  
 Take some more. (There<sup>246</sup> is) plenty in the garden. We have  
 (p) *d'avantage*. *en* <sup>70</sup> *abondance* <sup>213</sup> *jardin*. *en* <sup>70</sup>  
 (so much) that we do not<sup>192</sup> know what to do (with it.) Have you  
*tant* (bb) N. B. - N. B. *que* <sup>172</sup> *faire* <sup>200</sup> || *en*.

\* Mind the gender of the noun which this pronoun represents.

† Express this sentence thus: *I pray you to give my love to them, and to tell them &c.*

‡ Turn this sentence thus: *It has a good appearance.* || *With* is implied in the pronoun *en*.



## PERSONAL PRONOUN.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

been where I told<sup>136</sup> you? No, I have not<sup>70</sup>. Why do not you go?  
*être où ai dit 191, N.B. Pourquoi - y 70 133*

Are you not ready yet<sup>183</sup>? Yes, I am. Is your sister ready? I  
*133 prêt encore N.B. 70 134 29*

(am afraid) she is not. Go and tell her<sup>102</sup> to (get ready) as fast as  
*craindre 221 146 70 Aller - (nn) dire (f) p. 79. 108 s'apprêter 43 vite 43*

she can<sup>142</sup>. Is this the book of which you were speaking to me?  
*poura. Est-ce ici 74 155 (o)*

Yes, it is. Have you read it? Yes, I have<sup>70</sup>. Is it entertaining? Yes,  
*70 lire N.B. amusant?*

very. Read it. You know Mr. B.; do you not<sup>282</sup>? Yes, I do.<sup>70</sup>  
*beaucoup connaître Monsieur ; n'est-ce pas? Oui, N.B.*

He is a very clever young man, but I (am afraid<sup>195</sup>) he is a little (too  
*65 très habile 32 jeune , craindre 221 146 un peu*

much) addicted to gaming. Has he ever asked you for money? Yes,  
*trop adonné jeu. jamais \* argent?*

he has<sup>70</sup>. Did<sup>136</sup> you lend him<sup>102</sup> any? Yes, I <sup>136</sup>did<sup>70</sup>. I am very sorry  
*N.B. Avez prêté (f) p. 79. (p) , ai N.B. fâché*

(for<sup>200</sup> it,) for I do not think that he will ever return it to you. Do  
*en , car - (bb) N.B. rendre 145 (o) -*

you think he will<sup>70</sup>? Yes, I do<sup>70</sup>. He is a very worthy<sup>32</sup> young  
*221 145 N.B. , N.B. 65 de beaucoup de mérite*

man. I wish<sup>221</sup> you would recommend him to some of your friends  
*190 vouloir recommander 93*

who could serve him. I will<sup>70</sup>. I esteem him (very much) myself,  
*pût servir N.B. estimer fort (m) N.B.*

and I beg you by all that is dear to you, not<sup>190</sup> to mention to him  
*supplier par tout ce qui cher (o) , N.B. de parler de (o)*

what<sup>84</sup>. I have said to you, for I would never pardon you for it. I  
*(m) p. 82. (o) , car 190 pardonner \**

will<sup>70</sup> not. Only<sup>184</sup> tell him<sup>102</sup>, when you see<sup>142</sup> him, that I shall be  
*N.B. Seulement (f) p. 79. voir , (bb) N.B.*

much obliged to him, if he will do me the favour that he has pro-  
*bien obligé (o) , 144 faire grâce 74 pro-*

vided me. I will tell him<sup>162</sup> so<sup>54</sup>. I like them who shew themselves  
*mettre 159 (f) p. 79. le aimer 63 montrer se*

such as they are. (So do I.) Tell him<sup>162</sup> to call upon me as soon as  
*tels que Et moi aussi. (f) p. 79. 168 266 43 tôt 43*

he can<sup>142</sup>. I will<sup>70</sup>. Now, I must wish you good morning. Come  
*pouvoir. N.B. À présent, 181 souhaiter 7 234 N.B. Venir*

and see us again soon. You may<sup>178</sup> be sure that I will<sup>70</sup>. I will  
*-(nn) revoir † bientôt. pouvoir sûr (bb) N.B. N.B.*

come as often as I can, whilst I am so near you. I hope you will<sup>70</sup>.  
*43 43 142 , pendant que 143 près de 221 N.B.*

\* See note § page 295.

† Re prefixed to a verb, expresses the word again.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

74. When **WHO, THAT, WHICH** are the nominative of a verb, they  
*WHO, THAT, WHICH* nominatif\* , ils  
 (are expressed) by *qui*; I see a gentleman yonder who is waiting  
*s'exprimer* (ii) N.B. par ; voir monsieur † là bas 75 155 attendre  
 for me. It<sup>32</sup> is from him I have bought that horse which is lame.  
 201 N.B. 221 acheter (bb) boîtes.  
 He has another which suits me. I have one which, I think, will die.  
 en<sup>70</sup> un autre convenir en<sup>70</sup> un , croire, mourir.  
 When **WHOM, THAT, WHICH** are the object of a verb, they are  
*WHOM, THAT, WHICH* objet\* , -  
 expressed by *que*; You know the gentleman we have just<sup>24</sup> met.  
*s'exprimer* ; † † (s) venons de rencontrer.  
 It<sup>32</sup> is from him I have bought the horse that you have seen. He has  
 N.B. 221 voir. en<sup>70</sup>  
 another which I want to buy, to replace that which I have lost.  
 120 230 acheter, 170 remplacer 88 perdre.  
**WHOSE, of WHOM, of WHICH**, are expressed by *dont*; He is the  
*WHOSE, of WHOM, of WHICH* - s'exprimer ; 65  
 gentleman whose horse has won the race. He is not the person  
 † gagné le prix de la course. 65 personne f.  
 of whom you complain. No, he is<sup>70</sup> not. He is a man of whom I have  
 se plaindre. , 65 (r) 65  
 a good opinion. The horse of which I was speaking to you is sold.  
 24 29 - parler 155 (o) vendre.

75. *Qui, que, dont*, whatever be the order of the words which  
 , , , *quelque* 117 soit  
 correspond to them in english, must be placed immediately after the  
*correspondre* 63 en , *devoir* - se placer immédiatement  
 noun to which they relate; A gentleman has been here who  
 76 62 se rapporter (ii); † il est venu ici ||  
 wanted<sup>200</sup> to speak to you. Is the man (come back) whom I had  
*vouloir* 140 172 (o) 134 revenir avais  
 sent (for him)? Yes, he is<sup>70</sup>. Is the money to be had (turn, can  
*envoyer le querir* ? , N.B. Peut-on 92 avoir  
 one<sup>80</sup> have the money) which we are in need of? No, it is not.<sup>70</sup>  
 (kk) avons 24 besoin 203 191 , N.B.

N. B. *Dont*, (besides its being placed) immediately after the noun  
 , *autre qu'il doit se placer*  
 to which it relates, must also be followed immediately (by the) nomi-  
 76 il , doit aussi être suivi du  
 native of the verb which<sup>74</sup> follows it; as, (That is) the gentleman  
 (m) p. 82. suivre 54 ; , 247 †

\* See note \*, p. 204, the distinction between the *nominative* and the *object* of a verb.

† *Monsieur*, not *Gentilhomme*, which in the french language means *Nobleman*.

‡ See page 140, and 152, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*.

|| Turn this sentence thus; There has been here a gentleman who wanted &c.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

whose horse I wanted<sup>230</sup> to buy. He is a man whose probity I know,  
*vouloir* <sup>140</sup> <sup>172</sup> *acheter.* <sup>65</sup> *probité* ,  
 a man whose talents I admire, and whose friendship I value much.  
 , *amitié* *priser fort.*

If the sentence can not be turned in this manner, WHOSE must  
*phrase* *pouvoir (kk) - se tourner de (bb) manière,* *WHOSE* *doit (kk)*  
 be expressed by *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles*, agreeably to  
*- s'exprimer* *par* , , , *suivant* -  
 the gender and number of the noun to which the pronoun relates<sup>125</sup>;  
*genre* <sup>3</sup>*nombre* <sup>76</sup> *se rapporter;*  
 He is a man to whose family I owe every thing, and in whose hands  
<sup>65</sup> *famille* *devoir* <sup>107</sup> , *main*  
 all my property is. They are people upon whose word one may depend.  
*bien* <sup>65</sup> <sup>9</sup>*gens* <sup>229</sup> *sur* *parole on peut compter.*

76. After a preposition WHOM is expressed by *qui* for both genders  
*WHOM* - *s'exprimer* *les deux*  
 and numbers; WHICH by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*;  
*les deux* ; *WHICH* , , , ;  
 from WHICH by *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles*; to, at WHICH  
*from* *WHICH* , , , ; to, at *WHICH*  
 by *auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles*, agreeably to the gender  
 , , , *suivant* -  
 and number of the noun to which it relates; You know the gentle-  
<sup>3</sup> *il se rapporter;* \*  
 man to whom I have spoken. It<sup>62</sup> is he who has brought the parcel  
*parler.* *N.B.* <sup>52</sup> *apporter* *paquet*  
 in which your letter was. (This is) the carriage in which he came<sup>136</sup>.  
<sup>140</sup> <sup>247</sup> *voiture* *est venu.*

Are these the horses to which he is so much attached? They are not  
*Sont-ce ici* *si fort* *attaché?*  
 fit<sup>20</sup> for the use which they are intended for<sup>203</sup>. Let us walk along  
*propre* <sup>200</sup> *usage* *les* <sup>92</sup> *destine.* *à* *Se promener* † *le long de*  
 the road in which we walked<sup>137</sup> yesterday. What is the name of  
*route* (v) *se promener* † *hier.* <sup>92</sup>  
 the place in which we are? I like to know the name of the places  
<sup>2</sup> *endroit* (v) *aimer* <sup>169</sup> \*  
 through which I go. Have<sup>237</sup> you inquired for the town from which  
 (v) *passer.* *Vous êtes-vous informé de* (v)  
 he comes? I could not hear any thing on which I can rely.  
*venir?* *ai* <sup>136</sup> *pu* <sup>99</sup> *apprendre* <sup>99</sup> (u) <sup>145</sup> *compter.*

77. WHO, WHOM used absolutely, i. e. without reference to a noun  
*Who, whom* employé absolument, c'est à dire *rapport*  
 mentioned in the sentence, implies the word PERSON understood,  
 (il dont il soit fait mention) *phrase* , *renfermer* *PERSON* *sous-entendu,*

\* See p. 140, and 132. the distinction between *Savoir* and *Connaître*.

† See *Se BLAMER*, p. 114.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

and is expressed by *qui*; Whom did<sup>133</sup> you meet? Whom were  
 - *s'exprimer* \* ; *avez* *trouvé* ? 149

you with? Whom did<sup>133</sup> you give it<sup>55</sup> to? I do not know whom  
 133 203 *avez* *donné* 203 - *savoir*

you mean<sup>125</sup>. I do not know whom you are speaking of.  
*vouloir dire.* - 155 203

78. **WHOSE** used in the same sense, i. e. without reference to a  
*WHOSE* *employé* *même sens,* *c'est à dire* *rapport*

noun expressed, implies also the word **PERSON** understood, and is  
*exprimé,* *renfermer aussi* *PERSON* -

expressed by *de qui*, when it is used for of **WHOM**; and by *à qui*,  
*s'exprimer* \* , - *s'employer* \* . of *WHOM* ; ,

when it is used for to **WHOM**; Whose son are you? Whose daughter  
 - \* to *WHOM* ; 134

is she? Whose relations are they? Whose house is that, or whom  
*parent* *cette,* †

does that house belong to? Whose property is it, or whom does it  
 - (bb) *est* 203 - 62, † -

belong to? Whose children are these, or whom do these children  
 2st 203 *ces,* † (bb)

belong to? Do you not know whose they are? They are my sister's.  
 - 133 †

**WHICH** used to ask a question, is sometimes<sup>183</sup> joined like an  
*WHICH* 183 *faire* , - *quelquefois* *se joindre* \* , *comme*

adjective to the noun which follows it; as, **WHICH MAN**? Some-  
*adjectif* *suivre* 54 ; *comme, WHICH MAN* ?

times it is joined to it like a substantive by the preposition **OF**; as,  
*il - se joindre* \* 63 *substantif* *par* *OF* ;

**WHICH OF THESE MEN**? and sometimes it is used without (a noun  
*WHICH* *of THESE MEN* ? - *s'employer* \* *être suivi*

after it,) but with reference to a noun expressed in the former<sup>29</sup> part  
*d'un nom,* *avec* *rapport* *exprimé* *premier* *partie*

of the sentence; as, It<sup>62</sup> is one of these men; **WHICH IS IT**?  
*phrase ;* , *N.B.* (bb) ; *WHICH IS IT* ?

79. When **WHICH** interrogative is joined like an adjective to the  
*WHICH* *interrogatif* - *se joindre* \* *comme*

noun which follows it<sup>54</sup>, it is expressed by *quel, quelle, quels, quelles*,  
*suivre* *le, il - s'exprimer* \* , , , ,

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; Which horse will  
*suivant* - *genre* *nombre* ; 173 ||

you ride? Which road shall we go by<sup>203</sup>? Which inn shall we  
 133 *monter* ? *route* 133 *aller par* *auberge* 133

(put up) at? Which is the best inn in this town? Which room  
*descendre* 203 *meilleur* (bb) *ville* ? *chambre*

\* See N. B. under note (ii) page 235.

† These two modes of expression are generally rendered in the same manner in French.

‡ See note (o) p. 88. || See note \* p. 143.



## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

will you sit in? Which paper would you like to read?  
<sup>173</sup> *rester* <sup>203</sup> *papier* <sup>163</sup> *lire?*

80. When WHICH interrogative is joined like a substantive by the  
*WHICH* - *se joindre* \* *comme*  
 preposition OF, to the noun which follows it, or when it relates to a  
<sup>OF,</sup> <sup>suivre</sup> <sup>54,</sup> <sup>il se rapporter</sup>

noun mentioned in the foregoing part of the sentence, it is expressed  
 (*dont il est fait mention*) <sup>premier</sup> <sup>29</sup> *partie* <sup>phrase,</sup> <sup>62</sup> - *s'exprimer* \*

by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles, duquel, de laquelle, des* &c.  
<sup>par</sup> , , , , , , ,

i. e. the article *le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux*, agreeably to  
*c'est à dire* ; ; <sup>suivant</sup> -

gender and number, is added to the words *quel, quelle, quels, quelles;*  
<sup>7</sup> , - *s'ajouter* \* ;

Which of these horses will you ride? Which is the easiest?  
<sup>†</sup> <sup>173</sup> *monter?* <sup>aisé?</sup> <sup>44</sup>

Which of these two roads shall we go by? Which is the shortest?  
<sup>133</sup> <sup>par</sup> <sup>court</sup> <sup>29?</sup>

Which of these rooms will you sit in? Which has the finest view?  
<sup>173</sup> <sup>rester</sup> <sup>203</sup> <sup>belle</sup> <sup>44</sup> <sup>vue?</sup>

81. Sometimes WHICH implies the pronoun THAT or THOSE under-  
*WHICH* *renfermer* *THAT* *ou* *THOSE* *sous-*  
 stood; Then it is expressed by *celui que, celle que, ceux que,*  
*entendu; Alors il - s'exprimer* \* , ,

*celles que*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which  
<sup>-</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>76</sup>

it relates; Which horse shall I ride? You may ride which (i. e.  
<sup>62</sup> *se rapporter* ; <sup>133</sup> *monter* <sup>pouvez</sup>

*that which*) you please<sup>142</sup>. Which of these roads shall we go by?  
<sup>il vous plaira.</sup> <sup>133</sup> <sup>aller</sup> <sup>203</sup>

Go by which you like<sup>142</sup>. In which room shall I put your luggage?  
<sup>vouloir.</sup> <sup>133</sup> <sup>mettre</sup> <sup>bagage?</sup>

Put it<sup>56</sup> in that which I told<sup>136</sup> you. Put it in which you will<sup>142</sup>.  
<sup>Mettre</sup> <sup>62</sup> <sup>98</sup> <sup>ai dit</sup> <sup>55</sup> <sup>62</sup> <sup>vouloir.</sup>

82. WHAT joined to a noun, or relating to a noun mentioned  
*WHAT* *joint* , *ayant rapport* (*dont il est fait mention*)  
 in the sentence, is expressed by *quel, quelle, quels, quelles*, agreeably  
*phrase,* - *s'exprimer* \* , , , <sup>suivant</sup>

to gender and number, in the same manner as WHICH; What place  
<sup>-</sup> <sup>7</sup> <sup>7</sup> <sup>de</sup> <sup>manière</sup> <sup>que</sup> *WHICH* ; <sup>endroit</sup>

do you come from? What road did<sup>136</sup> you come by? What inn  
<sup>-</sup> <sup>133</sup> <sup>venir</sup> <sup>203</sup> <sup>êtes</sup> <sup>238</sup> <sup>venu</sup> <sup>203</sup>

will you go to<sup>203</sup>? Have you heard the report? No, what is it?  
<sup>aller</sup> <sup>entendu</sup> <sup>bruit qui court?</sup> , <sup>63</sup>

\* See N. B. under note (ii) page 235.

† See note \* page 214.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

83. WHAT used absolutely, i. e. without reference to a noun  
*WHAT employé* , *c'est à dire* rapport  
 expressed in the discourse, implies the word **THING** understood, and  
*exprimé* <sup>213</sup> discours, renfermer **THING** ,  
 is expressed by *que* or by *quoi*. What is expressed by *que*, when it<sup>63</sup>  
 - *s'exprimer* ou *WHAT - s'exprimer* , il  
 is the object of a verb ; What do you think of this country? What  
 ; - <sup>133</sup> penser <sup>230</sup>  
 do you intend<sup>125</sup> to (do with yourself)? What do you mean<sup>125</sup>?  
 - <sup>133</sup> avoir dessein de devenir - <sup>133</sup> vouloir dire ?  
 What do you want<sup>200</sup> to do with that? What is that to you?  
 - <sup>133</sup> vouloir <sup>172</sup> faire <sup>200</sup> <sup>89</sup> (y) fait <sup>89</sup> (o) <sup>54</sup>  
*WHAT* (is expressed) by *quoi*, when it is used as an interjection, or  
*WHAT* , il - *s'employer* - , ou  
 when it is governed by a preposition ; What! he is not come yet!<sup>63</sup>.  
<sup>62</sup> régir par ; ! venu encore N.B.  
 What! you do not answer me. Listen to me. Well! what?  
 - répondre <sup>54</sup> Ecouter (o) <sup>56</sup> Eh bien !  
 What are these people talking about? What do you meddle with?  
 - (bb) gens<sup>134</sup> parler<sup>155</sup> de<sup>203</sup> - se mêler de<sup>203</sup>

84. WHAT is often used in the sense of **THAT WHICH**: in these  
*WHAT* - <sup>183</sup> *s'employer* <sup>213</sup> sens **THAT WHICH**: (bb)  
 instances, WHAT is expressed by *ce qui*, when it is the nominative  
 cas, *WHAT - s'exprimer* (m) p. 82. il nominatif  
 of a verb, and by *ce que*, when it is the object ; Do you know what  
 , (m) p. 82. objet ; - <sup>133</sup>  
 (*that which*) makes her angry? Do you hear what she says? I know  
 fâcher - - entendre  
 what she wants<sup>260</sup>. But when WHAT in the sense of **THAT WHICH** is  
 vouloir. *WHAT* **THAT WHICH**  
 governed by a preposition, (it is necessary) to consider whether the  
 régir il faut <sup>173</sup> considérer si  
 preposition comes before or after WHAT ; for *of* WHAT is *de ce qui*,  
 venir *WHAT* ; *car of* *WHAT*  
*de ce que*, i. e. *of* **THAT WHICH** ; WHAT *of* is *ce dont*, i. e. **THAT**  
 , *c'est à dire*, *of* **THAT WHICH** ; WHAT *of* , **THAT**  
*of* **WHICH** ; *to* WHAT is *à ce qui*, *à ce que*, i. e. *to* **THAT WHICH** ;  
*of* **WHICH** ; *to* *WHAT* (m) p. 82. , *to* **THAT WHICH** ;  
 WHAT *to* is *ce à quoi*, i. e. **THAT to** **WHICH** ; as, You speak of what  
 WHAT *to* , **THAT to** **WHICH** ; *comme*, parler  
 will never happen. What you are speaking of will never happen. Are  
<sup>195</sup> arriver. <sup>155</sup> <sup>203</sup>  
 you sure of what you say? It is what you may<sup>178</sup> be sure of. Will  
 sûr (m) p. 82. dire? <sup>63</sup> pouvez <sup>203</sup>  
 you trust to what he proposes? What you trust to is very uncertain.  
 se fier proposer? <sup>203</sup> très incertain.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.\*

What! is it<sup>62</sup> you? Where have you been since<sup>195</sup> I saw<sup>136</sup> you?  
 ! N.B. Où depuis que ai vu? <sup>54</sup>

What country do you come from? What ship did<sup>136</sup> you come  
 pays <sup>230</sup> - <sup>133</sup> venir <sup>203</sup> navire êtes <sup>238</sup> venu

in? What news do you bring? What do they<sup>80</sup> say in town?  
<sup>203</sup> nouvelles - <sup>133</sup> apporter - <sup>133</sup> N.B. à ville?

Read the papers, and you will see. Which paper must I read?  
 Lire papier, voir. <sup>181</sup> <sup>133</sup>

Which of these papers do you advise me to read? Which has the  
 - <sup>133</sup> conseiller <sup>54</sup> <sup>168</sup>

latest<sup>44</sup> news? (There is) very little<sup>8</sup> difference; read which you  
 fraîche <sup>22</sup> <sup>246</sup> très peu N.B. ;

can<sup>142</sup> get. Now, what do you think of the news? I do not  
 pouvez trouver. Maintenant, - <sup>133</sup> penser -

believe a word of what that paper says. (There is) not a word of  
 croire mot (bb) <sup>245</sup>

truth in what I have read. What shall we do now? Let us go  
 vrai † <sup>136</sup> - - aller

to the place in which we are to meet your cousin. What have you  
 endroit (v) <sup>442</sup> <sup>172</sup> rencontrer <sup>133</sup>

done with your stick? I do not know what I have done (with it). I  
 faire <sup>200</sup> bâton? - savoir en <sup>55</sup>

(am afraid) I have left it at the inn at which we have<sup>237</sup> stopped  
 craindre (nn) laisser <sup>53</sup> à auberge (v) nous nous sommes arrêtés

to dinner. If your father asks you what you have done (with it),  
 dîner. <sup>54</sup> en <sup>55</sup> ,

what will you answer<sup>202</sup> him? Indeed, I shall not<sup>192</sup> know what to  
<sup>133</sup> répondre lui <sup>54</sup> Ma foi, N.B. <sup>173</sup>

say. What would you advise me to say? I will tell you sincerely  
 dire. <sup>133</sup> conseiller <sup>54</sup> <sup>168</sup> † dire <sup>54</sup> sincèrement

what I would say. Well! what? What would you say? I would  
 Eh bien! <sup>133</sup>

tell him<sup>102</sup> the truth. It<sup>68</sup> is what I was thinking of. What is your  
 (f) p. 79. vérité. N.B. <sup>155</sup> à <sup>203</sup>

reason for leaving this country? Because I see nothing here to which  
 raison de quitter (bb) <sup>230</sup> † Parceque <sup>99</sup> ici (u)

I can<sup>45</sup> apply. I want to go abroad. What country would you  
 puisse s'appliquer. <sup>260</sup> dans les pays étrangers. <sup>290</sup>

like to go to? To France or Italy? Which country would you  
 aimer <sup>169</sup> <sup>203</sup> <sup>6</sup> <sup>6</sup> Italie? <sup>240</sup> <sup>133</sup>

advise me<sup>54</sup> to go to? Which of those countries is the most pleasant?  
 conseiller <sup>168</sup> <sup>203</sup> plus agréable?

\* See note \* p. 281.

† When the French speak of an action which they are on the point of doing, they do not use the future as the English do; they express *Shall, Will* by the *present* tense of the verb *Aller*, to go; je vais, tu vas, il va, nous allons, &c. with the following verb in the *infinitive*; so turn this sentence thus, *What are we going<sup>135</sup> to do now?*‡ Turn; *What reason have you to leave this country?*

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

You have seen them both; which do you like best? If you will  
 voir<sup>122</sup> ; - <sup>133</sup> aimer le mieux? <sup>144</sup>

come with me, I will go to which you like<sup>142</sup>. I will consider (of it.)  
<sup>58</sup> , <sup>vouloir.</sup> <sup>penser</sup> <sup>y</sup> <sup>54</sup>

(That is) the gentleman whose<sup>75</sup> house we have just<sup>244</sup> passed by<sup>203</sup>.  
<sup>247</sup> <sup>monsieur</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>venons de</sup> <sup>passer</sup> <sup>près de</sup>

It is the house in which we lived<sup>140</sup> formerly. Is it<sup>65</sup> the house which  
<sup>85</sup> (v) <sup>demeurer autrefois.</sup> <sup>133</sup>

your father wanted<sup>260</sup> to buy, and for which he offered<sup>133</sup> (so much\*)  
<sup>vouloir</sup> <sup>140</sup> <sup>172</sup> <sup>acheter,</sup> <sup>a offert</sup> <sup>tant</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup>

money? Yes, it is. Do you know that young lady? Yes, I do.<sup>70</sup>  
<sup>argent?</sup> <sup>Oui,</sup> <sup>70</sup> - <sup>133</sup> \* (bb) <sup>N.B.</sup>

Who is she? Whose daughter is she? She is married<sup>29</sup>. Whose  
<sup>marié.</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup>

wife is she? Whom is she married to? She is the wife of that  
<sup>femme</sup> <sup>158</sup> <sup>203</sup> <sup>65</sup> (bb)

gentleman whom we were speaking of. I know whose daughter she  
<sup>155</sup> <sup>203</sup> \*

is. I know whose relations they are. Whose handkerchief is this  
<sup>\*</sup> <sup>purent</sup> <sup>mouchoir</sup>

which I have found on the staircase? I do not know whose it is.  
<sup>trouver sur</sup> <sup>escalier?</sup> - <sup>\*</sup> <sup>62</sup>

I do not know whom it belongs to. What shall I do (with it)?  
<sup>-</sup> <sup>\*</sup> <sup>appartenir</sup> <sup>203</sup> <sup>faire</sup> <sup>en</sup> <sup>54</sup>

Take it<sup>53</sup> back to the place in which you found<sup>136</sup> it. Which door  
<sup>Remettre</sup> <sup>62</sup> - <sup>endroit</sup> (v) <sup>avez trouvé</sup> <sup>55</sup> <sup>porte</sup>

must I go through? Which of these doors must I go through?  
<sup>181</sup> <sup>133</sup> <sup>passer par</sup> <sup>203</sup> <sup>191</sup> <sup>133</sup> <sup>203</sup>

Go through which you like<sup>142</sup>. Have you heard what I said<sup>136</sup> to  
<sup>Passer</sup> <sup>voudrez.</sup> <sup>entendre</sup> <sup>ai dit</sup> (o)

you? No, what is it? The man you trust to deceives you. The  
<sup>55</sup> <sup>191</sup> , (y) <sup>se fier</sup> † <sup>203</sup> <sup>tromper</sup> <sup>54</sup>

company he keeps, is not honest. You do not know all the harm  
<sup>compagnie</sup> <sup>fréquenter,</sup> <sup>honnête.</sup> - <sup>\*</sup> <sup>mal</sup>

he does you. I do not<sup>162</sup> know what to do. I wish<sup>221</sup> you would tell  
<sup>faire</sup> <sup>54</sup> - <sup>N.B.</sup> \* <sup>172</sup> <sup>faire.</sup> <sup>100</sup> <sup>vouloir</sup>

me what I must do. You do not know what a disagreeable situation  
<sup>54</sup> <sup>181</sup> - <sup>\*</sup> <sup>20</sup> <sup>désagréable</sup>

I am in. What must I do? Do what I told you. I do not see what  
<sup>202</sup> <sup>181</sup> <sup>133</sup> <sup>Faire</sup> <sup>136</sup> <sup>55</sup> -

you can do better. If you had believed me, what you complain of  
<sup>(kk)</sup> <sup>de mieux.</sup> <sup>aviez</sup> <sup>55</sup> , <sup>se plaindre</sup> † <sup>203</sup>

would not have happened. I am sorry for what has happened to you.  
<sup>être</sup> <sup>238</sup> <sup>arriver.</sup> <sup>fâché</sup> <sup>200</sup> <sup>238</sup> (o)

\* See page 140, 152, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*.† See *reflective verbs*, p. 114.



## POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

85. The possessive<sup>32</sup> pronouns *le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes*, *MINE*; *le tien, la tienne, &c. THINE*; *le sien, la sienne, &c. &c. THINE*; *&c. &c.*

*HIS, HERS* must be of the same gender and number as the noun to which they relate; Are our horses ready? Yours and mine are<sup>70</sup>,  
<sup>76</sup> *se rapporter*; <sup>1</sup> <sup>134</sup> *prêt* <sup>29</sup> ? <sup>72</sup>

but hers is<sup>70</sup> not. Get hers ready as soon as you can<sup>142</sup>. Have they<sup>90</sup>  
<sup>72</sup> *Appréter* † <sup>43</sup> *tôt*. <sup>43</sup> *pourez*. <sup>133</sup> N.B.

cleaned our boots? Yours are cleaned<sup>29</sup>, but his and mine are<sup>70</sup> not.  
*décrotté* <sup>1</sup> *botte* ? *décrotté*, N.B. <sup>72</sup>

He does not want<sup>200</sup> his now. Clean mine. I want mine directly.  
 - *avoir besoin de* *tout à l'heure*.

86. After the verb *BE* used in the sense of the verb *BELONG*, the  
*Après* *verbe BE* employé<sup>213</sup> *sens* *BELONG*,  
 possessive words *MINE, THINE, HIS, &c.* are expressed by the same pro-  
<sup>29</sup> <sup>32</sup> *mot* *MINE, THINE, HIS, &c.* - *s'exprimer* *par* *mêmes*  
 nouns as would be used<sup>92</sup> with the verb *BELONG*; thus, *MINE, à moi*;  
*que* - *on employerait* *BELONG*; *ainsi, MINE*,  
*THINE, à toi*; *HIS, à lui*; *HERS, à elle*; *OURS, à nous*; *YOURS, à vous*;  
*THINE*, ; *HIS*, ; *HERS*, ; *OURS*, ; *YOURS*, ;  
*THEIRS, à eux*, masc. *à elles*, fem.; Is not this fan<sup>134</sup> yours? No, Sir;  
*THEIRS*, , , , <sup>2</sup> *éventail* <sup>191</sup>, ;  
 it is not mine. I think<sup>221</sup> it is my sister's. Yes, it is hers. Are these  
<sup>62</sup> *penser* <sup>62</sup> † , <sup>62</sup> <sup>13</sup>  
 horses yours or his? They are not ours; They are my cousin's.  
<sup>134</sup> *ou* <sup>62</sup> ; <sup>62</sup> *cousin*.†

87. The possessive pronouns *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, &c.* joined<sup>29</sup> by  
<sup>29</sup> <sup>32</sup> *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, &c. joint* N.B.  
 the preposition *OF* to the noun to which they relate in this kind  
*OF* <sup>76</sup> <sup>62</sup> *se rapporter*, <sup>213</sup> <sup>1</sup> *sorte*  
 of idioms, *A FRIEND OF MINE, A BOOK OF YOURS*, and such like, are  
<sup>8</sup> *idiotisme, A FRIEND OF MINE, A BOOK OF YOURS*, *autres semblables*, -  
 expressed in french by the possessive article; thus, *OF MINE, de mes*;  
*s'exprimer* *en* *par* <sup>32</sup> ; *aussi, OF MINE*, ;  
*OF THINE, de tes*; *OF HIS, OF HERS, de ses*; *OF OURS, de nos*; *OF*  
*OF THINE*, ; *OF HIS, OF HERS*, ; *OF OURS*, ; *OF*  
*YOURS, de vos*; *OF THEIRS, de leurs*, which, agreeably to the rules  
*YOURS*, ; *OF THEIRS*, , <sup>74</sup> , *suivant* -  *règle*  
 on the article, are placed before the noun, which must always be  
*sur* , - *se placer* <sup>206</sup> , <sup>74</sup> *devoir* *être*  
 plural in french; as, I (have just<sup>244</sup>) met an acquaintance of mine  
 ; , *venir de* *rencontrer* *connaissance*

\* Repeat of the same.

† Ready is expressed in the word *Appréter*.

‡ See note (o) p. 88.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

who told<sup>36</sup> me that a friend of ours is dead. Is not Mrs A.  
*a dit* <sup>55</sup> (bb) N.B. *mourir.* *Madame* <sup>134</sup>  
 a relation of yours? A son of hers is dead. A cousin of mine has  
*parente*  
 married<sup>261</sup> a daughter of hers, but she is no<sup>8</sup> relation of mine. They  
*épouser* N.B. <sup>190</sup> N.B.  
 are neighbours of ours. I am going to dine with an aunt of theirs.  
*voisin* <sup>155</sup> *aller* <sup>172</sup> *tante*

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.\*

Your mother and mine are gone<sup>158</sup> to (take<sup>263</sup> a walk) in our fields;  
*aller* <sup>172</sup> N.B. <sup>213</sup> *champ*;  
 Let us go and (take a<sup>263</sup> walk) in yours. Is not that house yours?  
 - - (nn) N.B. (bb) <sup>134</sup>  
 No, it is not ours; it is my uncle's. I should have taken it<sup>55</sup> for  
<sup>191</sup> , <sup>62</sup> ; <sup>62</sup> *oncle.* † *prise* <sup>62</sup> *pour*  
 yours. Ours is not so fine as his, and his is better situated than  
<sup>43</sup> <sup>42</sup> , (b) p. 72. *situé* <sup>158</sup>  
 ours. Let us go (this way); I want to call at a friend's of mine.  
 - - *par ici*; <sup>260</sup> <sup>266</sup> <sup>208</sup> *une amie*  
 I think she is a friend of yours too. Who? Mrs. A. She is an  
<sup>221</sup> <sup>65</sup> *aussi.* *Madame* <sup>65</sup>  
 old acquaintance of ours, but she is no friend of mine. I do not  
*ancienne* ‡ *connaissance* <sup>190</sup> -  
 like her. She is incessantly<sup>181</sup> talking of herself, or of some relation  
*aimer* <sup>54</sup> - *sans cesse* <sup>155</sup> *elle-même,* <sup>95</sup> *parent*  
 of hers. Let us walk into this room. What a pretty work<sup>25</sup> bag  
 - - *Entrer* <sup>213</sup> (bb) <sup>83</sup> <sup>20</sup> *joli* *ouvrage* *sac*<sup>25</sup>  
 you have got there. Is it yours? No, it is not mine; it is my  
<sup>270</sup> *là.* <sup>62</sup> <sup>191</sup> , <sup>62</sup> ; <sup>62</sup>  
 sister's. This<sup>88</sup> is mine. Hers is (very much) like<sup>202</sup> yours. Hers  
 † N.B. - *fort* <sup>184</sup> *ressembler au*  
 is not so pretty as mine. How long<sup>186</sup> have you had yours?  
<sup>43</sup> <sup>42</sup> *Combien y a-t-il que vous avez* ||  
 I got<sup>136</sup> mine about the same time that my sister got hers. Yours  
*ai eu* *vers* *tems* <sup>136</sup>  
 looks<sup>253</sup> better than hers. Yes, because I take more care<sup>8</sup> of my  
*avoir apparence* <sup>33</sup> *que* , *prendre* *soin* N.B.  
 clothes than she does of hers. (What is the matter with) your  
*habit* <sup>47</sup> *faire* *Qu'est-ce qu'a* <sup>281</sup> -  
 neighbour? A sister of his is dead. She went<sup>137</sup> (a few days ago) to  
*voisin* ? *mort*,<sup>138</sup> *aller* *il y a quelques jours* <sup>172</sup>  
 see a child of hers who is at a relation of ours in the country,  
<sup>208</sup> <sup>230</sup> ,  
 and she died<sup>135</sup> there. You have got a handkerchief of mine. A  
*est mort* <sup>136</sup> *y* <sup>55</sup> <sup>270</sup> *mouchoir*

\* See note \* p. 281 † See note (o) p. 88. ‡ Put this adjective before the noun. || See § p. 353

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

handkerchief of yours ! I have no handkerchief of yours. I have  
 none but what are<sup>145</sup> mine. What ! is this<sup>134</sup> yours ? Yes, it is mine.  
*pas* <sup>193</sup> *soient* <sup>83</sup> ! <sup>83</sup> N.B. <sup>62</sup>  
 You are greatly mistaken : It is not yours ; it is my mother's.  
*- fort* <sup>181</sup> *se tromper :* <sup>62</sup> <sup>62</sup> <sup>6</sup>

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

88. The demonstrative<sup>32</sup> pronouns *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, THIS, THAT ; *ceux, celles*, THESE, THOSE must be of the same gender and number as the  
*, THESE, THOSE* *devoir être* *genre* *nombre* *que*  
 noun to which they relate ; This steeple is not so high as that of St.  
<sup>76</sup> <sup>62</sup> *se rapporter ; (bb)* *clocher* <sup>42</sup> *haut* <sup>42</sup>  
 Paul. This church is larger than that which we have just<sup>244</sup> passed  
*(bb)* *église* *grande* <sup>41</sup> <sup>76</sup> *venons de* *passer*  
 by<sup>203</sup>. These trees are finer<sup>41</sup> than those which are in your park.  
*près de* *(bb)* *arbre* *beau* <sup>74</sup> *parc.*  
 N. B. Observe that *celui, celle, ceux, celles* do not express that  
*Observer* *(bb)* N.B. *exprimer la*  
 local<sup>32</sup> distinction which is implied in the words THIS, THESE ; THAT,  
*de lieu* <sup>74</sup> *renfermé* <sup>150</sup> *THIS, THESE ; THAT,*  
 THOSE ; therefore, if you wish to make that distinction in french,  
*THOSE ; c'est pourquoi,* *vouloir* <sup>172</sup> *faire* *(bb)* *en* ,  
 (you must<sup>181</sup>) add to these words, *ci* to denote the nearest<sup>44</sup> object, and  
*il faut* N.B. *ajouter* *(bb)* , <sup>170</sup> *désigner* *près* <sup>32</sup> <sup>7</sup> ,  
*Là* to denote the remotest ; This<sup>13</sup> steeple is not so high as that. That<sup>13</sup>  
<sup>170</sup> *éloigné* <sup>44</sup> ; N.B. <sup>42</sup> N.B.  
 church is much larger than this. These<sup>13</sup> trees are finer than those.  
*beaucoup* <sup>41</sup> N.B. <sup>41</sup>  
 But *ci, là*, are not requisite, when the demonstrative pronoun is fol-  
*nécessaire,* <sup>32</sup>  
 lowed by a noun or by a relative pronoun ; as, This gown is prettier<sup>41</sup>  
*suivre* <sup>200</sup> <sup>200</sup> <sup>32</sup> ; , *(bb)* *robe* *joli* <sup>29</sup>  
 than that of your sister. This is not so fine as that which I shewed you.  
<sup>42</sup> *belle* <sup>42</sup> *ai montrée.* <sup>55</sup>

89. Sometimes THIS, THAT are used without reference to a noun  
*THIS, THAT - s'employer* *rapport*  
 expressed, but imply the word THING understood ; then they (are  
*exprimé,* *renfermer* *THING* *sous-entendu ; alors* <sup>62</sup> -  
 expressed), THIS by *ceci* ; THAT by *cela* ; Give me this. What will  
*s'exprimer,* *THIS* ; *THAT* ; <sup>173</sup>  
 you do with that ? Take this. Let that alone. I will take this  
*faire de* *Prendre* *Laisser* - ‡

\* See note (o) page 88.

† Repeat of the same.

‡ See note † page 312.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.\**

Do you hear that man? He is scolding<sup>155</sup> that woman who has  
 - <sup>133</sup> entendre † - gronder

been beating those children. Look at that house. Is not that a  
<sup>155</sup> battu Regarder <sup>201</sup> N'est-ce pas là

good house? Yes, it is a good house, but this is a better<sup>29</sup> one.  
<sup>29</sup> , <sup>65</sup> , (b) p. 72. †

Nay! I think that is better. Those rooms seem to me to be  
 Oh non! penser <sup>221</sup> (b) p. 72. paraître (o) <sup>54</sup> - -

larger<sup>41</sup> than these; besides, that is much better situated than this.  
 grand <sup>29</sup> ; outre cela, (b) p. 72. situé <sup>159</sup>

I do not see that. I think this is as pleasantly situated as that. Do  
 - voir <sup>221</sup> <sup>43</sup> agréablement <sup>158</sup> <sup>43</sup> -

you admire those flowers? What flowers? Those that<sup>74</sup> we see in that  
<sup>133</sup> admirer fleur? <sup>82</sup> (m) p. 82.

garden before that house. How do you call this? This is a poppy,  
 devant Comment - <sup>133</sup> appeler pavot,

and that is a marigold. I do not like that kind of flowers; I like  
 souci. - aimer sorte <sup>8</sup> ;

those that<sup>74</sup> have a pleasant smell. What do you think of these? Oh,  
 (m) p. 82. agréable <sup>32</sup> odeur. <sup>83</sup> - penser Oh,

I like these better than those. These smell sweet. The action of  
 (b) p. 72. ont une douce odeur. action

Virginius sacrificing his daughter, is as strong and more pure than  
 Virginius sacrifier , <sup>43</sup> fort <sup>29</sup> pur <sup>29</sup>

that of Brutus condemning his son; nevertheless this is glorious<sup>29</sup>  
 Brutus condamner ; néanmoins glorieux (g)

and that is not. Virginius secured only the honour of his family;  
<sup>70</sup> savait seulement l'honneur famille;

Brutus saved that of the laws and of the country. (There was) much<sup>8</sup>  
 savait loi patrie. Il y avait N.B.

pride in the action of Brutus, perhaps there was nothing but pride;  
 orgueil , peut-être n'y <sup>215</sup> avait-il - que <sup>9</sup> ;

there was in that of Virginius only honesty and courage; but this did<sup>197</sup>  
<sup>9</sup> honnêteté <sup>9</sup> ; faire

(every thing) for his family, that did<sup>137</sup> every thing, or seemed<sup>137</sup> to  
<sup>107</sup> pour , faire <sup>107</sup> , ou sembler <sup>172</sup>

do every thing for Rome, and Rome, which considered<sup>135</sup> the action of  
 faire , a considéré

Virginius as that of an honest man and of a good father, consecrated  
 comme honnête , a <sup>130</sup> consacré

the action of Brutus as that of an hero; is not that just?  
 comme héros ; <sup>131</sup> juste?

\* See note \* page 231.

† Read note (bb), p. 217, before you write this exercise.

‡ If you express *This* by the pronoun, you must leave out *a* and *one*; but you may express *This* by *Voici*, rule 247; then you express *a* by *une*, and *one* by *en*, before *Voici*; thus, *En voici une* &c.



## INDEFINITE PRONOUN.\*

90. When the words **ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE**, are used indefinitely, *Quand* **ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE**, *s'employer* (dans un sens indéfini,) i. e. without reference to any particular<sup>32</sup> person, they are expressed by **ON**; but though **ON** represents **WE, THEY, PEOPLE**, 'exprimer (ii) *N.B.* quoique représenter **WE, THEY, PEOPLE**, which are plural, it always requires the verb in the third person singular; *plurier, il* <sup>184</sup> *demande* à troisième *Personne* *au singulier*; *- faire*<sup>125</sup> *courir* étrange bruit. They say that we have been beaten. Who says so? They say so. People say so. *neus* *battre*<sup>153</sup>. *le*<sup>54</sup> *51*

(You<sup>181</sup> must not) believe every thing that people say.  
*Il* *N.B.* *ne faut pas* croire tout ce que

91. All<sup>29</sup> indefinite<sup>32</sup> expressions like these<sup>86</sup>, **IT IS THOUGHT**, *Tout indéfini* <sup>30</sup> <sup>7</sup> *semblables à* *N.B.*, **IT IS THOUGHT**, **IT IS SAID**, &c. are also expressed by **ON**, by changing the verb (from *IT IS SAID*, &c. - <sup>102</sup> *s'exprimer* par (hh) changeant its) passive sense into the active; It is thought that (there will be) *du passif* - *en* - *actif*; † *penser* (bb) *N.B.* *il y aura* a peace. It is said that the preliminaries are signed. It will soon<sup>184</sup> - *puir.* (bb) *N.B.* *préliminaire* *signer*<sup>158</sup>. *bientôt* be known if it be true. It was asserted yesterday on the exchange. † *si cela*<sup>217</sup> *vrai.* † *assurait* hier à *bourse.*

92. English<sup>32</sup> passive verbs used indefinitely are generally<sup>183</sup> changed *Anglais* <sup>29</sup> <sup>32</sup> <sup>7</sup> *employés* - *ordinairement se changer* into their active signification in french, and take **ON** for nominative; *dans* <sup>32</sup> *en*, *prendre*; but by changing thus the sense of the verb, the noun or pronoun (hh), *ainsi*, which is the nominative of the verb in english, becomes its<sup>17</sup> object in <sup>74</sup> *en*, *devenir* *en*<sup>54</sup> *en* french; How can that be believed, when such great preparations for war (are going on)? I was told yesterday that it has been resolved <sup>7</sup> *guerre* <sup>155</sup> *faire* - † <sup>137</sup> (bb) *N.B.* † *resolu* to (carry on) the war. Do you know if the letters have been received <sup>108</sup> *continuer* † *reçu* which (were expected) by the last<sup>29</sup> mail? They have not been received <sup>74</sup> *attendait* <sup>140</sup> *dernier poste?* † *reçues* <sup>159</sup>

\* Though in point of order, this is the proper place for these pronouns, yet as they are easy, and of less consequence than the other exercises which follow them; not to break the chain of the most useful rules, I would advise the learner, after having read the rules on the *indefinite pronouns*, page 218, and following, and written rules 90, 91 and 92, to pass over the rest of the rules and go to the exercise on the *verbs*, the knowledge of which is necessary to have a complete idea of the language. The rest of this exercise may be written after all the other exercises.

† A *Passive* verb is made *Active*, by leaving out the verb *be*, and making the past participle into a verb of the same tense and person as the auxiliary verb is; as *It is thought*; turn, *One thinks*. *It has been said*; turn, *One has said*.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

yet<sup>183</sup>. They are expected to-day. Somebody has been sent to know  
 N. B. \* attendre aujourd'hui. 95 \* envoyé pour

why they have not been brought sooner. We have been much deceived.  
 pourquoi \* apportées tôt.<sup>41</sup> \* fort trompés.

93. ONESELF, HIMSELF used indefinitely, and ITSELF after a pre-  
 ONESELF, HIMSELF dans un sens indéfini, ITSELF  
 position are expressed by *Soi*; Let<sup>248</sup> every one think of himself.  
 - s'exprimer † par ; Que 105 penser 200

Every one for himself, and god for all. That is harmless in itself.  
 , tous 89 innocent de

Vice is odious of itself. The earth contains all seeds <sup>7</sup> in itself.  
 7 odieux terre contenir 23 semence en

94. SOME repeated in a sentence of two parts, is, in the first part  
 SOME répété phrase partie, , 29

les uns, in the second part, les autres; Some like one thing, some  
 , 23 , ; aimer ,

like<sup>70</sup> another. Some will have it one way, some will have it another.  
 en aimer 174 54 d'une manière, 174 54 d'une autre.

95. SOMEBODY is *quelqu'un*; Somebody has told me so<sup>55</sup>. I heard<sup>135</sup> it  
 SOMEBODY ; dit le entendre 55  
 from somebody. I expect somebody. Somebody will call upon me soon<sup>193</sup>.  
 attendre 266 bientôt. N. B.

96. SOME, ANY, FEW used to denote a small quantity, or a small  
 SOME, ANY, FEW employés 169 désigner petit 29 quantité,  
 number of the substance (spoken of,) are expressed by *quelqu'un*,  
 nombre (dont on parle,) - s'exprimer † ,

*quelqu'une*, *quelques uns*, *quelques unes*, agreeably to the gender and  
 , , , suivant -

number of the noun to which they relate; Have you seen any of my  
 8 76 se rapporter ; vu

flowers? Will you have some (of them)? I will take a few (of them).  
 fleur ? 174 en 54 † prendre

97. NOBODY, NOT ANY BODY, is expressed by *Personne*; NOBODY  
 NOBODY, NOT ANY BODY - s'exprimer † NOBODY

WHATEVER by *qui que ce soit*; these two words require *ne* before  
 WHATEVER ; (bb) mot demander avant

the verb which attends them; Nobody likes that woman. That  
 accompagner 51 ; aimer (bb) (bb)

woman likes nobody. Do not tell it to any body. Have you met  
 - dire 57

nobody? Has nobody met you? I have not met any body whatever.  
 134 rencontré

\* See † p. 313.

† See N. B. under note (ii) p. 235.

† See note † p. 313.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

98. SOMETHING is expressed by *quelque chose*; I feel something  
*SOMETHING* - *s'exprimer* \* *par* ;  
 that hurts me. I have something curious to tell you. Is not that  
<sup>74</sup> *blessé* <sup>54</sup> (cc) *curieux* *à* <sup>54</sup> *N'est-ce pas là*  
 something wonderful? Why do you not apply to something?  
 (cc) *étonnant?* - <sup>133</sup> *s'appliquer* (ii) †

99. NOTHING, NOT ANY THING is expressed by *rien*; NOTHING  
*NOTHING, NOT ANY THING* - *s'exprimer* \* ; NOTHING  
 WHATEVER by *quoique ce soit*; these words require *ne* before the verb  
*WHATEVER* ; *demande*  
 which attends them; I will give you nothing. You have not done  
<sup>74</sup> *accompagner* <sup>54</sup> ; *donner* <sup>54</sup> *fait*  
 any thing to-day. He applies to nothing whatever. He does not  
*aujourd'hui.* *s'appliquer* †  
 mind any thing whatever. I would not part (with it) for any thing.  
*faire attention à* *se défaire* † *en* <sup>59</sup>

N. B. *quelqu'un, quelque chose, personne, rien* followed by an adjective  
 , , , *suivis* <sup>200</sup> *adjectif*  
 or by a past<sup>39</sup> participle, require *de* before that<sup>2</sup> adjective or participle;  
<sup>200</sup> *passé* *participe,* *demande* <sup>205</sup> (bb) <sup>3</sup>  
 Somebody come. Something lost. Nobody hurt. Nothing done.  
*venu.* *perdu.* *blessé.* *fait.*

100. NONE, NOT ANY followed by a noun or a pronoun is expressed  
*NONE, NOT ANY* *suivi* <sup>200</sup> <sup>204</sup> - *s'exprimer* \*  
 by *aucun*, masc.; *aucune*, fem. and requires *ne* before the verb; None  
*par* , , *demande* <sup>205</sup> ;  
 of the ladies whom we expected will come. We shall not see any  
 † <sup>74</sup> *attendions* <sup>173</sup> *venir* *voir*  
 (of them) to-day. Do you know any of them? No, I do<sup>70</sup> not.  
<sup>en</sup> <sup>54</sup> *aujourd'hui.* - <sup>95</sup> <sup>191</sup> N. B.

101. NONE used absolutely, *i. e.* without reference to a noun, is  
*NONE* *employé* , *rapport* , -  
 expressed by *nul*, and NOT ONE by *pas un*, masc. *pas une*, fem.;  
*s'exprimer* \* *par* , *NOT ONE* , , ;  
 these words are synonymous to *personne*, and require *ne* before the  
*synonymes* *de* *demande*  
 verb; None is sheltered from censure. None can boast (of it.)  
 ; *à l'abri* † *pouvoir se vanter* *en* <sup>59</sup>  
 Many<sup>8</sup> people called themselves his friends, not one assisted him.  
 N. B. <sup>229</sup> *disaient* *se* <sup>54</sup> , *aider* <sup>137</sup> *lui* <sup>54</sup>

102. EACH is sometimes<sup>183</sup> joined to a noun in the same manner  
*EACH* - *quelquefois* *se joindre* \* *de*

\* See N. B. under note (ii) page 225.

† See reflexive verbs, page 114.

‡ Speaking of *young ladies*, we should say *demoiselles*; speaking of *married, or grown up ladies*, we should say *dames*.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

as an adjective, and is expressed by *chaque* for both genders; Each  
*que* , - *s'exprimer* \* *par* *les deux* ;  
 horse carried two men. Each woman had a bundle in each hand.  
*porter* <sup>140</sup> *paquet* *dans* *main*.

103. EACH is sometimes joined to a noun by the preposition *of*,  
*EACH* - *se joindre* \* *of*,  
 or refers to a noun which has been mentioned before<sup>183</sup>; then it  
*se rapporter* *dont* <sup>92</sup> *fait mention* *déjà*; N.B. *alors* *il*  
 is expressed by *chacun*, masc. *chacune*, fem; each of these men has a  
 - *s'exprimer* \* , , , ; (bb)  
 shilling a day; or these men have each a shilling a day. Each of these  
*sheling* *par jour*; (bb)  
 women carried two bundles; or these women carried two bundles each.  
*porter* ;

104. EVERY followed by a noun requires a distinction. If EVERY is  
*EVERY* *suivi* *d'* *demande* *EVERY* -  
 used<sup>125</sup> to denote individuality, it is expressed by *chaque*; Every  
*s'employer* \* <sup>109</sup> *désigner des individus*, *il* - *s'exprimer* \* ;  
 science (i. e. each science) has its principles. Every season has its  
*ses* *principe*. *EVERY* *saison*  
 attractions. Every plant has its properties. If EVERY is used to denote  
*charme*. *plante* *propriété*. <sup>169</sup>  
 a totality, it is expressed by *tout*, masc. *route*, fem; Every man lies,  
*un tout*, - *s'exprimer* \* , , , ;  
 (i. e. all men lie) but every man is not a liar. Every woman is frail, but  
 - *menteur*. *fragile*,  
 every woman does not yield. I am found at every hour of the day.  
 - *succomber*. <sup>92</sup> *à* <sup>233</sup>

105. EVERY ONE requires the same distinction as EVERY. If, by  
*EVERY ONE* *demande* *que* *EVERY*.  
 EVERY ONE, you mean<sup>125</sup> EVERY ONE taken individually, it is expressed  
*EVERY ONE*, *vouloir dire* *EVERY ONE* *pris* *individuellement*, - *s'exprimer* \*  
 by *chacun*; Every one has a good opinion of himself, (i. e. each  
 ; <sup>24</sup> *soi*,  
 person.) Every one thinks himself to be<sup>239</sup> in the right.  
*penser* - *†* - *avoir* - <sup>24</sup> *raison*.

If, by EVERY ONE, you mean<sup>125</sup> EVERY ONE taken collectively, it  
*EVERY ONE* *vouloir dire* *EVERY ONE* *pris* *collectivement*,  
 is expressed by *tous*, masc. by *routes*, fem; I have lost every one  
 - *s'exprimer* \* , , , ; *perdre*  
 of my books, (i. e. all my books.) I had won twenty guineas, and  
 - , *avais* *gagner* ,  
 I lost every one of them. Every one of the robbers were taken.  
 - <sup>54</sup> *voleur* <sup>137</sup> *prendre*.

\* See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

† This sentence can not be expressed literally.



## INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

106. EVERY BODY is *tout le monde*; Every body says so. She  
*EVERY BODY* ; *dire le* <sup>54</sup>  
 speaks ill of every body. It<sup>62</sup> is impossible to please every body.  
*dire du mal* N.B. <sup>168</sup> *plaire* <sup>202</sup>

107. EVERY THING is *tout*; Every thing is for the best. You  
*EVERY THING* ; *mieux*.  
 complain of every thing. I am prepared against every thing.  
*se plaindre \** *prêt à*

108. ANY BODY, ANY ONE is sometimes used in the sense of  
*ANY BODY, ANY ONE* - <sup>183</sup> *s'employer* †  
 SOME BODY, SOME ONE, and is expressed by *quelqu'un*; Is any body  
*SOME BODY, SOME ONE,* - *s'exprimer* † ; <sup>184</sup>  
 come? Have you met any body? Can any body do what I do?  
*venu?* *Pouvoir* <sup>134</sup> *faire* <sup>84</sup>

109. ANY BODY, ANY ONE is sometimes used in the sense of  
*ANY BODY, ANY ONE* - <sup>183</sup> *s'employer* †  
 EVERY BODY, and is expressed by *tout le monde*, or *il n'y a personne*  
*EVERY BODY,* - *s'exprimer* † ,  
*qui ne*, with this difference only, that *tout le monde* requires the  
 , (bb) , (bb) N.B. *demande*  
 following verb in the indicative, and *il n'y a personne qui ne* requires  
*qui suit* <sup>82</sup> *à* *indicatif*, and *il n'y a personne qui ne* requires  
 it (in the) subjunctive; Any body (or *every body*) may<sup>178</sup> do that.  
<sup>54</sup> *au* *subjonctif*; *pouvoir faire* <sup>89</sup>  
 Any body will (or *there is nobody but* will) shew you the way.  
*montrer chemin.*

110. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, or after a compara-  
*qui désigne* <sup>7</sup> *doute*, *compara-*  
 tive, ANY BODY is expressed by *personne*, but without *ne*, because  
*tif, ANY BODY* - *s'exprimer* ,  
*personne* attended by *ne*, means NO BODY; Did ever any body do  
*accompagné de* , *signifier NO BODY* <sup>136</sup> *jamais* <sup>134</sup>  
 such a thing! Yes; and you can do it as well as any body.  
<sup>28</sup> (kk) <sup>54</sup> <sup>43</sup> <sup>43</sup>

111. ANY THING is sometimes used in the sense of SOMETHING,  
*ANY THING* - <sup>183</sup> *s'employer* † *SOMETHING*,  
 and is expressed by *quelque chose*; (Is there) any thing in the bottle?  
 - *s'exprimer* † ; <sup>246</sup> *bouteille?*  
 Have you heard any thing? (Is there) any thing new to-day?  
*apprendre* <sup>246</sup> (cc) *nouveau*

112. Sometimes ANY THING is used in the sense of EVERY THING,  
*ANY THING* - *s'employer* † *EVERY THING*,  
 and is expressed by *tout*; He is fit for any thing (or *every thing*).  
 - *s'exprimer* † ; *propre* <sup>200</sup>

\* See a reflexive verb, page 114.

† See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

I will do any thing to serve him. I prefer this to any thing.  
*faire* <sup>170</sup> *servir* *préférer* <sup>89</sup>

113. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, ANY THING is  
*qui désigne* <sup>7</sup> <sup>7</sup> *doute*, ANY THING -  
generally expressed by *rien*; (is there) any thing finer<sup>41</sup> than civility!  
<sup>183</sup> *s'exprimer* \* ; <sup>246</sup> (cc) *beau* <sup>7</sup> *civilité*!

I doubt that you will make<sup>145</sup> any thing good (of it.)  
*douter que* *faire* (cc) *bon* *en* <sup>54</sup>.

114. WHOEVER, WHOSOEVER is sometimes joined to a substantive,  
*WHOEVER*, *WHOSOEVER* *joint* *substantif*,  
or relates to a substantive previously mentioned, and is expressed  
*se rapporter* *dont on a déjà fait mention*, - *s'exprimer* \*  
by *quelque*, *quelque*, masc; *celleque*, *cellesque*, fem; these words  
, , , , , , (bb)  
require the verb (in the) subjunctive, and if the nominative of the  
*demandeur* *au* *subjonctif*, *nominatif*  
verb is a noun, it must be placed after the verb; Whoever that<sup>2</sup>  
, <sup>62</sup> *devoir* (kk) - *se placer* \* ; (bb)  
man be, he is acting wrong; or that man is acting wrong, whoever  
, *agir* <sup>135</sup> *mal*; <sup>155</sup> ,  
he be. Whoever those children be, they are ill<sup>183</sup> behaved.  
(bb) , - *mal se comporter* <sup>125</sup>

115. Sometimes WHOEVER, WHOSOEVER, WHOMSOEVER implies the  
*WHOEVER*, *WHOSOEVER*, *WHOMSOEVER* *renfermer*  
word PERSON understood, and is expressed by *qui que ce soit*, followed  
*PERSON* , - *s'exprimer* \* , *suit*  
by *qui*, *que*, or *dont*, which requires the following verb (in the) sub-  
<sup>200</sup> , , <sup>74</sup> *demandeur* *qui suit* <sup>32</sup> *au*  
junctive; Whoever speaks to you, you ought to answer civilly.  
; (o) <sup>54</sup>, <sup>172</sup> *devoir* *répondre* *civilement*.  
Whomsoever you apply to, they<sup>90</sup> will tell you the same thing.  
*s'adresser* <sup>203</sup>, *N.B.* *dire* *même chose*.

116. Sometimes WHOEVER, WHOMSOEVER is used in the sense of  
*WHOEVER*, *WHOMSOEVER* - *s'employer* \*  
EVERY BODY, then it is expressed by *touts ceux*, followed by *qui* or  
*EVERY BODY*, *alors* - *s'exprimer* \* , *suivi* <sup>200</sup>  
*que*; Whoever (or *every body who*) is found out at night is stopped.  
; <sup>92</sup> *trouver dehors la nuit* <sup>92</sup> *arrêter* †  
Bring with you whomsoever (or *every person*) you meet<sup>142</sup>.  
*Amener* *rencontrerez*.

117. WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER joined to a substantive requires a  
*WHATEVER*, *WHATSOMEVER* *joint* *substantif* *demandeur*  
distinction. If the substantive to which *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOMEVER*  
<sup>78</sup> *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOMEVER*

\* See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

† Turn : one stops whomsoever one finds out at night.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

is joined, is the nominative of a verb, it is expressed by *quelque*  
 , nominatif , - s'exprimer \* par  
*quelque*, masc. *quelleque*, *quellesque*, f.; which requires the verb (in the)  
 , , ; demander au  
 subjunctive; and if the nominative is a noun, it is placed after the verb;  
 subjonctif; , <sup>62</sup> - se placer \*

Whatever this<sup>2</sup> work be, it is too dear. Whatever his terms be, I shall  
 (bb) ouvrage , <sup>62</sup> trop conditions ,  
 agree to them. Do not trust to their promises, whatever they be.  
 accepter - <sup>54</sup> - se fier † à promesse, <sup>62</sup>

If the substantive to which **WHATEVER**, **WHATSOEVER** is joined, is  
<sup>76</sup> **WHATEVER**, **WHATSOEVER** ,  
 the object of a verb, it is expressed by *quelque*, sing. *quelques*, plur;  
 objet , <sup>62</sup> - s'exprimer \* , ; , ;  
 these words require *que* after the substantive, and the verb (in the)  
 (bb) demander , au  
 subjunctive; Whatever business you have, you should not neglect your  
 ; affaire , <sup>176</sup> négliger  
 friends. Whatever terms they propose, I shall agree to them.  
 conditions proposer, accepter - <sup>54</sup>

118. Sometimes **WHATEVER**, **WHATSOEVER** implies the word **THING**  
**WHATEVER**, **WHATSOEVER** renfermer **THING**  
 understood; then it is expressed by *quoique ce soit*, followed by *qui*,  
 ; alors - s'exprimer \* , suivi <sup>200</sup> ,  
*que* or *dont*, which requires the verb (in the) subjunctive; Whatever I  
 , <sup>74</sup> demander verbe au ;  
 do, I am always scolded. Whatever he undertakes, he never succeeds.  
 fuir, gronder. entreprendre, <sup>190</sup> réussir.

119. **WHATEVER**, **WHATSOEVER** is sometimes used in the sense of  
**WHATEVER**, **WHATSOEVER** - s'employer \*  
 ANY THING, OR EVERY THING, then it is expressed by *tout ce qui*,  
 ANY THING, ou EVERY THING, alors - s'exprimer \*  
 nom; *tout ce que*, obj; Take whatever you think<sup>142</sup> proper. He grants  
 ; , ; Prendre croirez à propos. accorder  
 her<sup>162</sup> whatever she desires. He approves of whatever she does.  
 (f) p. 79. désirer. approuver <sup>201</sup> faire.

120. **OTHER** is *autre*; I see another man coming<sup>153</sup>. I have found  
**OTHER** ; voir qui vient. N.B. trouver  
 another flower. (Here is<sup>247</sup>) another. (There are) a great many others.  
 fleur. En <sup>70</sup> voici En <sup>70</sup> <sup>247</sup> - beaucoup d'

121. **EACH OTHER**, **ONE ANOTHER** is expressed by *l'un l'autre*,  
**EACH OTHER**, **ONE ANOTHER** - s'exprimer \*  
*une l'autre*; *les uns les autres*, *les unes les autres*, agreeably to the  
 ; , suivant -

\* See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

† See imperative of a reflexive verb, page 114.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

gender and number of the noun to which it relates; Fire and water  
 3 76 se rapporter; Feu 7 eau 7

destroy each other. These women hate one another. Observe  
 se détruire (bb) se haïr Observer

that the preposition which comes before EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER,  
 (bb) N.B. venir EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER,

must be placed between the two words *l'un l'autre, l'une l'autre, &c.*  
 devoir - se placer entre , ,

See those two women; they are jealous of each other; yet they can not  
 ; jaloux 29 (g) ;

do<sup>260</sup> without one another. These people have fallen upon one another.  
 se passer de (bb) gens 238 tombé 138

122. BOTH, speaking of two individual<sup>32</sup> objects, is expressed by  
 BOTH, parler individuel 29 , - s'exprimer

*l'un et l'autre, or tous deux*, masc; by *l'une et l'autre, or toutes deux*,  
 , ou , ; , ou ,

fem; Your brothers are<sup>241</sup> both very well. I saw them both last night.  
 ; se porter voir 235

You know my sisters; they will both be here to-night. In speaking  
 ; être 235 En parler

of a greater number of individuals, but considered as two parties,  
 41 individu, considérés comme ,

BOTH is expressed by *les uns et les autres*, masc; *les unes et les autres*, f;  
 BOTH - s'exprimer , ; , ;

The Russians and the Prussians have declared war against us; but  
 Russe Prussien déclarer 7 guerre - 55 ;

we will beat both. Both will have reason to repent (of it.)  
 battre lieu de se repentir en 59.

123. EITHER is *l'un ou l'autre, l'une ou l'autre; les uns ou les autres*,  
 EITHER , ; ,

*les unes ou les autres*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun;  
 , suivant - 3 ;

Either of these men will do it. You may<sup>178</sup> speak to either. Take  
 (bb) faire 54 pouvoir parler Prendre

either of these flowers. You may<sup>178</sup> have either of them.  
 - (bb) fleur. pouvoir (kk) - -

124. NEITHER, NOT EITHER, i. e. EITHER with a negation, is express-  
 NEITHER, NOT EITHER, EITHER - s'exprimer

ed by *ni l'un ni l'autre, ni l'une ni l'autre; ni les uns ni les*  
 (ii) N.B. , ;

*autres, ni les unes ni les autres*, agreeably to gender and number;  
 , suivant - 7 7 ;

these words require *ne* before the verb; Neither of them will study.  
 (bb) demander Ne ; - - 173 étudier.

Neither of these men can do it. I will not trust<sup>202</sup> either of them  
 (bb) faire 54 173 se fier à ,



## INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.\**

Do you know any of the ladies we have<sup>244</sup> just passed? No; I  
 - connaître †(s) venir de passer? ;  
 know none (of them.) I have not seen any (of them) before.  
 en<sup>54</sup> en<sup>55</sup> 206 N.B.  
 I should like to get acquainted with some of them. I know the two  
 169 faire connaissance 58 †  
 last<sup>89</sup>. Which of the two is the handsomest? They are both very  
 dernier. 80 † belle<sup>44</sup>? † très  
 handsome, and they have each a handsome fortune. You may<sup>178</sup>  
 29 , † beau bien. pouvoir  
 get acquainted with either of them, or with both, if you like. They  
 (kk) - - , , vouloir. †  
 come here every summer. Every body is fond of them. Every one  
 ici été. - aimer || 54  
 who knows them is fond of their company. They are very fond of  
 54 - || - compagnie. † - fort s'aimer -  
 each other. They are always with one another. Are they married?  
 † † marier<sup>158</sup>?  
 No, neither of them is married, but I think they are both promised.  
 191, † - - 158 , 221 † promettre. 158  
 I would give any thing I possess to be acquainted with them. You  
 (s) posséder<sup>170</sup> connu 200 58 †  
 may speak to either of them. Bring here every one of your books.  
 178 (kk) † - Apporter ici  
 Let<sup>248</sup> every one of you shew me his exercise. Every one of you  
 Que montrer<sup>54</sup> thème. - -  
 will be punished. Can I do any thing for you? Yes, you can.  
 punir. Pouvoir faire pour<sup>58</sup> , 70  
 You can help me as well as any body. Nobody is more capable  
 (kk) aider<sup>54</sup> 43 70  
 than you. I should like to buy something, but every thing is so  
 169 acheter , si  
 dear now, that one can not get any thing. I should like to  
 à présent, (bb) N.B. se procurer 162  
 have some of these flowers. Which do you think are the finest<sup>44</sup>?  
 (bb) 80 † - 133 belle<sup>29</sup>?  
 Some say that these are the finest<sup>29</sup>; some give the preference to  
 (bb) N.B. 89 N.B. 44 ; préférence  
 those. These men relate both the same story, but neither of them  
 83 N.B. (bb) rapporter même histoire, - -  
 believes that it<sup>62</sup> is true. I do not believe either of them. They are  
 croire (bb) N.B. 145 vrai<sup>29</sup>. - - 239  
 both wrong, whoever they be. Whosoever asks for me, tell him<sup>58</sup>  
 tort, 201 54, 162

\* See \* p. 281. † See † p. 320. ‡ Mind the *gender* of the noun which this pronoun represents.  
 † We have no other word to express the words *be fond of*, in French, but the verb *Aimer*, to like.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

that I am not at home. Whatever he writes, let <sup>248</sup> me know it.  
(bb) N.B. au logis. , faire N.B. <sup>58</sup> savoir <sup>59</sup>

Whatever is right, is not always approved. Whatever good is said of  
bien, approuver. bien

us, we are not told any thing new. Whatever your rank and riches  
dire (cc) nouveau. rang richesses

may be, or whatever rank and riches you have, do not be proud, if  
orgueilleux,

you will not (be disliked) by every body. No one ought to be a judge  
<sup>144</sup> déplaire à devoir <sup>172</sup> <sup>23</sup> juge

in his own cause. People often flatter themselves more than they should.  
<sup>213</sup> propre <sup>184</sup> flatter se <sup>54</sup> <sup>47</sup> <sup>178</sup>

Every one complains of his memory, but no one complains of his  
se plaindre

understanding. There would not be (so much<sup>6</sup>) disorder seen in the  
esprit. tant N.B. désordre \*

world, if youth<sup>7</sup> had a good impression given it at first, and if care  
monde, jeunesse d'abord,

was taken to form the mind of children as it ought to be. I have  
soin \* <sup>168</sup> former esprit <sup>7</sup> comme devrait - -

just been told that Mr. A. is dead. Indeed? Yes, they say so.  
<sup>244</sup> - dire En vérité? , le <sup>54</sup>

He was invited to supper yesterday at Mrs. B.'s. They waited<sup>127</sup>  
<sup>140</sup> inviter <sup>169</sup> souper hier <sup>208</sup> Madame attendre

for him a long time, but seeing that he did not come, somebody was  
<sup>201</sup> <sup>54</sup> - , tems, voir - <sup>138</sup> , -

sent<sup>127</sup> to look for him; he could<sup>127</sup> not be found any where; they  
envoyer <sup>172</sup> chercher <sup>201</sup> <sup>54</sup> ; pouvoir † - trouver nulle part ;

have been seeking<sup>155</sup> for him all night, and this morning he was  
- chercher <sup>201</sup> <sup>55</sup> 7 nuit, (bb) <sup>234</sup> -

found drowned in a pond, not far from Mrs. B.'s house. Every body  
<sup>136</sup> noyer <sup>213</sup> étang, non loin de <sup>25</sup>

is sorry (for it). Is it known how this accident happened<sup>136</sup>? No,  
fâché en <sup>55</sup> - savoir comment (bb) arriver <sup>238</sup>? <sup>191</sup>,

nobody knows. It is supposed that he (lost his way) in the dark. He  
<sup>70</sup> - s'imaginer s'égarer <sup>137</sup> <sup>213</sup> obscurité.

is to be buried to-morrow. You will be expected at his funeral.  
<sup>242</sup> enterrer demain. - attendre funérailles. (pl.)

You will go; will you not? I will not go, unless<sup>213</sup> I am invited  
<sup>70</sup> ; <sup>232</sup> <sup>70</sup> , à moins que <sup>195</sup> - inviter

(to it.) You may be sure that they will invite you.  
<sup>63</sup> <sup>178</sup> (kk) sûr (bb) N.B. <sup>54</sup>

\* Turn this sentence thus: One would not see so much disorder in the world, if one gave at first a good impression to youth, and if one took care to form the mind of children as one should.

† Express Not by Ne only, before the verb, as Nulle which comes after, supplies the place of Pas or Point.

## VERB.

AGREEMENT of the verb with its nominative.

*Accord*<sup>19</sup>                      *verbe*                      *son nominatif*.

You see in the conjugations that the termination of a verb differs  
*voir*                      *conjugaisons*                      (bb) *N.B.*                      *terminaison*                      *différer*

according to the noun or pronoun which is its<sup>17</sup> agent or nominative.

*suivant*                      -                      *nom*                      *pronon*                      *en*                      *nominatif*.

125. The verb must be of the same number and person as this<sup>2</sup>  
*devoir être*                      *même nombre*                      \**personne que* (bb)  
agent or nominative; I study; Thou studieth; He studies; My brother  
; *étudier*; ;  
studies; We study; You study; They study; My brothers study.  
; ; ;

126. When several substantives are the nominative of the same verb,  
*plusieurs substantif* †  
the verb must be (in the) plural number; My brother and sister study.  
*devoir être au pluriel* - ; <sup>3</sup>

127. If several substantives of different<sup>32</sup> persons are the nominative  
† *différent* <sup>29</sup> *personne*  
of the same verb; as the verb can not agree with two different  
; *comme*                      *s'accorder* <sup>29</sup> <sup>32</sup>  
persons at the same time; we<sup>90</sup> add to the sentence *nous* or *vous* with  
*à la* - *fois*; *N.B.* *ajouter* *phrase*  
which we<sup>90</sup> (make the verb agree.) We<sup>90</sup> add *nous*, if there is in the  
<sup>76</sup> *N.B.* *fait accorder le verbe.* *N.B.* , *il y a*  
sentence a substantive of the first<sup>33</sup> person; as, You and I agree.  
† *premier* <sup>29</sup> ; , <sup>52</sup> *être d'accord*.  
My sister and I are fond of study. She and I will learn together.  
<sup>52</sup> - *aimer* † *étude.* <sup>52</sup> *ensemble.*  
We<sup>90</sup> add *vous*, if there is in the sentence a substantive of the second  
*N.B.* , † <sup>29</sup> <sup>33</sup>  
person, and<sup>219</sup> there is none of the first; You and your brother do not  
, <sup>220</sup> *il n'y en ait pas* <sup>29</sup> ; -  
agree. You and he are continually<sup>183</sup> quarrelling. You and your  
*s'accorder.* <sup>52</sup> - *continuellement se quereller* <sup>155</sup>  
sister will learn together. You and they are of the same opinion.  
<sup>52</sup>

128. If the nominative of the verb is the relative pronoun *qui*, the  
*relatif*<sup>32</sup>  
verb must be of the same number and person as the substantive to  
*devoir*                      \* *que*  
which that pronoun relates; It<sup>62</sup> is I who will say my lesson first.  
<sup>76</sup> (bb) *se rapporter*; *N.B.* <sup>52</sup> *dire* *leçon le premier.*  
It<sup>62</sup> is we who will say our lessons first. It<sup>62</sup> is you who will  
*N.B.* *les premiers* *N.B.* -

\* Repeat of the same before person.

† See note \* page 205.

‡ See note † page 326.

## VERB.

say your lesson first. It<sup>62</sup> is they who will say their lessons first.  
N.B. 52

129. If *qui* relates to several substantives of different persons, the  
se rapporter plusieurs substantif\* 29,  
 verb agrees with the first<sup>33</sup> person in preference to the second, and  
s'accorder 29 par préférence 29,  
 with the second in preference to the third; It<sup>62</sup> is you and I who will  
29 par 29 ; N.B. 52  
 begin. It<sup>62</sup> is you and your brother who will (go out) first.  
commencer. N.B. sortir les premiers.

130. When the collective<sup>32</sup> substantives *la plupart, infinité, nombre,*  
Quand collectif 29,  
*quantité, troupe, multitude,* are followed by another substantive, the verb  
, , , suivis 200,  
 agrees with this last substantive; A great number of men perished.  
s'accorder dernier ; 8 périr. 137  
 Most of the cavalry deserted. A crowd of people<sup>229</sup> came to see them.  
La plupart cavalerie désertier 137. foule 8 gens venir 172

131. The collective substantives *le quart, le tiers, la moitié* require  
, , demander  
 the verb in the third person singular; One fourth of the ships were  
à au singulier ; Le quart navire 137  
 taken or destroyed. One third of the crews deserted. One half of  
prendre détruire. Le tiers équipage 137 La moitié  
 men do not think, and the other half know not<sup>192</sup> what to think.  
7 penser, ne savoir N.B. 83 172

PLACING of the nominative with the verb.  
Place 19 nominatif verbe.

132. When the sentence is expositive, i. e. when a question is not  
phrase expositive, 92  
 asked, the nominative is placed before the verb; I study well. He  
faire, - se placer ; étudier  
 studies well. This boy studies well. You study well. They study well.  
garçon †

But when the sentence is interrogative, (it is necessary) to consider  
, il faut 172 considérer  
 whether the nominative of the verb is a noun or a pronoun.  
si

133. If, when a question is asked, the nominative of the verb is one  
, 92 faire,  
 of the personal<sup>32</sup> pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, on,*  
personnel 29  
 or *ce*, these words are placed in french, as the corresponding<sup>32</sup> words  
, mot - se placer † en , comme qui y correspondent

\* See note \* page 205.

† See note (ce) page 223.

‡ See N. B. note (ii) page 235.



## VERB.

are in english, immediately after the verb ; Do I study well? Does  
*se placer* , \* ; *étudier*  
 he study well? Do we study well? Do you study well? Do they study?

134. If, when the sentence is interrogative, the nominative of the  
 , *quand* *phrase* ,  
 verb is a noun, this noun is placed before the verb, the same as  
 , (*bb*) - *se placer* † , *de même que*  
 in expositive sentences ; but (in order to) shew that a question  
 213 29 32 7 ; 170 *faire voir* (*bb*) N.B.  
 is asked, we<sup>90</sup> put after the verb one of the pronouns *il*, *Elle*, *ils*,  
 92 *faire*, N.B. *mettre*  
*Elles*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun which is the  
 , *suivant* - 8  
 nominative of the verb ; Does this boy study well? Does this girl  
 ; (*bb*) *garçon* *fille*  
 study well? Do these boys study well? Do these girls study well?  
 (*bb*)  
 Do any of them learn french? Is not the french language very  
 96 58 7*français?* 29 32 *langue*  
 difficult? Are your masters pleased<sup>29</sup> with you? Does your father  
*difficile?* *content* N.B. 200  
 often come to see you? Has your mother been here lately?  
 184 172 *ici depuis peu?*

INDICATIVE MOOD.—Use<sup>19</sup> of the tenses of the indicative.  
*Emploi* *tems* 2 *indicatif.*

135. The present tense of the indicative is generally used in the  
*présent* - 183 *s'employer* †  
 same instances in french as in english ; I like study. Study is the  
*cas* *en* *que* ; 7*étude* 7 2  
 food of the mind. But the past<sup>32</sup> tenses require several distinctions  
*aliment* 2 *esprit.* *passé* 29 *demande plusieurs*  
 in french, which the corresponding<sup>32</sup> tenses do not require in english ;  
 , *qui y correspondent* ;  
 therefore pay particular<sup>32</sup> attention to the following<sup>32</sup> rules.  
*ainsi* *faire une particulier* 29 *suivant* 29

136. If we<sup>90</sup> speak of an action past<sup>29</sup> without mentioning<sup>154</sup> the time  
 N.B. *passé* N.B. *faire mention* *du tems*  
 in which it 136 passed, or if we<sup>90</sup> mention a period, and<sup>219</sup> that  
 76 62 *s'est passée,* N.B. *faire mention d'un période,† et* 220 (*bb*)  
 period is not yet entirely elapsed, such as to-day, this morning,  
*soit* *encore* *écoulé,* *tel* *que aujourd'hui,* *matin,*  
 this week, this month, this year, &c. the action being past, and the  
 (*bb*) , *mois,* 233 , &c. *étant* 158 ,

\* See note \* page 223.

† See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

‡ See note † page 224.

## VERB.—INDICATIVE MOOD.

period being still present, we<sup>90</sup> make (the verb partake) both of the  
*encore* , N.B. *faire* *participer le verbe* *et* <sup>222</sup>  
 present and past time, by adding the past<sup>20</sup> participle of the verb  
<sup>3</sup>*passé* - , (hh) *ajouter* <sup>32</sup> N.B. *participe*  
 expressing the action, to the present of the auxiliary<sup>32</sup> verbs *avoir*,  
*qui exprime* , *auxiliaire* <sup>29</sup>  
 TO HAVE, or *Être*, TO BE; as, When did you see Mr. A. ? I saw him  
 , *ou* , ; , *Quand* \* †  
 this morning. I met him as he was coming to town. He told me he  
<sup>234</sup> † *comme* <sup>138</sup> <sup>155</sup> 7 *dire* † <sup>221</sup>  
 was going to<sup>208</sup> your house. Did you not see him ? No, I did<sup>70</sup> not. He was.  
<sup>138</sup> <sup>155</sup> N.B. † , N.B. † †  
 at<sup>208</sup> our house, but I was not in. He only<sup>184</sup> found my sister there,  
 N.B. , <sup>140</sup> *y* <sup>54</sup> § † *y* <sup>55</sup>,  
 and he would not stop. Did you hear that he was going to be mar-  
*vouloir* ¶ *rester.* † <sup>155</sup> <sup>172</sup> - *se ma-*  
 ried ? No, I did not ; (i. e. *hear*<sup>70</sup> *it.*) Who told you so ? His cousin  
*rier* ? , † ; N.B. † <sup>55</sup> *le* <sup>59</sup> <sup>14</sup> *cousine* f.  
 told me so. I heard that he was going abroad. I shall  
 † <sup>55</sup> *le* <sup>59</sup> † - <sup>155</sup> *dans les pays étrangers.*  
 soon<sup>184</sup> know if it be true ; for, when he called this morning, he  
*bientôt* <sup>217</sup> ; *car,* *passer* ,  
 promised my sister that he would call again (as he goes back.)  
 † <sup>182</sup> (bb) N.B. *repasser* - *en s'en retournant.*  
 137. If we<sup>90</sup> speak of an action past<sup>187</sup> in a period of time which is  
 N.B. *passé* <sup>8</sup>  
 also entirely elapsed, such as yesterday, last<sup>32</sup> week, last month, last  
*écoulé,* *hier,* *dernier* <sup>29</sup> 7, <sup>32</sup> 7 , <sup>33</sup>  
 year<sup>7</sup>, &c. then both the time and the action being past<sup>31</sup>, we<sup>90</sup> use the  
<sup>283</sup> , &c. *alors* *et* *passé* , N.B.  
 perfect tense of the verb ; Where did you dine yesterday ? I dined at  
*parfait* ; *Où* *diner* † <sup>208</sup>  
 my mother's, and supped at my sister's. Did you not go to the play ?  
 , *souper* <sup>208</sup> † *comédie* ?  
 Yes, I did<sup>70</sup>. What play did they<sup>90</sup> act ? They<sup>90</sup> acted a new comedy.  
 , N.B. <sup>82</sup> *pièce* † N.B. *jouer* N.B. † *nouvelle comédie.*  
 How were you entertained ? I did not pay much<sup>8</sup> attention to the  
<sup>185</sup> † *amuser* <sup>158</sup> ? † *faire* N.B.  
 play. I conversed all the while with a gentleman who sat<sup>140</sup> by me.  
*pièce.* *parler* † *tems* *monsieur* *être* *près de* <sup>58</sup>  
 Did you not see me ? No ; I did<sup>70</sup> not. Where were you ? I was  
 † <sup>191</sup> ; † N.B. *Où* <sup>140</sup> <sup>140</sup>  
 (in the) pit. I did not stop long. I went home, where I read the play.  
*au* *parterre.* † *rester* † *au logis,* † *pièce.*

\* Turn ; when have you seen &amp;c.

† Turn ; I have seen him.

‡ See note \* page 225.

‡ Turn ; he has been &amp;c.

§ See note \* page 275.

¶ Turn ; he has not been willing.

## VERB.—INDICATIVE MOOD

138. Sometimes we<sup>90</sup> speak of an action that was passing, and which  
*Quelquefois* N.B. *parler* 74 — *se passer* 143,  
 consequently was incomplete at a period which we<sup>90</sup> mention<sup>225</sup>;  
*par conséquent* 140 *imparfait* 29 *dont* N.B. *faire mention*;  
 then the period being past, and the action being at that time incom-  
*alors* , (bb)  
 plete, we<sup>90</sup> use the imperfect tense of the verb; What were you  
 N.B. *employer* *imparfait* — ; 83  
 doing when I came in? I was preparing myself to study a music  
 155 *suis* 136 *entré*? 155 *me* 54 169 *musique*  
 lesson. I was going to play a tune. I was trying to tune my instru-  
 25 155 172 *air*, 155 *essayar* 168 *accorder*  
 ment. Stop. You were doing it (the wrong way). You were spoiling  
*Arrêter*, 155 54 *à rebours*, *gâter* 155  
 it. They<sup>90</sup> were making (a great deal) of noise at<sup>208</sup> your house last  
 62 N.B. 155 *beaucoup* *bruit* N.B.  
 night. Yes, we had some company. We were enjoying ourselves.  
 235 , 9 *compagnie*, 155 *réjouir* *nous* 54

139. We<sup>90</sup> also<sup>184</sup> make use of the imperfect to denote that the  
 N.B. *faire* *usage* 170 *désigner* *que*  
 action (of which) we<sup>90</sup> are speaking has been habitual<sup>22</sup>, or that it has  
 74 N.B. — 155 *habituel*, (g) 62  
 been reiterated; How did you spend your time, when you were in the  
*réitéré* 158 ; 185 271 *le* *temps*, 140 *à*  
 country? As soon as we were up, we walked in the garden till  
 230 *Aussitôt* *que* 140 *levés*, *se promener* *jusqu'au*  
 breakfast time; after breakfast we (sat at our work) till (twelve  
*déjeuné* 23 ; *travailler* *jusqu'à*  
 o'clock), and then we studied till dinner time. How did you spend  
 236 , *alors* *dîné* 23 185 271  
 your evenings? You had neither plays nor concerts to go to. Some  
*les* 234 224 \* *comédie* \* — *où aller* †  
 ladies and gentlemen in our neighbourhood often called upon us, or  
 †*messieurs* *voisinage* 184 266 ,  
 we called upon them, and we sometimes made a little concert, or we  
 266 58 , 184 *faire* *petit* ,  
 played at different games, but we generally<sup>184</sup> spent the evenings in  
*ouer* *à* 29 32 *jeux*, *ordinairement* 271 234 169  
 reading or in conversing. We spent our time very agreeably.†  
*lire* 169 *converser*, 271 *le* *agréablement*.

\* Do not put any article before the noun which follows *NI*.

† See note † page 282.

‡ By using the *Perfect* instead of the *Imperfect* in these instances, the sentence would be equally grammatical, but the idea would be very different. This difference will appear obvious in the following examples composed of the same words;

*Quand j'ÉTAIS à Londres, j'ALLAIS à la comédie;*  
*Quand je FUS à Londres, j'ALLAI à la comédie.*

By the first of these expressions, people will understand that when I was in London, I used to go to the play; by the second they will understand that when I arrived at London, at a certain period either named or alluded to, I went to the play. Learners are very apt to confound these two tenses.

## VHRB—INDICATIVE MOOD.

140. Another very extensive use of the imperfect is in descriptions;  
 130 *étendu* 32 *usage* 213 7 *imparfait* ;  
 for, whenever we<sup>90</sup> describe the state, place, situation, order or dis-  
*car, toutes les fois que* N.B. *décrire* 2 *état*, 3 *lieu*, 3 *ordre*, 3  
 position in which the beings (of which) we<sup>90</sup> speak were, in a time  
 76 *être* 74 N.B. 140 , *tems*  
 past, we<sup>90</sup> make use of the imperfect; Where were you yesterday? I  
 , N.B. \* ; *Où hier?*  
 called<sup>137</sup> at<sup>208</sup> your house, but you were not in. I was not well. I had  
 286 N.B. , *y* 54 241  
 a head-ache; and as I could not study, I went<sup>137</sup> to walk in the  
 24 *mal à la tête* ; *comme* , *aller* 172 283 213  
 fields. There had been a little<sup>8</sup> rain. The plants were so fresh, the  
*Il* 240 *un peu* N.B. *pluie*. *si fraîche* 22,  
 trees were so green, and formed such an agreeable shade, and the flowers  
*vert* 29 , *former* *si* † 32 *ombrage*,  
 spread so sweet<sup>32</sup> a smell, that I could not be tired with admiring  
*épandre* *douce* 33 *odeur*, — *se lasser* 163 *admirer* 154  
 the beautiful landscape which surrounded me. I wished to stay  
*beau* 33 *paysage* *entourer* 172 *rester*  
 longer<sup>41</sup>; but it was late, I was tired, and I had a long way to go.  
*long-tems* ; *tard*, *lasser*, *chemin à faire*.

141. The future is generally used in the same instances in french  
*futur* † 183 213 *cas* *en*  
 as in english; When will you call upon me? I will call to-night.  
*que* ; *Quand* 266 58 233  
 I shall not be in. I shall be in the country. I will (set out) after dinner.  
*y* 54 230 *partir* *dîné*.

142. The present tense is sometimes used in french as in english  
 — † *en* *comme*  
 to express an action that is<sup>242</sup> to pass in a time (not far) remote  
 170 *exprimer* 74 172 *se passer* *peu* *éloigné*  
 from the time (in which) we are; as, Where do you dine to-day?  
 , *où (v)* ; *comme*, *Où* *dîner*  
 Do you go to the play to-night? No, we go to a ball. But if a  
*comédie* 235 191 , *bal*.  
 verb (in the) present tense, denoting a future action, is preceded or  
*au* — , *désignant* 33 , *précédé*  
 followed by another verb (in the) future, that present tense must  
*suivi* 208 *au* *futur*, (bb) — *devoir*  
 be expressed by the future in french; Call upon me as soon as you  
 — *s'exprimer* ; *en* ; 206 43 *tôt* 43  
 can. We shall begin as<sup>43</sup> soon as you are come. When you are  
*pouvoir*. *commencer* 43 *arrivé*.

• See note • page 226.

† Turn; a shade so agreeable.

‡ See N. B. note (ii) page 235.



## VERB—INDICATIVE MOOD.

ready, we will go and take a walk<sup>203</sup>. You shall not (go out) till  
*prêt, - (nn) N.B. ne sortir que*  
 after we have done. We will go as soon as you will. I hope we  
*après que finir. partir 43 tôt 43 221*  
 shall see you oftener<sup>41</sup>, when we are in the country. Come as often  
*souvent, à 230 43*  
 as you can. I will call upon you every 7time that I go (that way).  
*43 296 104 fois 74 par là.*

143. The conditional tense has also the same properties in french  
*conditionnel - aussi propriétés en*  
 as in english; I should like much to go to France. What would you  
*que ; fort 169 6 83*  
 do, if you were there? You would not have any<sup>8</sup> pleasure. You  
*faire, y 54 N.B. plaisir.*  
 could not understand the language. I think I should soon<sup>183</sup> learn it.  
*entendre langue. 221 bientôt*

144. After the conjunction *IF*, *Si*, *SHALL*, *WILL* can not be expressed  
*conjonction IF, , SHALL, WILL - s'exprimer*  
 by the future in french, nor *SHOULD*, *WOULD* by the conditional;  
*par futur en , ni SHOULD, WOULD*  
 (*WILL* must be expressed) by the present, and *WOULD* by the imperfect  
*il faut exprimer WILL , WOULD imparfait*  
 of the verb *vouloir*, which then<sup>184</sup> governs the following verb in the  
*, 74 alors régir qui suit 32 à*  
 infinitive; as, I will go with you, if you will come with me. I would  
*infinitif ; , \* 58 , 58*  
 go with you, if you would come with me. I will teach you french,  
*, \* enseigner 7français,*  
 if you will learn it. I would teach you french, if you would learn  
*\* apprendre. \* 7 , \**  
 it. How long do you think that I should be in learning it, if I should  
*186 penser à apprendre , †*  
 begin now? You may learn it in six months, if you will take  
*commencer 178 215 , \* prendre*  
 pains. You might learn it in six months, if you would take pains.  
*de la peine. 178 215 \**  
 I will be obliged to you, if you will call upon me to-morrow<sup>183</sup>. I  
*obligé (o) 54 , \* 206 demain. N.B.*  
 would be (very much) obliged to you, if you would call upon me.  
*très - (o) , \* 266*

\* Observe, that in the sentences where *IF* occurs, there are generally two *Will*, or two *Would*; that *IF* which follows *If* is the present, and *Would* is the imperfect of the verb to *WILL*, to *BE WILL-ING*, (see page 143.) and they must be expressed by the corresponding tenses of the verb *VOULOIR*, which then governs the following verb in the infinitive; the other *Will* is the sign of the future, and the other *Would* is the sign of the conditional of the following verb, which must also be expressed by the corresponding tenses, i.e. the *Future* or the *Conditional* of that verb in french. See also note \* page 228.

† When *Should* is the sign which follows *If*, this sign must be left out, and the following verb must be put in the *Imperfect* of the indicative.

## VERB—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Use<sup>19</sup> of the subjunctive.

Usage subjunctif.

145 When we<sup>90</sup> speak of an action, the event (of which) is un-  
 N.B. événement 75 in-  
 certain, which is generally the case when, in a sentence of two parts  
 certain, ce qui cas, 213 phrase partie  
 connected by the conjunction QUE, the first verb is either interrogative  
 joint 157 par conjonction, ou interrogatif  
 or negative, or preceded by SI, this uncertainty is imparted to the  
 négatif, 200, (bb) incertitude — se communiquer  
 hearer, by putting the second verb (in the) subjunctive; I think it will  
 auditeur, (hh) au ; 221  
 rain soon. Do not you think it will?<sup>70</sup> It will perhaps rain a little,  
 pleuvoir bientôt. 231 N.B. 183 un peu,  
 but I do not think that it will rain much. If I thought that it  
 (bb) N.B. 140  
 would not rain, I would stop, but there is no<sup>8</sup> appearance that it will  
 149, rester, 246 190 N.B.  
 be fine to-day. I will (come again), if I find that it does not rain.  
 240 revenir, trouver

But observe with respect to interrogative sentences, that it is only  
 à l'égard des 32, ce  
 when we<sup>90</sup> wish to express our ignorance of the thing (enquired after)  
 N.B. vouloir 172 témoigner son † dont on s'informe  
 that we<sup>90</sup> use the subjunctive; for, if the person who asks the question  
 que N.B. employer ; car, — celui faire  
 knew that a thing is, and only enquired<sup>196</sup> whether the person whom  
 140, 184 s'informer si 76  
 he is speaking to knows it likewise, he would use the indicative; Do  
 155 203 aussi,  
 you not think that I did well to go before the rain came? Do  
 (bb) N.B. 196 de s'en aller 218 pluie venir?  
 not you think that I should have been wet, if I had stayed longer?  
 (bb) N.B. mouillé, 140 rester 41

146. All verbs and adjectives denoting will, wish, desire, com-  
 7 7 qui désignent volonté, souhait, désir, com-  
 mand, fear, wonder, surprise, astonishment, joy, gladness, grief,  
 mandement, crainte, admiration, surprise, étonnement, joie, aise, peine,  
 sorrow, in short all expressions which denote any passion or emotion  
 chagrin, en un mot 29 7 quelque ou  
 of the soul, followed by the conjunction que, require the following verb  
 2 âme, † suivi 29 200, demander  
 (in the) subjunctive; I am glad<sup>221</sup> you are here. I wish<sup>221</sup> my brother  
 au ; bien aise ici. 189

\* See note \* page 229. † We could not say *notre* after *on*, which is singular. ‡ See note \* page 230.

## VERB.—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

would come. I wonder that he is not yet arrived. I am afraid<sup>221</sup>  
*s'étonner* (bb) N.B. *encore* — *craindre*  
 some misfortune has<sup>195</sup> befallen him. It<sup>62</sup> is a pity that somebody  
*quelque* <sup>238</sup> *arrivé* *lui* <sup>55</sup> N.B. <sup>24</sup> *dommage* (bb) N.B. <sup>95</sup>  
 did<sup>136</sup> not go with him. I am surprised that he has not written to  
<sup>238</sup> *allé* <sup>58</sup> *surpris* (o)  
 me. I am sorry that he went<sup>136</sup> there without my knowing it. I would  
<sup>55</sup> *fâché* <sup>238</sup> *y* <sup>55</sup> <sup>218</sup> *je* *susse* <sup>156</sup> <sup>54</sup>  
 have taken care that he should be treated as he deserves.  
*soin* — <sup>92</sup> *traiter* <sup>149</sup> *comme* *mériter*.

147. The following<sup>32</sup> impersonal<sup>32</sup> verbs and adjectives, *il faut, il est*  
*suivant* <sup>29</sup> \* *impersonnel* <sup>29</sup> , ,  
*rems, il convient, il importe, il vaut mieux, il suffit, seul, à propos,*  
 , , , , , ,  
*nécessaire, indifférent, cruel, honteux, juste, injuste, possible, im-*  
*possible,* followed by the conjunction *QUE*, require also the following  
 , <sup>157</sup> <sup>200</sup> , *demande* *qui suit* <sup>32</sup>  
 verb (in the) subjunctive; It is time that we should go<sup>146</sup>. I must be  
*au* ; *s'en aller* † <sup>181</sup>  
 ready to-night. I must (set out) to-morrow. It<sup>62</sup> is fit that I should  
*prêt* <sup>235</sup> *partir* N.B. *à propos*  
 see in what state my affairs are. It<sup>56</sup> is impossible that they should  
<sup>48</sup> <sup>82</sup> *état* *affaires* N.B. <sup>62</sup>  
 be so bad as I am told. It<sup>62</sup> is shameful that my partner does not  
<sup>148</sup> *mal* *que* <sup>92</sup> *dire*. N.B. *honteux* *associé*  
 write to me. Is it<sup>62</sup> necessary that you should go yourself? Is it<sup>62</sup> not  
 (o) N.B. <sup>148</sup> (m) N.B. — N.B.  
 enough that you write to him? I think it would be better that you  
*suffire* (o) <sup>221</sup> *valoir* *mieux*  
 should send<sup>149</sup> somebody. I do not know any body whom I can send.  
*y* <sup>70</sup> *envoyer* <sup>95</sup> <sup>97</sup> <sup>145</sup> *y* <sup>70</sup>  
 I must either go myself, or I must send my brother. He is the only  
<sup>181</sup> *ou* *y* <sup>70</sup> (m) N.B., *y* <sup>70</sup> <sup>65</sup> *seul*  
 man whom I can trust<sup>202</sup>. It<sup>62</sup> is indifferent whether I go or not.  
*me* *fier* à <sup>203</sup> N.B. *que* *y* <sup>70</sup> *non*.

N.B. The subjunctive mood is also used after an *Adjective* (in the)  
*subjonctif* — — <sup>183</sup> *s'employer* *au*  
 superlative degree, see the 50th rule; After *Rien, aucun, pas un, per-*  
*superlatif,* — , *voir* *règle;* , , ,  
*sonne,* see (dd) p. 219; After *quelque, qui que ce soit, quoique ce soit,*  
 , , , , ,  
 see 114th, 115th, 117th, 118th rules; After the conjunctions *Afin que,*  
 , , , , ,  
*amoins que, avant que, quoi que,* and a few others, see 218th rule.

\* Put *suivant* after *adjectifs*.† See the reflexive verb *s'en Aller*, page 117.

VERB—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

USE<sup>19</sup> of the tenses of the subjunctive. The tenses of the subjunc-  
*Emploi* *tens* *subjonctif.*

live depend (on<sup>200</sup> the) tenses of the verb which governs it.  
*dépendre des régir* 62

148. The present of the subjunctive is used when the verb which  
- *s'employer*

governs it, is (in the) present or in the future of the indicative; Do you

think your sister will come? I (am afraid) she will not be here to-day.

Somebody must go and fetch her. He will be back before we begin

It<sup>62</sup> is fit that somebody should go for her before it is too late.  
N.B. à propos 95 147 \* 54 213 trop

149. The perfect of the subjunctive is used when the verb which  
*parfait* *- s'employer*

governs it, is (in the) perfect, in the imperfect, or (in the) conditional;  
*au* <sup>2</sup> *imparfait,* *au* *conditionnel*;

I did not think<sup>221</sup> my sister would have<sup>145</sup> come. I (was afraid) she would  
 140 238 158 *craindre* 221

not be here in time. It<sup>62</sup> was that which made me wish that somebody  
<sup>146</sup>            *à tems.*            N.B. <sup>140</sup>   <sup>89</sup>   <sup>74</sup>            *faisait*            (*bb*) N.B.   <sup>95</sup>

would go for her. He might have returned before the play began.

It<sup>62</sup> would be a pity<sup>221</sup> she should not see it<sup>62</sup> after waiting<sup>154</sup> so long.  
 N.B. - *dommage* <sup>146</sup> *avoir attendu*

150. N. B. The perfect of the subjunctive is also used, though the  
*parfait* 92 184 *employe*, 218

foregoing<sup>32</sup> verb is (in the) present, if, after the subjunctive, there is  
*qui précède* <sup>218</sup> *au* <sup>246</sup>

another verb in the imperfect, some conditional expression, or if the  
à <sup>2</sup>, *quelque conditionnelle* <sup>32</sup>,

action spoken of is past; Do you think your sister would come, if  
*dont on parle* *passé* <sup>158</sup> 221 143

I went for her now? It<sup>62</sup> is not probable that she would have<sup>145</sup> gone  
*aller* † \* 54 N. B. 293 158

there, if she had not been invited<sup>150</sup>. I do not think we should have  
<sup>y 55,</sup>                    †                    92                    inviter.                    221                    145

seen her, if it had not been for you. I do not think we should.

151. If after a verb (in the) subjunctive there is another verb express-  
an 246

\* Go for is expressed by *Aller chercher*, not *Aller pour*.

† *Was, Were, Had, Did, or any other past tense that comes after IF, Si, must be in the Imperfect.*

† Instead of repeating the verb, the French would say; *Je ne le pense pas non plus.*



## PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

ing doubt, preceded by the conjunction *que*, that verb must also be  
 , *précédé* <sup>200</sup> , *devoir*  
 (in the) subjunctive ; Do you think she expects<sup>145</sup> that I shall see her  
*au* ; <sup>291</sup> *s'attendre* *revoir*  
 again ? I wonder she could<sup>179</sup> have thought that I was capable (of it.)  
 \* *s'étonner* <sup>321</sup> *ait* <sup>146</sup> *pu* *penser* <sup>en</sup> <sup>54</sup>

152. When the gerund or present participle is used to qualify a  
*gérondif* <sup>32</sup> *participe* - *s'employer* <sup>169</sup> *qualifier*  
 noun, it agrees like an adjective in gender and number with that  
 , *s'accorder* *comme* *en* *genre* <sup>201</sup> *nombre* (*bb*)  
 noun ; A charming girl, with a moving voice, singing her growing  
 ; *charmant* <sup>32</sup> , *de* *touchant* <sup>32</sup> , <sup>153</sup> *naissant* <sup>32</sup>  
 love, in seeking<sup>153</sup> her wandering sheep, heard some threatening  
*amours*, *f. en* *chercher* *errant* <sup>32</sup> *brébis*, *entendre* <sup>9</sup> *menaçant* <sup>32</sup>  
 words followed by piercing cries. I heard her trembling steps.  
*parole* *suivi* <sup>157</sup> <sup>200</sup> *perçant* <sup>32</sup> *cri*. *tremblant* <sup>32</sup> *pas*.

153. But, when the gerund expresses the action, and not the quality  
 , *exprimer* , *non* *qualité*  
 of a substantive, it does not agree with that substantive ; A woman  
*substantif*, <sup>62</sup> *s'accorder* ;  
 wandering through the country<sup>230</sup>, (lost her way.) Some men piercing  
*errant* *à travers* *campagne*, *s'égarer*. <sup>9</sup> *perçant*  
 through the croud and threatening to kill her, she fled trembling.  
 - *foule* *menaçant* <sup>166</sup> *tuer* , *s'enfuir* *en*

N.B. If the substantive to which the gerund refers is the object  
<sup>76</sup> *se rapporter*  
 of a verb, it is generally expressed by the indicative in french ; We  
 , - <sup>183</sup> *s'exprimer* *par* *en* ;  
 met a woman wandering through the country. We heard a man  
*errer* *à travers* <sup>280</sup>  
 threatening to kill her. We saw some huntsmen seeking for a hare.  
 \* *menacer* <sup>168</sup> <sup>9</sup> *chasseur* *chercher* - *lièvre*.

154. The english gerund being governed by a VERB, or by the pre-  
<sup>32</sup> *régi* *par* *VERBE*,  
 positions OF, FROM, AT, FOR, AFTER, WITH, WITHOUT, is expressed by  
*OF, FROM, AT, FOR, AFTER, WITH, WITHOUT*, - *s'exprimer*  
 the infinitive of the verb in french ; I saw you doing it, without  
*infinitif* *en* ; <sup>136</sup> ,  
 taking any pains. I was afraid of spoiling it. I blame him for  
*de la peine*. *craindre* <sup>140</sup> *gâter* <sup>200</sup>  
 going away, after having promised to wait for me. Be contented  
*s'en être allé*, <sup>168</sup> <sup>201</sup> <sup>54</sup> - *se contenter* ,  
 with telling him<sup>162</sup> so. There is no occasion for (using him ill.)  
<sup>200</sup> (f) p. 79. *le* <sup>59</sup> <sup>246</sup> <sup>190</sup> *lieu* *de* *maltraiter* <sup>54</sup> -

\* Again is expressed by *re* before *voir*

† See the Imperative of a reflexive verb, page 114.

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

155. The english gerund which is so often used with the auxiliary  
<sup>32</sup> *gérondif* - <sup>183</sup> *s'employer* \* <sup>32</sup> *auxiliaire*  
 verb BE, to define an action more particularly, can not be expressed  
<sup>BE, 170</sup> *définir* <sup>particulièrement,</sup> - <sup>s'exprimer</sup> \*  
 by the gerund in french; (the auxiliary verb must be left out,) and  
 ; <sup>il faut omettre le verbe auxiliaire</sup> ,  
 (the gerund must be made into a verb) (in the) same tense and person  
<sup>faire du gérondif un verbe</sup> <sup>au</sup> <sup>3</sup>  
 as the auxiliary verb is; What are you doing there? I am reading  
<sup>que</sup> <sup>32</sup> - ; <sup>83</sup> <sup>là ?</sup>  
 a novel. You are losing (a deal) of time. What have you been doing,  
<sup>roman.</sup> <sup>perdre</sup> <sup>beaucoup</sup> - ,  
 whilst I was dressing myself? I was waiting for my sister. I am  
<sup>pendant que</sup> <sup>habiller</sup> <sup>me</sup> <sup>54</sup> <sup>201</sup>  
 going to dress myself too. I (am afraid)<sup>221</sup> they will be going<sup>146</sup> before  
<sup>172</sup> <sup>54</sup> <sup>aussi.</sup> <sup>craindre</sup> <sup>195</sup> - <sup>partir</sup> <sup>218</sup>  
 I am ready. Make haste, for they are going to (set off) just now.  
<sup>prêt.</sup> <sup>se dépêcher,</sup> <sup>†</sup> <sup>car</sup> <sup>aller</sup> <sup>172</sup> <sup>partir</sup> <sup>tout à l'heure.</sup>

156. The gerund which is sometimes used as a substantive in  
 - <sup>183</sup> *s'employer* \* - <sup>en</sup>  
 english, i. e. preceded by an article, can not be expressed by the gerund  
 , <sup>précédé</sup> <sup>200</sup> , - <sup>s'exprimer</sup> \* <sup>par</sup>  
 in french; (it must be expressed) by a noun, if a noun synonymous to  
 ; <sup>il faut l'exprimer</sup> , <sup>synonyme</sup>  
 the verb can be found; as, the reading of good books forms the mind.  
<sup>92</sup> ; , <sup>lecture</sup> <sup>7</sup> <sup>83</sup> <sup>former</sup> <sup>esprit.</sup>  
 His having been instructed (turn; *his instruction*) was of great ser-  
 ; <sup>136</sup> <sup>d'un grand</sup>  
 vice to him. If a noun synonymous to the verb does not readily<sup>183</sup>  
<sup>(o)</sup> <sup>55</sup> <sup>aisément</sup>  
 occur to the mind, you<sup>181</sup> must give another turn to the sentence; as,  
<sup>se présenter</sup> , <sup>il N.B. faut</sup> <sup>tour</sup> <sup>phrase</sup> ; ,  
 I should have caught that bird, if it had not been for your making  
<sup>attraper</sup> <sup>2</sup> <sup>oiseau,</sup>  
 a noise; (turn; *if you had not made &c.*) You are the cause of his  
<sup>du bruit</sup> ; <sup>fait</sup> <sup>&c.</sup>  
 having been punished; (turn; *that he has been punished.*) What is the  
 ; ; <sup>83</sup>  
 reason for your being so angry with him? turn; *that you are* so angry.  
<sup>raison</sup> <sup>fâché</sup> <sup>200</sup> ? ;

157. The past<sup>32</sup> participle joined to a noun has the property of an  
<sup>passé</sup> <sup>joint</sup> <sup>propriété</sup>  
 adjective, and agrees in gender and number with that noun; A  
 , <sup>s'accorder</sup> <sup>en</sup> <sup>genre</sup> <sup>204</sup> <sup>nombre</sup> ;

• See N. B. note (ii) page 935.

† See the Imperative of a reflective verb, page 114.

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

married<sup>32</sup> man. A married<sup>32</sup> woman. Well brought up children. Well  
*marier* N.B. *bien élever*<sup>32</sup> - <sup>9</sup>

written letters. New built<sup>32</sup> houses. Roasted potatoes<sup>9</sup>.  
*écrite*<sup>32</sup> <sup>9</sup> *nouvellement bâtir*<sup>9</sup> *rôtir*<sup>32</sup> *pommes de terre*.

When a past<sup>32</sup> participle comes after the auxiliary<sup>32</sup> verbs HAVE or  
*auxiliaire*<sup>32</sup> HAVE

BE, you<sup>181</sup> must make a particular<sup>32</sup> distinction between these two verbs.  
*BE, il* N.B. *faut* *particulier*<sup>29</sup> *entre* (bb)

158. After the auxiliary verb *être*, to BE, the past participle agrees  
<sup>32</sup> *verbe*, to BE, <sup>32</sup> *s'accorder*  
 like an adjective, in gender and number with the nominative of that  
*comme* *adjectif*, <sup>204</sup> *nominatif* (bb)  
 verb; as, that man is married. That woman is married. Those  
 ; , *marier*. (bb)  
 children are well brought up. These letters are well written. The  
*élever* -  
 potatoes are not done enough. Those houses are very well built.  
*cuire* <sup>183</sup> *très* *bâtir*.

159. After the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to HAVE, the past participle  
<sup>32</sup> , to HAVE, <sup>32</sup>  
 never agrees with the nominative of the verb; so, in these examples;  
<sup>190</sup> *s'accorder* ; ainsi, (bb) *exemple*;  
 My mother has invited your sisters. Your sisters have invited my  
*invité*  
 mother, the participle *invité* must not change its masculine termination;  
 , *devoir* *changer* *sa* <sup>32</sup> *terminaison*;  
 except when the past participle comes after the participle *été*, BEEN,  
*excepté* <sup>32</sup> , BEEN,  
 serving with *avoir*, to form a compound tense; for then it agrees  
*servant* , <sup>169</sup> *former* *composé*<sup>32</sup> *tems*; *car* *alors* *s'accorder*  
 with the nominative of *avoir*; as, My sister has been invited. My  
 ; , *été* *invité*.  
 brothers have been invited. My sisters have been invited.

In all other instances (in which) the past participle comes after  
<sup>213</sup> <sup>7</sup> *cus* <sup>32</sup> *où*  
 HAVE, it (is necessary) to consider whether the participle has an object,  
*HAVE, il* - *faut* <sup>172</sup> *considérer* *si* *objet*,  
 and whether this object comes before or after the participle.  
<sup>206</sup>

If the participle comes before its object, it does not vary, i. e. it is  
<sup>son</sup> , *changer*,  
 always masculine and singular; but if it comes after its object, it  
*masculin* *singulier*;  
 agrees like an adjective in gender and number with that object; I  
*s'accorder* <sup>7</sup> *en* <sup>204</sup> <sup>2</sup> ;

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

have lost my watch. I have not found it. I have found a watch.  
*perdre* *montre.* *trouver* <sup>55</sup>

It is not that which I have lost. I have sent you a letter. I have  
<sup>65</sup> <sup>88</sup> *envoyer* <sup>55</sup> *lettre.*

not received it. Have you not received the letter which I have sent  
*recevoir* <sup>55</sup>

you? We have sold our house, but we have bought another. (That is)  
<sup>55</sup> *vendre* *maison,* *en* <sup>70</sup> *acheter* *une autre.* <sup>247</sup>

the house which we have sold, and (this is) the other which we have  
<sup>247</sup>

bought. We have gained a complete<sup>32</sup> victory. Have you heard  
*remporter* *complet* <sup>29</sup> *victoire.* *entendu parler*

of the victory which we have gained? We have destroyed or taken  
*détruire* *prendre*

all the enemy's<sup>25</sup> ships. (Here are) the frigates which we have taken.  
*ennemi* *vaisseau* <sup>247</sup> *frégate*

N. B. Observe that the participle agrees only with its direct object ;  
*Observer* (bb) N. B. *son* <sup>32</sup> ;

for, when the object is governed by a preposition expressed or under-  
*car,* *régir* *exprimer* <sup>157</sup> *sous-*

stood, the participle does not agree with that object ; (Here is) the  
*entendre* <sup>157</sup>, (bb) ; <sup>247</sup>

person to whom I have written the letter of which I have spoken to  
*personne* <sup>76</sup> <sup>74</sup> (o)

you. It mentions a victory to which we have not contributed a little.  
<sup>55</sup> <sup>62</sup> *faire mention d'* <sup>76</sup> *contribuer* - *peu* <sup>103</sup>

Over<sup>200</sup> (how many)<sup>a</sup> powerful<sup>32</sup> enemies have we not triumphed !  
*De* *combien* N. B. *puissant* <sup>29</sup> *triumpher !*

160. Sometimes after a participle preceded by an object, there is a  
*précédé* <sup>200</sup> , <sup>246</sup>

verb in the infinitive, then (it is necessary) to consider whether the  
*à* *infinitif,* *alors* *il faut* <sup>172</sup> *si*

object is governed by the participle, or by the infinitive which follows  
*régir* *par* , *suivre*

it. If the participle governs the object, it agrees in gender and num-  
<sup>62</sup> , <sup>62</sup> *s'accorder*

ber with that object ; but if the object is governed by the verb which  
<sup>3</sup>

follows the participle, the participle does not require any<sup>a</sup> agreement  
<sup>3</sup> *ne demander pas* N. B. *accord*

with it ;\* Have you finished the letter which I had given you to write?  
*l'objet ;* <sup>140</sup> <sup>55</sup> <sup>169</sup>

Have you finished the letter which you had begun to write? Have  
<sup>140</sup> <sup>†</sup> <sup>168</sup>

\* Here the noun must be repeated in the place of the pronoun, because the personal pronouns after a preposition, can not be used to represent things. See 64 rule, † See note \* page 233.



## PAST PARTICIPLE.

you read the books which I had lent you to read? Have you read  
 the books which I had advised you to read? Is that the actress  
 whom we heard<sup>135</sup> sing? Sing the song which we heard her<sup>55</sup> sing  
 (These are) the figures which I have lately learned to draw. I  
 still<sup>184</sup> see the same faults which you had resolved to avoid.  
 encore faute résoudre \* 168 éviter.

161. The participles *Plu, dû, pu, voulu* do not agree with the object  
 that precedes them, because the infinitive of the verb which comes be-  
 fore these words, is understood after them; You have not written this  
 letter so well as you ought. You have had all the time and all the  
 assistance that you wished<sup>133</sup>. I have taken all the pains that I could<sup>136</sup>.  
 secours 74 vouloir. 20 peine 74 pouvoir.

## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

(A word is<sup>92</sup> said) to govern another, when the word governing  
 obliges the governed to<sup>109</sup> conform to certain rules.  
 obliger mot qui est régi se conformer certaine (i) règle.

162. When a verb governs two substantives, either nouns or pro-  
 nouns, one of them requires a preposition, expressed before a noun, and  
 generally implied in the pronouns; Has your sister given my brother  
 any money? (turn; given money to my brother.) Yes, she has lent  
 him<sup>55</sup> some; (i. e. some to him.) Did he ask her for it? (turn; did he  
 (f) p. 79. (p); (o) 135 55 † 59;  
 ask it to her?) No, it<sup>68</sup> was she who offered it<sup>55</sup> him; (i. e. it to him.)  
 (o) † 191, N.B. 140 offrir<sup>136</sup> (f) p. 79.; (o)  
 They have requested me to buy them books, (to buy books to them.)  
 and to send them to them; but I will not send them any; (any to  
 them.) Have they returned your sister (to your sister) those which  
 she had lent them<sup>55</sup>? No, they have<sup>70</sup> not; i. e. returned them to her.  
 140 159 (f) p. 79. N.B. ; (o)

\* See note \* page 233.

† See note \* page 205

† See note † page 296.

## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

163. When a verb governs two objects, the shorter, i. e. the object which is compounded of the fewer<sup>41</sup> number of words, is generally placed first; I have brought your brother a very entertaining book. He must dedicate all the time that he can spare to study. How can he expect to learn unless<sup>195</sup> he pays all the attention he can to his books?

*régir objet, court<sup>41</sup>, composé plus petit<sup>8</sup> mot, —<sup>183</sup>*  
*se placer le premier; 162 amusant<sup>32</sup>*  
*181 donner 74 pouvoir — 7 étude 185*  
*s'attendre<sup>168</sup> 218 N.B. faire<sup>29</sup> (s)*

If the objects are nearly of an equal length, i. e. compounded of nearly the same number of words, the direct<sup>32</sup> object must be placed before the indirect; Have you lent my sister any money? She intends to present your brother with a book. He gives his friends (a great deal) of trouble. Tell her<sup>102</sup> that I will send her children some fruit.

*à peu près égale, , direct devoir — se placer<sup>206</sup>*  
*l'objet ; 162 9 avoir<sup>125</sup> dessein de*  
*faire présent 162 de \* 162 — beaucoup*  
*peine. (f) p. 79. (bb) N.B. 163*

Yet the indirect object must be placed first, though it were the longer<sup>41</sup>, if by placing it last, it<sup>62</sup> caused an amphibology with other words; as, Take the parcel which I have brought into the parlour. Have you sent the letter which I gave you to the (post office?)

*Cependant<sup>32</sup> devoir , quand même il serait*  
*long, (hh) le dernier, faisait amphibologie*  
*d'autres ; , 236 paquet*  
*salon 136 55 poste*

164. The same noun may be governed by two verbs which have both the same government, i. e. which are both used without a preposition, or which require both the same preposition; as, I hate and despise that young man. He is always talking and boasting<sup>155</sup> of what he does. He is always opposing and (finding fault) with what other people do; but we<sup>90</sup> could not say, I hate and mistrust that young man. He is always talking about, and finding fault with what other people do; because *se méfier* requires a preposition before the noun

*même 178 régi par ,*  
*122 régime , — 122 † s'employer —*  
*demande 128 ; , haïr*  
*mépriser (bb) 184 † parler<sup>155</sup> se vanter<sup>84</sup>*  
*faire. 184 † s'opposer<sup>155</sup> trouver<sup>125</sup> à redire à les autres*  
*— 39 faire ; N.B. , se méfier de*  
*184 parler de, trouver à redire à<sup>84</sup>*  
*39 faire ;*

• See note ¶ page 296. † Put this pronoun *after* the verb. ‡ Put this adverb *after* the second verb.

## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

which follows it, and *haïr* does not require any; and because *parler*  
*suivre* , 219 (p) 34;  
 and *trouver à redire* require different prepositions; we<sup>181</sup> must say; I  
 29 32 9 ; N.B. ;  
 hate that young man, and I mistrust him. He is always talking about  
 (bb) , *se méfier de* 58 184 155 200  
 what other people do, and finding fault (with it.)  
*les autres* - 39 , 155 *à redire* y 51

165. The same verb may govern two parts of a sentence, provided  
 178 *régir* *partie* *phrase*, 218  
 they are both affirmative or both negative; as our reputation depends  
 62 122 *affirmative* ou 122 *négative* ; *dépendre*  
 much (upon<sup>200</sup> the) caprice of men, but still more upon our actions;  
*du* 7 , *encore* *de*  
 but if one part of the sentence is affirmative and the other is negative  
*et* 219 *autre* 220  
 (the verb must be repeated;) so, instead of saying: Our reputation  
*il faut répéter le verbe* ; *ainsi, au lieu* 154 ;  
 does not depend (upon<sup>200</sup> the) caprice of men, but upon our good or  
*du* , 200 29  
 204 our bad actions; repeat the verb, and say; *but it depends* upon our  
*de* 29 ; *répéter* , 63 290  
 good or our bad actions. All men are equal; it<sup>62</sup> is not birth<sup>7</sup>, but  
 7 *égaux* ; N.B. *naissance*,  
 virtue alone (say, *it<sup>62</sup> is virtue alone*) which makes the difference.  
 7 *vertu seule* N.B. 74

166. Some verbs govern the verbs which follow them, indifferently  
*régir* *suivre* , *indifféremment*  
 in the infinitive or (in the) subjunctive; but when any one of these  
 à 2 *au* ; 96  
 verbs governs two verbs, they must be both (in the) same mood; so,  
 , *devoir* 122 *au* *mode* ; *ainsi*,  
 (it would not be proper to say;) I am glad to see you, and *that I*  
*on ne dirait pas bien* ; *bien aise de* , *que*  
*have* an opportunity to tell you so; you<sup>181</sup> must say, and *to have an*  
 24 *occasion* 103 59 *le* 54 ; N.B. , *de* 24  
 opportunity to tell you so. Instead of saying: I have ordered the  
 168 59 *le* 54 *Au lieu de* 154 ; *ordonné*  
 coach to (be got ready), and that they<sup>90</sup> bring<sup>255</sup> it here; say, I have  
*d'* *apprêter,†* , *que* N.B. *amener* 54 *ici* ; *dire*,  
 ordered the coach to be got ready, and to be brought here; or, I have  
 168 - *apprêter,†* 168 - 255 ; ,  
 ordered that the coach be got ready, and that they<sup>90</sup> bring it here.  
 92 , N.B. 256 54

\* See note † page 282.

† Turn; to get ready the coach, and to bring &amp;c.

## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

167. Passive verbs require *de* or *par* before the noun which they  
*passif*<sup>32</sup> 7 *demande* 206

govern. They require *de*, when the verb expresses an action wholly of  
*régir.* *exprimer* *entièrement*

the mind; as, He is blamed by all his friends, and despised by all his  
*esprit* ; , *mépriser*

neighbours. She is commended and esteemed by every body. They  
*voisin.* *louer*<sup>158</sup> *158* *106*

require *par*, when the bodily<sup>32</sup> faculties participate in the action; The  
 , *du corps* *avoir*<sup>125</sup> *part à* ;

town was besieged by the Austrians, and afterwards taken<sup>158</sup> by the  
<sup>137</sup> \* *assiéger*<sup>158</sup> *Autrichiens,* *ensuite* *prendre*

French. The houses were plundered by the mob. This news was  
<sup>137</sup> \* *pillier*<sup>158</sup> *populace.* *nouvelle*<sup>186</sup>

sent<sup>158</sup> to us by my correspondent. The letter is written by a man  
*envoyer* (o) *correspondant.* <sup>158</sup>

who was upon the spot. But instead of these passive expressions,  
<sup>140</sup> *place.* *au lieu* (bb) <sup>32</sup>

which are foreign to the genius of the french language, (it is better),  
*étranger*<sup>29</sup> *génie* <sup>29</sup> <sup>32</sup> , *il vaut mieux,*

by changing the order of the words, to give to the verb its active sig-  
 (hh) *changer* *ordre* , <sup>172</sup> *sa* <sup>32</sup>

nification; thus, All his friends blame him, and all his neighbours  
 ; *ainsi,* ,

despise him. Every body commends and esteems her. The Austrians &c.  
*mépriser* <sup>106</sup> *louer* <sup>68</sup>

When two verbs occur in<sup>213</sup> the same part of a sentence the  
*se rencontrer* *partie*

latter is governed by the former in the infinitive mood, sometimes  
*dernier* *régir* *par* *premier à* *infinitif* - ,

(by the) means of a preposition, and sometimes without it.†  
*au moyen* , *préposition.*

The preposition *to*, the sign of the infinitive mood in english, is  
*to,* <sup>22</sup> *signe* - *en* , -

expressed by *de*, *à*, or *pour*, but not indiscriminately.  
*s'exprimer* † , , <sup>191</sup> *indifféremment.*

168. To, before an infinitive is expressed by *de*, when it can  
*To,* <sup>206</sup> - *s'exprimer* † *il pouvoir*

be changed into OF or FROM, and<sup>29</sup> the infinitive can be turned into  
 - *se changer* † *en OF FROM, et que* - *se tourner par*

the gerund or present participle; this generally occurs when the infi-  
*gérondif* <sup>32</sup> *participe* ; <sup>89</sup> <sup>184</sup> *arriver*

nitive comes after a noun used in a definite sense; as, You shall have  
*employé* *défini*<sup>32</sup> *sens* ; ,

\* See note \* p. 226.

† See note \* page 341.

‡ See N. B. note (ii) p. 235.



## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

the trouble to do it, or (*of doing it*) over again. Will you have  
*peine refaire* ,  
 the goodness to help, or (*of helping*) me? If you have any desire  
*bonté aider* ,<sup>21</sup> *envie*  
 to serve me, you have now a fine opportunity to do it. Have the  
*servir* , *à présent occasion*  
 complaisance to wait for me. I have not time to stay. It is time to  
<sup>201</sup> *rester.* *Il*  
 go. I do not hinder you from going. See, rule 168, a list of the verbs  
*partir.* *empêcher* *vous en aller.* , *règle* , *liste*  
 and adjectives which require *de* before the infinitive that follows them.  
<sup>8</sup> *demande* <sup>206</sup> *infinitif* <sup>74</sup>

169. To, before an infinitive is expressed by *à*, when it can be  
*To,* *- s'exprimer \** *à,* *il* *-*  
 changed into *IN*, and <sup>219</sup> the infinitive can be turned into the gerund,  
*se changer en IN, et que* *- se tourner par* *gérondif,*  
 or present participle; this generally occurs after nouns used<sup>157</sup> in a  
<sup>32</sup> ; <sup>89</sup> <sup>181</sup> *arriver* <sup>7</sup> *employer*  
 partitive sense; He will have some trouble to do it (*or in doing it*)  
*partitif*<sup>32</sup> ; *peine refaire*  
 over again. He perhaps<sup>164</sup> will have somebody to help him. Is there  
<sup>†</sup> *peut-être* <sup>95</sup> *aider lui* <sup>54</sup> <sup>246</sup>  
 no<sup>8</sup> risk to go (this way?) A virtuous man takes pleasure to do good.  
*N.B. risque par ici?* *vertueux* <sup>9bien.</sup>  
 Amuse yourself with reading some instructive book, instead of spend-  
*Amuser vous* <sup>56</sup> <sup>154</sup> *quelque instructif*<sup>32</sup> , *au lieu* <sup>271</sup>  
 ing<sup>154</sup> your time in playing. See, rule 169, a list of the verbs and  
*jouer.* , , *liste*  
 adjectives which require *à* before the infinitive that follows them.  
<sup>208</sup> <sup>74</sup>

170. To, before an infinitive is expressed by *pour*, when it can be  
*To,* *- s'exprimer \** , *il* *-*  
 turned into *IN ORDER TO*; as, I was going to write to you to beg,  
*se tourner par IN ORDER TO;* , <sup>155</sup> *aller* <sup>172.</sup> (*o*) *demande*  
 or (*in order to beg*) a favour of you. You are too civil to refuse me.  
*grâce* *-* <sup>54</sup> *trop refuser* .  
 (I will do any thing) to oblige you. I want money to buy a horse.  
*Il n'est rien que je ne fasse* <sup>260</sup> *acheter*  
 I have not money<sup>8</sup> enough to buy one. It is not enough to have money  
*N.B. assez en* <sup>70</sup> *un.* *-* *suffire* <sup>168</sup> <sup>9</sup>  
 to get a horse, one must<sup>181</sup> have money to keep it. He wants  
*se procurer* , *N.B. -* *maintenir* <sup>260</sup>  
 to have a horse, in order to make (people believe) that he is rich.  
*croire aux gens*

\* See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

† Over again is expressed by *re* before *faire*.

## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

N. B. The english gerund preceded by the preposition **FOR**, explaining  
 32 *gérondif* 200 *FOR, servant*  
 the motive of an action, is also expressed by the infinitive  
 à expliquer motif, - 181 *s'exprimer* par infinitif  
 with *pour*; He has been taken up for having fought a duel. Is  
 ; *arrêter* - *s'être* 237 *battre* en duel. -  
 that 134 sufficient for arresting a man? He was not arrested for fighting,  
 19 *suffire* 135 136 *s'être battu*,  
 but for robbing and ill using the man whom he had 237 fought with.  
*avoir volé* *maltraité* 76 *s'était* 203

171. The infinitive is used without a preposition in french, when  
 - *s'employer* - *en* ,  
 it is the nominative of a verb; as, To love and to be loved are the  
 ; , *aimer*  
 greatest pleasures in life<sup>7</sup>. To love without measure is a folly, not<sup>190</sup>  
 44 49 *vie.* *mesure* *folie*, N.B.  
 to love at all, is insensibility. To do to others as we would wish  
*du tout*, *insensibilité.* à autrui ce que *vouloir*  
 (to be<sup>92</sup> done to), is to follow the law of reason.  
*qu'on nous fit*, *c'est* - *loi* 7 *raison.*

172. The infinitive is also used without a preposition after the verbs  
 - *s'employer* -  
*Aimer mieux, valoir mieux, aller, venir, Assurer, croire, compter,*  
*daigner, déclarer, devoir, Entendre, Envoyer, Espérer, Falloir, s'ima-*  
*giner, Laisser, oser, paraître, penser, prétendre, Pouvoir, reconnaître,*  
*regarder, retourner, savoir, sembler, souhaiter, soutenir, vouloir,*  
*voir, appercevoir*; as, I am going to embark for America. When do  
*m'embarquer* 5 *Amérique.*  
 you intend to go? I want<sup>260</sup> to (set out) as soon as I can. I hope you  
*compter* *partir?* *souhaiter* *partir* 142 221  
 will come to see us before you go. I do not think I shall (be able)  
 218 *partir* 221 *pouvoir* 145  
 to call<sup>266</sup> before I go; but I expect to see you often when I have<sup>112</sup>  
*passer* 218 *partir;* *espérer* 233  
 returned. You seem to have a great desire to<sup>168</sup> go. No; I would  
 263 *envie* *y* 70 *aller.* ; *aimer*  
 rather stay than go; but I do not<sup>192</sup> know what to do here. It is  
*mieux rester (ll) y aller;* N.B. *savoir* 83 *Il vaut*  
 better to gain a little than to gain nothing. I would rather gain  
*mieux gagner - peu (ll)* 99 *aimer mieux*  
 nothing than to toil myself for so little. See the 172nd rule.  
*(ll) tourmenter me* 54 *si peu de chose.* règle.

## REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

**173. WILL, WOULD.** If, by the words **WILL, WOULD**, you wish to denote will, wish desire, inclination, you<sup>181</sup> must express them by *désigner volonté, souhait, désir*, *il n.B. faut exprimer* the verb *vouloir*, and put the following verb in the infinitive; if you wish to denote a determination, (**WILL, WOULD** must be considered) only as the signs of the future, or of the conditional of the verb which follows them; as, Will you do me the favour to call<sup>206</sup> upon me? I will call, if I can. Would you do me the favour to call upon me? I would call, if I could. Will you bring your sister with you? I will bring her, if she will come. Would you bring your sister with you? I would bring her, if she would come. My sister will not come; she will stay at home. My sister would not come; she would stay at home.

**174. WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE.** When **WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE** are used to denote the wish to possess, **WILL, WOULD** are expressed by the verb *vouloir*, and **HAVE** is left out; if **WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE** are used to denote not the wish, but the certainty to possess, they are expressed by the future, or by the conditional of *avoir*; as, My brother will have a horse. He will have one (cost what it will.) My brother would have a horse. He would have one (at any rate.) He will have a watch too. He would have a watch too. He will have one, if he learns well. He would have one, if he learned well. He will have none, if he will not have this<sup>88</sup>. He would have none, if he would not have this.

\* These sentences may be expressed two ways, but each way denotes a different idea, and this idea can be determined only by the speaker or writer. See the examples under rules 173, 174. See also the different notes on *Will, Would*, page 143, 228, and 334.

## REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

N. B. If **WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE**, in the sense of **WISH**, are followed by another verb, the object of **HAVE** becomes the nominative of the following verb which must be (in the) subjunctive in french;

*vis* <sup>200</sup> , *objet* *HAVE* *devenir* *nominatif*

*suivant* <sup>32</sup> *devoir* *au* *en* ;

What will you have me do? What will you have my brother do?

<sup>33</sup> \* *faire*? \* *faire*?

I will have you learn Italian<sup>7</sup>, and I will have him learn French<sup>7</sup>.

† *Italien*, † *Français*.

Would you have us do<sup>149</sup> nothing but study? Must we never play?

† *faire* <sup>99</sup> *qu' étudier?* <sup>181</sup> <sup>133</sup> <sup>193</sup> *jouer*

Yes, I would have you learn your lessons first, and I would have you play afterwards. I will not have any of you be idle. I will have every one of you do his duty before he does any thing else.

<sup>149</sup> *leçon* *premièrement*, <sup>100</sup> *oisif*.

<sup>105</sup> *devoir* <sup>218</sup> <sup>111</sup> *autre chose*.

175. **WOULD HAVE** in the sense of **CHOSEN, BEEN WILLING**, followed by a past participle is expressed by the imperfect or by the conditional of *avoir*, with the participle *voulu*, viz. *avais voulu, aurais voulu*, and the english participle is expressed by the infinitive in french;

*WOULD HAVE* *CHOSEN, BEEN WILLING, suivre* <sup>157</sup>

<sup>200</sup> <sup>32</sup> - *s'exprimer* *par* *imparfait* *condi-*

*tionnel* , *c'est à dire*

<sup>32</sup> - *s'exprimer* *en* ;

If you would have let me go, I should have been back long since.

*laisser* , *de retour il y a long tems*.

This would have been done in time, if he would have helped me.

<sup>39</sup> *finir à tems*, *aider*

I asked<sup>138</sup> him to help me, and he would not. I would not have helped you for ever so much. Why did you not tell me so before I began? If I had told you so, you would not have come. If any body but you had told me so, I certainly would not have believed him.

*prier* <sup>55</sup> , <sup>138</sup> *rien au monde*. <sup>138</sup> <sup>55</sup> *cela* <sup>218</sup>

† <sup>55</sup> *le* <sup>59</sup> , *tout*

*autre que* † <sup>59</sup> *le* <sup>55</sup> , <sup>184</sup>

176. **SHOULD.** When **SHOULD**, which is generally a sign of the conditional tense, is used in the sense of **OUGHT**, it is expressed by the

*SHOULD*, *signe*

- , - *s'employer* *OUGHT*, - *s'exprimer*

\* Turn, What will you that I do? What will you that my brother do? for it is not the person whom you wish, but you wish that the person should perform some action.

† Turn, I will that you learn Italian, and I will that he learn french. Would you that we should do nothing but study? and so on with other sentences of this kind. † See note † page 337.



## REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

conditional of the verb *devoir*, viz. *devrais*; as, you should take  
 , *c'est à dire* ;  
 more<sup>a</sup> pains than you do. Children should learn, every day, something  
 N. B. *peine* <sup>47</sup> *faire*, <sup>7</sup> , *tous les jours*, <sup>98</sup>  
 by heart. They should (get up) (sooner in the morning) than they do.  
*par cœur*. *se lever* *plus* - *matin* <sup>47</sup>

177. SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT to HAVE, followed by a past participle,  
*SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT to HAVE*, <sup>200</sup> <sup>32</sup> ,  
 are expressed by the conditional of *Avoir*, with the participle *dû*, viz.  
 - \* *par* , *dû*,  
*Aurais dû*, and the english participle is expressed by the infinitive  
 , <sup>82</sup> \*  
 in french; You should have gone (viz. *ought to have gone*) with your  
*en* ; *aller*  
 brothers. You should not have let them go alone. They ought not  
*laisser* *seul* <sup>29</sup>.  
 to have gone without leave. They should not have stayed so long.  
<sup>70</sup> *permission*. *rester si long tems*.  
 You ought to have told them<sup>54</sup> so. You have not acted as you should.  
*dire* (f) p. 79. *le* <sup>59</sup> *agir*

178. MAY, MIGHT. If MAY, MIGHT are used to denote the power  
*MAY, MIGHT*. *MAY, MIGHT* - \* <sup>109</sup> *désigner* *pouvoir*,  
 of doing a thing, MAY is expressed by the present of the verb *pou-*  
<sup>154</sup> , *MAY* - \*  
*voir*, viz. *Puis*, &c. and MIGHT by the conditional *pourrais*, which  
 , , , &c. *MIGHT* ,  
 govern the following verb in the infinitive; If MAY, MIGHT denote the  
*régir* *à* <sup>2</sup> ; *MAY, MIGHT*  
 mere possibility of doing a thing, they may be expressed by the sub-  
*simple possibilité* <sup>154</sup> , † - \*  
 junctive of *pouvoir*, or by the subjunctive of the following verb; Any  
 , *qui suit* <sup>32</sup> ;  
 body *may* do that; (i. e. *can* or *is able*) to do that. You *may* do it,  
<sup>109</sup> † (*bb*); <sup>172</sup> *faire* ,  
 (i. e. You *can* or *are able*) to do it, if you like. I will shew you  
 , *vouloir*. † *montrer*  
 how it *may* be done; (i. e. how one *can*, or *is able* to do it.) Leave  
<sup>92</sup> ; *Laisser*  
 it here, that I *may* try; (i. e. that it *may be possible* for me to  
<sup>56</sup> , *afinque* *essayer*; <sup>172</sup>  
 try.) I will lend it<sup>54</sup> you, that you *may* learn; (i. e. that it *may*  
*prêter* <sup>59</sup> , *afinque* ;  
*be possible* for you to learn.) Any body *might* do that; (i. e.  
<sup>109</sup> ;

\* See N. B. note (it) page 200.

† See note \* page 138, N. B. p. 139.

‡ See note † p. 312.

## REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

*would be able*) to do that. You *might* do it, (i. e. you *could* or *faire* ,  
*would be able*) to do it, if you had<sup>140</sup> a mind. I will shew you how  
 , en<sup>70</sup> 24 *envie*. †  
 it *might* be done; (i. e. how one *could* do it.) I left<sup>136</sup> it here that  
 92 ; \* laisser<sup>55</sup> *afinque*  
 you *might* try; (i. e. that it *might be possible* for you to try.)  
 ;

179. COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE. When COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE  
 COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE. COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE  
 are followed by a past participle, they are expressed by the imperfect  
 138 200 32 , - † imparfait  
 or by the conditional of *avoir*, with the participle *pu*, viz. *avais pu*,  
 conditionnel , ,  
*aurais pu*, agreeably to the tense, and the english participle is ex-  
 , suivant - 32 -  
 pressed by the infinitive in french; If I *could have* done it, (i. e. i  
 † en ; \* faire ,  
 I *had* (been able) to do it,) I would not have asked<sup>252</sup> you to help  
 110 pu 172 , prier<sup>168</sup> *aider*  
 me. You *might have* done it (i. e. you *would have been able* to do  
 it) as well as I<sup>52</sup>. I *could* not *have* done it so soon; (i. e. I *should*  
 43 43 \* ;  
 not *have been able* to do it so soon.) You perhaps<sup>164</sup> *could* not, (or  
 si tôt. peut-être ,  
*would not have been able* to do it) but you *might have* tried; (i. e.  
 essayer ;  
 you *would have been able* to try.) I *might have* tried, (i. e. I *should*  
*have been able* to try) as you say; but I am sure that I *could* not  
 comme ; sûr  
*have succeeded*; (i. e. that I *should* not *have been able* to succeed.)  
 réussir ;

180. WISH. The present tense of the verb *WISH*, followed by another  
 WISH. - WISH, 200  
 verb in the imperfect or (in the) conditional is expressed by the con-  
 à au - †  
 ditional of *souhaiter*, viz. *souhaiterais*, and the verb which is in the  
 , c'est à dire, , à  
 imperfect or (in the) conditional in english, must be (in the) perfect  
 au en , *devoir* (kk) au parfait  
 of the subjunctive in french; as, I wish that was done. I wish  
 subjunctif ; , 221 (bb) 221

\* See the different use of *Could*, page 138. † See note † p. 312. ‡ See N. B. note (ii) p. 235.

## REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

your sister would come. I wish somebody would help me. I wish  
 221 95 aider

I had never attempted it. I am glad that I have done (with it.)  
 -(nn) entreprendre 55 168 - -(nn) être débarassé en 55

181. MUST. The verb MUST is conjugated with the three different  
 MUST. MUST - se conjuguer \* 29 52

persons, viz. I MUST, THOU MUST, HE MUST, &c. but the verb which  
 , I MUST, THOU MUST, HE MUST, &c.

represents it, has only the third person singular of each tense, with  
 , au singulier 102 ,

il for nominative, viz. *il faut*, *il fallait*, &c. (see page 174.) then  
 , , &c. alors

the nominative of MUST becomes the nominative of the following verb  
 MUST devenir

which is always (in the) subjunctive in french; as, I must see (turn;  
 au en ; , ;

it must that I see) that man. Thou must not go alone. He must  
 2 † seul.

come himself. Your brother must go with you. You must not stay  
 (m) N.B. 58 †

long. Must we not speak to him? Must not his friends know it?  
 long tems. † (o) 54 † savoir ?

N.B. When the nominative of MUST is indefinite, i. e. when it does  
 MUST indéfini,

not relate to any particular<sup>52</sup> person, it is generally left out in french,  
 se rapporter en particulier , - 183 s'omettre \*

and the following verb is put in the infinitive; How many<sup>8</sup> times  
 - \* à ; N.B. 232

must one tell you the same thing? We must employ our time  
 dire le

usefully. People must never be idle. They must help one another.  
 utilement. oisif. s'aider 121

182. MUST HAVE meaning to BE IN NEED, is expressed by *il faut*,  
 MUST HAVE désigner to BE IN NEED, - \*

but HAVE is left out, and (the nominative of MUST is made) the object  
 HAVE - \* , on fait du nominatif de MUST

of *faut*; thus, I MUST HAVE, *il me faut*; THOU MUST HAVE, *il te*  
 ; ainsi, I MUST HAVE, ; THOU MUST HAVE,

*faut*; HE MUST HAVE, *il lui faut*, &c. (see page 175.) I must have a  
 ; HE MUST HAVE, , &c. †

horse. He must have a saddle. My brother must have a wife. My  
 † selle. † femme.

sister must have a husband. These children must have clothes.  
 mari. habit.

\* See N. B. note (ii) page 235. † See MUST used negatively, p. 174. ‡ See MUST HAVE, p. 175.

## VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.\*

I have done. Have you done? Has your brother done? Has  
*finir.*  
 your sister done? My brother has sung a song. My sister has sung  
*chanter chanson.*  
 a song. My brothers have sung a song. My sisters have sung a  
 song. Have you heard the song which my brother has sung? Have  
*entendre* <sup>74</sup>  
 you heard the song which my sister has sung? Have you heard the  
 song which my brothers have sung? Have you heard the song which  
 my sisters have sung? They are gone. Are they gone? Are your  
*partir.*  
 brothers gone? Are your sisters gone? How do they do<sup>241</sup>? How  
<sup>134</sup> <sup>185</sup> *se porter?* <sup>185</sup>  
 does your mother do? Is all your family well? Is your sister  
<sup>241</sup> <sup>241</sup> <sup>29</sup> *famille* <sup>134</sup>  
 returned from Bath? Have the baths been of service to her? I  
<sup>265</sup> *Bath?* *bain faire du bien* (o)  
 think they have. She looks<sup>253</sup> much better than she did before  
<sup>221</sup> † *avoir mine* ‡ <sup>47</sup>*avoir* <sup>218</sup>  
 she went. I am glad<sup>221</sup> you are come; I wanted to see you. If  
*y aller.* *bien aise* ; <sup>250</sup>  
 you had not come, I would have called upon you. I have some  
<sup>233</sup> , <sup>265</sup> <sup>9</sup>  
 news to tell you. Do you know that Mrs. B. is here? No,  
*nouvelles plur.* *savoir* *ici?* <sup>191</sup>,  
 I did not know it. When did<sup>136</sup> she come? She came this morning.  
*Quand* <sup>236</sup> *matin.*  
 I have just received this note from her. I am glad she is come  
<sup>244</sup> *recevoir* *billet* <sup>58</sup>  
 (at last), for I longed<sup>140</sup> much to see her. I will wait upon her  
*enfin,* *car* see p. 175. *fort* *passer chez* <sup>59</sup>  
 to-morrow morning. Will you come with me? I do not think I  
*demain* *matin.* <sup>58</sup> <sup>221</sup>  
 shall (be able) to go. I (am afraid) my mother will not be able to  
*pouvoir* *y* <sup>70</sup> *craindre* <sup>221</sup>  
 spare<sup>202</sup> me. Since she has been ill, she wishes me to be always  
*se passer de* <sup>59</sup> *Depuis que* § *malade,* *vouloir* ||

\* See note \* p. 231, and add to it that the whole of this exercise on the verbs must be well understood before the exercise is left off.

† You may express, I think they have, by *je pense qu'oui*; or if you express have, you must add the rest of the sentence and say; *je pense qu'ils lui en ont fait*.

‡ Turn this sentence, *She has much better look than she had &c.*

§ *Has been ill.* The English often use this past tense to express an action or a state of being which is still lasting: as, *I have been ill these six months*; the French can not use it in this sense; so, *Has been ill* must be expressed by *Est malade*, if the person is ill still; by *A été malade*, if she has ceased to be so.

|| Turn, *She wishes that I be &c.* see note \* p. 239, which is also applicable to *wish*.



## VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

with her. She will not let me (go out) for fear<sup>195</sup> I should stay too  
<sup>56</sup> (kk)laisser sortir de peur que rester  
 long. Do you wish me to go? Yes, I do<sup>70</sup>. Well; I will call,  
 long-tems. \* y<sup>70</sup> † , N.B. Eh bien; passer,  
 if I can. You may call, if you will; it is not so far. I do not think  
 pouvoir , ; <sup>246</sup> loin. <sup>221</sup>  
 your mother will refuse you to (go out) for such a short<sup>8</sup> time. I will  
 sortir si - peu N.B.  
 ask her. Do<sup>70</sup>; i. e. ask her. I wish you would lend me the book which  
 le ‡ (f) p. 79. N.B. <sup>221</sup> (kk)prêter  
 you promised me the last time I was at<sup>208</sup> your house. I promised  
 (s) N.B.  
 to send it to my cousin after I have read it. She has nothing to  
 f. après que <sup>62</sup> <sup>99</sup>  
 do now, and it is better she should do that than do nothing.  
 à présent, valoir mieux <sup>221</sup> <sup>89</sup> (ll)  
 I will lend it you now. I wish you (very much) to read it. I did  
 § <sup>62</sup> <sup>59</sup> || fort  
 not lend it you then, for fear<sup>218</sup> you would not return<sup>265</sup> it to me in  
<sup>62</sup> <sup>59</sup> alors, de peur que - N.B. à  
 time. I (was afraid) that you would keep it too long. I have long  
 tems. craindre <sup>125</sup> - <sup>195</sup> garder <sup>62</sup> long-tems.  
 wished to read it. I could not lend it you, before you asked me for  
 ¶ <sup>62</sup> pouvoir <sup>62</sup> <sup>59</sup> , <sup>218</sup> <sup>59</sup> <sup>261</sup>  
 it. Here<sup>247</sup> it is. I wish<sup>221</sup> it may amuse you (as much) as it has  
<sup>62</sup> N.B. <sup>62</sup> amuser autant que <sup>62</sup>  
 amused me. Do you think your cousin would come, if I sent for  
<sup>55</sup> <sup>221</sup> cousine , envoyer chercher  
 her? I do not think she can. She told me that she expects a friend  
<sup>221</sup> <sup>70</sup> attendre  
 who promised to call upon her this afternoon. Did she tell you that  
<sup>266</sup> après midi.  
 I drank <sup>7</sup>tea with her yesterday<sup>183</sup>? Yes, she did.<sup>70</sup> I wish<sup>221</sup> you had  
 prendre thé hier N.B. N.B. <sup>180</sup>  
 been there. I wish I had. She is coming to spend the evening with  
 y <sup>55</sup> (e) p. 74. \*\* <sup>271</sup> <sup>234</sup>  
 me (to-morrow,<sup>183</sup>) will you come with her? I wish I could; but I  
 demain, N.B. (kk) <sup>180</sup> (nn)<sup>70</sup> ;  
 can not. I am engaged at Mrs. A's. We will meet some other day.  
<sup>70</sup> <sup>208</sup> se rencontrer quelque <sup>120</sup>

\* Turn; do you wish that I go? see \* p. 239, which is also applicable to wish.

† The verb *aller*, to go, requires a place mentioned after it; if the place has been mentioned before we always add to *aller* the adverbial pronoun *Y*, there; see note (e) p. 74.‡ Add here, in french, the pronoun *Le*, it. § See note † page 312.

|| Turn; I wish much that you read it; see note \* p. 239, which is also applicable to wish.

¶ Turn; it is long since I wish §c. see note § page 353.

\*\* Instead of repeating this verb in french we should say, *je le souhaite aussi*.

## VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

I have just heard that Miss B. is very ill. Who told you so?  
*venir de* <sup>244</sup> *apprendre* *malade.* *dire* <sup>59</sup> *le* <sup>54</sup>

Miss C. told me so. How<sup>246</sup> long has she been ill? She was taken  
*le* <sup>54</sup> *Combien y a-t-il que* \* *prendre*

ill this morning. They<sup>90</sup> say she is very ill. I must send to inquire  
*de mal* <sup>234</sup> *N.B.* <sup>221</sup> *m'informer*

how she is now. I think it is better that I go myself. It (is  
<sup>241</sup> <sup>221</sup> *valoir mieux* *(m)* *N.B.*

necessary) that I should see her. It (is becoming) that I pay her a visit.  
*falloir* <sup>125</sup> *convenir* <sup>125</sup> *rendre* <sup>162</sup> <sup>24</sup> *visite.*

Did you hear that Mrs. C. is dead? Indeed! When did she die?  
*entendre* *(bb)* *N.B.* *mourir?* ! <sup>238</sup>

I was with her last night. She seemed (well enough) when I left  
<sup>235</sup> *paraître* *en assez bonne santé* *quitter*

her. She was taken ill suddenly in the night, and she died this  
*prendre de mal* *subitement* <sup>238</sup>

morning. I am very sorry she is dead. She was the most estimable  
*fâché* <sup>221</sup> <sup>65</sup> <sup>39</sup>

woman that I knew<sup>50</sup>. I had invited her daughter to come and spend  
*connaître.* *(nn)* <sup>271</sup>

(a few) days with me, but I do not think she will come now that  
*quelques* <sup>58</sup> <sup>221</sup>

her mother is dead. Were you at the play lately? Yes, my sister  
*comédie depuis peu?* ,

and I went there (the night before last), to see a new actress. We  
<sup>127</sup> *y* <sup>54</sup> *avant hier au soir,* *nouvelle* *actrice.*

had expected some amusement, but we were greatly disappointed. The  
*attendre* , *bien* *tromper.*

players were very bad. I never saw a worse<sup>41</sup> set. Was it a good  
*comédiens* *mauvais.* *mauvais troupe.* *Y avait-il beaucoup*

house? Yes, the house was pretty full<sup>29</sup>. The lower<sup>29</sup> boxes  
*de monde?* † , *salle* *passablement plein.* *premier loge*

were not full, but the upper boxes and the pit were very full.  
<sup>29</sup> , † *parterre* <sup>31</sup>

Was my cousin there? I do not know. I did not see her. I met  
*f.* *y* <sup>54</sup>

her yesterday, as I was going to take<sup>263</sup> a walk, and I went to drink  
*hier,* *N.B.* , §

tea with her. After we had drunk tea, we went into the fields, and  
<sup>56</sup> § <sup>213</sup> ,

we picked several curious<sup>92</sup> flowers which I intend to draw, and  
*cueillir* *curieux (g)* *avoir dessein* *dessiner,*

\* See note § p. 353.

† This sentence can not be expressed in french according to its literal sense; it must be expressed as if the words were, *Were there many people?*

‡ The different sets of boxes are distinguished in french by the names of *premières, secondes, troisiemes, &c. loges.*

§ Speaking of drinking tea, coffee, &c. as a meal, we use *Prendre* instead of *Boire*.

## VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

send to you. I must make you some little present that<sup>218</sup> you may  
 (o) *quelque* *afinque*

remember me. Do you think I need any thing to make me  
*se souvenir*<sup>202 58</sup> *221* *avoir besoin de*<sup>111 170</sup>

remember you? I will not forget you (as long) as I live. I was  
<sup>202 58</sup> *oublier* *tant* *que*

in<sup>211</sup> London since I saw you. Did you see the curiosities? I saw  
*N.B. Londres* *depuis que*<sup>193</sup> *curiosité?*

the Tower, St. Paul's, and the Museum, but I did not find (so many<sup>8</sup>)  
*Tour,* *Muséum,* *tant* *N.B.*

curiosities as I had expected. Did you ever see the Museum? Yes;  
*que* *237 s'y attendre.*

I have seen it several times. Did you hear that my brother is gone  
<sup>55</sup> *232* *entendre*

to France? No, I did not<sup>70</sup>. When did he go? He (set out) this  
<sup>6</sup> *101* *N.B.* *238* *partir?* *238* *partir*

morning. Were you ever in France? No, I never was there. I  
<sup>190</sup> *y*<sup>55 (e)</sup> *p. 74.*

never had an opportunity to go. I should like to see that country of  
<sup>24</sup> *occasion* *y*<sup>70 \*</sup> *(bb)* <sup>230</sup>

which I have heard (so much). I will go the first opportunity  
<sup>74</sup> *entendre parler* *tant*<sup>188</sup> *y*<sup>70 \*</sup> *d* *(s)*

I can find. And you, were you ever there? I lived in France  
<sup>55</sup> *demeurer*

several years. I have been nearly all over the country. Was  
*plusieurs* *†* *presque* *†* <sup>38</sup> <sup>230</sup> *Y avait-il*

any body with you? Yes, Mr. B. was with me. How did you travel?  
<sup>108</sup> <sup>58</sup> <sup>185</sup> *voyager?*

We travelled sometimes in a coach, sometimes in a gig, and some-  
*quelquefois* *en - carrosse,* *- cabriolet,*

times on (horseback), as it suited us. When did you return? I  
<sup>d</sup> *cheval,* *comme* *cela convenir*<sup>54</sup> <sup>238</sup> <sup>265</sup>

returned about three weeks or a month ago. Which way did you  
<sup>265</sup> *il y a*<sup>246</sup> *environ* <sup>246 -</sup> *Par*<sup>79</sup> *route*

(come back)? I came through Hayre de Grace and Southampton.  
*revenir?* *par* *(b)*

Did you speak french when you went to France? I spoke it a little.  
<sup>†</sup> *français* *m.* <sup>6</sup> <sup>†</sup> <sup>62</sup> *un peu.*

I spoke it enough to make myself understood. But I knew grammar  
<sup>†</sup> <sup>62</sup> *assez* <sup>179</sup> *entendre.* *savoir*<sup>7</sup> *grammaire*

\* See note † p. 354.

† Express been over by the verb *parcourir*.

‡ Did speak and spoke require here an explanation. For instance, if I were to say, I met a gentleman in the street yesterday and I spoke french to him; I should say, *je rencontra hier un monsieur dans la rue, et je lui PARLAI français*, because I then wish to express what I did, viz. that I spoke french. But in the example here given, I do not want to know whether the person spoke french or not, but whether he knew the language, which being mere knowledge or a description of the mind, must, agreeably to 140th rule, be expressed by the imperfect *parlais*, &c.

## VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

pretty well<sup>183</sup>, and I soon learned to speak it well. I now speak it  
assez bien N.B.,<sup>184</sup> <sup>62</sup> <sup>184</sup>

as fluently<sup>43</sup> as my native<sup>32</sup> language. Did you never meet with  
<sup>43</sup> coulamment <sup>43</sup> natal<sup>29</sup> langue <sup>190</sup> rencontrer <sup>201</sup>

people who spoke english? Yes, sometimes, but not so often as I  
<sup>229</sup> <sup>191</sup> que

wished. Were you in France when the revolution began? No, I  
commencer?

was in Holland. Were the Dutch glad<sup>29</sup> (of it)? Some were glad  
Hollande. <sup>194</sup> <sup>54</sup> <sup>94</sup> <sup>29</sup>

(of it), and some<sup>70</sup> were not. Some (were of opinion) that it would do  
<sup>en</sup> <sup>54</sup> <sup>94</sup> <sup>72</sup> <sup>94</sup> <sup>penser</sup> <sup>63</sup>

a (great deal) of good, others thought that it would do a great deal of  
- beaucoup bien, <sup>120</sup> <sup>penser</sup> <sup>62</sup> -

harm. I did not stay long in Holland; I went to Germany and Italy.  
mal. <sup>rester</sup> <sup>6</sup> ; <sup>6</sup> <sup>Allemagne</sup> <sup>204</sup>

I have been to Ireland too, since<sup>196</sup> I saw you. Well; how do you like  
<sup>6</sup> <sup>Irlande</sup> <sup>aussi</sup> <sup>depuis</sup> <sup>que</sup> <sup>Eh</sup> <sup>bien</sup> ; <sup>268</sup>

that country? I like it (very much); it is a very fine country; but I  
<sup>230</sup> <sup>268</sup> <sup>62</sup> <sup>beaucoup</sup> ; <sup>63</sup> ;

will not (go again,) unless, as the Irishman in London says, I can<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup>  
<sup>y</sup> <sup>retourner</sup> , <sup>213</sup> , <sup>comme</sup> <sup>Irlandais</sup> <sup>à</sup> <sup>Londres</sup> \* <sup>N.</sup>

go by land. I was<sup>140</sup> very sick. I never was so sick in my life  
(kk) <sup>y</sup> <sup>70</sup> <sup>par</sup> <sup>terre</sup> . <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>malade</sup> . <sup>136</sup> <sup>de</sup> <sup>vie</sup>

Indeed, every body on board was sick. It<sup>62</sup> is true that it blew  
à la vérité, <sup>106</sup> <sup>à</sup> <sup>bord</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>vrai</sup> <sup>faire</sup>

a tempest. One of our masts fell over board, and we lost almost  
tempête. <sup>mât</sup> <sup>tomber</sup> <sup>par-dessus</sup> <sup>7</sup> , <sup>perdre</sup>

all our sails. We expected every moment that we should go and  
voile. <sup>attendre</sup> <sup>à</sup> <sup>tout</sup> - (n2)

sup with the god of the waves. However after a deal of toil  
souper <sup>dieu</sup> <sup>flot</sup> . <sup>Cependant</sup> - <sup>beaucoup</sup> <sup>peine</sup>

and fatigue, we arrived at Cork<sup>25</sup> harbour. We landed as soon as  
<sup>204</sup> , <sup>7</sup> <sup>havre</sup> . <sup>débarquer</sup> <sup>43</sup> <sup>43</sup>

we could, and we were very well received by our friends who were  
pouvoir, <sup>recevoir</sup>

waiting for us. We soon forgot the perils of the sea, and we began  
<sup>201</sup> <sup>184</sup> <sup>oublier</sup> ,

to divert ourselves (in the best manner) we could. (Next day) I went  
divertir <sup>du</sup> <sup>mieux</sup> <sup>que</sup> <sup>7</sup> <sup>Lendemain</sup>

to my friend Mr. D.'s (country seat.) The weather was<sup>240</sup> bad for  
<sup>23</sup> <sup>château</sup> . <sup>140</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>205</sup>

some days, but one morning it grew fine. I (got up) early, and  
<sup>234</sup> <sup>62</sup> <sup>devenir</sup> <sup>se</sup> <sup>lever</sup> <sup>de</sup> <sup>bonne</sup> <sup>heure</sup> ,

\* In a parenthesis, the French generally put the nominative after the verb; so, turn this sentence thus, as says the Irishman in London.



## VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

I went by myself to take<sup>263</sup> a walk in the fields, while the family  
<sup>207</sup> N.B. <sup>N.B.</sup> , pendant que  
 (were asleep.) I never saw nature more sublime than it<sup>62</sup> was at that  
 dormir.<sup>125</sup> \* le<sup>70</sup> dans  
 moment. The sun had just risen, and the dew which was on the grass  
<sup>244</sup> se lever, rosée 'herbe  
 appeared like pearls. I advanced a little into the country, but the  
 ressembler à 'perle. s'avancer un peu <sup>230</sup> , <sup>45</sup>  
 more I advanced, the more I felt inclined to advance. I saw on all  
 , <sup>45</sup> se sentir porté de  
 sides trees loaded with fruit which was beginning to ripen; an in-  
 côté <sup>9</sup> <sup>200</sup> commencer mûrir, in-  
 finite number of birds singing<sup>133</sup> and warbling on the branches; cattle  
 fini<sup>32</sup> <sup>8</sup> oiseau N.B. gazouiller<sup>133</sup> ; 'bétail  
 grazing<sup>133</sup>, or wandering through the meadows; hills and dales covered  
 paître, N.B. errer à travers prairie; 'colline 'vallée  
 with corn which began to (turn yellow); in short every thing indicated  
<sup>200</sup> blé jaunir ; en un mot <sup>107</sup> annoncer  
 abundance and prosperity. I was<sup>140</sup> so delighted with my walk, that I  
 'abondance <sup>7</sup> é é N.B. charmé <sup>200</sup> ,  
 (went again) every morning that the weather was fine. I stayed there  
 y<sup>70</sup> retourner tous les matins <sup>240</sup> rester y<sup>54</sup>  
 six weeks, and I do not think it<sup>62</sup> is possible to spend six weeks  
 , <sup>221</sup> N.B. <sup>271</sup>  
 more agreeably than I did. Did you see Mr. A. lately? I saw him  
<sup>47</sup> le<sup>70</sup> faire. depuis peu ?  
 this morning. I met him as I was going along the street. He  
 rencontrer comme passer le long de  
 told me that he had called upon you, but that you were not in. He  
<sup>266</sup> , y<sup>54</sup>  
 desired me to tell you that he wanted to see you. If you see him  
<sup>252</sup> <sup>260</sup> revoir  
 again, tell him that I will call upon him as soon as I have dined.  
 , <sup>56</sup> <sup>266</sup> <sup>58</sup> <sup>43</sup> <sup>43</sup>  
 I will.<sup>70</sup> Did you not go a shooting together yesterday? Yes, we  
 N.B. à la chasse au fusil ensemble <sup>183</sup> N.B. ,  
 did.<sup>70</sup> Was your excursion successful?<sup>29</sup> Not very. The ground  
 N.B. chasse heureux (g)? Pas beaucoup. terre  
 was wet, and the game was very wild. We killed only six brace of  
 humide, gibier sauvage. tuer couple  
 partridges, two hares and four woodcocks. Were there no<sup>6</sup> pheasants?  
 perdrix, lièvre bécasse. <sup>246</sup> N.B. fuisan ?  
 There were plenty; but they were in some gentlemen's<sup>25</sup> plantations,  
<sup>246</sup> abondance ; <sup>62</sup> † messieurs <sup>7</sup> .

## VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

and we dared not touch them. Did you walk or ride? We  
 oser (kk) toucher y<sup>54</sup> aller à pied ou à cheval?

rode as far as R. where we left our horses at a small inn there,  
 aller à cheval jusqu'à où laisser à auberge qui y est,

and after we had refreshed ourselves a little, we began our excursion.  
 après que rafraichir un peu, chasse.

We (went over) I do not know<sup>192</sup> (how many) heaths, fields and coppices.  
 parcourir N.B. combien<sup>8</sup> N.B. bruyère, <sup>204</sup> taillis.

I dare say we walked 20 miles. When we arrived at the inn, we were  
 pouvoir <sup>221</sup> <sup>263</sup> mille.

so tired that we could not return home that night. We slept there,  
 lasser (kk) <sup>265</sup> au logis <sup>13</sup> soir-là. coucher y<sup>54</sup>,

and we (came home) this morning. We intend to try again to-morrow.  
 revenir essayer encore demain.

Will you come with us, if we go? I will go, if you will promise  
 y<sup>70</sup>\*

me to return in time for dinner. If we find that it is too late, we  
<sup>265</sup> à tems dîner. trop

may dine in the country. I can not stay. We shall have company  
 pouvoir † <sup>230</sup> (kk) rester. <sup>9</sup>

to dinner, and I must be there. Then I think it is better for  
 y<sup>54</sup> Done <sup>184</sup> <sup>221</sup> il vaut mieux que

us to go after dinner. We may set out as soon as the dinner is  
 † y<sup>70</sup>\* pouvoir † <sup>43</sup> <sup>43</sup>

over. We generally<sup>184</sup> dine late; I am afraid it<sup>62</sup> will be too late to  
 fini. ordinairement tard; <sup>221</sup> N.B. <sup>195</sup> <sup>170</sup>

go then. I think the best thing we can do, is to (put it<sup>54</sup> off)  
 y<sup>70</sup> alors. <sup>221</sup> (s) <sup>50</sup>, c'est de remettre

till after to-morrow. We may then take our own time. We shall  
 jusqu'à après † alors -

(set out) as early as you please. I wish your cousin would come  
 partir d'aussi bonne heure qu'il plaire §. <sup>221</sup>

with us. I wish you would send somebody to let<sup>246</sup> him know. I do  
<sup>221</sup> <sup>95</sup> N.B. ||

not know a man whose company is more pleasant. Bring him with  
<sup>74</sup> <sup>7</sup> agréable. <sup>256</sup> <sup>56</sup>

you, if he will come. I see him coming, I will ask him<sup>54</sup>. Your  
 , ¶ ||

cousin and I go a shooting the day after to-morrow, will you be one  
<sup>52</sup> <sup>127</sup> à la chasse au fusil - - (kk) -

of the party? I should be very happy to accompany you, but I do  
 partie? bien aime accompagner ,

\* See note † p. 354.

† The french would here use the future.

‡ Turn; *It is better that we go.*

§ Make the verb *Please* impersonal, and express *You please*, as if the english was, *it will please you.*

¶ Add here the pronoun *Le*, and say *Le lui*. 70 rule.

¶ See note † p. 312.

## VERB.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

not think that I can. We shall not go further than you like. You  
 70 loin<sup>41</sup> 47 vouloir.  
 may come, if you will. You might come, if you would. I will  
 pouvoir , pouvoir ,  
 consider (of it). I should like to go (very much)<sup>183</sup>. I will let<sup>248</sup> you  
 penser y<sup>54</sup> \* fort N.B. † N.B.  
 know to-night, if I can go. Why did you not call yesterday? I could  
 235 , 266  
 not. I went a hunting. Who was with you? (Was there) any body  
 à la chasse. 246 108  
 (that I know?) Yes, (there were) several of our friends. What time  
 de ma connaissance? , 246 plusieurs à<sup>82</sup> heure  
 did you go? We (set out) at six o'clock. Did you catch any thing?  
 partir? partir à prendre<sup>111</sup>  
 We caught a fox. Had you a (great deal) of sport? Yes, we had<sup>70</sup>.  
 renard. - beaucoup plaisir? , N.B. †  
 I wish I had been with you. If I had known it, I would have gone.  
 (m) \$ savoir , 238 \*70  
 Why did you not let<sup>248</sup> me know? I did not know that you could go.  
 N.B. le<sup>70</sup> pouvoir \*70  
 I was<sup>140</sup> at home the whole day, and I had nothing to do. The next  
 N.B. au logis 38 , 140 59 prochain  
 time you go, do not fail to let<sup>248</sup> me know. I will not; i. e. fail<sup>70</sup>.  
 232 (s) \* , manquer N.B. le<sup>70</sup> y<sup>70</sup> N.B.  
 I have got a new horse. When did you buy it? I bought it this  
 270 nouveau || acheter  
 morning. (How much) did you give (for it)? I gave a hundred  
 combien en<sup>54</sup> en<sup>70</sup> 21  
 guineas. It<sup>62</sup> is a (great deal) of money. How old is<sup>239</sup> it? It is<sup>239</sup>  
 guinée. N.B. - beaucoup N.B. N.B.  
 four years old. Will you come to look at it? Now; what do you  
 voir 201 ; 83  
 think (of it)? Do you not think that I got it cheap? I do not  
 en<sup>54</sup> avoir à bon marché?  
 think it is dear. It is a very good horse. I wish it may answer<sup>208</sup>  
 221 65 221 répondre à  
 your expectation. I will buy one too, as soon as I have a little  
 attente. en<sup>70</sup> un aussi, 43 tôt 43 un peu  
 more<sup>8</sup> money. Do you think I can get a good one for fifty guineas?  
 N.B. 221 (kk) avoir 54 en<sup>70</sup> guinée?  
 I think you may. When I have one, I will lend it you when you  
 221 70 en<sup>70</sup> un , prêter 54 59

• See note † p. 354.

§ See note † p. 337.

† See note † p. 241.

‡ Put this adjective before the noun.

† Add, a good deal of it.

## VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

want<sup>260</sup> it. Will you take<sup>263</sup> a walk when your letter is finished?  
*avoir besoin en*<sup>54</sup> N.B.

I can not; I must take it to the (post office) as fast as I can. It  
<sup>70</sup> ; <sup>256</sup> <sup>62</sup> *poste* <sup>43</sup> *vite* <sup>43</sup>

must go to-night. I am afraid it will be too late when I am  
*partir* <sup>235</sup> <sup>221</sup> <sup>195</sup> *tard*

there. I will go with you, if you will wait for me. I can not wait;  
<sup>y</sup><sup>54</sup> *aller* , <sup>201</sup> (*kk*) ;

I must go directly. Will you call upon me when you (come back)?  
<sup>y</sup><sup>72</sup> *tout à l'heure.* <sup>265</sup> *revenir?*

I do not think I can. My sisters go to the play; they will have<sup>174</sup> me  
<sup>221</sup> <sup>70</sup> *comédie* ; N.B.

go with them, and I must go. Will you call when you come back  
<sup>58</sup> , <sup>70</sup> *passer*

from the play? I will see. I will call, if it is not too late when the  
*de* <sup>266</sup> ,

play is over. Why did you not call in (coming back) from hunting?  
*finie.* \* <sup>266</sup> *en* *revenir* *de* *chasse?*

I could not. It<sup>62</sup> was late, the weather was bad, and I was tired.  
<sup>70</sup> N.B. *tard,* *temps* <sup>240</sup> , *lassé.* †

I am tired of those violent<sup>32</sup> exercises. I must get a wife. Marry,<sup>261</sup>  
*ennuyé* † <sup>20</sup> *exercice.* *prendre* *se marier,* †

says a proverb, you will do well; do not marry, you will do better  
*proverbe,* ; † , (b) p. 72.

I do not care for your proverbs. I must have a wife. I will have  
*se soucier* <sup>200</sup> <sup>182</sup> ||

one who is tolerably handsome, who has some common sense and a  
*passablement* , <sup>9</sup> *commun*<sup>32</sup> *un*

little<sup>6</sup> fortune. Do you think you can find a woman who is so  
<sup>peu</sup> N.B. *bien.* <sup>221</sup> *trouver*

accomplished? If I thought that I could not find one, I would never  
*accomplir?* ¶ *pouvoir* *en*<sup>70</sup> *une,*

be married. I like your sister. Do you think she will go to the  
*- se marier.*<sup>261</sup> <sup>221</sup>

assembly to-night? If I hear that she goes, I will send you word.  
*assemblée* <sup>235</sup> *apprendre* <sup>\*\* 70,</sup> *le faire* <sup>54</sup> *savoir.*

I do not think she will<sup>70</sup>. She has not been well for some time,  
<sup>221</sup> <sup>\*\*</sup> N.B. <sup>237</sup> <sup>241</sup> *depuis quelque*

\* Did refers here to the period of hunting, which was yesterday.

† Tired—*Lassé, Ennuyé.* *Lassé* is said of the body; *Ennuyé* is said of the mind.

‡ See the imperative of a reflective verb, p. 114.

|| *Will have* may here be expressed two ways, agreeably to the idea which you wish to express.If you wish to denote that you know the person you describe, and are certain to have her, you express *Will have* one by *J'en aurai une* &c. with the following verbs in the indicative.If you want to denote that you wish to find such a person as you describe, you must express *Will have* one by *J'en veux une*, with the following verbs in the subjunctive. See 174 rule.

¶ See note † p. 337.

\*\* See note † p. 354.



## VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

and she (is afraid) of (going out), for fear of (catching cold). I am  
*craindre sortir, de peur de s'enrhumer.*

sorry<sup>221</sup> she does not come, for I intended to dance with her. She is  
*fâché, avoir dessein* 58 65

the most agreeable woman that I ever<sup>50</sup> knew. When did you see her?  
 44 82 *jamaïs* 196

I saw her this morning. She called at<sup>208</sup> our house, but she did not  
 234 265 \* N.B. , \*

stop. Did she give you the book which I sent you? Yes, she did<sup>70</sup>;  
*rester.* 74 , N.B.

i. e. *give it me*<sup>70</sup>. Did you read it? Yes, I read a good part (of it).  
 N.B. , *partie en* 55

How do you like it? Did it entertain you? I like it very well;  
 185 288 62 *amuser* 62 ;

it entertained me (very much). I never read a book which entertained  
 62 *fort.* 183 74

me more. Do you think the foreign<sup>32</sup> mail will arrive to-day? It  
 183 221 *étranger* 29 *malle* *aujourd'hui?* 62

is arrived. It arrived early this morning. I wonder that (there is)  
 62 238 *de bonne heure* 234 *s'étonner* 246

no<sup>8</sup> letter for me. I am afraid my friends have forgotten me. I wrote  
 N.B. 58 221 195 *oublier* 55

to them (long ago). It is time that I should hear from them. I  
 (o) (*il y a long-tems*). *Il tems* 275 †

wish they would write to me. I will not write to them again,  
 221 (o) *récrire* (o) - ,

until<sup>218</sup> I have heard from them. I think they do not wish me to  
*jusqu' à ce que* 275 † 221 †

know what is passing at home. I am afraid they will think that I  
*savoir* 84 - *se passer au logis.* 221 195

stay here too long. I suppose they wish me to come<sup>264</sup> home, but  
*rester ici long-tems.* 254 221 || *s'en retourner,* 265

I do not intend to go back yet. I will stay here as long as I can.  
*avoir dessein s'en retourner encore.* 43 43

We are going to drink tea, will you take a cup with us? I do not  
*prendre* 7thé, 70 *tasse* *Je le veux*

care. I was going to Mrs. D.'s, but I (may as well) stay here. I  
*bien.* † 208 , (*ferai aussi bien*) *de*

can not be in better company. What were you looking for when  
 (kk) *en* 83 201

I met you? I was looking for my little boy who has been wander-  
 201 *garçon* *errer*

\* See note \* p. 225.

† Express from them by *de leurs nouvelles*, or by *des nouvelles d'eux*

‡ Turn; they do not wish that I know &c.

|| See note \* page 233, which is also applicable to *wish*

¶ We could not say in this sense, *je ne m'en soucie pas*, for I do not care.

## VERB.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

ing about all the afternoon. I saw him playing with the other  
à et là après midi. 130

children, as I was passing by your house. Your house is well built,  
, comme 207 bâtir,

but it is not well situated. It is (too much) exposed to the wind.  
62 situer. 62 trop exposer vent.

We had planted a great number of trees round it, but the drought  
planter autour 64, sécheresse

has nearly killed them all. Is it<sup>62</sup> the house which your father  
presque faire mourir 55 N.B. 74

got built? No, it<sup>62</sup> is not; he has sold it<sup>62</sup>, and has bought this<sup>88</sup>.  
faire bâtir? , N.B. 70 ; vendre 55, acheter N.B.

Have you seen (the one) which he has begun to build? No, I have  
celle \* 74 commencer ,

not<sup>70</sup>. You have a nice<sup>33</sup> library; may I look at it<sup>54</sup>? Surely,  
N.B. joli 29 bibliothèque; pouvoir voir - 62 Assurément,

you may. These books are well bound, but they are very badly  
70 reliaer, mal

printed. I have lately read some very entertaining ones. I will  
imprimer. depuis peu † 10 amusant en 55 ‡

shew you the books which I have read. I have also bought several  
74 plusieurs

curious<sup>32</sup> things. See the fine things which I have bought. I want  
curieux 29 (g) belle 260

to shew them to your sister. How long is it since you saw her?  
246 que 196

I saw her as she was coming to town. I am glad<sup>221</sup> you are come,  
comme 7 bien aise

and that your sister is coming too. I am surprized she has written  
aussi. 221

to you, and has not mentioned it. Have you sent the books which  
(o) , 221 parler en 55 74

you were speaking of into the country<sup>230</sup>? No, I have not sent them  
203 213 163

yet<sup>163</sup>. I will send them this evening. Did you lend your cousin  
encore. 234 162

those which he asked you for? Yes, I did; i. e. *lend them to him.*<sup>70</sup>  
88 201 N.B.

Did you hear that my uncle B. has given my brother a horse? He  
oncle 162 163

has lent him money to buy one, and I am sure he never will ask  
162 en 70 un, 221 190 redemander

him for it again. He has also made my eldest<sup>32</sup> sister a present of a  
162 || 59 ¶ aîné 29 162 24 163

\* We could not say *l'une* for the one.  
 † See note † page 296.

‡ See note † page 241.      † See note † page 312.  
 ¶ Again is expressed by *re* prefixed to *demander*.

## VERB

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

watch. Did he ever give your other sister any<sup>111</sup> thing? No, he  
*montre.* 120 162 163  
 never did<sup>70</sup>. He often promised her something, but he never gave her  
 N.B. 184 162 98 163  
 any thing. She should try to please him. She should pay more  
 99 *essayer* 203 *faire*  
 attention than she does to what<sup>84</sup> she is told. She says she pays all  
 47 *faire* 163 92 221 29  
 the attention she can to every thing<sup>163</sup> she does. Sometimes, not  
 (s) tout ce que , pas  
 always. Take the books which I gave you into the (school room)  
 256 213 *école* 163 -  
 with you. Now, I must go. Will you come with me? I can not.  
 , *s'en aller.* 58 70  
 You might come, if you would. I might go (to be sure); but then  
 , y<sup>70</sup> il est vrai; alors  
 I must neglect business which ought not to be neglected. Come,  
*négliger* 9 affaires  
 that we may divert ourselves a little. You must have a little<sup>8</sup> diver-  
*afin que divertir un peu.* N.B. amuse-  
 sion. You must not always be (shut up) in the house. Send me my  
*ment. renfermer*  
 servant, that<sup>210</sup> I may tell him to get our horses ready. If you  
*domestique, afinque apprêter* - \*  
 would have (set out) a little sooner, we might have diverted ourselves  
*partir tôt* 41 , nous 54  
 (very much). If I could have got my horse when I ordered it, I  
*beaucoup. avoir demander* ,  
 might have been ready as soon as you. I should have had it sooner,  
*prêt* 43 43 41  
 if my brother could have spared it. I wish my father had bought  
*se passer en* 49 221  
 (the one) which you recommended to him. I wish you would sel.  
*celui † (o)* 221  
 him yours. I would have sold mine (long<sup>246</sup> ago), if I could have found  
 162 85 85 *il y a long-tems,*  
 any body who would have bought it. I will have one like yours.  
 108 *sembler au* 85  
 If I had known that you wished to sell yours, I might have found  
 † *vouloir* ,  
 somebody who would have bought it. You should have told me<sup>59</sup> so  
 95 *le* 54  
 then; I might have bought it myself. I may perhaps find somebody  
*alors (m) N.B. peut-être (kk)* 95

\* Ready is expressed in the word *Apprêter.* † We could not say *l'un* for *the one*.‡ See p. 140 and 152, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaître*

## VERB.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules

yet <sup>183</sup> I wish you could. I could have sold it myself long ago,  
*encore, N.B.* <sup>221</sup> <sup>70</sup> <sup>55</sup> (m) N.B. *il a long-tems,*  
 if I could have done without it then. Can you do without it now?  
<sup>290</sup> *en alors.* <sup>280</sup> *en*  
 I think I can. My sisters wish you to come and spend an evening  
<sup>221</sup> <sup>70</sup> \* (nn) <sup>271</sup> <sup>234</sup>  
 with us. When will you come? I can not tell. I will come as soon  
*Quand* <sup>70</sup> <sup>264</sup> <sup>43</sup>  
 as I can. You must bring your sister with you. Oh! we can not  
<sup>43</sup> <sup>256</sup> !  
 come both at the (same time). Somebody must stay at home. The  
<sup>122</sup> *à la fois.* <sup>95</sup> *rester au logis.*  
 house can not be left (to itself). Come; you are rather too hard  
<sup>92</sup> <sup>92</sup> *laisser seule.* *Allons;* *un peu sévère*  
 upon her. She must have a little<sup>8</sup> amusement too. You should have  
*envers* <sup>58</sup> *un peu N.B.* *aussi.*  
 brought her with you to-day. Why did you not bring her? I did  
<sup>256</sup> <sup>256</sup>  
 not know that you wanted<sup>200</sup> so much to see her, or else I would  
*avoir si grande envie* , *autrement*  
 have brought her. I will bring her the next time I come. Do.  
<sup>256</sup> <sup>256</sup> <sup>232</sup> (s) <sup>70</sup> N.B.  
 I will<sup>70</sup>. Did my sister tell you that I have been in the country?  
<sup>N.B.</sup> *à* <sup>230</sup>  
 No, she did not<sup>70</sup>. When did you go? I think I saw you (at the)  
<sup>N.B.</sup> *y* <sup>70</sup> <sup>221</sup> *au*  
 beginning of the week. You could<sup>136</sup> not see me this week, for  
*commencement* *semaine.* *pouvoir* , *car*  
 I went last<sup>32</sup> week. When did you return? I returned this  
<sup>70</sup> <sup>7</sup> <sup>238</sup> <sup>265</sup> <sup>238</sup> <sup>2</sup>  
 afternoon. Did you call upon our friends? I just<sup>184</sup> saw them,  
<sup>266</sup> *seulement* ,  
 as I was passing by the house. How were they? They seemed  
<sup>207</sup> <sup>195</sup> <sup>241</sup> *paraître*  
 very well. Did you come (that way) (on purpose)? Yes, I  
*en très bonne santé.* <sup>233</sup> *par là* *express?* ,  
 did<sup>70</sup>. I wonder at your going there again so soon. Will you  
<sup>N.B.</sup> *s'étonner* † *retourner* *y* <sup>53</sup> . *si*  
 never cease doing what you are desirous not<sup>190</sup> to do? I should not  
*cesser* <sup>84</sup> <sup>92</sup> *dire* <sup>252</sup> N.B.  
 find fault with your calling sometimes, when you happen to be  
*trouver mauvais* † *passer* *il vous arrive de* -

\* Turn; wish that you come &c. see note \* p. 239, which is also applicable to wish.

† Turn; that you have <sup>238</sup> gone there again so soon. see 165 rule.

‡ Turn; that you should call <sup>149</sup> sometimes &c. see 156 rule.



## VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

going (that way), but I wonder at your going there purposely, after  
*par là, s'étonner y<sup>54</sup> exprès*

having promised me that you would not go again without asking me  
*55 ne plus*

leave. You are too<sup>183</sup> fond of rambling; are you<sup>282</sup> not? How  
*permission. - trop aimer à roder; n'est-ce pas? 183*

could I help it<sup>54</sup>? I was accused of neglecting<sup>92</sup> people who have  
*s'empêcher en<sup>59</sup> négliger<sup>229</sup>*

been kind to me; can I be blamed for endeavouring to justify  
*eu des bontés pour<sup>58</sup>; 92 de chercher*

myself? I do not blame you for justifying yourself; I only wish you  
*me<sup>54</sup> de vous<sup>54</sup>; 184 †*

not to do things which may be disagreeable<sup>29</sup> to your friends. Come,  
*9 désagréable<sup>29</sup> Allons,*

ladies, amuse yourselves with reading this pretty tale, instead of losing  
*mesdemoiselles, 56 189 conte, au lieu*

your time in playing. You should abstain from looking about you,  
*s'abstenir autour de ,*

whilst you are learning your lessons. That is not the way to  
*pendant que Ce n'est pas là moyen*

improve yourselves. You are very<sup>183</sup> fond of scolding. What plea-  
*perfectionner vous<sup>54</sup> - beaucoup aimer à gronder.*

sure can you have in vexing people so<sup>183</sup>? You are always  
*chagriner<sup>229</sup> ainsi n.b. ? - 184*

finding fault with every thing one does. I am quite tired with  
*trouver à redire à tout ce (s)<sup>90</sup> 189 ennuyé<sup>200</sup>*

always hearing the same thing. If you paid attention to what you  
*184 chose. faire<sup>84</sup>*

are told, there would not be occasion for repeating it so often. You  
*92 , il besoin de*

never do things (at a proper time). How can I help it? I never  
*190 à propos. Que faire † y<sup>54</sup>*

know the (time of the day). You should have a watch. Yes; I  
*'heure qu'il est. montre. ;*

ought to have a watch. I want<sup>260</sup> a watch (very much). When  
*avoir besoin grand. ||*

shall I have one? You shall have one as soon as you behave well.  
*en<sup>70</sup> 70 se comporter*

Will you have mine? No, I do not like yours. It is an old one.  
*85 63 - vieille -*

I will have a new one, or I will have none. Then<sup>184</sup> you must  
*en<sup>70</sup> une neuve, - en<sup>70</sup> ¶ Donc*

\* Turn; that you have<sup>238</sup> gone there purposely &c. see 156 rule.

† Turn; I only wish that you do not things &c. see note \* p. 239.

‡ Help, in the sense of to avoid, is expressed by *Faire, Eviter, Empêcher*, never by *Aider*.

|| Turn; I have great need of a watch. ¶ Express None by *Pas*, with *Ne* before the verb.

## VERB.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

wait till<sup>218</sup> you can buy one yourself. What will you have us do  
*attendre que en<sup>70</sup> (m) N.B. 83 faire*  
 now? I would have you go and take a walk<sup>208</sup> till dinner<sup>25</sup> time;  
*(nn) N.B. jusqu'au 7 ;*  
 and when you have (eaten your dinner), I would have you go to your  
*diné, prendre -*  
 books. What! so soon. Must we have no play? No, you shall  
*83 ! si tôt. \* jouer?*  
 not play before<sup>218</sup> you have said your lessons. May we play then?  
*avant que alors?*  
 Yes, you may play, if you say them well. You should (get up)  
*se lever*  
 sooner; then you would have plenty of time to play. If you would  
*41 ; alors tout le temps*  
 have got up when I called you, you might have played as long as  
*se lever appeler 43 long-temps 43*  
 you would. I wonder that the people whom we expected are not come  
*175 s'étonner 229 attendre*  
 yet<sup>183</sup>. Is it<sup>62</sup> not astonishing that they should keep us waiting so  
*encore. N.B. étonnant faire attendre si*  
 long? They should not have promised, if they found that they  
*long-temps? promettre, prévoir †*  
 could not come. I might have asked somebody else. We might  
*prier quelqu' autre personne.*  
 have taken<sup>263</sup> a walk before we sat at table. For the future I will<sup>174</sup>  
*N.B. avant de nous mettre 2 à venir N.B.*  
 have my orders punctually attended<sup>92</sup> to. You should not have relied  
*‡ exactement qu'on suive - compter*  
 upon people you did not know. If you would have followed my advice,  
*229 (s) suivre avis,*  
 this would not have happened. You see; we can not console our-  
*89 238 arriver. ; nous 54*  
 selves for being deceived by our enemies, and betrayed by our friends;  
*de tromper par ennemis, trahir ;*  
 and we are often satisfied with being so by ourselves. I have received  
*satisfaire 200 le 54 (m) N.B. recevoir*  
 the letters which you have written to me respecting the affair which  
*(o) 55 au sujet de*  
 I had proposed to you, and after having read them attentively, I have  
*proposer (o) 55 , 55 avec attention,*  
 found that, if I had undertaken it, I should have met with  
*reconnaître , † entreprendre 55, trouver 201*  
 obstacles which I had not foreseen. I am very glad you have not<sup>70</sup>.  
*prevoir. bien 221 N.B.*

\* Express this sentence as if it were, *Must we not play?* † See note † p. 337 ‡ See \* p. 239.

## ADVERB.

183. ADVERBS, in french as in english, are generally placed after  
*Adverbe*<sup>7</sup>, *en* *comme* — *se placer*  
 the verb, when the tense is simple, and between the auxiliary verb and  
*verbe*, *entre* *auxiliaire*<sup>32</sup>  
 the participle, when it is compounded; I understand french pretty  
*participe*, <sup>62</sup> *composé*; *entendre* <sup>7</sup> *assez*  
 well<sup>183</sup>, but I have not yet learned it long enough to speak it fluently.  
*bien*, N.B. *encore* *long-tems assez* \* <sup>170</sup> <sup>62</sup> *coulamment*.

N. B. The adverb expressing some circumstance of the verb, must  
*quelque* *, devoir*  
 be placed immediately after the verb which it modifies; so, instead  
*se placer* *immédiatement* <sup>62</sup> *modifier*; † *ainsi*, *au lieu*,  
 of saying; You pronounce french very well. I wish to learn it (very  
<sup>134</sup> ; *prononcer* <sup>7</sup> *très*  
 much.) You must take more<sup>8</sup> pains in future than you do. I will  
*fort*. <sup>181</sup> N.B. *peine à l'avenir* <sup>47</sup>  
 do every thing that you have recommended to me carefully. Do you  
*tout ce que* *recommandé* (o) <sup>55</sup> *soigneusement*.  
 not go into the country to-morrow? say; You pronounce very well  
*à* *demain?* *dites*;  
 french. I wish (very much) to learn it. You must take in future  
<sup>7</sup> *fort* <sup>181</sup> *à l'avenir*  
 more pains than you do. I will do carefully every thing that you  
<sup>47</sup>  
 have recommended to me. Do you not go to-morrow into the country?  
 (o) <sup>55</sup> *à*

184. Some adverbs may be placed in english either before or after  
*Quelques* — *se placer* *ou*  
 the verb which they modify, but the french<sup>32</sup> adverbs which represent  
*, français* *représenter*  
 them must always be placed, (agreeably to) the general<sup>32</sup> rule, after the  
*devoir* *se placer*, *suivant* — *générale* *règle*,  
 verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle; as, What is the  
*ou* *auxiliaire* <sup>82</sup>  
 reason that you so seldom come to see me? (say, *that you come so*  
*raison* *si rarement*  
*seldom* &c.) I sometimes think that you never will come again. You  
*quelquefois* <sup>190</sup> *revenir* —  
 certainly have no reason to think so. I very seldom (go out,) and  
*certainement* *sujet* *le* <sup>54</sup> *rarement* *sortir*,  
 when I go, my sisters generally come with me, and I never can  
*sortir*, *ordinairement* <sup>58</sup> <sup>190</sup>  
 bring them so far as your<sup>208</sup> house; but I very often think of you.  
*amener* *jusque chez* N.B. ; <sup>200</sup> <sup>28</sup>

\* The adverb *Assez*, like the other adverbs, is always placed *before* the adjective or adverb which it modifies: so say, *enough long*.

† See note † p. 241.

## REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.

185. How. How used to denote admiration is expressed by *que*,  
*How. How employé désigner - s'exprimer par*,  
 and the adjective or adverb which follows how, must be placed after  
*adjectif adverbe HOW, devoir - se placer*  
 the verb in french; as, How long you have been! How late you  
*en ; , long tems tard*  
 come! How glad I am to see you! How heartily I thank you!  
*aise de bon cœur*  
 How sweet these flowers smell! How beautiful those roses are!  
*bon (bb) sentir! (bb) !*

In asking a question, how is expressed by *comment* to denote the  
*En faire HOW - (ii) N.B. par 170 désigner*  
 manner, and by *combien* to denote a quantity; How shall we go?  
*manière, quantité;*  
 How shall we carry our luggage? How shall we know where you are?  
*porter bagage? savoir où*  
 How many<sup>a</sup> people shall we be? How much<sup>b</sup> money have you got?  
*N.B. 229 N.B. argent 270*

186. How LONG. When HOW LONG refers to the beginning of  
*HOW LONG. HOW LONG se rapporter commencement*  
 time, it is expressed by *combien*, when it refers to the duration, it  
*7 , - (ii) N.B. , durée,*  
 is expressed by *combien de tems*; and when it refers to the end, it  
*- ; fin,*  
 is expressed by *jusqu'à quand*; as, How long have you been learn-  
*- ; ,*  
 ing french? or, how long is it<sup>46</sup> since you learn french? How long  
*153 y a-t-il que \**  
 do you intend to learn? How long will you abuse<sup>202</sup> my patience?  
*avoir 125 dessein abuser de*

187. How FAR. When HOW FAR is the nominative of a verb, it  
*How FAR. HOW FAR nominatif ,*  
 is expressed by *combien*; and when it is its object, it is expressed  
*- (ii) N.B. ; 17 objet, -*  
 by *jusqu'où*; as, How far is your house from here? or how far is<sup>246</sup> it  
*; , † y a-t-il*  
 from here to your house? How far is Windsor from London? How  
*ici † 246 Londres?*  
 far do you intend to go? How far shall we go to meet<sup>273</sup> you?  
*avoir dessein au devant de*

\* These two ways of expression are rendered by the latter way in french. By this expression *Have been learning*, is meant that the person continues to learn; so to express the same idea in french, you must use the present of the verb, and say; *Vous apprenez*, not *Vous avez appris*, which would mean that the person has ceased to learn. Again, *How long have you been in England?* may be expressed by *Combien de tems avez-vous été en Angleterre?* or by *Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes en Angleterre?* The former of these expressions meaning that the person has left England; the latter meaning that the person is still in England. Learners are very apt to confound these two ideas. See note § p. 353.

† These two ways of expression must be rendered by the latter way in French.



## REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.

188. HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER, before an adjective, a participle, or an  
*HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER,* <sup>206</sup> *adjectif,* *participe*

adverb, is expressed by *quelque*, which requires *que* after the ad-  
*adverbe, - s'exprimer \** , *demande*

tive, participle or adverb, and the following verb (in the) subjunctive :  
 , , *qui suit* <sup>32</sup> *au* *subjonctif* ;

However learned you are. However diligent she is.  
*savant*

N. B. If the nominative of the verb is a noun, it is generally  
 - *nom,* <sup>62</sup> - <sup>183</sup>

placed after the verb ; However learned your master is, &c. These  
*se placer \** ; *savant* *maître* ,

words follow the same rule as WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER, rule 117.  
*mot* *règle que WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER,*

189. QUITE, ENTIRELY, before an adjective or a participle, are  
*QUITE, ENTIRELY,* <sup>206</sup> *ou* , -

generally expressed by *tout* ; as, My shoes are quite (worn out.) My  
 \* ; , *soulier* *usé* <sup>153</sup>

boots are quite worn out. My mother is quite astonished (at it.)  
*botte* *étonné* <sup>158</sup> *en* <sup>55</sup>

N. B. When *tout*, in this sense, is followed by an adjective femi-  
 , *sens,* *suivre* <sup>200</sup>

nine beginning with a consonant, melody requires that it should  
*qui commence* *par* *consonne,* <sup>7</sup> *demande*

be<sup>146</sup> of the same gender and number as the adjective ; My boots are  
<sup>148</sup> <sup>8</sup> *que* ;

quite new. My sisters are quite tired<sup>158</sup>. They are quite ill.  
 † *neuve.* *fatigué.* *malade.*

## NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

190. The negative expressions *Ne pas*, *Ne point*, NO, NOT ; *Ne plus*,  
*négative* <sup>32</sup> , , NO, NOT ;

NO MORE, NOT ANY MORE ; *Ne jamais*, NEVER ; *Ne guère*, BUT LITTLE,  
 NO MORE, NOT ANY MORE ; , NEVER ; , BUT LITTLE,

VERY LITTLE ; *Ne nullement*, BY NO MEANS, form only one negation ;  
 VERY LITTLE ; , BY NO MEANS, *ne faire que* ;

*ne* is always placed before the verb, and *pas*, *point*, *plus*, *jamais*,  
 - *se placer \** <sup>206</sup> , , , , ,

*guère*, *nullement*, like the other adverbs, are placed either after the  
 , , *comme* , - *se placer \** *ou*

verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle ; as, I do not like  
 , *auxiliaire* *participe* ; , *aimer*

that man. I never found so much<sup>a</sup> deceit. He never keeps his word.  
<sup>2</sup> <sup>136</sup> *tant* N.B. *tromperie.* *tenir* *parole.*

I know him but little. I will not deal any more with him.  
*faire d'affaires* <sup>58</sup>

\* See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

† Note \* page 243.

## NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

N. B. If the verb which follows these negative expressions is in the  
*suivre* <sup>32</sup> *à*  
 infinitive, the two negative words *Ne pas*, *Ne point*, *Ne jamais*, *Ne plus*,  
 , *négatif*<sup>82</sup> *mot* , , , ,  
 are generally placed together before the verb; as, I would advise you  
 ... <sup>183</sup> *se placer ensemble* <sup>206</sup> ; , *conseiller*  
 not to deal with that man. He is accused of never keeping  
*faire d'affaires* <sup>3</sup> <sup>92</sup> *accuser* *tenir*  
 his word. I think you will do well not to trust<sup>202</sup> him any more.  
<sup>221</sup> *faire* *vous fier à* <sup>58</sup>

191. Without a verb, no is expressed by *non*, and NOT by *non pas* ;  
 , NO - (ii) N.B. *par* , NOT ;  
 Do you not believe what he says? No, I do not<sup>70</sup> ; not that the thing  
*croire* <sup>81</sup> , N.B. ; *chose*  
 is<sup>145</sup> impossible, but because it is not likely. Will you not speak to  
*soit* , <sup>62</sup> *vraisemblable*. (o)  
 him any more? No ; not before I know whether that is true or not.  
<sup>54</sup> ; <sup>218</sup> *savoir* <sup>225</sup> <sup>89</sup> *vrai* \*

192. With the verb CAN expressed by *saurais* instead of *puis*, and  
*CAN exprimé* *au lieu de* † ,  
 with WHY expressed by *que* instead of *pourquoi*, NOT is expressed by  
*WHY* † , NOT - (ii) N.B.  
*Ne* only before the verb ; Why does he not do like other people?  
*seulement* ; *Que* *faire* *les autres* - <sup>39</sup>  
 Why does he not pay what he owes when he has money? He  
*Que* *payer* <sup>84</sup> *devoir* <sup>9</sup>  
 spends his money, and then he says that he can not pay other people  
<sup>271</sup> , *puis* *saurait* <sup>120</sup> - <sup>39</sup>  
 I can not pay other people, if other people do not pay me.  
*saurais* <sup>120</sup> - <sup>39</sup> , <sup>120</sup> - <sup>39</sup>

N. B. We<sup>90</sup> also<sup>184</sup> generally suppress *pas*, *point* with the verbs  
 N.B. *aussi* <sup>184</sup> *supprimer* ,  
*oser*, to DARE ; *cesser*, to CEASE, and with *savoir*, to KNOW, when it  
 , to DARE ; , to CEASE, , to KNOW,  
 is followed by *si*, *où*, *que*, *quand*, *quel*, *combien*, *comment* ; I dare  
*suivi* <sup>200</sup> , , , , , , ; *oser*  
 not speak to her. She does not cease scolding<sup>154</sup> me. I dare not  
 (o) <sup>54</sup> *gronder*  
 (go out) for fear of displeasing her<sup>54</sup>. I do not know what to do.  
*sortir* *lui*. <sup>83</sup> *faire*.  
 (There are) I do not know how many<sup>8</sup> people at the door.  
<sup>246</sup> *combien* N.B. <sup>229</sup> *à*

\* At the end of a sentence, NOT must be expressed by *Non*, without *Pas*.

† The present tense of the verb CAN used negatively, may be expressed two ways :

I can not *Je ne puis pas*,

more frequently, *Je ne saurais*.

He can not, *Il ne peut pas*,

*Il ne saurait*, &c.

WHY may also be expressed by *Que* or *Pourquoi*, in the following way :

*Que ne venez-vous à tems ?*

or *Pourquoi ne venez-vous pas à tems ?*

*Why do not you come in time ?*

## REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

193. Not after the verb TAKE CARE, *Prendre garde*, is not expressed  
 Not TAKE CARE, , - s'exprimer  
 in french, if we<sup>90</sup> put the following verb in the infinitive, and it is  
 , N.B. 32 à , 62 -  
 expressed by *ne*, if we<sup>90</sup> put the following verb (in the) subjunctive ;  
 (ii) N.B. , N.B. 32 au ;  
 Take care not to spoil it. Take care that he does not spoil it. I  
*Prenez garde de* \* *gâter*  
 will take care not to let him (go out). I will take care that he does  
 \* *laisser sortir*.  
 not go out. Take care not to let yourself (be cheated) by those  
 \* *laisser vous* 54 *tromper* (bb)  
 people. Take care that those people do not cheat you.  
 229 229 *tromper* .

194. The verb which follows *Empêcher*, to HINDER, to PREVENT,  
*suivre* , to HINDER, to PREVENT,  
 may be expressed two ways ; either by the subjunctive preceded by  
 178 - (ii) N.B. *de deux manières* ; ou *par* *précédé* 200  
*ne*, or by the infinitive without this particle ; I will hinder him from  
 , *par* (bb) *particule* ;  
 (going out). That will not prevent me from seeing him. I can hin-  
*sortir* 154 (bb) 154  
 der you both<sup>222</sup> from going out, and from seeing each other, if I choose.  
 N.B. , *vous voir* 121 , *vouloir*.

195. The verbs *craindre*, *Avoir peur*, *Appréhender*, to FEAR, to be  
 , to FEAR, to be  
 AFRAID ; the conjunctions *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, LEST, FOR FEAR  
 AFRAID ; , LEST, FOR FEAR  
 that, require *ne* before the verb which follows them, if we<sup>90</sup> fear  
 that, *demande* , N.B. *craindre*  
 that the action expressed by that verb will happen<sup>143</sup> ; then the verb  
*exprimer* 157 *arriver* ; † *alors*  
 has no<sup>8</sup> negation in english ; I (am afraid) somebody has seen us<sup>55</sup>.  
 N.B. *en* ; *craindre* 221 95 146 *vu* 159  
 Let us not stay here for fear some misfortune should happen to us.  
 - - *rester* 218 *quelque* 148 54  
 Go with that lady lest<sup>218</sup> she should (lose her way). She is afraid  
*Aller* *de peur que* *s'égarer* 149  
 that her mother should find her here. But observe that *ne* is left out, if  
 146 148 *observer* - *s'ometre*,

\* *Prendre garde*, in this sense, meaning to *Guard from* or *against*, if the negative NOT were expressed in french, it would be the same as if you said in english ; *Guard from not spoiling it*. As for the *Ne* which is used after *Prendre garde*, *Empêcher*, *Craindre*, *Avoir peur*, &c. when we put the following verb in the subjunctive, it seems to be the *Ne* or *Quin* which the Latins used in similar instances, and which, without any apparent reason for it, has been introduced into the french language.

† We fear that an action *will happen*, when we *do not wish* for that action ; and we fear that it *will not happen*, when we *wish* for it ; so when I say ;

I am afraid it will rain, I mean that I *do not wish* for rain.

I am afraid it will not rain, I mean that I *wish* that there should be rain

## REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

the verb which follows *craindre*, *avoir peur*, &c. is in the infinitive ;  
 , , &c. à ;

as, I was afraid of hurting<sup>154</sup> you. I did not do it, for fear of dis-  
 , 140 blesser 136 faire , de peur de dé-

pleasing<sup>154</sup> your mother. We were afraid of doing wrong.  
*plaire* 202 *mal*.

If we<sup>90</sup> fear that the action expressed by the verb will not happen<sup>143</sup>,  
 N.B. exprimer 157 see note † p. 372.

the english verb is attended by a negation which must be expressed  
*anglais* 32 *accompagné de* *il faut* - *exprimer*

by the corresponding<sup>32</sup> negation in french ; I am afraid nobody will  
*qui y correspond* *en* ; 221 97

come. I am afraid they have not seen us. Let us not go further<sup>41</sup>,  
 146 221 146 55 - - *loin*,

for fear we should not have time to (come back) for dinner.  
 218 - 148 7 *revenir*.

N.B. The verbs *nier*, to DENY, and *douter*, to DOUBT, attended  
 , to DENY, , to DOUBT,

by a negation, the conjunction à *moins que*, UNLESS ; and *si* in the  
*de* , , UNLESS ;

sense of à *moins que*, require also *ne* before the verb which follows  
 , *demandeur* 206 *suivre*

them ; I do not deny that I have been there sometimes. He does not  
 ; 145 *y* 55 *quelquefois*.

deny that he has asked your cousin. He does not doubt but he will  
 145 *cousine*. *que*

obtain her. I have no<sup>8</sup> doubt but they will be married<sup>261</sup> soon. I will  
*obtenir* 145 N.B. *doute que* 145 N.B. 135

not (go out) unless<sup>210</sup> it be fine. I will not go, unless you come with me.  
*sortir* à *moins que* 210 70 , 218 58

196. *Il y a que*, IT IS SINCE ; *depuis que*, SINCE, require *ne* before  
 , IT IS SINCE ; , SINCE, 206

the verb which follows them, when we<sup>90</sup> wish to denote that there  
 , N.B. *vouloir* 172 *désigner*

has not been any<sup>8</sup> action since the period (which we mention) ; It is  
*eu* N.B. *depuis* *période* *dont on fait mention* ; \*

long since I have met you. It is more than three months since I  
 † *rencontrer* 55 *plus* 48 *mois* †

saw you. How have you been<sup>241</sup> since I had the pleasure to see you ?  
 136 55 185 237 *se porter* 136 *plaisir*

But we<sup>90</sup> should not use *Ne*, if we<sup>90</sup> wished to denote that there has  
 N.B. *employer* , N.B. *vouloir* 246

\* The reason of this difference is that the English speak with reference to the *last action* that passed, the French, on the contrary, speak with reference to the time in which there has not been *any action*, and the idea is the same as the English would express by these words ; *I have not met you for this long time. I have not seen you for more than three months.*

† Observe that *Since* after *Il y a*, is expressed by *Que* only, not by *Depuis que*,



## REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS

been an action; as, It is a month since he is gone. Have you seen  
*eu* \* ; , <sup>246</sup> *mois* † *partir.*

him since he is returned? He has been at home this fortnight. ‡  
<sup>265</sup> *au logis* <sup>246</sup> *quinze jours.*

197. We<sup>90</sup> also use the negative participle *ne* before the verb which  
 N.B. *employer* <sup>32</sup> *particule*  
 follows *Autre*, OTHER; *Autrement*, OTHERWISE; These things are quite  
 , OTHER; , OTHERWISE; <sup>13</sup> <sup>139</sup>  
 different from what you say. Do you never speak otherwise than  
*autres* - *que*  
 you think? I know people who often act otherwise than they say.  
<sup>229</sup> *agir*

N.B. *ne* is also used after the comparative adjective *meilleur*, and  
 - *s'employer* *comparatif*<sup>32</sup>  
 the adverbs *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, see rule 47; and with several other  
 , , , *règle* ; *plusieurs*  
 words mentioned under their respective heads, viz. *personne*,  
*dont il est fait mention* *respectifs* <sup>32</sup> *chapitre*, à savoir ,  
*qui que ce soit*, rule 97; *rien*, *quoi que ce soit*, rule 99; *Aucun*,  
 , *règle* ; , ;  
 rule 100; *Nul*, *pas un*, rule 101; *Ni l'un ni l'autre*, rule 124.  
 ; , , ; , .

198. BUT used in the sense of the adverb ONLY, is expressed by  
*BUT* *employé* *sens* ONLY, - *s'exprimer* *par*  
*ne* before the verb, and by *que* after it; We were but six people,  
<sup>206</sup> - <sup>140</sup> <sup>81</sup> ;  
 or only six people<sup>229</sup> at table. We drank but four bottles, or only  
*personnes*  
 four bottles of wine. We were but a few miles, or only a few miles  
*bouteille* <sup>140</sup> , *à quelques milles*  
 from (the place). We met nobody but a woman, or only a woman.  
*là* *rencontrer* ,

199. BUT is sometimes used in the sense of a relative pronoun,  
*BUT* - *s'employer* *relatif*<sup>32</sup> ,  
 and is then expressed by *qui ne*, which require the following verb  
 - *alors il s'exprime* ,  
 (in the) subjunctive; as, (There is) no body but derives, or who does  
*au* ; , <sup>246</sup> <sup>97</sup> *retirer*,  
 not derive some advantage from study. I have not found a man  
*quelque avantage* *étude.* *trouver*  
 but thinks so, or who does not think so. There is no man but  
 , *de même.* <sup>243</sup> *personne*  
 regrets the loss of time, or who does not regret the loss of time.  
<sup>7</sup> , *regretter* *perte* *tems.*

\* See compound tenses of *Il y a*, page 173.

† See note †, page 373.

‡ Turn; *It is a fortnight since he is at home*; see note \* page 369.

## ADVERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.\**

Now, I am ready. Let us (set out) immediately. Let us walk  
*à présent, prêt. - - partir tout à l'heure.* 283

gently. (What is the use) of walking<sup>154</sup> so fast? I came<sup>136</sup> here to  
*doucement. Pourquoi † - marcher vite?* 233 170

enjoy a pleasant walk, not to tire myself. I have no more<sup>6</sup> desire  
*avoir 202 agréable 32, 191 fatiguer me 54 † N.B. envie*

to tire myself than you have; only I (am afraid) that we shall  
*me 54 47; craindre (bb) N.B.*

be<sup>145</sup> there too late. We are never there in time. We generally come  
*arriver trop y 54 à tems. arriver*

either too soon or too late. It<sup>62</sup> is very unpleasant to keep people  
*- tôt ou N.B. désagréable de faire 229*

waiting ‡ (in that way.) Do they live still in that house where  
*attendre ainsi 183 N.B. demeurer encore 213*

we saw them last? No, they have removed to another house  
*la dernière fois? 238 aller demeurer*

a little further in the country. How far shall we go? How far  
*un peu plus loin 230*

is it from our house<sup>209</sup>? How long shall we stay? How you like to  
*N.B. rester*

ask useless<sup>32</sup> questions! Do you not know it as well as I do? Take  
*faire inutile 9 savoir 43 43 52 -*

care not to fall into this ditch. Take care lest this post falls upon  
*tomber fossé. que poteau*

you. Do not go (so near) lest<sup>218</sup> somebody should see you.  
*approcher tant de peur que 95 148*

I only (am afraid) that something<sup>68</sup> bad should happen to you. Will  
*craindre (cc) mal 148 arriver 148 54*

your cousin be there? I do not think he will<sup>145</sup>. He dares not  
*134 y 54 221 y 70 soit. oser*

come near the house. He fears that they<sup>90</sup> would turn him out.  
*(approcher de) 146 N.B. mettre à la porte.*

It is near two years since they<sup>90</sup> have (heard<sup>275</sup> from him.) Is he not  
*246 près de 233 que N.B. reçu de ses nouvelles.*

returned yet from his journey? No, he is not<sup>70</sup>. It is feared that  
*265 encore voyage? 91*

some misfortune has<sup>146</sup> happened to him. I (am afraid) he will never  
*quelque 238 arriver 55 craindre 221*

return<sup>265</sup>. I fear the report of his death will (prove true.) Never  
*146 221 bruit se vérifier 146*

\* See note \*, p. 281.

† Turn; *Why to walk so fast?*‡ *No more*, meaning *No longer*, is expressed by *Ne* before the verb, and by *Plus* after; but when *More* is used as an adverb of quantity, meaning *Greater*, the negative *Pas* must be added to the sentence, and we say *Pas plus*.§ Turn; *To keep waiting in that way people*, because *Keep* and *Waiting* expressing together only *one idea*, they can not be separated

## ADVERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercice on the foregoing rules.*

believe such reports. I (dare say)<sup>221</sup> he is<sup>241</sup> well enough. I do not  
*croire de tels bruit je ne doute pas* <sup>145</sup>

doubt but he will be here (very soon.) If you will come with me,  
*douter qu'* <sup>145</sup> *bientôt.* <sup>144</sup>

we shall go and meet him. Go that way, and I will go this,  
*(nn)* <sup>273</sup> *par là,* *par ici,*

for fear<sup>218</sup> we should miss<sup>148</sup> him on the road. I long to see him.  
*de peur que perdre en - chemin.* see p. 175.

It is long since I have seen him. I told you right. There he is<sup>247</sup>.  
<sup>246</sup> *que* <sup>136</sup> *bien.* <sup>N.B.</sup>

So<sup>184</sup> you are returned (at last). How happy I am to see you again!  
*Donc* <sup>265</sup> *enfin.* <sup>ravi</sup> *recevoir* -

How have you been since I saw you? We (were afraid) you  
<sup>237</sup> <sup>241</sup> *depuis que* <sup>136</sup> *craindre* <sup>221</sup>

were lost. I began to fear that we should never see<sup>145</sup> you again.  
<sup>146</sup> *perdre.* <sup>138</sup> <sup>149</sup>

Why did you not write to us? Why did you not let us know<sup>248</sup> where  
<sup>136</sup> <sup>136</sup> <sup>N.B. où</sup>

you were, and how you were? I (was afraid<sup>221</sup>) you would be offended  
<sup>241</sup> <sup>140</sup> <sup>146</sup> *fâché*

at me. What! offended at you? How could you think so? How  
<sup>200</sup> <sup>83</sup> *pouvoir* <sup>le</sup> <sup>54</sup>

often have I told you how glad we were to see you, or to hear<sup>275</sup>  
*de fois* <sup>55</sup> *entendre*

from you? We were every day talking of you. We never met  
*de vos nouvelles?* - *tous les jours* <sup>155</sup> <sup>58</sup> <sup>139</sup>

with a traveller, without enquiring<sup>154</sup> after you. You certainly have  
<sup>201</sup> *voyageur,* *s'informer* <sup>200</sup>

always been (very kind) to me, and I sincerely thank you (for it.)  
*eu bien des bontés pour* <sup>53</sup> *en* <sup>54</sup>

How long is it since you left this country? How long have you  
<sup>246</sup> <sup>135</sup> <sup>230</sup>

been absent? How far have you been? How long do you intend  
*absent?* *avoir dessein*

to stop? I have only been absent about two years, and I have not  
*rester?* *environ*

been so far as you imagine. How fast the time goes! Methinks<sup>224</sup>  
<sup>loin</sup> <sup>42</sup> *s'imaginer.* *vite* *passer* *Il me semble*

it is only the other day that we were at R. together. Are you going  
*ce* <sup>140</sup>

to leave us already? Can not you stay a little longer? It is so  
*quitter déjà* *rester* *plus long tems?* <sup>246</sup>

long since we have had the pleasure of your company. I should lik  
*que*

\* See note \* page 363.

† Turn; *How many times* &c.

‡ See note † page 369.

## ADVERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

to stay (very much), but I am afraid my horse will not stand still.  
*beaucoup,* <sup>221</sup> *rester* <sup>146</sup> *tranquille.*

(Take hold of) the bridle, lest<sup>218</sup> it should go<sup>148</sup>. Take care not  
*Tenir - bride, de peur que s'en aller.\** *garde*

to go (too near.) Take care that it does not kick you. Do not  
*en approcher trop. (bb) N.B. frapper.*

go (so near,) lest it should bite you. Would it not be better  
*approcher tant, <sup>213</sup> mordre valoir mieux*

to put it into the stable? It is not worth while. I can not stop.  
<sup>213</sup> *écurie?* *Cela - en valoir la peine. rester.*

Our friends want to go to the play to-night, and they will not go,  
<sup>209</sup> *comédie* † <sup>235</sup> , † ,

unless I go with them. You perhaps can come with us. I would  
<sup>213</sup> <sup>59</sup> *peut-être* <sup>53</sup>

go, if I was not afraid that it will be too late, when the play is over.  
 † , <sup>143</sup> , <sup>142</sup> *finie.*

You need not stay till the end of the play. You may go as  
*avoir besoin de rester jusqu'à fin <sup>178</sup> s'en aller\* 43*

soon as you like<sup>142</sup>. Come; (make up your mind); for, unless we  
<sup>43</sup> *vouloir. Allons; se déterminer; imp. car, <sup>218</sup>*

go immediately, I am almost sure we shall be too late to see the  
*partir tout à l'heure, presque <sup>221</sup> arriver <sup>170</sup>*

beginning of the play. Go; I will follow you. Take care not to  
*commencement ; || suivre*

stop. Take care that he does not stop. We are just in time. Now,  
*s'arrêter. à ,*

what do you think of the players? They are better than I thought.  
*comédien? (b) p. 72.*

They have acted better than I expected. I hope you will come  
*jouer (b) p. 72. <sup>221</sup> y revenir*

again soon. I do not think I shall<sup>70</sup>. I have but a short time to stay,  
 - *bientôt. <sup>145</sup> N.B. - peu de <sup>169</sup> rester,*

and have a (great many<sup>8</sup>) things to do. How impatient you seem  
<sup>53</sup> - *beaucoup N.B. <sup>169</sup>*

to go! Can not you stay (a few days longer?) No, I can not. Now,  
*s'en aller\* encore quelques jours? , <sup>70</sup> ;*

I want to find my sister, and I do not know where to look for her.  
<sup>200</sup> , *où <sup>201</sup>*

I am afraid she is gone<sup>158</sup>. I am afraid she has not seen me. If you  
<sup>221</sup> <sup>146</sup> *partir. <sup>221</sup> <sup>146</sup> <sup>55</sup>*

go (that way,) I do not doubt but you will find her. There are few<sup>8</sup>  
*par là, que <sup>210</sup> peu N.B.*

people here but know her. I think I see her. Yes; here<sup>247</sup> she is.  
<sup>229</sup> <sup>159</sup> *221 ; N.B.*

• See N. B. p. 115.

† See note \* p. 303.

‡ See note † p. 351.

§ See note † p. 312.



## PREPOSITION.

200. The greatest difficulty attending the prepositions, is, that  
 they are not always expressed by the words which correspond to each  
 other in both languages; *i. e.* OF, FROM, the corresponding  
 preposition of which is *de*, are sometimes expressed by *à*; AT, TO,  
 the corresponding preposition of which is *à*, are sometimes expressed  
 by *de*; BY, FOR, sometimes expressed by *de*, and sometimes by *à*, &c.  
 which no rule can sufficiently explain; therefore, see a list of these  
 words with the examples (annexed to them,) p. 247 and following.

201. (There are) some verbs in english which require a preposition,  
 though the verbs which represent them in french do not admit of  
 any; such are, LOOK AT, *regarder*; ASK FOR, *demandar*; ADMIT OF,  
*admettre*, &c. see a list of these verbs and the examples, page 250.

202. In other instances, it is the reverse, and (some french verbs)  
 will have a preposition, though the english verbs will not admit  
 of any; such are, *Abuser de*, to ABUSE; *s'appercevoir de*, to PERCEIVE;  
*Attenter à*, to ATTEMPT, &c. see the examples, p. 250, and following.

203. In some instances, the preposition may (be placed) in english,  
 either before or after the substantive which it governs; but in french  
 the preposition must always (be placed) before its object; Whom does  
 this house belong to? What house are you speaking of? That house  
 which we just passed by. It belongs to that gentleman's father  
 whom we are going to dine with. I know whom it belongs to.

\* Turn; Of which the corresponding preposition is, &c.

† *Aucun* requires *ne* before the following verb.

† See note † page 232.

## PREPOSITION.

204. The prepositions must be repeated before every word which  
*devoir - se répéter (ii) N.B.* <sup>104</sup>

they govern; Mr. A. has invited me to take a walk and dine with him.  
<sup>62</sup> *régir*; <sup>55</sup> *inviter* <sup>263</sup> *N.B.* <sup>58</sup>

We shall walk into his park and gardens. We are going to France  
<sup>213</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>155</sup> <sup>6</sup>

and Germany. Do not go without calling<sup>154</sup> on me, or writing to me.  
*Allemagne.* *partir* <sup>266</sup> , (o)

## REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

205. FOR. Before a period of time, FOR is expressed by *depuis*,  
*For.* *période* <sup>8</sup> , *FOR - s'exprimer (ii) N.B.* ,

when we<sup>90</sup> wish to denote the beginning of the period, by *pendant*  
<sup>N.B.</sup> *vouloir* <sup>172</sup> *désigner* ,

or *durant*, when we<sup>90</sup> wish to denote the duration, and by *Pour*, when  
<sup>N.B.</sup> *durée* ,

we<sup>90</sup> wish to denote the end; What dreadful<sup>82</sup> weather it has been<sup>240</sup>  
<sup>N.B.</sup> \* ; <sup>82</sup> *affreux* *tems* *il* *fait*

for some time past. We have not had a (fine day) for these  
*quelque tems - (jour de beau tems) -*

three weeks. It has rained for two whole<sup>32</sup> days. If this weather  
*semaine.* *plu* *entier* <sup>29</sup>

lasts, we<sup>90</sup> shall not (be able) to get provisions for the winter.  
*durer,* <sup>N.B.</sup> *pouvoir* <sup>172</sup> *se procurer* <sup>9</sup> <sup>2</sup> *'hiver.*

206. BEFORE. If BEFORE is used to denote time or order<sup>7</sup>,  
*BEFORE* *BEFORE - s'employer (ii) N.B.* <sup>169</sup> <sup>7</sup> *ordre*,

it is expressed by *avant*, which is the opposite of *Après*, AFTER;  
*- s'exprimer (ii) N.B.* , *opposé* , *AFTER* ;

If BEFORE is used to denote place, or in presence, it (is expressed) by  
*BEFORE* *lieu,* *en* , *(ii) N.B.*

*devant*, the opposite (of which<sup>75</sup>) is *derrière*, BEHIND; as, You shall  
<sup>opposé</sup> *dont* <sup>N.B. †</sup> , *BEHIND* ; ,

not (go out) before dinner, because you have spoken before your turn.  
<sup>sortir</sup> , <sup>tour</sup>

Do not walk<sup>263</sup> before me, stay behind. I want to arrive before you.  
*marcher* , *rester* <sup>260</sup>

(Walk in) or (go away), and do not stay so before the door.  
*Entrer* *s'en aller,* *ainsi*

207. BY. BY used in the sense of NEAR, is expressed by *près de*  
*By.* *By employé* *NEAR, - (ii) N.B.*

or *à côté de*; as, Come and sit by me. I would rather stand  
<sup>;</sup> , *(un) vous asseoir* <sup>50</sup> *aimer mieux me tenir*

by the door. How can you sit by the fire (in such weather as this?)  
<sup>rester</sup> <sup>feu</sup> <sup>du tems qu'il fait ?</sup>

\* Observe that when FOR comes between two sentences, it cannot be expressed by any of the above words, as it is not a preposition; it is then a *conjunction*, and is expressed by *Car*; as, I can not go with you, *for* I am very busy; *Je ne puis pas aller avec vous, car je suis très affairé.* See 217 rule.

† Turn; Of which the opposite is, &c.

## REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

N. B. By is often followed (by the) words MYSELF, THYSELF, HIM-  
 By des MYSELF, THYSELF, HIM-  
 SELF, HERSELF, &c. to denote ALONE; these words are then<sup>183</sup> ex-  
 SELF, HERSELF, &c. <sup>170</sup> ALONE; - alors s'ex-  
 pressed in french by the adjective *Seul*; as, I was by myself all the  
 primer (ii) N.B. par ; , <sup>136</sup>  
 morning. Are you fond of being by yourself? What a pleasure  
<sup>234</sup> - aimer à <sup>154</sup> <sup>82</sup> <sup>20</sup> plaisir  
 (it is) to be by oneself. My sister can not<sup>182</sup> be a moment by herself.  
 il y a à saurait

208. At, to. With verbs denoting being at or going to a  
 At, to. 7 qui désignent <sup>154</sup> \* à \* <sup>154</sup> à  
 person's<sup>25</sup> house, AT, TO, are expressed by *chez*, and the word HOUSE,  
 de quelqu'un 7 , AT, TO, - (ii) N.B. , HOUSE,  
 if expressed in english, is (left out) in french; Will you come with me  
 il est exprimé , - s'omettre, (ii) N.B. ; † <sup>58</sup>  
 to my mother's? She is not at home; She is at your sister's house.  
 elle;

(Then I must) go to my sister's, for I must see her. Perhaps  
 Il faut donc que <sup>181</sup> , † <sup>181</sup> Peut-être que  
 she is not there now, for she had to call at a friend's house.  
 y <sup>54</sup> à présent, † à <sup>266</sup>

N. B. If the word HOUSE, instead of being attended by a noun,  
 HOUSE, au lieu <sup>154</sup> accompagné de ,  
 is attended by one of the possessive pronominal<sup>32</sup> articles MY, THY,  
 de possessifs <sup>32</sup> pronominaux MY, THY,  
 HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR, the word HOUSE is also<sup>183</sup> (left out.)  
 HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR, HOUSE - aussi (ii) N.B.  
 and the pronominal<sup>32</sup> article is changed into a personal<sup>32</sup> pronoun,  
 pronominal - se changer en - personnel ,  
 viz. into *moi, toi, soi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*; Come to  
 c'est à dire en , , , , , , , ; Venir  
 my house. I will not go to your house. I will go to his. Let us go  
 † † - -  
 to her house. She is not at home. She is at our house or at theirs.  
 elle

209. Of, FROM. With verbs denoting going or coming from a  
 Of, FROM. 7 qui désignent <sup>154</sup> <sup>154</sup> de  
 person's<sup>25</sup> house, OF, FROM, are expressed by *de chez*, and the word  
 quelqu'un 7 OF, FROM, - (ii) N.B. par ,  
 HOUSE is (left out) in french; I come from my sister's. You did  
 HOUSE - s'omettre (ii) N.B. ; <sup>136</sup>  
 not find your mother there, for I saw her (going<sup>154</sup> out) of your  
 trouver y <sup>55</sup> † <sup>136</sup> <sup>55</sup> sortir

\* Put this verb in the infinitive.

† See note \* page 143.

‡ See note \* page 379.

## REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

brother's house. I met<sup>133</sup> her coming from my grandmother's.  
*rencontrer* <sup>153</sup> N. B. *grand'mère.*

N. B. If the word *HOUSE*, instead of being attended by a noun, is  
*HOUSE, au lieu* <sup>154</sup> *accompagné de* ,  
 attended by the possessive pronominal article *MY, THY, HIS, HER, &c.*  
*possessif pronominal MY, THY, HIS, HER, &c.*

The word *HOUSE* is also omitted, and the article is changed into a  
*HOUSE -* <sup>183</sup> *s'omettre,* *- se changer en -*

personal pronoun, as above; What do you want here? (Get out)  
*personnel* , *comme ci dessus;* *chercher* *Sortir*

of my house. You come from our house, and I come from yours.  
 , (n)

I met your father (coming<sup>153</sup> out) of his house, and going<sup>153</sup> to ours.  
<sup>136</sup> *sortir* N. B. , <sup>N. B.</sup>

210. FROM, with the verbs to GO, to COME, not from the house of  
*FROM,* to GO, to COME, non *maison*  
 a person, but from the person himself, is expressed by *de la part;*  
*personne,* *même - s'exprimer par* ,

Whom do you come from? I come from your mother. Go from me  
<sup>77</sup> *venir*

to my sister's, and tell her that I will come and drink tea at her house.  
 , (f) p. 79. <sup>264</sup> (nn) \* *thé?*

211. IN, INTO. Before the proper names of persons and places,  
*IN, INTO.* *propre nom* *personne* <sup>204</sup> *lieu,*

IN, INTO, are expressed by *dans;* There are great beauties in Thom-  
*IN, INTO, -* (ii) N. B. ; <sup>246</sup> <sup>10</sup> *beauté*

son. Are there (as many<sup>6</sup>) inhabitants in Paris as in London?  
<sup>246</sup> *autant* N. B. *'habitants* *que* *Londres?*

N. B. IN, before the proper name of a place, after a verb denoting resi-  
*IN,* , *qui désigne* <sup>7</sup> *de-*

dence is expressed by *à;* My brother is in Paris, and my sister in London.  
*meure - s'exprimer* ; ,

212. Before the proper names of countries after verbs which denote  
*propre* *pays* <sup>7</sup>

going or residing, IN, INTO, are expressed by *en;* My father is in  
*aller †* *demeurer, †* *IN, INTO, -* (ii) N. B. ;

Russia, my brother in Switzerland, and my sister in France.  
*Russie,* *Suisse,*

N. B. In other instances, IN, INTO, before these names may<sup>176</sup> be  
*les autres cas,* *IN, INTO,* *pouvoir -*

expressed by *dans,* with the article, or by *en,* without an article;  
*s'exprimer* *par* , , , - ;

Are there as many<sup>8</sup> people<sup>229</sup> in France as in Germany?  
<sup>246</sup> *autant* N. B. *mon.le* *que* *Allemagne?*

• See note § page 355.

† This verb must be in the *infinitive* in french.



## REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

213. Before common names used<sup>157</sup> in a limited sense, i. e. which  
*commun 7 employé limité sens,*  
 require any of the signs called article, *IN, INTO* are expressed by *dans* ;  
<sup>96</sup> *signes* , *IN, INTO* - *s'exprimer* ;  
 Put this wine in a bottle. If you will be diligent, we will take  
*Mettre bouteille. 144* , *prendre*  
 you in our partnership. Put these papers into that parcel. Put them  
*société. papier (bb) paquet.*  
 in the same order in which you found them. I never saw my papers  
*même ordre 76 136 136*  
 in such a confusion before. Let every thing be in the state it ought  
*telle 38 - 248 107 état (s) devoir*  
 to be. (There must be) some order and economy in a house.  
<sup>172</sup> *Il faut 3économie*

214. But before the same common names used in a vague sense,  
*même vague* ,  
 in which sense they generally<sup>184</sup> do not require any<sup>8</sup> article, *IN, INTO*,  
*ce ordinairement N.B. IN, INTO,*  
 are expressed by *EN* ; I must put this wine into bottles ; (i. e. bottle it.)  
*- (ii) N.B. ; 181 mettre ;*  
 I am going to enter into partnership with my uncle. I will put these  
<sup>155 172</sup> *entrer société oncle.*  
 papers in parcels. Every thing here is in confusion. I will put  
*paquet. 107 184*  
 every thing in order, if you will not put yourself in a passion.  
<sup>107</sup> , <sup>144</sup> *vous 54 - colère.*

215. Speaking of time, *IN* is expressed by *dans*, to denote the  
*En parlant 7 , IN - s'exprimer , 170 désigner*  
 time after which an action will be performed, and by *EN*, to denote  
<sup>76</sup> *- se faire, 170*  
 the time that will be employed in performing it ; as, Do you think  
<sup>92</sup> *employer à faire 62 ;*  
 that I can learn french in six months ? You may<sup>178</sup> learn it in  
<sup>145</sup> *français mois ? pouvoir*  
 less <sup>8</sup> time. I intend to begin in a month. I shall be with  
*moins N.B. avoir dessein 163*  
 you in an hour. I can walk there in less than half an hour.  
*heure. aller y 54 48 demi 38*

216. Before nouns denoting any part of the day, *IN* is not ex-  
<sup>7</sup> *qui désignent quelque partie jour, IN -*  
 pressed in french, (nor is) *ON*, before the days of the week ; I will  
*, non plus que ON, semaine ;*  
 come and see you on sunday or monday. Will you come in the morn  
*(nn) dimanche lundi matin*  
 ing or in the afternoon ? I will come on monday in the afternoon  
*après midi ?*

## PREPOSITION.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.\*

I am very uneasy ABOUT thi business. Have you enquired ABOUT  
 inquiet 200 affaire. 237 s'informer

what people<sup>80</sup> say (of it)? Your friends are very angry AT you. They  
 84 N.B. en 54 fâché 53

laughed<sup>133</sup> AT what you desired<sup>133</sup> me to tell them. I do not wonder  
 82 moquer<sup>237</sup> 84 252 (f) p. 79. s'étonner

AT that. They laugh AT every thing. They blame you FOR your  
 (bb) se moquer 107 blâmer

rashness. They will not believe that you are 'sorry FOR what you  
 témérité. 173 145 fâché 84

have done. They will get nothing BY that. I neither care  
 gagner 93 (bb) 224 s2 s'occuper

FOR them, nor FOR what they say. I will punish them FOR their  
 53 81 punir

ingratitude. I will take my property (FROM them). I do not depend  
 ôter bien † leur 54 dépendre

UPON them. I need<sup>202</sup> nothing. I am abundantly provided WITH  
 58 avoir besoin 99 abondamment pourvu

every thing. I congratulate you UPON your (good fortune.) I  
 107 féliciter bonheur.

think you have reason to be contented WITH your lot. Look<sup>201</sup> AT  
 221 lieu content sort. Regarder

that woman. See how she laughs AT us. She is waiting<sup>153</sup> FOR us.  
 (bb) comme se rire 53 - attendre 201

Do not look AT her. I am angry WITH her. I do not approve  
 201 fâché approuver

OF her behaviour. She imposes UPON her friends, and she slanders  
 conduite. en imposer , médire<sup>203</sup>

every body she knows. She has met WITH several misfortunes,  
 tous ceux que éprouver plusieurs disgrâce,

but she has not profited (BY them.) I think she delights IN mischief.  
 profiter † en 55 221 se plaire faire le mal.

She tyrannizes OVER all her house, and does not mind<sup>202</sup> what the  
 tyranniser , s'embarrasser

world says. She is very much like<sup>202</sup> her mother; a haughty, im-  
 - ressembler ; hautain, im-

perious woman whom nobody could please. I wonder how you  
 périeux (g) 76 97 pouvoir plaire 202. s'étonner que

trust<sup>202</sup> her brother. He is not fit FOR (any thing). He has inherit-  
 se fier propre 99 hériter

ed a large estate, but that will not (be sufficient) FOR his expences.  
 203 gros bien, suffire dépense.

Do you remember what I told you one day? No, what is it?  
 se souvenir 202 , (y)

\* See note \* page 281.

† The preposition is implied in this pronoun.

## PREPOSITION.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

That he would abuse<sup>202</sup> his fortune, and perish some day WITH misery  
 (bb) N.B. abuser , périr quelque misère,  
 unless<sup>195</sup> somebody would provide<sup>149</sup> FOR his wants. He will never  
<sup>218</sup> N.B. <sup>95</sup> pourvoir besoin.  
 give up<sup>202</sup> gaming and drinking. He is surrounded WITH flatterers  
 renoncer jeu<sup>7</sup> boisson<sup>7</sup>. entouré flatteur  
 who do nothing but sport WITH his credulity. He had promised  
 faire \* se jouer crédulité. <sup>140</sup> promettre<sup>201</sup>  
 his father that he would (give up) the company which displeases him,  
 renoncer<sup>202</sup> déplaître<sup>202</sup> lui,†  
 but there is no trusting his promises. He never keeps them. He  
 se fier † <sup>202</sup> tenir  
 knows he is despised by every body, but he does not care FOR  
<sup>221</sup> mépriser <sup>167</sup> <sup>106</sup> , se soucier  
 that. He does not care FOR any body. Tell him<sup>162</sup> that if he does  
 (bb) <sup>97</sup> (f) p. 79.  
 not alter<sup>202</sup> his conduct soon <sup>183</sup>, he will be punished FOR his obstinacy.  
 changer - conduite bientôt N.B., opiniâtreté.  
 What a difference between him and your brother. This<sup>88</sup> is a young  
<sup>20</sup> entre <sup>58</sup> N.B.  
 man who pleases every body. Every body wishes him<sup>162</sup> well, and  
<sup>202</sup> <sup>106</sup> (f) p. 79. du bien,  
 rejoices AT his prosperity. All who know him, wish FOR his com-  
 se réjouir Tous ceux ,  
 pany. I met WITH him the other day at a friend's of mine, and I was  
 87 , 137  
 delighted WITH his conversation. I was struck WITH astonishment AT  
 charmer frapper  
 seeing so young a man enjoying<sup>154</sup> his reputation with (so much)  
<sup>134</sup> <sup>38</sup> jouir<sup>202</sup> tant N.B.  
 modesty; sensible OF praises, without seeming<sup>154</sup> to wish FOR them,  
 ; louange, paraître <sup>172</sup> désirer ,  
 and satisfied WITH the pleasure of having done his duty. His  
 satisfaire <sup>154</sup> devoir.  
 friends were transported WITH joy AT seeing him covered WITH glory,  
 transporté<sup>158</sup> <sup>154</sup> couvrir ,  
 and animated WITH the desire of pleasing<sup>154</sup> them. He is a young  
 animer <sup>202</sup> leur,† <sup>63</sup>  
 man for whom I feel a particular esteem. (Young as) he is, I would  
 particulier<sup>32</sup> Tout jeune que ,  
 trust<sup>202</sup> him sooner than any body that I know. I would answer FOR  
 se fier (o) tout autre répondre  
 him as FOR myself. I am much obliged to you FOR the good opinion  
 comme (n) N.B. bien (o) (s)

\* Express Nothing but by Ne before the verb, and Que after.

† The preposition is implied in this pronoun.

‡ Turn, One can not trust, &amp;c.

## PREPOSITION.

## RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

you have of him, and I thank you (FOR it.) Look AT those flowers.  
 , remercier \* 54 en fleur.

How beautiful they are! Do not touch<sup>202</sup> them<sup>63</sup>. They are not  
 183 belle 62 toucher y.\* 62

mine. If you wish FOR one, ask that gentleman FOR it. No, indeed;  
 85 , monsieur † , vraiment;

I will not ask him FOR any. I would rather look FOR one myself.  
 (f) p. 79. (p) aimer mieux en<sup>70</sup> chercher (m) N.B.

I do not like to ask FOR flowers from a stranger. If he offered you  
 169 9 à étranger. †

one, would you not accept of it? Perhaps I might<sup>70</sup>. I do not care  
 eu<sup>70</sup> , N.B. se soucier

FOR flowers. I do not know what I was thinking OF, when I men-  
 83 135 , parler de

tioned flowers. I beg OF you, Madam, that you will accept OF this<sup>98</sup>.  
 136 136 prier , § N.B.

Sir, you are very kind. I am much obliged to you (FOR it.) This  
 , avoir bieu de la bonté. bieu 138 (o) \* 55 eu.

gentleman has asked your sister a question, and she has not answered  
 || faire 162 163 , répondre<sup>202</sup>

him. Sister, why do not you answer that gentleman? I beg the  
 lui.\* 19 , 202 || demander

gentleman's pardon. I did not know that you were talking ABOUT  
 25 ¶ 155

me. I was thinking of something that (just occurred to my mind.)  
 135 98 vient de me venir à - l'esprit.

What does he want of me? I do not know; ask him. He seems  
 83 vouloir - 54 ; \*\* (f) p. 79.

(very much) taken up WITH you. I think he is (in love) WITH  
 très occupé - 221 amoureux

you. What! in love WITH me? You surely<sup>184</sup> do not mind what  
 83 certainement penser à 84

you say. I only said so in joke. He wants to know if you can  
 184 136 cela pour rire. 260

spare<sup>202</sup> the book which you have promised him<sup>102</sup>. I can not spare it  
 se passer (f) p. 79. 202 eu \*

now. I am using<sup>155</sup> it myself. When I have done (WITH it,) (he shall  
 se servir<sup>202</sup> en 59 \* (m) N.B. 142 \* 55 eu, il

be very welcome to it.) What does he want to do WITH that  
 l'aura, s'il le veut. †† 83 260

\* The preposition is implied in this pronoun.

† See note || page 296.

‡ Note † page 337.

§ That you will accept, turn; to accept.

|| Note † page 307.

¶ Turn; I beg pardon to monsieur.

•• Add here the pronoun *Le* in french.

†† We say in french *Être bien venu*, to be welcome, i. e. well received, but we do not say, *Être bien venu*: à une chose, to be welcome to a thing.



RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

book? It is not good FOR any thing. It is not fit FOR the use to  
 92 99 propre usage  
 which it is intended. I did not think OF that, (or else) I would not  
 76 92 destiner. , autrement  
 have asked you FOR it. Since you have (such a desire) (FOR it,) you  
 Puisque si grande envie \* 54 en,  
 may have it, if you will accept OF it. No, I thank you. I do not  
 178 144  
 want<sup>200</sup> it now. It<sup>92</sup> was not for me; it<sup>92</sup> was for my sister who  
 avoir besoin en<sup>54</sup> N.B. 140 ; N.B.  
 wanted<sup>140</sup> to see it, and I (was afraid) of displeasing her, if I did not  
 avoir envie 168 , craindre 154 202 lui,\* †  
 ask you FOR it. I was afraid<sup>140</sup> she would think<sup>140</sup> that I had not thought  
 221 146 140  
 OF her, or that I was angry WITH her. I do not think she cares  
 , 140 fâché 221 se soucier  
 much (FOR it.) When do you (set out) upon your journey? I do not  
 \* en partir pour voyage?  
 know yet. I intend to set out in about a month or six weeks.  
 encore. avoir dessein environ mois semaine.  
 What country do you go to? I (am ignorant) OF it yet. They<sup>90</sup> want  
 92 230 ignorer N.B. 260  
 to persuade my father to send me to Russia, but I will not go, if  
 persuader<sup>202</sup> envoyer 6 Russie,  
 I can help it. I would rather remain here, than live in a country,  
 éviter aimer mieux rester , (il) demeurer 230  
 and amongst a people whose manners do not suit<sup>202</sup> mine. I should  
 parmi 238 manière convenir 85  
 like to go first to France, to see my brother who is in Paris;  
 160 premièrement 6 , 172 ;  
 then to go to Switzerland, from Switzerland to Italy and Greece, from  
 puis Suisse, Italie Grèce,  
 Greece to pass into Spain and Portugal, and then to return to  
 passer Espagne , alors 265  
 England. You could not do that in less than two years. I think  
 pouvoir (bb) moins 48 221  
 I could do it in (twelve months.) I do not think you could<sup>145</sup>. Do  
 un an. † 221 70 150  
 not you think that I can<sup>145</sup> go to Paris in four days? I think you  
 N.B. 221 le 70  
 may<sup>178</sup>. I shall be there before you, for I shall set out either on Mon-  
 pouvoir. y<sup>54</sup> , || - Lun-  
 day or Tuesday. Will you set out in the morning or in the evening.  
 di Mardi. 234 234

\* The *preposition* is implied in this pronoun. † Note † p. 337. ‡ Note § p. 262. || Note \* p. 379

## PREPOSITION.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

I intend to (set out) about twelve o'clock. I wish I could go  
*avoir dessein* <sup>163</sup> *partir* *vers* <sup>935</sup> <sup>180</sup> (*nn*)  
 with you. I wish you<sup>70</sup> could. I shall drink tea at your sister's  
<sup>221</sup> <sup>146</sup> \*  
 this afternoon. Shall you be there? No, I am engaged at Mrs. B.'s.  
*après midi.* <sup>y</sup> <sup>54</sup> ,  
 (There is) a ball at your aunt's on Friday<sup>188</sup>. Will not you go? I do  
<sup>945</sup> *tante* *Vendredi.* *N.B.* † <sup>70</sup>  
 not think<sup>221</sup> I shall<sup>70</sup>; I have been ill for several days. I did not  
<sup>145</sup> *N.B.* ; *malade* <sup>136</sup>  
 rest for three days and three nights. Come and sit by the fire  
*reposer* (*nn*) *vous asseoir* *feu.*  
 Do not stand by the door. As it is cold, and you are not well, you  
*se tenir* <sup>240</sup> , <sup>219</sup> <sup>241</sup> ,  
 would be in danger of (catching cold.) I called at your house on  
*vous enrhumer.* <sup>266</sup>  
 Wednesday in the morning, but (there was) nobody in. I was not  
*Mercredi* , <sup>246</sup> <sup>97</sup> — <sup>140</sup>  
 (far off.) I was at my uncle's. I had been by myself all the morn-  
*loin.* *oncle.* <sup>140</sup> <sup>234</sup>  
 ing. I went into the fields to take a walk<sup>263</sup> before dinner, and in  
<sup>172</sup> *N.B.* *diné,* *en*  
 coming home, I called at my uncle's. He had some company at  
*revenir.* *au logis,* <sup>266</sup>  
 dinner, and he prevailed upon me to stay with him. After dinner  
 , *engager* — *rester*  
 we played different games. Some played at cards, some at chess,  
*jouer à †* *jeux.* <sup>94</sup> † *carte,* *échecs,*  
 some at draughts, and some at (backgammon.) After tea we made  
<sup>94</sup> *dames,* *trictac.* *thé* <sup>7</sup>  
 a little concert. I played on the flute, my (brother-in-law) played on  
*petit* *jouer de †* , *beau-frère*  
 the violin, my sister played on the harpsicord, and my cousin on the  
*violon,* *clavecin,* *cousine*  
 harp; and some ladies and gentlemen entertained us with several good  
*harpe;* || *régaler* *de*  
 songs. We parted at (twelve o'clock,) (very well) pleased with the  
*chanson.* *se séparer* <sup>236</sup> , *très* *content*  
 manner (in which) we had spent the evening. We shall meet  
*manière* *dont* <sup>140</sup> <sup>271</sup> <sup>234</sup> *s'assembler*  
 again on Saturday evening<sup>234</sup>, at our house, and have another concert.  
*encore* *Samedi* *au soir* , , <sup>53</sup>

\* See note § p. 355.

† See note † p. 241.

‡ The verb *Play*, speaking of *games*, requires *à* before the noun which follows it; speaking of *instru-ments*, it requires *de*.

|| See note † page 282.



## CONJUNCTION.

220. When *si*, *IF*, governs two verbs, instead of repeating *si* before  
 , *IF*, *régir* ,<sup>154</sup>  
 the second verb, we<sup>90</sup> use *que* (with the subjunctive after it,) though  
 , *N.B. employer* *suivi du subjonctif* ,  
 the verb which follows *si* is in the indicative; If you walk so fast,  
<sup>218</sup> *à* ; *marcher vite*,  
 and will not wait for us, we will go back. If you go back, and  
<sup>178</sup> , <sup>201</sup> , *s'en retourner.* ,  
 find nobody at home what will you do? If the doors are locked,<sup>158</sup>  
<sup>97</sup> *au logis*, *fermé à clef*,  
 and I can not (get in), I will go to the play. You might follow us, if  
<sup>178</sup> *entrer* , ,  
 you would walk a little faster, and you did not look so often behind you.  
<sup>144</sup> *peu* , *derrière*

221. The conjunction *THAT* is often omitted in english; as, *I think*  
*THAT* ; , *I think*  
*he will come*; for, *I think THAT he will come*; but the corresponding<sup>32</sup>  
*he will come*; , *I think THAT he will come*; *qui y correspond*  
 conjunction must always be expressed in french; Do you think we  
*devoir* - *s'exprimer (ii) N.B.* ;  
 shall arrive in time to-day? I (am afraid) it will be rather late.  
<sup>145</sup> *à* *aujourd'hui ?* *craindre* <sup>146</sup> <sup>195</sup> *un peu tard.*

## REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

222. BOTH, a conjunction of emphasis, is expressed by *Et*, when it  
*BOTH*, <sup>22</sup> *emphasis*, - *(ii) N.B. par* ,  
 is followed by an adjective, and by *Et* or *tant*, when it is followed by a  
<sup>200</sup> *suivi* , *par* , <sup>200</sup>  
 substantive; Our general is both prudent and courageous. Both in the  
 ; *courageux.*  
 cabinet and in the field. We shall beat our enemies both by sea and land.  
*armée.* *battre* *ennemi* *par* <sup>204</sup>  
 'This conjunction is generally<sup>183</sup> omitted in french, in the familiar style.  
 - *ordinairement s'omettre (ii) N.B.* , *familier<sup>32</sup> style.*

223. EITHER, OR, are generally expressed by *ou*; Either that is  
*EITHER*, *OR*, - <sup>183</sup> *(ii) N.B.* ; <sup>89</sup>  
 true or it is not. I will see you either in going or in (coming back.)  
<sup>70</sup> *en* *revenir.*

N. B. EITHER, followed by a noun, may also be expressed by  
*EITHER*, <sup>200</sup> <sup>178</sup> - *(ii) N.B.*  
*soit*; as, Either through fear or respect, he remained silent.  
 ; , *par* <sup>204</sup> *garder* *silence.*

224. NEITHER, NOR, followed by a verb in the indicative or (in the)  
*NEITHER*, *NOR*, <sup>200</sup> *à* *an*  
 subjunctive, are expressed NEITHER by *ne*, and NOR by *ni ne*; I neither  
 , - *s'exprimer (ii) N.B.* , *NOR* ;



## REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

know that man, nor want<sup>260</sup> to<sup>168</sup> know him. I neither love nor esteem  
 , avoir envie

him. I neither care for him, nor for all that he can say or do.  
 68 se soucier de 58 , 200 ce que

If after NEITHER, NOR, there is a verb in the infinitive, an adjective,  
 NEITHER, NOR, à , ,  
 a noun or a pronoun, NEITHER is expressed by *ne* before the verb, and  
 , NEITHER - *s'exprimer* (ii) N.B. par ,

by *ni* after, and NOR by *ni*; as, He can neither read nor write. He  
 , NOR ; ,

is neither rich nor poor. He is useful neither to himself nor to others.  
 utile (m) N.B. aux autres.

225. WHETHER used in the sense of IF, is expressed by *si*, with  
 WHETHER employé IF, (ii) N.B. ,

the following verb in the indicative; Do you know whether we shall  
 qui suit 82 à ;

have peace or war? I want to know whether that news is true or  
 7 7 260 nouvelle vrai

not. I must go and inquire whether there has been any news to-day.  
 non. 181 (nn) s'informer 246 eu 9

WHETHER used in the sense of LET, is expressed by *que*, or *soit que*,  
 WHETHER LET, - (ii) N.B. , ,

with the following verb (in the) subjunctive; Whether, or, let that news  
 32 au ; ,

be true or not, I do not care. Whether we have peace or war, I will  
 non, s'en soucier. 7 7 ,

go to France. I will go, whether you come with me or not.  
 6 non.

226. THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN, followed by a conditional tense  
 THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN, suivis 200 32

are expressed by *quand*; Though that news were true, I would go.  
 - (ii) N.B. ; serait , 70

We would go, though we were sure that we should never<sup>190</sup> return. If  
 70 , serions 29 (nn) N.B. 265

even I had said so, you ought not to have (taken advantage of it.)  
 , aurais dit cela, 177 vous en prévaloir.

227 BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR,  
 BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR,

HAD IT NOT BEEN FOR, are generally expressed by *sans*; But for your  
 HAD IT NOT BEEN FOR, - 183 (ii) N.B. ;

father, or if it had not been for your father, I should have lost my  
 , perdre

(law suit.) Had it not been for him, I should have been ruined. If  
 procès. , ruiner.

it had not been for this gentleman, we should have been all lost<sup>126</sup>.  
 monsieur, perdre.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.\**

As it is late, and you are not ready, I will go. Since they are  
 tard, prêt, vais † m'en aller. Puisque  
 all gone, and you will not stop any longer, I will go too. Stay  
 partir<sup>138</sup>, rester plus long tems, † aussi. Attendre  
 till<sup>218</sup> I am ready, that we may go together. You know we have a long  
 que, afin que<sup>178</sup> ensemble.  
 way to go before we can stop. I do not think I can go with you  
 chemin à faire, nous arrêter.<sup>145</sup>  
 now; it is too late. I shall not go, unless<sup>195</sup> you come with me. I have  
 ; tard. †, N.B.  
 neither horse nor money to go. I can not go before my father has  
<sup>170</sup> †<sup>268</sup>  
 returned. If you have a mind to go, and you want<sup>250</sup> a horse, I  
<sup>265</sup> <sup>24</sup> envie <sup>168</sup> †, avoir besoin de  
 will lend you mine. If you want money, and your father is not at  
<sup>260</sup>  
 home, I will let you have whatever money (s) you want. You will  
 , donner - tout l' dont<sup>260</sup>  
 be too late, unless<sup>195</sup> you go immediately, and make all the haste (s)  
 arriver, N.B. partir tout à l'heure, diligence  
 you can. If your cousin is there, and you have an opportunity to  
<sup>142</sup> <sup>cousine</sup> y<sup>54</sup>, <sup>24</sup> occasion  
 speak to her, remember me to her. Is she not very handsome? Yes;  
 (o), rappeler<sup>58</sup> à son souvenir. belle? ;  
 she is both rich and handsome; but I neither value beauty nor riches; I  
 ; estimer<sup>7</sup> <sup>7</sup> ;  
 only value the qualities of the heart. Though she is amiable, and has a  
<sup>184</sup> aimable,  
 handsome fortune, I do not hear that any body proposes to marry  
 beau bien, apprendre personne se proposer<sup>261</sup>  
 her. There is no<sup>8</sup> time lost yet. <sup>183</sup> Shall you (come back) this way, if  
<sup>246</sup> N.B. encore. N.B. revenir par ici,  
 it is fine, and it is not too late? I will call, if nothing detains  
<sup>240</sup> beau tems, <sup>265</sup> , <sup>99</sup> retenir  
 me, and you will promise to come and sup with me. But if it was  
 , - souper  
 too late, and I could<sup>149</sup> not come, what must I do? Will you go,  
 , pouvoir<sup>83</sup> <sup>181</sup> †,  
 whether I call or not? I do not know yet. Either you intend <sup>168</sup>to  
 passer encore. avoir dessein  
 go, or you do not. If you will (walk in) till the rain is over, and  
 †, || <sup>141</sup> entrer pluie passée,  
 the weather is clear, I will tell you whether I can go or not.  
 tems éclairci, † non.

\* See note • page 231.

† Note † page 312.

‡ Note † page 354.

|| Turn; Either you have intention to go there, or you have not it.

## CONJUNCTION.

RECAPITULATORY *exerc'ise on the foregoing rules.*

I will wait as long<sup>43</sup> as you please<sup>142</sup>, provided you come and bring<sup>256</sup>  
long tems vouloir, pourvu que  
 your sister with you. If you go now, and ride gently, I think we  
partir , aller doucement,  
 shall (be able) to overtake you. Do not set out before I call, or you  
pouvoir atteindre partir <sup>266</sup> ,  
 hear<sup>275</sup> from me, for I shall not go unless<sup>195</sup> the weather is fine, and  
apprendre de mes nouvelles, \* † N.B. <sup>240</sup> ,  
 my cousin comes with us. Do not you know whether he intends<sup>162</sup> to  
avoir dessein  
 go or not? No, I do<sup>70</sup> not, but I will send to inquire. If it had not  
<sup>†</sup> , N.B. , † m'en informer.  
 been for him, we should have been back before now. What is it to  
, de retour ce tems. (y)  
 us whether he comes or not? Though he should not come with us, that  
<sup>226</sup> , (bb)  
 would not prevent us going<sup>154</sup>. But if he should<sup>144</sup> call, and you were  
empêcher † N.B. <sup>266</sup> ,  
 not at home, what must I say to him? Tell him that if he does not  
au logis, <sup>83</sup> <sup>191</sup> (o) (f) p. 79.  
 keep his word better<sup>183</sup>, and he disappoints people so, <sup>163</sup> nobody  
tenir parole N.B., tromper <sup>229</sup> ainsi, N.B. <sup>97</sup>  
 will trust<sup>202</sup> him. Do you know whether Mr. A. will be at<sup>208</sup> your  
se fier N.B.  
 house? I dare say he will<sup>70</sup>. He is a strange man. Whether he  
<sup>||</sup> <sup>221</sup> y sera. N.B. <sup>65</sup> drôle de  
 wins or loses, he is always the same. I wanted to speak to him the  
gagner perdre, <sup>260</sup> (o)  
 other night, but he (went away) without my seeing<sup>156</sup> him. If it  
<sup>235</sup> , s'en aller sans que <sup>218</sup> \*\*  
 had not been for him, I should have won the game. Speak low for  
, gagner partie. bas  
 fear somebody should hear<sup>148</sup> us, and they might report it to him.  
<sup>195</sup> on entendre , 90 - 195 rapporter (o)  
 Unless<sup>195</sup> you are very attentive, and take your measures well<sup>183</sup>, you will  
N.B. attentif, <sup>195</sup> mesure N.B.,  
 never succeed. You should watch both<sup>222</sup> your cards and <sup>204</sup> those of  
réussir <sup>176</sup> veiller sur N.B. carte sur (bb) des  
 other people. Neither grandeur nor riches can make men happy.  
autres - 39 <sup>7</sup> richesses <sup>249</sup> <sup>7</sup> heureux.  
 I would not have that place, though it were offered to me.  
<sup>174</sup> — <sup>226</sup> <sup>92</sup> (o)

\* Note \* page 379.

† Note † page 354.

‡ Note ‡ page 312.

|| Dare say. *Dare* in this sense cannot be rendered by *Oser*, which expresses boldness, audacity; *I dare say* must be expressed by *Je pense, Je m'imagine, Je puis dire, Sans doute, je ne doute pas* or some similar expression.

\*\* Turn, *If without that I should see him.*

## IDIOMS.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.*

Good morning<sup>234</sup>, sir. This is<sup>240</sup> a fine morning. How do you do this  
N.B. \* 183 241  
 morning? I hope you are very well. Very well, sir, I thank you. How  
255 241 , ; †  
 does all your family do? How are your wife and children? They are  
241 241 3 241  
 better, I thank you. And you; how do you do? Tolerably well for  
 (b) p. 72. , † ; <sup>241</sup> *Possiblement*  
 an (old man). Do not talk of being old yet <sup>183</sup> ; it will be time enough  
*vieillard.* *parler* *vieux déjà* N.B. ; §  
 twenty years hence. How old do you think I am<sup>230</sup>? I should  
*dans* *d'ici.* <sup>221</sup> N.B.  
 take you to be<sup>239</sup> between thirty and forty. I am<sup>239</sup> near fifty. You  
*pour* N.B. entre *ans.* <sup>en<sup>70</sup></sup> N.B. près de  
 do not look so old. You look very well for your age. I am very glad you  
233 âgé. 233 221  
 think so. You have been in the country, (I understand.) Yes, I have<sup>70</sup>,  
146 le<sup>54</sup> à 230 , à ce que j'entends. , N.B.,  
 (i.e. been there). I am just returned thence. How do you like it? I like  
244 205 (e) p. 74. 185 268 62  
 it (very much). It is a beautiful country; and the people are uncom-  
*beaucoup.* <sup>65</sup> <sup>290</sup> ; <sup>229</sup> *ex-*  
 monly civil and obliging. I am fond of industrious people. I like  
*trémement* *obligeant.* ¶ <sup>229</sup>  
 those good country people. They look so cheerful and happy. I  
25 233 gai 40  
 am going there to-night; will you come with me? How long do  
*y* <sup>54</sup> <sup>235</sup> ; <sup>106</sup>  
 you intend <sup>168</sup> to stop? I will sleep there, and return in the morn-  
*avoir dessein* *rester?* \* \* *y* <sup>54</sup> (e) p. 74, <sup>265</sup> <sup>216</sup> <sup>204</sup>  
 ing. But you have no occasion to return so soon. You may<sup>178</sup>  
*besoin* <sup>168</sup> <sup>265</sup> *pouvoir*  
 stay there all the morning. You may stay till twelve o'clock.  
*rester* <sup>234</sup> <sup>178</sup> *jusqu'à* <sup>236</sup>  
 Nay<sup>184</sup>, you may spend the whole day there, if you like. Our  
*même,* <sup>271</sup> <sup>233</sup> *y* <sup>54</sup>, *vouloir.*  
 people will be glad of your company. We will endeavour to make  
229 bien aise tâcher 249  
 you as happy as we can. What time do you (go to bed)? We  
43 43 142 à 92 heure se coucher

\* Turn; *It is fine this morning.*

† See note \* page 261.

‡ As we have several words in French for this expression, we vary them as often as we can; see note \*, page 261. § Turn; *Enough time*; see note \* page 368.|| We always add *An* to the number in French.

¶ See note ¶ page 326.

\*\* The verb SLEEP, so often used in English in the sense of LIE, is not expressed in French by *Dormir* but by *Coucher*; because a person may LIE abed, and not SLEEP.



## IDIOMS.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.*

generally go about twelve o'clock. If you do not like to  
*ordinairement se coucher vers* 236  
 stop, you may<sup>178</sup> return at night. It will be moon<sup>25</sup> light, and the  
*rester, pouvoir* 265 *le* 235 *faire lune clair,*  
 roads are very good. The weather is so fine, that it<sup>62</sup> is a pity  
*chemin* 240 , *N.B. - dommage*  
 to remain (shut up) in a town. How does the country look? It  
<sup>168</sup> *rester renfermé* 253 62  
 looks<sup>233</sup> very well, indeed. I never saw it look<sup>253</sup> better. Are the  
 \* , 136 † -  
 crops<sup>134</sup> promising<sup>156</sup>? Very. If this weather lasts, there will be  
*récolte promettre Beaucoup.* *durer,* 246  
 abundance of (every thing). I should like to go (very well)<sup>183</sup>, but  
 167 ‡ *fort, § N.B.*  
 it is rather too far for a walk. You have no occasion to walk; you  
<sup>246</sup> *un peu pour* || *besoin* || ;  
 may<sup>178</sup> ride, if you will. You will ride<sup>262</sup> my horse, I will ride that  
*pouvoir* || , *N.B.* , 98  
 of my servant and he will walk. If you would rather ride<sup>262</sup> in the  
*domestique,* || *aimer mieux* *N.B.*  
 carriage, it will be here (by and by); you may ride<sup>262</sup> in it<sup>64</sup>.  
*voiture,* 62 *tantôt;* 178 *N.B. dedans* -  
 No, I would rather ride on horseback. Come; the country air  
 , *aimer mieux* 262 ; 25  
 will do you good. I hope it will<sup>70</sup>; for I am not well. What  
<sup>9bien.</sup> 221 (i e. do me some;) 241  
 is the matter with you? You look very well. I do not know  
 261 263  
 how I look, but I am not well. I am always cold. My feet are  
*quelle mine j'ai,* 241 239 *froid.* 239  
 always cold. The weather is so bad that I (am afraid) of going  
 240 *craindre* 154  
 out for fear of (catching cold). The weather has been very bad  
*de peur de m'enrhumer.* 240  
 lately. Is<sup>240</sup> the weather always so bad in this country? Is it  
*depuis quelque tems.* 230 240  
 always so damp and so cold? It is never very warm. However,  
*humide* 240 *chaud.* *Cependant,*  
 (it is to be expected) that it will be finer in a short time. The  
*il faut* 172 *espérer* 240 - *peu de*  
 weather ought to be fine at this season; it is near midsummer.  
*devoir* 240 ; ¶ *pres de la Saint Jean.*

\* Turn; It has a very fine appearance.

† Turn; I have never seen it finer.

‡ See note † page 354.

§ See note † page 241.

¶ When WALK is used by opposition to RIDE, it is expressed by *Aller à pied*, and RIDE by *Aller à cheval*.

¶ Turn; We are near &amp;c.

## IDIOMS.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.*

Our spring generally<sup>184</sup> comes late. We never have it here so early  
*printemps ordinairement tard.* <sup>190</sup> *de si (bonne*  
 as you have it in your own country. (How many<sup>3</sup>) years have  
*heure) que* — <sup>230</sup> *Combien* N.B. <sup>233</sup>  
 you been in this country? I have been about two years. I did<sup>\*</sup>  
 † *environ*  
 not think it was<sup>145</sup> so long. Do you like it? I like the people well  
<sup>140</sup> <sup>216</sup> *long tems.* <sup>258</sup> <sup>226</sup> *assez*  
 enough<sup>183</sup>, but I do not like the climate. It does not agree with me;  
*bien, † N.B., climat.* *convenir* — <sup>54</sup>;  
 the weather is so cold and so changeable. If I can not accustom myself  
*variable.* *accoutumer me* <sup>54</sup>  
 to it this year, I will not stay another year. You should walk out  
<sup>63</sup> <sup>233</sup> *rester* <sup>233</sup> <sup>176</sup> <sup>253</sup> *à l'air*  
 oftener than you do. I can not walk. I have hurt my foot. I am  
<sup>47</sup> *faire.* <sup>237</sup> *se blesser* <sup>15</sup> *piéd.*  
 afraid I have put my<sup>15</sup> ancle out of joint. Come; do not afflict  
*(nn)* <sup>237</sup> *se démettre cheville.* — — § *Allons;*  
 yourself; I dare say<sup>221</sup> you will be well in (a few) days. Here is Mr. B.  
<sup>57</sup> ; See || p. 392. <sup>241</sup> *quelques* <sup>247</sup>  
 How long have you been in town? I am just come. I have just  
<sup>186</sup> || *en* <sup>244</sup> *arriver.* <sup>244</sup>  
 alighted from my horse. Are you come to stop any time? No,  
*descendre* — *venir* <sup>170</sup> *rester quelque* ,  
 I shall (go back) to-night. (How many<sup>3</sup>) times a week do you  
*s'en retourner* <sup>235</sup> N.B. <sup>232</sup> <sup>13</sup>  
 come to town? Sometimes twice, sometimes three times. You  
<sup>7</sup> *deux fois,* <sup>232</sup>  
 should come oftener. You should come every day. You should  
<sup>176</sup> *y* <sup>70</sup> <sup>41</sup> *y* <sup>70</sup> *touts les jours.*  
 bring your wife with you. I wish I could bring her; but we  
<sup>256</sup> (nn) ;  
 can not well leave the house both (at the) same time. Sir, you are  
*quitter* <sup>122</sup> *en* , <sup>93</sup>  
 wanted<sup>260</sup>. Who wants<sup>260</sup> me? A gentleman is in the street who  
 N.B. N.B. See †, p. 307. ¶  
 wants to speak to you. Tell him to (walk in). He says he can  
<sup>260</sup> (o) <sup>54</sup> (f) p. 79. *entrer.* <sup>221</sup>  
 not stop. Tell him that I will go and speak to him. Will you  
*s'arrêter.* \* \* — (o) <sup>54</sup>

\* Turn, *How many years is it since*<sup>216</sup> *you are* &c. see note \* page 369.

† Turn, *It is*<sup>216</sup> *about two years*; see note \* page 369. ‡ See note \* page 368.

§ The words *Out of joint*, are all expressed by the verb *Déméttre*.

|| Turn, *How long is it since you are* &c. see note \* page 369.

¶ Turn, *There is*<sup>246</sup> *in the street a gentleman who*<sup>75</sup> &c.

\*\* See note † page 312.

## IDIOMS.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on the* IDIOMS.

excuse me whilst I go and see what that gentleman wants? I am  
 pendant que (nn) 84 200  
 going to leave you. No; Sit down; Do not go yet; do not go  
 155 quitter ; s'asseoir ; encore ; s'en aller\*  
 before I return. I hope<sup>221</sup> you do not intend to leave us so soon.  
 218 † 265 255 avoir dessein 168 tôt.  
 Yes, I must go; but I will (call again) before I leave town. Take  
 , 181 s'en aller\* ; repasser avant de (nn) 256  
 this letter to my sister. Take the children with you. If you can  
 256  
 not bring my sister, bring me the book which she has promised me.  
 256 356 53  
 Why did you not bring my sister? Why did you not bring me the  
 136 136  
 book which I desired<sup>103</sup> you to bring? I could not bring it; she is  
 232 136  
 using<sup>155</sup> it herself. My sister used<sup>140</sup> to be very fond of reading. She  
 257 (m) N.B. 257 † 109 154  
 did not use to be so long in reading a book. I think she does not  
 257 long tems 109 154 221  
 use me well. I do not like to be used so. I suppose she has not  
 257 92 ainsi. 254 221  
 had time. I want to see my father. Where is he? I want money.  
 7 260  
 I want a wife. I want to be married. You want (so many<sup>8</sup>) things  
 251 tant N.B.  
 at once, that I (am afraid)<sup>221</sup> you will not get<sup>146</sup> one half (of them.)  
 à la fois, craindre 195 avoir la moitié en 54  
 You are yet too young to marry. You should get a little<sup>8</sup> money  
 encore 170 261 176 270 un peu N.B.  
 first. 183 You do not know what it costs to keep a house.  
 premièrement. N.B. 84 il en coûter à 269 -  
 I suppose<sup>221</sup> you would like to keep a horse too. I dare say you  
 254 269 aussi. §  
 (would have no objection) to have a ride now and then I do not  
 ne seriez pas fâché || de 252 de tems en tems.

\* See N. B. under *Aller*, page 116.† Turn; *Before I have*<sup>238</sup> returned.

‡ See note || page 326.

§ See note || page 392.

! The word *Objection*, so frequently used in english to denote that a person does or does not assent to what another person proposes, can not be expressed in french by *Objection* which means a *difficulty* which we oppose to an *argument* or a *proposition* in order to refute it. You must use some other equivalent expression, agreeably to the idea which you wish to denote; such as, *Vouloir*, *Aimer*, *Etre fâché*, *se Soucier*, *Avoir à redire*, *Trouver à redire*, or such like; as,

Have you any objection to take a walk? *Voulez-vous faire*, or *Aimeriez-vous à faire*, *ne seriez-vous* [bien aise de faire une promenade?

No; I have no objection to it; oui; Je le veux bien, or Je ne m'en soucie pas, or Comme vous voudrez, &c.

What objection have you to that? *Qu'avez-vous à redire*, or *Que trouvez-vous à redire à cela?*  
 I have no objection to it: *Je n'ai rien à y redire*, or *Je n'y trouve rien à redire.*

## IDIOMS

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.*

mind riding<sup>154</sup>. I would sooner walk than ride. I can easily walk  
*se soucier* <sup>263</sup> *aimer mieux* <sup>263</sup> <sup>262</sup>

twenty miles a-day, without being tired. Since you are such a  
<sup>12</sup> <sup>154</sup> *fatiguer. Puisque* <sup>si \*</sup>

great walker, I wonder<sup>221</sup> you do not come to see us oftener than  
*marcheur, s'étonner* <sup>172</sup> <sup>41</sup>

you do. Every morning when the weather is fine, you should walk  
<sup>47</sup> *Tous les* <sup>que</sup> <sup>240</sup> <sup>176</sup> <sup>263</sup>

(as far as) our<sup>208</sup> house; we will give you some breakfast, and after  
*jusque* <sup>N.B.</sup> ; <sup>à</sup> , <sup>aprèsque</sup>

you have<sup>142</sup> rested yourself, you may either walk back or ride in our  
<sup>237</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup> *reposer vous* <sup>55</sup> , <sup>142</sup> - <sup>†</sup> -

carriage, as (you like best). I intend to come and see you soon.<sup>183</sup>  
*voiture, comme il vous plaira.* <sup>264</sup> (*un*) <sup>bientôt. † N.B.</sup>

Does your brother return to the university this year? I suppose<sup>221</sup> he  
<sup>265</sup> <sup>233</sup> <sup>254</sup>

will<sup>70</sup>; but I do not think he will go<sup>70</sup> for some time, for he is just  
<sup>§ N.B.;</sup> <sup>221</sup> <sup>145</sup> *de quelque* , || <sup>214</sup>

returned thence. Has he returned<sup>265</sup> you the money which you had  
<sup>265</sup> *en* <sup>54</sup> (e) p. 74. <sup>N.B.</sup>

lent him<sup>162</sup>? Yes, he has<sup>70</sup>. I am glad (of it); for I  
 (f) p. 79. , <sup>N.B. i. e. returned it me.</sup> *bien aise* *en* <sup>54</sup> ; ||

(was afraid)<sup>221</sup> he would never return<sup>235</sup> it you. He is so forgetful.  
*craindre* <sup>146</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup> *sujet à oublier.*

I heard that your sister was to<sup>172</sup> be married. She is married<sup>158</sup>. She  
<sup>136</sup> <sup>242</sup> <sup>243</sup> *se marier.* <sup>261</sup>

was married last week. She has married<sup>159</sup> Mr. Goodhusband. They  
<sup>137</sup> <sup>158</sup> <sup>261</sup>

were married at our church. It<sup>62</sup> was my brother who married them.  
<sup>137</sup> <sup>à</sup> *église.* <sup>N.B.</sup>

How old is<sup>239</sup> she? She is<sup>239</sup> two and twenty. How old is<sup>239</sup> Mr. G.?  
<sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup> ¶ <sup>• •</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup>

He is<sup>239</sup> about thirty. They are a young couple. I hope<sup>221</sup> they are  
<sup>N.B.</sup> *environ* <sup>• •</sup> <sup>65</sup> *est* <sup>255</sup>

happy. I hope they will be so long. She desired<sup>136</sup> me to give her  
<sup>221</sup> *le* <sup>54</sup> *long tems.* <sup>252</sup> *faire ses*

love to you. Please to<sup>168</sup> let her know<sup>248</sup> that I will call and  
*amitiés* (o) <sup>54</sup> *Avoir la bonté* *lui* <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>206</sup> (*un*)

pay my respects to her at the first opportunity. How far is their<sup>208</sup>  
*pour rendre* (o) <sup>54</sup> *à* *occasion.* <sup>246</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup>

\* Put *Si* after the article *à*, because *si* being here an adverb, can not be separated from the adjective which it modifies.

† Walk back, *Retenir à pied*, or *Retourner à pied*, see 263 rule. ‡ See note † page 241.

§ Instead of repeating the verb agreeably to the 70 rule, you may express *He will* by *Qu'il vienne*.

|| Note \* page 379.

¶ Say *twenty two*; the French always put the highest number first.

• In speaking of age, we always add *Ans* to the number in French.



## IDIOMS.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.*

house from here? About seven or eight miles. It<sup>68</sup> is a (long way).  
*Environ* N.B. † loin.

Yes, it<sup>62</sup> is rather far. I suppose<sup>221</sup> they keep a coach. No, they have  
 , N.B. † un peu loin. <sup>254</sup> <sup>269</sup> <sup>191</sup>,

no<sup>8</sup> coach. They keep horses. (How<sup>8</sup> many) servants do they keep?  
 N.B. <sup>269</sup> N.B. domestiques <sup>269</sup>

Let me see. There is the butler, a footman, a groom, a gardener,  
*Attendez que je voie.* <sup>246</sup> maître d'hôtel, laquais, palefrenier,

a cook, and a chamber<sup>26</sup> maid. These are many servants for such a  
 cuisinière, chambre † fille. Ce (e) si §

small family. They hope that in time it<sup>62</sup> will encrease. Was not  
 avec le tems augmenter. <sup>140</sup>

your country<sup>25</sup> house advertised to be sold? No; my father had  
<sup>134</sup> afficher <sup>158</sup> à <sup>243</sup> ; <sup>140</sup>

some thought of selling it, but he has altered his mind. He is going  
 quelque envie <sup>154</sup> <sup>62</sup>, changer - d'idée. <sup>155</sup>

to let his town<sup>25</sup> house, and live in the country (altogether<sup>183</sup>).  
 louer à la ville , demeurer à entièrement. N.B.

Trade<sup>7</sup> is so bad now, that he says he spends more than he gets.  
 Commerce mauvais , <sup>221</sup> <sup>271</sup> <sup>47</sup> <sup>270</sup>

How do you spend your time in the country? We generally<sup>184</sup> spend  
<sup>185</sup> <sup>271</sup> || à ordinairement <sup>271</sup>

the mornings in<sup>169</sup> walking<sup>154</sup> and <sup>204</sup> practising<sup>154</sup> music, and we spend the  
<sup>234</sup> <sup>263</sup> étudier <sup>271</sup> ,

evenings in reading and in amusing ourselves. (That is the way)  
<sup>234</sup> <sup>169</sup> <sup>154</sup> amuser nous <sup>54</sup> C' est ainsi que

we generally spend ours. Does Mr. A. often call upon you? Some-  
<sup>184</sup> <sup>271</sup> <sup>85</sup> <sup>134</sup> <sup>184</sup> <sup>265</sup>

times, not often. Here<sup>247</sup> he is. How do you do? I hope you are  
 , pas N.B. <sup>241</sup> <sup>255</sup> <sup>241</sup>

(very well). Very well, I thank you. What is the matter with your  
 bien. Très , ¶ <sup>281</sup> à la

hand? It is all bloody<sup>29</sup>. I was<sup>136</sup> near breaking my neck in coming  
<sup>62</sup> sanglant. <sup>245</sup> se casser <sup>15</sup> cou en

here. How so? My horse stumbled<sup>136</sup>, and had like to have fallen  
<sup>185</sup> cela ? faire un faux pas, <sup>245</sup> - tomber

into a pit. I see it has <sup>237</sup> hurt its<sup>15</sup> mouth. I hope<sup>221</sup> you have not<sup>8</sup>  
 fosse. <sup>221</sup> se faire mal <sup>231</sup> <sup>255</sup> <sup>237</sup> N.B.

been hurt. Not much; I was<sup>136</sup> more<sup>8</sup> frightened than hurt. I  
 se faire mal. Pas beaucoup; <sup>339</sup> N.B. peur de mal \* \*

hope<sup>221</sup> you will do us the favour to dine with us. At what time do  
<sup>255</sup> grâce <sup>168</sup> <sup>82</sup> heure

\* Turn; How far is it from here to their house?

† You may express it is, by c'est, or il y a.

‡ See Note \* page 197.

§ See note \* page 397.

|| Use Le here instead of votre because vous sufficiently denotes whose time it is.

¶ See note \* page 261.

\*\* Turn; I have had more fright than hurt.

## IDIOMS.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.*

you dine? We generally dine about four o'clock. I will avail myself of  
 184 vers heures. profiter

your invitation to enjoy the pleasure of your company a little longer.  
 170 jouir 203 peu 41

Have you any objection to take<sup>253</sup> a short walk before dinner? No,  
 N.B. 205 Oui,†

none at all. Let us walk along this lane. Let us rather<sup>164</sup> go into  
 ie le veux bien.† - - 263 le long de ruelle. - - plutôt

that path. The late<sup>29</sup> rains we have had have made the fields very  
 sentier. dernier (s) 159 249

pleasant. Yes, the country looks quite beautiful now. I do not  
 agréable. , 253 tout à fait belle

recollect having ever seen it finer. We must not go much further.  
 se rappeler 154 181 loin<sup>41</sup>.

It is near our dinner time. We must walk towards home. Let us  
 près de l' 25 heure. 181 263 vers la maison.

make haste. Our people do not like to be (kept<sup>145</sup> waiting). I see somebody  
 se dépêcher. 229 92 faire attendre.

coming<sup>153</sup> to meet us. Sir, the cloth is laid. The dinner is (on the table).  
 N.B. 273 , couvert mis. servi.

Come, ladies and gentlemen, (walk in.) Sit down at table. Now, my  
 Allons, mesdames , entrer. se mettre à à présent,

pretty neighbour, what do you choose to<sup>172</sup> eat? Shall I help you  
 jolie voisine, souhaiter 258

to a little soup? It looks very good. I will thank you for two or three  
 a peu de soupe? 62 253 †

(spoonfuls) of it. And you, madam, what will you eat? A bit of  
 cuillerée en<sup>54</sup> , , morceau

that fowl. What part do you like best? A little of the breast. Shall  
 (bb) volaille. partie le mieux? estomac.

I add some sauce (to<sup>68</sup> it?) A little, if you please, and a little of the  
 ajouter y<sup>54</sup> , § ,

cauliflower You, sir, what shall I help you to? A bit of the sirloin.  
 chou-fleur , , 258 aloyau.

With some gravy to it? Yes, a little, and a potato. Will you have  
 jus? - - , , pomme de terre.

the goodness to pass the mustard (this way?) (Give me<sup>53</sup> leave) to  
 bonté passer moutarde par ici? Permettre

help you to a bit of this loin of veal. A very small bit. Do you like  
 258 longe veau. petit

fat<sup>7</sup> or lean? A little of both. I will trouble you for a wing of that  
 gras 7maigre? 123 peine || aile (bb)

\* See note || page 396.

† The word *objection* being changed in the question, you must also change the words of the answer.

‡ I will thank you for, &c. turn; I beg you to give me two or three, &c.

§ Turn; If it pleases you, because *Plaire* in this sense is always impersonal in french.

|| I will trouble you for, &c. turn; Will you take the trouble to give me, &c.

## IDIOMS.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.*

chicken. Shall I send you a little ham (with it?) No, no <sup>8</sup> ham; I will  
*poulet.* *envoyer* *jambon* aussi <sup>64</sup> ? , *pas* N.B. ; \*

eat a little <sup>8</sup> salad. It looks so nice. Pass the salad to that gentleman.  
*peu* N.B. <sup>62</sup> <sup>253</sup> *bon* <sup>29</sup> (bb)

(Here is) an excellent hare; I would advise you to taste it. I thank you;  
<sup>247</sup> *lièvre*; *conseiller* *goûter* ;

I will eat no <sup>8</sup> hare. I will eat one half of this partridge. And I will eat  
 N.B. \* *la moitié* (m) \*

a bit of the pheasant. Let me <sup>55</sup> send you a little of this pie. No, no  
*faisan.* *Permettre* (kk) *pâté.* , *pas*

more; I can not eat (any more). (Take away), and bring the dessert.  
*davantage* †; † *Desservir,* <sup>256</sup> *dessert.*

Now, what say you to a glass of wine? I will take a glass with you.  
 , <sup>83</sup> *de* \* <sup>70</sup> *prendre*

Will you have red or white? White, if you please. And I will  
<sup>174</sup> *du rouge* *du blanc* ? , † (m) \*

drink a glass of red. Ladies and gentlemen, your good health. We  
 , *à* - *santé.*

thank you, sir. Come, gentlemen, help the ladies; help yourselves  
 , *Allons,* § <sup>258</sup> ; *vous vous-mêmes*

and pass the bottle. How do you like this wine? It is very good indeed.  
<sup>185</sup> <sup>265</sup> <sup>62</sup>

Since you like it, I hope you will make free (with it). It <sup>62</sup> is what  
*Puisque* , <sup>221</sup> *boire librement* en <sup>54</sup> N.B. <sup>84</sup>

we intend <sup>168</sup> to do. (Here is) very fine fruit too. Have these fruits  
*avoir dessein* <sup>247</sup> <sup>10</sup> *aussi.* <sup>238</sup> <sup>134</sup>

grown in your garden? In the garden and in the houses. These  
*venir* <sup>138</sup> *serve.*

apricots are beautiful. What think you of the peaches and <sup>3</sup>nectarines  
*abricot* , *très beau.* <sup>83</sup> *brugnon* ?

They are the finest I have <sup>30</sup> seen this year. Taste the pears and  
*Ce* (s) <sup>159</sup> <sup>233</sup> *Goûter*

apples; they look very nice. These grapes are delicious. (Here is  
 ; <sup>62</sup> <sup>253</sup> *bon* <sup>29</sup> *délicieux.* <sup>247</sup>

a (pine apple) which is excellent. Permit me to help you to a slice  
*ananas* <sup>256</sup> *tranche*

(of it). I will thank you (for it), for I am very fond of pine apples.  
*en* <sup>54</sup> *être obligé* <sup>54</sup> *en* <sup>59</sup> , || ¶

Bring the sugar and some spoons. Come, gentlemen, (fill up) your  
 § , *remplir*

glasses; I will give you a toast. Let us drink the health of all good  
 ; \* *un toast.* - - *boire à* *santé*

\* See note † page 312.

† More, *Any more*, at the end of a sentence, are expressed by *Davantage*.

‡ See § p. 399.

§ When *Come* is used as it is here, to encourage, it is a kind of *interjection* and is then expressed by *Allons*.

¶ See note \* page 379.

¶ See note || page 326.

## IDIOMS.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.*

people of whatever country, colour, or religion they are. With all my heart.  
 229 117 230 couleur, De cœur.

An everlasting peace between all men. What a pity that all men do not  
 éternelle<sup>32</sup> paix entre 7 20 dommage

think so. They would spare themselves many afflictions. We will drink  
 ainsi. épargner se 54 (e) chagrin. see † p. 312.

this toast, to shew you that we join with you in your wishes,  
 toste, m. 170 faire voir joindre \* souhait,

but I hope you will excuse us from drinking any more. Since you will  
 221 excuser 154 † Puisque

not drink, would you like to take an excursion on the water? We have  
 , faire tour

a fine river (close by)<sup>183</sup>, with good boats and good boatmen. I should  
 rivière tout près N.B., 10 bateau 10 batelier.

like it (very much). And I too. Well, since you all like it, we will  
 beaucoup. 52 aussi. Eh bien, † ,

go. Which do you like best sailing<sup>154</sup> or rowing? I think<sup>221</sup>  
 70 86 le mieux aller à la voile, aller à la rame?

sailing is the most pleasant. They make such a noise with their oars.  
 154 agréable. tant de bruit rame.

Boatman, what do you ask an<sup>18</sup> hour for your boat? We generally  
 Batelier, combien par heure 184

charge three shillings an hour. That is (too much.) I will give you  
 272 12 Ce. trop. -

half a crown. That is too little. I will not give you more. Well,  
 un petit 38 écu. Ce peu. † Eh bien,

come, I will not cheapen with you. Where shall we go? I do not  
 see § p. 400. marchander Où

mind; (please yourself.) (It is all the same to us.) Are you fond  
 s'en soucier; où vous voudrez. § Cela nous est égal. || ¶

of bathing<sup>154</sup>? Yes, very. The sea is not far off here. (It is) not  
 à se baigner? , beaucoup. mer loin d'ici. 246

above a mile and a half. If you wish to bathe, we will go<sup>70</sup>. Can you  
 plus de - demi. se baigner, \*\*

swim? I can swim a little, but I do not like to (go out of my depth.)  
 nager? , perdre fond.

As for you, I know you can swim like a fish. Not quite; but  
 Quant à , 221 comme poisson. Pas tout à fait;

I can swim pretty well. It begins to be late. I (am afraid) the  
 assez se faire tard. craindre 221

ladies will (catch cold<sup>146</sup>). We will (go back,) if you please. Yes,  
 195 s'enrhumer. s'en retourner, vouloir. ,

\* *We join with you in your wishes*, turn; *We join our wishes to yours*. † See note † page 400.

† Put this adjective *after* the verb in french. § Not, *Plaisez-vous*, which would express quite a different idea.

|| Not, *Il est le même à nous*, which is not a french expression.

¶ See note || page 326.

\*\* See note † page 354.



## IDIOMS.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.*

I think it is time. We had a very agreeable sail, had we  
<sup>221</sup>il <sup>en</sup>70 <sup>est</sup> <sup>136</sup> <sup>32</sup> *promenade en bateau,* <sup>283</sup>  
not? Very agreeable indeed. I will procure you that diversion as often  
*procurer* <sup>amusement</sup> <sup>43</sup>  
as you will favour me with your company. We are (very much)  
<sup>43</sup> *accorder le plaisir* <sup>de</sup> <sup>bien</sup> -  
obliged to you, sir; and we wish you a good night<sup>234</sup>. Good night,  
<sup>158</sup>(o) <sup>55</sup> , ; <sup>le</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup> ,  
ladies; I wish you a pleasant walk. Mr. M. you used to be very  
<sup>18</sup> ; <sup>agréable</sup> <sup>257</sup> <sup>fort</sup>  
fond of music; do you ever (make use) of your violin now? I use  
*musique;* <sup>jamais</sup> <sup>se servir</sup> <sup>violin</sup> <sup>257</sup>  
it sometimes; very seldom. Since you do not use it, I will be obliged  
; <sup>rarement.</sup> <sup>Puisque</sup> <sup>257</sup> ,  
to you, if you will let me have it, till<sup>218</sup> I have got one made. I  
(o) , <sup>prêter</sup> - , <sup>jusqu' à ce que</sup> <sup>251</sup>  
do not think you will (be able<sup>145</sup>) to use it; the strings are all broken.  
<sup>221</sup> <sup>pouvoir</sup> <sup>257</sup> <sup>en</sup> <sup>54</sup> ; <sup>corde</sup> <sup>267</sup>  
I will get them mended. I will get new ones put (to it). Who  
<sup>250</sup> <sup>raccommoder.</sup> <sup>250</sup> <sup>de neuves en</sup> <sup>59</sup> , <sup>mettre</sup> <sup>y</sup> <sup>54</sup>  
made it you? A (man of the name) of Fiddle. When you see<sup>142</sup> him, I  
<sup>136</sup> <sup>55</sup> <sup>59</sup> <sup>Un</sup> <sup>nommé</sup> - <sup>N.B.</sup> ,  
beg you will desire him to make me<sup>54</sup> one (like it.) (How much) did  
† <sup>252</sup> <sup>m'en</sup> <sup>70</sup> <sup>un</sup> <sup>semblable.</sup> <sup>Combien</sup> <sup>136</sup>  
he charge you (for it?) He charged<sup>136</sup> me twenty guineas. He charged  
<sup>272</sup> <sup>en</sup> <sup>272</sup> <sup>272</sup>  
you (too much.) He did not use me well. If I were in your place, I  
*trop.* - <sup>136</sup> <sup>257</sup> ‡ <sup>à</sup> ,  
would get one made in Paris. You would get it better and cheaper.  
<sup>251</sup> <sup>à</sup> <sup>avoir</sup> (b) p. 72. <sup>à meilleur marché.</sup>  
I suppose<sup>221</sup> you do not intend to<sup>168</sup> return home to night. Yes, I  
<sup>254</sup> <sup>avoir dessein</sup> <sup>295</sup> <sup>chez vous</sup> <sup>295</sup> ,  
do<sup>70</sup>. You will drink a cup of tea before you go. I  
<sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>i. e.</sup> <sup>intend to return.</sup> § <sup>||</sup> <sup>s'en aller.</sup>  
can not stay. Our people will be waiting for me. They will be anxious  
*reste.* <sup>229</sup> <sup>155</sup> <sup>201</sup> <sup>54</sup> <sup>inquiet</sup>  
to hear from me. I long to see how they are. I have not heard from  
<sup>275</sup> <sup>see LONG p. 175.</sup> <sup>241</sup> <sup>275</sup>  
them for these three days. The tea will be ready just now. Get the  
¶ <sup>tout de suite.</sup> <sup>Apprêter</sup>  
tea ready as fast as you can<sup>142</sup>. Come near the table. Shall I bring the  
\* \* <sup>43</sup> <sup>43</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>274</sup> <sup>274</sup>

\* Note || page 326.

† I beg you will desire him, turn; I beg you to desire him, &amp;c.

‡ See note † page 337.

§ See note § page 355.

|| Before may be expressed by *Avant de* with the following verb in the infinitive, or by *Avant que* with the subjunctive; but here the two verbs having the same nominative, *Before* should be expressed by *Avant de*. See note (nn).¶ For these three days, may be expressed two ways; *je n'ai pas appris de leurs nouvelles depuis* <sup>205</sup> *trois jours*; or *Il y a* <sup>246</sup> *trois jours que je n'ai appris*, &c. \*\* Ready is implied in the verb *Apprêter*

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.*

table nearer to you? It will do very well where it is. Bring the  
 41 de 62 - est 62 256  
 tea, and take<sup>256</sup> these children out of the room. Is there no coffee?  
 , emmener hors 246  
 Yes; there is both<sup>222</sup> tea and coffee. Which will you have? I will  
 ; 246 N.B. 9 9 Duquel 174 .. \*

drink a cup of coffee. Eat a little<sup>8</sup> bread and butter. Is your coffee  
 † N.B. 134  
 sweet enough? Yes, it is very pleasant. You will drink another cup;  
 sacré see \* p. 368. , 62 agréable. † ;

will you not? No, no more, I thank you. Now I must go.  
 282 , pas davantage, À présent 181 see N.B. p. 116.

If you will come with me, I will take it kindly of you. Yes, I will<sup>70</sup>.  
 144 , † 279 , §

Bring me my horse. Bring me my whip and <sup>3</sup>spurs. (There is) your  
 256 256 fouet éperons. 247  
 whip, and (here are) your spurs. They are not right. What is the  
 , 247 bien.  
 matter with them? You find fault with (every thing.) Can not you  
 284 273 107  
 do without spurs? No, I can not. I want to return as fast as I can<sup>142</sup>,  
 230 , 70 260 265 43 43 N.B.

to go and meet a friend of mine who is coming to spend (a few) days  
 -70 (nn) 273 87 155 172 271 quelques  
 at<sup>208</sup> our house. It will be too late; will it not? I am afraid it will<sup>70</sup>.  
 N.B. ; 252 ¶ N.B.

I never can (get ready) in time. In vain I tell these people to keep  
 s'appréter à 277 dire à 229 tenir  
 always ready the things which I want, they will not do it. Whatever  
 prêt<sup>29</sup> dont 260 , vouloir 277

I may say or do, they will<sup>74</sup> have every thing their (own way.) They  
 , vouloir faire 107 à leur tête.  
 make me very unhappy. If I were<sup>140</sup> you, I would turn them  
 249 ¶ que de vous, mettre

away. What will you have<sup>74</sup> one do? One can not do without  
 à la porte. N.B. 90 faire? 90 280  
 somebody, and it is very unpleasant to be always changing<sup>155</sup> people.  
 85 , désagréable - changer de 229

True; but I would not keep people who would not attend to my  
 Cela est vrai; garder<sup>9</sup> 259  
 orders. Come; do not mind them. They are all alike.  
 Allons; faire attention à 58 - \* \* se ressembler

Happy they who can do without them.  
 Heureux 68 280 en.

\* See note † page 312.

† See note § page 355.

‡ See note \* page 334.

§ Instead of repeating the verb here, you might say, *oui, je le veux bien.*¶ Instead of repeating *I am afraid it will be too late*; you may say: *je le crains*, or *je crains qu'on.*

¶ See note † page 337.

\*\* Put this adjective after the verb in French.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.*

*It having been represented to the author that the utility of this work might be increased by lengthening the exercise, he, in consequence, has added the following amusing little novel, which is full of the most essential rules, especially on the NOUNS, PRONOUNS, and VERBS.*

*BATHMENDI, an Eastern Tale.*

Under the reign of a king of Persia whose<sup>75</sup> name I have forgotten,  
 a merchant of Balsora was ruined by bad speculations. He collected  
 the wreck of his fortune, and retired to the (remotest part) of the  
 province of Kousistan. There he bought a small country house and  
 a field which he cultivated very badly, because he was always think-  
 ing of the time when he had something more pleasant to (attend to.)  
 Grief shortened the days of this merchant: feeling himself near his  
 end, he called to him four sons that he had, and addressed them  
 (in these words); My dear children, I have no other property to leave  
 you but this house, and the knowledge of a secret which I was<sup>242</sup>  
 not to reveal to you till now. In the time of my opulence, I had  
 for a friend the genie Alzim. He promised me to take care of you  
 when I should be no more, and to divide a treasure amongst you.  
 This genie lives a few miles hence, in the great forest of Kom. Go  
 to him, ask him for that treasure, but (take care) not to believe . . .  
 Death did not allow him to finish. The four sons of the merchant,  
 after having bewailed and buried their father, went to the forest of Kom.  
 They inquired for the residence of the genie Alzim. They had no trouble

\* See note † page 281. † Express *No, Not*, by *Ne* only, because *Que* which comes after the verb supplies the place of *Pas*. ‡ *When I should be no more*, may be expressed by *après moi*.  
 § Leave out this preposition in french. || Express to by the verb *trouver*. ¶ See note # page 296

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.*

to find it. Alzim was known to the whole country: he received<sup>132</sup>  
 169 62 140 de 38 tout 230 : accueillir  
 kindly all those who came to see him, he listened to their complaints,  
 avec bonté 172 , écouter - plainte,  
 consoled them, lent them money, when they (were in want) (of it); but  
 139 , 162 , avoir besoin en 44;  
 these favours were on a condition; (they were) to follow blindly the advice  
 bienfait à ; il fallait 172 conseil  
 which he gave them; this was his whim; No one was admitted into  
 - ; ce manie; Nul 101 recevoir  
 his palace till he had taken an oath (of it). This oath did not  
 avant de (nn) avoir fait le serment en 55.  
 alarm the three eldest sons of the merchant; the fourth, whose (name  
 effrayer aîné 32 ; , qui se nom-  
 was) Taï, found this ceremony ridiculous. However he wished to  
 mer , Cependant vouloir  
 (go in) and receive the treasure: he then<sup>184</sup> swore like his brothers; but  
 entrer : donc comme ;  
 reflecting (on the) dangerous consequences of this indiscreet oath, (calling  
 aux \* , se rap-  
 to mind) that his father, who was in the habit of visiting this palace,  
 peler avoir - - coutume 154 ,  
 had passed his life in committing blunders, he wished without being  
 169 faire des sottises, 154  
 a perjurer, to secure himself from all danger; and whilst they<sup>90</sup> were  
 - , mettre à l'abri 54 de ; N.B.  
 conducting them to the genie, he stopped his ears with scented  
 conduire 155 vers , boucher odoriférante 32  
 wax. (Having taken) this precaution, he prostrated himself before the  
 9 Muni de , prosterner 54 206  
 throne of Alzim. Alzim bid the four sons of his ancient friend to  
 faire † ancien \* -  
 rise, embraced them, and ordered a large chest filled with daricks to  
 relever † , faire † grand coffre de darique § -  
 (be brought). Here, said he, is the treasure which I have designed for  
 apporter † 247 , 247 destiner -  
 you. I am going to divide it amongst you, and then I will tell each  
 55 partager - 54 , ensuite dire à 103  
 of you the road he must follow to be perfectly happy. Taï did not  
 (s) devoir prendre 170  
 hear what the genie said, but he observed him attentively, and saw  
 || , || , || , ||

\* Put this adjective *before* the noun.

See note (i) page 199.

† The two verbs *faire* and *relever* must come together, because *faire* here means to *cause*; he did not *cause* the four sons, but he *caused* to rise.‡ *Faire* and *apporter* must come together; see note † above.

§ Small pieces of gold.

|| The action not being momentary, but having been continued, this verb should be in the *imperfect*.



*Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.*

in his eyes, and on his countenance an air of cunning and of malignity which gave him much uneasiness. However he received with gratitude his share of the treasure. Alzim, after having thus enriched them, assumed an affectionate tone, and said to them; my dear children, your good or bad destiny depends upon your meeting sooner or later with a certain being called Bathmendi, of whom every body speaks, but whom very few people know. The wretched mortals seek him all (in the dark). I, who love you, will whisper to each of you where he will (be able) to find him. At these words, Alzim took aside Bekir the eldest of the four brothers. My son, said he to him, you are born with courage, and have (a great deal) of ability for war; the king of Persia has just sent an army against the Turks; join that army; it is in the camp of the Persians that you will find Bathmendi. Bekir thanked the genie, and (was quite impatient) to (set out.) Alzim beckoned to the second son to (come near); it was Mesrou. You have sense, said he to him, some address and great aptness for lying; take the road to Ispahan; it is at court that you must look for Bathmendi. He then called the third brother who (was named) Sad-der: You, said he to him, were gifted with a lively and fertile imagination; You see objects not as they are, but as you wish them to be; You have often genius, and not always common sense;

\* Put this adjective *before* the noun.

† See note † page 312.

‡ *L'aîné* not *le plus aîné*, because *aîné* means *eldest*.§ In *familiar tales* and in *familiar conversation*, the French generally use the *second person singular* instead of the *second person plural*.|| Put this verb in the *present* tense. The French often use the *present* instead of the *perfect* in narrations, to show the *suddenness* of the action, or to call the attention of the hearer or reader more particularly to it.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE ON ALL the RULES.*

You will be a poet. Take the way to Agra; it is amongst the wits  
 23 chemin de ; ce beaux esprits  
 and the fine ladies of that city, that you will find Bathmendi. Taï  
 (bb) ,  
 advanced in his turn; and thanks to the wax<sup>25</sup> balls, he did not hear  
 s'avancer à ; grâce boule,  
 a word of what Alzim said to him. It has been known since that  
 (o) 91 savoir  
 he had advised him to turn dervis. The four brothers, after having  
 lui<sup>55</sup> se faire derviche, 154  
 thanked the beneficent genie, returned to their home. The three eldest  
 bienfaisant demeure.  
 thought of nothing but Bathmendi. Taï unstopped his ears, heard them  
 rêver à 198 déboucher  
 arranging their departure, and proposing to sell their small house to the  
 154 154  
 first (person that should offer), (in order to) divide the amount (of it.)  
 offrant , 170 partager prix en<sup>54</sup>  
 Taï asked to be the purchaser. He got<sup>250</sup> the house and field valued,  
 acqureur. faire † estimer †  
 paid with his gold the share that came to each of his brothers, wished  
 de part 74 revenir 103 ,  
 them every prosperity, embraced them tenderly, and remained alone  
 toutes sortes de , rester tout seul  
 in the paternal house. It was then that he (set about) executing a project  
 29 32 Ce 137 alors s'occuper de 154  
 which had for a long while been the object of his thoughts. He was  
 auquel il pensait depuis - tems †  
 (in love) with the young Amine, the daughter of a neighbouring farmer.  
 amoureux de , 22 son voisin 32 laboureur.  
 Amine was handsome and prudent. She had the management of her  
 sage. soin  
 father's house, and asked of God only two things; the first was that her  
 23 ménage, à ; -  
 father should<sup>146</sup> live long; the second that she might become the wife of  
 149 long tems; - - - de § femme  
 Taï. Her wishes were granted. Taï asked for her and obtained her hand.  
 137 exaucer. 201  
 The father of Amine came to live with his (son in law), and taught  
 demeurer chez gendre , apprendre  
 him the art of making the earth yield all that it can give to those  
 162 faire || à la rendre || ce que 62

\* Express *Nothing* by *Ne* only, because *que* which comes after, expresses *nothing but*.

† The two verbs *faire* and *estimer* must come together.

‡ Had been the object of his thoughts is all expressed by the verb *penser*.

§ Put this verb in the infinitive. || *Faire* and *rendre* must come together before *à la terre*; for he did not *make* the *earth*, but he *made* or *caused* to yield

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.*

who cultivate it. The field doubled in value; and as he was laborious,  
<sup>62</sup> *de valeur;* *comme* ,  
 and his wife economical, each year encreased their revenue. Amine  
<sup>102</sup> *économé,* *augmenter*  
 had many<sup>6</sup> children. Children who ruin the rich idle people of towns,  
<sup>137</sup> \* *N.B.* <sup>7</sup> *oisif* <sup>39</sup> <sup>7</sup> ,  
 enrich the (husbandman). At the end of twelve years, Taï, the  
<sup>laboureur.</sup> <sup>bout</sup> <sup>22</sup> ,  
 father of ten pretty children, the husband of a good and virtuous  
<sup>33</sup> , <sup>22</sup> *époux* <sup>34</sup> ,  
 wife, master of several slaves, and possessor of two flocks, was the  
<sup>plusieurs</sup> ,  
 happiest farmer in Kousistan. Meanwhile his three brothers were  
<sup>49</sup> *m.* *Cependant*  
 running after Bathmendi. Bekir had<sup>49</sup> arrived at the camp of the  
<sup>155</sup> <sup>238</sup>  
 Persians. He presented himself to the grand vizier, and asked to  
*Perse.* <sup>54</sup> *vizir,*  
 .. serve in the corps that was the most exposed. His appearance, his  
<sup>92</sup> *figure,*  
 willingness pleased the vizier who admitted him into a troop of horse.  
*bonne volonté* <sup>202</sup> *cavalerie.*  
 A few<sup>6</sup> days after, a bloody battle (was fought.) Bekir performed<sup>1</sup>  
<sup>N.B.</sup> *sanglant* *se donner.* *faire*  
 wonders, saved the life of his general, and took with his own hand  
*prodige,* *à* , *de* -  
 the general of the enemy. The praises of Bekir resounded every where,  
*celui* † *retentir* † ,  
 and the vizier (out of gratitude) raised his deliverer to the rank of a  
*reconnaissant,* *élever* *libérateur* *grade* -  
 general officer. Alzim was right, said Bekir to himself; it is here  
<sup>32</sup> <sup>239</sup> , <sup>139</sup> - *se* <sup>54</sup> ; *ce*  
 that fortune awaited me; every thing shews that I am going to meet  
<sup>7</sup> *attendre* <sup>133</sup> ; <sup>107</sup> *annoncer*  
 with Bathmendi. The glory of Bekir, and especially his preferment,  
<sup>201</sup> , *surtout* *élévation,*  
 excited the envy and the murmurs of all the satraps. Bekir unhappy  
<sup>§</sup>  
 by his very success, lived alone, always on his guard, and exposed  
*même* † , , † ,  
 every moment to receive an affront. He regretted the time when he  
*à tout* *outrage.* *où*  
 was only a common soldier, and was waiting with impatience for the  
<sup>¶</sup> - *simple* , <sup>201</sup>

\* See note \* page 226.

† Instead of repeating the noun, the French would here use a *pronoun*.‡ *Les louanges de Bekir retentirent partout* would be french; but, *Tout retentit des louanges de Bekir* would be better.

§ Persian nobleman.

|| Make this word *plural* in french.

¶ See note \* page 275.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.*

end of the war, when the Turks reinforced by fresh<sup>10</sup> troops and led<sup>137</sup>  
 , *quand* <sup>157</sup> *nouvelle* \* *guider*  
 by a new *nouveau* \* general, came and attacked the division which Bekir  
 (nn) (ee\*)  
 commanded. This was an opportunity which the satraps of the army  
*Ce* *occasion*  
 (had long been waiting<sup>135</sup> for.) They used a hundred times more<sup>8</sup>  
 - *attendaient* <sup>140</sup> *depuis long tems.* *employer* <sup>21</sup> *N.B.*  
 skill to get their commander beaten, than they had showed in all their  
<sup>250</sup> † *chef* *battre* † *en* <sup>70</sup>  
 lives to (avoid being) beaten themselves. The brave Bekir forsaken,  
 † *pour n'être pas* <sup>158</sup> *eux-mêmes.* *abandonner*,  
 covered with wounds, overpowered by numbers, was taken by the  
<sup>200</sup> , *accabler* *sous le nombre,* <sup>137</sup>  
 janissaries, and sent to Constantinople, where he was thrown into a  
*janissaire,* , *jeter*  
 dungeon. Alas! exclaimed he, in his prison; I begin to think that  
*cachot.* *Hélas! s'écrier* <sup>139</sup> , ;  
 Alzim has deceived me, for I can not expect to meet with Bathmendi  
 , *espérer* <sup>201</sup>  
 here.<sup>183</sup> The war lasted fifteen years, and the satraps always prevented  
*N.B.* , <sup>184</sup> *empêcher*  
 the exchange of Bekir. His prison was not opened (till peace was made).  
 § *qu' à la paix.*  
 He ran immediately to Ispahan to seek the vizier his protector, whose  
*aussitôt* *chercher* , *à qui*  
 life he had saved. (Three weeks elapsed) before he could speak to  
 || *Il fut trois semaines* *sans* \* \* - *pouvoir* (o)  
 him. (At the) end of that time, he obtained an audience. Fifteen years  
<sup>54</sup> *Au* *bout* , <sup>233</sup>  
 imprisonment alter a little the figure of a handsome young man. Bekir  
*de prison* *changer*  
 (could hardly be said to be the same); so the vizier did not know  
*était à peine reconnaissable;* *aussi* *reconnaître*  
 him again. However, by dint of (calling to mind) the different epochs of  
 - , *à force* *se rappeler* <sup>154</sup> \*  
 his glorious life, he recollected that Bekir had formerly done him a little  
 \* , *se souvenir* *rendre* <sup>162</sup>  
 service. Yes, yes, my friend, said he to him, I remember you; you  
 , , , (o) <sup>54</sup> , *remettre* ;  
 are a brave man; but the state is much encumbered; a long war and  
 \* ; *bien obéré;* •

\* Put this adjective before the noun.

† *Faire* and *battre* must come together before *chef*.

‡ This word must be singular in french, because it implies the life of each person individually, not of them collectively.

§ Express *Not* by *Ne* only, as *Que* which comes after supplies the place of *Pas*.

|| Turn; to whom he had saved the life.

\* \* This preposition governs the infinitive in french.



*Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.*

great festivals have exhausted our finances; however come to me again  
*fête épuiser ; revenir voir*  
 I will try, I will see. . . Ah! my lord, I have no<sup>s</sup> bread, and for  
*tâcher, Eh! , N.B. , depuis*  
 this fortnight that I have been waiting for an opportunity to speak to  
*- que - - † 201 le moment 168*  
 your lordship, I should have perished with misery, but for a soldier of  
*grandeur, 238 mourir de , 227*  
 the guard, my ancient companion, who has shared his pay with me.  
*, vieux camarade,*  
 That is very well of that soldier, replied the vizier; it is truly noble  
*Ce à , répondre ; cela vraiment*  
 and affecting; I will mention it to the king. Call upon me again;  
*touchant ; parler en 54 Revenir voir 54 \* ;*  
 you know I (have a regard for) you. . . In saying these words, he  
*221 aimer 54 ,*  
 turned his back (upon him). Bekir called again the (next day), but he  
*15 lui 54 revenir \* lendemain,*  
 (was denied admittance). Overwhelmed with despair, he left the palace  
*trouva la porte fermée. Accabler 200 , sortir du*  
 and the city, resolved never to enter it again. He threw himself at  
*de la , 190 rentrer y 54 \* jeter 54*  
 the foot of a tree on the bank of the river Zenderou. There he  
*bord fleuve Là*  
 reflected on the ingratitude of viziers, on all the misfortunes which he  
*à 7 , à*  
 had experienced, on those which still<sup>84</sup> threatened him, and (unable  
*140 éprouver, 159 à (bb) encore , pouvant*  
 any<sup>190</sup> longer) to support these melancholy ideas, he rose to throw  
*ne plus 172 soutenir triste , se lever 170 précipiter*  
 himself into the river; . . . but he felt himself embraced by a beggar  
*54 , 54 || mendiant*  
 who bathed his face with tears, and exclaimed sobbing; it<sup>62</sup> is my  
*138 visage 200 , 136 en sanglotant ; N.B.*  
 brother, it<sup>62</sup> is my brother Bekir! Bekir looks, and recognises Mes-  
*, N.B. , reconnaître*  
 rou. Every man feels pleasure no doubt in meeting again with a  
*104 avoir 9 sans doute 169 retrouver \* 201*  
 brother he has not seen for a long time; but an unfortunate man  
*(s) depuis - ; 39*  
 without resource, without a friend, who is going to (put an end to)  
*, † , 172 finir*

\* The adverb *again* is expressed by the preposition *re* prefixed to the verb.

† He having been waiting till the moment he was speaking, the French would put the verb *wait* in the present, and leave out *have* and *been*. || Put this verb in the *infinitive*.

‡ After the preposition *Sans*, the noun is generally used without an article, because the preposition and the noun are considered either as an *adjective* or as an *adverbial* expression.

*Promiscuous* EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

his existence in despair, thinks he sees an angel from heaven, in  
*jours de , croire (nn) 7 , en*  
 finding again a brother whom he loves. Such was the sentiment  
*retrouver - Ce 137*  
 which Bekir and Mesrou felt at the same time. They mutually  
*éprouver à - fois. 184*  
 pressed (each other) in their arms, they mingled their tears, and after  
*\* se 54 , confondre \* larme, 54*  
 the first moments given to tenderness, they looked at (each other) with  
*157 , \* 201 se 54*  
 eyes full of surprise and affliction. Art thou then also unfortunate?  
*† - surpris affligé. Tu es donc*  
 exclaimed Bekir. This, answered Mesrou, is the first moment of  
*s'écrier 247 , 247*  
 happiness which I have enjoyed since we <sup>136</sup>parted<sup>237</sup>. At these words,  
*dont se quitter. ,*  
 the two unfortunate men embraced (each other) again; they leaned  
*39 \* se 54 encore ; s'appuyer \**  
 on each other; and Mesrou seated near to Bekir, thus <sup>184</sup>began his  
*contre 121 ; assis près de , ainsi*  
 history. You remember the fatal day when we went to Alzim's.  
*202 32 où 208*  
 'That perfidious genie told me I might find at court that Bathmendi  
*perfidie † 221 7*  
 whom we wished (so much) to meet. I followed his pernicious advice,  
*140 tant funeste † conseil,*  
 and soon arrived at Ispahan. I became acquainted with a young female  
*184 53 à faire connaissance une - 39*  
 slave who belonged to the mistress of the first secretary of the grand  
*140*  
 vizier. This slave conceived an affection for me, and introduced me to  
*de l' 58 ,*  
 her mistress, who made me pass for her youngest brother. Soon the  
*, petit*  
 youngest brother was presented to the vizier, and a few days after, he  
*137 , - quelques ,*  
 obtained an employment in the palace. The Sultana distinguished me,  
*emploi Sultane ,*  
 and took me into an intimate friendship. From that moment, honours and  
*213 32 Dès , 7*  
 riches began to shower upon me. The monarch himself shewed some  
*§ plénvoir 58 témoigner*  
 regard for me. He liked to converse with me, because I flattered him  
*affection - 54 140 causer 139*

\* To show the *quickness* in which the action was done, the french would put this verb in the *present tense*.

† Leave out this adjective, and make *surprise* and *affliction* into *adjectives*.

‡ Put this adjective *before* the noun.

§ Make this word *plural* in french.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.*

with address, and always advised him to do what he had a mind to do.  
 , 219 53 conseiller 163 - - 84 .40 24 envie .68 -

This was the way to make him soon do what I should wish.  
 Ce 140 moyen 108 \* lui 54 faire \* vouloir.

That failed not to happen. (At the) end of three years, I saw myself  
 (bb) manquer 168 Au bout , 54

at once prime minister, favourite of the king, (having in my power)  
 à la fois , , maître

to appoint and to remove the viziers, deciding every thing by my  
 de nommer déplacer , 107

influence, and receiving every morning the great men of the empire,  
 crédit, , tous les matins : 39 ,

who came to wait (till I awoke) to obtain from me a smile of protection.  
 139 mon réveil 170 de 58

(In the) midst of my glory and of my fortune, I (was astonished) that  
 Au s'étonner 140 -

I did not<sup>190</sup> meet with that Bathmendi I was seeking. (I feel no  
 (nn) N.B. 201 (s) Rien ne me  
 want of any kind), said I to myself; why (do I still want Bathmendi)?  
 manque , 139 - me 54; Bathmendi me manque-t-il?

This idea and the constraint (in which) I spent my life, poisoned all  
 gêne où (v) 271 ,

my pleasures. The passion of the king for a young Mingrelienne  
 amour

came to (fill up) my misfortune. The whole court cast their eyes to  
 combler 2 infortune. 58 tourner les 15 de

that side, in hope that the mistress would (turn out) the minister. I  
 , 7 espoir chasser

parried the blow by connecting myself with the Mingrelienne, and  
 parer (hh) lier me 54 ,

flattering the passion of the king: but that passion became so violent,  
 204 :

that the monarch, determined to marry his mistress, asked me for<sup>201</sup>  
 , , décider à 261 , †

my advice. I wavered for some days. The Sultan's mother, who  
 avis. tergiverser - Sultane mère, ||

was afraid of losing her influence if her son should<sup>144</sup> marry, came  
 crédit N.B. se marier,

to declare to me that, if I did not break off that match, she would  
 172 (o) , rompre - mariage,

have me assassinated on the very<sup>32</sup> day of the ceremony. An hour after,  
 250 - même

the Mingrelienne came and assured me that, if I did not get her  
 (nn) 54 , § 250

\* Make do, *Faire faire*, must come together in french.

† See note † page 296.

‡ *Mère* being here considered as an adjective, must come after *Sultane*.

§ See note † page 387.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.*

married to the king (the very next day), I should be strangled the day  
<sup>261</sup> par <sup>dès le lendemain,</sup>  
 after. My situation was embarrassing; I had to choose (between the)  
 d'après. <sup>position</sup> il fallait <sup>172</sup> du \*  
 dagger, <sup>204</sup> the rope or <sup>204</sup> flight. I chose <sup>136</sup> the last. I disguised myself  
 , du cordon de la prendre dernier parti. <sup>136</sup> <sup>237</sup> <sup>54</sup>  
 as you see, and have escaped from the palace with some diamonds  
 , <sup>237</sup> s'échapper †  
 in my pockets, which will support me with you in some corner of  
 , faire vivre quelque  
 Indoustan, far from the Sultanas, the Mingreliennes and the court.  
<sup>5</sup> , loin <sup>204</sup> <sup>204</sup>  
 After this recital, Bekir related his adventures to Mesrou. They both  
 récit, <sup>122</sup> †  
 agreed that they would have done just as well not <sup>190</sup> to have (rambled  
 convenir tout aussi N.B. - courir  
 about) the world, as they had done, and that the wisest thing they  
 - , comme <sup>140</sup> , meilleur (s)  
 could do, was to return into Kousistan, to their brother Taï, where  
<sup>50</sup> , <sup>140</sup> de <sup>5</sup> , auprès de ,  
 the diamonds of Mesrou would enable them to lead a sweet and easy <sup>29</sup>  
 mettre en état <sup>168</sup> meurer <sup>32</sup> aisé  
 life. After this resolution, they (set out on their journey), and travelled  
 , se mettre en route marcher  
 for several days without meeting with any adventure. As they were  
<sup>205</sup> - - § <sup>155</sup>  
 crossing the province of Farsistan, they arrived towards dusk at a  
 traverser , vers le soir  
 small village where they intended to spend the night. It was a holy  
 compter <sup>271</sup> <sup>140</sup> fête  
 day. On entering the village, they saw several peasants' children  
<sup>25</sup> En entrer dans || , <sup>25</sup>  
 returning <sup>153</sup> from walking, attended by a kind of (school-master) badly  
<sup>130</sup> N.B. 7promenade, conduit <sup>157</sup> espèce magister mal  
 clad, walking with his head down, and having the appearance of (being  
 vêtu, marcher - la <sup>15</sup> basse, air  
 absorbed in) (melancholy thoughts). The two brothers approached this  
 rêver ¶ tristement. <sup>274</sup> \* \*  
 school-master, looked at him attentively... What was their surprise! it <sup>62</sup> was  
 , \* \* <sup>201</sup> <sup>52</sup> \* \* N.B. \* \*  
 Sadder, it <sup>62</sup> was their brother Sadder whom they embraced. What <sup>93</sup>! my  
 , N.B. \* \* \* \* Eh quoi!

\* The preposition *between* is here expressed like *of*.

† See note † page 282.

‡ Put this pronoun *after* the verb.§ All these words may be *left out* in French.|| The French do not say *entrer un endroit*, to enter a place; they say *entrer dans un endroit*, to enter into a place.¶ Express the words *being absorbed in* by the verb *rêver*.\*\* To express the *suddenness* of the action, the French would here use the *present tense*.



*Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.*

friend, said Bekir to him, is this (the way) in which genius is rewarded?  
 , (o) , ce ainsi - que 7 92  
 You see, replied Sadder, that it is treated much (in the same way as)  
 , , 93 à peu près comme  
 valour is; but philosophy finds (in it) abundant food for reflection  
 7 -; y 54 un grand sujet de  
 and that (is no small consolation). In saying these words, he bid<sup>202</sup>  
 (bb) console beaucoup. En , ordonner à  
 all the children go (to their homes), took Bekir and Mesrou to his  
 168 206 , conduire  
 little cottage, dressed himself a little<sup>9</sup> rice for their supper, and after  
 cabane, apprêter (m) N.B. N.B. ,  
 having<sup>154</sup> (asked them for) their histories, he told them his own in these  
 s'être<sup>237</sup> fait raconter , dire 162 85 - en  
 words: The genie Alzim, whom I suspect much of delighting in  
 mot: , aimer<sup>154</sup> -  
 (other people's) afflictions, advised me to seek that (not to be found)  
 autrui<sup>25</sup> mal • , introuvable  
 Bathmendi in the great city of Agra, amongst the wits and the  
 , beaux esprits  
 fine ladies of that city. I arrived at Agra; and before I mixed  
 ; avant de (nn) me repandre  
 with the world, I wished<sup>127</sup> to (make myself known) by some  
 dans , vouloir m'annoncer quelque  
 striking work. (At the) end of a month, my work appeared:  
 d'éclat<sup>32</sup> Au bout  
 it was a complete course of all human sciences, in a small volume  
 65 32 cours 32 7 , en  
 divided into chapters. Each chapter was a tale, and each tale taught  
 par 102 140  
 a science thoroughly<sup>183</sup>. My book and I soon<sup>184</sup> became fashionable  
 parfaitement N.B. 127 bientôt à la mode.  
 I was invited to all the societies that pretended to have any sense;  
 92 74 se piquer 140 un peu d'esprit;  
 (there was no talk) but of me, and the favourite Sultana wrote to  
 On ne parlait que de 53 , 32 (o)  
 me with her own hand a note (badly spelled), to ask me to come  
 de - billet sans orthographe, 170 prier  
 to court. Well! I said to myself, Alzim has not deceived me:  
 7 Courage! (ee) 139 - me 54 ,  
 my glory is (at its) height; I will sustain it by surer<sup>41</sup> means  
 au comble; soutenir 62 32 9  
 than those of intrigue; I will please, and I shall find Bathmendi.  
 83 7 ; ,

• Put this word in the singular in french.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES*

I was (most agreeably) received in the palace of the grand Mogul: The  
<sup>137</sup> *parfaitement* *accueillir*  
 favourite Sultana declared herself openly my protectress, presented me  
<sup>32</sup> <sup>54</sup> *hautement*  
 to the emperor, bespoke verses from me, gave me pensions, admit-  
<sup>commander</sup> <sup>9</sup> <sup>54</sup> <sup>9</sup>  
 ted me to her private suppers, and swore to me, a hundred times a  
<sup>petit</sup> <sup>(o)</sup> <sup>21</sup> <sup>12</sup>  
 day, a friendship (that would stand any test). I thought<sup>140</sup> I was  
<sup>à toute épreuve.</sup> <sup>croire</sup> <sup>(nn)</sup> <sup>toucher</sup>  
 (on the) point of meeting with Bathmendi, when my protectress  
<sup>au</sup> <sup>moment</sup> <sup>21</sup>  
 quarrelled with the vizier about the government of a province which  
<sup>se brouiller</sup> <sup>vizir</sup> <sup>pour</sup> <sup>un</sup>  
 the latter refused to the son of the confectioner of the favourite. The  
<sup>celui-ci</sup> <sup>confiseur</sup>  
 Sultana exasperated at this audacity, asked the emperor to dismiss the  
<sup>outré</sup> <sup>157</sup> <sup>de</sup> <sup>chasser</sup>  
 insolent minister; but the emperor liked his vizier, and refused the  
<sup>140</sup>  
 favourite. Then it (became necessary) to (set on foot) a regular<sup>32</sup> intrigue  
<sup>Alors il</sup> <sup>fallut</sup> <sup>172</sup> <sup>établir</sup> <sup>en règle</sup>  
 to ruin the patronized vizier. I entered (into the) plot, and (was<sup>137</sup>  
<sup>170</sup> <sup>perdre</sup> <sup>soutenu</sup> <sup>32</sup> <sup>être</sup> <sup>137</sup> <sup>du</sup> <sup>complot,</sup> <sup>53</sup> <sup>recevoir</sup>  
 desired) to compose against the minister a cutting<sup>32</sup> satire, and to spread  
<sup>ordre</sup> <sup>163</sup> <sup>sanglant</sup> <sup>répandre</sup>  
 it amongst the public. The vizier soon discovered that I was the author  
<sup>62</sup> <sup>dans</sup> <sup>bientôt</sup>  
 (of it). He went to the favourite, brought her the commission which he  
<sup>en</sup> <sup>54</sup> <sup>aller</sup> <sup>trouver</sup> <sup>162</sup> <sup>brévet</sup>  
 had refused (at first), an order for a hundred thousand daricks on the  
<sup>140</sup> <sup>d'abord,</sup> <sup>ordonnance de</sup> <sup>21</sup>  
 royal treasury, and only asked her<sup>162</sup> (in return) to permit him<sup>162</sup> to  
<sup>32</sup> <sup>lui</sup> <sup>pour recompense de</sup> <sup>lui</sup>  
 throw me into a dungeon. That is a trifle, answered the favourite, and  
<sup>cachot.</sup> <sup>Ce</sup> <sup>misère,</sup>  
 I am very fortunate in (having it in my power) to do something that  
<sup>heureux (g) de</sup> <sup>pouvoir</sup> <sup>172</sup> <sup>71</sup>  
 may be acceptable to you. I will send immediately for that wretch  
<sup>agréable</sup> <sup>(o)</sup> <sup>†</sup> <sup>envoyer tout à l'heure</sup> <sup>chercher</sup> <sup>‡</sup> <sup>misérable</sup>  
 who has dared to insult you (in spite of) my express orders, and  
<sup>172</sup> <sup>malgré</sup> <sup>32</sup> <sup>défense,</sup>  
 deliver him into your hands. Luckily for me a slave of the favourite  
<sup>remettre</sup> <sup>entre</sup> <sup>Heureusement</sup>

• See note • page 275.

† See note † page 312.

‡ The preposition *For* after the verbs *Go* and *Send*, is not expressed by *Pour*, but by the verb *Chercher*



*Promiscuous* EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

commanded half of the persian<sup>32</sup> army; since Mesrou did not  
*a moitié persanne* ; <sup>217</sup> <sup>136</sup>  
 (hear his name mentioned), when he was the favourite of the great  
*en* <sup>55</sup> *entendre parler* , *lorsque*  
 king; since I myself could not even guess what it was at a time  
 ; <sup>136</sup> *même* <sup>84</sup> *ce* *dans le*  
 when I was loaded (with the) favours of glory and fortune; it<sup>62</sup> is  
*que* *comblé* *des* <sup>7</sup> <sup>204</sup> <sup>7</sup> ; *N.B.*  
 clear that Bathmendi is an imaginary being, an illusion, a chimera after  
<sup>32</sup> *être* ,  
 which all men run, because they like chimeras, and (rambling about).  
<sup>76</sup> <sup>7</sup> , *à courir.*  
 He was going to prove that Bathmendi did not exist in this world, when  
<sup>172</sup> *habiter* , <sup>217</sup>  
 a band of robbers rushed from behind the rocks which lined<sup>140</sup> the road,  
*troupe* *sortir* \* *border* ,  
 surrounded the three travellers, and ordered them<sup>162</sup> to strip. Bekir  
*entourer* \* , \* *leur* *se dépouiller.*  
 wished<sup>137</sup> to resist, but he was soon disarmed. After this ceremony which  
*vouloir* , <sup>137</sup>  
 was the business of a moment, the captain of the robbers wished them  
*instant* , *chef* <sup>162</sup>  
 a good journey, and left them quite naked (in the) midst of the high-  
*voyage* , <sup>189</sup> <sup>23</sup> *au* *grand*  
 way. This comes in support of my proposition, said Sadder, looking  
*chemin.* *à l'appui* , *en*  
 at his brothers. Ah! the cowards! exclaimed Bekir in a rage; they  
<sup>201</sup> *Ah!* *lâche* <sup>139</sup> *en - fureur* ;  
 have taken my sword from me! Oh! my diamonds! my poor dia-  
*arracher* - <sup>55</sup> *Eh!*  
 monds! replied Mesrou weeping. It was dark; The three unfortu-  
*répondre* *en pleurant.* *faire nuit* ;  
 nate men (made haste) to reach the house of their brother Taï. They  
<sup>39</sup> *se hâter* *gagner*  
 (at length) reached it, and the sight of that house caused their tears  
*enfin* <sup>184</sup> *arriver y* <sup>54</sup> , *vue* *faire* †  
 to flow. They stopped at the door; they dared not knock; all their  
 - *couler* , † ;  
 fears, all their doubts (were renewed). Whilst they were wavering  
 , *incertitude* *recommencer.* *balancer*  
 thus, Bekir rolled a large stone, got upon it, and finding a cleft in the  
 , • *gros* <sup>29</sup> , *monter* \* <sup>64</sup> , *fente*  
 window shutter, he looked and perceived in a neat, plainly furnished  
<sup>25</sup> *contrevent* , • <sup>32</sup> , *simplement meublé* <sup>32</sup>

\* To show the *quickness* of the action, the French would here use the *present* tense; but the *perfect* may also be used. † Turn; caused to *flow* their tears; the two verbs *faire* and *couler* must come together in french, for it did not *cause* their *tears*, but it *caused* to *flow* tears.



*Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.*

room, his brother Taï at table, (in the) midst of ten children who were  
 eating, laughing and chattering all (at once). Taï had on his right his  
 wife Amine who was feeding her youngest child, and on his left was  
 a little (old man) with a sweet<sup>30</sup> and cheerful countenance, who was  
 (pouring out) drink for Taï. At this sight Bekir rushed into the arms  
 of his brothers, and knocked at the door with all his might. A servant  
 came to open it, and screamed with fright, at seeing three men completely  
 naked. Taï ran to the door. The strangers fall (on his<sup>15</sup>) neck, they<sup>90</sup>  
 call him brother; they<sup>90</sup> bathe him with tears. He was confused (at first),  
 but he soon recollects Bekir, Mesrou, Sadder. He presses them in his  
 arms, he can not embrace them sufficiently. All the children ran  
 to see what it was. Amine also came, but she (drew back) with her  
 daughters at the sight of the three naked brothers. (The little old man  
 was the only one) who did not quit the table. Taï gave clothes to his  
 brothers, presented them to his wife, and made them kiss his chil-  
 dren. Alas! said Bekir affected at this sight; thy happy lot consoles  
 us for all that we have suffered. Since the moment (we parted),  
 our life has been only a series of misfortunes, and we have not  
 even (had a glimpse) of that Bathmendi after which we have all  
 been running. I readily believe it, said the little (old man) then<sup>183</sup> who  
 remained (all this time) at table; I have not stirred hence. How!  
 exclaimed Mesrou, you are... I am Bathmendi, replied the (old man);

\* To shew the *quickness* of the action, the French would here use the *present* tense, but the *perfect* may be used too. † This noun would be expressed better in french by the *indefinite* pronoun *On*.

*Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.*

it is quite natural that you should not know me, since you have never  
 189 simple \* † , 217  
 seen me; but ask of Taï, ask of the good Amine, and of all these little  
 ; 200 , 200 , 204  
 children, there is not one (of them) but knows my name. The three  
 , 246 en 54 199 †  
 brothers who could not (keep their eyes off) this little (old man), wished  
 140 se laisser de considérer , vouloir  
 to embrace him. Gently, said he to them; I do not like these great  
 172 Doucement, (o) ;  
 raptures. (People<sup>191</sup> should) be friends before they (make so free). It  
 mouvements. Il N.B. faut être avant de (nn) se caresser.  
 you wish that we should ever become so, be not (too much) (taken up)  
 146 le 54, - trop s'occuper  
 with me. In saying these words, he (got up), kissed every one of the  
 200 , se lever, 105  
 children, made a gentle bow to the three brothers, gave a smile to  
 , petit salut , -  
 Amine and to Taï, and went to wait for them in their bed<sup>26</sup> chamber.  
 , 201 coucher 25  
 Taï (sat again) at table with his brothers, and ordered beds to be got  
 se remettre , faire † - - apprê-  
 ready for them. Next day he showed them his fields, his flocks, and  
 ter † - leur 54 Le lendemain 162 , ,  
 gave them a detail of all the pleasures (s) he enjoyed. Bekir would<sup>137</sup>  
 faire 162 dont 149 vouloir  
 (work in the fields) (that very day); so he was the first that became  
 labourer le jour même; aussi 137 74  
 the friend of Bathmendi. Mesrou who had been prime minister, was  
 140 , 137  
 head shepherd of the farm, and the poet (took upon himself) to go and  
 premier , se charger 168 -  
 sell in town, the corn, the wool, and the milk which was sent to market;  
 à 7 , , 92 139 7 ;  
 his eloquence brought customers, and he was as useful as the others  
 attirer chaland, 140 43 43  
 (At the) end of six months, Bathmendi (was pleased) with them, and  
 Au bout , se plaire 137 58 ,  
 their numerous<sup>32</sup> and quiet days (glided on) gently (in the) bosom  
 nombreux 32 couler 137 doucement au  
 of happiness. It<sup>62</sup> is perhaps unnecessary to say that BATHMENDI  
 7 N.B. inutile de  
 (in the Persian language) means HAPPINESS.  
 en Persan signifier 7

\* This adjective requires the following verb in the *subjunctive*.

† See note \* page 140, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*.

‡ Turn 'ordered to get ready beds, &c. for he did not order the beds but he ordered to get ready.

## COMPENDIUM

OF

## THE PRINCIPAL RULES.

CONTAINED IN THIS TREATISE.\*

What are the words commonly called<sup>82</sup> the PARTS of SPEECH, of which  
<sup>82</sup> appeler <sup>partie</sup> 7 discours,  
 the french language is composed?  
<sup>32</sup> langue <sup>composer</sup> 158 ?

(What is) a NOUN?  
*Qu'est-ce que (y) nom ?*

(How many<sup>8</sup>) sorts of nouns do we<sup>90</sup> distinguish in grammar?  
<sup>Combien</sup> N.B. <sup>N.B. distinguer</sup> en grammaire ?

(How<sup>8</sup> many) genders (are there) in french?  
<sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>246</sup>

How do we<sup>90</sup> know the gender of the names of the beings without  
<sup>185</sup> N.B. <sup>connaître</sup> <sup>nom</sup> <sup>être</sup>  
 life, which are commonly called<sup>92</sup> things?  
<sup>appeler</sup>

(How<sup>8</sup> many) numbers (are there)?—How do you make the plural  
<sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>246</sup> <sup>185</sup> <sup>former</sup> <sup>pluriers</sup>  
 number of nouns?

Has this rule any exceptions?—What are they?  
<sup>134</sup> <sup>9</sup> <sup>82</sup> <sup>62</sup>

(What is) an ARTICLE?  
 (y)

What are the words which are commonly called ARTICLE in french?  
<sup>82</sup> <sup>92</sup>

What agreement does the article require with the noun?  
<sup>accord</sup> <sup>demandeur</sup>

What sign do we use, when the noun which follows the article  
<sup>signe</sup> <sup>employer,</sup>  
 is (in the) singular, and begins with a vowel, or an *h* mute?  
<sup>au</sup> <sup>,</sup> <sup>par</sup> <sup>voyelle,</sup> <sup>muette ?</sup>

When several nouns which require the article meet in the same  
<sup>plusieurs</sup> <sup>demandeur</sup> <sup>se rencontrer</sup>

\* The learner must translate these questions into french, as he has done the foregoing exercises; and he must also write in french an answer to every question, with an explanation of the rule, and two or three appropriate examples from his own imagination. This exercise would perhaps be useless to grown persons who have read the rules with attention, but I think it will be particularly useful to all young learners.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

sentence, is it necessary to repeat the article before each noun?  
phrase, 102

Do the names<sup>134</sup> of persons and of towns require the article?  
nom demander

Do the names of countries require the article?  
134 pays

Has not this rule some exceptions?—What are they?  
134 \* 82 62

(Is there) not a small number of words which are never excepted,  
245 8

i. e. which always require the article?—Name them.  
184 Nonmer

What article do common names require, when they are used  
82 commun 134 demander, - s'employer

in a general or in a particular sense?  
particulier sens

How is OF expressed before a noun used in a general sense,  
185 - s'exprimer (ii) N.B.

preceded by a noun used in a partitive sense?

What article do common names require, when we<sup>90</sup> use them in a  
134 N.B. employer  
partitive sense, i. e. to denote only a portion of the thing (spoken of?)  
à désigner dont on parle?

What sign do we<sup>90</sup> put before a noun used in a partitive sense, when  
signe N.B. partitif

it is attended by an adjective which must be placed before that noun?  
accompagné de devoir - se placer

(Are not there) some adverbs in french which require the preposi-  
246 \*

tion *de*, when the words which represent them in english do not re-  
représenter

quire any<sup>6</sup> preposition?—What are they?  
N.B. 82

How is the numeral article A, AN expressed?  
185 - (ii) N.B.

How are A, AN expressed before nouns of measure, weight, number,  
- 8 204 poids, 204  
and periods of time used in a collective sense?  
204 157 collectif<sup>32</sup>

What are the words which are called demonstrative article?  
82 - 92 démonstratif

How do we<sup>90</sup> make in french that local<sup>32</sup> distinction which is made  
N.B. de lieu - se fuire

in english by means of the words THIS, THESE; THAT, THOSE?  
au moyen

\* See note † page 282.

† See note \* page 192.



*of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.*

What are the words which we<sup>90</sup> call possessive article?  
<sup>82</sup> N.B. <sup>possessif</sup><sup>32</sup>

Is not the possessive article MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR,  
<sup>134</sup>

sometimes expressed by the definite article *Le, La, Les*?  
<sup>184</sup> *s'exprimer* (ii) N.B.

Are not the possessive words MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR,  
<sup>134</sup>

sometimes expressed by *Au, à La, Aux*?  
 (ii) N.B.

Do not the French sometimes use *Mon, Ma, Mes*, before a noun,  
<sup>134</sup> <sup>184</sup> *employer*

when the corresponding<sup>32</sup> signs are not used in english?  
*qui y correspondent* - (ii) N.B.

In what instances are the signs called article (left out) in french?  
<sup>cas</sup> - <sup>134</sup> *s'omettre*

When two nouns govern each other, which of the two nouns is to  
<sup>se régir</sup> <sup>121</sup> , <sup>242</sup>

be placed the first in french?  
<sup>243</sup> *se placer* (ii) N.B. *premier*

By what preposition are these nouns united together?  
<sup>134</sup> *s'unir* *ensemble*?

How is OF expressed before the proper names of countries?  
<sup>185</sup> - (ii) N.B. *nom*

Do not the French sometimes use the name of a country, when  
<sup>134</sup> <sup>184</sup> *employer*

the English use the adjective derived from that name?  
*dérivé*

What is an ADJECTIVE?  
 (y) *adjectif*?

What agreement does the adjective require with the noun?  
<sup>accord</sup> <sup>134</sup> *demande*

How is the feminine gender of an adjective formed?  
<sup>se former</sup> (ii) N.B.

(Are there) any exceptions to this rule, and what are they?  
<sup>246</sup> <sup>9</sup> , <sup>82</sup> <sup>62</sup>

How is the plural number of adjectives formed?  
 -

When an adjective qualifies two nouns, of what gender and number  
<sup>qualifier</sup> , \*

must that adjective be?  
*devoir*

Are adjectives placed in french before or after the noun?  
<sup>134</sup> *se placer* (ii) N.B.

\* Repeat here *Of what* before number.

*of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.*

Has not this rule some exceptions?

134

What place do the adjectives of number keep with the noun?

place

134

tenir

How are the adjectives of number expressed and where are they

s'exprimer, (ii) N.B.

où

placed, when they are used to distinguish some personage?

se placer,

s'employer

personnage?

How are the adjectives of measure and dimension long, broad,

204

long, large,

high, deep, &c. placed with the number in french?

haut, profond, &c. se placer (ii) N.B.

Do not the French often use the substantive of dimension instead of

134

184

substantif

the adjective?—Is the same verb used with the substantive of dimension as with the adjective?

92

que

Can the adjective be separated from the noun by an article in french

134

as it<sup>62</sup> sometimes is in english?

comme

184

70

May<sup>178</sup> not the adjective be sometimes used as a substantive?

Pouvoir †

134

(ii) N.B.

How is an adjective made comparative?—How is it made superlative?

92

comparatif?

92

superlatif?

When the comparison is made, not between two substantives,

— se fuire, (ii) N.B.

entre

but between two parts of a sentence; as, THE MORE DIFFICULT A  
 partie phrase;  
 THING IS, THE MORE MERIT THERE IS IN DOING IT; what difference  
 (is there) in the arrangement of the words in french?

246

Are the adverbial particles<sup>134</sup> which serve to form the comparative

32

particule

servir

and superlative repeated in french?

3

se répéter (ii) N.B.

Do not some<sup>93</sup> of the comparative adjectives and adverbs require

134

32

3

demander

ne before the verb which follows them?

How are BY and THAN expressed after a comparative?

185

(ii) N.B.

• See note • page 232.

† See note • page 138.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

How is IN expressed after a superlative?  
<sup>185</sup> - s'exprimer (ii) N.B.

What mood does the superlative require, when it is followed by a  
<sup>82</sup> mode demander, <sup>62</sup> de

relative pronoun?  
*relatif*

What is a PRONOUN?  
 (y) pronom ?

How many<sup>8</sup> sorts of pronouns do we<sup>80</sup> distinguish?  
 N.B. <sup>8</sup> N.B. distinguer ?

How do you express the pronouns I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU,  
 THEY, when they are the nominative of a verb?  
*nominatif*

How do you express the same words I, THOU, HE, SHE, WE, YOU,  
*mêmes*  
 THEY, when they are joined<sup>158</sup> to another substantive for the nomina-  
 , joindre substantif -  
 tive of the same verb, or when the verb is understood?  
 , sous-entendre ?

How do you express the pronouns ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER,  
 IT, THEM, when they are the object of a verb?  
 , objet

What place do the pronouns objects of the verb keep with the  
 place <sup>134</sup> tenir  
 verb, when the tense is simple?  
 , tems simple ?

What place do these pronouns require when the tense is compounded  
<sup>134</sup> demander composé  
 of the auxiliary<sup>32</sup> verb *avoir* or *être*, and of a past<sup>32</sup> participle?  
*auxiliaire* , *passé participe* ?

Where are the pronouns objects of the verb placed, when the  
 Où - se placer, (ii) N.B.  
 verb commands, and how are ME and THEE expressed?  
*commander*, <sup>185</sup> - (ii) N.B.

How are ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, THEM expressed, and where  
<sup>185</sup> - (ii) N.B.,  
 are they placed, when they are governed by a preposition?  
 - (ii) N.B., régir par

Is not the preposition *À* in french, like the preposition to in english,  
<sup>134</sup>  
 often implied in the pronoun?—When is *À*<sup>134</sup> to be expressed?  
*renfermée* <sup>242</sup> <sup>243</sup> s'exprimer ?

When several pronouns of different persons are the object of the  
*plusieurs*

*of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.*

same verb, what order do these pronouns keep with one another?

As (there are) in french only two genders, the masculine and the  
Comme il n'y a que , -

feminine, how is the english neuter<sup>32</sup> pronoun IT expressed in french?

Explain the different uses of the pronoun IT.  
Expliquer usages

May<sup>178</sup> LUI, LEUR, be used for things?  
Pouvoir • 134 - s'employer 7

May LUI, ELLE, EUX, ELLES be used for things after a preposition?

How are the pronouns HE, SHE, IT, THEY expressed before the verb  
183 - 134 (ii) N.B. 206

BE, when that verb is followed by a substantive?

How are the pronouns HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM expressed,  
- (ii) N.B. ,

when they do not relate to any noun (mentioned before), but  
‡ se rapporter aucun dont on a fait<sup>145</sup> mention, 219

<sup>53</sup> refer to the word PERSON understood?  
se rapporter sous-entendre?

Are not the pronouns LE, LA, LES, EN, Y frequently used, when  
- 134 souvent<sup>184</sup> s'employer,

the words which represent them are not used in english?  
représenter - (ii) N.B.

Do these pronouns agree with the words which they represent?  
s'accorder

How do you express the pronouns WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT,

WHICH, when they relate to a noun (mentioned before)?  
se rapporter dont on a fait mention?

What place does the relative keep with the noun to which it relates?  
place relatif tenir 76

Is not the relative pronoun sometimes understood in english, when  
32 134 184 ,

it can not (be left out) in french?  
s'omettre

How are WHO, WHOM, WHOSE expressed, when they relate to the  
- 134 , ‡ (ii) N.B., se rapporter

word PERSON understood?

How are WHOM and WHICH expressed, when they are governed by  
(ii) N.B., régir

a preposition?

\* See note \* page 133.

† These words in this sense may be considered as nouns.

‡ Express Not by ne only, because aucun that follows is a negative expression which takes the place of pas.



of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

How is WHICH expressed after a preposition, when it relates  
 185 - s'exprimer (ii) N.B. , se rapporter  
 to the word THING?

How is WHICH expressed after a preposition, when it relates to a place?  
 - (ii) N.B. , lieu?

How is WHICH interrogative expressed?  
 - interrogatif (ii) N.B.

Explain the different ways of expressing the pronoun WHAT.  
 Expliquer manière 154

How do we<sup>90</sup> express the possessive pronouns MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS,  
 N.B. possessif<sup>32</sup>  
 OURS, YOURS, THEIRS, when they relate to a noun (mentioned before)?  
 , dont on a fait mention?

How are the possessive pronouns MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, &C  
 - 32  
 expressed, when they are used instead of the personal pronouns ME,  
 N.B. , - s'employer  
 THERE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, THEM; as, THIS BOOK is MINE?  
 ; , THIS BOOK is MINE?

How are the possessive pronouns MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, &c. ex-  
 -  
 pressed, when they are joined by the preposition OF to the noun to  
 (ii) N.B. , OF  
 which they relate; as, A BOOK of MINE, &c.?  
 ; , A BOOK of MINE, &c.?

How are the demonstrative pronouns THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE,  
 - démonstratif<sup>32</sup>  
 expressed?—How is the distinction made between these words in french?  
 (ii) N.B. - 92 entre

How are THIS, THAT expressed, when they relate to the word  
 - (ii) N.B. , se rapporter  
 THING understood?

Explain the different properties of THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE.\*  
 propriété

How do we<sup>90</sup> express the words ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, when they  
 N.B. ,  
 do not refer to any particular<sup>32</sup> person?  
 se rapporter aucune en particulier personne

How are the indefinite expressions such as these; IT is THOUGHT,  
 - indéfini<sup>32</sup> 134 telles que 88 ;  
 IT is SAID, expressed in french?  
 , (ii) N.B.

How are these other indefinite expressions I HAVE BEEN TOLD, I  
 - autre 32 ,

\* See note (bb) page 217.

*of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.*

WAS ADVISED, &c. expressed in french?

(ii) N.B.

What is a VERB?

(y) verbe?

What agreement does the verb require with its nominative?

<sup>82</sup> accord demander son nominatif?

When two substantives of different persons are the nominative of

substantif\*

the same verb, of what number and person must the verb be?

<sup>82</sup> † devoir

Of what person is the verb, when it has *qui* for its nominative?

Of what person must the verb be, when *qui* relates to two sub-

devoir se rapporter

stantives of different persons?

\*

Of what number must the verb be, after the collective substantives

collectif<sup>32</sup>

*La plupart, infinité, Nombre, quantité, troupe, multitude?*

Of what number is the verb, after *Le quart, Le tiers, La moitié?*

What is the place of the nominative with the verb, in an interro-

<sup>82</sup> place

gative sentence, when the nominative is a personal pronoun?

phrase,

<sup>32</sup>

What is the place of the nominative, in an interrogative sentence, when

that nominative is a noun, or any other word but a personal pronoun?

, tout autre que

When is the present of the indicative used<sup>92</sup>?

employer

When do we<sup>90</sup> use the compound of the present?

N.B. composé

When do we<sup>90</sup> make use of the perfect tense of the verb?

N.B. usage parfait

Explain the different uses of the imperfect.

Expliquer

usage

When is the future used?—Is not the present sometimes used

—

futur

<sup>92</sup>

—

<sup>134</sup>

for the future?—Does not the french language require the future,

<sup>134</sup> demander

in some instances (in which) the English use the present?

† cas

où

How are WILL, WOULD expressed after the conjunction IF?

<sup>185</sup>

—

s'exprimer

IF?

• See note page 205. † Of what must be repeated before person.

† See note † page 282.

*of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.*

Mention the different instances in which the subjunctive is used.  
*Rapporter* <sup>cas</sup> <sup>76</sup> *subjonctif* — <sup>92</sup>

When is the present of the subjunctive used? <sup>92</sup>

When is the perfect of the subjunctive used? <sup>93</sup>

Does the present participle agree with the words that attend it?  
<sup>53</sup> *participe* *s'accorder* *accompagner*

How is the english participle in ING expressed, after a preposition?  
<sup>52</sup> *s'exprimer*,

How is the english present participle expressed, when it is joined  
<sup>(ii)</sup> N.B.,

to the auxiliary verb BE?  
*BE?*

Does the past participle agree with the noun to which it is joined  
<sup>32</sup> <sup>134</sup> <sup>76</sup> *joindre?*

When a past participle comes after the auxiliary verb *être*, to BE,  
 does it require any agreement, and with what word does it agree?  
*quelque accord,* *s'accorder*

When a past participle comes after the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to HAVE,  
 does it require any agreement, and with what word does it agree?

Does the past participle agree after *avoir*, when it is followed by  
<sup>de</sup>  
 another verb in the infinitive?—*Expliquer* this rule.  
<sup>à</sup>

How is TO, the sign of the infinitive in english, expressed in french?  
<sup>134</sup> <sup>22</sup> *signe* <sup>(ii)</sup> N.B. \*

(Are not there) some instances in which this preposition is left out  
<sup>246</sup> <sup>†</sup> *cas* <sup>76</sup> *s'omettre*  
 in french?—Name them.  
*Nommer*

Is WILL<sup>134</sup> always the sign of the future, and WOULD the sign of  
<sup>WILL</sup> <sup>WOULD</sup>  
 the conditional of the verb which follows it?  
*conditionnel*

How are WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE expressed?—*Expliquer* these words.  
<sup>(ii)</sup> N.B.

How do we<sup>90</sup> express SHOULD;—SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT to HAVE?  
<sup>N.B.</sup>

How do we<sup>90</sup> express MAY, MIGHT;—COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE?  
<sup>N.B.</sup>

\* See, pages 236, 237, 238, the different ways of expressing TO before an infinitive, and peruse often the list of those verbs.

† See note † page 282.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

How is WISH expressed when it is followed by another verb  
185 - *s'exprimer* (ii) N.B. 200

(in the) imperfect, or (in the) conditional?  
à l' *imparfait*, au *conditionnel*?

How is MUST expressed, and what mood does it govern?  
 - (ii) N.B., *mode* *régir*

How must<sup>181</sup> we express MUST HAVE in the sense of BEING in NEED?  
N.B. sens

What is an ADVERB?  
 (y) *adverbe*?

What place do the adverbs keep with the verb?  
place 134 *tenir*

Which are the words that we<sup>90</sup> call negative adverbs?  
79 N.B. *négatif* 32

How are the negative adverbs placed with the verb?  
 - *se placer* (ii) N.B.

How are they placed, when the verb is in the infinitive?  
 - (ii) N.B. *à*

Are not *pas*, *point* sometimes left out?  
 - 134 184 *s'omettre* (ii) N.B.

How are NO, NOT expressed without a verb?  
 - (ii) N.B.

How is NOT expressed with the verb TAKE CARE, *prendre garde*?  
 (ii) N.B.

(Are there) not in french some words which require *ne*, when  
210 \* *demander* ,

(there is) no negation in english?—Which are these words?  
240 79

How do we<sup>90</sup> express BUT in the sense of the adverb ONLY?  
N.B. *BUT* ONLY?

How is BUT expressed in the sense of a relative pronoun?  
 - *BUT* (ii) N.B.

What is a PREPOSITION?  
 (y) *préposition*?

Are the prepositions always expressed by the words which generally  
 - 134 184

correspond to one another in both languages?—Mention the words  
*se correspondre* 121 *les deux* *Rapporter*

the most frequently used<sup>157</sup> with which the prepositions differ?  
184 *employer* 76 *différer*?

Do not some verbs require a preposition in english, when the  
 • *demander* ,

corresponding<sup>92</sup> words do not require any in french?—Name them.  
*qui y correspondent* (p) *Nommer*

\* See note † page 282.

† See, pages 247, 248, 249, 250 251, a list of the words with which the prepositions differ, and peruse it often.



of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

(Are there) not (on the) contrary some verbs which require a pre-  
<sup>246</sup> <sup>au</sup> <sup>contraire</sup> \*  
 position in french, when the corresponding<sup>32</sup> words do not require  
<sup>qui y correspondent</sup>  
 any in english?—Name them.

(p) May the prepositions be placed in french, as they sometimes are  
<sup>†</sup> <sup>134</sup> <sup>— se placer (ii)</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>62</sup> <sup>184</sup> —  
 placed in english, either before or after the words which they govern?  
 (ii) <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>223</sup> <sup>62</sup> <sup>régir?</sup>

Are the prepositions repeated before all the words which they govern?  
<sup>—</sup> <sup>134</sup> <sup>se répéter</sup> <sup>62</sup>

Explain the following<sup>32</sup> prepositions: FOR.—BEFORE.—BY.  
*Expliquer* <sup>suivant</sup> <sup>29</sup>

Explain AT, TO, FROM with verbs denoting being<sup>154</sup> at, going<sup>154</sup>,  
<sup>7</sup> <sup>qui désignent</sup> <sup>être</sup> <sup>à,</sup> <sup>aller</sup> ,  
 or coming to, going or coming from a person's<sup>25</sup> house?  
<sup>venir</sup> <sup>à,</sup> <sup>de</sup> <sup>— quelqu'un</sup>

Explain the different properties of IN, INTO.—IN, before the dif-  
<sup>propriété</sup> <sup>IN,</sup> <sup>INTO.</sup> <sup>IN,</sup>  
 ferent parts of the day; and ON before the days of the week.  
<sup>partie</sup> ; <sup>ON</sup>

What is a CONJUNCTION?  
 (y) <sup>conjunction?</sup>

Which are the conjunctions that govern the indicative mood?  
<sup>79</sup> <sup>régir</sup> <sup>indicatif?</sup> —

Which are the conjunctions that govern the subjunctive?  
<sup>79</sup> <sup>74</sup> <sup>subjunctif?</sup>

When a conjunction governs several verbs, is it<sup>62</sup> necessary to re-  
<sup>plusieurs</sup> , <sup>N.B.</sup> <sup>168</sup>  
 peat it before each verb?  
<sup>62</sup> <sup>102</sup>

(Is there) not something to be remarked about the conjunction *si*, IF?  
<sup>246</sup> <sup>243</sup> <sup>au sujet de</sup> ,

May not some conjunctions (be left out) in english, when the con-  
<sup>†</sup> \* <sup>134</sup> <sup>s'omettre</sup> ,  
 junctions which represent them can not (be left out) in french?

Explain the conjunctions BOTH.—EITHER, OR.—NEITHER, NOR.

Explain the conjunctions WHETHER.—THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN.

—BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR, &c.

\* See note † page 232.

† See note \* page 132.

*of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.*

## IDIOMS

Explain the different ways of expressing the word PEOPLE.  
*Expliquer* *manière* <sup>154</sup>

Explain the different meanings of the words COUNTRY.—TIME.  
*signification*

What difference between AN, ANNÉE ; —JOUR, JOURNÉE ; —MATIN  
*entre*

MATINÉE ; —SOIR, SOIRÉE ; —NUIT, SOIR ; —MIDI, MINUIT ?

When is the auxiliary verb HAVE expressed by the auxiliary *Etre* ?  
 — <sup>134</sup> *s'exprimer* *par*

When is the auxiliary verb BE expressed by the auxiliary *Avoir* ?  
 — *(ii)* <sup>N.B.</sup>

When is BE expressed by *faire* ? — When is BE expressed by  
 — <sup>134</sup>  
*se porter* ? — When is BE expressed by *devoir* ?  
 —

Is not the verb BE sometimes left out ?  
 — <sup>134</sup> <sup>184</sup> *s'omettre*

How do we<sup>90</sup> express TO BE JUST, TO HAVE JUST ?  
<sup>185</sup> <sup>N.B.</sup>

How do we<sup>90</sup> express WAS NEAR, WERE NEAR, HAD LIKE ?  
<sup>N.B.</sup>

How do we<sup>90</sup> express THERE IS, THERE ARE ; IT IS FAR, IT IS LONG  
<sup>N.B.</sup>  
 AGO : IT IS SINCE ; and THIS, THESE, (pointing out) a period of time ?  
*désignant*

How do we<sup>90</sup> express HERE IS, HERE ARE ; THIS IS, THESE ARE ;  
<sup>N.B.</sup>  
 —THERE IS, THERE ARE ; THAT IS, THOSE ARE, when they serve  
 to (point out) an object ?  
<sup>189</sup> *désigner*

Explain the different meanings of the word LET.—LET KNOW.  
*signification*

Explain the different meanings of the verb MAKE.

Explain TO CAUSE, TO HAVE, TO GET.—TO CAUSE TO BE DONE  
 OF MADE ; TO HAVE OF GET DONE OF MADE ; TO ORDER, TO BESPEAK.

Explain the verbs TO ASK, TO DESIRE.—TO LOOK.

Explain the different meanings of the verbs TO SUPPOSE.—TO HOPE.

*of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.*

Explain the different meanings of the verbs TO TAKE.—TO BRING.  
signification

—TO USE.—TO HELP.—TO ATTEND.—TO WANT.


Explain the verbs TO MARRY.—TO RIDE.—TO WALK.—TO  
COME.—TO RETURN.—TO CALL.

Explain the verbs TO BREAK.—TO LIKE.—TO KEEP.—TO GET.  
—TO SPEND.—TO CHARGE.

How do we<sup>90</sup> express TO GO TO MEET.—TO BRING NEAR, TO GO  
185 N.B.  
NEAR, TO COME NEAR.—TO HEAR?

How do we<sup>90</sup> express IT IS WITH.—WHATEVER, IN VAIN, TO  
N.B.  
NO PURPOSE.—TO FIND FAULT WITH.—TO TAKE IT KINDLY.—  
TO TAKE IT UNKINDLY?

How do we<sup>90</sup> express TO DO WITHOUT, TO BE EASY WITHOUT.—  
N.B.  
WHAT IS THE MATTER, WHAT IS IT ABOUT, WHAT IS IT.—IS IT, IS  
IT NOT; DOES IT, DOES IT NOT; HAVE I, HAVE I NOT?

 The learner having gone through the Syntax, and being able to answer the foregoing questions, with appropriate examples to each of them, there can be no doubt but he understands the rules well; he should now try to write something of his own composition in french, such as letters, dialogues, short histories, or anecdotes, either that he has read or heard, or from his own imagination. This he will perhaps find difficult at first; but if he will persevere in it for a few days, he will find it easier and more profitable than translating from a book; for unless he has read a great deal of french, he will be apt to commit many anglicisms, owing to the difference in the idiom of the two languages, i. e. he will put together a number of french words which separately have a meaning, but which, when put together, have hardly any meaning at all. His attention should be called entirely to recollect the french words which he has seen to express the same ideas, and even the english dictionary should be used as seldom as possible. If he finds himself deficient in some of the rules, he must write over again the recapitulatory exercise on those parts of speech which are not familiar to him, and there is little doubt that after a second attentive perusal, he will be sufficiently acquainted with them.

THE END

London: Printed by W. Clowes and Sons, Stamford-street.

89  
4099







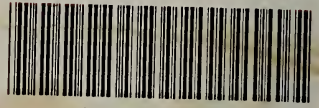








LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 117 916 6